13
Revised as of January 1, 2002

Business Credit and Assistance

Containing a codification of documents of general applicability and future effect

As of January 1, 2002

With Ancillaries

Published by:
Office of the Federal Register
National Archives and Records Administration

A Special Edition of the Federal Register
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Title 13:**

| Chapter I—Small Business Administration | 3   |
| Chapter III—Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce | 581 |
| Chapter IV—Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board | 587 |
| Chapter V—Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board | 611 |

**Finding Aids:**

| Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference | 637 |
| Table of CFR Titles and Chapters | 639 |
| Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR | 657 |
| List of CFR Sections Affected | 667 |
Cite this Code: CFR

To cite the regulations in this volume use title, part and section number. Thus, 13 CFR 101.100 refers to title 13, part 101, section 100.
The Code of Federal Regulations is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. The Code is divided into 50 titles which represent broad areas subject to Federal regulation. Each title is divided into chapters which usually bear the name of the issuing agency. Each chapter is further subdivided into parts covering specific regulatory areas.

Each volume of the Code is revised at least once each calendar year and issued on a quarterly basis approximately as follows:

- Title 1 through Title 16 as of January 1
- Title 17 through Title 27 as of April 1
- Title 28 through Title 41 as of July 1
- Title 42 through Title 50 as of October 1

The appropriate revision date is printed on the cover of each volume.

LEGAL STATUS

The contents of the Federal Register are required to be judicially noticed (44 U.S.C. 1507). The Code of Federal Regulations is prima facie evidence of the text of the original documents (44 U.S.C. 1510).

HOW TO USE THE CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

The Code of Federal Regulations is kept up to date by the individual issues of the Federal Register. These two publications must be used together to determine the latest version of any given rule.

To determine whether a Code volume has been amended since its revision date (in this case, January 1, 2002), consult the “List of CFR Sections Affected” (LSA), which is issued monthly, and the “Cumulative List of Parts Affected,” which appears in the Reader Aids section of the daily Federal Register. These two lists will identify the Federal Register page number of the latest amendment of any given rule.

EFFECTIVE AND EXPIRATION DATES

Each volume of the Code contains amendments published in the Federal Register since the last revision of that volume of the Code. Source citations for the regulations are referred to by volume number and page number of the Federal Register and date of publication. Publication dates and effective dates are usually not the same and care must be exercised by the user in determining the actual effective date. In instances where the effective date is beyond the cut-off date for the Code a note has been inserted to reflect the future effective date. In those instances where a regulation published in the Federal Register states a date certain for expiration, an appropriate note will be inserted following the text.

OMB CONTROL NUMBERS

The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–511) requires Federal agencies to display an OMB control number with their information collection request.
Many agencies have begun publishing numerous OMB control numbers as amendments to existing regulations in the CFR. These OMB numbers are placed as close as possible to the applicable recordkeeping or reporting requirements.

**OBSOLETE PROVISIONS**

Provisions that become obsolete before the revision date stated on the cover of each volume are not carried. Code users may find the text of provisions in effect on a given date in the past by using the appropriate numerical list of sections affected. For the period before January 1, 1986, consult either the List of CFR Sections Affected, 1949–1963, 1964–1972, or 1973–1985, published in seven separate volumes. For the period beginning January 1, 1986, a “List of CFR Sections Affected” is published at the end of each CFR volume.

**INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE**

*What is incorporation by reference?* Incorporation by reference was established by statute and allows Federal agencies to meet the requirement to publish regulations in the Federal Register by referring to materials already published elsewhere. For an incorporation to be valid, the Director of the Federal Register must approve it. The legal effect of incorporation by reference is that the material is treated as if it were published in full in the Federal Register (5 U.S.C. 552(a)). This material, like any other properly issued regulation, has the force of law.

*What is a proper incorporation by reference?* The Director of the Federal Register will approve an incorporation by reference only when the requirements of 1 CFR part 51 are met. Some of the elements on which approval is based are:

(a) The incorporation will substantially reduce the volume of material published in the Federal Register.

(b) The matter incorporated is in fact available to the extent necessary to afford fairness and uniformity in the administrative process.

(c) The incorporating document is drafted and submitted for publication in accordance with 1 CFR part 51.

Properly approved incorporations by reference in this volume are listed in the Finding Aids at the end of this volume.

*What if the material incorporated by reference cannot be found?* If you have any problem locating or obtaining a copy of material listed in the Finding Aids of this volume as an approved incorporation by reference, please contact the agency that issued the regulation containing that incorporation. If, after contacting the agency, you find the material is not available, please notify the Director of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington DC 20408, or call (202) 523–4534.

**CFR INDEXES AND TABULAR GUIDES**

A subject index to the Code of Federal Regulations is contained in a separate volume, revised annually as of January 1, entitled CFR INDEX AND FINDING AIDS. This volume contains the Parallel Table of Statutory Authorities and Agency Rules (Table I). A list of CFR titles, chapters, and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are also included in this volume.

An index to the text of “Title 3—The President” is carried within that volume.

The Federal Register Index is issued monthly in cumulative form. This index is based on a consolidation of the “Contents” entries in the daily Federal Register.

A List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA) is published monthly, keyed to the revision dates of the 50 CFR titles.
REPUBLICATION OF MATERIAL

There are no restrictions on the republication of material appearing in the Code of Federal Regulations.

INQUIRIES

For a legal interpretation or explanation of any regulation in this volume, contact the issuing agency. The issuing agency’s name appears at the top of odd-numbered pages.

For inquiries concerning CFR reference assistance, call 202-523-5227 or write to the Director, Office of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington, DC 20408.

SALES

The Government Printing Office (GPO) processes all sales and distribution of the CFR. For payment by credit card, call 202-512-1800, M–F, 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. e.s.t. or fax your order to 202-512-2250, 24 hours a day. For payment by check, write to the Superintendent of Documents, Attn: New Orders, P.O. Box 371954, Pittsburgh, PA 15250–7954. For GPO Customer Service call 202-512-1803.

ELECTRONIC SERVICES


The Office of the Federal Register also offers a free service on the National Archives and Records Administration’s (NARA) World Wide Web site for public law numbers, Federal Register finding aids, and related information. Connect to NARA’s web site at www.nara.gov/fedreg. The NARA site also contains links to GPO Access.

RAYMOND A. MOSLEY,

Director,

Office of the Federal Register.

January 1, 2002.
Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance is composed of one volume. This volume contains chapter I—Small Business Administration, chapter III—Economic Development Administration Department of Commerce, chapter IV—Emergency Steel Guarantee Board, and chapter V—Emergency Oil and Gas Guarantee Board. The contents of this volume represent all current regulations codified under this title of the CFR as of January 1, 2002.
Would you like to know...

if any changes have been made to the Code of Federal Regulations or what documents have been published in the Federal Register without reading the Federal Register every day? If so, you may wish to subscribe to the LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), the Federal Register Index, or both.

LSA
The LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected) is designed to lead users of the Code of Federal Regulations to amendatory actions published in the Federal Register. The LSA is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries indicate the nature of the changes—such as revised, removed, or corrected. $31 per year.

Federal Register Index
The index, covering the contents of the daily Federal Register, is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries are carried primarily under the names of the issuing agencies. Significant subjects are carried as cross-references. $28 per year.

A finding aid is included in each publication which lists Federal Register page numbers with the date of publication in the Federal Register.

Superintendent of Documents Subscription Order Form

Order Processing Code: ☐ YES, send me the following indicated subscriptions for one year:

☐ LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected), (LCS) for $31 per year.
☐ Federal Register Index (FRSU) $28 per year.

The total cost of my order is $ ________________.

Price is subject to change. International customers please add 25%.

Company or personal name

Street address

City, State, ZIP code

Daytime phone with area code

Purchase order No. (optional)

Fax your orders (202) 512–2250
Phone your orders (202) 512–1800

(Includes regular shipping and handling.)

For privacy check box below:
[ ] Do not make my name available to other mailers

Check method of payment:
[ ] Check payable to Superintendent of Documents
[ ] GPO Deposit Account
[ ] VISA [ ] MasterCard

Credit card No. (must be 20 digits)

Thank you for your order!

Authorizing signature

Mail To: Superintendent of Documents
P.O. Box 371954
Pittsburgh, PA 15250–7954

X
Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance

CHAPTER I—Small Business Administration .......................................................... 101

CHAPTER III—Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce .......................................................... 300

CHAPTER IV—Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board, Department of Commerce .......................................................... 400

CHAPTER V—Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, Department of Commerce .......................................................... 500
**CHAPTER I—SMALL BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION**

**EDITORIAL NOTE:** The Small Business Administration has asked the Director of the Federal Register to inform users of this chapter that parts 143, 145, and 146 are common rule regulations that cannot be amended by the Small Business Administration unilaterally.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Record disclosure and privacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Standards for conducting business with SBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Standards of conduct and employee restrictions and responsibilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Small business investment companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>New Markets Venture Capital (&quot;NMVC&quot;) Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Nondiscrimination in federally assisted programs of SBA—effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Nondiscrimination in financial assistance programs of SBA—effectuation of policies of Federal Government and SBA Administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Administrative claims under the Federal Tort Claims Act and representation and indemnification of SBA employees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Surety bond guarantee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Nondiscrimination in federally assisted programs of SBA—effectuation of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>Program for investment in Microentrepreneurs (&quot;PRIME&quot; or (&quot;The Act&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Business loans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Small business size regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Disaster loan program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>8(A) Business Development/Small Disadvantaged Business status determinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>Government contracting programs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>HUBZone program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Small business development centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>Rules of procedure governing cases before the Office of Hearings and Appeals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136</td>
<td>Enforcement of nondiscrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by the Small Business Administration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>SBA</td>
<td>Debt collection through offset</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>SBID</td>
<td>Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act regulations</td>
<td>464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143</td>
<td>RFC</td>
<td>Uniform administrative requirements for grants and cooperative agreements to State and local governments</td>
<td>473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>RFC</td>
<td>Governmentwide debarment and suspension (non-procurement) and governmentwide requirements for drug-free workplace (grants)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>RFC</td>
<td>New restrictions on lobbying</td>
<td>519</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS CHAPTER:
- SBA = Small Business Administration.
- SBID = The Small Business Investment Division of SBA.
- RFC = Reconstruction Finance Corporation.

CROSS REFERENCE: For regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, see 17 CFR, Chapter II.
PART 101—ADMINISTRATION

Subpart A—Overview

§ 101.100 What is the purpose of SBA?
The U.S. Small Business Administration (SBA) aids, counsels, assists, and protects the interests of small business concerns, and advocates on their behalf within the Government. It also helps victims of disasters. It provides financial assistance, contractual assistance, and business development assistance. For a more detailed description of the functions of SBA see The United States Government Manual, a special publication of the Federal Register, which is available from Superintendent of Documents, P.O. Box 371954, Pittsburgh, PA 15250-7954.

§ 101.101 Who manages SBA?
(a) An Administrator, appointed by the President with the advice and consent of the Senate, manages SBA. The Administrator—
(1) Is responsible to the President and Congress for exercising direction, authority, and control over SBA.
(2) Determines and approves all policies covering SBA’s programs to aid, counsel, assist, and protect the interests of the nation’s small businesses.
(3) Employs or appoints employees necessary to implement the Small Business Act, as amended, the Small Business Investment Act, as amended, and other laws and directives.
(4) Delegates certain activities, by issuing regulations or otherwise, to Headquarters and field positions.

Subpart B—Employment of Private Counsel

§ 101.200 When does SBA hire private counsel?
§ 101.201 What are the minimum terms of private counsel’s employment?

Subpart C—Inspector General

§ 101.300 What is the Inspector General’s authority to conduct audits, investigations, and inspections?
§ 101.301 Who should receive information or allegations of waste, fraud, and abuse?
§ 101.302 What is the scope of the Inspector General’s authority?
§ 101.303 How are Inspector General subpoenas served?

Subpart D—Intergovernmental Partnership

§ 101.400 What is the purpose of this subpart?
§ 101.401 What programs and activities of SBA are subject to this subpart?
§ 101.402 What procedures apply to the selection of SBA programs and activities?
§ 101.403 What are the notice and comment procedures?
§ 101.404 How does the Administrator receive comments?
§ 101.405 How does the Administrator respond to comments?
§ 101.406 What are the Administrator’s responsibilities in interstate situations?
§ 101.407 May the Administrator waive these regulations?


Source: 61 FR 2394, Jan. 26, 1996, unless otherwise noted.
§ 101.103 Where are SBA’s field offices located?

A list of SBA’s field offices with addresses, phone numbers and jurisdictions served is periodically published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. You can also obtain the address and phone number of an SBA office to serve you by calling 1–800–8–ASK–SBA or 1–800–827–5722.

§ 101.104 What are the functions of SBA’s field offices?

(a) Regional offices. Regional offices are managed by a Regional Administrator who is responsible to the Administrator and to the Associate Administrator for Field Operations. They are located in major cities and have geographical boundaries which cover multi-state areas. Regional offices exercise limited authority over field activities within their region.

(b) District offices. District offices are managed by a District Director and are located in cities within a region. District offices are responsible to Headquarters, the Associate Administrator for Field Operations, and to a regional office. Within their delegated authority, district offices have authority for—

(1) Conducting all program delivery activities within the district boundaries;

(2) Supervising all branch offices located within the district boundaries; and

(3) Providing subordinate branch offices with the technical capability necessary to execute assigned programs.

(c) Branch offices. Branch offices are managed by a Branch Manager and are located in cities within a district. Branch offices are responsible to the district office within whose boundaries it is located. Branch offices execute one or more elements of the business or disaster loan programs and have limited authority for program execution.

(d) Disaster area offices. Disaster area offices are managed by Area Directors and are located in cities within defined geographical areas. Disaster area offices are responsible to Headquarters and provide loan services to victims of declared disasters. Temporary disaster offices are often established in areas where disasters have occurred.

(e) Responsibilities. Each field office has responsibilities within a defined geographical area as periodically set forth in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 101.105 Who may use SBA’s official seal and for what purposes?

(a) The SBA’s seal shall be in a manner and form set forth as follows:

(b) The Administrator, Deputy Administrator, General Counsel, Assistant Administrator for Administration, Assistant Administrator for Hearings and Appeals, Associate Administrator for Minority Enterprise Development, Regional Administrators, District Directors, Branch Managers, the Inspector General, and Disaster Area Directors are authorized to—

(1) Certify and authenticate originals and copies of any books, records, papers, or other documents on file within SBA, or extracts taken from them.

(2) Certify the nonexistence of records.

(3) Affix the Seal of SBA to all such certifications for those purposes authorized by 28 U.S.C. 1733.

§ 101.106 Does Federal law apply to SBA programs and activities?

(a) SBA makes loans and provides other services that are authorized and executed under Federal programs to achieve national purposes.

(b) The following are construed and enforced in accordance with Federal law—

(1) Instruments evidencing loans;
(2) Security interests in real or personal property payable to or held by SBA or the Administrator such as promissory notes, bonds, guarantee agreements, mortgages, and deeds of trust;

(3) Other evidences of debt or security;

(4) Contracts or agreements to which SBA is a party, unless expressly provided otherwise.

(c) To the extent feasible, SBA uses local or state procedures, especially for recordation and notification purposes, in implementing and facilitating SBA’s loan programs. This use of local or state procedures is not a waiver by SBA of any Federal immunity from any local or state control, penalty, tax, or liability.

(d) No person, corporation, or organization that applies for and receives any benefit or assistance from SBA, or that offers any assurance or security upon which SBA relies for the granting of such benefit or assistance, is entitled to claim or assert any local or state law to defeat the obligation incurred in obtaining or assuring such Federal benefit or assistance.

§ 101.107 What SBA forms are approved for public use?

(a) SBA uses forms approved by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501 et seq.), as amended. You may obtain approved forms for use by the public when applying for or obtaining SBA assistance, or when providing services for SBA, from any field office (see §101.103). You may also use forms which you have prepared yourself, or have obtained from another source, if those forms are identical in every respect to the forms approved by OMB for the same purpose.

(b) Any member of the public who has reason to believe any SBA office or agent is in violation of the Public Protection Clause of the Paperwork Reduction Act (44 U.S.C. 3512 and see 5 CFR 1320.6) should notify SBA. Direct such comments to the Assistant Administrator for Administration at 409 3rd Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

§ 101.108 Has SBA waived any of the public participation exemptions of the Administrative Procedure Act?

Yes. Despite these exemptions, SBA will follow the public participation requirements of the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 553, in rulemakings relating to public property, loans, grants, benefits, or contracts.

§ 101.109 Do SBA regulations include the section headings?

Yes. All SBA regulations must be interpreted as including the section headings.

Subpart B—Employment of Private Counsel

§ 101.200 When does SBA hire private counsel?

(a) Business loans. SBA may hire private counsel to represent it in regard to business loans when the volume of activity in an area is not sufficient to require a full-time SBA employee, or the area is too remote for economical use of a full-time SBA employee.

(b) Disaster loans. SBA may hire private counsel in regard to disaster loans when the disaster presents an emergency and a volume of activity that cannot be promptly and economically serviced by available SBA employees.

§ 101.201 What are the minimum terms of private counsel’s employment?

(a) Private counsel must perform all requested work in compliance with SBA’s regulations, policies, and instructions, and take such action as is legally required under the Small Business Act, the Small Business Investment Act, and other laws applicable to SBA.

(b) Private counsel must adhere to the highest standards of professional conduct and maintain confidentiality appropriate to the attorney-client relationship.

(c) Private counsel acts under the supervision of the SBA General Counsel (and designees).

(d) Private counsel usually is compensated at an hourly rate as approved by SBA. Contingency fee agreements may be used if approved by the General Counsel.
§ 101.300 What is the Inspector General’s authority to conduct audits, investigations, and inspections?

The Inspector General Act of 1978, as amended (5 U.S.C. App. 3) authorizes SBA’s Inspector General to provide policy direction for, and to conduct, supervise, and coordinate such audits, investigations, and inspections relating to the programs and operations of SBA as appears necessary or desirable.

§ 101.301 Who should receive information or allegations of waste, fraud, and abuse?

The Office of Inspector General should receive all information or allegations of waste, fraud, or abuse regarding SBA programs and operations.

§ 101.302 What is the scope of the Inspector General’s authority?

To obtain the necessary information and evidence, the Inspector General (and designees) have the right to:

(a) Have access to all records, reports, audits, reviews, documents, papers, recommendations, and other materials available to SBA and relating to SBA’s programs and operations;

(b) Require by subpoena the production of all information, documents, reports, answers, records, accounts, papers, and other data and documentary evidence;

(c) Administer oaths and affirmations or take affidavits; and

(d) Request information or assistance from any Federal, state, or local government agency or unit.

§ 101.303 How are Inspector General subpoenas served?

(a) Service of subpoenas may be effected by any of the following means—

(1) If by mail, a copy of the subpoena must be addressed to the person, partnership, corporation, or unincorporated association to be served at a residence or usual dwelling place, or a principal office or place of business, and mailed first class by registered or certified mail (postage prepaid, return receipt requested), or by a commercial or U.S. Postal Service overnight or express delivery service.

(2) If by personal delivery, a copy of the subpoena must be delivered to the person to be served, or to a member of the partnership to be served, or to an executive officer or a director of the corporation or unincorporated association to be served, or to a person authorized by appointment or by law to receive process for the person or entity named in the subpoena.

(3) If by delivery to an address, a copy of the subpoena must be left at the principal office or place of business of the person, partnership, corporation, or unincorporated association to be served, or at the residence or usual dwelling place of the person, member of the partnership, or officer or director of the corporation or unincorporated association to be served, with someone of suitable age and discretion.

(b) Proof of service—

(1) When service is by registered, certified, overnight, or express mail, it is complete upon delivery of the document by the Postal Service or commercial service.

(2) The return Postal Service receipt for a document that was registered or certified and mailed, the signed receipt for a document delivered by an overnight or express delivery service, or the Return of Service completed by the individual serving the subpoena by personal delivery shall be proof of service.

Subpart D—Intergovernmental Partnership

§ 101.400 What is the purpose of this subpart?

(a) This subpart implements section 401 of the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6506 et seq.) which promotes intergovernmental partnership and strengthens Federalism by relying on state processes and state, area-wide, regional, and local coordination for the review of proposed Federal financial assistance and direct Federal development.

(b) While guiding SBA’s management, this subpart does not create any right or benefit enforceable at law.
§ 101.401 What programs and activities of SBA are subject to this subpart?

SBA publishes in the Federal Register a list of programs and activities subject to this subpart.

§ 101.402 What procedures apply to the selection of SBA programs and activities?

(a) A state may—
(1) Select any program or activity published in the Federal Register under § 101.401 for intergovernmental review (providing it consults with local elected officials before doing so) and then notify the Administrator of the programs and activities selected; and
(2) Notify the Administrator of changes in its selections at any time. For each change, the state submits to the Administrator an assurance that it consulted with local elected officials regarding the change.

(b) SBA may establish deadlines by which states must inform the Administrator of changes in their program selections.

(c) After receiving notice of a state’s selections, the Administrator uses a state’s process as soon as feasible depending on individual programs and activities.

(d) “State” means any of the 50 States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the U.S. Virgin Islands, or the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands.

§ 101.403 What are the notice and comment procedures?

(a) The Administrator provides notice to directly affected state, area-wide, regional, and local entities in a state of proposed SBA financial assistance or direct SBA development if—
(1) The state has not adopted a process under Executive Order 12372 (3 CFR, 1982 Comp., p. 197), as amended by Executive Order 12416 (3 CFR, 1983 Comp., p. 186); or
(2) The assistance or development involves a program or activity not selected for the state process.

(b) Notice may be made by publication in the Federal Register or other means as SBA deems appropriate.

(c) Except in unusual circumstances the Administrator gives state processes or directly affected state, area-wide, regional, and local officials and entities at least 60 days to comment on proposed SBA financial assistance or direct SBA development.

(d) In cases where SBA delegates the review, coordination, and communication authority under this subpart, this section also applies.

§ 101.404 How does the Administrator receive comments?

(a) The Administrator follows the procedures of § 101.405 if—
(1) A state office or official is designated to act as a single point of contact between a state process and all Federal agencies; and
(2) That office or official transmits a state process recommendation for a program selected under § 101.402(a).

(b)(1) The single point of contact is not obligated to transmit comments from state, area-wide, regional, or local officials and entities where there is no state process recommendation.

(2) If a state process recommendation is transmitted by a single point of contact, all comments from state, area-wide, regional, and local officials and entities that differ from it must also be transmitted.

(c) If a state has not established a process, or is unable to submit a state process recommendation, state, area-wide, regional, and local officials and entities may submit comments to SBA.

(d) If a program or activity is not selected for a state process, state, area-wide, regional, and local officials and entities may submit comments to SBA.

(e) If a program or activity is not selected for a state process recommendation, state, area-wide, regional, and local officials and entities may submit comments to SBA.

(f) If a program or activity is not selected for a state process recommendation submitted under this subpart and for which the Administrator is not required to apply the procedures of § 101.405 when such comments are provided by a single point of contact directly to SBA by a commenting party.
§ 101.405 How does the Administrator respond to comments?

(a) If a state process provides a recommendation to SBA through its single point of contact, the Administrator:
   (1) Accepts the recommendation; or
   (2) Reaches a mutually agreeable solution with the state process; or
   (3) Provides the single point of contact with a written explanation of the decision in a form the Administrator deems appropriate. The Administrator may also supplement the written explanation by telephone or other means.

(b) In any explanation under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, the Administrator informs the single point of contact that—
   (1) SBA will not implement its decision for at least 10 days after the single point of contact receives the explanation; or
   (2) Because of unusual circumstances the waiting period of at least 10 days is not feasible.

(c) For purposes of computing the waiting period under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, a single point of contact is presumed to have received written notification 5 days after the date of mailing.

§ 101.406 What are the Administrator's responsibilities in interstate situations?

The Administrator is responsible for:

(a) Identifying proposed SBA financial assistance and direct SBA development that have an impact on interstate areas;

(b) Notifying appropriate officials and entities in states which have adopted a process and selected an SBA program or activity;

(c) Making efforts to identify and notify the affected state, area-wide, regional, and local officials and entities in states that have not adopted a process or selected an SBA program or activity;

(d) Using the procedures of §101.405 if a recommendation of a designated area-wide agency is transmitted by a single point of contact in cases in which the review, coordination, and communication with SBA has been delegated; and

(e) Using the procedures of §101.405 if a state process provides a state recommendation to SBA through a single point of contact.

§ 101.407 May the Administrator waive these regulations?

The Administrator may waive any provision of §§101.400 through and including 101.406 in an emergency.

PART 102—RECORD DISCLOSURE AND PRIVACY

Subpart A—Disclosure of Information

Sec.
102.1 What does this subpart do?
102.2 How can I get records from SBA?
102.3 How long will it take for SBA to respond to my request for records?
102.4 How will SBA respond to my request?
102.5 If SBA grants my request, which records will be supplied?
102.6 How will SBA respond to requests for business information?
102.7 What are the procedures for submitters of business information to SBA after March 1, 1996?
102.8 What fees will SBA charge?
102.9 How may I appeal a denial of my request for information or a fee determination?
102.10 How can I get the Public Index of SBA materials?
102.11 What happens if I ask SBA for a record that another Federal agency generated?
102.12 What happens if I subpoena records or testimony of employees in connection with a civil lawsuit, criminal proceeding or administrative proceeding to which SBA is not a party?

Subpart B—The Privacy Act

102.20 What privacy rights does this subpart regulate?
102.21 How will SBA maintain records?
102.22 When will SBA disclose records?
102.23 Are there special rules about personnel and equal employment opportunity files?
102.24 What is a record?
102.25 What is a system of records?
102.26 What does this subpart mean by “person to whom a record pertains” or “you”?
102.27 What records are partially exempt from the provisions of the Privacy Act?
102.28 What about information compiled for a civil action?
102.29 Who administers SBA’s responsibilities under the Privacy Act?
Small Business Administration

§ 102.3 How can I write to the Privacy Act Officer?

§ 102.30 How can I write to the Privacy Act Officer?

§ 102.31 Who appoints Systems Managers?

§ 102.32 What do Systems Managers do?

§ 102.33 How can I write to a Systems Manager?

§ 102.34 How can I see records kept on me?

§ 102.35 How long will it take SBA to respond to my request?

§ 102.36 How will SBA respond to my request?

§ 102.37 How may I appeal a decision to deny me access to my records?

§ 102.38 To whom should my appeal be addressed?

§ 102.39 By when must I appeal to the Privacy Act Officer?

§ 102.40 When will SBA respond to my appeal?

§ 102.41 How will SBA respond to my appeal?

§ 102.42 How can I get SBA to amend a record kept on me?

§ 102.43 What should my petition say?

§ 102.44 For what reasons will SBA amend my record?

§ 102.45 Will SBA ask me for more information after I make my request?

§ 102.46 When will SBA respond to my request?

§ 102.47 How will SBA respond to my request?

§ 102.48 How do I appeal a refusal to amend a record kept on me?

§ 102.49 To whom should I address my appeal?

§ 102.50 By when must I submit my appeal?

§ 102.51 By what standards will the Privacy Act Officer review my appeal?

§ 102.52 When will SBA respond to my appeal?

§ 102.53 How will SBA respond to my appeal?

§ 102.54 How can I obtain judicial review of an SBA Privacy Act decision?

§ 102.55 What must SBA tell the individuals from whom it collects information?

§ 102.56 Will SBA release my name or address?

§ 102.57 Do I have to give SBA my SSN?

§ 102.58 When will SBA show personnel records to a representative?

§ 102.59 What fees will SBA charge me for my records?

§ 102.60 May I be informed of disclosures made of my records?

§ 102.61 Are there Matching Program procedures?


Source: 61 FR 2673, Jan. 29, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Disclosure of Information

§ 102.1 What does this subpart do?

This subpart describes the procedures by which the SBA makes documents available under the Freedom of Information Act ("FOIA") (5 U.S.C. 552).

§ 102.2 How can I get records from SBA?

(a) You can go to the SBA office at which the records are kept, and photocopy any final SBA decision, policy statement, or standard operating procedure.

(b) For copies of all other records, you must send a letter request to the SBA office at which the records are kept. The letter must describe specific records you want. If you don’t know which SBA office keeps the records, you may send your letter to the nearest SBA District Office. You may also send your letter to the Chief, FOIA & PA Office, 409 Third Street SW., Suite 5900, Washington DC 20416. The office receiving your letter will forward it to the correct office.

§ 102.3 How long will it take for SBA to respond to my request for records?

(a) If you have met the fee requirements of §102.8, SBA will respond within 10 working days after the correct office receives your request, unless you have requested an especially large number of records, the records are not located in the office handling the request, or SBA needs to consult with another government office.

(b) If you make your request on behalf of another person, SBA will respond within 10 working days after you present a document signed by that person authorizing you to request information on his or her behalf. If you make your request on behalf of another person without including such signed authorization, SBA will inform you of the authorization needed.

(c) If you send your request to the wrong office, that office will send it to the correct office within 10 working days and will send you an acknowledgment letter.

(d) If SBA determines that one of the circumstances described in paragraph (a) of this section apply, it will respond within 20 working days of the date upon which the correct office receives your request, and will notify you that the extra time is required.
§ 102.4 How will SBA respond to my request?

Within the time limit described in §102.3, SBA will either:

(a) Give you all the records you requested;

(b) Give you some or none of the records you requested, explain why SBA has decided not to comply fully with your request, citing specific exemptions where applicable, and explain how to appeal that decision; or

(c) Tell you that you will not receive a response until you have either paid your fee or committed to the amount of fee you will pay, as applicable.

§ 102.5 If SBA grants my request, which records will be supplied?

SBA will give you copies of all records or portions of records requested which are in the processing office as of the close of the day upon which that office received your request.

§ 102.6 How will SBA respond to requests for business information?

(a) Business information is a trade secret, or commercial or financial information, contained in records provided to SBA by any person and which may be protected from disclosure under Exemption Four of FOIA (5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4)).

(b) The submitter is the business entity to which the business information pertains and which submitted the information to SBA, either directly or through an intermediary, such as a bank.

(c) SBA will disclose upon request business information that has previously been released to the general public.

(d) If you request business information submitted to SBA prior to March 1, 1996 which has not previously been released to the general public, SBA will notify the submitter if it intends to release business information which either the submitter has previously claimed or which SBA believes to be confidential and the disclosure of which would cause substantial competitive harm. The submitter will have 5 working days to object to the disclosure, explaining why the harm would occur.

(e) If you request business information submitted to SBA after March 1, 1996 which has not previously been released to the general public, SBA will notify the submitter if it intends to release business information which either the submitter has previously claimed or which SBA believes to be confidential and the disclosure of which would cause substantial competitive harm. The submitter will have 5 working days to object to the disclosure, explaining why the harm would occur.

(f) Whenever a submitter objects to disclosure, SBA will consider the submitter’s objections, but will not be bound by it. If SBA discloses information despite a submitter’s objection, SBA will give the submitter the maximum notice possible before disclosure without violating the time constraints imposed by FOIA. In this notice, SBA will tell the submitter when and what it intends to disclose.

(g) SBA will promptly notify the submitter of any suit filed against SBA to compel disclosure.

§ 102.7 What are the procedures for submitters of business information to SBA after March 1, 1996?

Submitters may identify business information at the time of submission which would likely cause them substantial competitive harm if disclosed. The identification shall lapse after 10 years, unless renewed in writing.

§ 102.8 What fees will SBA charge?

(a) Basic fees.

(1) For manual record search. SBA will charge $18 per hour.

(2) For computer record searches. SBA will charge the actual costs.

(3) For review and disclosure determinations. SBA will charge $18 per hour.

(4) Duplication. SBA will charge 10 cents per page for photocopy duplication, and the actual cost of reproduction for other methods.

(5) Certifying records. SBA will charge actual costs.

(6) For requested special types of delivery other than first-class mail. SBA may charge the actual cost.

(b) If you are a representative of an educational institution, a non-commercial scientific institution, or a member of the news media, SBA will charge you only for the cost of duplication after the first 100 pages.
§ 102.8

(1) **What is an educational institution?** A state-certified preschool, elementary or secondary school, an accredited college or university, an accredited institution of professional education, or any accredited or state-certified institute of vocational education which operates a program or programs of scholarly research.

(2) **What is a non-commercial scientific institution?** An organization which is operated solely for the purpose of conducting scientific research, the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry.

(3) **What is a representative of an educational or non-commercial scientific institution?** A requester seeking records on behalf of that institution who is authorized by that institution to do so, and who is seeking those records for scholarly or scientific reasons, as long as there is no commercial purpose to the request for records.

(4) **What is a representative of the news media?** An individual who is actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to disseminate information to the general public. To be considered “news media”, this organization may provide information by subscription and may target its dissemination to a narrow section of the general public as long as any member of the general public may purchase information from it. If you are not employed by the news media, but have a reasonable expectation that you will sell the information you obtain to the news media, SBA may conclude that you are a representative of the news media.

(c) **Member of the general public.** If you are a member of the general public, SBA will not charge you for the first two hours of search time, the first hundred pages of photocopy duplication, or for review and disclosure determinations. The general public is anyone who is not a representative of an educational institution, a representative of the news media, or a commercial requester.

(d) **Commercial requester.** If you are a commercial requester you must pay all the basic fees set forth in paragraph (a) of this section. A commercial requester is anyone seeking information for commercial, trade, or profit interests of the requester or someone he or she is trying to help.

(e) **How does SBA determine what category of requester I am?** The SBA office processing your request will determine the appropriate category. If you are not a commercial requester, you must show us what category of requester you are.

(f) **Tell us how much you are willing to pay.** To get the quickest possible response, you must tell SBA how much money you are willing to pay in fees when you make your request for records.

(g) If you don’t tell us how much you are willing to pay and SBA estimates that the fee will exceed $25.00, SBA will estimate the fee and will not process your request until you tell SBA that you are willing to pay the estimated amount, or until you narrow the request so that the fee is less than $25.

(h) SBA will waive fees less than $25.

(i) If the fee is more than $250, or if you have a history of failing to pay FOIA fees in a timely manner, SBA will ask you to remit the estimated amount and any past due charges before sending you the records.

(j) **Who determines the fee?** The SBA office which processes your request.

(k) **When do you pay the fee?** SBA will bill you when it responds to your request. You must pay within thirty-one calendar days.

(l) **Failure to pay fees.** (1) If you do not pay by the thirty-first day after the billing date, SBA will charge interest at the maximum rate allowed under Title 31 of the United States Code, section 3717.

(2) If you do not pay the amount due within ninety calendar days of the due date, SBA may notify consumer credit reporting agencies of your delinquency.

(3) If you owe fees for previous FOIA responses, SBA will not respond to further requests unless you satisfy the amount due.

(m) **Unsuccessful searches.** If SBA’s search for records is unsuccessful, it will still bill you for the search.

(n) **Multiple requests.** If you make multiple requests at or about the same
§ 102.9 How may I appeal a denial of my request for information or a fee determination?

(a) You must write to the Chief, FOIA & PA Office at 409 Third Street SW., Suite 5900, Washington, DC 20416.

(b) The Chief must receive your written appeal within 45 calendar days of the date of the SBA determination from which you are appealing.

(c)(1) If you are appealing a denial of your request for information, the appeal must contain the following information:

(i) What records were denied.

(ii) The name and title of the individual who denied the request and the address of his or her office.

(iii) Any other information you deem appropriate.

(2) If you are appealing a fee determination, the appeal must contain the following information:

(i) The address of the office which made the fee determination from which you are appealing.

(ii) The fee that office charged.

(iii) The fee, if any, you believe should have been charged.

(iv) The reasons you believe that your fee should be lower than the fee which the Agency charged.

(v) Any other information you deem appropriate.

(d) The Chief will decide your appeal, unless the Chief originally made the determination you are appealing. In that case, SBA’s Assistant Administrator for Hearings and Appeals will decide your appeal.

(e) SBA will decide your appeal within 20 working days from the date of its receipt. SBA may have an additional 10 working days if unusual circumstances require.

(f)(1) If you are appealing a decision to deny your request for records, SBA will either:

(i) Give you the records you requested; or

(ii) Decline to give you the records you requested, tell you why SBA has concluded that the records were exempt from disclosure under FOIA, and tell you how to obtain judicial review of SBA’s decision.

(2) If you are appealing a fee determination, SBA will either charge the fee you request or charge another fee and explain why SBA has concluded that the fee it has decided to charge is appropriate.

§ 102.10 How can I get the Public Index of SBA materials?

(a) The Public Index is a document which provides identifying information about official documents which SBA has issued.

(b) SBA has administratively determined, as permitted by FOIA, that periodic publication and distribution is unnecessary and impracticable.

(c) The Public Index is set forth in Appendix 3 of SBA Standard Operating Procedure 40 03. You can obtain the Public Index from any SBA office.

§ 102.11 What happens if I ask SBA for a record that another Federal agency generated?

Such a request is a request directed to the wrong office, as that term is used in §102.3(c). SBA will forward your request to the generating agency.

§ 102.12 What happens if I subpoena records or testimony of employees in connection with a civil lawsuit, criminal proceeding or administrative proceeding to which SBA is not a party?

(a) The person to whom the subpoena is directed must consult with SBA counsel in the relevant SBA office, who will seek approval for compliance from the Associate General Counsel for Litigation. Except where the subpoena requires the testimony of an employee of the Inspector General’s office, or records within the possession of the Inspector General, the Associate General
§ 102.22 When will SBA disclose records?

SBA will not disclose to anyone any record which is contained in a system of records, except that it will disclose a record:

(a) To the person about whom the record is maintained, or to that person’s agent, within the limits discussed in this subpart;

(b) To those SBA employees who have a need for the record to perform their duties;

(c) When required under 5 U.S.C. 552 (FOIA);

(d) For a routine use of the record compatible with the purpose for which it was collected;

(e) To the Bureau of the Census for purposes of planning or carrying out a census, survey, or related activity pursuant to Title 13, United States Code;

(f) To a recipient who has provided the Agency with advance adequate written assurance that the record will be used solely as a statistical research or reporting record, where the record is transferred in a form that is not individually identifiable;

(g) To the National Archives of the United States as a record which has sufficient historical or other value to warrant its continued preservation by the U.S. Government, or for evaluation by the Administrator of General Services or his or her designee to determine whether the record has such value;

(h) To another agency or to an instrumentality of any governmental jurisdiction within or under the control of the United States for a civil or criminal law enforcement activity if:

(1) The activity is authorized by law; and
§ 102.23 Are there special rules about personnel and equal employment opportunity files?

(a) The provisions of parts 293 and 297 of title 5 of the Code of Federal Regulations govern all SBA files which the Office of Personnel Management determines are personnel files.


§ 102.24 What is a record?

A record is information which SBA maintains on an individual and which includes either his name or an identifying symbol (such as a fingerprint, a social security number ("SSN"), or a photograph).

§ 102.25 What is a system of records?

A system of records is one or more records which SBA routinely keeps for official purposes, and from which SBA can retrieve records by using a name or personal identifier.

§ 102.26 What does this subpart mean by "person to whom a record pertains" or "you"?

When this subpart refers to the "person to whom a record pertains" or uses the pronoun "you", it refers to a United States citizen or a lawfully admitted alien. It does not refer to a corporation, partnership, or sole proprietorship.

§ 102.27 What records are partially exempt from the provisions of the Privacy Act?

(a) The following systems of records are exempt from certain provisions of the PA: Audit Reports (system of records #SBA 015), Litigation and Claims Files (#SBA 070), Personnel Security Files (#SBA 100), Security and Investigations Files (#SBA 120), Office of Inspector General Referrals (#SBA 125), Investigations Division Management Information System (#SBA 130), and Standards of Conduct Files (#SBA 140).

(b) The provisions of the PA from which these systems of records are exempt are subsections (c)(3) (Accounting of Certain Disclosures), (d) (Access to Records), (e)(1), 4G, H, and I (Agency Requirements), and (f) (Agency Rules).

(c) The systems of records described in paragraph (a) of this section are exempt from the provisions of the Privacy Act described in paragraph (b) of this section in order to:

1. Prevent the subject of investigations from frustrating the investigatory process;
2. Protect investigatory material compiled for law enforcement purposes;
3. Fulfill commitments made to protect the confidentiality of sources and to maintain access to necessary sources of information; or
4. Prevent interference with law enforcement proceedings.

(d) In addition to the foregoing exemptions in paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section, the systems of records described in paragraph (a) of this section numbered SBA 015, 100, 120, 125, and 130 are fully exempt from the Privacy Act to the extent that they contain:
§ 102.32

(1) Information compiled to identify individual criminal offenders and alleged offenders and consisting only of identifying data and notations of arrests, confinement, release, and parole and probation status;

(2) Information, including reports of informants and investigators, associated with an identifiable individual compiled to investigate criminal activity; or

(3) Reports compiled at any stage of the process of enforcement of the criminal laws from arrest or indictment through release from supervision associated with an identifiable individual.

(e) The systems of records described in paragraph (d) of this section are fully exempt from the PA to the extent described in that paragraph because they are records maintained by the Investigations Division of the Inspector General, which is a component of SBA which performs as its principal function activities pertaining to the enforcement of criminal laws within the meaning of 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2). They are exempt in order to:

(1) Prevent the subjects of Office of Inspector General (OIG) investigations from using the PA to frustrate the investigative process;

(2) Protect the identity of Federal employees who furnish a complaint or information to the OIG, consistent with section 7(b) of the Inspector General Act of 1978, 5 U.S.C. App. I;

(3) Protect the confidentiality of other sources of information;

(4) Avoid endangering confidential sources and law enforcement personnel;

(5) Prevent interference with law enforcement proceedings;

(6) Assure access to sources of confidential information, including that contained in Federal, State, and local criminal law enforcement information systems;

(7) Prevent the disclosure of investigative techniques; or

(8) Prevent the disclosure of classified information.

§ 102.28 What about information compiled for a civil action?

No individual shall have access to any information compiled by SBA in reasonable anticipation of a civil action or proceeding. In the event of a question as to disclosure, the Systems Manager for the system of records involved will rely on the opinion of the General Counsel or designee, and will also consult with the PA Officer.

§ 102.29 Who administers SBA’s responsibilities under the Privacy Act?

The PA Officer has overall responsibility for administering the PA for SBA. A Systems Manager is responsible for administering the PA as to systems of records within an SBA office.

§ 102.30 How can I write to the Privacy Act Officer?

You can write to the PA Officer at 409 Third Street SW., Suite 5900, Washington, DC 20416.

§ 102.31 Who appoints Systems Managers?

The senior official in each field office and each Headquarters program area designates himself or herself or appoints another as the Systems Manager for that office.

§ 102.32 What do Systems Managers do?

Systems Managers have the following responsibilities, among others, for the offices for which they are appointed:

(a) Acting as the initial contact person for individuals seeking access to or amendment of their records.

(b) Responding to requests for information.

(c) Discussing the availability of records with individuals.

(d) Amending records in cases where amended information is not controversial and does not involve policy decisionmaking.

(e) Informing individuals of any reproduction fees to be charged.

(f) Assuring that their systems of records contain no record describing how any individual exercises rights guaranteed by the First Amendment unless expressly authorized by statute or by the individual about whom the record is maintained, or unless pertinent to and within the scope of an authorized law enforcement activity.
§ 102.33 How can I write to a Systems Manager?
You can write to a Systems Manager by writing to the SBA Office which maintains the record you are seeking. If you do not know which office that is, or you do not know the address of that office, you can write to the PA Officer at 409 3rd Street SW., Suite 5900, Washington, DC 20416, who will forward your request to the proper Systems Manager.

§ 102.34 How can I see records kept on me?
(a) You may look at any information pertaining to yourself contained in any SBA system of records unless some law or regulation prohibits it.
(b) In order to see this information, you must ask for it in writing, identifying what records you want. The writing should be addressed to the Systems Manager overseeing the system of records containing the record you wish to see.
(c) The Systems Manager (or, when appropriate, the PA Officer) may ask for more specific information about the system of records in which the document you are seeking is kept, and may ask you for identification. The Systems Manager may ask you for your social security number but you are not obliged to present it and your request will not be denied simply because you do not provide it. The Systems Manager may, however, deny your request if he or she cannot determine that you are the person to whom the information pertains.

§ 102.35 How long will it take SBA to respond to my request?
The Systems Manager will respond within 10 working days.

§ 102.36 How will SBA respond to my request?
The Systems Manager will inform you that:
(a) Your request is denied, in which case he or she will set forth the reasons for denial and your rights to appeal; or
(b) Your request is granted and you may view your record, in which case he or she will set forth the time and date for you to review your record in the presence of an SBA employee; or
(c) Your request is granted and, unless you object, SBA will mail you a copy of your record. SBA will mail you your record only if it determines that there are no other reasonable means for you to obtain access to your record.

§ 102.37 How may I appeal a decision to deny me access to my records?
Your appeal should be in writing and should set forth any information you think would show that you should have access to your records.

§ 102.38 To whom should my appeal be addressed?
(a) Denial of a personnel file. Address an appeal of a denial of a request for a personnel file to the Office of Personnel Management, 1900 E Street NW., Washington, DC 20006.
(c) All other appeals. Appeal the denial of any other record to the PA Officer. See § 102.30.

§ 102.39 By when must I appeal to the Privacy Act Officer?
Your appeal must reach the PA Officer on or before 30 calendar days after the date the denial was issued. If your appeal is based on the failure of the Systems Manager to answer your request, your appeal must reach the PA Officer on or before 90 calendar days after the date by which the Systems Manager should have responded under § 102.35.

§ 102.40 When will SBA respond to my appeal?
The PA Officer will respond to you within 30 working days of the date when your appeal was received.

§ 102.41 How will SBA respond to my appeal?
The PA Officer will inform you that:
(a) Your request is denied, in which case the reasons for denial will be set forth along with your rights to judicial review of SBA’s decision; or
(b) Your request is granted and you may view your record, in which case the time and date for you to review your records in the presence of an SBA employee will be set forth; or
(c) Your request is granted and, unless you object, SBA will mail you a copy of your record. SBA will mail you your record only if it determines that there are no other reasonable means for you to obtain access to your record.

§ 102.42 How can I get SBA to amend a record kept on me?

You can petition to have records kept on you amended by writing to the Systems Manager who oversees the system of records in which the record you wish amended is kept. If you are unable to determine who that Systems Manager is, you may send your petition to the PA Officer, who will forward it to the right Systems Manager. See §102.30.

§ 102.43 What should my petition say?

Your petition should include the following:
(a) In what system of records the record you want amended is kept.
(b) What record you want amended.
(c) What specific information in that record you want amended.
(d) Why you want the record amended.
(e) Any information you have, including copies of evidence, which you think will persuade the Systems Manager to amend the record.
(f) What the record should say.

§ 102.44 For what reasons will SBA amend my record?

SBA seeks to maintain only accurate, complete, and up-to-date records which are relevant to accomplish some purpose required by law, regulation, or Executive Order of the President. There are four grounds for amending a record. They are:
(a) The record is not accurate.
(b) The record is not relevant to any legitimate SBA concern.
(c) The record is out-of-date. For example, there may have been events since the date of the record which have affected some of the information contained in the record.
(d) The record is incomplete. There may be additional information relevant to the material contained in the record.

§ 102.45 Will SBA ask me for more information after I make my request?

Perhaps, in which case the procedures of §102.34(c) shall apply.

§ 102.46 When will SBA respond to my request?

The Systems Manager will acknowledge receipt of your request within 10 working days and issue a written response within 30 working days.

§ 102.47 How will SBA respond to my request?

The Systems Manager will:
(a) Make the amendment you request, and send all individuals who had previously received a copy of that record a copy of the amended record; or
(b) Amend the record, in a different manner, sending all individuals who had previously received a copy of that record a copy of the amended record and, in addition, telling you why your request was not granted in full and what appeal rights you have; or
(c) Decline to amend the record, explaining why your request was not granted and telling you of your appeal rights.

§ 102.48 How do I appeal a refusal to amend a record kept on me?

Your appeal should be in writing and include the following:
(a) All of the information contained in your original request to amend the record;
(b) Any response of the Systems Manager, including any reasons for denying your request; and
(c) Any information you wish to submit in response to the Systems Manager’s findings.

§ 102.49 To whom should I address my appeal?

(a) Personnel file. Address your appeal to the Office of Personnel Management, 1900 E Street NW., Washington, DC 20006.
(b) Equal Employment Opportunity Complaint File. Address your appeal to the Equal Employment Opportunity
§ 102.50 By when must I submit my appeal?
Your appeal must be received by the PA Officer within 30 calendar days of the date the Systems Manager declined to amend your records, or within 90 calendar days of the date the Systems Manager should have responded under §102.46 if the Systems Manager did not so respond.

§ 102.51 By what standards will the Privacy Act Officer review my appeal?
The PA Officer will decide your appeal using the criteria of accuracy, relevance, timeliness, and completeness described in §102.44. The PA Officer will review all relevant information and may seek the views of other SBA personnel. The PA Officer may review information not available to or not used by the Systems Manager.

§ 102.52 When will SBA respond to my appeal?
The PA Officer will respond to your appeal within 30 working days of its receipt, unless the Administrator determines that unusual circumstances exist, in which case the PA Officer will notify you of the presence of these unusual circumstances within 30 working days of the date upon which he or she received your appeal, and will respond to your appeal within 60 working days of the date of receipt.

§ 102.53 How will SBA respond to my appeal?
The PA Officer will:
(a) Make the amendment you request, sending all individuals who had previously received a copy of that record a copy of the amended record; or
(b) Amend the record in a different manner; or decline to amend it at all:
(1) Sending all individuals who had previously received a copy of that record a copy of the amended record;
(2) Telling you why your request was not granted in full and that you can seek judicial review; and
(3) Marking the areas of dispute, including your statement of disagreement in the file, and, if appropriate, a concise statement of why SBA refused to amend the record as you requested, sending this material to all individuals who had previously received a copy of that record.

§ 102.54 How can I obtain judicial review of an SBA Privacy Act decision?
You may bring a civil action against SBA in a United States district court if the SBA:
(a) Makes a final determination not to provide you with access to or to amend your record in accordance with your request;
(b) Fails to maintain your records with such accuracy, relevance, timeliness and completeness as is necessary to assure fairness in any determination relating to the qualifications, character, rights, opportunities of, or benefits to you that may be made on the basis of such records, and consequently a determination is made which harms you; or
(c) Fails to comply with any other provisions of the PA (5 U.S.C. 552a) or the implementing regulations in this subpart, in such a way as to cause harm to you.

§ 102.55 What must SBA tell the individuals from whom it collects information?
When SBA collects information from an individual, it must, either on the form which collects the information or on a separate form which the individual may keep, state:
(a) Whether disclosure of the information is voluntary or mandatory;
(b) By what authority SBA is collecting the information;
(c) For what principal purpose or purposes SBA is collecting the information;
(d) What routine uses might be made of that information; and
(e) What will happen if the information isn’t supplied.

§ 102.56 Will SBA release my name or address?
No, unless compelled to by law.
§ 102.57 Do I have to give SBA my SSN?
(a) No. You need not give SBA your SSN, even if SBA asks for it.
(b) If SBA asks you for your SSN, it must tell you under what authority it seeks your SSN, and for what purpose.
(c) SBA cannot withhold a benefit solely because you refuse to tell it your SSN.

§ 102.58 When will SBA show personnel records to a representative?
(a) If you go to where the records are kept, SBA will permit one person of your choosing to inspect the records with you.
(b) If you want your representative to inspect the records without you, you must give SBA a written authorization.
(c) SBA will mail a copy of the record to your representative if you direct SBA to do so in writing.
(d) You may inspect the records of a minor if you present evidence that you are the custodial parent (including joint custodial parent) or legal guardian of that minor. An affidavit or declaration, signed by you under penalty of perjury, is normally sufficient evidence unless SBA has information to the contrary.
(e) You may inspect the records of an adult incompetent if you present evidence that you are the legal guardian of that person. A guardianship order is sufficient evidence of your guardianship. Other evidence may be considered.

§ 102.59 What fees will SBA charge me for my records?
SBA will charge you only for photocopying at the rate of 10 cents per page. SBA will not charge you for finding or reviewing your records. Fees less than $25 will be waived.

§ 102.60 May I be informed of disclosures made of my records?
SBA will tell you what disclosures it made of your records if you ask, except that SBA will not tell you about disclosures it made to another federal agency or government entity for law enforcement purposes.

§ 102.61 Are there Matching Program procedures?
(a) SBA will comply with the Computer Matching and Privacy Protection Act of 1988 (5 U.S.C. 552a, 552a notes). This Act establishes procedures federal agencies must use if they want to match their computer lists.
(b) If SBA adopts any procedures to supplement its compliance with the Computer Matching and Privacy Protection Act of 1988 which are not mandated in that Act, SBA will publish those procedures in Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) 40 04. You can get a copy of SOP 40 04 at any SBA Office.
(c) If SBA enters into an agreement with any federal agency, contractor of any federal agency, state or local government, or agency of any state or local government to disclose records for purposes of a computer matching program, SBA will make a copy of that agreement available to the general public. You can get a copy of any such agreement by writing to the Privacy Act Officer.

PART 103—STANDARDS FOR CONDUCTING BUSINESS WITH SBA

103.1 Key definitions.
103.2 Who may conduct business with SBA?
103.3 May SBA suspend or revoke an Agent’s privilege?
103.4 What is “good cause” for suspension or revocation?
103.5 How does SBA regulate an Agent’s fees and provision of service?

SOURCE: 61 FR 2681, Jan. 29, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 103.1 Key definitions.
(a) Agent means an authorized representative, including an attorney, accountant, consultant, packager, lender service provider, or any other person representing an applicant or participant by conducting business with SBA.
(b) The term conduct business with SBA means:
(1) Preparing or submitting on behalf of an applicant an application for financial assistance of any kind, assistance from the Investment Division of
§ 103.2 Who may conduct business with SBA?

(a) If you are an Applicant, a Participant, a partner of an Applicant or Participant partnership, or serve as an officer of an Applicant, Participant corporation, or limited liability company, you may conduct business with SBA without a representative.

(b) If you are an Agent, you may conduct business with SBA on behalf of an Applicant, Participant or lender, unless representation is otherwise prohibited by law or the regulations in this part or any other part in this chapter. For example, persons debarred under the SBA or Government-wide debarment regulations may not conduct business with SBA. SBA may request that any Agent supply written evidence of his or her authority to act on behalf of an Applicant, Participant, or lender as a condition of revealing any information about the Applicant’s, Participant’s, or lender’s current or prior dealings with SBA.

§ 103.3 May SBA suspend or revoke an Agent’s privilege?

The Administrator of SBA or designee may, for good cause, suspend or revoke the privilege of any Agent to conduct business with SBA. Part 134 of this chapter states the procedures for appealing the decision to suspend or revoke the privilege. The suspension or revocation remains in effect during the pendency of any administrative proceedings under part 134 of this chapter.

§ 103.4 What is “good cause” for suspension or revocation?

Any unlawful or unethical activity is good cause for suspension or revocation of the privilege to conduct business. This includes:

(a) Attempting to influence any employee of SBA or a lender, by gifts, bribes or other unlawful or unethical activity, with respect to any matter involving SBA assistance.

(b) Soliciting for the provision of services to an Applicant by another entity when there is an undisclosed business relationship between the two parties.

(c) Violating ethical guidelines which govern the profession or business of the Agent or which are published at any time by SBA.

(d) Implying or stating that the work to be performed for an Applicant will include use of political or other special influence with SBA. Examples include indicating that the entity is affiliated with or paid, endorsed or employed by SBA, advertising using the words Small Business Administration or SBA in a manner that implies SBA’s endorsement or sponsorship, use of SBA’s seal or symbol, and giving a “guaranty” to
Small Business Administration

an Applicant that the application will be approved.

(e) Charging or proposing to charge any fee that does not bear a necessary and reasonable relationship to the services actually rendered or expenses actually incurred in connection with a matter before SBA or which is materially inconsistent with the provisions of an applicable compensation agreement or Lender Service Provider agreement. A fee based solely on a percentage of a loan or guarantee amount can be reasonable, depending on the circumstances of a case and the services actually rendered.

(f) Engaging in any conduct indicating a lack of business integrity or business honesty, including debarment, criminal conviction, or civil judgment within the last seven years for fraud, embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, false statements, conspiracy, receiving stolen property, false claims, or obstruction of justice.

(g) Acting as both a Lender Service Provider or Referral Agent and a Packager for an Applicant on the same SBA business loan and receiving compensation for such activity from both the Applicant and lender. A limited exception to this “two master” prohibition exists when an Agent acts as a Packager and is compensated by the Applicant for packaging services; also acts as a Referral Agent and is compensated by the lender for those activities; discloses the referral activities to the Applicant; and discloses the packaging activities to the lender.

(h) Violating materially the terms of any compensation agreement or Lender Service Provider agreement provided for in §103.5.

(i) Violating or assisting in the violation of any SBA regulations, policies, or procedures of which the Applicant has been made aware.

§103.5 How does SBA regulate an Agent’s fees and provision of service?

(a) Any Applicant, Agent, or Packager must execute and provide to SBA a compensation agreement, and any Lender Service Provider must execute and provide to SBA a Lender Service Provider agreement. Each agreement governs the compensation charged for services rendered or to be rendered to the Applicant or lender in any matter involving SBA assistance. SBA provides the form of compensation agreement and a suggested form of Lender Service Provider agreement to be used by Agents.

(b) Compensation agreements must provide that in cases where SBA deems the compensation unreasonable, the Agent or Packager must: reduce the charge to an amount SBA deems reasonable, refund any sum in excess of the amount SBA deems reasonable to the Applicant, and refrain from charging or collecting, directly or indirectly, from the Applicant an amount in excess of the amount SBA deems reasonable.

(c) Each Lender Service Provider must enter into a written agreement with each lender for whom it acts in that capacity. SBA will review all such agreements. Such agreements need not contain each and every provision found in the SBA’s suggested form of agreement. However, each agreement must indicate that both parties agree not to engage in any sharing of secondary market premiums, that the services to be provided are accurately described, and that the agreement is otherwise consistent with SBA requirements. Subject to the prohibition on splitting premiums, lenders have reasonable discretion in setting compensation for Lender Service Providers. However, such compensation may not be directly charged to an Applicant or borrower.

PART 105—STANDARDS OF CONDUCT AND EMPLOYEE RESTRICTIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES

STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

Sec. 105.101 Cross-reference to employee ethical conduct standards and financial disclosure regulations.

RESTRICTIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES RELATED TO SBA EMPLOYERS AND FORMER EMPLOYEES

105.201 Definitions.

105.202 Employment of former employee by person previously the recipient of SBA Assistance.

105.203 SBA Assistance to person employing former SBA employee.
§ 105.101 Cross-reference to employee ethical conduct standards and financial disclosure regulations.

In addition to this part, Small Business Administration (SBA) employees should refer to the Uniform Standards of Ethical Conduct for Executive Branch employees at 5 CFR part 2635, the SBA Supplemental Standards of Ethical Conduct at 5 CFR chapter XLIV, and the Uniform Financial Disclosure regulation for Executive Branch employees at 5 CFR part 2634.

RESTRICTIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES RELATED TO SBA EMPLOYEES AND FORMER EMPLOYEES

§ 105.201 Definitions.

(a) Employee means an officer or employee of the SBA regardless of grade, status or place of employment, including employees on leave with pay or on leave without pay other than those on extended military leave. Unless stated otherwise, Employee shall include those within the category of Special Government Employee.

(b) Special Government Employee means an officer or employee of SBA, who is retained, appointed or employed to perform temporary duties on a full-time or intermittent basis, with or without compensation, for not to exceed 130 days during any period of 365 consecutive days.

(c) Person means an individual, a corporation, a company, an association, a firm, a partnership, a society, a joint stock company, or any other organization or institution.

(d) Household member means spouse and minor children of an employee, all blood relations of the employee and any spouse who resides in the same place of abode with the employee.

(e) SBA Assistance means financial, contractual, grant, managerial or other aid, including size determinations, section 8(a) participation, licensing, certification, and other eligibility determinations made by SBA. The term also includes an express decision to compromise or defer possible litigation or other adverse action.

§ 105.202 Employment of former employee by person previously the recipient of SBA Assistance.

(a) No former employee, who occupied a position involving discretion over, or who exercised discretion with respect to, the granting or administration of SBA Assistance may occupy a position as employee, partner, agent, attorney or other representative of a concern which has received this SBA Assistance for a period of two years following the date of granting or administering such SBA Assistance if—

1. The date of granting or administering such SBA Assistance was within the period of the employee’s term of employment; or

2. The date of granting or administering such SBA Assistance was within one year following the termination of such employment.

(b) Failure of a recipient of SBA Assistance to comply with these provisions may result, in the discretion of SBA, in the requirement for immediate repayment of SBA financial Assistance for a period of two years following the date of granting or administering such SBA Assistance if—

1. The date of granting or administering such SBA Assistance was within the period of the employee’s term of employment; or

2. The date of granting or administering such SBA Assistance was within one year following the termination of such employment.

§ 105.203 SBA Assistance to person employing former SBA employee.

(a) SBA will not provide SBA Assistance to any person who has, as an employee, owner, partner, attorney, agent, owner of stock, officer, director,
creditor or debtor, any individual who, within one year prior to the request for such SBA Assistance was an SBA employee, without the prior approval of the SBA Standards of Conduct Counselor. The Standards of Conduct Counselor will refer matters of a controversial nature to the Standards of Conduct Committee for final decision; otherwise, his or her decision is final.

(b) In reviewing requests for approval, the Standards of Conduct Counselor will consider:

(1) The relationship of the former employee with the applicant concern;
(2) The nature of the SBA Assistance requested;
(3) The position held by the former employee with SBA and its relationship to the SBA Assistance requested; and
(4) Whether an apparent conflict of interest might exist if the SBA Assistance were granted.

§ 105.204 Assistance to SBA employees or members of their household.

Without the prior written approval of the Standards of Conduct Committee, no SBA Assistance, other than Disaster loans under subparagraphs (1) and (2) of section 7(b) of the Small Business Act, shall be furnished to a person when the sole proprietor, partner, officer, director or significant stockholder of the person is an SBA employee or a household member.

§ 105.205 Duty to report irregularities.

Every employee shall immediately report to the SBA Inspector General any acts of malfeasance or misfeasance or other irregularities, either actual or suspected, arising in connection with the performance by SBA of any of its official functions.

§ 105.206 Applicable rules and directions.

Every employee shall follow all agency rules, regulations, operating procedures, instructions and other proper directions in the performance of his official functions.

§ 105.207 Politically motivated activities with respect to the Minority Small Business Program.

(a) Any employee who has authority to take, direct others to take, recommend, or approve any action with respect to any program or activity conducted pursuant to section 8(a) or section 7(j) of the Small Business Act, shall not, with respect to any such action, exercise or threaten to exercise such authority on the basis of the political activity or affiliation of any party. Employees shall expeditiously report to the SBA Inspector General any such action for which such employee’s participation has been solicited or directed.

(b) Any employee who willfully and knowingly violates this section shall be subject to disciplinary action, which may consist of separation from service, reduction in grade, suspension, or reprimand.

(c) This section shall not apply to any action taken as a penalty or other enforcement of a violation of any law, rule, or regulation prohibiting or restricting political activity.

(d) The prohibitions in and remedial measures provided for under this section with regard to such prohibitions, shall be in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other prohibitions, measures or liabilities that may arise under any other provision of law.

§ 105.208 Penalties.

Any employee guilty of violating any of the provisions in this part may be disciplined, including removal or suspension from SBA employment.

REstrictions on SBA Assistance to Other Individuals

§ 105.301 Assistance to officers or employees of other Government organizations.

(a) SBA must receive a written statement of no objection by the pertinent Department or military service before it gives any SBA Assistance, other than Disaster loans under subparagraphs (1) and (2) of section 7(b) of the Small Business Act, to a person when
§ 105.302 Assistance to employees or members of quasi-Government organizations.

(a) The Standards of Conduct Committee must approve SBA Assistance, other than disaster loans under subparagraphs (1) and (2) of section 7(b) of the Small Business Act, to a person if its sole proprietor, general partner, officer, director or stockholder with a 10 percent or more interest (or a household member of such individuals) is a member of Congress or an appointed official or employee of the legislative or judicial branch of the Government.

(b) The Standards of Conduct Committee must approve an SBA contract with an entity if a sole proprietor, general partner, officer, director, or stockholder with a 10 or more percent interest (or a household member of such individuals) is an employee of a Government Department or Agency. See also 48 CFR part 35, subpart 3.6.

(c) The Standards of Conduct Committee must approve SBA Assistance, other than disaster loans under subparagraphs (1) and (2) of section 7(b) of the Small Business Act, to a person if its sole proprietor, general partner, officer, director or stockholder with a 10 percent or more interest (or a household member of such individual) is a member or employee of a Small Business Advisory Council or is a SCORE volunteer.

(b) In reviewing requests for approval, factors the Standards of Conduct Committee may consider include whether the granting of the SBA Assistance might result in or create the appearance of giving preferential treatment, the loss of complete independence or impartiality, or adversely affect the confidence of the public in the integrity of the Government.

§ 105.401 Standards of Conduct Committee.

(a) The Standards of Conduct Committee will:

(1) Advise and give direction to SBA management officials concerning the administration of this part and any other rules, regulations or directives dealing with conflicts of interest and ethical standards of SBA employees; and

(2) Make decisions on specific requests when its approval is required.

(b) The Standards of Conduct Committee will consist of:

(1) The General Counsel or, in his or her absence, the Deputy General Counsel or, in his or her absence, the Acting General Counsel who shall act as Chairman of the Committee;

(2) The Associate Deputy Administrator for Management and Administration, or in his or her absence, the Assistant Administrator for Administration; and

(3) The Director of Human Resources, or in his or her absence, the Deputy Director of Human Resources.

§ 105.402 Standards of Conduct Counselors.

(a) The SBA Standards of Conduct Counselor is the Designated Agency Ethics Official, as appointed by the Administrator. Assistant Standards of Conduct Counselors may be designated by the Standards of Conduct Counselor.

(b) The Standards of Conduct Counselors and Assistants:

(1) Provide general advice, assistance and guidance to employees concerning this part and the regulations referred to in §105.101;

(2) Monitor the Standards of Conduct Program within their assigned areas and provide required reports thereon;

(3) Review Confidential Financial Disclosure Reports as required under 5 CFR part 2634, subpart I, and provide an annual report on compliance with filing requirements to the SBA Standards of Conduct Counselor as of February 1 of each year; and

(4) Provide Outside Employment decisions pursuant to 5 CFR 5401.104.

(c) Each employee will be periodically informed of the name, address and telephone number of the Assistant Standards of Conduct Counselor to contact for advice and assistance.
Small Business Administration

(d) Employee requests for advice or rulings should be directed to the appropriate Standards of Conduct Counselor for appropriate action.


§ 105.403 Designated Agency Ethics Officials.

The Designated Agency Ethics Official and Alternates administer the program for Financial Disclosure Statements under 5 CFR 2634.201, receive and evaluate these statements, and provide advice and counsel regarding matters relating to the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 and its implementing regulations. The duties and responsibilities of the Designated Agency Ethics Official and Alternates are set forth in more detail in 5 CFR 2638.203, which is promulgated and amended by the Office of Government Ethics.


PART 107—SMALL BUSINESS INVESTMENT COMPANIES

Subpart A—Introduction to Part 107

Sec.
107.20 Legal basis and applicability of this part 107.
107.30 Amendments to Act and regulations.
107.40 How to read this part 107.

Subpart B—Definition of Terms Used in Part 107

107.50 Definition of terms.

Subpart C—Qualifying for an SBIC License

ORGANIZING AN SBIC

107.100 Organizing a Section 301(c) Licensee.
107.115 1940 Act and 1980 Act Companies.
107.120 Special rules for a Section 301(d) Licensee owned by another Licensee.
107.130 Requirement for qualified management.
107.140 SBA approval of initial Management Expenses.
107.150 Management-ownership diversity requirement.
107.160 Special rules for Licensees formed as limited partnerships.

CAPITALIZING AN SBIC

107.200 Adequate capital for Licensees.
107.210 Minimum capital requirements for Licensees.

107.230 Permitted sources of Private Capital for Licensees.
107.240 Limitations on including non-cash capital contributions in Private Capital.
107.250 Exclusion of stock options issued by Licensee from Management Expenses.

APPLYING FOR AN SBIC LICENSE

107.300 License application form and fee.

Subpart D—Changes in Ownership, Control, or Structure of Licensee; Transfer of License

CHANGES IN CONTROL OR OWNERSHIP OF LICENSEE

107.400 Changes in ownership of 10 percent or more of Licensee but no change of Control.
107.410 Changes in Control of Licensee (through change in ownership or otherwise).
107.420 Prohibition on exercise of ownership or Control rights in Licensee before SBA approval.
107.430 Notification to SBA of transactions that may change ownership or Control.
107.440 Standards governing prior SBA approval for a proposed transfer of Control.
107.450 Notification to SBA of pledge of Licensee’s shares.

RESTRICTIONS ON COMMON CONTROL OR OWNERSHIP OF TWO OR MORE LICENSEES

107.460 Restrictions on Common Control or ownership of two (or more) Licensees.

CHANGE IN STRUCTURE OF LICENSEE

107.470 SBA approval of merger, consolidation, or reorganization of Licensee.

TRANSFER OF LICENSE

107.475 Transfer of license.

Subpart E—Managing the Operations of a Licensee

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

107.500 Lawful operations under the Act.
107.501 Identification as a Licensee.
107.502 Representations to the public.
107.503 Licensee’s adoption of an approved Valuation Policy.
107.504 Equipment and office requirements.
107.505 Facsimile requirement.
107.506 Safeguarding Licensee’s assets/Internal controls.
107.507 Violations based on false filings and nonperformance of agreements with SBA.
107.509 Employment of SBA officials.

MANAGEMENT AND COMPENSATION

107.510 SBA approval of Licensee’s Investment Adviser/Manager.
107.520 Management Expenses of a Licensee.

CASH MANAGEMENT BY A LICENSEE
107.530 Restrictions on investments of idle funds by leveraged Licensees.

BORROWING BY LICENSEES FROM NON-SBA SOURCES
107.550 Prior approval of secured third-party debt of leveraged Licensees.
107.560 Subordination of SBA’s creditor position.
107.570 Restrictions on third-party debt of issuers of Participating Securities.

VOLUNTARY DECREASE IN LICENSEE’S REGULATORY CAPITAL
107.585 Voluntary decrease in Licensee’s Regulatory Capital.

REQUIREMENT TO CONDUCT ACTIVE INVESTMENT OPERATIONS
107.590 Licensee’s requirement to maintain active operations.

Subpart F—Recordkeeping, Reporting, and Examination Requirements for Licensees

RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS FOR LICENSEES
107.600 General requirement for Licensee to maintain and preserve records.
107.610 Required certifications for Loans and Investments.
107.620 Requirements to obtain information from Portfolio Concerns.

REPORTING REQUIREMENTS FOR LICENSEES
107.630 Requirement for Licensees to file financial statements with SBA (Form 468).
107.640 Requirement to file Portfolio Financing Reports (SBA Form 1031).
107.650 Requirement to report portfolio valuations to SBA.
107.660 Other items required to be filed by Licensee with SBA.
107.670 Application for exemption from civil penalty for late filing of reports.
107.680 Reporting changes in Licensee not subject to prior SBA approval.

EXAMINATIONS OF LICENSEES BY SBA FOR REGULATORY COMPLIANCE
107.690 Examinations.
107.691 Responsibilities of Licensee during examination.
107.692 Examination fees.

Subpart G—Financing of Small Businesses by Licensees

DETERMINING THE ELIGIBILITY OF A SMALL BUSINESS FOR SBIC FINANCING
107.700 Compliance with size standards in part 121 of this chapter as a condition of Assistance.
107.710 Requirement to finance smaller enterprises.
107.720 Small Businesses that may be ineligible for financing.
107.730 Financings which constitute conflicts of interest.
107.740 Portfolio diversification (“overline” limitation).
107.750 Conditions for financing a change of ownership of a Small Business.
107.760 How a change in size or activity of a Portfolio Concern affects the Licensee and the Portfolio Concern.

STRUCTURING LICENSEE’S FINANCING OF ELIGIBLE SMALL BUSINESSES: TYPES OF FINANCING
107.800 Financings in the form of Equity Securities.
107.810 Financings in the form of Loans.
107.815 Financings in the form of Debt Securities.
107.820 Financings in the form of guarantees.
107.825 Purchasing securities from an underwriter or other third party.

STRUCTURING LICENSEE’S FINANCING OF AN ELIGIBLE SMALL BUSINESS: TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF FINANCING
107.830 Minimum duration/term of financing.
107.835 Exceptions to minimum duration/term of Financing.
107.840 Maximum term of financing.
107.845 Maximum rate of amortization on Loans and Debt Securities.
107.850 Restrictions on redemption of Equity Securities.
107.855 Interest rate ceiling and limitations on fees charged to small businesses (“Cost of Money”).
107.860 Financing fees and expense reimbursements a Licensee may receive from a small business.
107.865 Restrictions on control of a small business by a Licensee.
107.880 Assets acquired in liquidation of Portfolio securities.

LIMITATIONS ON DISPOSITION OF ASSETS
107.885 Disposition of assets to Licensee’s Associates or to competitors of Portfolio Concern.
Small Business Administration

Management Services and Fees

107.900 Management fees for services provided to a Small Business by Licensee or its Associate.

Subpart H—Non-leveraged Licensees-Exceptions to Regulations

107.1000 Licensees without leverage—exceptions to the regulations.

Subpart I—SBA Financial Assistance for Licensees (Leverage)

General Information about Obtaining Leverage

107.1100 Types of Leverage and application procedures.
107.1120 General eligibility requirements for Leverage.
107.1130 Licensee's acceptance of SBA remedies under §§107.1600 through 107.1620.

Maximum Amount of Leverage For Which a Licensee is Eligible

107.1150 Maximum amount of Leverage for a Section 301(c) Licensee.
107.1160 Maximum amount of Leverage for a Section 301(d) Licensee.
107.1170 Maximum amount of Participating Securities for any Licensee.

Conditional Commitments by SBA to Reserve Leverage for a Licensee

107.1200 SBA’s Leverage commitment to a Licensee—application procedure, amount, and term.
107.1210 Payment of leverage fee upon receipt of commitment.
107.1220 Requirement for Licensee to file quarterly financial statements.
107.1230 Draw-downs by Licensee under SBA’s Leverage commitment.
107.1240 Funding of Licensee’s draw request through sale to short-term investor.

Preferred Securities Leverage—Section 301(d) Licensees

107.1400 Dividends or partnership distributions on 4 percent Preferred Securities.
107.1410 Requirement to redeem 4 percent Preferred Securities.
107.1420 Articles requirements for 4 percent Preferred Securities.
107.1430 Redeeming 4 percent Preferred Securities with proceeds of non-subsidized Debentures.
107.1440 Three percent preferred stock issued before November 21, 1989.
107.1450 Optional redemption of Preferred Securities.

Participating Securities Leverage

107.1500 General description of Participating Securities.
107.1505 Liquidity requirements for Licensees issuing Participating Securities.
107.1510 How a Licensee computes Earmarked Profit (Loss).
107.1520 How a Licensee computes and allocates Prioritized Payments to SBA.
107.1530 How a Licensee computes SBA’s Profit Participation.
107.1540 Distributions by Licensee—Prioritized Payments and Adjustments.
107.1550 Distributions by Licensee—permitted “tax Distributions” to private investors and SBA.
107.1560 Distributions by Licensee—required Distributions to private investors and SBA.
107.1570 Distributions by Licensee—optional Distributions to private investors and SBA.
107.1575 Distributions on other than Payment Dates.
107.1580 Special rules for In-Kind Distributions by Licensees.
107.1590 Special rules for companies licensed on or before March 31, 1993.

Funding Leverage By Use of SBA-Guaranteed Trust Certificates (“TCS”)

107.1600 SBA authority to issue and guarantee Trust Certificates.
107.1610 Effect of prepayment or early redemption of Leverage on a Trust Certificate.
107.1620 Functions of agents, including Central Registration Agent, Selling Agent and Fiscal Agent.
107.1629 SBA regulation of Brokers and Dealers and disclosure to purchasers of Leverage or Trust Certificates.
107.1640 SBA access to records of the CRA, Brokers, Dealers and Pool or Trust assemblers.

Miscellaneous

107.1700 Transfer by SBA of its interest in Licensee’s Leverage security.
107.1710 SBA authority to collect or compromise its claims.
107.1720 Characteristics of SBA’s guarantee.

Subpart J—Licensee’s Noncompliance With Terms of Leverage

107.1800 Licensee’s agreement to terms and conditions in §§107.1810 and 107.1820.
107.1810 Events of default and SBA’s remedies for Licensee’s noncompliance with terms of Debentures.
107.1820 Conditions affecting issuers of Preferred Securities and/or Participating Securities.
§ 107.20 Legal basis and applicability of this part 107.

(a) The regulations in this part implement Title III of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended. All Licensees must comply with all applicable regulations, accounting guidelines and valuation guidelines for Licensees.

(b) Provisions of this part which are not mandated by the Act shall not supersede existing State law. A party claiming that a conflict exists shall submit an opinion of independent counsel, citing authorities, for SBA's resolution of the issues involved.

§ 107.30 Amendments to Act and regulations.

A Licensee shall be subject to all existing and future provisions of the Act and parts 107 and 112 of title 13 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

§ 107.40 How to read this part 107.

(a) Center Headings. All references in this part to SBA forms, and instructions for their preparation, are to the current issue of such forms. Center headings are descriptive and are used for convenience only. They have no regulatory effect.

(b) Capitalizing defined terms. Terms defined in §107.50 are capitalized in this part 107.

(c) The pronoun “you” as used in this part 107 means a Licensee or license applicant, as appropriate, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart B—Definition of Terms Used in Part 107

§ 107.50 Definition of terms.

Accumulated Prioritized Payments has the meaning set forth in §107.1520. Act means the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended. Adjustments has the meaning set forth in §107.1520. Affiliate or Affiliates has the meaning set forth in §121.103 of this chapter. Articles mean articles of incorporation or charter for a Corporate Licensee and the partnership agreement or certificate for a Partnership Licensee. Assistance or Assisted means Financing of or management services rendered to a Small Business by a Licensee pursuant to the Act and these regulations. Associate of a Licensee means any of the following:

(1)(i) An officer, director, employee or agent of a Corporate Licensee;
(2) Any Person who owns or controls, or who has entered into an agreement to own or control, directly or indirectly, at least 10 percent of any class of stock of a Corporate Licensee or a limited partner’s interest of at least 10 percent of the partnership capital of a Partnership Licensee. However, a limited partner in a Partnership Licensee is not considered an Associate if such
Person is an entity Institutional Investor whose investment in the Partnership, including commitments, represents no more than 33 percent of the partnership capital of the Licensee and no more than five percent of such Person’s net worth.

(3) Any officer, director, partner (other than a limited partner), manager, agent, or employee of any Associate described in paragraph (1) or (2) of this definition.

(4) Any Person that directly or indirectly Controls, or is Controlled by, or is under Common Control with, a Licensee.

(5) Any Person that directly or indirectly Controls, or is Controlled by, or is under Common Control with, any Person described in paragraphs (1) and (2) of this definition.

(6) Any Close Relative of any Person described in paragraphs (1), (2), (4), and (5) of this definition.

(7) Any Secondary Relative of any Person described in paragraphs (1), (2), (4), and (5) of this definition.

(8) Any concern in which—

(i) Any person described in paragraphs (1) through (6) of this definition is an officer; general partner, or managing member; or

(ii) Any such Person(s) singly or collectively Control or own, directly or indirectly, an equity interest of at least 10 percent (excluding interests that such Person(s) own indirectly through ownership interests in the Licensee).

(9) Any concern in which any Person(s) described in paragraph (7) of this definition singly or collectively own (including beneficial ownership) a majority equity interest, or otherwise have Control, as used in this paragraph (9), “collectively” means together with any Person(s) described in paragraphs (1) through (7) of this definition.

(10) For the purposes of this definition, if any Associate relationship described in paragraphs (1) through (7) of this definition exists at any time within six months before or after the date that a Licensee provides Financing, then that Associate relationship is considered to exist on the date of the Financing.

(11) If any Licensee has any ownership interest in another Licensee, the two Licensees are Associates of each other.

Capital Impairment has the meaning set forth in §107.1830(c).

Central Registration Agent or CRA means one or more agents appointed by SBA for the purpose of issuing TCs and performing the functions enumerated in §107.1620 and performing similar functions for Debentures and Participating Securities funded outside the pooling process.

Charge means an annual fee on Leverage issued on or after October 1, 1996 (except for Leverage issued pursuant to a commitment made by SBA before October 1, 1996), which is payable to SBA by Licensees, subject to the terms and conditions set forth in §107.1130(d).

Close Relative of an individual means:

(1) A current or former spouse;

(2) A father, mother, guardian, brother, sister, son, daughter; or


Combined Capital means the sum of Regulatory Capital and outstanding Leverage.

Commitment means a written agreement between a Licensee and an eligible Small Business that obligates the Licensee to provide Financing (except a guarantee) to that Small Business in a fixed or determinable sum, by a fixed or determinable future date. In this context the term “agreement” means that there has been agreement on the principal economic terms of the Financing. The agreement may include reasonable conditions precedent to the Licensee’s obligation to fund the commitment, but these conditions must be outside the Licensee’s control.

Common Control means a condition where two or more Persons, either through ownership, management, contract, or otherwise, are under the Control of one group or Person. Two or more Licensees are presumed to be under Common Control if they are Affiliates of each other by reason of common ownership or common officers, directors, or general partners; or if they are managed or their investments are significantly directed either by a common independent investment advisor or managerial contractor, or by two or more such advisors or contractors that
are Affiliates of each other. This presumption may be rebutted by evidence satisfactory to SBA.

Control means the possession, direct or indirect, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of a Licensee or other concern, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract, or otherwise.

Control Person means any Person that controls a Licensee, either directly or through an intervening entity. A Control Person includes:

(1) A general partner of a Partnership Licensee;

(2) Any Person serving as the general partner, officer, director, or manager (in the case of a limited liability company) of any entity that controls a Licensee, either directly or through an intervening entity;

(3) Any Person that—
   (i) Controls or owns, directly or through an intervening entity, at least 10 percent of a Partnership Licensee or any entity described in paragraphs (1) or (2) of this definition; and
   (ii) Participates in the investment decisions of the general partner of such Partnership Licensee;

(4) Any Person that controls or owns, directly or through an intervening entity, at least 50 percent of a Partnership Licensee or any entity described in paragraphs (1) or (2) of this definition.

Corporate Licensee. See definition of Licensee in this section.

Cost of Money has the meaning set forth in §107.855.

Debenture Rate means the interest rate, as published from time to time in the Federal Register by SBA, for ten year Debentures issued by Licensees and funded through public sales of certificates bearing SBA’s guarantee. User or guarantee fees, if any, paid by a Licensee are not considered in determining the Debenture Rate.

Debentures means debt obligations issued by Licensees pursuant to section 303(a) of the Act and held or guaranteed by SBA.

Debt Securities has the meaning set forth in §107.815.

Disadvantaged Business means a Small Business that is at least 50 percent owned, and controlled and managed, on a day to day basis, by a person or persons whose participation in the free enterprise system is hampered because of social or economic disadvantages.

Distributable Securities means equity securities that are determined by SBA (with the advice of a third party expert in the marketing of securities) to meet each of the following requirements:

(1) The securities (which may include securities that are salable pursuant to the provisions of Rule 144 (17 CFR 230.144) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended) are salable immediately without restriction under Federal and state securities laws;

(2) The securities are of a class:
   (i) Which is listed and registered on a national securities exchange, or
   (ii) For which quotation information is disseminated in the National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation System and as to which transaction reports and last sale data are disseminated pursuant to Rule 11Aa3-1 (17 CFR 240.11Aa3-1) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended; and

(3) The quantity of such securities to be distributed to SBA can be sold over a reasonable period of time without having an adverse impact upon the price of the security.

Distribution means any transfer of cash or non-cash assets to SBA, its agent or Trustee, or to partners in a Partnership Licensee, or to shareholders in a Corporate Licensee. Capitalization of Retained Earnings Available for Distribution constitutes a Distribution to the Licensee’s non-SBA partners or shareholders.

Earmarked Assets has the meaning set forth in §107.1510(b). (See also §107.1590.)

Earmarked Profit (Loss) has the meaning set forth in §107.1510.

Earned Prioritized Payments has the meaning set forth in §107.1520.

Equity Capital Investments means investments in a Small Business in the form of common or preferred stock, limited partnership interests, options, warrants, or similar equity instruments, including subordinated debt with equity features if such debt provides only for interest payments contingent upon and limited to the extent
of earnings. Equity Capital Investments must not require amortization. Equity Capital Investments may be guaranteed; however, neither Equity Capital Investments nor such guarantee may be collateralized or otherwise secured. Investments classified as Debt Securities (see §§107.800 and 107.815) are not precluded from qualifying as Equity Capital Investments.

Equity Securities has the meaning set forth in §107.800.

Financing or Financed means outstanding financial assistance provided to a Small Business by a Licensee, whether through:

(1) Loans;
(2) Debt Securities;
(3) Equity Securities;
(4) Guarantees; or
(5) Purchases of securities of a Small Business through or from an underwriter (see §107.825).

Guaranty Agreement means the contract entered into by SBA which is a guarantee backed by the full faith and credit of the United States Government as to timely payment of principal and interest on Debentures or the Redemption Price of and Prioritized Payments on Participating Securities and SBA’s rights in connection with such guarantee.

Includible Non-Cash Gains means those non-cash gains (as reported on SBA Form 468) that are realized in the form of Publicly Traded and Marketable securities or investment grade debt instruments. For purposes of this definition, investment grade debt instruments means those instruments that are rated “BBB” or “Baa”, or better, by Standard & Poor’s Corporation or Moody’s Investors Service, respectively. Non-rated debt may be considered to be investment grade if Licensee obtains a written opinion from an investment banking firm acceptable to SBA stating that the non-rated debt instrument is equivalent in risk to the issuer’s investment grade debt.

Institutional Investor means:

(1) Entities. Any of the following entities if the entity has a net worth (exclusive of unfunded commitments from investors) of at least $1 million, or such higher amount as is specified in paragraph (1) of this definition. (See also §107.230(b)(4) for limitations on the amount of an Institutional Investor’s commitment that may be included in Private Capital.)

(i) A State or National bank, trust company, savings bank, or savings and loan association.

(ii) An insurance company.

(iii) A 1940 Act Investment Company or Business Development Company (each as defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (15 U.S.C. 80–1 et seq.).

(iv) A holding company of any entity described in paragraph (1)(i), (ii) or (iii) of this definition.

(v) An employee benefit or pension plan established for the benefit of employees of the Federal government, any State or political subdivision of a State, or any agency or instrumentality of such government unit.


(vii) A trust, foundation or endowment exempt from Federal income taxation under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

(viii) A corporation, partnership or other entity with a net worth (exclusive of unfunded commitments from investors) of more than $10 million.

(ix) A State, a political subdivision of a State, or an agency or instrumentality of a State or its political subdivision.

(x) An entity whose primary purpose is to manage and invest non-Federal funds on behalf of at least three Institutional Investors described in paragraphs (1)(i) through (1)(ix) of this definition, each of whom must have at least a 10 percent ownership interest in the entity.

(xi) Any other entity that SBA determines to be an Institutional Investor.

(2) Individuals. (i) Any of the following individuals if he/she is also a permanent resident of the United States:

(A) An individual who is an Accredited Investor (as defined in the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (15 U.S.C. 77a–77aa)) and whose commitment to
§ 107.50

the Licensee is backed by a letter of credit from a State or National bank acceptable to SBA.

(B) An individual whose personal net worth is at least $2 million and at least ten times the amount of his or her commitment to the Licensee. The individual’s personal net worth must not include the value of any equity in his or her most valuable residence.

(C) An individual whose personal net worth (determined in accordance with paragraph (2)(i)(B) of this definition) is at least $10 million.

(ii) Any individual who is not a permanent resident of the United States but who otherwise satisfies paragraph (2)(i) of this definition provided such individual has irrevocably appointed an agent within the United States for the service of process.

Investment Adviser/Manager means any Person who furnishes advice or assistance with respect to operations of a Licensee under a written contract executed in accordance with the provisions of §107.510.

Lending Institution means a concern that is operating under regulations of a state or Federal licensing, supervising, or examining body, or whose shares are publicly traded and listed on a recognized stock exchange or NASDAQ and which has assets in excess of $500 million; and which, in either case, holds itself out to the public as engaged in the making of commercial and industrial loans and whose lending operations are not for the purpose of financing its own or an Associates’s sales or business operations.

Leverage means financial assistance provided to a Licensee by SBA, either through the purchase or guaranty of a Licensee’s Debentures or Participating Securities, or the purchase of a Licensee’s Preferred Securities, and any other SBA financial assistance evidenced by a security of the Licensee.

Leverageable Capital means Regulatory Capital, excluding unfunded commitments.

Licensee means either a corporation (Corporate Licensee), or a limited partnership organized pursuant to §107.160 (Partnership Licensee), to which a license has been granted pursuant to the Act. For certain purposes, the Entity General Partner of a Partnership Licensee is treated as if it were a Licensee (see §107.160(b)(2)).

LMI Enterprise means:

1. A Small Business that has at least 50% of its employees or tangible assets located in LMI Zone(s) or in which at least 35% of the full-time employees have primary residences in LMI Zone(s), in either case determined as of the time of application for SBIC financing; or

2. A Small Business that does not meet the requirements of paragraph (1) of this definition as of the time of application for SBIC financing but that certifies at such time that it intends to meet the requirements within 180 days after the closing of the SBIC financing. A Small Business qualifying under this paragraph (2) will no longer be an LMI Enterprise as of the 180th day after the closing of the SBIC financing unless, on or before such date, at least 50% of its employees or tangible assets are located in LMI Zones or at least 35% of its full-time employees have primary residences in LMI Zones.

LMI Investment means a financing of an LMI Enterprise, made after September 30, 1999, in the form of equity securities or debt securities that are junior to all existing or future secured borrowings of the business. The debt securities may be guaranteed and may be secured by the assets of the LMI Enterprise, but the guarantee may not be collateralized or otherwise secured.

LMI Zone means any area located within a HUBZone (as defined in 13 CFR 126.103), an Urban Empowerment Zone or Urban Enterprise Community (as designated by the Secretary of the Department of Housing and Urban Development), a Rural Empowerment Zone or Rural Enterprise Community (as designated by the Secretary of the Department of Agriculture), an area of Low Income or Moderate Income (as recognized by the Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council), or a county with Persistent Poverty (as classified by the Economic Research Service of the Department of Agriculture).

Loan has the meaning set forth in §107.810.

Loans and Investments means Portfolio Securities, Assets Acquired in
Liquidation of Portfolio Securities, Operating Concerns Acquired, and Notes and Other Securities Received, as set forth in the Statement of Financial Position of SBA Form 468.

Management Expenses has the meaning set forth in §107.520.

1940 Act Company means a Licensee which is registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940.

1980 Act Company means a Licensee which is registered under the Small Business Investment Incentive Act of 1980.

Original Issue Price means the price paid by the purchaser for securities at the time of issuance.

Participating Securities means preferred stock, preferred limited partnership interests, or similar instruments issued by Licensees, including debentures having interest payable only to the extent of earnings, all of which are subject to the terms set forth in §§107.1500 through 107.1590 and section 303(g) of the Act.

Partnership Licensee. See definition of Licensee in this section.

Payment Date means, for a Participating Securities issuer, each February 1, May 1, August 1, and November 1 during the term of a Participating Security.

Person means a natural person or legal entity.

Pool means an aggregation of SBA guaranteed Debentures or SBA guaranteed Participating Securities approved by SBA.

Portfolio means the securities representing a Licensee's total outstanding Financing of Small Businesses. It does not include idle funds or assets acquired in liquidation of Portfolio securities.

Portfolio Concern means a Small Business Assisted by a Licensee.

Preferred Securities means nonvoting preferred stock or nonvoting limited partnership interests issued to SBA prior to October 1, 1996, by a Section 301(d) Licensee. Such securities were issued at par value in the case of preferred stock, or at face value in the case of preferred limited partnership interests.

Prioritized Payments has the meaning set forth in §107.1520.

Private Capital has the meaning set forth in §107.230.

Profit Participation has the meaning set forth in §107.1500(c)(3).

Publicly Traded and Marketable means securities that are salable without restriction or that are salable within 12 months pursuant to Rule 144 (17 CFR 230.144) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, by the holder thereof (or in the case of an In-kind Distribution by the distributee thereof), and are of a class which is traded on a regulated stock exchange, or is listed in the Automated Quotation System of the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASDAQ), or has, at a minimum, at least two market makers as defined in the relevant sections of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (15 U.S.C. 77b et seq.), and in all cases the quantity of which can be sold over a reasonable period of time without having an adverse impact upon the price of the stock.

Qualified Non-private Funds has the meaning set forth in §107.230.

Redemption Price means the amount required to be paid by the issuer, or successor to the issuer, of Preferred or Participating Securities to repurchase such securities from the holder. The Redemption Price shall be the Original Issue Price less any prepayments or prior redemptions.

Regulatory Capital means:

(1) General. Regulatory Capital means Private Capital, excluding non-cash assets contributed to a Licensee or a license applicant, and non-cash assets purchased by a license applicant, unless such assets have been converted to cash or have been approved by SBA for inclusion in Regulatory Capital. For purposes of this definition, sales of contributed non-cash assets with recourse or borrowing against such assets shall not constitute a conversion to cash.

(2) Exclusion of questionable commitments. An investor's commitment to a Licensee is excluded from Regulatory Capital if SBA determines that the collectibility of the commitment is questionable.

Retained Earnings Available for Distribution means Undistributed Net Realized Earnings less any Unrealized Depreciation on Loans and Investments (as reported on SBA Form 468), and
§ 107.50

represents the amount that a Licensee may distribute to investors (including SBA) as a profit Distribution, or transfer to Private Capital.

SBA means the Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

Secondary Relative of an individual means:
(1) A grandparent, grandchild, or any other ancestor or lineal descendent who is not a Close Relative;
(2) An uncle, aunt, nephew, niece, or first cousin; or
(3) A spouse of any person described in paragraph (1) or (2) of this definition.

Section 301(c) Licensee has the meaning set forth in §107.100.

Section 301(d) Licensee means a company licensed prior to October 1, 1996 under section 301(d) of the Act as in effect on the date of licensing, that may provide Assistance only to Disadvantaged Businesses. A Section 301(d) Licensee may be organized as a for-profit corporation, as a non-profit corporation, or as a limited partnership.

Short-term Financing means Financing for a term of less than five years in accordance with the regulations.


Small Business means a small business concern as defined in section 103(5) of the Act (including its Affiliates), which for purposes of size eligibility, meets the applicable criteria set forth in part 121 of this chapter.

Smaller Enterprise has the meaning set forth in §107.710.

Start-up Financing means an Equity Capital Investment in a Small Business that—
(1) Has not had sales exceeding $3,000,000 or positive cash flow from operations in any of its last three full fiscal years; and
(2) Was not formed to acquire any existing business, unless the acquired business satisfies paragraphs (1) and (2) of this definition.

Temporary Debt has the meaning set forth in §107.570.

Trust means the legal entity created for the purpose of holding guaranteed Debentures or Participating Securities and the guaranty agreement related thereto, receiving, holding and making any related payments, and accounting for such payments.

Trust Certificate Rate means a fixed rate determined by the Secretary of the Treasury at the time Participating Securities or Debentures are pooled, taking into consideration the current average market yield on outstanding marketable obligations of the United States with maturities comparable to the maturities of the Trust Certificates being guaranteed by SBA, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth of one percent.

Trust Certificates (TCs) means certificates issued by SBA, its agent or Trustee and representing ownership of all or a fractional part of a Trust or Pool of Debentures or Participating Securities.

Trustee means the trustee or trustees of a Trust.

Undistributed Net Realized Earnings means Undistributed Realized Earnings less Non-cash Gains/Income, each as reported on SBA Form 468.

Unrealized Appreciation means the amount by which a Licensee’s valuation of each of its Loans and Investments, as determined by its Board of Directors or General Partner(s) in accordance with Licensee’s valuation policies, exceeds the cost basis thereof.

Unrealized Depreciation means the amount by which a Licensee’s valuation of each of its Loans and Investments, as determined by its Board of Directors or General Partner(s) in accordance with Licensee’s valuation policies, is below the cost basis thereof.

Unrealized Gain (Loss) on Securities Held means the sum of the Unrealized Appreciation and Unrealized Depreciation on all of a Licensee’s Loans and Investments, less estimated future income tax expense or estimated realizable future income tax benefit, as appropriate.

Venture Capital Financing has the meaning set forth in §107.1160.
§ 107.150 Management–ownership diversity requirement.

(a) Diversity requirement. You must satisfy the requirements in paragraphs (b), (c) and (d) of this section:

(1) In order to obtain an SBIC license (unless you do not plan to obtain Leverage),

(2) If at the time you were licensed you did not plan to obtain Leverage, but you now wish to be eligible for Leverage, or

(3) If SBA so requires as a condition of approval of your transfer of Control under §107.440.

(b) Percentage ownership requirement.

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, no Person or group of Persons who are Affiliates of one another may own or control, directly or indirectly, more than 70 percent of your Regulatory Capital or your Leverageable Capital.

(2) Exception. An investor that is a traditional investment company, as determined by SBA, may own and control more than 70 percent of your Regulatory Capital and your Leverageable Capital. For purposes of this section, a traditional investment company must be a professionally managed firm organized exclusively to pool capital from...

[63 FR 5865, Feb. 5, 1998]

§ 107.130 Requirement for qualified management.

When applying for a license, you must show, to the satisfaction of SBA, that your current or proposed management is qualified and has the knowledge, experience, and capability necessary for investing in the types of businesses contemplated by the Act, these regulations and your business plan. You must designate at least one individual as the official responsible for contact with SBA.

§ 107.140 SBA approval of initial Management Expenses.

If you plan to obtain Leverage, you must have your Management Expenses approved by SBA at the time of licensing. (See §107.520 for the definition of Management Expenses.)

§ 107.150 Management–ownership diversity requirement.

(a) Diversity requirement. You must satisfy the requirements in paragraphs (b), (c) and (d) of this section:

(1) In order to obtain an SBIC license (unless you do not plan to obtain Leverage),

(2) If at the time you were licensed you did not plan to obtain Leverage, but you now wish to be eligible for Leverage, or

(3) If SBA so requires as a condition of approval of your transfer of Control under §107.440.

(b) Percentage ownership requirement.

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, no Person or group of Persons who are Affiliates of one another may own or control, directly or indirectly, more than 70 percent of your Regulatory Capital or your Leverageable Capital.

(2) Exception. An investor that is a traditional investment company, as determined by SBA, may own and control more than 70 percent of your Regulatory Capital and your Leverageable Capital. For purposes of this section, a traditional investment company must be a professionally managed firm organized exclusively to pool capital from...

[63 FR 5865, Feb. 5, 1998]
more than one source for the purpose of investing in businesses that are expected to generate substantial returns to the firm’s investors. In determining whether a firm is a traditional investment company for purposes of this section, SBA will also consider:

(i) Whether the managers of the firm are unrelated to and unaffiliated with the investors in the firm;

(ii) Whether the managers of the firm are authorized and motivated to make investments that, in their independent judgment, are likely to produce significant returns to all investors in the firm;

(iii) Whether the firm benefits from the use of the SBIC only through the financial performance of the SBIC; and

(iv) Other related factors.

(c) Non-affiliation requirement. (1) General rule. At least 30 percent of your Regulatory Capital and Leverageable Capital must be owned and controlled by three Persons unaffiliated with your management and unaffiliated with each other, and whose investments are significant in dollar and percentage terms as determined by SBA. Such Persons must not be your Associates (except for their status as your shareholders, limited partners, or members) and must not Control, be Controlled by, or be under Common Control with any of your Associates. A single “acceptable” Institutional Investor may be substituted for two or three of the three Persons who are otherwise required under this paragraph. The following Institutional Investors are “acceptable” for this purpose:

(i) Entities whose overall activities are regulated and periodically examined by state, Federal or other governmental authorities satisfactory to SBA;

(ii) Entities listed on the New York Stock Exchange;

(iii) Entities that are publicly-traded and that meet both the minimum numerical listing standards and the corporate governance listing standards of the New York Stock Exchange;

(iv) Public or private employee pension funds;

(v) Trusts, foundations, or endowments, but only if exempt from Federal income taxation; and

(vi) Other Institutional Investors satisfactory to SBA.

(2) Look-through for traditional investment company investors. SBA, in its sole discretion, may consider the requirement in paragraph (c)(1) of this section to be satisfied if at least 30 percent of your Regulatory Capital and Leverageable Capital is owned and controlled indirectly, through a traditional investment company, by Persons unaffiliated with your management.

(d) Voting requirement. (1) Except as provided in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the investors required for you to satisfy diversity may not delegate their voting rights to any Person who is your Associate, or who Controls, is Controlled by, or is under Common Control with any of your Associates, without prior SBA approval.

(2) Exception. Paragraph (d)(1) of this section does not apply to investors in publicly-traded Licensees, to proxies given to vote in accordance with specific instructions for single specified meetings, or to any delegation of voting rights to a Person who is neither a diversity investor in the Licensee nor affiliated with management of the Licensee.

(e) Requirement to maintain diversity. If you were required to have management-ownership diversity at any time, you must maintain such diversity while you have outstanding Leverage or Earmarked Assets. To maintain management-ownership diversity, you may continue to satisfy the diversity requirement as in effect at the time it was first applicable to you or you may satisfy the management-ownership diversity requirement as currently in effect. If, at any time, you no longer have the required management-ownership diversity, you must:

(1) Notify SBA within 10 days; and

(2) Re-establish diversity within six months. For the consequences of failure to re-establish diversity, see §§107.1810(g) and 107.1820(f).

[65 FR 71055, Nov. 29, 2000]

§ 107.160 Special rules for Licensees formed as limited partnerships.

A limited partnership organized under State law solely for the purpose of performing the functions and conducting the activities contemplated
under the Act may apply for a license under section 301(c) or section 301(d) of the Act (‘’Partnership Licensees’’).

(a) *Number of Licensee’s General Partners.* If you are a Partnership Licensee, you must have as your general partner(s) at least two individuals, or at least one corporation, partnership, or limited liability company (LLC), or any combination of individuals, corporations, partnerships, or LLCs.

(b) *Entity General Partner of Licensee.* A general partner which is a corporation, limited liability company or partnership (an ‘’Entity General Partner’’) shall be organized under state law solely for the purpose of serving as the general partner of one or more Licensees.

(1) SBA must approve any person who will serve as an officer, director, manager, or general partner of the Entity General Partner. This provision must be stated in an Entity General Partner’s Certificate of Incorporation, member agreement, Limited Partnership Agreement or other similar governing instrument which must, in each case, accompany the license application.


(3) The general partner(s) of your Entity General Partner(s) will be considered your general partner.

(4) If your Entity General Partner is a limited partnership, its limited partners may be considered your Control Person(s) if they meet the definition for Control Person in § 107.50.

(5) If your Entity General Partner is a limited partnership, it is subject to paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) *Other requirements for Partnership Licensees.* If you are a Partnership Licensee:

(1) You must have a minimum duration of ten years or two years following the maturity of your last-maturing Leverage security, whichever is longer.

After 10 years, if all Leverage has been repaid or redeemed and all amounts due SBA, its agent, or Trustee have been paid, the Partnership Licensee may be terminated by a vote of your partners. (For purposes of this provision SBA is not considered a partner.): (2) None of your general partner(s) may be removed or replaced by your limited partners without prior written approval of SBA:

(3) Any transferee of, or successor in interest to, your general partner shall have only the rights and liabilities of a limited partner pending SBA’s written approval of such transfer or succession; and

(4) You must incorporate all the provisions in this paragraph (c) in your Limited Partnership Agreement.

(d) *Obligations of a Control Person.* All Control Persons are bound by the disciplinary provisions of sections 313 and 314 of the Act and by the conflict-of-interest rules under section 312 of the Act. The term Licensee, as used in §§107.30, 107.460, and 107.680 includes all of the Licensee’s Control Persons. The term Licensee as used in §107.670 includes only the Licensee’s general partners. The conditions specified in §§107.180 through 107.1820 and §107.1910 apply to all general partners.

(e) *Liability of general partner for partnership debts to SBA.* Subject to section 314 of the Act, your general partner is not liable solely by reason of its status as a general partner for repayment of any Leverage or debts you owe to SBA unless SBA, in the exercise of reasonable investment prudence, and with regard to your financial soundness, determines otherwise prior to the purchase or guaranty of your Leverage.

(f) *Reorganization of Licensee.* A corporate Licensee wishing to reorganize as a Partnership Licensee, or a Partnership Licensee wishing to reorganize as a Corporate Licensee, may apply to SBA for approval under §107.470.

(g) *Special Leverage requirement.* Before your first issuance of Leverage, you must furnish SBA with evidence that you qualify as a partnership for tax purposes, either by a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service, or by an opinion of counsel.
§ 107.200 Adequate capital for Licensees.

You must meet the requirements of this §107.200 to qualify for a license, to continue as a Licensee, and to receive Leverage.

(a) You must have enough Regulatory Capital to provide reasonable assurance that:
   (1) You will operate soundly and profitably over the long term; and
   (2) You will be able to operate actively in accordance with your Articles and within the context of your business plan, as approved by SBA.

(b) In SBA’s sole discretion, you must be economically viable, taking into consideration actual and anticipated income and losses on your Loans and Investments, and the experience and qualifications of your owners and managers.

§ 107.210 Minimum capital requirements for Licensees.

(a) Companies licensed on or after October 1, 1996.

A company licensed on or after October 1, 1996 must have Leverageable Capital of at least $2,500,000 and must meet the applicable minimum Regulatory Capital requirement:

(1) Licensees other than Participating Securities issuers. A Licensee that does not wish to be eligible to apply for Participating Securities must have Regulatory Capital of at least $5,000,000. As an exception to this general rule, SBA in its sole discretion and based on a showing of special circumstances and good cause may license an applicant with Regulatory Capital of at least $3,000,000, but only if the applicant:
   (i) Has satisfied all licensing standards and requirements except the minimum capital requirement, as determined solely by SBA;
   (ii) Has a viable business plan reasonably projecting profitable operations; and
   (iii) Has a reasonable timetable for achieving Regulatory Capital of at least $5,000,000.

(2) Participating Securities issuers. A Licensee that wishes to be eligible to apply for Participating Securities must have Regulatory Capital of at least $10,000,000, unless it demonstrates to SBA’s satisfaction that it can be financially viable over the long term with a lower amount. Under no circumstances can the Licensee have Regulatory Capital of less than $5,000,000.

(b) Companies licensed before October 1, 1996. A company licensed before October 1, 1996 must meet the minimum capital requirements applicable to such company, as required by the regulations in effect on September 30, 1996. See §107.1120(c)(2) for Leverage eligibility requirements.

§ 107.230 Permitted sources of Private Capital for Licensees.

Private Capital means the contributed capital of a Licensee, plus unfunded binding commitments by Institutional Investors (including commitments evidenced by a promissory note) to contribute capital to a Licensee.

(a) Contributed capital. For purposes of this section, contributed capital means the paid-in capital and paid-in surplus of a Corporate Licensee, or the partners’ contributed capital of a Partnership Licensee, in either case subject to the limitations in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Exclusions from Private Capital. Private Capital does not include:

(1) Funds borrowed by a Licensee from any source.

(2) Funds obtained through the issuance of Leverage.

(3) Funds obtained directly or indirectly from any Federal, State, or local government agency or instrumentality, except for:
   (i) Funds invested by a public pension fund;
   (ii) Funds obtained from the business revenues (excluding any governmental appropriation) of any federally chartered or government-sponsored corporation established before October 1, 1987, to the extent that such revenues are reflected in the retained earnings of the corporation; and
   (iii) “Qualified Non-private Funds” as defined in paragraph (d) of this section.

(4) Any portion of a commitment from an Institutional Investor with a net worth of less than $30 million that exceeds 10 percent of such Institutional
Small Business Administration

§ 107.300 License application form and fee.

The license application must be submitted on SBA Form 415 together with a processing fee computed as follows:

(a) All license applicants will pay a base fee of $10,000.

(b) All applicants who will be Partnership Licensees will pay an additional $5,000 fee, for a total of $15,000.

(c) All applicants who will be issuing Participating Securities will pay an additional $5,000 fee, for a total of...
§ 107.400 Changes in ownership of 10 percent or more of Licensee but no change of Control.

(a) Prior approval requirements. You must obtain SBA's prior written approval for any proposed transfer or issuance of ownership interests that results in the ownership (beneficial or of record) by any Person, or group of Persons acting in concert, of at least 10 percent of any class of your stock or partnership capital.

(b) Fee. A processing fee of $200 must accompany each such request for approval of a change of ownership.

§ 107.410 Changes in Control of Licensee (through change in ownership or otherwise).

(a) Prior approval requirements. You must obtain SBA's prior written approval for any proposed transaction or event that results in Control by any Person(s) not previously approved by SBA.

(b) Fee. A processing fee of $10,000 must accompany any application for approval of one or more transactions or events that will result in a transfer of Control.

§ 107.420 Prohibition on exercise of ownership or Control rights in Licensee before SBA approval.

Without prior written SBA approval, no change of ownership or Control may take effect and no officer, director, employee or other Person acting on your behalf shall:

(a) Register on your books any transfer of ownership interest to the proposed new owner(s);

(b) Permit the proposed new owner(s) to exercise voting rights with respect to such ownership interest (including directly or indirectly procuring or voting any proxy, consent or authorization as to such voting rights at any shareholders’ or partnership meeting);

(c) Permit the proposed new owner(s) to participate in any manner in the conduct of your affairs (including exercising control over your books, records, funds or other assets; participating directly or indirectly in any disposition thereof; or serving as an officer, director, partner, employee or agent); or

(d) Allow ownership or Control to pass to another Person.

§ 107.430 Notification to SBA of transactions that may change ownership or Control.

You must promptly notify SBA as soon as you have knowledge of transactions or events that may result in a transfer of Control or ownership of at least 10 percent of your capital. If there is any doubt as to whether a particular transaction or event will result in such a change, report the facts to SBA.

§ 107.440 Standards governing prior SBA approval for a proposed transfer of Control.

SBA approval is contingent upon full disclosure of the real parties in interest, the source of funds for the new owners’ interest, and other data requested by SBA. As a condition of approving a proposed transfer of control, SBA may:

(a) Require an increase in your Regulatory Capital;

(b) Require the new owners or the transferee’s Control Person(s) to assume, in writing, personal liability for your Leverage, effective only in the event of their direct or indirect participation in any transfer of Control not approved by SBA; or

(c) Require compliance with any other conditions set by SBA, including compliance with the requirements for minimum capital and management-ownership diversity as in effect at such time for new license applicants.

[61 FR 3189, Jan. 31, 1996]

§ 107.450 Notification to SBA of pledge of Licensee's shares.

(a) You must notify SBA in writing, within 30 calendar days, of the terms of any transaction in which:

(1) Any Person, or group of Persons acting in concert, pledges shares of
your stock (or equivalent ownership interests) as collateral for indebtedness; and
(2) The shares pledged are at least 10 percent of your Regulatory Capital.
(b) If the transaction creates a change of ownership or Control, you must comply with §107.400 or §107.410, as appropriate.

§ 107.503 Licensee’s adoption of an approved valuation policy.
(a) Valuation guidelines. You must prepare, document and report the valuations of your Loans and Investments in accordance with the Valuation Guidelines for SBICs issued by SBA. These guidelines may be obtained from SBA’s Investment Division.
§ 107.504 SBA approval of valuation policy.
You must have a written valuation policy approved by SBA for use in determining the value of your Loans and Investments. You must either:
(1) Adopt without change the model valuation policy set forth in section III of the Valuation Guidelines for SBICs; or
(2) Obtain SBA’s prior written approval of an alternative valuation policy.

§ 107.504 Equipment and office requirements.

(a) Computer capability. You must have a personal computer with a modem, and be able to use this equipment to prepare reports (using SBA-provided software) and transmit them to SBA. In addition, by March 31, 2000, you must have access to the Internet and the capability to send and receive electronic mail via the Internet.

(b) Facsimile capability. You must be able to receive facsimile messages 24 hours per day at your primary office.

(c) Accessible office. You must maintain an office that is convenient to the public and is open for business during normal working hours.

[64 FR 70995, Dec. 20, 1999]

§ 107.505 Facsimile requirement.
You must be able to receive fax messages 24 hours per day at your primary office.

§ 107.506 Safeguarding Licensee’s assets/Internal controls.
You must adopt a plan to safeguard your assets and monitor the reliability of your financial data, personnel, Portfolio, funds and equipment. You must provide your bank and custodian with a certified copy of your resolution or other formal document describing your control procedures.

§ 107.507 Violations based on false filings and nonperformance of agreements with SBA.
The following shall constitute a violation of this part:

(a) Nonperformance. Nonperformance of any of the requirements of any Debenture, Participating Security or Preferred Security, or of any written agreement with SBA.

(b) False statement. In any document submitted to SBA:
(1) Any false statement knowingly made; or
(2) Any misrepresentation of a material fact; or
(3) Any failure to state a material fact. A material fact is any fact which is necessary to make a statement not misleading in light of the circumstances under which the statement was made.

§ 107.509 Employment of SBA officials.
Without SBA’s prior written approval, for a period of two years after the date of your most recent issuance of Leverage (or the receipt of any SBA Assistance as defined in part 105 of this chapter), you are not permitted to employ, offer employment to, or retain for professional services, any person who:
(a) Served as an officer, attorney, agent, or employee of SBA on or within one year before such date; and
(b) As such, occupied a position or engaged in activities which, in SBA’s determination, involved discretion with respect to the granting of Assistance under the Act.

Management and Compensation

§ 107.510 SBA approval of Licensee’s Investment Adviser/Manager.
You may employ an Investment Adviser/Manager who will be subject to the supervision of your board of directors or general partner. If you have Leverage or plan to seek Leverage, you must obtain SBA’s prior written approval of the management contract. SBA’s approval of an Investment Adviser/Manager for one Licensee does not indicate approval of that manager for any other Licensee.
(a) Management contract. The contract must:
(1) Specify the services the Investment Adviser/Manager will render to you and to the Small Businesses in your Portfolio; and
(2) Indicate the basis for computing Management Expenses.
(b) Material change to approved management contract. If there is a material change, both you and SBA must approve such change in advance. If you are uncertain if the change is material, submit the proposed revision to SBA.

§ 107.520 Management Expenses of a Licensee.
SBA must approve any increases in your Management Expenses if you have outstanding Leverage or Earmarked Assets.
(a) Definition of Management Expenses. Management Expenses include:
(1) Salaries;
(2) Office expenses;
(3) Travel;
(4) Business development;
(5) Office and equipment rental;
(6) Bookkeeping; and
(7) Expenses related to developing, investigating and monitoring investments.
(b) Management Expenses do not include services provided by specialized outside consultants, outside lawyers and independent public accountants, if they perform services not generally performed by a venture capital company.
(c) If your Management Expenses have not already been approved by SBA, you must submit such expenses for approval with your SBA Form 468 for your first fiscal year ending after January 31, 1996.

Cash Management by a Licensee

§ 107.530 Restrictions on investments of idle funds by leveraged Licensees.
(a) Applicability of this section. This §107.530 applies if you have outstanding Leverage or if you have applied for Leverage.
(b) Permitted investments of idle funds. Funds not invested in Small Businesses must be maintained in:
(1) Direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal and interest by, the United States, which mature within 15 months from the date of the investment; or
(2) Repurchase agreements with federally insured institutions, with a maturity of seven days or less. The securities underlying the repurchase agreements must be direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal and interest by, the United States. The securities must be maintained in a custodial account at a federally insured institution; or
(3) Certificates of deposit with a maturity of one year or less, issued by a federally insured institution; or
(4) A deposit account in a federally insured institution, subject to a withdrawal restriction of one year or less; or
(5) A checking account in a federally insured institution; or
(6) A reasonable petty cash fund.
(b) Deposit of funds in excess of the insured amount. (1) You are permitted to
§ 107.550 Prior approval of secured third-party debt of leveraged Licensees.

(a) Definition. In this §107.550, “secured third-party debt” means any non-SBA debt secured by any of your assets, including secured guarantees and other contingent obligations that you voluntarily assume, secured lines of credit, and secured Temporary Debt of a Licensee with outstanding Participating Securities.

(b) General rule. If you have outstanding Leverage, you must get SBA’s written approval before you incur any secured third-party debt or refinance any debt with secured third-party debt, including any renewal of a secured line of credit, increase in the maximum amount available under a secured line of credit, or expansion of the scope of a security interest or lien. For purposes of this paragraph (b), “expansion of the scope of a security interest or lien” does not include the substitution of one asset or group of assets for another, provided the asset values (as reported on your most recent annual Form 468) are comparable.

(c) Additional rule for secured lines of credit in existence on April 8, 1994. If you have outstanding Leverage and you have a secured line of credit that was created on or before April 8, 1994, you must receive SBA’s written approval of the line before you increase the amounts outstanding thereunder.

(d) Conditions for SBA approval. As a condition of granting its approval under this §107.550, SBA may impose such restrictions or limitations as it deems appropriate, taking into account your historical performance, current financial position, proposed terms of the secured debt and amount of aggregate debt you will have outstanding (including Leverage). SBA will not favorably consider any requests for approval which include a blanket lien on all your assets, or a security interest in your investor commitments in excess of 125 percent of the proposed borrowing.

(1) You are in regulatory compliance;
(2) The security interest in your assets is limited to either those assets being acquired with the borrowed funds or an asset coverage ratio of no more than 2:1;
(3) Your Leverage does not exceed 150 percent of your Leverageable Capital; and
(4) Your request is for approval of a secured line of credit that would not cause your total outstanding borrowings (not including Leverage) to exceed 50 percent of your Leverageable Capital.

§ 107.560 Subordination of SBA’s creditor position.

(a) Debentures purchased or guaranteed on or before July 1, 1991. Under the terms of any Debenture purchased or guaranteed by SBA on or before July 1, 1991, SBA’s unsecured claims against you, as a Debenture-holder or as subrogee, are subordinated in favor of all your other creditors, except to the extent that such claims may be subject to equitable subordination in SBA’s favor.

(b) Debentures purchased or guaranteed after July 1, 1991, including refinancings of Debentures previously purchased or guaranteed. (1) Under the terms of any
§ 107.590 Debenture purchased or guaranteed by SBA after July 1, 1991, SBA’s unsecured claims against you, as a Debenture-holder or as subrogee, are subordinated only in favor of non-Associate lenders; and, to the extent that your indebtedness to such lenders exceeds the lesser of $10,000,000 or 200 percent of your Regulatory Capital (determined as of the date your Debentures were purchased or guaranteed), SBA’s unsecured claims enjoy parity with those of other unsecured creditors, except with respect to indebtedness created on or before July 1, 1991.

(2) In order to induce others to lend you money after your Debenture has been purchased or guaranteed, SBA may agree in writing on a case-by-case basis to subordinate its unsecured claims, on such terms as it may determine, in favor of one or more of your Associates, or in favor of other lenders in excess of the amounts mentioned in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(3) SBA reserves the authority to refuse to subordinate its claims if it determines, at the time you request your Debenture be purchased or guaranteed, that the exercise of reasonable investment prudence and your financial condition warrant such refusal.

§ 107.570 Restrictions on third-party debt of issuers of Participating Securities.

(a) General. Temporary Debt is the only debt (other than Leverage) that you are permitted to incur if you have applied to issue Participating Securities or if you have outstanding Participating Securities. For additional rules governing secured Temporary Debt, see §107.350.

(b) Definition of Temporary Debt. Temporary Debt means your short-term borrowings if:

(1) Such borrowings are for the purpose of maintaining your operating liquidity or providing funds for a particular Financing of a Small Business;

(2) The funds are borrowed from a regulated financial institution or a regulated credit company (or, if approved by SBA on a case-by-case basis, from non-regulated lenders including shareholders or partners);

(3) Your total outstanding borrowings (not including Leverage) do not exceed 50 percent of your Leverageable Capital; and

(4) All such borrowings are fully paid off for at least 30 consecutive days during your fiscal year so that you have no outstanding third-party debt for 30 days.

§ 107.585 Voluntary decrease in Licensee’s Regulatory Capital.

You must obtain SBA’s prior written approval to reduce your Regulatory Capital by more than two percent in any fiscal year, unless otherwise permitted under §§107.1560 and 107.1570. At all times, you must retain sufficient Regulatory Capital to meet the minimum capital requirements in the Act and §107.210, and sufficient Leverageable Capital to avoid having excess Leverage in violation of section 303 of the Act and §§107.1150 through 107.1170.

§ 107.590 Licensee’s requirement to maintain active operations.

(a) Activity test. You must conduct active operations, as determined under this §107.590, as a condition of your license. You will be considered active if:

(1) During the eighteen months preceding your most recent fiscal year end, you made Financings totaling at least 20 percent of your Regulatory Capital; or

(2) Your idle funds did not exceed 20 percent of your total assets (at cost) at your most recent fiscal year end.

(b) Permitted exceptions to activity requirements. You are considered active if your failure to meet the requirements in paragraph (a) of this section is the result of one or more of the following factors:

(1) Your excess idle funds are the result of the receipt, within the previous nine months, of realized gains, repayments, additional capital contributions, or Leverage.

(2) It is necessary for you to maintain excess idle funds to conduct your operations because:
§ 107.600  General requirement for Licensee to maintain and preserve records.

(a) Maintaining your accounting records. You must establish and maintain your accounting records using SBA’s standard chart of accounts for Licensees, unless SBA approves otherwise.

(b) Location of records. You must keep the following records at your principal place of business or, in the case of paragraph (b)(3) of this section, at the branch office that is primarily responsible for the transaction:

1. All your accounting and other financial records;
2. All minutes of meetings of directors, stockholders, executive committees, partners, or other officials; and
3. All documents and supporting materials related to your business transactions, except for any items held by a custodian under a written agreement between you and a Portfolio Concern or non-SBA lender, or any securities held in a safe deposit box, or by a licensed securities broker in an amount not exceeding the broker’s per-account insurance coverage.

(c) Preservation of records. You must retain all the records that are the basis for your financial reports. Such records must be preserved for the periods specified in this paragraph (c), and must remain accessible for the first two years of the preservation period.

1. You must preserve for at least 15 years or, in the case of a Partnership Licensee, at least two years beyond the date of liquidation:
   1. All your accounting ledgers and journals, and any other records of assets, asset valuations, liabilities, equity, income, and expenses.
   2. Your Articles, bylaws, minute books, and license application.
   3. All documents evidencing ownership of the Licensee including ownership ledgers, and ownership transfer registers.
(2) You must preserve for at least six years all supporting documentation (such as vouchers, bank statements, or canceled checks) for the records listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(3) After final disposition of any item in your Portfolio, you must preserve for at least six years:
   (i) Financing applications and Financing instruments.
   (ii) All loan, participation, and escrow agreements.
   (iii) Size status declarations (SBA Form 480) and Financing Eligibility Statements (SBA Form 1941).
   (iv) Any capital stock certificates and warrants of the Portfolio Concern that you did not surrender or exercise.
   (v) All other documents and supporting material relating to the Portfolio Concern, including correspondence.

(4) You may substitute a microfilm or computer-scanned or generated copy for the original of any record covered by this paragraph (c).

§ 107.620 Requirements to obtain information from Portfolio Concerns.

All the information required by this section is subject to the requirements of § 107.600 and must be in English.

(a) Information for initial Financing decision. Before extending any Financing, you must require the applicant to submit financial statements, plans of operation (including intended use of Financing proceeds), cash flow analyses and projections as are necessary to support your investment decision. The information submitted must be consistent with the size and type of the business and the amount of the proposed Financing.

(b) Updated financial information. (1) The terms of each Financing must require the Portfolio Concern to provide, at least annually, sufficient financial information to enable you to perform the following required procedures:
   (i) Evaluate the financial condition of the Portfolio Concern for the purpose of valuing your investment;
   (ii) Determine the continued eligibility of the Portfolio Concern; and
   (iii) Verify the use of Financing proceeds.
(2) The information submitted to you must be certified by the president, chief executive officer, treasurer, chief financial officer, general partner, or proprietor of the Portfolio Concern.

(3) For financial and valuation purposes, you may accept a complete copy of the Federal income tax return filed by the Portfolio Concern (or its proprietor) in lieu of financial statements, but only if appropriate for the size and type of the business involved.

(4) The requirements in this paragraph (b) do not apply when you acquire securities from an underwriter in a public offering (see § 107.825). In that case, you must keep copies of all reports furnished by the Portfolio Concern to the holders of its securities.

(c) Information required for examination purposes. You must obtain any information requested by SBA’s examiners for the purpose of verifying the certifications made by a Portfolio Concern under § 107.610. In this regard, your Financing documents must contain provisions requiring the Portfolio Concern to give you and/or SBA’s examiners access to its books and records for such purpose.

REPORTING REQUIREMENTS FOR LICENSEES

§ 107.630 Requirement for Licensees to file financial statements with SBA (Form 468).

(a) Annual filing of Form 468. For each fiscal year, you must submit to SBA financial statements and supplementary information prepared on SBA Form 468. You must file Form 468 on or before the last day of the third month following the end of your fiscal year, except for the information required under paragraph (e) of this section, which must be filed on or before the last day of the fifth month following the end of your fiscal year.

(1) Audit of Form 468. The annual Form 468 must be audited by an independent public accountant acceptable to SBA.

(2) Insurance requirement for public accountant. Unless SBA approves otherwise, your independent public accountant must carry at least $1,000,000 of Errors and Omissions insurance, or be self-insured and have a net worth of at least $1,000,000.

(b) Interim filings of Form 468. When requested by SBA, you must file interim reports on Form 468. SBA may require you to file the entire form or only certain statements and schedules. You must file such reports on or before the last day of the month following the end of the reporting period. If you have an outstanding Leverage commitment from SBA, see the filing requirements in § 107.1220.

(c) Standards for preparation of Form 468. You must prepare SBA Form 468 in accordance with SBA’s Accounting Standards and Financial Reporting Requirements for Small Business Investment Companies.

(d) Where to file Form 468. Submit all filings of Form 468 to the Investment Division of SBA.

(e) Reporting of economic impact information on Form 468. Your annual filing of SBA Form 468 must include an assessment of the economic impact of each Financing, specifying the full-time equivalent jobs created or retained, and the impact of the Financing on the revenues and profits of the business and on taxes paid by the business and its employees.

§ 107.640 Requirement to file Portfolio Financing Reports (SBA Form 1031).

For each Financing of a Small Business (excluding guarantees), you must submit a Portfolio Financing Report on SBA Form 1031 within 30 days of the closing date.

§ 107.650 Requirement to report portfolio valuations to SBA.

You must determine the value of your Loans and Investments in accordance with § 107.503. You must report such valuations to SBA within 90 days of the end of the fiscal year in the case of annual valuations, and within 30 days following the close of other reporting periods. You must report material adverse changes in valuations at least quarterly, within thirty days following the close of the quarter.

§ 107.660 Other items required to be filed by Licensee with SBA.

(a) Reports to owners. You must give SBA a copy of any report you furnish
to your investors, including any prospectus, letter, or other publication concerning your financial operations or those of any Portfolio Concern.

(b) Documents filed with SEC. You must give SBA a copy of any report, application or document you file with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(c) Litigation reports. When you become a party to litigation or other proceedings, you must give SBA a report within 30 days that describes the proceedings and identifies the other parties involved and your relationship to them.

(1) The proceedings covered by this paragraph (c) include any action by you, or by your security holder(s) in a personal or derivative capacity, against an officer, director, Investment Adviser or other Associate of yours for alleged breach of official duty.

(2) SBA may require you to submit copies of the pleadings and other documents SBA may specify.

(3) Where proceedings have been terminated by settlement or final judgment, you must promptly advise SBA of the terms.

(4) This paragraph (c) does not apply to collection actions or proceedings to enforce your ordinary creditors’ rights.

(d) Notification of criminal charges. If any officer, director, or general partner of the Licensee, or any other person who was required by SBA to complete a personal history statement in connection with your license, is charged with or convicted of any criminal offense other than a misdemeanor involving a minor motor vehicle violation, you must report the incident to SBA within 5 calendar days. Such report must fully describe the facts which pertain to the incident.

(e) Other reports. You must file any other reports that SBA may require by written directive.


§ 107.670 Application for exemption from civil penalty for late filing of reports.

(a) If it is impracticable to submit any required report within the time allowed, you may apply for an extension. The request for an extension must:

(1) Be filed before the reporting deadline;

(2) Certify to an extraordinary occurrence, not within your control, that makes timely filing of the report impracticable; and

(3) Be accompanied by written evidence of such occurrence, where appropriate.

(b) Upon receipt of your request, SBA may exempt you from the civil penalty provision of section 315(a) of the Act, in such manner and under such conditions as SBA determines.

§ 107.680 Reporting changes in Licensee not subject to prior SBA approval.

(a) Changes to be reported for post approval. (1) This section applies to any changes in your Articles, ownership, capitalization, management, operating area, or investment policies that do not require SBA’s prior approval. You must report such changes to SBA within 30 days for post approval. A processing fee of $200 must accompany each request for post approval of new officers, directors, or Control Persons.

(2) Exception for non-leveraged Licensees. If you do not have outstanding Leverage or Earmarked Assets, you are not required to obtain post approval of new directors or officers other than your chief operating officer; however, you must notify SBA of the new directors or officers within 30 days.

(b) Approval by SBA. You may consider any change submitted under this section §107.680 to be approved unless SBA notifies you to the contrary within 90 days after receiving it. SBA’s approval is contingent upon your full disclosure of all relevant facts and is subject to any conditions SBA may prescribe.

§ 107.690 Examinations of Licensees by SBA for Regulatory Compliance

SBA will examine all Licensees for the purpose of evaluating regulatory compliance.
§ 107.691 Responsibilities of Licensee during examination.

You must make all books, records and other pertinent documents and materials available for the examination, including any information required by the examiner under §107.620(c). In addition, the agreement between you and the independent public accountant performing your audit must provide that any information in the accountant’s working papers be made available to SBA upon request.

§ 107.692 Examination fees.

(a) General. SBA will assess fees for examinations in accordance with this §107.692. Unless SBA determines otherwise on a case by case basis, SBA will not assess fees for special examinations to obtain specific information.

(b) Base fee. A base fee will be assessed based on your total assets (at cost) as of the date of your latest certified financial statement or a more recent interim statement requested by and submitted to SBA in connection with the examination. The base fee table is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total assets of licensee</th>
<th>Base fee</th>
<th>Plus, percent of assets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$0 to $1,500,000</td>
<td>$3,500</td>
<td>+0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1,500,001 to $5,000,000</td>
<td>3,700</td>
<td>+0.065% of the amount over $1,500,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$5,000,001 to $10,000,000</td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>+0.02% of the amount over $5,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$10,000,001 to $15,000,000</td>
<td>7,000</td>
<td>+0.01% of the amount over $10,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$15,000,001 to $25,000,000</td>
<td>7,700</td>
<td>+0.015% of the amount over $15,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$25,000,001 to $50,000,000</td>
<td>9,200</td>
<td>+0.015% of the amount over $25,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$50,000,001 to $60,000,000</td>
<td>13,000</td>
<td>+0.01% of the amount over $50,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$60,000,001 and above</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>+0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Adjustments to base fee. Your base fee, as determined by the table in paragraph (b) of this section, will be adjusted (increased or decreased) based on the following criteria:

(1) If you have no outstanding regulatory violations at the time of the commencement of the examination and SBA did not identify any violations as a result of the most recent prior examination, you will receive a 15% discount on your base fee;

(2) If you were fully responsive to the letter of notification of examination (that is, you provided all requested documents and information within the time period stipulated in the notification letter in a complete and accurate manner, and you prepared and had available all information requested by the examiner for on-site review), you will receive a 10% discount on your base fee;

(3) If you are organized as a partnership or limited liability company, you will pay an additional charge equal to 5% of your base fee;

(4) If you are a Licensee authorized to issue Participating Securities, you will pay an additional charge equal to 10% of your base fee; and

(5) If you maintain your records/files in multiple locations (as permitted under §107.600(b)), you will pay an additional charge equal to 10% of your base fee.

(d) Fee discounts and additions table.
The following table summarizes the discounts and additions noted in paragraph (c) of this section:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examination fee discounts</th>
<th>Amount of discount—% of base examination fee</th>
<th>Examination fee additions</th>
<th>Amount of Addition—% of base examination fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No prior violations</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Partnership or limited liability company</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responsiveness</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Participating Security Licensee</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Records/files at multiple locations</td>
<td></td>
<td>Records/files at multiple locations</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 107.710 Requirement to finance smaller enterprises.

Your Portfolio must include Financings to Smaller Enterprises. A Smaller Enterprise means any small business concern that:

(1) Both together with its Affiliates, and by itself, meets the size standard of §121.201 of this chapter at the time of Financing for the industry in which it is then primarily engaged; or

(2) Together with its affiliates has a net worth of not more than $6 million and average net income after Federal income taxes (excluding any carry-over losses) for the preceding two years no greater than $2 million. If the applicant is not required by law to pay Federal income taxes at the enterprise level, but is required to pass income through to its shareholders, partners, beneficiaries, or other equitable owners, the applicant’s “net income after Federal income taxes” will be its net income reduced by an amount computed as follows:

(i) If the applicant is not required by law to pay State (and local, if any) income taxes at the enterprise level, multiply its net income by the marginal State income tax rate (or by the combined State and local income tax rates, as applicable) that would have applied if it were a taxable corporation.

(ii) Multiply the applicant’s net income, less any deduction for State and local income taxes calculated under paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section, by the marginal Federal income tax rate that would have applied if the applicant were a taxable corporation.

(iii) Add the results obtained in paragraphs (a)(2)(i) and (a)(2)(ii) of this section.

(b) Smaller Enterprise Financings—

(1) General rule. At the close of each of your fiscal years, for all Financings you extended since April 25, 1994, excluding Financings made in whole or in part with Leverage in excess of $90,000,000, at least 20 percent (in total dollars) must have been invested in Smaller Enterprises. If you were licensed after April 25, 1994, the 20 percent requirement applies to the Financings you extended since you were licensed, excluding Financings made in whole or in part with Leverage in excess of $90,000,000, plus any pre-licensing investments approved by SBA for inclusion in your Regulatory Capital. For purposes of this paragraph (b)(1), Leverage in excess of $90,000,000 includes aggregate Leverage over $90,000,000 issued by two or more Licensees under Common Control. See also paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Phase-in for new Licensees At the close of your first full fiscal year after licensing, at least 10 percent of the total dollar amount of the Financings you extended, including any pre-licensing investments approved by SBA for inclusion in your Regulatory Capital, must have been invested in Smaller Enterprises. At the close of each fiscal year thereafter, you must meet the requirement in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(c) Special requirement for certain leveraged Licensees. (1) This paragraph (c) applies if you were licensed on or before September 30, 1996, and you issued Leverage after that date, and you have Regulatory Capital of:

(i) Less than $10,000,000 if such Leverage included Participating Securities; or
§ 107.720 Small Businesses that may be ineligible for financing.

(a) Relenders or reinvestors. You are not permitted to finance any business that is a relender or reinvestor.

(1) Definition. Relenders or reinvestors are businesses whose primary business activity involves, directly or indirectly, providing funds to others, purchasing debt obligations, factoring, or long-term leasing of equipment with no provision for maintenance or repair.

(2) Exception. You may provide Venture Capital Financing to Disadvantaged Businesses that are relenders or reinvestors (except banks or savings and loans not insured by agencies of the federal government, and agricultural credit companies). Without SBA’s prior written approval, total Financings under this paragraph (a)(2) that are outstanding as of the close of your fiscal year must not exceed your Regulatory Capital.

(b) Passive Businesses. You are not permitted to finance a passive business.

(1) Definition. A business is passive if:

(i) It is not engaged in a regular and continuous business operation (for purposes of this paragraph (b), the mere receipt of payments such as dividends, rents, lease payments, or royalties is not considered a regular and continuous business operation); or

(ii) Its employees are not carrying on the majority of day to day operations, and the company does not provide effective control and supervision, on a day to day basis, over persons employed under contract; or

(iii) It passes through substantially all of the proceeds of the Financing to another entity.

(2) Exception for pass-through of proceeds to subsidiary. You may finance a passive business if it is a Small Business and it passes substantially all the proceeds through to one or more subsidiary companies, each of which is an eligible Small Business that is not passive. For the purpose of this paragraph (b)(2), “subsidiary company” means a company in which at least 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities are owned by the Financed passive business.

(3) Exception for certain Partnership Licensees. With the prior written approval of SBA, if you are a Partnership Licensee, you may form one or more wholly-owned corporations in accordance with this paragraph (b)(3). The sole purpose of such corporation(s) must be to provide Financing to one or more eligible, unincorporated Small Businesses. You may form such corporation(s) only if a direct Financing to such Small Businesses would cause any of your investors to incur unrelated business taxable income under section 511 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (26 U.S.C. 511).

Your ownership of such corporation(s)
§ 107.720

will not constitute a violation of §107.865(a) and your investment of funds in such corporation(s) will not constitute a violation of §107.730(a).

(c) Real Estate Businesses. (1) You are not permitted to finance any business classified under Major Group 65 (Real Estate) or Industry No. 1531 (Operative Builders) of the SIC Manual, with the following exceptions:
   (i) Title Abstract companies (Industry No. 6541); and
   (ii) Companies listed under Industry No. 6531 (for example, real estate agents, brokers, escrow agents, managers and multiple listing services) that derive at least 80 percent of their revenue from non-Affiliate sources.

   (2) You are not permitted to finance a business, regardless of SIC classification, if the Financing is to be used to acquire or refinance real property, unless the Small Business:
      (i) Is acquiring an existing property and will use at least 51 percent of the usable square footage for an eligible business purpose; or
      (ii) Is building or renovating a building and will use at least 67 percent of the usable square footage for an eligible business purpose; or
      (iii) Occupies the subject property and uses at least 67 percent of the usable square footage for an eligible business purpose.

(d) Project Financing. You are not permitted to finance a business if:
   (1) The assets of the business are to be reduced or consumed, generally without replacement, as the life of the business progresses, and the nature of the business requires that a stream of cash payments be made to the business’s financing sources, on a basis associated with the continuing sale of assets. Examples include real estate development projects and oil and gas wells; or
   (2) The primary purpose of the Financing is to fund production of a single item or defined limited number of items, generally over a defined production period, and such production will constitute the majority of the activities of the Small Business. Examples include motion pictures and electric generating plants.

(e) Farm land purchases. You are not permitted to finance the acquisition of farm land. Farm land means land which is or is intended to be used for agricultural or forestry purposes, such as the production of food, fiber, or wood, or is so taxed or zoned.

(f) Public interest. You are not permitted to finance any business if the proceeds are to be used for purposes contrary to the public interest, including but not limited to activities which are in violation of law, or inconsistent with free competitive enterprise.

(g) Foreign investment—(1) General rule. You are not permitted to finance a business if:
      (i) The funds will be used substantially for a foreign operation; or
      (ii) At the time of the Financing or within one year thereafter, more than 49 percent of the employees or tangible assets of the Small Business are located outside the United States (unless you can show, to SBA’s satisfaction, that the Financing was used for a specific domestic purpose).

   (2) Exception. This paragraph (g) does not prohibit a Financing used to acquire foreign materials and equipment or foreign property rights for use or sale in the United States.

(h) Associated supplier. You are not permitted to finance a business that purchases, or will purchase, goods or services from a supplier who is your Associate, except under the following conditions:
   (1) The amount of goods and services purchased (or to be purchased) from your Associate with the proceeds of the Financing, or with funds released as a result of the Financing, is less than 50 percent of the total amount of the Financing (75 percent for a Section 301(d) Licensee);
   (2) The price of such goods and services is no higher than that charged other customers of your Associate; and
   (3) The Small Business purchases no capital goods from your Associate.

   (i) Financing Licensees. You are not permitted to provide funds, directly or indirectly, that the Small Business will use:
      (1) To purchase stock in or provide capital to a Licensee; or
§ 107.730 Financings which constitute conflicts of interest.

(a) General rule. You must not self-deal to the prejudice of a Small Business, the Licensee, its shareholders or partners, or SBA. Unless you obtain a prior written exemption from SBA for special instances in which a Financing may further the purposes of the Act despite presenting a conflict of interest, you must not directly or indirectly:

(1) Provide Financing to any of your Associates.

(2) Provide Financing to an Associate of another Licensee if one of your Associates has received or will receive any direct or indirect Financing or a Commitment from that Licensee or a third Licensee (including Financing or Commitments received under any understanding, agreement, or cross dealing, reciprocal or circular arrangement).

(3) Borrow money from:

(i) A Small Business Financed by you;

(ii) An officer, director, or owner of at least a 10 percent equity interest in such business; or

(iii) A Close Relative of any such officer, director, or equity owner.

(4) Provide Financing to a Small Business to discharge an obligation to your Associate or free other funds to pay such obligation. This paragraph does not apply if the obligation is to an Associate Lending Institution and is a line of credit or other obligation incurred in the normal course of business.

(5) Provide Financing to a Small Business for the purpose of purchasing property from your Associate, except as permitted under §§ 107.720(h).

(b) Rules applicable to Associates. Without SBA’s prior written approval, your Associates must not, directly or indirectly:

(1) Borrow money from any Person described in paragraph (a)(3) of this section.

(2) Receive from a Small Business any compensation in connection with Assistance you provide (except as permitted under §§ 107.825(c) and 107.900), or anything of value for procuring, attempting to procure, or influencing your action with respect to such Assistance.

(c) Applicability of other laws. You are also bound by any restrictions in Federal or State laws governing conflicts of interest and fiduciary obligations.

(d) Financings with Associates—(1) Financings with Associates requiring prior approval. Without SBA’s prior written approval, you may not Finance any business in which your Associate has either a voting equity interest, or total equity interests (including potential interests), of at least five percent.

(2) Other Financings with Associates. If you and an Associate provide Financing to the same Small Business, either at the same time or at different times, you must be able to demonstrate to SBA’s satisfaction that the terms and conditions are (or were) fair and equitable to you, taking into account any differences in the timing of each party’s financing transactions.

(3) Exceptions to paragraphs (d)(1) and (d)(2) of this section. A Financing that falls into one of the following categories is exempt from the prior approval requirement in paragraph (d)(1) of this section or is presumed to be fair and equitable to you for the purposes of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, as appropriate:

(i) Your Associate is a Lending Institution that is providing financing under a credit facility in order to meet the operational needs of the Small Business, and the terms of such financing are usual and customary.

(ii) Your Associate invests in the Small Business on the same terms and conditions and at the same time as you.

(iii) Both you and your Associate are leveraged Licensees, and both have outstanding Participating Securities or neither has outstanding Participating Securities.

(iv) You have no outstanding Leverage and do not intend to issue Leverage in the future, and your Associate either is not a Licensee or has no outstanding Leverage and does not intend to issue Leverage in the future.
Small Business Administration

§ 107.740

(e) Use of Associates to manage Portfolio Concerns. To protect your investment, you may designate an Associate to serve as an officer, director, or other participant in the management of a Small Business. You must identify any such Associate in your records available for SBA’s review under §107.600. Without SBA’s prior written approval, the Associate must not:

(1) Have any other direct or indirect financial interest in the Portfolio Concern that exceeds, or has the potential to exceed, 5 percent of the Portfolio Concern’s equity.

(2) Have served for more than 30 days as an officer, director or other participant in the management of the Portfolio Concern before you provided Financing.

(3) Receive any income or anything of value from the Portfolio Concern unless it is for your benefit, with the exception of director’s fees, expenses, and distributions based upon the Associate’s ownership interest in the Concern.

(f) 1940 and 1980 Act Companies: SEC exemptions. If you are a 1940 or 1980 Act Company and you receive an exemption from the Securities and Exchange Commission for a transaction described in this §107.730, you need not obtain SBA’s approval of the transaction. However, you must promptly notify SBA of the transaction and satisfy the public notice requirements in paragraph (g) of this section.

(g) Public notice. Before SBA grants an exemption under this §107.730, you must publish notice of the transaction in a newspaper of general circulation in the locality most directly affected by the transaction, and furnish a certified copy to SBA within 10 days of publication. SBA will publish a similar notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 107.740 Portfolio diversification (“overline” limitation).

(a) General rule. This §107.740 applies if you have outstanding Leverage or intend to issue Leverage in the future. Without SBA’s prior written approval, you may provide Financing or a Commitment to a Small Business only if the resulting amount of your aggregate outstanding Financings and Commitments to such Small Business and its Affiliates does not exceed:

(1) For a Section 301(c) Licensee, 20 percent of the sum of:
   (i) Your Regulatory Capital as of the date of the Financing or Commitment; plus
   (ii) Any Distribution(s) you made under §107.1570(b), during the five years preceding the date of the Financing or Commitment, which reduced your Regulatory Capital; plus
   (iii) Any Distribution(s) you made under §107.585, during the five years preceding the date of the Financing or Commitment, which reduced your Regulatory Capital by no more than two percent or which SBA approves for inclusion in the sum determined in this paragraph (a)(1).

(2) For a Section 301(d) Licensee, 30 percent of a sum determined in the manner set forth in paragraph (a)(1) through (iii) of this section.

(b) Outstanding Financings. For the purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, you must measure each outstanding Financing at its current cost plus any amount of the Financing that was previously written off.

(c) Adjustment to Regulatory Capital. For the purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, you may compute a higher maximum permitted investment in a Small Business (an “increased limit”) by adding “net unrealized gains” on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities to your Regulatory Capital, subject to the following conditions:

(1) “Net unrealized gains” on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities means unrealized gains on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities minus unrealized losses on all Loans and Investments.

(2) You must value your Publicly Traded and Marketable securities in accordance with your SBA-approved valuation policy.

(3) You must have positive Retained Earnings Available for Distribution at the time you compute an increased limit under this paragraph (c).

(4) At the time you first compute an increased limit, and as of the first business day of each calendar quarter that the increased limit is in effect, you
must keep copies in your files of the NASDAQ listings (or the Wall Street Journal) or written quotations from the market makers quoting the Publicly Traded and Marketable securities which support the adjustment. (5) If your net unrealized gains on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities are more than 30 percent below their original level on the first business day of any calendar quarter, and remain so for the next 30 days, you agree to do one of the following to remain in compliance with the terms of your Leverage:

(i) By the first day of the next calendar quarter, increase your Regulatory Capital sufficiently to restore support for the increased limit; or

(ii) Lower the increased limit to reflect the decrease in net unrealized gains on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities, and reduce any Financings that exceed the lower limit.

Example to paragraph (c) of this section.

Your Regulatory Capital is $2,500,000 and your overline limit is $500,000 (20 percent of $2,500,000). On January 15, 1995, you document net unrealized gains on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities of $200,000 and compute an increased limit of $540,000 (20 percent of $2,700,000). You now make an investment of $540,000 in a Small Business. Nothing changes until the first business day of April, 1996, when you document net unrealized gains on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities of only $120,000, a reduction of more than 30 percent. Your net unrealized gains remain at this level for the next 30 days. Your increased limit is now only $524,000 (20 percent of $2,620,000). By July 1, 1996, you must either increase Regulatory Capital by $80,000 to restore your increased limit to $540,000, or reduce your portfolio investment from $540,000 to $524,000.

§ 107.750 How a change in size or activity of a Portfolio Concern affects the Licensee and the Portfolio Concern.

(a) Effect on Licensee of a change in size of a Portfolio Concern. If a Portfolio Concern no longer qualifies as a Small Business you may keep your investment in the concern and:

(1) Subject to the overline limitations of § 107.740, you may provide additional Financing to the concern up to the time it makes a public offering of its securities.

(2) Even after the concern makes a public offering, you may exercise any stock options, warrants, or other rights to purchase Equity Securities which you acquired before the public offering.
or fund Commitments you made before the public offering.

(b) Effect of a change in business activity occurring within one year of Licensee’s initial Financing—(1) Retention of Investment. Unless you receive SBA’s written approval, you may not keep your investment in a Portfolio Concern, small or otherwise, which becomes ineligible by reason of a change in its business activity within one year of your initial investment.

(2) Request for SBA’s approval to retain investment. If you request that SBA approve the retention of your investment, your request must include sufficient evidence to demonstrate that the change in business activity was caused by an unforeseen change in circumstances and was not contemplated at the time the Financing was made.

(3) Additional Financing. If SBA approves your request to retain an investment under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, you may provide additional Financing to the Portfolio Concern to the extent necessary to protect against the loss of the amount of your original investment, subject to the overline limitations of §107.740.

(c) Effect of a change in business activity occurring more than one year after the initial Financing. If a Portfolio Concern becomes ineligible because of a change in business activity more than one year after your initial Financing you may:

(1) Retain your investment; and
(2) Provide additional Financing to the Portfolio Concern to the extent necessary to protect against the loss of the amount of your original investment, subject to the overline limitations of §107.740.

STRUCTURING LICENSEE’S FINANCING OF ELIGIBLE SMALL BUSINESSES: TYPES OF FINANCING

§ 107.800 Financings in the form of Equity Securities.

(a) You may purchase the Equity Securities of a Small Business. You may not, inadvertently or otherwise:

(1) Become a general partner in any unincorporated business; or
(2) Become jointly or severally liable for any obligations of an unincorporated business.

(b) Definition. Equity Securities means stock of any class in a corporation, stock options, warrants, limited partnership interests in a limited partnership, membership interests in a limited liability company, or joint venture interests. If the Financing agreement contains debt-type acceleration provisions or includes redemption provisions other than those permitted under §107.850, the security will be considered a Debt Security for purposes of §107.855.

§ 107.810 Financings in the form of Loans.

You may make Loans to Small Businesses. A Loan means a transaction evidenced by a debt instrument with no provision for you to acquire Equity Securities.

§ 107.815 Financings in the form of Debt Securities.

You may purchase Debt Securities from Small Businesses.

(a) Definitions. Debt Securities are instruments evidencing a loan with an option or any other right to acquire Equity Securities in a Small Business or its Affiliates, or a loan which by its terms is convertible into an equity position, or a loan with a right to receive royalties that are excluded from the Cost of Money pursuant to §107.855(g)(12). Consideration must be paid for all options that you acquire.

(b) Restriction on options obtained by Licensee’s management and employees. If you have outstanding Leverage or plan to obtain Leverage, your employees, officers, directors or general partners, or the general partners of the management company that is providing services to you or to your general partner, may obtain options in a Financed Small Business only if:

(1) They participate in the Financing on a pari passu basis with you; or
(2) SBA gives its prior written approval; or
(3) The options received are compensation for service as a member of the board of directors of the Small Business, and such compensation does not exceed that paid to other outside directors. In the absence of such directors, fees must be reasonable when
§ 107.820 Financings in the form of guarantees.

At the request of a Small Business or where necessary to protect your existing investment, you may guarantee the monetary obligation of a Small Business to any non-Associate creditor.

(a) You may not issue a guaranty if:
   (1) You would become subject to State regulation as an insurance, guaranty or surety business;
   (2) The amount of the guaranty plus any direct Financings to the Small Business exceed the overline limitations of §107.740, except that a pledge of the Equity Securities of the issuer or a subordination of your lien or creditor position does not count toward your overline; or
   (3) The total financing cost to the Small Business exceeds the cost of money limits of §107.855.

(b) Pledge of Licensee’s assets as guaranty. For purposes of this section, a guaranty with recourse only to specific asset(s) you have pledged is equal to the fair market value of such asset(s) or the amount of the debt guaranteed, whichever is less.

§ 107.825 Purchasing securities from an underwriter or other third party.

(a) Securities purchased through or from an underwriter. You may purchase the securities of a Small Business through or from an underwriter if:
   (1) You purchase such securities within 90 days of the date the public offering is first made;
   (2) Your purchase price is no more than the original public offering price; and
   (3) The amount paid by you for the securities (less ordinary and reasonable underwriting charges and commissions) has been, or will be, paid to the Small Business, and the underwriter certifies in writing that this requirement has been met.

(b) Recordkeeping requirements. If you have outstanding Leverage or plan to obtain Leverage, you must keep records available for SBA’s inspection which show the relevant details of the transaction, including, but not limited to, date, price, commissions, and the underwriter’s certifications required under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Underwriter’s requirements. If you have outstanding Leverage or plan to obtain Leverage, the underwriter must certify whether it is your Associate. You may pay reasonable and customary commissions and expenses to an Associate underwriter for the portion of an offering that you purchase, provided it is no more than 25 percent of the total offering. If you buy more than 25 percent of the offering, the amount you pay to the Associate underwriter must not exceed the total of the application and closing fees and reimbursable expenses permitted by §107.860.

(d) Securities purchased from another Licensee or from SBA. You may purchase from, or exchange with, another Licensee, Portfolio securities (or any interest therein). Such purchase or exchange may only be made on a non-recourse basis. You may not have more than one-third of your total assets (valued at cost) invested in such securities. If you have previously sold Portfolio Securities (or any interest therein) on a recourse basis, you shall include the amount for which you may be contingently liable in your overline computation.

§ 107.830 Minimum duration/term of financing.

(a) General rule for Section 301(c) Licensees. If you are a Section 301(c) Licensee, the duration/term of all your
Financings must be for a minimum period of five years. Exception: You may finance a Disadvantaged Business for a minimum term of four years.

(b) General rule for Section 301(d) Licensees. The duration/term of your Financings may be for a minimum period of four years.

(c) Restrictions on mandatory redemption of Equity Securities. If you have acquired Equity Securities, options or warrants on terms that include redemption by the Small Business, you must not require redemption by the Small Business within the first five years of your acquisition except as permitted in §107.850.

(d) Special rules for Loans and Debt Securities. (1) Term. The minimum term for Loans and Debt Securities starts with the first disbursement of the Financing.

(2) Prepayment before five years. You must permit voluntary prepayment of Loans and Debt Securities by the Small Business at any time during the initial five year term. You must obtain SBA’s prior written approval of any restrictions on the ability of the Small Business to prepay other than the imposition of a reasonable prepayment penalty under paragraph (d)(3) of this section.

(3) Prepayment penalties. You may charge a reasonable prepayment penalty which must be agreed upon at the time of the Financing. If SBA determines that a prepayment penalty is unreasonable, you must refund the entire penalty to the Small Business. A prepayment penalty equal to 5 percent of the outstanding balance during the first year of any Financing, declining by one percentage point per year through the fifth year, is considered reasonable.

§ 107.835 Exceptions to minimum duration/term of Financing.

You may make a Short-term Financing for a term less than five years if the Financing is:

(a) An interim financing (for a period not to exceed one year) in contemplation of long-term Financing. The contemplated long-term Financing must be in an amount at least equal to the short-term Financing, and must be made by you alone or in participation with other investors; or

(b) For protection of your prior investment(s); or

(c) For the purpose of Financing a change of ownership under §107.750. The total amount of such Financings may not exceed 20 percent of your Loans and Investments (at cost) at the end of any fiscal year; or

(d) An LMI Investment with a term of at least one year; or

(e) For the purpose of aiding a Small Business in performing a contract awarded under a Federal, State, or local government set-aside program for “minority” or “disadvantaged” contractors.


§ 107.840 Maximum term of Financing.

The maximum term of any Loan or Debt Security Financing must be no longer than 20 years.

§ 107.845 Maximum rate of amortization on Loans and Debt Securities.

The principal of any Loan (or the loan portion of a Debt Security) with a term of five years or less cannot be amortized faster than straight line. If the term is greater than five years, the principal cannot be amortized faster than straight line for the first five years.

§ 107.850 Restrictions on redemption of Equity Securities.

(a) A Portfolio Concern cannot be required to redeem Equity Securities earlier than five years (or one year in the case of an LMI Investment) from the date of the first closing unless:

(1) The concern makes a public offering, or has a change of management or control, or files for protection under the provisions of the Bankruptcy Code, or materially breaches your Financing agreement; or

(2) You make a follow-on investment, in which case the new securities may be redeemed in less than five years, but no earlier than the redemption date associated with your earliest Financing of the concern.

(b) The redemption price must be either:
§ 107.855 Interest rate ceiling and limitations on fees charged to Small Businesses (“Cost of Money”).

“Cost of Money” means the interest and other consideration that you receive from a Small Business. Subject to lower ceilings prescribed by local law, the Cost of Money to the Small Business must not exceed the ceiling determined under this section.

(a) Financings to which the Cost of Money rules apply. This section applies to all Loans and Debt Securities. As required by §107.800(b), you must include as Debt Securities any equity interests with redemption provisions that do not meet the restrictions in §107.850.

(b) When to determine the Cost of Money ceiling for a Financing. You may determine your Cost of Money ceiling for a particular Financing as of the date you issue a Commitment or as of the date of the first closing of the Financing. Once determined, the Cost of Money ceiling remains fixed for the duration of the Financing.

(c) How to determine the Cost of Money ceiling for a Financing. At a minimum, you may use a Cost of Money ceiling of 19 percent for a Loan and 14 percent for a Debt Security. To determine whether you may charge more, do the following:

(1) Choose a base rate for your Cost of Money computation. The base rate may be either the Debenture Rate currently in effect plus the applicable Charge determined under §107.1130(d)(1), or your own “Cost of Capital” as determined under paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) For a Loan, add 11 percentage points to the base rate; for a Debt Security, add 6 percentage points. In either case, round the sum down to the nearest eighth of one percent.

(3) If the result is more than 19 percent (for a Loan) or 14 percent (for a Debt Security), you may use it as your Cost of Money ceiling.

(d) How to determine your Cost of Capital. “Cost of Capital” is an optional computation of the weighted average interest rate you pay on your “qualified borrowings”. “Qualified borrowings” means your Debentures together with your borrowings at or below the usual interest rate charged by banks in your locality on the date your loan was made.

(1) For any fiscal year, you may compute your Cost of Capital:

(i) As of the first day of your fiscal year, to remain in effect for the entire year; or

(ii) As of the first day of every fiscal quarter during the fiscal year, to remain in effect for the duration of the quarter.

(2) For each qualified borrowing outstanding at your last fiscal year or fiscal quarter end, multiply the ending principal balance (net of related unamortized fees) by the number of days during the past four fiscal quarters that the borrowing was outstanding, and divide the result by 365.

(3) Add together the amounts computed for all borrowings under paragraph (d)(2) of this section. The result is your weighted average borrowings.

(4) For all qualified borrowings outstanding at your last fiscal year or fiscal quarter end, determine the aggregate interest expense for the past four fiscal quarters, excluding amortization of loan fees. For the purposes of this paragraph (d)(4):
   (i) Interest expense on Debentures includes the 1 percent Charge paid by a Licensee under §107.1130(d)(1); and
   (ii) Section 301(d) Licensees with outstanding subsidized Debentures are presumed to have paid interest at the rate stated on the face of such Debentures, without regard to any subsidy paid by SBA.

(5) Divide the interest expense from paragraph (d)(4) of this section by the weighted average borrowings from paragraph (d)(3) of this section, and multiply by 100. The result is your Cost of Capital, which you may use to compute a Cost of Money ceiling under paragraph (c) of this section.

(e) SBA review of Cost of Capital computation. You must keep your Cost of Capital computations in a separate file available for SBA’s review.
   (1) A computation that is kept in such a file and is audited by your independent public accountant is considered correct unless SBA demonstrates otherwise.
   (2) If a computation is not kept in such a file or is unaudited, you must prove its accuracy to SBA’s satisfaction.

(f) Charges included in the Cost of Money. The Cost of Money includes all interest, points, discounts, fees, royalties, profit participation, and any other consideration you receive from a Small Business, except for the specific exclusions in paragraph (g) of this section. For equity interests subject to the Cost of Money rules (see paragraph (a) of this section), you must include:
   (1) The portion of the fixed redemption price that exceeds your original cost.
   (2) Any amount of a redemption that is paid out of accounts other than the Small Business’s capital accounts (capital, paid-in surplus, or retained earnings of a corporation; or partners’ capital of a partnership).

(g) Charges excluded from the Cost of Money. You may exclude from the Cost of Money:
   (1) Discount on the loan portion of a Debt Security, if such discount exists solely as the result of the allocation of value to detachable stock purchase warrants in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.
   (2) Closing fees, application fees, and expense reimbursements, each as permitted under §107.860.
   (3) Reasonable prepayment penalties permitted under §107.830(d)(3).
   (4) Out-of-pocket conveyance and/or recordation fees and taxes.
   (5) Reasonable closing costs.
   (6) Fees for management services as permitted under §107.900.
   (7) Reasonable and necessary out-of-pocket expenses you incur to monitor the Financing.
   (8) Board of director fees not in excess of those paid to other outside directors, if your board representation meets the requirements of §107.730(e).
   (9) A reasonable fee for arranging financing for a Small Business from a source that is neither a Licensee nor an Associate of yours. The Small Business must agree in writing to pay such a fee before you arrange the financing.
   (10) A one-time “bonus” that satisfies the requirements in paragraph (i) of this section.
   (11) The difference between the contractual interest rate of the Financing and a default rate of interest permitted as follows:
      (i) If a Small Business is in default, you may charge a default rate of interest as much as 7 percentage points higher than the contractual rate until the default is cured.
      (ii) For this purpose, “default” means either failure to pay an amount when due or failure to provide information required under the Financing documents.
   (12) Royalty payments based on improvement in the performance of the Small Business after the date of the Financing.
   (13) Gains realized on the disposition of Equity Securities issued by the Small Business.

(h) How to evaluate compliance with the Cost of Money ceiling. You must determine whether a Financing is within the Cost of Money ceiling based on its discounted cash flows, as follows:

63
§ 107.860 Financing fees and expense reimbursements a Licensee may receive from a Small Business.

You may collect Financing fees and receive expense reimbursements from a Small Business only as permitted under this §107.860.

(a) Application fee. You may collect a nonrefundable application fee from a Small Business to review its Financing application. The application fee may be collected at the same time as the closing fee under paragraph (c) or (d) of this section, or earlier. The fee must be:

(1) No more than 1 percent of the amount of Financing requested (or, if two or more Licensees participate in the Financing, their combined application fees are no more than 1 percent of the total Financing requested); and

(2) Agreed to in writing by the Financing applicant.

(b) SBA review of application fees. For any fiscal year, if the number of application fees you collect is more than twice the number of Financings closed, SBA in its sole discretion may determine that you are engaged in activities not contemplated by the Act, in violation of §107.500.

(c) Closing fee—Loans. You may charge a closing fee on a Loan if:

(1) The fee is no more than 2 percent of the Financing amount (or, if two or more Licensees participate in the Financing, their combined closing fees are no more than 2 percent of the total Financing amount); and

(2) You charge the fee no earlier than the date of the first disbursement.

(d) Closing fee—Debt or Equity Financings. You may charge a Closing Fee on a Debt Security or Equity Security Financing if:

(1) The fee is no more than 4 percent of the Financing amount (or, if two or more Licensees participate in the Financing, their combined closing fees are no more than 4 percent of the total Financing amount); and

(2) You charge the fee no earlier than the date of the first disbursement.

(e) Limitation on dual fees. If another Licensee or an Associate of yours collects a transaction fee under §107.900(e) in connection with your Financing of a Small Business, the sum of the transaction fee and your application and closing fees cannot exceed the maximum application and closing fees permitted under this §107.860.

(f) Expense reimbursements. You may charge a Small Business for the reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, other than Management Expenses, that you incur to process its Financing application. If SBA determines that any of your reimbursed expenses are unreasonable or are Management Expenses, SBA will require you to include such amounts in the Cost of Money or refund them to the Small Business.

(g) Breakup fee. If a Small Business accepts your Commitment and then fails to close the Financing because it has accepted funds from another source, you may charge a “breakup fee” equal to the closing fee that you would have been permitted to charge under paragraph (c) or (d) of this section.

[61 FR 3189, Jan. 31, 1996; 61 FR 41496, Aug. 9, 1996]

§ 107.865 Restrictions on Control of a Small Business by a Licensee.

(a) General. You must not operate a business enterprise or function as a holding company exercising Control over a business enterprise. Neither you, nor you and your Associates, nor you and other Licensee(s) (in the latter two cases, the “Investor Group”) may, except as set forth in this section, assume Control over a Small Business.
Small Business Administration

§ 107.880

through management agreements, voting trusts, majority representation on the board of directors, or otherwise.

(b) Presumption of Control. Control over a Small Business will be presumed to exist whenever you or the Investor Group own or control, directly or indirectly:

(1) At least 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities, if there are fewer than 50 shareholders; or

(2) More than 25 percent of the outstanding voting securities, if there are 50 or more shareholders; or

(3) A block of at least 20 percent of the outstanding voting securities, if there are 50 or more shareholders and no other party holds a larger block.

(c) Rebuttals to presumption of Control. A presumption of Control under paragraph (b) of this section is rebutted if:

(1) The management of the Small Business owns at least a 25 percent interest in the voting securities of the business; and

(2) The management of the Small Business can elect at least 40 percent of the board members of a corporation, general partners of a limited partnership, or managers of a limited liability company, as appropriate, and the Investor Group can elect no more than 40 percent. The balance of such officials may be elected through mutual agreement by management and the Investor Group.

(d) Temporary Control permitted. You may acquire temporary Control:

(1) Where reasonably necessary for the protection of your existing investment;

(2) If there has been a material breach of the Financing agreement by the Small Business;

(3) If there has been a substantial change in the Small Business’s operations or products during the past 2 years, or such a change is the intended result of the Financing, and the Investor Group’s Financing constitutes the Small Business’s major source of capital;

(4) In the case of a Start-up Financing, if you or the Investor Group constitute the Small Business’s major source of capital; or

(5) If your Financing of the Small Business is an LMI Investment.

(e) Control certification. If you take temporary Control of a Small Business under paragraph (d) of this section, you must file a Control certification with SBA within 30 days. The certification must state:

(1) The date on which you took Control;

(2) The basis for taking Control; and

(3) Your agreement to relinquish Control within five years (although you may, under extraordinary circumstances, request SBA’s approval of an extension beyond five years). In the case of an LMI Investment with a term of less than five years, you must agree to relinquish Control within the term of the financing.

(f) Control acquired through enforcement actions. If you retain or acquire Control through enforcement action, you must notify SBA immediately and submit a Control certification within 30 days.

(g) Additional Financing for businesses under Licensee’s Control. If you assume Control of a Small Business, you may later provide additional Financing, without an exemption under §107.730(a)(1).


§ 107.880 Assets acquired in liquidation of Portfolio securities.

You may acquire assets in full or partial liquidation of a Small Business’s obligation to you under the conditions permitted by this §107.880. The assets may be acquired from the Small Business, a guarantor of its obligation, or another party.

(a) Timely disposition of assets. You must dispose of assets acquired in liquidation of a Portfolio security within a reasonable period of time.

(b) Permitted expenditures to preserve assets. (1) You may incur reasonably necessary expenditures to maintain and preserve assets acquired;

(2) You may incur reasonably necessary expenditures for improvements to render such assets saleable.

(3) You may make payments of mortgage principal and interest (including amounts in arrears when you acquired the asset), pay taxes when due, and pay for necessary insurance coverage.
§ 107.885  SBA approval of expenditures. This paragraph (c) applies if you have outstanding Leverage or are applying for Leverage. Any application for SBA approval under this paragraph must specify all expenses estimated to be necessary pending disposal of the assets. Without SBA’s prior written approval:

(1) Your total expenditures under paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section plus your total Financing(s) to the Small Business must not exceed your overline limit under §107.740; and

(2) Your total expenditures under paragraph (b) of this section plus your total Financing(s) to the Small Business must not exceed 35 percent of your Regulatory Capital.

LIMITATIONS ON DISPOSITION OF ASSETS

§ 107.885 Disposition of assets to Licensee’s Associates or to competitors of Portfolio Concern.

(a) Sale of assets to Associate. Except with SBA’s prior written approval, you are not permitted to dispose of assets (including assets acquired in liquidation) to any Associate if you have outstanding Leverage or Earmarked Assets. As a prerequisite to such approval, you must demonstrate that the proposed terms of disposal are at least as favorable to you as the terms obtainable elsewhere.

(b) Sale of assets to competitor of Small Business. Except with the prior written approval of the Portfolio Concern (if it is not under your Control) or of SBA, you are not permitted to dispose of Portfolio securities to a competitor of such concern. If SBA’s prior approval is not required, you must promptly notify SBA of any such disposal.

MANAGEMENT SERVICES AND FEES

§ 107.900 Management fees for services provided to a Small Business by Licensee or its Associate.

This §107.900 applies to management services that you or your Associate provide to a Small Business during the term of a Financing or prior to Financing. It does not apply to management services that you or your Associate provide to a Small Business that you do not finance. Fees permitted under this section are not included in the Cost of Money (see §107.855).

(a) Permitted management fees. You or your Associate may provide management services to a Small Business financed by you if:

(1) You or your Associate have entered into a written contract with the Small Business;

(2) The fees charged are for services actually performed;

(3) Services are provided on an hourly fee, project fee, or other reasonable basis; and

(4) You can demonstrate to SBA, upon request, that the rate does not exceed the prevailing rate charged for comparable services by other organizations in the geographic area of the Small Business.

(b) Fees for service as a board member. You or your Associate may receive fees in the form of cash, warrants, or other payments, for services provided as members of the board of directors of a Small Business Financed by you. The fees must not exceed those paid to other outside board members. In the absence of such board members, fees must be reasonable when compared with amounts paid to outside directors of similar companies.

(c) SBA approval required. You must obtain SBA’s prior written approval of any management contract that does not satisfy paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section.

(d) Recordkeeping requirements. You must keep a record of hours spent and amounts charged to the Small Business, including expenses charged.

(e) Transaction fees. (1) You may charge reasonable transaction fees for work you or your Associate perform to prepare a client for a public offering, private offering, or sale of all or part of the business, and for assisting with the transaction. Compensation may be in the form of cash, notes, stock, and/or options.

(2) Your Associate may charge market rate investment banking fees to a Small Business on that portion of a Financing that you do not provide.
Subpart H—Non-leveraged Licensees—Exceptions to Regulations

§ 107.1000 Licensees without Leverage—exceptions to the regulations.

The regulatory exceptions in this section apply to Licensees with no outstanding Leverage or Earmarked Assets.

(a) You are exempt from the following provisions (but you must come into compliance with them to become eligible for Leverage):

(1) The overline limitation in §107.740.

(2) The restrictions in §107.530 on investments of idle funds, provided you do not engage in activities not contemplated by the Act.

(3) The restrictions in §107.550 on third-party debt.

(4) The restrictions in §107.880 on expenses incurred to maintain or improve assets acquired in liquidation of Portfolio securities.

(5) The recordkeeping requirements and fee limitations in §107.825(b) and (c), respectively, for securities purchased through or from an underwriter.

(b) You are exempt from the requirement in §107.680 to obtain SBA’s post approval of new directors and new officers, other than your chief operating officer. However, you must notify SBA of the new directors or officers within 30 days, and you must have all directors and officers approved by SBA in order to become eligible for Leverage.

Subpart I—SBA Financial Assistance for Licensees (Leverage)

GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT OBTAINING LEVERAGE

§ 107.1100 Types of Leverage and application procedures.

(a) Types of Leverage available. You may apply for Leverage from SBA in one or both of the following forms:

(1) The purchase or guarantee of your Debentures.

(2) The purchase or guarantee of your Participating Securities.

(b) Applying for Leverage. The Leverage application process has two parts. You must first apply for SBA’s conditional commitment to reserve a specific amount of Leverage for your future use. You may then apply to draw down Leverage against the commitment. See §§107.1200 through 107.1240.

(c) Where to send your application. Send all Leverage applications to SBA, Investment Division, 409 Third Street, S.W., Washington, DC 20416.

§ 107.1120 General eligibility requirements for Leverage.

To be eligible for Leverage, you must:

(a) Demonstrate a need for Leverage, evidenced by your investment activity and a lack of sufficient funds for investment. For your first issuance of Leverage, if you have invested at least 50 percent of your Leverageable Capital, you are presumed to lack sufficient funds for investment.

(b) Have adequate Private Capital to satisfy the requirements for financial viability under §107.200.
§ 107.1130

(c) Meet the minimum capital requirements of §107.210, subject to the following additional conditions:

(1) If you were licensed after September 30, 1996 under the exception in §107.210(a)(1), you will not be eligible for Leverage until you have Regulatory Capital of at least $5,000,000.

(2) If you were licensed on or before September 30, 1996, and have Regulatory Capital of less than $5,000,000 (less than $10,000,000 if you wish to issue Participating Securities):

(i) You must certify in writing that at least 50 percent of the aggregate dollar amount of your Financings extended after September 30, 1996 will be provided to Smaller Enterprises (as defined in §107.710(a)); and

(ii) You must demonstrate to SBA’s satisfaction that the approval of Leverage will not create or contribute to an unreasonable risk of default or loss to the United States government, based on such measurements of profitability and financial viability as SBA deems appropriate.

(d) Certify, if applicable, that you will satisfy the requirement in §107.710(d) to provide Financing to Smaller Enterprises.

(e) Certify in writing that you are in compliance with the requirement to finance Smaller Enterprises in §107.710(b).

(f) Show, to the satisfaction of SBA, that your management is qualified and has the knowledge, experience, and capability necessary for investing in the types of businesses contemplated by the Act, the regulations in this part and your business plan.

(g) Be in compliance with the regulations in this part.

(h) If required by SBA, have your Control Person(s) assume, in writing, personal responsibility for your Leverage, effective only if such Control Person(s) participate (directly or indirectly) in a transfer of Control not approved by SBA.

§ 107.1140 Licensee’s acceptance of SBA remedies under §§107.1800 through 107.1820.

If you issue Leverage after April 25, 1994, you automatically agree to the terms and conditions in §§107.1800 through 107.1820 as they exist at the time of issuance. The effect of these terms and conditions is the same as if they were fully incorporated in the terms of your Leverage.

(a) Leverage fee. You must pay a leverage fee to SBA for each issuance of a Debenture or Participating Security. The fee is 3 percent of the face amount of the Leverage issued.

(b) Payment of leverage fee. (1) If you issue a Debenture or Participating Security to repay or redeem existing Leverage, you must pay the leverage fee before SBA will guarantee or purchase the new Leverage security.

(2) If you issue a Debenture or Participating Security that is not used to repay or redeem existing Leverage, SBA will deduct the leverage fee from the proceeds remitted to you, unless you prepaid the fee under §107.1210.

(c) Refundability. The leverage fee is not refundable under any circumstances.

(d) Additional charge for Leverage.—(1) Debentures. You must pay to SBA a Charge of 1 percent per annum on the outstanding amount of your Debentures issued on or after October 1, 1996, payable under the same terms and conditions as the interest on the Debentures. This Charge does not apply to Debentures issued pursuant to a Leverage commitment obtained from SBA on or before September 30, 1996.

(2) Participating Securities. You must pay to SBA a Charge of 1 percent per annum on the outstanding amount of your Participating Securities issued on or after October 1, 1996, payable under the same terms and conditions as the Prioritized Payments on the Participating Securities. This Charge does not apply to Participating Securities issued pursuant to a Leverage commitment obtained from SBA on or before September 30, 1996.

(e) Other Leverage fees. SBA may establish a fee structure for services performed by the CRA. SBA will not collect any fee for its guarantee of TCs.

§ 107.1160 Maximum amount of Leverage for a Section 301(d) Licensee.

This section applies to Leverage issued by a Section 301(d) Licensee on or before September 30, 1996. Effective October 1, 1996, a Section 301(d) Licensee may apply to issue new Leverage, or refinance existing Leverage, only on the same terms permitted under §107.1150.

(a) Maximum amount of subsidized Leverage. (1) "Subsidized Leverage" means Debentures with a reduced interest rate and Preferred Securities. If you are a Section 301(d) Licensee:

(i) The maximum amount of subsidized Leverage you may have outstanding at any time is the lesser of 400 percent of your Leverageable Capital, or $35,000,000. The same limit applies to a group of Section 301(d) Licensees under Common Control.

(ii) The maximum amount of Preferred Securities you may have outstanding at any time is 200 percent of your Leverageable Capital.

(2) Certain types and amounts of subsidized Leverage have special eligibility requirements (see paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section).

(b) Maximum amount of total Leverage. Use §107.1150 (a) and (b)(1) to determine your maximum amount of Leverage as if you were a Section 301(c) Licensee. If the result is more than your maximum subsidized Leverage, then this is your maximum total (subsidized plus non-subsidized) Leverage. Otherwise, your maximum total Leverage is the same as your maximum subsidized Leverage.

For Participating Securities, see § 107.1170.

(c) Special eligibility requirements for fourth tier of Leverage. A "fourth tier of
§ 107.1170

Leverage’’ is any amount of outstanding Leverage in excess of 300 percent of your Leverageable Capital.

(1) To qualify for a fourth tier of Leverage, you must have invested (or have Commitments to invest) at least 30 percent of your ‘‘Total Funds Available for Investment’’ in ‘‘Venture Capital Financings’’ (see the definitions in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section).

(2) While you have a fourth tier of Leverage, you must maintain Venture Capital Financings (at cost) that equal at least 30 percent of your 'Total Funds Available for Investment'.

(d) Special eligibility requirements for second tier of Preferred Securities. A ‘‘second tier of Preferred Securities’’ is any amount of outstanding Preferred Securities in excess of 100 percent of your Leverageable Capital.

(1) To qualify for a second tier of Preferred Securities:
   (i) If your license was issued after October 13, 1971, you must have at least $500,000 of Leverageable Capital.
   (ii) You must have invested (or have Commitments to invest) at least the same dollar amount in Venture Capital Financings.

(2) While you have a second tier of Preferred Securities, you must maintain at least the same dollar amount in Venture Capital Financings.

(e) Definition of ‘‘Total Funds Available for Investment’’. Total Funds Available for Investment means the result obtained from the following formula:

\[ T = 0.90 \times (CA + LI) \]

Where:

\( T \) = Total funds available for investment

\( CA \) = Total current assets

\( LI \) = Total Loans and Investment at cost (as reported on SBA Form 468), net of current maturities

(f) Definition of ‘‘Venture Capital Financing’’. Venture Capital Financing means an investment represented by common or preferred stock, a limited partnership interest, or a similar ownership interest; or by an unsecured debt instrument that is subordinated by its terms to all other borrowings of the issuer.

(1) A debt secured by any agreement with a third party is not a Venture Capital Financing, whether or not you have a security interest in any asset of the third party or have recourse against the third party.

(2) A Financing that originally qualified as a Venture Capital Financing will continue to qualify (at its original cost), even if you later must report it on SBA Form 468 under either Assets Acquired in Liquidation of Portfolio Securities or Operating Concerns Acquired.

§ 107.1170 Maximum amount of Participating Securities for any Licensee.

The maximum amount of Participating Securities you may have outstanding at any time is 200 percent of your Leverageable Capital. If you are a Section 301(d) Licensee, the maximum combined amount of Participating Securities and Preferred Securities you may have outstanding at any time is 200 percent of your Leverageable Capital.

CONDITIONAL COMMITMENTS BY SBA TO RESERVE LEVERAGE FOR A LICENSEE

§ 107.1200 SBA’s Leverage commitment to a Licensee—application procedure, amount, and term.

(a) General. Under the provisions in §§107.1200 through 107.1240, you may apply for SBA’s conditional commitment to reserve a specific amount and type of Leverage for your future use. You may then apply to draw down Leverage against the commitment.

(b) Applying for a Leverage commitment. SBA will notify you when it is accepting requests for Leverage commitments. Upon receipt of your request, SBA will send you a complete application package.

(c) Limitations on the amount of a Leverage commitment. The amount of a Leverage commitment must be a multiple of $5,000.

(d) Term of Leverage commitment. SBA’s Leverage commitment will automatically lapse on the expiration date stated in the commitment letter issued to you by SBA.

§ 107.1210 Payment of leverage fee upon receipt of commitment.

(a) Partial prepayment of leverage fee. As a condition of SBA’s Leverage commitment, and before you draw any Leverage under such commitment, you must pay to SBA a non-refundable fee equal to 1 percent of the face amount of the Debentures or Participating Securities reserved under the commitment. This amount represents a partial prepayment of the 3 percent leverage fee established under §107.1130(a).

(b) Automatic cancellation of commitment. Unless you pay the fee required under paragraph (a) of this section by 5:00 P.M. Eastern Time on the 30th calendar day following the issuance of SBA’s Leverage commitment, the commitment will be automatically canceled.

[63 FR 5868, Feb. 5, 1998]

§ 107.1220 Requirement for Licensee to file quarterly financial statements.

As long as any part of SBA’s Leverage commitment is outstanding, you must give SBA a Financial Statement on SBA Form 468 (Short Form) as of the close of each quarter of your fiscal year (other than the fourth quarter, which is covered by your annual filing of Form 468 under §107.630(a)). You must file this form within 30 days after the close of the quarter. You will not be eligible for a draw if you are not in compliance with this §107.1220.

[64 FR 70996, Dec. 20, 1999]

§ 107.1230 Draw-downs by Licensee under SBA’s Leverage commitment.

(a) Licensee’s authorization of SBA to purchase or guarantee securities. By submitting a request for a draw against SBA’s Leverage commitment, you authorize SBA, or any agent or trustee SBA designates, to guarantee your Debenture or Participating Security and to sell it with SBA’s guarantee.

(b) Limitations on amount of draw. The amount of a draw must be a multiple of $5,000. SBA, in its discretion, may determine a minimum dollar amount for draws against SBA’s Leverage commitments. Any such minimum amounts will be published in Notices in the Federal Register from time to time.

(c) Effect of regulatory violations on Licensee’s eligibility for draws—(1) General rule. You are eligible to make a draw against SBA’s Leverage commitment only if you are in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Act and SBA regulations (i.e., no unresolved statutory or regulatory violations).

(2) Exception to general rule. If you are not in compliance, you may still be eligible for draws if:

(i) SBA determines that your outstanding violations are of non-substantive provisions of the Act or regulations and that you have not repeatedly violated any non-substantive provisions; or

(ii) You have agreed with SBA on a course of action to resolve your violations and such agreement does not prevent you from issuing Leverage.

(d) Procedures for funding draws. You may request a draw at any time during the term of the commitment. With each request, submit the following documentation:

(1) A statement certifying that there has been no material adverse change in your financial condition since your last filing of SBA Form 468 (see also §107.1220 for SBA Form 468 filing requirements).

(2) If your request is submitted more than 30 days following the end of your fiscal year, but before you have submitted your annual filing of SBA Form 468 (Long Form) in accordance with §107.630(a), a preliminary unaudited annual financial statement on SBA Form 468 (Short Form).

(3) A statement certifying that to the best of your knowledge and belief, you are in compliance with all provisions of the Act and SBA regulations (i.e., no unresolved regulatory or statutory violations), or a statement listing any specific violations you are aware of. Either statement must be executed by one of the following:

(i) An officer of the Licensee;

(ii) An officer of a corporate general partner of the Licensee; or

(iii) An individual who is authorized to act as or for a general partner of the Licensee.

(4) A statement that the proceeds are needed to fund one or more particular Small Businesses or to provide liquidity for your operations. If required by
§ 107.1240 Funding of Licensee’s draw request through sale to short-term investor.

(a) Licensee’s authorization of SBA to arrange sale of securities to short-term investor. By submitting a request for a draw of Debenture or Participating Security Leverage, you authorize SBA, or any agent or trustee SBA designates, to enter into any agreements (and to bind you to such agreements) necessary to accomplish:

1. The sale of your Debenture or Participating Security to a short-term investor at a rate that may be different from the Trust Certificate Rate which will be established at the time of the pooling of your security;

2. The purchase of your security from the short-term investor, either by you or on your behalf; and

3. The pooling of your security with other securities with the same maturity date.

(b) Sale of Debentures to a short-term investor. If SBA sells your Debenture to a short-term investor:

1. The sale price will be the face amount.

2. At the next scheduled date for the sale of Debenture Trust Certificates, whether or not the sale actually occurs, you must pay interest to the short-term investor for the short-term period. If the actual sale of Trust Certificates takes place after the scheduled date, you must pay the short-term investor interest from the scheduled sale date to the actual sale date. This additional interest is due on the actual sale date.

3. Failure to pay the interest constitutes noncompliance with the terms of your Leverage (see §107.1810).

(c) Sale of Participating Securities to a short-term investor. If SBA sells your Participating Security to a short-term investor, the sale price will be the face amount.

(d) Licensee’s right to repurchase its Debentures before pooling. You may repurchase your Debentures from the short-term investor before they are pooled. To do so, you must:

1. Give SBA written notice at least 10 days before the cut-off date for the pool in which your Debenture is to be included; and

2. Pay the face amount of the Debenture, plus interest, to the short-term investor.

§ 107.1400 Dividends or partnership distributions on 4 percent Preferred Securities.

If you issued Preferred Securities to SBA on or after November 21, 1989, you must pay SBA a dividend or partnership distribution of 4 percent per year, from the date you issued Preferred Securities to the date you repay them, both inclusive. The dividend or partnership distribution is:

(a) Computed on the par value of the outstanding stock or the face value of the outstanding limited partnership interest.

(b) Cumulative. This means that if you do not pay the entire dividend or partnership distribution for a given fiscal year, the unpaid balance accumulates as a distribution in arrears. You
§ 107.1500 General description of Participating Securities.

(a) Types of Participating Securities. Participating Securities are redeemable, preferred, equity-type securities.

§ 107.1450 Optional redemption of Preferred Securities.

(a) Redemption at par or face value. A Section 301(d) Licensee may redeem Preferred Securities at any time, provided you give SBA at least 30 days written notice. You may redeem all or only part of your Preferred Securities, but the par value or face value of the securities being redeemed must be at least $50,000. At the redemption date, you must pay to SBA:

(1) The par value (of preferred stock) or face value (of a preferred limited partnership interest); plus

(2) Any unpaid dividends or partnership distributions accrued to the redemption date.

(b) Repurchase of 3 percent preferred stock for less than par value. If you issued 3 percent preferred stock to SBA, you may ask SBA to sell it back to you at a price less than its par value. The terms and conditions of any such transaction will be as set forth in the Notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER on April 1, 1994 (Copies of this notice are available from SBA, 409 3rd Street, SW., Washington, DC, 20416). SBA has sole discretion to:

(1) Approve or disapprove the sale.

(2) Determine the sale price after considering any factors SBA considers appropriate.

(3) Determine the form of payment SBA will accept. SBA is not authorized to accept the proceeds of a subsidized Debenture as payment.
§ 107.1505

SBA may purchase or guarantee Participating Securities issued by Licensees in the form of limited partnership interests, preferred stock, or debentures with interest payable only to the extent of earnings. The structure, terms and conditions of Participating Securities are set forth in detail in §§ 107.1500 through 107.1590.

(b) Special eligibility requirements for Participating Securities. In addition to the general eligibility requirements for Leverage under § 107.1120, Participating Securities issuers must also comply with special rules on:

1. Minimum capital (see § 107.210).
2. Liquidity (see § 107.1505).
3. Non-SBA borrowing (see § 107.570).
4. Equity investing, as set forth in this paragraph (b)(4). If you issue Participating Securities, you must invest an amount equal to the Original Issue Price of such securities solely in Equity Capital Investments, as defined in § 107.50.

(c) Special features of Participating Securities—Prioritized Payments, Adjustments, and Profit Participation. When you issue Participating Securities, you agree to make the following payments:

1. Prioritized Payments. Depending upon the type of Participating Security you issue, Prioritized Payments may be preferred partnership distributions, preferred dividends, or interest. Your obligation to pay Prioritized Payments is contingent upon your profits as determined under § 107.1520.
2. Adjustments to Prioritized Payments. If you have unpaid Prioritized Payments, you must compute Adjustments, which are additional contingent obligations determined under § 107.1520. The conditions for paying Adjustments are the same as for Prioritized Payments.
3. SBA Profit Participation. Profit Participation is an amount payable to SBA under § 107.1530 in consideration for SBA’s guarantee of your Participating Securities.

(d) Distributions by Licensees issuing Participating Securities. Sections 107.1540 through 107.1580 govern both required and optional Distributions by Participating Securities issuers. Distributions include both profit distributions and returns of capital, paid either to SBA or to your non-SBA investors.

(e) Mandatory redemption of Participating Securities. You must redeem Participating Securities at the redemption date, which is the same as the maturity date of the Trust Certificates for the Trust containing such securities. The redemption date can never be later than 15 years after the issue date. You must pay the Redemption Price plus any unpaid Earned Prioritized Payments and any earned Adjustments and earned Charges (see § 107.1520).

(f) Priority of Participating Securities in liquidation of Licensee. In the event of your liquidation, the following are senior in priority, for all purposes, to all other equity interests you have issued at any time:

1. The Redemption Price of Participating Securities;
2. Any Earned Prioritized Payments and any earned Adjustments and earned Charges (see § 107.1520); and
3. Any Profit Participation allocated to SBA under § 107.1530.

§ 107.1505 Liquidity requirements for Licensees issuing Participating Securities.

If you have outstanding Participating Securities, you must maintain sufficient liquidity to avoid a condition of Liquidity Impairment. Such a condition will constitute noncompliance with the terms of your Leverage under § 107.1820(e).

(a) Definition of Liquidity Impairment. A condition of Liquidity Impairment exists when your Liquidity Ratio, as determined in paragraph (b) of this section, is less than 1.20. You are responsible for calculating whether you have a condition of Liquidity Impairment:

1. As of the close of your fiscal year;
2. At the time you apply for Leverage, unless SBA permits otherwise; and
3. At such time as you contemplate making any Distribution.

(b) Computation of Liquidity Ratio. Your Liquidity Ratio equals your Total Current Funds Available (A) divided by your Total Current Funds Required (B), as determined in the following table:
§107.1510 How a Licensee computes Earmarked Profit (Loss).

Computing your Earmarked Profit (Loss) is the first step in determining your obligations to pay Prioritized Payments, Adjustments and Charges under §107.1520 and Profit Participation under §107.1530.

(a) Requirement to compute your Earmarked Profit (Loss). While you have Participating Securities outstanding or have Earmarked Assets (as defined in paragraph (b) of this section), you must compute your Earmarked Profit (Loss) for:

(1) Each full fiscal year.
(2) Any interim period (consisting of one or more fiscal quarters) for which you want to make a Distribution.

(b) How to determine your Earmarked Assets. "Earmarked Assets" means all the Loans and Investments that you have when you issue Participating Securities or that you acquire while you have Participating Securities outstanding, and any non-cash assets that you receive in exchange for such Loans and Investments.

(1) An Earmarked Asset remains earmarked until you dispose of it, even if you no longer have any outstanding Participating Securities.
(2) Investments you make after redeeming all your Participating Securities are not Earmarked Assets. However, if you issue new Participating Securities, all of your Loans and Investments again become Earmarked Assets.
(3) If you were licensed before March 31, 1993, you may be permitted to exclude Loans and Investments held at that date from Earmarked Assets under §107.1590.

(c) How to compute your Earmarked Asset Ratio. You must determine your Earmarked Asset Ratio each time you compute Earmarked Profit (Loss). If all your Loans and Investments are Earmarked Assets, your Earmarked Asset Ratio equals 100 percent. Otherwise, compute your Earmarked Asset Ratio using the following formula:

\[
EAR = \left(\frac{EA}{LI}\right) \times 100
\]

where:

\[
EA = \text{Earmarked Asset Ratio.}
\]

\[
LI = \text{Average Loans and Investments (at cost) for the fiscal year or interim period.}
\]

(d) How to compute your Earmarked Profit (Loss) if Earmarked Asset Ratio is 100 percent. (1) (i) If your Earmarked Asset Ratio from paragraph (b) of this section is 100 percent, use the following formula to compute your Earmarked Profit (Loss):

\[
EP = NI + IK + EME
\]

where:

\[
EP = \text{Earmarked Profit (Loss)}
\]

\[
NI = \text{Net Income (Loss), as reported on SBA Form 468 except as otherwise provided in this paragraph (d)(1)}
\]
§ 107.1520 How a Licensee computes and allocates Prioritized Payments to SBA.

This section tells you how to compute Prioritized Payments, Adjustments and Charges on Participating Securities and determine the amounts you must pay. To distribute these amounts, see §107.1540.

(a) How to compute Prioritized Payments and Adjustments—(1) Prioritized Payments. For a full fiscal year, the Prioritized Payment on an outstanding Participating Security equals the Redemption Price times the related Trust Certificate Rate. For an interim period, you must prorate the annual Prioritized Payment. If your Participating Security was sold to a short-term investor in accordance with §107.1240, the Prioritized Payment for the short-term period equals the Redemption Price times the short-term rate.

(2) Adjustments. Compute Adjustments using paragraph (f) of this section.

(b) Licensee’s obligation to pay Prioritized Payments, Adjustments and Charges. You are obligated to pay Prioritized Payments, Adjustments and Charges only if you have profit as determined in paragraph (d) of this section.

(1) Prioritized Payments that you must pay (or have already paid) because you have sufficient profit are “Earned Prioritized Payments”.

(2) Prioritized Payments that have not become payable because you lack sufficient profit are “Accumulated Prioritized Payments”. Treat all Prioritized Payments as “Accumulated” until they become “Earned” under this section.

(3) Adjustments (computed under paragraph (f) of this section) and Charges (computed under §107.1130(d)(2)) are “earned” according to the same criteria applied to Prioritized Payments.
(c) How to keep track of Prioritized Payments. You must establish three accounts to record your Accumulated and Earned Prioritized Payments:

1. **Accumulation Account.** The Accumulation Account is a memorandum account. Its balance represents your Accumulated Prioritized Payments, unearned Adjustments and unearned Charges.

2. **Distribution Account.** The Distribution Account is a liability account. Its balance represents your unpaid Earned Prioritized Payments, earned Adjustments and earned Charges.

3. **Earned Payments Account.** The Earned Payments Account is a memorandum account. Each time you add to the Distribution Account balance, add the same amount to the Earned Payments Account. Its balance represents your total (paid and unpaid) Earned Prioritized Payments, earned Adjustments and earned Charges.

(d) How to determine your profit for Prioritized Payment purposes. As of the end of each fiscal year and any interim period for which you want to make a Distribution:

1. Bring the Accumulation Account up to date by adding to it all Prioritized Payments and Charges through the end of the appropriate fiscal period.

2. Determine whether you have profit for the purposes of this section by doing the following computation:
   - (i) Cumulative Earmarked Profit (Loss) under §107.1510(f);
   - (ii) The Earned Payments Account balance;
   - (iii) All Distributions previously made under §§107.1550, 107.1560 and 107.1570(a); minus
   - (iv) Any Profit Participation previously allocated to SBA under §107.1530, but not yet distributed.

3. The amount computed in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, if greater than zero, is your profit. If the amount is zero or less, you have no profit.

(e) Allocating Prioritized Payments to the Distribution Account. (1) If you have a profit under paragraph (d) of this section, determine the lesser of:

   (i) Your profit; or
   (ii) The balance in your Accumulation Account.

2. Subtract the result in paragraph (e)(1) of this section from the Accumulation Account and add it to the Distribution Account and the Earned Payments Account.

(f) How to compute Adjustments. You must compute Adjustments as of the end of each fiscal year if you have a balance greater than zero in either your Accumulation Account or your Distribution Account, after giving effect to any Distribution that will be made no later than the second Payment Date following the fiscal year end.

1. Determine the combined average Accumulation Account and Distribution Account balances for the fiscal year, assuming that Prioritized Payments accumulate on a daily basis without compounding.

2. Multiply the average balance computed in paragraph (f)(1) of this section by the average of the Trust Certificate Rates for all the Participating Securities poolings during the fiscal year.

3. Add the amounts computed in this paragraph (f) to your Accumulation Account.

(g) Licensee’s obligation to pay Prioritized Payments after redeeming Participating Securities. This paragraph (g) applies if you have redeemed all your Participating Securities, but you still hold Earmarked Assets and still have a balance in your Accumulation Account.

1. You must continue to perform all the procedures in this section as of the end of each fiscal quarter and prior to making any Distribution. You must distribute any Earned Prioritized Payments, earned Adjustments and earned Charges in accordance with §107.1540.

2. After you dispose of all your Earmarked Assets and make any required Distributions in accordance with §107.1540, your obligation to pay any remaining Accumulated Prioritized Payments, unearned Adjustments and unearned Charges will be extinguished.

[63 FR 5870, Feb. 5, 1998]
§ 107.1530 How a Licensee computes SBA’s Profit Participation.

This section tells you how to compute SBA’s Profit Participation. Profit Participation is included in the distributions you make to SBA under §§107.1550 and 107.1560.

(a) How to compute Profit Participation. Profit Participation equals your “Base” times your “Profit Participation Rate” (if the Base is zero or less, you do not owe SBA Profit Participation). Compute the Base using paragraph (c) of this section and the Profit Participation Rate using paragraphs (d) through (g) of this section. You must compute your Earmarked Profit (Loss) under §107.1510 and your Prioritized Payments and Adjustments under §107.1520 before you can compute Profit Participation.

(b) How to keep track of Profit Participation. You must establish a Profit Participation Account to record your computations under this section and payments under §§107.1550 and 107.1560. Its balance represents your unpaid Profit Participation.

(c) How to compute the Base. As of the end of each fiscal year and any year-to-date interim period for which you want to make a Distribution, compute your Base using the following formula:

\[ B = EP - PPA - UL \]

where:

- \( B \) = Base.
- \( EP \) = Earmarked Profit (Loss) for the period from §107.1510.
- \( PPA \) = Prioritized Payments for the period from §107.1520(a)(1), Adjustments (if applicable) from §107.1520(f), and Charges (if applicable) from §107.1130(d)(2).
- \( UL \) = “Unused Loss” from prior periods as determined in this paragraph (c).

(1) If the Base computed as of the end of your previous fiscal year (your “Previous Base”) was less than zero, your Unused Loss equals your Previous Base.

(2) If your Previous Base was zero or greater, your Unused Loss equals zero, with the following exception: If you made an interim Distribution of Profit Participation during your previous fiscal year, and your Previous Base was lower than the interim Base on which your Distribution was computed, then your Unused Loss equals the difference between the interim Base and the Previous Base. For example, assume you are computing your Base as of December 31, 1997, your fiscal year end. Your Previous Base, computed as of December 31, 1996, was $3,000,000. During 1996, you made an interim Distribution which was computed on a Base of $3,500,000 as of June 30, 1996. The $500,000 difference between the 1996 interim and year-end Bases would be carried forward as Unused Loss in the computation of your Base as of December 31, 1997.

(3) If you had no Participating Securities outstanding as of the end of your last fiscal year, you may request SBA’s approval to treat your Undistributed Net Realized Loss, as reported on SBA Form 468 for that year, as Unused Loss. If you did not file SBA Form 468 because you were not yet licensed as of the end of your last fiscal year, you may request SBA’s approval to treat pre-licensing losses as Unused Loss.

(d) How to compute the Profit Participation Rate. You must determine your Profit Participation Rate each time you compute a Base that is greater than zero. Compute the Rate by following the steps in paragraphs (e) through (g) of this section.

(e) Compute the “PLC ratio”. (1) General rule. The “PLC ratio” is the highest ratio of outstanding Participating Securities to Leverageable Capital that you have ever attained.

(2) Exception. You may reduce the ratio computed under paragraph (e)(1) of this section if you have increased your Leverageable Capital above its highest previous level. The increase must have taken place at least 120 days before the date as of which your Base is computed. In addition, the increase must have been expressly provided for in a plan of operations submitted to and approved by SBA in writing, or must be the result of the takedown of commitments or the conversion of non-cash assets that were included in your Private Capital. If these conditions are satisfied, compute your reduced PLC ratio as follows:

(1) Divide the highest dollar amount of Participating Securities you have ever had outstanding by your increased Leverageable Capital.
§ 107.1530

(f) Compute the Profit Participation Rate (before indexing). Compute the Profit Participation Rate (before indexing) using the table in this paragraph (f). Then go to paragraph (g) of this section to determine whether to index the Profit Participation Rate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If your PLC ratio:</th>
<th>Then your Profit Participation Rate is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 or less</td>
<td>9%×PLC Ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 1</td>
<td>9%+3%×(PLC ratio-1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(g) Indexing the Profit Participation Rate. The Profit Participation Rate is indexed, up or down, to the yield-to-maturity on Treasury bonds with a remaining term of ten (10) years (the "Treasury Rate"). You must perform the indexing procedures in this paragraph (g) unless the Treasury Rate was exactly 8 percent on every date that you issued Participating Securities.

1. Licensees that have issued Participating Securities on only one occasion. Determine the Treasury Rate for the date you issued your Participating Security. Adjust the Profit Participation Rate from paragraph (f) of this section by the percentage difference between the Treasury Rate and 8 percent. For example, assume that you issued Participating Securities when the Treasury Rate was 10 percent. The percentage difference between 10 percent and 8 percent is 25 percent. If you had a PLC ratio of 1, the Profit Participation Rate before indexing would be 9 percent. You would increase this rate by 25 percent, giving you a Profit Participation Rate of 11.25 percent.

2. Licensees that have issued Participating Securities on more than one occasion. Determine the Treasury Rate for each of the dates you issued Participating Securities. Compute an average of all such Treasury Rates, weighted to reflect the dollar amount of each issuance (ignoring any redemptions) and the number of days from the date of each issuance to the date as of which you are computing the Profit Participation Rate.

Example to paragraph (g)(2)(i) of this section. If you issued $10 million of Participating Securities on the 60th day of Fiscal Year 1 when the Treasury Rate was 8 percent, and another $15 million on the 100th day of Fiscal Year 3 when the Treasury Rate was 10 percent, then the weighted average Treasury Rate computed as of the end of Fiscal Year 3 would be 8.55 percent. [Days elapsed since first issuance of Participating Securities = 1,035; days elapsed since second issuance of Participating Securities = 265; weighted amount of first issuance = $10,000,000 × 1,035/1,035 = $10,000,000; weighted amount of second issuance = $15,000,000 × 265/1035 = $3,840,579; weighted average amount of Participating Securities issued = $10,000,000 + $3,840,579 = $13,840,579; weighted average Treasury Rate= ((.08 × $10,000,000) + (.10 × $3,840,579)) / $13,840,579 = 8.55%]

(ii) Adjust the Profit Participation Rate from paragraph (f) of this section by the percentage difference between the weighted average Treasury Rate and 8 percent. In the example given in paragraph (g)(2)(i) of this section, if the PLC ratio were equal to 2, the Profit Participation Rate for the fiscal year would be 12.83 percent. [(((.0855 -.08) ÷ .08) + 1) × .12 × 100 = 12.83%]

(h) Computing SBA’s Profit Participation. If the Base from paragraph (c) of this section is greater than zero, you must compute SBA’s Profit Participation as follows:

1. Multiply the Base from paragraph (c) of this section by the Profit Participation Rate from paragraph (g) of this section.

2. If your last Profit Participation computation was for an interim period during the same fiscal year and used a higher Profit Participation Rate than the Rate you just used in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, you must adjust the amount computed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section as follows:

(i) Determine the difference between the Profit Participation Rate you just used in paragraph (h)(1) of this section and the Rate used in your previous computation;

(ii) Multiply the difference by the Base from your last Profit Participation computation; and

(iii) Add the result to the amount you computed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section.
§ 107.1540

(3) Reduce the Profit Participation computed in paragraphs (h)(1) and (h)(2) of this section by any amounts of Profit Participation that you distributed or reserved for distribution to SBA, or its designated agent or Trustee, for any previous interim period(s) during the fiscal year. The result is SBA’s Profit Participation (unless it is less than zero, in which case SBA’s Profit Participation is zero).

(i) Allocation of Profit Participation. Before any Distribution and in any case within 120 days following the end of your fiscal year, you must add the amount of Profit Participation computed under this §107.1530 to the Profit Participation Account. You must reserve funds equal to this amount or use them for any other purpose.

§ 107.154080

§ 107.1550 Distributions by Licensee—prioritized Payments and Adjustments.

After you compute Prioritized Payments and Adjustments under §107.1520, you must distribute them in accordance with this §107.1540. You must notify SBA of any planned distribution under this section 10 business days before the distribution date, unless SBA permits otherwise.

(a) Requirement to distribute Prioritized Payments and Adjustments. This paragraph (a) applies only if you satisfy the liquidity requirement in §107.1505. All Distributions under this paragraph (a) go to SBA or its designated agent or Trustee; you may not reinvest these funds or use them for any other purpose.

(b) Additional requirement for Licensees with undistributed Prioritized Payments. This paragraph (b) applies if you do not distribute the full amount in your Distribution Account by the second Payment Date following the end of your fiscal year. At the end of each fiscal quarter, until you reduce the balance in your Distribution Account to zero, you must:

(1) Do all the steps in §107.1520; and

(2) Distribute the balance in your Distribution Account on the next Payment Date following the end of your fiscal quarter, provided you satisfy the liquidity requirement in §107.1505.

§ 107.1550 Distributions by Licensee—permitted “tax Distributions” to private investors and SBA.

If you have outstanding Participating Securities or Earmarked Assets, and you are a limited partnership, “S Corporation,” or equivalent pass-through entity for tax purposes, you may make “tax Distributions” to your investors in accordance with this §107.1550, whether or not they have an actual tax liability. SBA receives a share of any tax Distribution you make. This section tells you when you may make a “tax Distribution” and how to compute it. You must notify SBA of any planned distribution under this section 10 business days before the distribution date, unless SBA permits otherwise.

(a) Conditions for making a tax Distribution. You may make a tax Distribution only if:

(1) You have paid all your Prioritized Payments, Adjustments, and Charges, so that the balance in both your Distribution Account and your Accumulation Account is zero (see §107.1520).

(2) You satisfy the liquidity requirement in §107.1505.

(3) The tax Distribution does not exceed your Retained Earnings Available for Distribution.

(4) The tax Distribution does not exceed the Maximum Tax Liability from paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) How to compute the Maximum Tax Liability. (1) You may compute your Maximum Tax Liability for a full fiscal year or for any calendar quarter. Use the following formula:

\[ M = (TOI \times HRO) + (TCG \times HRC) \]

where:

TOI

HRO

TCG

HRC
§ 107.1560 Distributions by Licensee—required Distributions to private investors and SBA.

You must make Distributions under this §107.1560 if you have outstanding Participating Securities or Earmarked Assets and you satisfy the conditions in paragraph (a) of this section. Distributions under this section are determined as of the end of each fiscal year. You must notify SBA of any planned distribution under this section 10 business days before the distribution date, unless SBA permits otherwise.

(a) Conditions for making Distributions. Distributions under this section are subject to the following conditions:

(1) You must have paid all Prioritized Payments, Adjustments and Charges, so that the balance in both your Distribution Account and your Accumulation Account is zero (see §§107.1520 and 107.1540).

(2) You must have made any permitted tax Distribution to its designated agent or Trustee.

(3) SBA will apply its share of the tax Distribution in the order set forth in §107.1560(g).

(d) Paying a tax Distribution. You may make an annual tax Distribution on the first or second Payment Date following the end of your fiscal year. You may make a quarterly tax Distribution on the first Payment Date following the end of the calendar quarter for which the Distribution is being made. See also §107.1575(a).

(e) Excess tax Distributions. (1) As of the end of your fiscal year, you must determine whether you made any excess tax Distributions for the year in accordance with paragraph (e)(2) of this section. Any tax Distributions that you make for a subsequent period must be reduced by the excess amount distributed.

(2) Determine your excess tax Distributions by adding together all your quarterly tax Distributions for the year (ignoring any required reductions for excess tax Distributions made in prior years), and subtracting the maximum tax Distribution that you would have been permitted to make based upon a single computation performed for the entire fiscal year. The result, if greater than zero, is your excess tax Distribution for the year.
§ 107.1560

(4) The amount you distribute under this section must not exceed your remaining Retained Earnings Available for Distribution.

(b) Total amount you must distribute. Unless SBA permits otherwise, the total amount you must distribute equals the result (if greater than zero) of the following computation:

(1) Your Retained Earnings Available for Distribution as of the end of your fiscal year, after giving effect to any Distribution under §§107.1540 and 107.1550; minus

(2) All previous Distributions under this section and §107.1570(a) that were applied as redemptions or repayments of Leverage; plus

(3) All previous Distributions under §107.1570(b) that reduced your Retained Earnings Available for Distribution.

(c) When you must make Distributions. You must make the required Distributions on either the first or second Payment Date following the end of your fiscal year.

(d) Effect of Distributions on Retained Earnings Available for Distribution. Distributions under this §107.1560 have the following effect on your Retained Earnings Available for Distribution:

(1) All Distributions to private investors reduce Retained Earnings Available for Distribution.

(2) Distributions to SBA, or its designated agent or Trustee, reduce Retained Earnings Available for Distribution if they are applied as a repayment or redemption of Leverage (see paragraph (g) of this section).

(3) Distributions to SBA, or its designated agent or Trustee, do not reduce Retained Earnings Available for Distribution if they are applied as a payment of Profit Participation or distributions on Preferred Securities (see paragraph (g) of this section).

(e) SBA’s share of the total Distribution. Use the following table to determine the percentage share of the total Distribution (from paragraph (b) of this section) that goes to SBA (or its designated agent or Trustee):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SBA’s Percentage Share of Total Distribution</th>
<th>Then SBA’s percentage share of the Distribution is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Over 200% ..................................</td>
<td>([Leverage / (Leverage + Leverageable Capital)] × 100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 100% but not over 200% ................</td>
<td>50%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100% or less ..............................</td>
<td>Profit Participation Rate from §107.1530.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(f) Exceptions to the Distribution requirement. (1) With SBA’s prior written approval, you may withhold from distribution reasonable reserves necessary to protect your investments or relative position in Loans and Investments and to meet contingent liabilities.

(i) If you submit a written request for SBA approval, you may consider it approved unless SBA notifies you otherwise within 30 days from receipt.

(ii) Reserves that you withhold from distribution may not be used to make investments in additional portfolio companies.

(iii) Withholding of reserves under this paragraph (f)(1) is not a “payment failure” in violation of §107.1820(e)(6).

(2) SBA may restrict Distributions under this §107.1560 if SBA determines that the value of your assets is materially overstated. SBA must give you notice of such a determination in advance of your proposed Distribution.

(g) How SBA will apply your Distributions. Your Distributions to SBA (or its designated agent or Trustee) under this §107.1560 will be applied in the following order:

(1) First, to Profit Participation;

(2) Second, to the extent there remain any Retained Earnings Available for Distribution, to distributions on Preferred Securities;

(3) Third, as a redemption of Participating Securities in order of issue;

(4) Fourth, as a redemption of Preferred Securities; and

(5) Fifth, as the repayment of principal of any outstanding Debentures, with such repayment to be made into
§ 107.1570 Distributions by Licensee—optional Distribution to private investors and SBA.

If you have outstanding Participating Securities or Earmarked Assets, you may make two types of optional Distributions under this §107.1570: quarterly Distributions determined the same way as the required annual Distributions in §107.1560, and Distributions allocated between SBA and your private investors in proportion to the capital contributions of each. You must notify SBA of any planned distribution under this section 10 business days before the distribution date, unless SBA permits otherwise.

(a) Quarterly Distributions subject to conditions in §107.1560. (1) You may make Distributions under this paragraph (a) as of the end of any fiscal quarter, giving SBA (or its designated agent or Trustee) a percentage share determined under §107.1560(e).

(2) Such Distributions are subject to all the provisions in §107.1560 (a)(1), (a)(3), (a)(4), (d), (f)(2), and (g).

(3) You may make such Distributions only on the next Payment Date following the end of your fiscal quarter.

(4) The total amount of such Distributions may not exceed the result of the following computation:

(i) Your Retained Earnings Available for Distribution as of the end of your fiscal quarter; minus

(ii) All previous Distributions under this paragraph (a) or §107.1560 that were applied as redemptions or repayments of Leverage; plus

(iii) All previous Distributions under paragraph (b) of this section that reduced your Retained Earnings Available for Distribution.

(b) Other optional Distributions. On any Payment Date, you may make additional Distributions to your private investors and to SBA (or its designated agent or Trustee) under this paragraph (b).

(1) Conditions for making a Distribution. You may make a Distribution under this paragraph (b) only if:

(i) You have distributed all Earned Prioritized Payments, earned Adjustments, and earned Charges, so that the balance in your Distribution Account is zero (see §107.1520).

(ii) You have distributed all Profit Participation computed under §107.1530 which you are required to distribute under §107.1560 or permitted to distribute under §107.1560 or which you are required to distribute under §107.1560 or permitted to distribute under §107.1560 or which you are required to distribute under §107.1560 or permitted to distribute under §107.1560 or which you are required to distribute under §107.1560 or permitted to distribute under §107.1560.

(iii) You satisfy the liquidity requirement in §107.1565 or obtain SBA’s prior written approval of the Distribution.

(iv) You do not have a condition of Capital Impairment.

(v) The Distribution does not reduce your Regulatory Capital (excluding commitments from Institutional Investors) below the minimum required under §107.210, unless SBA approves the reduction as part of a plan of liquidation.

(vi) The Distribution does not cause you to have excess Leverage contrary to section 303 of the Act.

(2) SBA’s share of Distribution. (i) If your Capital Impairment Percentage under §107.1840 is zero, SBA’s percentage share of any Distribution under this paragraph (b) equals:

\[ \frac{\text{Leverage}}{\text{Leverage} + \text{Leverageable Capital}} \times 100 \]

In this formula, use Leverage and Leverageable Capital as of the date of the Distribution, after giving effect to any Distribution under §107.1560 and paragraph (a) of this section.

(ii) If your Capital Impairment Percentage under §107.1840 is greater than zero, you must modify the formula in paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section by replacing Leverageable Capital with:

\[ \text{Leverageable Capital} \times (100\% - \text{CIP}) \]

where “CIP” is your Capital Impairment Percentage or 100 percent, whichever is less.

(3) How SBA will apply Distributions. Any amounts you distribute to SBA, or its designated agent or Trustee, under this paragraph (b) will be applied as a repayment or redemption of Leverage in the order set forth in §107.1560(g)(3) through (g)(5).

(4) Effect of Distributions on Retained Earnings Available for Distribution. Any
§ 107.1575 Distributions on other than Payment Dates.

(a) Permitted Distributions on other than Payment Dates. Notwithstanding any provisions to the contrary in §§107.1540 through 107.1570, you may make Distributions on dates other than Payment Dates as follows:

(1) Required annual Distributions under §107.1540(a)(1), annual Distributions under §107.1550, and any Distributions under §107.1560 must be made no later than the second Payment Date following the end of your fiscal year.

(2) Required Distributions under §107.1540(b) must be made no later than the first Payment Date following the end of the applicable fiscal quarter;

(3) Optional Distributions under §107.1540(a)(2) and §107.1570 may be made on any date.

(4) Quarterly Distributions under §107.1550 must be made no earlier than the last day of the calendar quarter for which the Distribution is being made and no later than the first Payment Date following the end of such calendar quarter.

(b) Conditions for making Distribution. All Distributions under this section are subject to the following conditions:

(1) You must obtain SBA’s written approval before the distribution date;

(2) The ending date of the period for which you compute your Earmarked Profits, Prioritized Payments, Adjustments, Charges, Profit Participation, Retained Earnings Available for Distribution, liquidity ratio, Capital Impairment, and any other applicable computations required under §§107.1500 through 107.1570, must be:

(i) The distribution date, or

(ii) If your Distribution includes annual Distributions under §§107.1540(a)(1), 107.1550 and/or 107.1560, your most recent fiscal year end;

(3) If your Distribution includes an amount which SBA will apply as a redemption of Participating Securities, the effective date of such redemption, for all purposes including future computations of Prioritized Payments, will be the next Payment Date following the distribution date.


§ 107.1580 Special rules for In-Kind Distributions by Licensees.

(a) In-Kind Distributions while Licensee has outstanding Participating Securities. A Distribution under §§107.1540, 107.1560 or 107.1570 may consist of securities (an “In-Kind Distribution”). Such a Distribution must satisfy the conditions in this paragraph (a).

(1) You may distribute only Distributable Securities.

(2) You must distribute each security pro-rata to all investors and to SBA or its designated agent or Trustee, based on the amounts that each party would receive if the Distribution were in cash.

(3) You must impute a gain (loss) on each security being distributed as if it were being sold, using the value of the security as of the declaration date of the Distribution (if you are a Corporate Licensee) or the distribution date (if you are a Partnership Licensee).

(4) You must deposit SBA’s share of securities being distributed with a disposition agent designated by SBA. As an alternative, if you agree, SBA may direct you to dispose of its shares. In this case, you must promptly remit the proceeds to SBA.

(b) In-Kind Distributions after Licensee has redeemed all Participating Securities. This paragraph (b) applies from the time you redeem all your Participating Securities until you dispose of all your Earmarked Assets.

(1) You may make an In-Kind Distribution of an Earmarked Asset only if you pay SBA the lower of:

(i) An amount equal to the Unrealized Appreciation on the asset; or

(ii) The full amount of your Accumulated Prioritized Payments and unpaid Adjustments.
Small Business Administration §107.1600

(2) You must obtain SBA’s prior written approval of any In-Kind Distribution of Earmarked Assets that are not Distributable Securities, specifically including approval of the valuation of the assets.


You may, in SBA’s discretion, retire a Debenture through the issuance of Participating Securities. To do so, you must:

(a) Obtain SBA’s approval to issue Participating Securities;
(b) Pay all unpaid accrued interest on the Debenture, plus any applicable pre-payment penalties, fees, and other charges;
(c) Have outstanding Equity Capital Investments (at cost) equal to the amount of the Debenture being refinanced; and
(d) Classify all your existing Loans and Investments as Earmarked Assets.

[63 FR 5869, Feb. 5, 1998]

§107.1590 Special rules for companies licensed on or before March 31, 1993.

This section applies to companies licensed on or before March 31, 1993 that apply to issue Participating Securities.

(a) Election to exclude pre-existing portfolio. You may choose to exclude all (but not a portion) of your Loans and Investments as of March 31, 1993, from classification as Earmarked Assets if:

(1) The proceeds of your first issuance of Participating Securities are not used to refinance outstanding Debentures (see §107.1585(a)). SBA will consider payment or prepayment of any outstanding Debenture to be a refinancing unless you demonstrate to SBA’s satisfaction that you can pay the Debenture principal without relying on the proceeds of the Participating Securities.

(2) SBA, in its sole discretion, approves the exclusion.

(b) Treatment of pre-existing portfolio if not excluded. If you do not choose to exclude your Loans and Investments as of March 31, 1993, they will be Earmarked Assets for all purposes.

(c) Requirements for Licensee’s first issuance of Participating Securities. When you apply for your first issuance of Participating Securities, you must comply with the following:

(1) For each of your Loans and Investments, you must submit:

(i) The most recent annual report (or fiscal year-end financial statements) and the most recent interim financial statements of the Small Business; and

(ii) Your valuation reports on the Small Business, prepared as of the end of each of your last three fiscal years. If you have applied for Participating Securities on the basis of interim financial statements, you must also submit a valuation report as of your interim financial statement date.

(2) If you have negative Undistributed Net Realized Earnings and/or a net Unrealized Loss on Securities Held, SBA may require you to undergo a quasi-reorganization in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

(3) If your financial statements accompanying the Participating Securities application are for an interim period, you must have your SBA-approved independent public accountant perform a limited-scope audit of the statements. For purposes of this paragraph (d)(3), “limited scope audit” means auditing procedures sufficient to enable the independent public accountant to express an opinion on the Statement of Financial Position and the accompanying Schedule of Loans and Investments.


FUNDING LEVERAGE BY USE OF SBA-GUARANTEED TRUST CERTIFICATES (“TCS”)

§107.1600 SBA authority to issue and guarantee Trust Certificates.

(a) Authorization. Sections 319(a) and (b) of the Act authorize SBA or its CRA to issue TCS, and SBA to guarantee the timely payment of the principal and interest thereon. Any guarantee by SBA of such TC is limited to the principal and interest due on the Debentures or the Redemption Price of and Prioritized Payments on Participating Securities.
Securities in any Trust or Pool backing such TC. The full faith and credit of the United States is pledged to the payment of all amounts due under the guarantee of any TC.

(b) Periodic exercise of authority. SBA will issue guarantees of Debentures and Participating Securities under section 303 and of TCs under section 319 of the Act at six month intervals, or at shorter intervals, taking into account the amount and number of such guarantees or TCs.

(c) SBA authority to arrange public or private fundings of Leverage. SBA in its discretion may arrange for public or private financing under its guarantee authority. Such financing arranged by SBA may be accomplished by the sale of individual Debentures or Participating Securities, aggregations of Debentures or Participating Securities, or Pools or Trusts of Debentures or Participating Securities.

(d) Pass-through provisions. TCs shall provide for a pass-through to their holders of all amounts of principal and interest paid on the Debentures, or the Redemption Price of and Prioritized Payments on the Participating Securities, in the Pool or Trust against which they are issued.

(e) Formation of a Pool or Trust holding Leverage Securities. SBA shall approve the formation of each Pool or Trust. SBA may, in its discretion, establish the size of the Pools and their composition, the interest rate on the TCs issued against Trusts or Pools, fees, discounts, premiums and other charges made in connection with the Pools, Trusts, and TCs, and any other characteristics of a Pool or Trust it deems appropriate.


§ 107.1620 Functions of agents, including Central Registration Agent, Selling Agent and Fiscal Agent.

(a) Agents. SBA will appoint or cause to be appointed agent(s) to perform functions necessary to market and service Debentures, Participating Securities, or TCs pursuant to this part.

(b) Selling Agent. As a condition of guaranteeing a Debenture or Participating Security, SBA shall cause each
Licensee to appoint a Selling Agent to perform functions which include, but are not limited to:

(i) Selecting qualified entities to become pool or Trust assemblers ("Poolers").

(ii) Receiving guaranteed Debentures and Participating Securities as well as negotiating the terms and conditions of periodic offerings of Debentures and/or TCs with Poolers on behalf of Licensees.

(iii) Directing and coordinating periodic sales of Debentures and Participating Securities and/or TCs.

(iv) Arranging for the production of the Offering Circular, certificates, and such other documents as may be required from time to time.

(2) Fiscal Agent. SBA shall appoint a Fiscal Agent to:

(i) Establish performance criteria for Poolers.

(ii) Monitor and evaluate the financial markets to determine those factors that will minimize or reduce the cost of funding Debentures or Participating Securities.

(iii) Monitor the performance of the Selling Agent, Poolers, CRA, and the Trustee.

(iv) Perform such other functions as SBA, from time to time, may prescribe.

(3) Central Registration Agent. Pursuant to a contract entered into with SBA, the CRA, as SBA's agent, will do the following with respect to the Pools or Trust Certificates for the Debentures or Participating Securities:

(i) Form an SBA-approved Pool or Trust;

(ii) Issue the TCs in the form prescribed by SBA;

(iii) Transfer the TCs upon the sale of original issue TCs in any secondary market transaction;

(iv) Receive payments from Licensees;

(v) Make periodic payments as scheduled or required by the terms of the TCs, and pay all amounts required to be paid upon prepayment of Debentures or redemption of Participating Securities;

(vi) Hold, safeguard, and release all Debentures and Participating Securities constituting Trusts or Pools upon instructions from SBA;

(vii) Remain custodian of such other documentation as SBA shall direct by written instructions;

(viii) Provide for the registration of all pooled Debentures and Participating Securities, all Pools and Trusts, and all TCs;

(ix) Perform such other functions as SBA may deem necessary to implement the provisions of this section.

(b) Functions. The function of locating purchasers, and negotiating and closing the sale of Debentures, Participating Securities and TCs, may be performed either by SBA or an agent appointed by SBA. Nothing in the regulations in this part shall be interpreted to prevent the CRA from acting as SBA's agent for this purpose.

§107.1630 SBA regulation of Brokers and Dealers and disclosure to purchasers of Leverage or Trust Certificates.

(a) Disclosure to purchasers. Prior to any sale of a Debenture, Participating Security, or TC, SBA shall require the seller, or the broker or dealer as agent for the seller, to disclose to the purchaser, in a form prescribed or approved by SBA, specified information on the terms, conditions, and yield of such instrument.

(b) Brokers and Dealers. Each broker, dealer, and Pool or Trust assembler approved by SBA pursuant to these regulations shall either be regulated by a Federal financial regulatory agency, or be a member of the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASD), and shall be in good standing in respect to compliance with the financial, ethical, and reporting requirements of such body. They also shall be in good standing with SBA as determined by the SBA Associate Administrator for Investment (see paragraph (d) of this section) and shall provide a fidelity bond or insurance in such amount as SBA may require.

(c) Suspension and/or termination of Broker or Dealer. SBA shall exclude from the sale and all other dealings in Debentures, Participating Securities or TCs any broker or dealer:

(1) If such broker's or dealer's authority to engage in the securities business has been revoked or suspended by a supervisory agency. When such
authority has been suspended, such broker or dealer will be suspended by SBA for the duration of such suspension by the supervisory agency.

(2) If such broker or dealer has been indicted or otherwise formally charged with a misdemeanor or felony bearing on its fitness, such broker or dealer may be suspended while the charge is pending. Upon conviction, participation may be terminated.

(3) If such broker or dealer has suffered an adverse final civil judgment, holding that such broker or dealer has committed a breach of trust or violation of law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or relationships, participation in the market for Debentures, Participating Securities or TCs may be terminated.

(4) If such broker or dealer has failed to make full disclosure of the information required by SBA in paragraph (a) of this section, such broker’s or dealer’s participation in the market for Debentures, Participating Securities or TCs may be terminated.

(d) Termination/suspension proceedings. A broker’s or dealer’s participation in the market for Debentures, Participating Securities or TCs will be conducted in accordance with part 134 of this chapter. SBA may, for any of the reasons stated in paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(4) of this section, suspend the privilege of any broker or dealer to participate in this market. SBA shall give written notice at least ten (10) business days prior to the effective date of such suspension. Such notice shall inform the broker or dealer of the opportunity for a hearing pursuant to part 134 of this chapter.

§107.1640 SBA access to records of the CRA, Brokers, Dealers and Pool or Trust assemblers.

The CRA and any broker, dealer and Pool or Trust assembler operating under the regulations in this part shall make all books, records and related materials associated with Debentures, Participating Securities and TCs available to SBA for review and copying purposes. Such access shall be at such party’s primary place of business during normal business hours.

MISCELLANEOUS

§107.1700 Transfer by SBA of its interest in Licensee’s Leverage security.

Upon such conditions and for such consideration as it deems reasonable, SBA may sell, assign, transfer, or otherwise dispose of any Preferred Security, Debenture, Participating Security, or other security held by or on behalf of SBA in connection with Leverage. Upon notice by SBA, Licensee will make all payments of principal, dividends, interest, Prioritized Payments, and redemptions as shall be directed by SBA. Licensee will be liable for all damage or loss which SBA may sustain by reason of such disposal, up to the amount of Licensee’s liability under such security, plus court costs and reasonable attorney’s fees incurred by SBA.

§107.1710 SBA authority to collect or compromise its claims.

SBA may, upon such conditions and for such consideration as it deems reasonable, collect or compromise all claims relating to Preferred or Participating Securities or obligations held or guaranteed by SBA, and all legal or equitable rights accruing to SBA.

§107.1720 Characteristics of SBA’s guarantee.

If SBA agrees to guarantee a Licensee’s Debentures or Participating Securities, such guarantee will be unconditional, irrespective of the validity, regularity or enforceability of the Debentures or Participating Securities or any other circumstances which might constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of a guarantor. Pursuant to its guarantee, SBA will make timely payments of principal and interest on the Debentures or the Redemption Price of and Prioritized Payments on the Participating Securities.

[63 FR 5873, Feb. 5, 1998]
§ 107.1800 Licensee’s agreement to terms and conditions in §§ 107.1810 and 107.1820.

Any Licensee that violates the terms and conditions of its Leverage is subject to SBA remedies. The terms, conditions and remedies in § 107.1810 apply to outstanding Debentures issued after April 25, 1994. The terms, conditions and remedies in § 107.1820 apply to outstanding Preferred Securities and Participating Securities issued after April 25, 1994, or if you have Earmarked Assets in your portfolio.

§ 107.1810 Events of default and SBA’s remedies for Licensee’s noncompliance with terms of Debentures.

(a) Applicability of this section. This § 107.1810 applies to Debentures issued after April 25, 1994. By issuing such Debentures, you automatically agree to the terms, conditions and remedies in this section, as in effect at the time of issuance and as if fully set forth in the Debentures. Debentures issued before April 25, 1994 continue to be governed by the remedies in effect at the time of their issuance.

(b) Automatic events of default. The occurrence of one or more of the events in this paragraph (b) causes the remedies in paragraph (c) of this section to take effect immediately.

(1) Insolvency. You become equitably or legally insolvent.

(2) Voluntary assignment. You make a voluntary assignment for the benefit of creditors without SBA’s prior written approval.

(3) Bankruptcy. You file a petition to begin any bankruptcy or reorganization proceeding, receivership, dissolution or other similar creditors’ rights proceeding, or such action is initiated against you and is not dismissed within 60 days.

(c) SBA remedies for automatic events of default. Upon the occurrence of one or more of the events in paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) Without notice, presentation or demand, the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, is immediately due and payable; and

(2) You automatically consent to the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 311(c) of the Act.

(d) Events of default with notice. For any occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events in this paragraph (d), SBA may avail itself of one or more of the remedies in paragraph (e) of this section.

(1) Fraud. You commit a fraudulent act which causes detriment to SBA’s position as a creditor or guarantor.

(2) Fraudulent transfers. You make any transfer or incur any obligation that is fraudulent under the terms of 11 U.S.C. 548.

(3) Willful conflicts of interest. You willfully violate § 107.730.

(4) Willful non-compliance. You willfully violate one or more of the substantive provisions of the Act, specifically including but not limited to the provisions summarized in section 310(c) of the Act, or any substantive regulation promulgated under the Act.

(5) Repeated Events of Default. At any time after being notified by SBA of the occurrence of an event of default under paragraph (f) of this section, you engage in similar behavior which results in another occurrence of the same event of default.

(6) Transfer of Control. You violate § 107.475 and/or willfully violate § 107.410, and as a result of such violation you undergo a transfer of Control.

(7) Non-cooperation under § 107.1810(h). You fail to take appropriate steps, satisfactory to SBA, to accomplish any action SBA may have required under paragraph (h) of this section.

(8) Non-notification of Events of Default. You fail to notify SBA as soon as you know or reasonably should have known that any event of default exists under this section.

(9) Non-notification of defaults to others. You fail to notify SBA in writing within ten days from the date of a declaration of an event of default or non-performance under any note, debenture or indebtedness of yours, issued to or held by anyone other than SBA.

(e) SBA remedies for events of default with notice. Upon written notice to you of the occurrence (as determined by
§ 107.1810  

SBA) of one or more of the events in paragraph (d) of this section:  

(1) SBA may declare the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and/or any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, immediately due and payable; and  

(2) SBA may avail itself of any remedy available under the Act, specifically including institution of proceedings for the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 311(c) of the Act.  

(f) Events of default with opportunity to cure. For any occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events in this paragraph (f), SBA may avail itself of one or more of the remedies in paragraph (g) of this section.  

(1) Excessive Management Expenses. Without the prior written consent of SBA, you incur Management Expenses in excess of those permitted under §107.520.  

(2) Improper Distributions. You make any Distribution to your shareholders or partners, except with the prior written consent of SBA, other than:  

(i) Distributions permitted under §107.585;  

(ii) Payments from Retained Earnings Available for Distribution based on either the shareholders’ pro-rata interests or the provisions for profit distributions in your partnership agreement, as appropriate; and  

(iii) Distributions by Participating Securities issuers as permitted under §§107.1540 through 107.1580.  

(3) Failure to make payment. Unless otherwise approved by SBA, you fail to make timely payment of any amount due under any security or obligation of yours that is issued to, held or guaranteed by SBA.  

(4) Failure to maintain Regulatory Capital. You fail to maintain the minimum Regulatory Capital required under these regulations or, without the prior written consent of SBA, you reduce your Regulatory Capital, except as permitted by §§107.585 and 107.1560 through 107.1580.  

(5) Capital Impairment. You have a condition of Capital Impairment as determined under §107.1830.  

(g) SBA remedies for events of default with opportunity to cure. (1) Upon written notice to you of the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events of default in paragraph (f) of this section, and subject to the conditions in paragraph (g)(2) of this section:  

(i) SBA may declare the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and/or any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, immediately due and payable; and  

(2) SBA remedies for events of default with opportunity to cure. For any occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events in paragraph (d) of this section, and subject to the conditions in paragraph (g)(2) of this section:  

(i) SBA may declare the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and/or any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, immediately due and payable; and
§ 107.1820 Conditions affecting issuers of Preferred Securities and/or Participating Securities.

(a) Applicability of this section. This section applies if you have Preferred Securities issued after April 25, 1994, or if you issue Participating Securities or have Earmarked Assets in your portfolio. Your Articles must include the provisions of this §107.1820 as a condition to SBA’s purchase of Preferred Securities or guarantee of Participating Securities and for as long as you own Earmarked Assets. Preferred Securities issued before April 25, 1994 continue to be governed by the remedies in effect at the time of their issuance.

(b) Removal Conditions. Upon the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of any of the following conditions (“Removal Conditions”), SBA may avail itself of one or more of the remedies in paragraph (d) of this section:

(1) Insolvency or extreme Capital Impairment. You become equitably or legally insolvent, or have a Capital Impairment Percentage of 100 percent or more (“extreme Capital Impairment”) and have not cured such Capital Impairment within the time limits set by SBA in writing. In this regard:

(i) You are not considered to have a condition of extreme Capital Impairment during the first eight years following your first issuance of Participating Securities.

(ii) This paragraph (b)(1) does not give you an additional opportunity to cure if you have already had an opportunity to cure your Capital Impairment within the time limits set by SBA in writing.

(2) Voluntary assignment. You make a voluntary assignment for the benefit of creditors.

(3) Bankruptcy. You begin any bankruptcy or reorganization proceeding, receivership, dissolution or other similar creditors’ rights proceeding, or such action is initiated against you and is not dismissed within 60 days.
(4) **Transfer of Control.** You violate §107.475 and/or willfully violate §107.410, and such violation results in a transfer of Control.

(5) **Fraud.** You commit a fraudulent act which causes serious detriment to SBA’s position as a guarantor or investor.

(6) **Fraudulent transfers.** You make any transfer or incur any obligation that is fraudulent under the terms of 11 USC 548.

(7) **Contingent Removal Conditions.** Upon the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of any of the following conditions ("Contingent Removal Conditions"), SBA may avail itself of one or more of the remedies in paragraph (d) of this section, but only if you fail to remove the person(s) SBA identifies as responsible for such occurrence and/or cure such occurrence to SBA’s satisfaction within a time period determined by SBA (but not less than 15 days):

   (1) **Willful conflicts of interest.** You willfully violate §107.730.

   (2) **Willful or repeated noncompliance.** You willfully or repeatedly violate one or more of the substantive provisions of the Act, specifically including but not limited to the provisions summarized in section 310(c) of the Act, or any substantive regulation promulgated under the Act.

   (3) **Failure to comply with restrictions under paragraph (f) of this section.** You fail to comply with the restrictions imposed by SBA under paragraph (f) of this section.

   (d) **SBA remedies for Removal Conditions and Contingent Removal Conditions.**

   Upon the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of any Removal Condition, or any Contingent Removal Condition accompanied by your failure to act as set forth in paragraph (c) of this section, SBA has the following rights, and you consent to SBA’s exercise of any or all of such rights:

   (1) **With respect to a Corporate Licensee,** upon written notice, to require you to replace, with individuals approved by SBA, one or more of your officers and/or such number of directors as is sufficient to constitute a majority of your board of directors; or

   (2) **With respect to a Partnership Licensee,** upon written notice, to require you to remove the person(s) responsible for such occurrence and/or to remove your general partner, who shall then be replaced in accordance with your Articles by a new general partner approved by SBA; and/or

   (3) **With respect to either a Corporate or Partnership Licensee,** to the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 311(c) of the Act for the purpose of continuing your operations. The appointment of a receiver to liquidate a Licensee is not within such consent, but is governed instead by the relevant provisions of the Act.

   (e) **Restricted Operations Conditions.** Upon the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of any of the following conditions ("Restricted Operations Conditions"), SBA may avail itself of any of the remedies in paragraph (f) of this section:

   (1) **Removal Conditions or Contingent Removal Conditions.** Any condition occurs which is listed in paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section.

   (2) **Failure to maintain Regulatory Capital.** You fail to maintain the minimum Regulatory Capital required by this part.

   (3) **Capital or Liquidity Impairment.** You have a condition of Capital Impairment as determined under §107.1630 or, if applicable, a condition of Liquidity Impairment as determined under §107.1505, and you fail to cure the impairment within time limits set by SBA in writing.

   (4) **Improper Distributions.** You make any Distribution to your shareholders or partners other than those permitted by §§107.585 and 107.1560 through 107.1580.

   (5) **Excessive Management Expenses.** Without the prior written consent of SBA, you incur Management Expenses in excess of those permitted under §107.520.

   (6) **Failure to make payment.** You fail to pay any amounts due under Preferred Securities or required by §§107.1500 through 107.1590, unless otherwise permitted by SBA.

   (7) **Noncompliance.** Except as otherwise provided for in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section, SBA determines that you have failed to comply with one or more of the substantive
provisions of the Act, specifically including but not limited to the provisions summarized in section 310(c) of the Act, or any substantive regulation promulgated under the Act.

(8) Failure to maintain diversity. You fail to maintain diversity between management and ownership as required by §107.150, if applicable to you.

(9) Failure to meet investment requirements. You fail to make the amount of Equity Capital Investments required for Participating Securities (§107.1500(b)(4)), if applicable to you; or you fail to maintain as of the end of each fiscal year the investment ratios or amounts required for Leverage in excess of 300 percent of Leverageable Capital (§107.1160(c)) or Preferred Securities in excess of 100 percent of Leverageable Capital (§107.1160(d)), if applicable to you. In determining whether you have met the maintenance requirements in §107.1160(c) or (d), SBA will disregard any prepayment, sale, or disposition of Venture Capital Financings, any increase in Leverageable Capital, and any receipt of additional Leverage, within 120 days prior to the end of your fiscal year.

(10) Nonperformance. You violate or fail to perform one or more of the terms and conditions of any Participating Security or Preferred Security or of any agreement with or condition imposed by SBA in its administration of the Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

(11) Noncooperation under paragraph (g) of this section. You fail to take appropriate steps, satisfactory to SBA, to accomplish such action as SBA may have required under paragraph (g) of this section.

(12) SBA remedies for Restricted Operations Conditions. Upon the occurrence of any Restricted Operations Condition, and until such condition(s) are cured to SBA’s satisfaction within a time period determined by SBA (but not less than 15 days), upon written notice SBA shall have the following rights, and you consent to SBA’s exercise of any or all of such rights:

(1) To prohibit you from making any additional investments except for investments under legally binding commitments you entered into before such notice and, subject to SBA’s prior ten approval, investments that are necessary to protect your investments;

(2) Until all Leverage is redeemed and amounts due are paid, to prohibit Distributions by you to any party other than SBA, its agent or Trustee;

(3) To require all your commitments from investors to be funded at the earliest time(s) permitted in accordance with your Articles; and

(4) To review and re-determine your approved Management Expenses.

(g) Repeated non-substantive violations. If you repeatedly fail to comply with one or more of the non-substantive provisions of the Act or any non-substantive regulation promulgated thereunder, SBA, after written notification to you and until such condition is cured to SBA’s satisfaction, will deny you additional Leverage and/or require you to take such actions as SBA may determine to be appropriate under the circumstances.


COMPUTATION OF LICENSEE’S CAPITAL IMPAIRMENT

§107.1830 Licensee’s Capital Impairment—definition and general requirements.

(a) Applicability of this section. This section applies to Leverage issued on or after April 25, 1994. For Leverage issued before April 25, 1994, you must comply with paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section and the Capital Impairment regulations in this part in effect when you issued your Leverage. For all Leverage issued, you must also comply with any contractual provisions to which you have agreed.

(b) Significance of Capital Impairment condition. If you have a condition of Capital Impairment, you are not in compliance with the terms of your Leverage. As a result, SBA has the right to impose the applicable remedies for noncompliance in §§107.1810(g) and 107.1820(f).

(c) Definition of Capital Impairment condition. You have a condition of Capital Impairment if your Capital Impairment Percentage, as computed in §107.1840, exceeds:

(1) For Section 301(d) Licensees, 75 percent.
§ 107.1840 Computation of Licensee’s Capital Impairment Percentage.

(a) General. This section contains the procedures you must use to determine your Capital Impairment Percentage if you have outstanding Leverage issued after April 25, 1994. You must compare your Capital Impairment Percentage to the maximum permitted under §107.1830(c) to determine whether you have a condition of Capital Impairment.

(b) Preliminary impairment test. If you satisfy the preliminary impairment test, your Capital Impairment Percentage is zero and you do not have to perform any more procedures in this §107.1840. Otherwise, you must continue with paragraph (c) of this section. You satisfy the test if the following amounts are both zero or greater:

1. The sum of Undistributed Net Realized Earnings, as reported on SBA Form 468, and Includible Non-Cash Gains.
2. Unrealized Gain (Loss) on Securities Held.

(c) How to compute your Capital Impairment Percentage. (1) If you have an Unrealized Gain on Securities Held, compute your Adjusted Unrealized Gain using paragraph (d) of this section. If you have an Unrealized Loss on Securities Held, continue with paragraph (c)(2) of this Section.

(2) Add together your Undistributed Net Realized Earnings, your Includible Non-cash Gains, and either your Unrealized Loss on Securities Held or your Adjusted Unrealized Gain.

(d) Phase-in of maximum permitted Capital Impairment Percentages for Section 301(c) Licensees. If you are a Section 301(c) Licensee, regardless of your maximum permitted Capital Impairment Percentage under paragraph (c) of this section, you will not have a condition of Capital Impairment if:

1. Your Capital Impairment Percentage does not exceed 50 percent; and
2. You have not reached your first fiscal year end occurring after April 25, 1995.

(e) Quarterly computation requirement and procedure. You must determine whether you have a condition of Capital Impairment as of the end of each fiscal quarter. You must notify SBA promptly if you are capital impaired.

(f) SBA’s right to determine Licensee’s Capital Impairment condition. SBA may make its own determination of your Capital Impairment condition at any time.

§ 107.1850 Exceptions to Capital Impairment provisions for Licensees with outstanding Participating Securities.

The provisions in this § 107.1850 apply only if at least two-thirds of your Loans and Investments (at cost) consist of Equity Capital Investments. The provisions of this paragraph (c) apply only during the fifth and sixth years following your first issuance of Participating Securities. If your Capital Impairment Percentage, as determined either by you or by SBA, exceeds the maximum permitted under § 107.1830(c) but is below 85 percent, you
§ 107.1900 Surrender of license.

You may not surrender your license without SBA’s prior written approval. Your request for approval must be accompanied by an offer of immediate repayment of all of your outstanding Leverage (including any prepayment penalties thereon), or by a plan satisfactory to SBA for the orderly liquidation of the Licensee.

Subpart K—Ending Operations as a Licensee

§ 107.1930 Effect of changes in this part 107 on transactions previously consummated.

The legality of a transaction covered by the regulations in this part is governed by the regulations in this part in effect at the time the transaction was consummated, regardless of later changes. Nothing in this part bars SBA enforcement action with respect to any transaction consummated in violation of provisions applicable at the time, but no longer in effect.

Subpart L—Miscellaneous

§ 107.1910 Non-waiver of SBA’s rights or terms of Leverage security.

SBA’s failure to exercise or delay in exercising any right or remedy under the Act or the regulations in this part does not constitute a waiver of such right or remedy. SBA’s failure to require you to perform any term or provision of your Leverage does not affect SBA’s right to enforce such term or provision. Similarly, SBA’s waiver of, or failure to enforce, any term or provision of your Leverage or of any event or condition set forth in §107.1810 or §107.1820 does not constitute a waiver of any succeeding breach of such term or provision or condition.

§ 107.1920 Licensee’s application for exemption from a regulation in this part 107.

You may file an application in writing with SBA to have a proposed action exempted from any procedural or substantive requirement, restriction, or prohibition to which it is subject under this part, unless the provision is mandated by the Act. SBA may grant an exemption for such applicant, conditionally or unconditionally, provided the exemption would not be contrary to the purposes of the Act. Your application must be accompanied by supporting evidence which demonstrates to SBA’s satisfaction that:

(a) The proposed action is fair and equitable; and

(b) The exemption requested is reasonably calculated to advance the best interests of the SBIC program in a manner consonant with the policy objectives of the Act and the regulations in this part.

§ 107.1930 Effect of changes in this part 107 on transactions previously consummated.

The legality of a transaction covered by the regulations in this part is governed by the regulations in this part in effect at the time the transaction was consummated, regardless of later changes. Nothing in this part bars SBA enforcement action with respect to any transaction consummated in violation of provisions applicable at the time, but no longer in effect.
PART 108—NEW MARKETS VENTURE CAPITAL ("NMVC") PROGRAM

Subpart A—Introduction to Part 108

Sec. 108.10 Description of the New Markets Venture Capital Program.
108.20 Legal basis and applicability of this part 108.
108.30 Amendments to Act and regulations.
108.40 How to read this part 108.

Subpart B—Definition of Terms Used in this Part 108

108.50 Definition of terms.

Subpart C—Qualifications for the NMVC Program

Organizing a NMVC Company

108.100 Business form.
108.110 Qualified management.
108.120 Economic development primary mission.
108.130 Identified Low Income Geographic Areas.
108.140 SBA approval of initial Management Expenses.
108.150 Management and ownership diversity requirement.
108.160 Special rules for NMVC Companies formed as limited partnerships.

Capitalizing a NMVC Company

108.200 Adequate capital for NMVC Companies.
108.210 Minimum capital requirements for NMVC Companies.
108.230 Private Capital for NMVC Companies.

Subpart D—Application and Approval Process for NMVC Company Designation

108.300 When and how to apply for designation as a NMVC Company.
108.310 Contents of application.
108.320 Contents of comprehensive business plan.
108.330 Grant issuance fee.

Subpart E—Evaluation and Selection of NMVC Companies

108.350 Eligibility and completeness.
108.360 Evaluation criteria.
108.370 Conditional approval.
108.380 Final approval as a NMVC Company.

Subpart F—Changes in Ownership, Structure, or Control

Changes in Control or Ownership of NMVC Company

108.400 Changes in ownership of 10 percent or more of NMVC Company but no change of Control.
108.410 Changes in Control of NMVC Company (through change in ownership or otherwise).
108.420 Prohibition on exercise of ownership or Control rights in NMVC Company before SBA approval.
108.430 Notification to SBA of transactions that may change ownership or Control.
108.440 Standards governing prior SBA approval for a proposed transfer of Control.
108.450 Notification to SBA of pledge of NMVC Company's shares.

Restrictions on Common Control or Ownership of Two or More NMVC Companies

108.460 Restrictions on Common Control or ownership of two (or more) NMVC Companies.

Change in Structure of NMVC Company

108.470 SBA approval of merger, consolidation, or reorganization of NMVC Company.

Subpart G—Managing the Operations of a NMVC Company

General Requirements

108.500 Lawful operations under the Act.
108.502 Representations to the public.
108.503 NMVC Company's adoption of an approved valuation policy.
108.504 Equipment and office requirements.
108.506 Safeguarding the NMVC Company's assets/Internal controls.
108.507 Violations based on false filings and nonperformance of agreements with SBA.
108.509 Employment of SBA officials.

Management and Compensation

108.510 SBA approval of NMVC Company's Investment Adviser/Manager.
108.520 Management Expenses of a NMVC Company.

Cash Management by a NMVC Company

108.530 Restrictions on investments of idle funds by NMVC Companies.

Borrowing by NMVC Companies from Non-SBA Sources

108.550 Prior approval of secured third-party debt of NMVC companies.
Pt. 108

108.585 Voluntary decrease in NMVC Company’s Regulatory Capital.

Subpart H—Recordkeeping, Reporting, and Examination Requirements for NMVC Companies

RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS FOR NMVC COMPANIES

108.600 General requirement for NMVC Company to maintain and preserve records.
108.610 Required certifications for Loans and Investments.
108.620 Requirements to obtain information from Portfolio Concerns.

RECORDING REQUIREMENTS FOR NMVC COMPANIES

108.630 Requirement for NMVC companies to file financial statements and supplementary information with SBA (SBA Form 468).
108.640 Requirement to file portfolio financing reports (SBA Form 1031).
108.650 Requirement to report portfolio valuations to SBA.
108.660 Other items required to be filed by NMVC Company with SBA.
108.680 Reporting changes in NMVC Company not subject to prior SBA approval.

EXAMINATIONS OF NMVC COMPANIES BY SBA FOR REGULATORY COMPLIANCE

108.690 Examinations.
108.691 Responsibilities of NMVC Company during examination.
108.692 Examination fees.

Subpart I—Financing of Small Businesses by NMVC Companies

DETERMINING THE ELIGIBILITY OF A SMALL BUSINESS FOR NMVC FINANCING

108.700 Compliance with size standards in part 121 of this chapter as a condition of Assistance.
108.710 Requirement to finance Low-Income Enterprises.
108.720 Small Businesses that may be ineligible for financing.
108.730 Financings which constitute conflicts of interest.
108.740 Portfolio diversification (’overline’ limitation).
108.750 How a change in size or activity of a Portfolio Concern affects the NMVC Company and the Portfolio Concern.

STRICTURING NMVC COMPANY’S FINANCING OF ELIGIBLE SMALL BUSINESSES

108.800 Financings in the form of equity interests.
108.820 Financings in the form of guarantees.
108.825 Purchasing securities from an underwriter or other third party.

LIMITATIONS ON DISPOSITION OF ASSETS

108.885 Disposition of assets to NMVC Company’s Associates.

Subpart J—SBA Financial Assistance for NMVC Companies (Leverage)

GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT OBTAINING LEVERAGE

108.1100 Type of Leverage and application procedures.
108.1120 General eligibility requirement for Leverage.
108.1130 Leverage fees payable by NMVC Company.
108.1140 NMVC Company’s acceptance of SBA remedies under §108.1810.

MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF LEVERAGE FOR WHICH A NMVC COMPANY IS ELIGIBLE

108.1150 Maximum amount of Leverage for a NMVC Company.

CONDITIONAL COMMITMENTS BY SBA TO RESERVE LEVERAGE FOR A NMVC COMPANY

108.1200 SBA’s Leverage commitment to a NMVC Company’s application procedure, amount, and term.
108.1220 Requirement for NMVC Company to file financial statements at the time of request for a draw.
108.1230 Draw-downs by NMVC Company under SBA’s Leverage commitment.
108.1240 Funding of NMVC Company’s draw request through sale to third-party.

FUNDING LEVERAGE BY USE OF SBA GUARANTEED TRUST CERTIFICATES (‘TCS’)

108.1600 SBA authority to issue and guarantee Trust Certificates.
108.1610 Effect of prepayment or early redemption of Leverage on a Trust Certificate.
108.1620 Functions of agents, including Central Registration Agent, Selling Agent and Fiscal Agent.
108.1630 SBA regulation of Brokers and Dealers and disclosure to purchasers of Leverage or Trust Certificates.
108.1640 SBA access to records of the CRA, Brokers, Dealers and Pool or Trust assemblers.

MISCELLANEOUS

108.1700 Transfer by SBA of its interest in a NMVC Company’s Leverage security.
108.1710 SBA authority to collect or compromise its claims.
108.1720 Characteristics of SBA’s guarantee.
Small Business Administration

§ 108.50 Definition of terms.

The following definitions apply to this part 108:

§ 108.50 Affiliate or Affiliates has the meaning set forth in §121.103 of this chapter.

Applicant means any entity submitting an application to SBA for designation as a NMVC Company under this part.

Articles mean articles of incorporation or charter for a Corporate NMVC Company, the partnership agreement or certificate for a Partnership NMVC Company, and the operating agreement or other organizational documents for a LLC NMVC Company.

Assistance or Assisted means Financing of or management services rendered to a Small Business by or through a NMVC Company pursuant to the Act and this part.

Associate of a NMVC Company means any of the following:

(1)(i) An officer, director, employee or agent of a Corporate NMVC Company;

(ii) A Control Person, employee or agent of a Partnership NMVC Company;

(iii) A managing member of a LLC NMVC Company;

(iv) An Investment Adviser/Manager of any NMVC Company, including any Person who contracts with a Control Person of a Partnership NMVC Company to be the Investment Adviser/Manager of such NMVC Company; or

(v) Any Person regularly serving a NMVC Company on retainer in the capacity of attorney at law.

(2) Any Person who owns or controls, or who has entered into an agreement to own or control, directly or indirectly, at least 10 percent of any class of stock of a Corporate NMVC Company or 10 percent of the membership interests of an LLC NMVC Company, or a limited partner’s interest of at least 10 percent of the partnership capital of a Partnership NMVC Company. However, neither a limited partner in a Partnership NMVC Company nor a non-managing member in an LLC NMVC Company is considered an Associate if such Person is an entity Institutional Investor whose investment in the Partnership, including commitments, represents no more than 33 percent of the capital of the NMVC Company and no more than five percent of such Person’s net worth.

(3) Any officer, director, partner (other than a limited partner), manager, agent, or employee of any Associate described in paragraph (1) or (2) of this definition.

(4) Any Person that directly or indirectly Controls, or is Controlled by, or is under Common Control with, a NMVC Company.

(5) Any Person that directly or indirectly Controls, or is Controlled by, or is under Common Control with, any Person described in paragraphs (1) and (2) of this definition.

(6) Any Close Relative of any Person described in paragraphs (1), (2), (4), and (5) of this definition.

(7) Any Secondary Relative of any Person described in paragraphs (1), (2), (4), and (5) of this definition.

(8) Any concern in which—

(i) Any person described in paragraphs (1) through (6) of this definition is an officer; general partner, or managing member; or

(ii) Any such Person(s) singly or collectively Control or own, directly or indirectly, an equity interest of at least 10 percent (excluding interests that such Person(s) own indirectly through ownership interests in the NMVC Company).

(9) Any concern in which any Person(s) described in paragraph (7) of this definition singly or collectively own (including beneficial ownership) a majority equity interest, or otherwise have Control. As used in this paragraph (9), “collectively” means together with any Person(s) described in paragraphs (1) through (7) of this definition.

(10) For the purposes of this definition, if any Associate relationship described in paragraphs (1) through (7) of this definition exists at any time within six months before or after the date that a NMVC Company provides Financing, then that Associate relationship is considered to exist on the date of the Financing.

(11) If any NMVC Company has any ownership interest in another NMVC Company, the two NMVC companies are Associates of each other.

Capital Impairment has the meaning set forth in §108.1830(b).

Central Registration Agent or CRA means one or more agents appointed by SBA for the purpose of issuing TCs and
performing the functions enumerated in §108.1620 and performing similar functions for Debentures funded outside the pooling process.

**Close Relative** of an individual means:

1. A current or former spouse;
2. A father, mother, guardian, brother, sister, son, daughter; or

**Commitment** means a written agreement between a NMVC Company and an eligible Small Business that obligates the NMVC Company to provide Financing (except a guarantee) to that Small Business in a fixed or determinable sum, by a fixed or determinable future date. In this context the term “agreement” means that there has been agreement on the principal economic terms of the Financing. The agreement may include reasonable conditions precedent to the NMVC Company’s obligation to fund the commitment, but these conditions must be outside the NMVC Company’s control.

**Common Control** means a condition where two or more Persons, either through ownership, management, contract, or otherwise, are under the Control of one group or Person. Two or more NMVC companies are presumed to be under Common Control if they are Affiliates of each other by reason of common ownership or common officers, directors, or general partners; or if they are managed or their investments are significantly directed either by a common independent investment advisor or managerial contractor, or by two or more such advisors or contractors that are Affiliates of each other. This presumption may be rebutted by evidence satisfactory to SBA.

**Community Development Finance** means debt and equity-type investments in low-income communities.

**Conditionally Approved NMVC Company** means a company that—

1. Has applied for participation as a NMVC Company, and
2. SBA has conditionally approved to participate in the NMVC program for a specified period of time not to exceed two years, subject to the company fulfilling the requirements to be a NMVC Company within that specified period of time.

**Control** means the possession, direct or indirect, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of a NMVC Company or other concern, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract, or otherwise.

**Debentures** means debt obligations issued by NMVC companies pursuant to section 355 of the Act and held or guaranteed by SBA.

**Debt Securities** are instruments evidencing a loan with an option or any other right to acquire Equity Securities in a Small Business or its Affiliates, or a loan which by its terms is convertible into an equity position. Consideration must be paid for all options that you acquire.

**Developmental Venture Capital** means capital in the form of Equity Capital Investments in Smaller Enterprises made with a primary objective of fostering economic development in Low-Income Geographic Areas.

**Distribution** means any transfer of cash or non-cash assets to SBA, its agent or Trustee, or to partners in a Partnership NMVC Company, or to
§ 108.50 13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)

Shareholders in a Corporate NMVC Company, or to members in an LLC NMVC Company. Capitalization of Retained Earnings Available for Distribution constitutes a Distribution to the NMVC Company’s non-SBA partners, shareholders, or members.

Equity Capital Investments means investments in the form of common or preferred stock, limited partnership interests, options, warrants, or similar equity instruments, including subordinated debt with equity features if such debt provides only for interest payments contingent upon and limited to the extent of earnings. Equity Capital Investments must not require amortization. Equity Capital Investments may be guaranteed by one or more third parties; however, neither Equity Capital Investments nor such guarantee may be collateralized or otherwise secured. Investments classified as Debt Securities are not precluded from qualifying as Equity Capital Investments. Equity Capital Investments may provide for royalty payments only if the royalty payments are based on the earnings of the concern.

Equity Securities means stock of any class in a corporation, stock options, warrants, limited partnership interests in a limited partnership, membership interests in a limited liability company, or joint venture interests.

Financing or Financed means outstanding financial assistance provided to a Small Business by a NMVC Company, whether through:

(1) Loans;
(2) Debt Securities;
(3) Equity Securities;
(4) Guarantees; or
(5) Purchases of securities of a Small Business through or from an underwriter (see §108.825).

Guaranty Agreement means the contract entered into by SBA which is a guarantee backed by the full faith and credit of the United States Government as to timely payment of principal and interest on Debentures and SBA’s rights in connection with such guarantee.

Includible Non-Cash Gains means those non-cash gains (as reported on SBA Form 468) that are realized in the form of Publicly Traded and Marketable securities or investment grade debt instruments. For purposes of this definition, investment grade debt instruments means those instruments that are rated “BBB” or “Baa”, or better, by Standard & Poor’s Corporation or Moody’s Investors Service, respectively. Non-rated debt may be considered to be investment grade if a NMVC Company obtains a written opinion from an investment banking firm acceptable to SBA stating that the non-rated debt instrument is equivalent in risk to the issuer’s investment grade debt.

Institutional Investor means:

(1) Entities. Any of the following entities if the entity has a net worth (exclusive of unfunded commitments from investors) of at least $1 million, or such higher amount as is specified in this paragraph (1). (See also §108.230(c)(4) for limitations on the amount of an Institutional Investor’s commitment that may be included in Private Capital.)

(i) A State or National bank, trust company, savings bank, or savings and loan association.

(ii) An insurance company.

(iii) A 1940 Act Investment Company or Business Development Company (each as defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (15 U.S.C. 8a–1 et seq.).

(iv) A holding company of any entity described in paragraph (l)(i), (ii) or (iii) of this definition.

(v) An employee benefit or pension plan established for the benefit of employees of the Federal government, any State or political subdivision of a State, or any agency or instrumentality of such government unit.


(vii) A trust, foundation or endowment exempt from Federal income taxation under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

(viii) A corporation, partnership or other entity with a net worth (exclusive of unfunded commitments from investors) of more than $10 million.
(ix) A State, a political subdivision of a State, or an agency or instrumentality of a State or its political subdivision.

(x) An entity whose primary purpose is to manage and invest non-Federal funds on behalf of at least three Institutional Investors described in paragraphs (l)(i) through (l)(ix) of this definition, each of whom must have at least a 10 percent ownership interest in the entity.

(xi) Any other entity that SBA determines to be an Institutional Investor.

(2) Individuals. (i) Any of the following individuals if he/she is also a permanent resident of the United States:

(A) An individual who is an Accredited Investor (as defined in the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (15 U.S.C. 77a-77aa)) and whose commitment to the NMVC Company is backed by a letter of credit from a State or National bank acceptable to SBA.

(B) An individual whose personal net worth is at least $2 million and at least ten times the amount of his or her commitment to the NMVC Company. The individual’s personal net worth must not include the value of any equity in his or her most valuable residence.

(C) An individual whose personal net worth, not including the value of any equity in his or her most valuable residence, is at least $10 million.

(ii) Any individual who is not a permanent resident of the United States but who otherwise satisfies paragraph (2)(i) of this definition provided such individual has irrevocably appointed an agent within the United States for the service of process.

Investment Adviser/Manager means any Person who furnishes advice or assistance with respect to operations of a NMVC Company under a written contract executed in accordance with the provisions of §108.510.

Lending Institution means a concern that is operating under regulations of a state or Federal licensing, supervising, or examining body, or whose shares are publicly traded and listed on a recognized stock exchange or NASDAQ and which has assets in excess of $500 million; and which, in either case, holds itself out to the public as engaged in the making of commercial and industrial loans and whose lending operations are not for the purpose of financing its own or an Associate’s sales or business operations.

Leverage means financial assistance provided to a NMVC Company by SBA through the guaranty of a NMVC Company’s Debentures, and any other SBA financial assistance evidenced by a security of the NMVC Company.

Leverageable Capital means Regulatory Capital, excluding unfunded commitments.

LLC NMVC Company. See definition of NMVC Company in this section.

Loan means a transaction evidenced by a debt instrument with no provision for you to acquire Equity Securities.

Loans and Investments means Portfolio securities, assets acquired in liquidation of Portfolio securities, operating concerns acquired, and notes and other securities received, as set forth in the Statement of Financial Position of SBA Form 468.

Low-Income Enterprise means a Smaller Enterprise that, as of the time of the initial Financing, has its Principal Office located in a Low-Income Geographic Area.

Low-Income Geographic Area (“LI Area”) means—

(i) Any population census tract (or in the case of an area that is not tracted for population census tracts, the equivalent county division, as defined by the Bureau of the Census of the United States Department of Commerce for purposes of defining poverty areas), if—

(A) That is located within a metropolitan area, the median household income for such tract does not exceed 80 percent of the statewide median household income; or

(B) That is not located within a metropolitan area, the median household income equal to less than 60 percent of the area median gross income; or

(C) As determined by the Administrator in accordance with §108.1940 of this part, a substantial population of Low-Income Individuals reside, an inadequate access to investment capital.
§ 108.50

exists, or other indications of economic distress exist in that census tract; or
(2) Any area located within—
   (i) A Historically Underutilized Business Zone (“HUBZone”) as defined in section 3(p) of the Small Business Act and 13 CFR 126.103;
   (ii) An Urban Empowerment Zone or Urban Enterprise Community (as designated by the Secretary of the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development); or
   (iii) A Rural Empowerment Zone or Rural Enterprise Community (as designated by the Secretary of the United States Department of Agriculture).

Low-Income Individual means an individual whose income (adjusted for family size) does not exceed—
   (1) For metropolitan areas, 80 percent of the area median income; and
   (2) For nonmetropolitan areas, the greater of—
       (i) 80 percent of the area median income, or
       (ii) 80 percent of the statewide nonmetropolitan area median income.

Low-Income Investment means an Equity Capital Investment in a Low-Income Enterprise.

Management Expenses has the meaning set forth in §108.520.


New Markets Tax Credit program means the tax credit created by the Consolidated Appropriations Act of 2001, Public Law 106-554 (114 Stat. 2762A), enacted December 21, 2000, to be implemented by the Internal Revenue Service, United States Department of Treasury.

New Markets Venture Capital Company or NMVC Company means a corporation (Corporate NMVC Company), a limited partnership organized as required by §108.160 (Partnership NMVC Company), or a limited liability company (LLC NMVC Company) that—
   (1) Has been granted final approval by SBA under §108.390, and
   (2) Has entered into a Participation Agreement with SBA. For certain purposes, the Entity General Partner of a Partnership NMVC Company is treated as if it were a NMVC Company (see §108.160(a)).

1940 Act Company means a NMVC Company which is registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.).


Operational Assistance means management, marketing, and other technical assistance that assists a Small Business with its business development.

Original Issue Price means the price paid by the purchaser for securities at the time of issuance.

Participation Agreement means an agreement between SBA and a company to which SBA has granted final approval under §108.390, that—
   (1) Details the company’s operating plan and investment criteria; and
   (2) Requires the company to make investments in Smaller Enterprises at least 80 percent of which Smaller Enterprises are located in LI Areas.

Partnership NMVC Company. See definition of NMVC Company in this section.

Person means a natural person or legal entity.

Pool means an aggregation of SBA guaranteed Debentures approved by SBA.

Portfolio means the securities representing a NMVC Company’s total outstanding Financing of Smaller Enterprises. It does not include idle funds or assets acquired in liquidation of Portfolio securities.

Portfolio Concern means a Small Business Assisted by a NMVC Company.

Principal Office means the location where the greatest number of the concern’s employees at any one location perform their work. However, for those concerns whose “primary industry” (see 13 CFR 121.107) is service or construction (see 13 CFR 121.201), the determination of principal office excludes the concern’s employees who perform the majority of their work at job-site locations to fulfill specific contract obligations.
Private Capital has the meaning set forth in §108.230.

Publicly Traded and Marketable means securities that are salable without restriction or that are salable within 12 months pursuant to Rule 144 (17 CFR 230.144) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, by the holder thereof, and are of a class which is traded on a regulated stock exchange, or is listed in the Automated Quotation System of the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASDAQ), or has, at a minimum, at least two market makers as defined in the relevant sections of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (15 U.S.C. 77b et seq.), and in all cases the quantity of which can be sold over a reasonable period of time without having an adverse impact upon the price of the stock.

Regulatory Capital means:
(1) General. Regulatory Capital means Private Capital, excluding non-cash assets contributed to a NMVC Company, a Conditionally Approved NMVC Company, or an Applicant, and non-cash assets purchased by a Conditionally Approved NMVC Company or an Applicant, unless such assets have been converted to cash or have been approved by SBA for inclusion in Regulatory Capital. For purposes of this definition, sales of contributed non-cash assets with recourse or borrowing against such assets shall not constitute a conversion to cash.

(2) Exclusion of questionable commitments. An investor's commitment to a NMVC Company, Conditionally Approved NMVC Company, or Applicant is excluded from Regulatory Capital if SBA determines that the collectability of the commitment is questionable.

(3) Exclusion of amounts designated for Operational Assistance match. Regulatory Capital excludes any portion of Private Capital that is designated as matching resources in accordance with §108.2030(b)(3).

Relevant Venture Capital Finance means Equity Capital Investments in small businesses in low-income communities or benefiting low-income communities.

Retained Earnings Available for Distribution means Undistributed Net Realized Earnings less any Unrealized Depreciation on Loans and Investments (as reported on SBA Form 468), and represents the amount that a NMVC Company may distribute to investors (including SBA) as a profit Distribution, or transfer to Private Capital.

SBA means the Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

Secondary Relative of an individual means:
(1) A grandparent, grandchild, or any other ancestor or lineal descendent who is not a Close Relative;
(2) An uncle, aunt, nephew, niece, or first cousin; or
(3) A spouse of any person described in paragraph (1) or (2) of this definition.

Small Business means a small business concern as defined in section 103(5) of the Act (including its Affiliates), and which meets the criteria applicable to the Small Business Investment Company program as set forth in part 121 of this chapter.

Small Business Investment Company (SBIC) means a Licensee, as that term is defined in §107.50 of this chapter.

Smaller Enterprise means any Small Business that:
(1) Together with its Affiliates has a net worth of not more than $6.0 million and average net income after Federal income taxes (excluding any carry-over losses) for the preceding two years no greater than $2.0 million; or
(2) Both together with its Affiliates, and by itself, meets the size standard of §121.201 of this chapter at the time of Financing for the industry in which it is then primarily engaged.

Specialized Small Business Investment Companies (SSBICs) means any Small Business Investment Company that—
(1) Invests solely in small business concerns that contribute to a well-balanced national economy by facilitating ownership in such concerns by persons whose participation in the free enterprise system is hampered because of social or economic disadvantages; and
(2) Was licensed under section 301(d) of the Small Business Investment Act, as in effect before September 30, 1996.

Trust means the legal entity created for the purpose of holding guaranteed
§ 108.100 Business form.

A NMVC Company must be a newly formed for-profit entity or, subject to §108.150, a newly formed for-profit subsidiary of an existing entity. It must be organized under State law solely for the purpose of performing the functions and conducting the activities contemplated under the Act. It may be organized as a corporation (“Corporate NMVC Company”), a limited partnership (“Partnership NMVC Company”), or a limited liability company (“LLC NMVC Company”).

§ 108.110 Qualified management.

An Applicant must show, to the satisfaction of SBA, that its current or proposed management team is qualified and has the knowledge, experience, and capability in Community Development Finance or Relevant Venture Capital Finance, necessary for investing in the types of businesses contemplated by the Act, the regulations in this part and its business plan. In determining whether an Applicant’s current or proposed management team has sufficient qualifications, SBA will consider information provided by the Applicant and third parties concerning the background, capability, education, training and reputation of its general partners, managers, officers, key personnel, and investment committee and governing board members. The Applicant must designate at least one individual as the official responsible for contact with SBA.

§ 108.120 Economic development primary mission.

The primary mission of a NMVC Company must be economic development of one or more LI Areas.

§ 108.130 Identified Low Income Geographic Areas.

A NMVC Company must identify the specific LI Areas in which it intends to make Developmental Venture Capital investments and provide Operational Assistance under the NMVC program.

§ 108.140 SBA approval of initial Management Expenses.

A NMVC Company must have its Management Expenses approved by SBA at the time of designation as a NMVC Company. (See §108.520 for the definition of Management Expenses.)

§ 108.150 Management and ownership diversity requirement.

(a) Diversity requirement. You must have diversity between management and ownership in order to be a NMVC Company. To establish diversity, you must meet the requirements in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.
§ 108.160 Special rules for NMVC Companies formed as limited partnerships.

(a) Entity General Partner. (1) A general partner which is a corporation, limited liability company or partnership (an “Entity General Partner”) shall be organized under state law solely for the purpose of serving as the general partner of one or more NMVC companies.

(2) SBA must approve any person who will serve as an officer, director, manager, or general partner of the Entity General Partner. This provision must be stated in an Entity General Partner’s Certificate of Incorporation, operating agreement, limited partnership agreement or other similar governing instrument.


(4) The general partner(s) of your Entity General Partner(s) will be considered your general partner.

(5) If your Entity General Partner is a limited partnership, its limited partners may be considered your Control Person(s) if they meet the definition for Control Person in §108.50.

(b) Other requirements for Partnership NMVC Companies. If you are a Partnership NMVC Company:

(1) You must have a minimum duration of 10 years or two years following the maturity of your last-maturing Leverage security, whichever is longer. After 10 years, if all Leverage has been repaid or redeemed and all amounts due SBA, its agent, or Trustee have been paid, the Partnership NMVC Company may be terminated by a vote of your partners;
§ 108.200 Adequate capital for NMVC Companies.

You must meet the requirements of §§108.200–108.230 in order to qualify for designation as a NMVC Company and to receive Leverage.

§ 108.210 Minimum capital requirements for NMVC Companies.

You must have Regulatory Capital of at least $5,000,000 and Leverageable Capital of at least $500,000 to become a NMVC Company.

§ 108.230 Private Capital for NMVC Companies.

(a) General. Private Capital means the contributed capital of a NMVC Company, plus unfunded binding commitments by Institutional Investors (including commitments evidenced by a promissory note) to contribute capital to a NMVC Company.

(b) Contributed capital. For purposes of this section, contributed capital means the paid-in capital and paid-in surplus of a Corporate NMVC Company, the members’ contributed capital of a LLC NMVC Company, or the partners’ contributed capital of a Partnership NMVC Company, in each case subject to the limitations in paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) Exclusions from Private Capital.

Private Capital does not include:

1. Funds borrowed by a NMVC Company from any source.
2. Funds obtained through the issuance of Leverage.
3. Funds obtained directly from any Federal agency or department.
4. Any portion of a commitment from an Institutional Investor with a net worth of less than $10 million that exceeds 10 percent of such Institutional Investor’s net worth.

(d) Non-cash capital contributions. Capital contributions in a form other than cash are excluded from Private Capital.

(e) Contributions with borrowed funds. You may not accept any capital contribution made with funds borrowed by a Person seeking to own an equity interest (whether direct or indirect, beneficial or of record) of at least 10 percent of your Private Capital. This exclusion does not apply if:

1. Such Person’s net worth is at least twice the amount borrowed; or
2. SBA gives its prior written approval of the capital contribution.

Subpart D—Application and Approval Process for NMVC Company Designation

§ 108.300 When and how to apply for designation as a NMVC Company.

(a) Notice of Funds Availability (“NOFA”). SBA will publish a NOFA in the FEDERAL REGISTER, advising potential applicants of the availability of
funds for the NMVC program. An entity may then submit an application for designation as a NMVC Company. When submitting its application, an Applicant must comply with both these regulations and any requirements specified in the NOFA, including submission deadlines. The NOFA may specify limitations, special rules, procedures, and restrictions for a particular funding round.

(b) Application form. An Applicant must apply for designation as a NMVC Company using the application packet provided by SBA. Upon receipt of an application, SBA may request clarifying or technical information on the materials submitted as part of the application.

§ 108.310 Contents of application.

Each Applicant must submit a complete application, including the following:

(a) Amounts. The Applicant must indicate the amounts of—

(1) Regulatory Capital it proposes to raise;

(2) Binding commitments for contributions in cash or in-kind it proposes to raise, and/or an annuity it proposes to purchase, in accordance with the requirements of §108.2030, as its matching resources for its Operational Assistance grant award (the aggregate of which must be not less than 30 percent of the Regulatory Capital it proposes to raise under paragraph (a)(1) of this section).

(b) Comprehensive business plan. The Applicant must submit a comprehensive business plan covering at least a five-year period, addressing the specific items described in §108.320, and which demonstrates that the Applicant has the capacity to operate successfully as a NMVC Company.

(c) New Markets Tax Credit program. Applicant must address if and to what extent it intends to conform its activities to the New Markets Tax Credit laws. If Applicant plans to seek a New Markets Tax Credit, Applicant also must state the amount of tax credit allocation it intends to seek.

§ 108.320 Contents of comprehensive business plan.

(a) Executive summary. The executive summary must include a description of—

(1) The Applicant;

(2) Its strategy for how it proposes to make successful Developmental Venture Capital investments in identified LI Areas;

(3) The markets in the LI Areas it proposes to serve; and

(4) How it intends to work with community organizations in and be accountable to the residents of identified LI Areas in order to facilitate its Developmental Venture Capital investments.

(b) Capacity, skills, and experience of the management team. An Applicant must provide information generally as to the background, capability, education, reputation and training of its general partners, managers, officers, key personnel, investment committee and governing board members. The Applicant also must provide information specifically on these individuals’ qualifications and reputation in the areas of Community Development Finance and/or Relevant Venture Capital Finance, including the impact of these individuals’ activities in these areas.

(c) Market analysis. An Applicant must provide an analysis of the LI Areas in which it intends to focus its Developmental Venture Capital investments and Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises, demonstrating that the Applicant understands the market and the unmet capital needs in such areas and how its activities will meet these unmet capital needs through Developmental Venture Capital investments and will have a positive economic impact on those areas. The analysis must include a description of the extent of the economic distress in the identified LI Areas. An Applicant also must analyze the extent of the demand in such areas for Developmental Venture Capital investments and any factors or trends that may affect the Applicant’s ability to make effective Developmental Venture Capital investments.
§ 108.330

(d) Operational capacity and investment strategies. An Applicant must submit information concerning its policies and procedures for underwriting and approving its Developmental Venture Capital investments, monitoring its portfolio, and maintaining internal controls and operations.

(e) Regulatory Capital. An Applicant must include a detailed description of how it plans to raise its Regulatory Capital. An Applicant must discuss its potential sources of Regulatory Capital, the estimated timing on raising such funds, and the extent of the expressions of interest to commit such funds to the Applicant.

(f) Plan for providing Operational Assistance. An Applicant must describe how it plans to use its grant funds to provide Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises in which it will make Developmental Venture Capital investments. Its plan must address the types of Operational Assistance it proposes to provide, and how it plans to provide the Operational Assistance through the use of licensed professionals, when necessary, either from its own staff or from outside entities.

(g) Matching resources for Operational Assistance grant. An Applicant must include a detailed description of how it plans to obtain binding commitments for cash or in-kind contributions, and/or to purchase an annuity, to match the funds requested from SBA for the Applicant’s Operational Assistance grant. If it proposes to obtain commitments for cash or in-kind contributions, it also must estimate the ratio of cash to in-kind contributions (in no event may in-kind contributions exceed 50 percent of the total contributions). Applicant must discuss its potential sources of matching resources, the estimated timing on raising such funds, and the extent of the expressions of interest to commit such funds to the Applicant. Potential sources of matching resources must satisfy the requirements in § 108.2030(b)(1).

(h) Projected amount of investment in LI Areas. An Applicant must describe the amount of its total Regulatory Capital and Leverage that it proposes to invest in Smaller Enterprises located in LI Areas, as compared to the amount that it proposes to invest in Small Businesses located outside of LI Areas.

(i) Projected impact. An Applicant must describe the criteria and economic measurements to be used to evaluate whether and to what extent it has met the objectives of the NMVC program. It must include:

1. A description of the extent to which it will concentrate its Developmental Venture Capital investments and Operational Assistance activities in identified LI Areas;

2. An estimate of the social, economic, and community development benefits to be created within identified LI Areas over the next five years or more as a result of its activities;

3. A description of the criteria to be used to measure the benefits created as a result of its activities;

4. A discussion about the amount of such benefits created that it will consider to constitute successfully meeting the objectives of the NMVC program.

(j) Affiliates and business relationships. Applicant must submit information regarding the management and financial strength of any parent or holding entity, affiliated firm or entity, or any other firm or entity essential to the success of the Applicant’s business plan.

§ 108.330 Grant issuance fee.

An Applicant must pay to SBA a grant issuance fee of $5,000. An Applicant must submit this fee in advance, at the time of application submission. If SBA does not select an Applicant as a Conditionally Approved NMVC Company or designate an Applicant as a NMVC Company, SBA will refund this fee to the Applicant.

Subpart E—Evaluation and Selection of NMVC Companies


SBA will evaluate and select an Applicant to participate in the NMVC program solely at SBA’s discretion, based on SBA’s review of the Applicant’s application materials, interviews or site visits with the Applicant (if any), and background investigations conducted by SBA and other Federal agencies.
agencies. SBA’s evaluation and selection process is intended to—

(a) Ensure that Applicants are evaluated on a competitive basis and in a fair and consistent manner;
(b) Take into consideration the unique proposals presented by Applicants;
(c) Ensure that each Applicant that SBA designates as a NMVC Company can fulfill successfully the goals of its comprehensive business plan; and
(d) Ensure that SBA selects Applicants in such a way as to promote Developmental Venture Capital investments nationwide and in both urban and rural areas.

§ 108.350 Eligibility and completeness.
SBA will not consider any application that is not complete or that is submitted by an Applicant that does not meet the eligibility criteria described in subpart C of this part. SBA, at its sole discretion, may request from an Applicant additional information concerning eligibility criteria or easily completed portions of the application in order to allow SBA to consider that Applicant’s application.

§ 108.360 Evaluation criteria.
SBA will evaluate and select an Applicant for participation in the NMVC program by considering the following criteria—
(a) The quality of the Applicant’s comprehensive business plan in terms of meeting the objectives of the NMVC program;
(b) The likelihood that the Applicant will fulfill the goals described in its comprehensive business plan;
(c) The capability of the Applicant’s management team;
(d) The strength and likelihood for success of the Applicant’s operations and investment strategies;
(e) The need for Developmental Venture Capital investments in the LI Areas in which the Applicant intends to invest;
(f) The extent to which the Applicant will concentrate its activities on serving the LI Areas in which it intends to invest, including the ratio of resources that it proposes to invest in such areas as compared to other areas;
(g) The Applicant’s demonstrated understanding of the markets in the LI Areas in which it intends to focus its activities;
(h) The likelihood that and the time frame within which the Applicant will be able to—
  (1) Raise the Regulatory Capital it proposes to raise for its investments, and
  (2) Obtain the binding commitments for contributions in cash or in-kind and/or an annuity it proposes to obtain as its matching resources for its Operational Assistance grant award;
(i) The strength of the Applicant’s proposal to provide Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises in which it plans to invest;
(j) The extent to which the activities proposed by the Applicant will promote economic development and the creation of wealth and job opportunities in the LI Areas in which it intends to invest and among individuals living in LI Areas; and
(k) The strength of the Applicant’s application compared to applications submitted by other Applicants intending to invest in the same or proximate LI Areas.

§ 108.370 Conditional approval.
From among the Applicants submitting eligible and complete applications, SBA will select a number of Applicants and will conditionally approve such selected Applicants to participate in the NMVC program. SBA will give each such Conditionally Approved NMVC Company a specific period of time, not to exceed two years, to satisfy the requirements to become a NMVC Company.

§ 108.380 Final approval as a NMVC Company.
(a) General rule. With respect to each Conditionally Approved NMVC Company, SBA will either:
  (1) Grant final approval to participate in the NMVC program and designate such company as a NMVC Company, if such Conditionally Approved NMVC Company, SBA will give each such Conditionally Approved NMVC Company:
  (i) Within the specific period of time SBA gave to it when SBA conditionally approved it for participation in the NMVC program, has raised:
§ 108.400  Changes in ownership of 10 percent or more of NMVC Company but no change of Control.

You must obtain SBA's prior written approval for any proposed transfer or issuance of ownership interests that results in the ownership (beneficial or of record) by any Person, or group of Persons acting in concert, of at least 10 percent of any class of your stock, partnership capital or membership interests.

§ 108.410  Changes in Control of NMVC Company (through change in ownership or otherwise).

You must obtain SBA's prior written approval for any proposed transaction or event that results in Control by any Person(s) not previously approved by SBA.

§ 108.420  Prohibition on exercise of ownership or Control rights in NMVC Company before SBA approval.

Without prior written SBA approval, no change of ownership or Control may take effect and no officer, director, employee or other Person acting on your behalf shall:

(a) Register on your books any transfer of ownership interest to the proposed new owner(s);

(b) Permit the proposed new owner(s) to exercise voting rights with respect to such ownership interest (including directly or indirectly procuring or voting any proxy, consent or authorization as to such voting rights at any meeting of shareholders, partners or members);

(c) Permit the proposed new owner(s) to participate in any manner in the conduct of your affairs (including exercising control over your books, records, funds or other assets; participating directly or indirectly in any disposition...
§ 108.430 Notification to SBA of transactions that may change ownership or Control.

You must promptly notify SBA as soon as you have knowledge of transactions or events that may result in a transfer of Control or ownership of at least 10 percent of your capital. If there is any doubt as to whether a particular transaction or event will result in such a change, report the facts to SBA.

§ 108.440 Standards governing prior SBA approval for a proposed transfer of Control.

SBA approval is contingent upon full disclosure of the real parties in interest, the source of funds for the new owners’ interest, and other data requested by SBA. As a condition of approving a proposed transfer of control, SBA may:

(a) Require an increase in your Regulatory Capital;

(b) Require the new owners or the transferee’s Control Person(s) to assume, in writing, personal liability for your Leverage, effective only in the event of their direct or indirect participation in any transfer of Control not approved by SBA; or

(c) Require compliance with any other conditions set by SBA, including compliance with the requirements for minimum capital and management-ownership diversity as in effect at such time for new NMVC Companies.

§ 108.450 Notification to SBA of pledge of NMVC Company’s shares.

(a) You must notify SBA in writing, within 30 calendar days, of the terms of any transaction in which:

(1) Any Person, or group of Persons acting in concert, pledges shares of your stock (or equivalent ownership interests) as collateral for indebtedness; and

(2) The shares pledged are at least 10 percent of your Regulatory Capital.

(b) If the transaction creates a change of ownership or Control, you must comply with §108.400 or §108.410, as appropriate.

Restrictions on Common Control or Ownership of Two or More NMVC Companies

§ 108.460 Restrictions on Common Control or ownership of two (or more) NMVC Companies.

Without SBA’s prior written approval, you must not have an officer, director, manager, Control Person, or owner (with a direct or indirect ownership interest of at least 10 percent) who is also:

(a) An officer, director, manager, Control Person, or owner (with a direct or indirect ownership interest of at least 10 percent) of another NMVC Company; or

(b) An officer or director of any Person that directly or indirectly controls, or is controlled by, or is under Common Control with, another NMVC Company.

Change in Structure of NMVC Company

§ 108.470 SBA approval of merger, consolidation, or reorganization of NMVC Company.

You may not merge, consolidate, change form of organization (corporation or partnership) or reorganize without SBA’s prior written approval. Any such merger or consolidation will be subject to §108.440.

Subpart G—Managing the Operations of a NMVC Company

General Requirements

§ 108.500 Lawful operations under the Act.

You must engage only in the activities contemplated by the Act and in no other activities.

§ 108.502 Representations to the public.

You may not represent or imply to anyone that the SBA, the U.S. Government or any of its agencies or officers has approved any ownership interests you have issued or obligations you have incurred. Be certain to include a
§ 108.503 NMVC Company’s adoption of an approved valuation policy.

(a) Valuation guidelines. You must prepare, document and report the valuations of your Loans and Investments in accordance with the Valuation Guidelines for SBICs issued by SBA. These guidelines may be obtained from SBA’s Investment Division.

(b) SBA approval of valuation policy. You must have a written valuation policy approved by SBA for use in determining the value of your Loans and Investments. You must either:

1. Adopt without change the model valuation policy set forth in section III of the Valuation Guidelines for SBICs; or

2. Obtain SBA’s prior written approval of an alternative valuation policy.

(c) Responsibility for valuations. Your board of directors, managing members, or general partner(s) will be solely responsible for adopting your valuation policy and for using it to prepare valuations of your Loans and Investments for submission to SBA. If SBA reasonably believes that your valuations, individually or in the aggregate, are materially misstated, it reserves the right to require you to engage, at your expense, an independent third party acceptable to SBA to substantiate the valuations.

(d) Frequency of valuations. (1) You must value your Loans and Investments at the end of the second quarter of your fiscal year, and at the end of your fiscal year.

2. On a case-by-case basis, SBA may require you to perform valuations more frequently.

3. You must report material adverse changes in valuations at least quarterly, within thirty days following the close of the quarter.

(e) Review of valuations by independent public accountant. (1) For valuations performed as of the end of your fiscal year, your independent public accountant must review your valuation procedures and the implementation of such procedures, including adequacy of documentation.

2. The independent public accountant’s report on your audited annual financial statements (SBA Form 468) must include a statement that your valuations were prepared in accordance with your approved valuation policy.

§ 108.504 Equipment and office requirements.

(a) Computer capability. You must have a personal computer with a modem, and be able to use this equipment to prepare reports (using SBA provided software) and transmit them to SBA. In addition, you must have access to the Internet and the capability to send and receive electronic mail via the Internet.

(b) Facsimile capability. You must be able to receive facsimile messages 24 hours per day at your primary office.

(c) Accessible office. You must maintain an office that is convenient to the public and is open for business during normal working hours.

§ 108.506 Safeguarding the NMVC Company’s assets/Internal controls.

You must adopt a plan to safeguard your assets and monitor the reliability of your financial data, personnel, Portfolio, funds and equipment. You must provide your bank and custodian with a certified copy of your resolution or other formal document describing your control procedures.

§ 108.507 Violations based on false filings and nonperformance of agreements with SBA.

The following shall constitute a violation of this part:

(a) Nonperformance. Nonperformance of any of the requirements of any Debenture or of any written agreement with SBA.

(b) False statement. In any document submitted to SBA:

1. Any false statement knowingly made; or

2. Any misrepresentation of a material fact; or

3. Any failure to state a material fact. A material fact is any fact that is
necessary to make a statement not misleading in light of the circumstances under which the statement was made.

§ 108.509 Employment of SBA officials.
Without SBA’s prior written approval, for a period of two years after the date of your most recent issuance of Leverage (or the receipt of any SBA Assistance as defined in part 105 of this chapter), you are not permitted to employ, offer employment to, or retain for professional services, any person who:
(a) Served as an officer, attorney, agent, or employee of SBA on or within one year before such date; and
(b) As such, occupied a position or engaged in activities which, in SBA’s determination, involved discretion with respect to the granting of SBA Assistance.

MANAGEMENT AND COMPENSATION
§ 108.510 SBA approval of NMVC Company’s Investment Adviser/Manager.
You may employ an Investment Adviser/Manager who will be subject to the supervision of your board of directors, managing members, or general partner. If you have Leverage or plan to seek Leverage, you must obtain SBA’s prior written approval of the management contract. SBA’s approval of an Investment Adviser/Manager for one NMVC Company does not indicate approval of that manager for any other NMVC Company.
(a) Management contract. The contract must:
(1) Specify the services the Investment Adviser/Manager will render to you and to the Small Businesses in your Portfolio; and
(2) Indicate the basis for computing Management Expenses.
(b) Material change to approved management contract. If there is a material change, both you and SBA must approve such change in advance. If you are uncertain if the change is material, submit the proposed revision to SBA.

§ 108.520 Management Expenses of a NMVC Company.
SBA must approve your initial Management Expenses and any increases in your Management Expenses.
(a) Definition of Management Expenses. Management Expenses include:
(1) Salaries;
(2) Office expenses;
(3) Travel;
(4) Business development;
(5) Office and equipment rental;
(6) Bookkeeping; and
(7) Expenses related to developing, investigating and monitoring investments.
(b) Management Expenses do not include services provided by specialized outside consultants, outside lawyers and independent public accountants, if they perform services not generally performed by a venture capital company.

CASH MANAGEMENT BY A NMVC COMPANY
§ 108.530 Restrictions on investments of idle funds by NMVC Companies.
(a) Permitted investments of idle funds. Funds not invested in Small Businesses must be maintained in:
(1) Direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal and interest by, the United States, which mature within 15 months from the date of the investment; or
(2) Repurchase agreements with federally insured institutions, with a maturity of seven days or less. The securities underlying the repurchase agreements must be direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal and interest by, the United States. The securities must be maintained in a custodial account at a federally insured institution; or
(3) Certificates of deposit with a maturity of one year or less, issued by a federally insured institution; or
(4) A deposit account in a federally insured institution, subject to a withdrawal restriction of one year or less; or
(5) A checking account in a federally insured institution; or
(6) A reasonable petty cash fund.
§ 108.550 Deposit of funds in excess of the insured amount. (1) You are permitted to deposit funds in a federally insured institution in excess of the institution’s insured amount, but only if the institution is “well capitalized” in accordance with the definition set forth in regulations of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, as amended (12 CFR 325.103).

(2) Exception: You may make a temporary deposit (not to exceed 30 days) in excess of the insured amount, in a transfer account established to facilitate the receipt and disbursement of funds or to hold funds necessary to honor Commitments issued.

(c) Deposit of funds in Associate institution. A deposit in, or a repurchase agreement with, a federally insured institution that is your Associate is not considered a Financing of such Associate under §108.730, provided the terms of such deposit or repurchase agreement are no less favorable than those available to the general public.

§ 108.550 Prior approval of secured third-party debt of NMVC companies.

(a) Definition. In this section, “secured third-party debt” means any non-SBA debt secured by any of your assets, including secured guarantees and other contingent obligations that you voluntarily assume and secured lines of credit.

(b) General rule. You must get SBA’s written approval before you incur any secured third-party debt or refinance any debt with secured third-party debt, including any renewal of a secured line of credit, increase in the maximum amount available under a secured line of credit, or expansion of the scope of a security interest or lien. For purposes of this paragraph (b), “expansion of the scope of a security interest or lien” does not include the substitution of one asset or group of assets for another, provided the asset values (as reported on your most recent annual Form 468) are comparable.

(c) Conditions for SBA approval. As a condition of granting its approval under this section, SBA may impose such restrictions or limitations as it deems appropriate, taking into account your historical performance, current financial position, proposed terms of the secured debt and amount of aggregate debt you will have outstanding (including Leverage). SBA will not favorably consider any requests for approval which include a blanket lien on all your assets, or a security interest in your investor commitments in excess of 125 percent of the proposed borrowing.

(d) Thirty-day approval. Unless SBA notifies you otherwise within 30 days after it receives your request, you may consider your request automatically approved if:

(1) You are in regulatory compliance;

(2) The security interest in your assets is limited to either those assets being acquired with the borrowed funds or an asset coverage ratio of no more than 2:1;

(3) Your request is for approval of a secured line of credit that would not cause your total outstanding borrowings (not including Leverage) to exceed 50 percent of your Leverageable Capital.

Voluntary Decrease in Regulatory Capital

§ 108.585 Voluntary decrease in NMVC Company’s Regulatory Capital.

You must obtain SBA’s prior written approval to reduce your Regulatory Capital by more than two percent in any fiscal year. At all times, you must retain sufficient Regulatory Capital to meet the minimum capital requirements in the Act and §108.210, and sufficient Leverageable Capital to avoid having excess Leverage in violation of section 355(d) of the Act.
Small Business Administration

Subpart H—Recordkeeping, Reporting, and Examination Requirements for NMVC Companies

§ 108.600 General requirement for NMVC Company to maintain and preserve records.

(a) Maintaining your accounting records. You must establish and maintain your accounting records using SBA’s standard chart of accounts for SBICs, unless SBA approves otherwise. You may obtain this chart of accounts from SBA.

(b) Location of records. You must keep the following records at your principal place of business or, in the case of paragraph (b)(3) of this section, at the branch office that is primarily responsible for the transaction:

(1) All your accounting and other financial records;
(2) All minutes of meetings of directors, stockholders, executive committees, partners, or other officials; and
(3) All documents and supporting materials related to your business transactions, except for any items held by a custodian under a written agreement between you and a Portfolio Concern or non-SBA lender, or any securities held in a safe deposit box, or by a licensed securities broker in an amount not exceeding the broker’s per-account insurance coverage.

(c) Preservation of records. You must retain all the records that are the basis for your financial reports. Such records must be preserved for the periods specified in this paragraph (c), and must remain accessible for the first two years of the preservation period.

(1) You must preserve for at least 15 years or, in the case of a Partnership NMVC Company or LLC NMVC Company, at least two years beyond the date of liquidation:

(i) All your accounting ledgers and journals, and any other records of assets, asset valuations, liabilities, equity, income, and expenses.
(ii) Your Articles, bylaws, minute books, and NMVC Company application.

(iii) All documents evidencing ownership of the NMVC Company including ownership ledgers, and ownership transfer registers.

(2) You must preserve for at least six years all supporting documentation (such as vouchers, bank statements, or canceled checks) for the records listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(3) After final disposition of any item in your Portfolio, you must preserve for at least six years:

(i) Financing applications and Financing instruments.
(ii) All loan, participation, and escrow agreements.
(iii) Size status declarations (SBA Form 480).
(iv) Any capital stock certificates and warrants of the Portfolio Concern that you did not surrender or exercise.
(v) All other documents and supporting material relating to the Portfolio Concern, including correspondence.

(4) You may substitute a microfilm or computer-scanned or generated copy for the original of any record covered by this paragraph (c).

(d) Additional requirement. You must comply with the recordkeeping and record retention requirements set forth in Circular A–110 of the Office of Management and Budget. (OMB circulars are available from the addresses in 5 CFR 1310.3.)

§ 108.610 Required certifications for Loans and Investments.

For each of your Loans and Investments, you must have the documents listed in this section. You must keep these documents in your files and make them available to SBA upon request.

(a) SBA Form 480, the Size Status Declaration, executed both by you and by the concern you are financing. By executing this document, both parties certify that the concern is a Small Business. For securities purchased from an underwriter in a public offering, you may substitute a prospectus showing that the concern is a Small Business.

(b) SBA Form 652, a certification by the concern you are financing that it will not illegally discriminate (see part 112 of this chapter).
§ 108.620 Requirements to obtain information from Portfolio Concerns.

All the information required by this section is subject to the requirements of §108.600 and must be in English.

(a) Information for initial Financing decision. Before extending any Financing, you must require the applicant to submit such financial statements, plans of operation (including intended use of financing proceeds), cash flow analyses, projections, and such community economic development information about the company, as are necessary to support your investment decision. The information submitted must be consistent with the size and type of the business and the amount of the proposed Financing.

(b) Updated financial and community economic development information. (1) The terms of each Financing must require the Portfolio Concern to provide, at least annually, sufficient financial and community economic development information to enable you to perform the following required procedures:

(i) Evaluate the financial condition of the Portfolio Concern for the purpose of valuing your investment;

(ii) Determine the continued eligibility of the Portfolio Concern;

(iii) Verify the use of Financing proceeds; and

(iv) Evaluate the community economic development impact of the Financing.

(2) The president, chief executive officer, treasurer, chief financial officer, general partner, or proprietor of the Portfolio Concern must certify the information submitted to you.

(3) For financial and valuation purposes, you may accept a complete copy of the Federal income tax return filed by the Portfolio Concern (or its proprietor) in lieu of financial statements, but only if appropriate for the size and type of the business involved.

(4) The requirements in this paragraph (b) do not apply when you acquire securities from an underwriter in a public offering (see §108.625). In that case, you must keep copies of all reports furnished by the Portfolio Concern to the holders of its securities.

(c) Information required for examination purposes. You must obtain any information requested by SBA’s examiners for the purpose of verifying the certifications made by a Portfolio Concern under §108.610. In this regard, your Financing documents must contain provisions requiring the Portfolio Concern to give you and/or SBA’s examiners access to its books and records for such purpose.

REPORTING REQUIREMENTS FOR NMVC COMPANIES

§ 108.630 Requirement for NMVC companies to file financial statements and supplementary information with SBA (SBA Form 468).

(a) Annual filing of Form 468. For each fiscal year, you must submit to SBA financial statements and supplementary information prepared on SBA Form 468. You must file Form 468 on or before the last day of the third month following the end of your fiscal year, except for the information required under paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section, which must be filed on or before the last day of the fifth month following the end of your fiscal year.

(1) Audit of Form 468. An independent public accountant acceptable to SBA must audit the annual Form 468.

(2) Insurance requirement for public accountant. Unless SBA approves otherwise, your independent public accountant must carry at least $1,000,000 of Errors and Omissions insurance, or be self-insured and have a net worth of at least $1,000,000.

(b) Interim filings of Form 468. When requested by SBA, you must file interim reports on Form 468. SBA may require you to file the entire form or only certain statements and schedules. You must file such reports on or before the last day of the month following the end of the reporting period. When you submit a request for a draw under an SBA Leverage commitment, you must
also comply with any applicable filing requirements set forth in §108.1220.

(c) Standards for preparation of Form 468. You must prepare SBA Form 468 in accordance with SBA’s Accounting Standards and Financial Reporting Requirements for Small Business Investment Companies, which you may obtain from SBA.

(d) Where to file Form 468. Submit all filings of Form 468 to the Office of New Markets Venture Capital in the Investment Division of SBA.

(e) Reporting of social, economic, or community development impact information on Form 468. Your annual filing of SBA Form 468 must include an assessment of the social, economic, or community development impact of each Financing. This assessment must specify the fulltime equivalent jobs created, the impact of the Financing on the revenues and profits of the business and on taxes paid by the business and its employees, and a listing of the number and percentage of employees who reside in LI Areas.

(f) Reporting of community development information. For each Financing of a Low-Income Enterprise, your Form 468 must include an assessment of such Financing with respect to:

1. The social, economic or community development benefits achieved as a result of the Financing;
2. How and to what extent such benefits fulfilled the goals of your comprehensive business plan and Participation Agreement;
3. Whether you consider the Financing or the results of the Financing to have fulfilled the objectives of the NMVC program; and
4. Whether, and if so, how you achieved accountability to the residents of the LI Area in connection with that Financing.

§108.640 Requirement to file portfolio financing reports (SBA Form 1031).

For each Financing you make (excluding guarantees), you must submit a Portfolio Financing Report on SBA Form 1031 within 30 days of the closing date.

§108.650 Requirement to report portfolio valuations to SBA.

You must determine the value of your Loans and Investments in accordance with §108.503. You must report such valuations to SBA within 90 days of the end of the fiscal year in the case of annual valuations, and within 30 days following the close of other reporting periods. You must report material adverse changes in valuations at least quarterly, within thirty days following the close of the quarter.

§108.660 Other items required to be filed by NMVC Company with SBA.

(a) Reports to owners. You must give SBA a copy of any report you furnish to your investors, including any prospectus, letter, or other publication concerning your financial operations or those of any Portfolio Concern.

(b) Documents filed with SEC. You must give SBA a copy of any report, application or document you file with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(c) Litigation reports. When you become a party to litigation or other proceedings, you must give SBA a report within 30 days that describes the proceedings and identifies the other parties involved and your relationship to them.

1. The proceedings covered by this paragraph (c) include any action by you, or by your security holder(s) in a personal or derivative capacity, against an officer, director, Investment Adviser or other Associate of yours for alleged breach of official duty.

2. SBA may require you to submit copies of the pleadings and other documents SBA may specify.

3. Where proceedings have been terminated by settlement or final judgment, you must promptly advise SBA of the terms.

4. This paragraph (c) does not apply to collection actions or proceedings to enforce your ordinary creditors’ rights.

(d) Notification of criminal charges. If any officer, director, or general partner of the NMVC Company, or any other person who was required by SBA to complete a personal history statement, is charged with or convicted of any
§ 108.680 Reporting changes in NMVC Company not subject to prior SBA approval.

(a) Changes to be reported for post-approval. This section applies to any changes in your Articles, ownership, capitalization, management, operating area, or investment policies that do not require SBA’s prior approval. You must report such changes to SBA within 30 days for post approval.

(b) Approval by SBA. You may consider any change submitted under this section to be approved unless SBA notifies you to the contrary within 90 days after receiving it. SBA’s approval is contingent upon your full disclosure of all relevant facts and is subject to any conditions SBA may prescribe.

§ 108.690 Examinations.

All NMVC companies must submit to annual examinations by or at the direction of SBA for the purpose of evaluating regulatory compliance.

§ 108.691 Responsibilities of NMVC Company during examination.

You must make all books, records and other pertinent documents and materials available for the examination, including any information required by the examiner under §108.620(c). In addition, the agreement between you and the independent public accountant performing your audit must provide that any information in the accountant’s working papers be made available to SBA upon request.
§ 108.710 Requirement to finance Low-Income Enterprises.

(a) Low-Income Enterprise Financings. At the close of each of your fiscal years—

(1) At least 80 percent of your Portfolio Concerns must be Low-Income Enterprises in which you have an Equity Capital Investment; and

(2) For all Financings you have extended, you must have invested at least 80 percent (in total dollars) in Equity Capital Investments in Low-Income Enterprises.

(b) Non-compliance with this section. If you have not reached the percentages required in paragraph (a) of this section at the end of any fiscal year, then you must be in compliance by the end of the following fiscal year. However, you will not be eligible for additional Leverage until such time as you reach the required percentages (see §108.1120).

§ 108.720 Small Businesses that may be ineligible for financing.

(a) Relenders or reinvestors. You are not permitted to finance any business that is a relender or reinvestor. Relenders or reinvestors are businesses whose primary business activity involves, directly or indirectly, providing funds to others, purchasing debt obligations, factoring, or long-term leasing of equipment with no provision for maintenance or repair.

(b) Passive Businesses. You are not permitted to finance a passive business.

(1) Definition. A business is passive if:

(i) It is not engaged in a regular and continuous business operation (for purposes of this paragraph (b), the mere receipt of payments such as dividends, rents, lease payments, or royalties is not considered a regular and continuous business operation); or

(ii) Its employees are not carrying on the majority of day to day operations, and the company does not provide effective control and supervision, on a day to day basis, over persons employed under contract; or

(iii) It passes through substantially all of the proceeds of the Financing to another entity.

(2) Exception for pass-through of proceeds to subsidiary. With the prior written approval of SBA, you may finance a passive business if it is a Small Business and it passes substantially all the proceeds through to one or more subsidiary companies, each of which is an eligible Small Business that is not passive. For the purpose of this paragraph (b) (2), “subsidiary company” means a company in which at least 50 percent of the outstanding voting securities are owned by the Financed passive business.

(3) Exception for certain Partnership NMVC companies. With the prior written approval of SBA, if you are a Partnership NMVC Company, you may form one or more wholly owned corporations in accordance with this paragraph (b) (3). The sole purpose of such corporation(s) must be to provide Financing to one or more eligible, unincorporated Small Businesses. You may form such corporation(s) only if a direct Financing to such Small Businesses would cause any of your investors to incur unrelated business taxable income under section 511 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (26 U.S.C. 511). Your investment of funds in such corporation(s) will not constitute a violation of §108.730(a).

(c) Real Estate Businesses. (1) You are not permitted to finance:

(i) Any business classified under subsector 5311 (Lessors of Real Estate) of the NAICS Manual; or

(ii) Any business listed under subsector 5312 (Offices of Real Estate Agents and Brokers) unless at least 80 percent of the revenue is derived from non-Affiliate sources.

(2) You are not permitted to finance a business, regardless of NAICS classification, if the Financing is to be used to acquire or refinance real property, unless the Small Business:

(i) Is acquiring an existing property and will use at least 51 percent of the usable square footage for an eligible business purpose; or

(ii) Is building or renovating a building and will use at least 67 percent of the usable square footage for an eligible business purpose; or

(iii) Occupies the subject property and uses at least 67 percent of the usable square footage for an eligible business purpose.

(d) Project Financing. You are not permitted to finance a business if:
(1) The assets of the business are to be reduced or consumed, generally without replacement, as the life of the business progresses, and the nature of the business requires that a stream of cash payments be made to the business’s financing sources, on a basis associated with the continuing sale of assets. Examples include real estate development projects and oil and gas wells; or

(2) The primary purpose of the Financing is to fund production of a single item or defined limited number of items, generally over a defined production period, and such production will constitute the majority of the activities of the Small Business. Examples include motion pictures and electric generating plants.

(e) Farm land purchases. You are not permitted to finance the acquisition of farmland. Farmland means land, which is or is intended to be used for agricultural or forestry purposes, such as the production of food, fiber, or wood, or is so taxed or zoned.

(f) Public interest. You are not permitted to finance any business if the proceeds are to be used for purposes contrary to the public interest, including but not limited to activities which are in violation of law, or inconsistent with free competitive enterprise.

(g) Foreign investment. (1) General rule. You are not permitted to finance a business if:

(i) The funds will be used substantially for a foreign operation; or

(ii) At the time of the Financing or within one year thereafter, more than 49 percent of the employees or tangible assets of the Small Business are located outside the United States (unless you can show, to SBA’s satisfaction, that the Financing was used for a specific domestic purpose).

(2) Exception. This paragraph (g) does not prohibit a Financing used to acquire foreign materials and equipment or foreign property rights for use or sale in the United States.

(h) Financing NMVC companies or SBICs. You are not permitted to provide funds, directly or indirectly, that the Small Business will use:

(1) To purchase stock in or provide capital to a NMVC Company or SBIC; or

(2) To repay an indebtedness incurred for the purpose of investing in a NMVC Company or SBIC.

§ 108.730 Financings which constitute conflicts of interest.

(a) General rule. You must not self-deal to the prejudice of a Small Business, the NMVC Company, its shareholders or partners, or SBA. Unless you obtain a prior written exemption from SBA for special instances in which a Financing may further the purposes of the Act despite presenting a conflict of interest, you must not directly or indirectly:

(1) Provide Financing to any of your Associates, except for a Small Business that satisfies all of the following conditions:

(i) Your Associate relationship with the Small Business is described by paragraph (8) or (9) of the definition of Associate in §108.50;

(ii) No Person triggering the Associate relationship identified in paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section is a Close Relative or Secondary Relative of any Person described in paragraph (1), (2), (4), or (5) of the definition of Associate in §108.50; and

(iii) No single Associate of yours has either a voting interest or an economic interest in the Small Business exceeding 20 percent, and no two or more of your Associates have either a voting interest or an economic interest exceeding 33 percent. Economic interests shall be computed on a fully diluted basis, and both voting and economic interests shall exclude any interest owned through the NMVC Company.

(2) Provide Financing to an Associate of another NMVC Company if one of your Associates has received or will receive any direct or indirect Financing or a Commitment from that NMVC Company or a third NMVC Company (including Financing or Commitments received under any understanding, agreement, or cross dealing, reciprocal or circular arrangement).

(3) Borrow money from:

(i) A Small Business Financed by you;

(ii) An officer, director, or owner of at least a 10 percent equity interest in such business; or
Small Business Administration

§ 108.730

(iii) A Close Relative of any such officer, director, or equity owner.

(4) Provide Financing to a Small Business to discharge an obligation to your Associate or free other funds to pay such obligation. This paragraph (a)(4) does not apply if the obligation is to an Associate Lending Institution and is a line of credit or other obligation incurred in the normal course of business.

(b) Rules applicable to Associates. Without SBA’s prior written approval, your Associates must not, directly or indirectly:

(1) Borrow money from any Person described in paragraph (a)(3) of this section.

(2) Receive from a Small Business any compensation in connection with Assistance you provide (except as permitted under § 108.825(c)), or anything of value for procuring, attempting to procure, or influencing your action with respect to such Assistance.

(c) Applicability of other laws. You are also bound by any restrictions in Federal or State laws governing conflicts of interest and fiduciary obligations.

(d) Financings with Associates. (1) Financings with Associates requiring prior approval. Without SBA’s prior written approval, you may not Finance any business in which your Associate has either a voting equity interest or total equity interests (including potential interests) of at least five percent, except as otherwise permitted under paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(2) Other Financings with Associates. If you and an Associate provide Financing to the same Small Business, either at the same time or at different times, you must be able to demonstrate to SBA’s satisfaction that the terms and conditions are (or were) fair and equitable to you, taking into account any differences in the timing of each party’s financing transactions.

(3) Exceptions to paragraphs (d)(1) and (d)(2) of this section. A Financing that falls into one of the following categories is exempt from the prior approval requirement in paragraph (d)(1) of this section or is presumed to be fair and equitable to you for the purposes of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, as appropriate:

(i) Your Associate is a Lending Institution that is providing financing under a credit facility in order to meet the operational needs of the Small Business, and the terms of such financing are usual and customary.

(ii) Your Associate invests in the Small Business on the same terms and conditions and at the same time as you.

(iii) Both you and your Associate are NMVC companies.

(e) Use of Associates to manage Portfolio Concerns. To protect your investment, you may designate an Associate to serve as an officer, director, or other participant in the management of a Small Business. You must identify any such Associate in your records available for SBA’s review under §108.600. Without SBA’s prior written approval, the Associate must not:

(1) Have any other direct or indirect financial interest in the Portfolio Concern that exceeds, or has the potential to exceed, the percentages of the Portfolio Concern’s equity set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(2) Receive any income or anything of value from the Portfolio Concern unless it is for your benefit, with the exception of director’s fees, expenses, and distributions based upon the Associate’s ownership interest in the Concern.

(f) 1940 and 1980 Act Companies: SEC exemptions. If you are a 1940 or 1980 Act Company and you receive an exemption from the Securities and Exchange Commission for a transaction described in this section, you need not obtain SBA’s approval of the transaction. However, you must promptly notify SBA of the transaction.

(g) Restriction on options obtained by NMVC Company’s management and employees. Your employees, officers, directors, managing members or general partners, or the general partners of the management company that is providing services to you or to your general partner, may obtain options in a Financed Small Business only if:

(1) They participate in the Financing on a pari passu basis with you; or

(2) SBA gives its prior written approval; or

(3) The options received are compensation for service as a member of
the board of directors of the Small Business, and such compensation does not exceed that paid to other outside directors. In the absence of such directors, fees must be reasonable when compared with amounts paid to outside directors of similar companies.

§ 108.740 Portfolio diversification (“overline” limitation).

(a) Without SBA’s prior written approval, you may provide Financing or a Commitment to a Small Business only if the resulting amount of your aggregate outstanding Financings and Commitments to such Small Business and its Affiliates does not exceed 20 percent of the sum of:

(1) Your Regulatory Capital as of the date of the Financing or Commitment; plus

(2) Any permitted Distribution(s) you made during the five years preceding the date of the Financing or Commitment which reduced your Regulatory Capital.

(b) For the purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, you must measure each outstanding Financing at its current cost plus any amount of the Financing that was previously written off.

§ 108.760 How a change in size or activity of a Portfolio Concern affects the NMVC Company and the Portfolio Concern.

(a) Effect on NMVC Company of a change in size of a Portfolio Concern. If a Portfolio Concern no longer qualifies as a Small Business you may keep your investment in the concern and:

(1) Subject to the overline limitations of §108.740, you may provide additional Financing to the concern up to the time it makes a public offering of its securities.

(2) Even after the concern makes a public offering, you may exercise any stock options, warrants, or other rights to purchase Equity Securities which you acquired before the public offering, or fund Commitments you made before the public offering.

(b) Effect of a change in business activity occurring within one year of NMVC Company’s initial Financing. (1) Retention of Investment. Unless you receive SBA’s written approval, you may not keep your investment in a Portfolio Concern, small or otherwise, which becomes ineligible by reason of a change in its business activity within one year of your initial investment.

(2) Request for SBA’s approval to retain investment. If you request that SBA approve the retention of your investment, your request must include sufficient evidence to demonstrate that the change in business activity was caused by an unforeseen change in circumstances and was not contemplated at the time the Financing was made.

(3) Additional Financing. If SBA approves your request to retain an investment under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, you may provide additional Financing to the Portfolio Concern to the extent necessary to protect against the loss of the amount of your original investment, subject to the overline limitations of §108.740.

(c) Effect of a change in business activity occurring more than one year after the initial Financing. If a Portfolio Concern becomes ineligible because of a change in business activity more than one year after your initial Financing you may:

(1) Retain your investment; and

(2) Provide additional Financing to the Portfolio Concern to the extent necessary to protect against the loss of the amount of your original investment, subject to the overline limitations of §108.740.

§ 108.800 Financings in the form of equity interests.

You may not, inadvertently or otherwise:

(a) Become a general partner in any unincorporated business; or

(b) Become jointly or severally liable for any obligations of an unincorporated business.

§ 108.820 Financings in the form of guarantees.

(a) General rule. At the request of a Small Business or where necessary to protect your existing investment, you may guarantee the monetary obligation of a Small Business to any non-Associate creditor.
§ 108.1100 Type of Leverage and application procedures.

(a) Type of Leverage available. You may apply for Leverage from SBA in the form of a guarantee of your Debentures.

(b) Applying for Leverage. The Leverage application process has two parts. You must first apply for SBA’s conditional commitment to reserve a specific amount of Leverage for your future use. You may then apply to draw down Leverage against the commitment. See §§108.1200 through 108.1240.

(c) Where to send your application. Send all Leverage applications to SBA.
§ 108.1120 Investment Division Office of New Markets Venture Capital, 409 Third Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

§ 108.1120 General eligibility requirement for Leverage.

To be eligible for Leverage, you must be in compliance with the Act, the regulations in this part, and your Participation Agreement.

§ 108.1130 Leverage fees payable by NMVC Company.

There is no fee for the issuance of Debentures by a NMVC Company.

§ 108.1140 NMVC Company’s acceptance of SBA remedies under §108.1810.

If you issue Leverage, you automatically agree to the terms and conditions in §108.1810 as it exists at the time of issuance. The effect of these terms and conditions is the same as if they were fully incorporated in the terms of your Leverage.

MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF LEVERAGE FOR WHICH A NMVC COMPANY IS ELIGIBLE

§ 108.1150 Maximum amount of Leverage for a NMVC Company.

The face amount of a NMVC Company’s outstanding Debentures may not exceed 150 percent of its Leverageable Capital.

CONDITIONAL COMMITMENTS BY SBA TO RESERVE LEVERAGE FOR A NMVC COMPANY

§ 108.1200 SBA’s Leverage commitment to a NMVC Company—application procedure, amount, and term.

(a) General. Under the provisions in §§108.1200 through 108.1240, you may apply for SBA’s conditional commitment to reserve a specific amount and type of Leverage for your future use. You may then apply to draw down Leverage against the commitment.

(b) Applying for a Leverage commitment. SBA will notify you when it is accepting requests for Leverage commitments. Upon receipt of your request, SBA will send you a complete application package.

(c) Limitations on the amount of a Leverage commitment. The amount of a Leverage commitment must be a multiple of $5,000. SBA, in its discretion, may determine a minimum dollar amount for Leverage commitments. Any such minimum amounts will be published in Notices in the Federal Register from time to time.

(d) Term of Leverage commitment. SBA’s Leverage commitment will automatically lapse on the expiration date stated in the commitment letter issued to you by SBA.

§ 108.1220 Requirement for NMVC Company to file financial statements at the time of request for a draw.

(a) If you submit a request for a draw against SBA’s Leverage commitment more than 90 days since your submission of an annual Form 468 or a Form 468 (Short Form), you must:

1. Give SBA a financial statement on Form 468 (Short Form);

2. File a statement of no material adverse change in your financial condition since your last filing of Form 468.

(b) You will not be eligible for a draw if you are not in compliance with this section.

§ 108.1230 Draw-downs by NMVC Company under SBA’s Leverage commitment.

(a) NMVC Company’s authorization of SBA to guarantee securities. By submitting a request for a draw against SBA’s Leverage commitment, you authorize SBA, or any agent or trustee SBA designates, to guarantee your Debenture and to sell it with SBA’s guarantee.

(b) Limitations on amount of draw. The amount of a draw must be a multiple of $5,000. SBA, in its discretion, may determine a minimum dollar amount for draws against SBA’s Leverage commitments. Any such minimum amounts will be published in Notices in the Federal Register from time to time.

(c) Effect of regulatory violations on NMVC Company’s eligibility for draws. (1) General rule. You are eligible to make a draw against SBA’s Leverage commitment only if you are in compliance with all applicable provisions of the Act and SBA regulations (i.e., no unresolved statutory or regulatory violations), and your Participation Agreement.
§ 108.1600 SBA authority to issue and guarantee Trust Certificates (“TCS”)

(a) Authorization. Section 356 of the Act authorizes SBA to issue TCS and to guarantee the timely payment of the principal and interest thereon. Any guarantee by SBA of such TC is limited to the principal and interest due on the closing date of each proposed Financing.

§ 108.1240 Funding of NMVC Company’s draw request through sale to third-party.

(a) NMVC Company’s authorization of SBA to arrange sale of securities to third-party. By submitting a request for a draw of Debenture Leverage, you authorize SBA, or any agent or trustee SBA designates, to enter into any agreements (and to bind you to such agreements) necessary to accomplish:

(1) The sale of your Debenture to a third-party at a rate approved by SBA; and

(2) The purchase of your security from the third-party and the pooling of your security with other securities with the same maturity date.

(b) Sale of Debentures to a third-party. If SBA arranges for the sale of your Debenture to a third-party, the sale price may be an amount discounted from the face amount of the Debenture.
Debentures in any Trust or Pool backing such TC. The full faith and credit of the United States is pledged to the payment of all amounts due under the guarantee of any TC.

(b) SBA authority to arrange public or private fundings of Leverage. SBA in its discretion may arrange for public or private financing under its guarantee authority. Such financing arranged by SBA may be accomplished by the sale of individual Debentures, aggregations of Debentures, or Pools or Trusts of Debentures.

(c) Pass-through provisions. TCs shall provide for a pass-through to their holders of all amounts of principal and interest paid on the Debentures in the Pool or Trust against which they are issued.

(d) Formation of a Pool or Trust holding Leverage Securities. SBA shall approve the formation of each Pool or Trust. SBA may, in its discretion, establish the size of the Pools and their composition, the interest rate on the TCs issued against Trusts or Pools, fees, discounts, premiums and other charges made in connection with the Pools, Trusts, and TCs, and any other characteristics of a Pool or Trust it deems appropriate.

§ 108.1610 Effect of prepayment or early redemption of Leverage on a Trust Certificate.

(a) The rights, if any, of a NMVC Company to prepay any Debenture is established by the terms of such security, and no such right is created or denied by the regulations in this part.

(b) SBA’s rights to purchase or prepay any Debenture without premium are established by the terms of the Guaranty Agreement relating to the Debenture.

(c) Any prepayment of a Debenture pursuant to the terms of the Guaranty Agreement relating to such security shall reduce the SBA guarantee of timely payment of principal and interest on a TC in proportion to the amount of principal that such prepaid Debenture represents in the Trust or Pool backing such TC.

(d) SBA shall be discharged from its guarantee obligation to the holder or holders of any TC, or any successor or transferee of such holder, to the extent of any such prepayment, whether or not such successor or transferee shall have notice of any such prepayment.

(e) Interest on prepaid Debentures shall accrue only through the date of prepayment.

(f) In the event that all Debentures constituting a Trust or Pool are prepaid, the TCs backed by such Trust or Pool shall be redeemed by payment of the unpaid principal and interest on the TCs; provided, however, that in the case of the prepayment of a Debenture pursuant to the provisions of the Guaranty Agreement relating to the Debenture, the CRA shall pass through prorata to the holders of the TCs any such prepayments including any prepayment penalty paid by the obligor NMVC Company pursuant to the terms of the Debenture.

§ 108.1620 Functions of agents, including Central Registration Agent, Selling Agent and Fiscal Agent.

(a) Agents. SBA may appoint or cause to be appointed agent(s) to perform functions necessary to market and service Debentures or TCs pursuant to this part.

1) Selling Agent. As a condition of guaranteeing a Debenture, SBA may cause each NMVC Company to appoint a Selling Agent to perform functions that include, but are not limited to:

(i) Selecting qualified entities to become pool or Trust assemblers (“Poolers”).

(ii) Receiving guaranteed Debentures as well as negotiating the terms and conditions of sales or periodic offerings of Debentures and/or TCs on behalf of NMVC companies.

(iii) Directing and coordinating periodic sales of Debentures and/or TCs.

(iv) Arranging for the production of Offering Circulars, certificates, and such other documents as may be required from time to time.

2) Fiscal Agent. SBA shall appoint a Fiscal Agent to:

(i) Establish performance criteria for Poolers.

(ii) Monitor and evaluate the financial markets to determine those factors that will minimize or reduce the cost of funding Debentures.
Small Business Administration

§ 108.1640

(iii) Monitor the performance of the Selling Agent, Poolers, CRA, and the Trustee.

(iv) Perform such other functions as SBA, from time to time, may prescribe.

(3) Central Registration Agent. Pursuant to a contract entered into with SBA, the CRA, as SBA’s agent, will do the following with respect to the Pools or Trust Certificates for the Debentures:

(i) Form an SBA-approved Pool or Trust;

(ii) Issue the TCs in the form prescribed by SBA;

(iii) Transfer the TCs upon the sale of original issue TCs in any secondary market transaction;

(iv) Receive payments from NMVC companies;

(v) Make periodic payments as scheduled or required by the terms of the TCs, and pay all amounts required to be paid upon prepayment of Debentures;

(vi) Hold, safeguard, and release all Debentures constituting Trusts or Pools upon instructions from SBA;

(vii) Remain custodian of such other documentation as SBA shall direct by written instructions;

(viii) Provide for the registration of all pooled Debentures, all Pools and Trusts, and all TCs;

(ix) Perform such other functions as SBA may deem necessary to implement the provisions of this section.

(b) Functions. Either SBA or an agent appointed by SBA may perform the function of locating purchasers, and negotiating and closing the sale of Debentures and TCs. Nothing in the regulations in this part shall be interpreted to prevent the CRA from acting as SBA’s agent for this purpose.

§ 108.1630 SBA regulation of Brokers and Dealers and disclosure to purchasers of Leverage or Trust Certificates.

(a) Brokers and Dealers. Each broker, dealer, and Pool or Trust assembler approved by SBA pursuant to these regulations shall either be regulated by a Federal financial regulatory agency, or be a member of the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASD), and shall be in good standing in respect to compliance with the financial, ethical, and reporting requirements of such body. They also shall be in good standing with SBA as determined by the SBA Associate Administrator for Investment (see paragraph (c) of this section) and shall provide a fidelity bond or insurance in such amount as SBA may require.

(b) Suspension and/or termination of Broker or Dealer. SBA shall exclude from the sale and all other dealings in Debentures or TCs any broker or dealer:

(1) If such broker’s or dealer’s authority to engage in the securities business has been revoked or suspended by a supervisory agency. When such authority has been suspended, SBA will suspend such broker or dealer for the duration of such suspension by the supervisory agency.

(2) If such broker or dealer has been indicted or otherwise formally charged with a misdemeanor or felony bearing on its fitness, such broker or dealer may be suspended while the charge is pending. Upon conviction, participation may be terminated.

(3) If such broker or dealer has suffered an adverse final civil judgment holding that such broker or dealer has committed a breach of trust or violation of law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or relationships, participation in the market for Debentures or TCs may be terminated.

(c) Termination/suspension proceedings. A broker’s or dealer’s participation in the market for Debentures or TCs will be conducted in accordance with part 134 of this chapter. SBA may, for any of the reasons stated in paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(3) of this section, suspend the privilege of any broker or dealer to participate in this market. SBA shall give written notice at least ten (10) business days prior to the effective date of such suspension. Such notice shall inform the broker or dealer of the opportunity for a hearing pursuant to part 134 of this chapter.

§ 108.1640 SBA access to records of the CRA, Brokers, Dealers and Pool or Trust assemblers.

The CRA and any broker, dealer and Pool or Trust assembler operating under the regulations in this part shall make all books, records and related
materials associated with Debentures and TCs available to SBA for review and copying purposes. Such access shall be at such party’s primary place of business during normal business hours.

MISCELLANEOUS

§ 108.1700 Transfer by SBA of its interest in a NMVC Company’s Leverage security.

Upon such conditions and for such consideration as it deems reasonable, SBA may sell, assign, transfer, or otherwise dispose of any Debenture held by or on behalf of SBA. Upon notice by SBA, a NMVC Company will make all payments of principal and interest as shall be directed by SBA. A NMVC Company will be liable for all damage or loss which SBA may sustain by reason of such disposal, up to the amount of the NMVC Company’s liability under such security, plus court costs and reasonable attorney’s fees incurred by SBA.

§ 108.1710 SBA authority to collect or compromise its claims.

SBA may, upon such conditions and for such consideration as it deems reasonable, collect or compromise all claims relating to obligations held or guaranteed by SBA, and all legal or equitable rights accruing to SBA.

§ 108.1720 Characteristics of SBA’s guarantee.

If SBA agrees to guarantee a NMVC Company’s Debentures, such guarantee will be unconditional, irrespective of the validity, regularity or enforceability of the Debentures or any other circumstances that might constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of a guarantor. Pursuant to its guarantee, SBA will make timely payments of principal and interest on the Debentures.

§ 108.1810 Events of default and SBA’s remedies for NMVC Company’s non-compliance with terms of Debentures.

(a) Applicability of this section. By issuing Debentures, you automatically agree to the terms, conditions and remedies in this section, as in effect at the time of issuance and as if fully set forth in the Debentures.

(b) Automatic events of default. The occurrence of one or more of the events in this paragraph (b) causes the remedies in paragraph (c) of this section to take effect immediately.

(1) Insolvency. You become equitably or legally insolvent.

(2) Voluntary assignment. You make a voluntary assignment for the benefit of creditors without SBA’s prior written approval.

(3) Bankruptcy. You file a petition to begin any bankruptcy or reorganization proceeding, receivership, dissolution or other similar creditors’ rights proceeding, or such action is initiated against you and is not dismissed within 60 days.

(c) SBA remedies for automatic events of default. Upon the occurrence of one or more of the events in paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) Without notice, presentation or demand, the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, is immediately due and payable; and

(2) You automatically consent to the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 363(c) of the Act.

(d) Events of default with notice. For any occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events in this paragraph (d), SBA may avail itself of one or more of the remedies in paragraph (e) of this section.
Small Business Administration § 108.1810

(1) **Fraud.** You commit a fraudulent act that causes detriment to SBA’s position as a creditor or guarantor.

(2) **Fraudulent transfers.** You make any transfer or incur any obligation that is fraudulent under the terms of 11 U.S.C. 548.

(3) **Willful conflicts of interest.** You willfully violate § 108.730.

(4) **Willful non-compliance.** You willfully violate one or more of the substantive provisions of the Act or any substantive regulation promulgated under the Act or any substantive provision of your Participation Agreement.

(5) **Repeated Events of Default.** At any time after being notified by SBA of the occurrence of an event of default under paragraph (f) of this section, you engage in similar behavior that results in another occurrence of the same event of default.

(6) **Transfer of Control.** You willfully violate § 108.410, and as a result of such violation you undergo a transfer of Control.

(7) **Non-cooperation under paragraph (h) of this section.** You fail to take appropriate steps, satisfactory to SBA, to accomplish any action SBA may have required under paragraph (h) of this section.

(8) **Non-notification of Events of Default.** You fail to notify SBA as soon as you know or reasonably should have known that any event of default exists under this section.

(9) **Non-notification of defaults to others.** You fail to notify SBA in writing within ten days from the date of a declaration of an event of default or non-performance under any note, debenture or indebtedness of yours, issued to or held by anyone other than SBA.

(e) **SBA remedies for events of default with notice.** Upon written notice to you of the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events in paragraph (d) of this section:

(1) SBA may declare the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and/or any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, immediately due and payable; and

(2) SBA may avail itself of any remedy available under the Act, specifically including institution of proceedings for the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 363 (c) of the Act.

(f) **Events of default with opportunity to cure.** For any occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events in this paragraph (f), SBA may avail itself of one or more of the remedies in paragraph (g) of this section.

(1) **Excessive Management Expenses.** Without the prior written consent of SBA, you incur Management Expenses in excess of those permitted under §§ 108.510 and 108.520.

(2) **Improper Distributions.** You make any Distribution to your shareholders or partners, except with the prior written consent of SBA, other than:

(i) Distributions permitted under § 108.585; and

(ii) Payments from Retained Earnings Available for Distribution based on either the shareholders’ or members’ pro-rata interests or the provisions for profit distributions in your partnership agreement, as appropriate.

(3) **Failure to make payment.** Unless otherwise approved by SBA, you fail to make timely payment of any amount due under any security or obligation of yours that is issued to, held or guaranteed by SBA.

(4) **Failure to maintain Regulatory Capital.** You fail to maintain the minimum Regulatory Capital required under these regulations or, without the prior written consent of SBA, you reduce your Regulatory Capital except as permitted by § 108.585.

(5) **Capital Impairment.** You have a condition of Capital Impairment as determined under § 108.1830.

(6) **Cross-default.** An obligation of yours that is greater than $100,000 becomes due or payable (with or without notice) before its stated maturity date, for any reason including your failure to pay any amount when due. This provision does not apply if you pay the amount due within any applicable grace period or contest the payment of the obligation in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

(7) **Non-performance.** You violate or fail to perform one or more of the terms and conditions of any security or obligation of yours that is issued to, held or guaranteed by SBA, or of any
agreement (including your Participation Agreement) with or conditions imposed by SBA in its administration of the Act and the regulations promulgated under the Act.

(8) Noncompliance. Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (d)(5) of this section, SBA determines that you have violated one or more of the substantive provisions of the Act or any substantive regulation promulgated under the Act.

(9) Failure to maintain diversity. You fail to maintain diversity between management and ownership as required by §108.150.

(g) SBA remedies for events of default with opportunity to cure. (1) Upon written notice to you of the occurrence (as determined by SBA) of one or more of the events of default in paragraph (f) of this section, and subject to the conditions in paragraph (g)(2) of this section:

(i) SBA may declare the entire indebtedness evidenced by your Debentures, including accrued interest, and/or any other amounts owed SBA with respect to your Debentures, immediately due and payable; and

(ii) SBA may avail itself of any remedy available under the Act, specifically including institution of proceedings for the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 363(c) of the Act.

(2) SBA may invoke the remedies in paragraph (g)(1) of this section only if:

(i) It has given you at least 15 days to cure the default(s); and

(ii) You fail to cure the default(s) to SBA’s satisfaction within the allotted time.

(h) Repeated non-substantive violations. If you repeatedly fail to comply with one or more of the non-substantive provisions of the Act or any non-substantive regulation promulgated under the Act, SBA, after written notification to you and until you cure such condition to SBA’s satisfaction, may deny you additional Leverage and/or require you to take such actions as SBA may determine to be appropriate under the circumstances.

(i) Consent to removal of officers, directors, or general partners and/or appointment of receiver. The Articles of each NMVC Company must include the following provisions as a condition to the purchase or guarantee by SBA of Leverage. Upon the occurrence of any of the events specified in paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) or (f)(1) through (f)(3) of this section as determined by SBA, SBA shall have the right, and you consent to SBA’s exercise of such right:

(1) With respect to a Corporate NMVC Company, upon written notice, to require you to replace, with individuals approved by SBA, one or more of your officers and/or such number of directors of your board of directors as is sufficient to constitute a majority of such board; or

(2) With respect to a Partnership NMVC Company or an LLC NMVC Company, upon written notice, to require you to remove the person(s) responsible for such occurrence and/or to remove the general partner or manager of the NMVC Company, which general partner or manager shall then be replaced in accordance with NMVC Company’s Articles by a new general partner or manager approved by SBA; and/or

(3) With respect to a Corporate or Partnership or LLC NMVC Company, to obtain the appointment of SBA or its designee as your receiver under section 363(c) of the Act for the purpose of continuing your operations. The appointment of a receiver to liquidate a NMVC Company is not within such consent, but is governed instead by the relevant provisions of the Act.

COMPUTATION OF NMVC COMPANY’S CAPITAL IMPAIRMENT

§ 108.1830 NMVC Company’s Capital Impairment definition and general requirements.

(a) Significance of Capital Impairment condition. If you have a condition of Capital Impairment, you are not in compliance with the terms of your Leverage. As a result, SBA has the right to impose the applicable remedies for noncompliance in §108.1810(g).

(b) Definition of Capital Impairment condition. You have a condition of Capital Impairment if your Capital Impairment Percentage, as computed in §108.1840, exceeds 70 percent.

(c) Quarterly computation requirement and procedure. You must determine
whether you have a condition of Capital Impairment as of the end of each fiscal quarter. You must notify SBA promptly if you are capital impaired.

(d) SBA’s right to determine NMVC Company’s Capital Impairment condition. SBA may make its own determination of your Capital Impairment condition at any time.

§ 108.1840 Computation of NMVC Company’s Capital Impairment Percentage.

(a) General. This section contains the procedures you must use to determine your Capital Impairment Percentage. You must compare your Capital Impairment Percentage to the maximum permitted under §108.1830(b) to determine whether you have a condition of Capital Impairment.

(b) Preliminary impairment test. If you satisfy the preliminary impairment test, your Capital Impairment Percentage is zero and you do not have to perform any more procedures in this section. Otherwise, you must continue with paragraph (c) of this section. You satisfy the test if the following amounts are both zero or greater:

(1) The sum of Undistributed Net Realized Earnings, as reported on SBA Form 468, and Includible Non-Cash Gains.

(2) Unrealized Gain (Loss) on Securities Held.

(c) How to compute your Capital Impairment Percentage. (1) If you have an Unrealized Gain on Securities Held, compute your Adjusted Unrealized Gain using paragraph (d) of this section. If you have an Unrealized Loss on Securities Held, continue with paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(2) Add together your Undistributed Net Realized Earnings, your Includible Non-cash Gains, and either your Unrealized Loss on Securities Held or your Adjusted Unrealized Gain.

(3) If the sum in paragraph (c)(2) of this section is zero or greater, your Capital Impairment Percentage is zero.

(4) If the sum in paragraph (c)(2) of this section is less than zero, drop the negative sign, divide by your Regulatory Capital (excluding Treasury Stock), and multiply by 100. The result is your Capital Impairment Percentage.

(d) How to compute your Adjusted Unrealized Gain. (1) Subtract Unrealized Depreciation from Unrealized Appreciation. This is your “Net Appreciation”.

(2) Determine your Unrealized Appreciation on Publicly Traded and Marketable securities. This is your “Class I Appreciation”.

(3) Determine your Unrealized Appreciation on securities that are not Publicly Traded and Marketable and meet the following criteria, which must be substantiated to the satisfaction of SBA (this is your “Class 2 Appreciation”):

(i) The Small Business that issued the security received a significant subsequent equity financing by an investor whose objectives were not primarily strategic and at a price that conclusively supports the Unrealized Appreciation;

(ii) Such financing represents a substantial investment in the form of an arm’s length transaction by a sophisticated new investor in the issuer’s securities; and

(iii) Such financing occurred within 24 months of the date of the Capital Impairment computation, or the Small Business’ pre-tax cash flow from operations for its most recent fiscal year was at least 10 percent of the Small Business’ average contributed capital for such fiscal year.

(4) Perform the appropriate computation from the table in §107.1840(d)(4) of this chapter.

(5) Reduce the gain computed in paragraph (d)(4) of this section by your estimate of related future income tax expense. Subject to any adjustment required by paragraph (d)(6) of this section, the result is your Adjusted Unrealized Gain for use in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(6) If any securities that are the source of either Class 1 or Class 2 Appreciation are pledged or encumbered in any way, you must reduce the Adjusted Unrealized Gain computed in paragraph (d)(5) of this section by the amount of the related borrowing or other obligation, up to the amount of the Unrealized Appreciation on the securities.
§ 108.1900 Termination of participation as a NMVC Company.

You may not terminate your participation as a NMVC Company without SBA’s prior written approval. Your request for approval must be accompanied by an offer of immediate repayment of all of your outstanding Leverage (including any prepayment penalties thereon), or by a plan satisfactory to SBA for the orderly liquidation of the NMVC Company.

Subpart M—Miscellaneous

§ 108.1910 Non-waiver of SBA’s rights or terms of Leverage security.

SBA’s failure to exercise or delay in exercising any right or remedy under the Act or the regulations in this part does not constitute a waiver of such right or remedy. SBA’s failure to require you to perform any term or provision of your Leverage does not affect SBA’s right to enforce such term or provision. Similarly, SBA’s waiver of, or failure to enforce, any term or provision of your Leverage or of any event or condition set forth in §108.1810 does not constitute a waiver of any succeeding breach of such term or provision or condition.

§ 108.1920 NMVC Company’s application for exemption from a regulation in this part 108.

(a) General. You may file an application in writing with SBA to have a proposed action exempted from any procedural or substantive requirement, restriction, or prohibition to which it is subject under this part, unless the provision is mandated by the Act. SBA may grant an exemption for such applicant, conditionally or unconditionally, provided the exemption would not be contrary to the purposes of the Act.

(b) Contents of application. Your application must be accompanied by supporting evidence that demonstrates to SBA’s satisfaction that:

(1) The proposed action is fair and equitable; and

(2) The exemption requested is reasonably calculated to advance the best interests of the NMVC program in a manner consistent with the policy objectives of the Act and the regulations in this part.

§ 108.1930 Effect of changes in this part 108 on transactions previously consummated.

The legality of a transaction covered by the regulations in this part is governed by the regulations in this part in effect at the time the transaction was consummated, regardless of later changes. Nothing in this part bars SBA enforcement action with respect to any transaction consummated in violation of provisions applicable at the time, but no longer in effect.

§ 108.1940 Procedures for designation of additional Low-Income Geographic Areas

(a) General. On its own initiative or upon written request by a Person which addresses the relevant factor(s) set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, SBA may consider whether to designate additional census tracts (or equivalent county divisions) as LI Areas.

(b) Criteria. SBA will consider one or more of the following factors in determining whether to designate a particular census tract (or equivalent county division) as an additional LI Area:

(1) A substantial number of Low-Income Individuals reside in that census tract (or equivalent county division).

(2) As adequately supported by studies or other analyses or reliable data, that census tract (or equivalent county division) has a pattern of unmet needs for investment capital.

(3) As adequately supported by studies or other analyses or reliable data, that census tract (or equivalent county division) has indications of economic distress.

(c) Procedure for designation. (1) If SBA decides to consider the designation of an additional LI Area, SBA will publish in the Federal Register a notice that it is considering such designation. SBA will advise the public that it will consider any comments supporting or opposing the designation, submitted within a specified time period.
Small Business Administration  § 108.2000

(2) In making a final decision on whether to designate a particular census tract (or equivalent county division) as an additional LI Area, SBA will consider evidence submitted by any requester, SBA’s own research, any public comments submitted, and any other information deemed relevant by SBA.

(3) If SBA designates a particular census tract (or equivalent county division) as an additional LI Area, SBA will publish a notice in the Federal Register and, if appropriate, will amend this part to include the additional LI Area.

Subpart N—Requirements and Procedures for Operational Assistance Grants to NMVC Companies and SSBICs

§ 108.2000 Operational Assistance Grants to NMVC Companies and SSBICs

(a) NMVC Companies. Regulations governing Operational Assistance grants to NMVC Companies may be found in subparts D and E of this part.

(b) SSBICs. (1) Notice of Funds Availability (“NOFA”). SBA will publish a NOFA in the Federal Register, advising SSBICs of the availability of funds for Operational Assistance grants to SSBICs. This NOFA will be the same as the NOFA described in §108.300(a), or will be published simultaneously with that NOFA. An SSBIC may submit an application for an Operational Assistance grant only during the time period specified for such purpose in the NOFA.

(2) Eligibility. An SSBIC is eligible to apply for an Operational Assistance grant if:

(i) It intends to increase its Regulatory Capital, as in effect on December 21, 2000, and to make Developmental Venture Capital investments in the amount of such increase;

(ii) It intends to raise binding commitments for contributions in cash or in-kind, and/or to purchase an annuity, in an amount not less than 30 percent of the intended increase in its Regulatory Capital described in paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section; and

(iii) It has a plan describing how it intends to use the requested grant funds to provide Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises in which it has made or expects to make Developmental Venture Capital investments.

(3) Application requirements. (i) How to apply. An SSBIC must apply for an Operational Assistance grant using the application packet provided by SBA. Upon receipt of an application, SBA may request clarifying or technical information on the materials submitted as part of the application.

(ii) Grant issuance fee. An SSBIC must pay to SBA a grant issuance fee of $5,000. An SSBIC must submit this fee in advance, at the time of application submission. If SBA does not award a grant to the SSBIC, SBA will refund this fee to the SSBIC.

(4) Contents of Application. Each application must contain the information specified in the application packet provided by SBA, including the following information:

(i) Amounts. An SSBIC must specify the amount of Operational Assistance grant funds it seeks from SBA and the amount of Regulatory Capital it intends to raise after December 21, 2000.

(ii) Plan. An SSBIC must submit a plan addressing the following issues:

(A) Plan for providing Operational Assistance. The SSBIC must describe how it plans to use its grant funds to provide Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises in which it will make Developmental Venture Capital investments. Its plan must address the types of Operational Assistance it proposes to provide, and how it plans to provide the Operational Assistance through the use of licensed professionals, when necessary, either from its own staff or from outside entities.

(B) Matching resources for Operational Assistance grant. The SSBIC must include a detailed description of how it plans to obtain binding commitments for contributions in cash or in-kind, and/or to purchase an annuity, to match the funds requested from SBA for the SSBIC’s Operational Assistance grant. If it proposes to obtain commitments for cash or in-kind contributions, it also must estimate the ratio of cash to in-kind contributions (in no event may in-kind contributions exceed 50 percent of the total contributions). The SSBIC must discuss its potential sources of matching resources,
§ 108.2000

the estimated timing on raising such match, and the extent of the expressions of interest to commit such match to the SSBIC.

(C) Projected amount of investment in LI Areas. The SSBIC must describe the amount of Developmental Venture Capital investments it intends to make.

(D) Track record of management team in obtaining public policy results through investments. The SSBIC must provide information concerning the past track record of the SSBIC in making investments that have had a demonstrable impact on the socially or economically disadvantaged businesses targeted by the SSBIC program (for example, new businesses created, jobs created, or wealth created). Such information might include case studies or examples of the SSBIC’s successful financings.

(E) Market analysis. The SSBIC must provide an analysis of the LI Areas in which it intends to make its Developmental Venture Capital investments and provide its Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises, demonstrating that the SSBIC understands the market and the unmet capital needs in such areas and how its activities will meet these unmet capital needs through Developmental Venture Capital investments and have a positive economic impact on those areas. The analysis must include a description of the extent of the economic distress in the identified LI Areas. The SSBIC also must analyze the extent of the demand in such areas for Developmental Venture Capital investments and any factors or trends that may affect the SSBIC’s ability to make effective Developmental Venture Capital investments.

(F) Regulatory Capital. The SSBIC must include a detailed description of how it plans to raise its Regulatory Capital. The SSBIC must discuss its potential sources of Regulatory Capital, the estimated timing on raising such funds, and the extent of the expressions of interest to commit such funds to the SSBIC.

(G) Projected impact. The SSBIC must describe the criteria and economic measurements to be used to evaluate whether and to what extent it has met the objectives of the NMVC program. It must include:

1. An estimate of the social, economic, and community development benefits to be created within identified LI Areas over the next five years or more as a result of its activities;
2. A description of the criteria to be used to measure the benefits created as a result of its activities;
3. A discussion about the amount of such benefits created that it will consider to constitute successfully meeting the objectives of the NMVC program.

(5) Evaluation and selection. SBA’s evaluation and selection process is intended to ensure that SSBIC requests are evaluated on a competitive basis and in a fair and consistent manner. SBA will evaluate and select SSBICs for an Operational Assistance grant award solely at SBA’s discretion, by considering the following criteria:

(i) The strength of the SSBIC’s application, including the strength of its proposal to provide Operational Assistance to Smaller Enterprises in which it intends to invest;
(ii) The SSBIC’s regulatory compliance status and past track record in being able to accomplish program goals through its investment activity;
(iii) The likelihood that and the time frame within which the SSBIC will be able to raise the Regulatory Capital it intends to raise and obtain the matching resources described in paragraph (b)(4)(ii)(B) of this section;
(iv) The need for Developmental Venture Capital investments in the LI Areas in which the SSBIC intends to invest;
(v) The SSBIC’s demonstrated understanding of the markets in the LI Areas in which it intends to invest;
(vi) The extent to which the activities proposed by the SSBIC will promote economic development and the creation of wealth and job opportunities in the LI Areas in which it intends to invest and among individuals living in LI Areas;
(vii) The likelihood that the SSBIC will fulfill the goals described in its application and meet the objectives of the NMVC program; and
(viii) The strength of the SSBIC’s application compared to applications submitted by other SSBICs intending to
invest in the same or proximate LI Areas.

(6) Grant award. An SSBIC selected for an Operational Assistance grant award will receive a grant award only if it increases its Regulatory Capital and raises the amount of matching resources set forth in its application, pursuant to paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this section, which must be at least the amount required in §108.2030(d)(2), by a date established by SBA.

§108.2010 Restrictions on use of Operational Assistance grant funds.

(a) Restrictions applicable only to SSBICs. An SSBIC that receives an Operational Assistance grant must use both grant funds awarded by SBA and its matching resources only to provide Operational Assistance in connection with a Low-Income Investment made by the SSBIC with Regulatory Capital raised after December 21, 2000.

(b) Restrictions applicable to NMVC Companies and SSBICs. A NMVC Company or a SSBIC that receives an Operational Assistance grant must not use either grant funds awarded by SBA or its matching resources for "general and administrative expense," as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulations, "Contract Cost Principles and Procedures," 48 CFR 2.101.


§108.2020 Amount of Operational Assistance grant.

(a) Amount of grant to NMVC Company. NMVC Companies are eligible for an Operational Assistance grant award equal to the amount of matching resources raised by the NMVC Company in accordance with §§108.380(a)(1)(i)(B) and 108.2030.

(b) Amount of grant to SSBIC. SSBICs are eligible for an Operational Assistance grant award equal to the amount of matching resources raised by the SSBIC in accordance with §§108.2000 and 108.2030.

(c) Pro rata reductions. In the event that the total amount of funds available to SBA for purposes of making Operational Assistance grant awards to NMVC Companies and SSBICs is not sufficient to award grants in the amounts described in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, SBA will make pro rata reductions in the amounts otherwise awarded to each such NMVC Company and SSBIC.

§108.2030 Matching requirements.

(a) General. All Operational Assistance grant funds SBA awards to an NMVC Company or a SSBIC must be matched on a dollar for dollar basis with funds or other resources raised by the NMVC Company or SSBIC.

(b) Allowable sources. (1) Any source other than SBA is an allowable source of matching resources for an Operational Assistance grant award.

(2) Neither a NMVC Company nor a SSBIC may use funds or other resources that it has used to satisfy a legal requirement for obtaining funds under any other Federal program, to satisfy the matching resources requirements described in this part.

(3) A portion of Private Capital may be designated as matching resources if the designated funds are used to purchase an annuity pursuant to paragraph (c)(2)(iv) of this section or are otherwise segregated in a manner acceptable to SBA.

(c) Type and form of matching resources. (1) Matching resources may come from cash contributions or in-kind contributions. In-kind contributions cannot exceed 50 percent of the total amount of match raised by the NMVC Company or SSBIC.

(2) Matching resources may be in the form of:

(i) Cash;

(ii) In-kind contributions;

(iii) Binding commitments for cash or in-kind contributions that may be payable over a multiyear period acceptable to SBA (but not to exceed five years); and/or

(iv) An annuity, purchased with funds other than Regulatory Capital, from an insurance company acceptable to SBA and that may be payable over a multiyear period acceptable to SBA (but not to exceed five years).

(d) Amount of matching resources.

(1) NMVC Companies. The amount of matching resources required of an NMVC Company is set forth in §108.380(a)(1)(i)(B).

(2) SSBICs. The amount of matching resources required of an SSBIC is 30
§ 108.2040 Reporting and recordkeeping requirements.

(a) NMVC Companies. Policies governing reporting, record retention, and recordkeeping requirements applicable to NMVC Companies may be found in subpart H of this part.

(b) SSBICs. An SSBIC receiving an Operational Assistance grant award must comply with all reporting, record retention and recordkeeping requirements set forth in Circular A–110 of the Office of Management and Budget and any grant award document executed between SBA and the SSBIC, as well as the reporting requirements in §108.630(f) and the filing requirement in §108.640.

PART 112—NONDISCRIMINATION IN FEDERALLY ASSISTED PROGRAMS OF SBA—EFFECTUATION OF TITLE VI OF THE CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1964

Sec.
112.1 Purpose.
112.2 Application of this part.
112.3 Discrimination prohibited.
112.4 Discrimination in employment.
112.5 Discrimination in providing financial assistance.
112.6 Discrimination in accommodations or services.
112.7 Illustrative applications.
112.8 Assurances required.
112.9 Compliance information.
112.10 Conduct of investigations.
112.11 Procedure for effecting compliance.
112.12 Effect on other regulations; forms and instructions.

APPENDIX A TO PART 112


§ 112.2 Application of this part.

(a) This part applies to all recipients of assistance under programs administered by the Small Business Administration. (See appendix A)

(b) The term Federal financial assistance includes: (1) Grants and loans of Federal funds; (2) the grant or donation of Federal property and interests in property; (3) the detail of Federal personnel; (4) the sale and lease of, and the permission to use (on other than a casual or transient basis), Federal property or any interest in such property without consideration, or at a nominal consideration, or at a consideration which is reduced for the purpose of assisting the recipient, or in recognition of the public interest to be served by such sale or lease to the recipient; and (5) any Federal agreement, arrangement, or other contract which has as one of its purposes the provision of assistance.

(c) This part does not apply to financial assistance extended by way of insurance or guarantee.

(d) The terms applicant and recipient mean, respectively, one who applies for and one who receives any of the financial assistance under any of the statutes referred to in paragraph (a) of this section. The term recipient also shall be deemed to include subrecipients of SBA financial assistance, i.e., concerns which secondarily receive financial assistance from the primary recipients of such financial assistance.

§ 112.3 Discrimination prohibited.

(a) General. To the extent that this part applies, no person in the United States shall, on the ground of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination under any financial assistance activities of the Small Business Administration to which the Act applies.
§ 112.6 Discrimination in accommodations or services.

Small business concerns which apply for or receive any financial assistance of the kind described in §112.2(a) may not discriminate, on the grounds of race, color or national origin, in providing financial assistance to small business concerns.

§ 112.6 Discrimination in accommodations or services.

Small business concerns which apply for or receive any financial assistance of the kind described in §112.2(a)(1), concerns which are identifiable beneficiaries of loans made under §112.2(a)(2), and physicians, hospitals, schools, libraries, and other individuals

(b) Specific discriminatory actions prohibited. (1) To the extent that this part applies, a business or other activity may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, on ground of race, color or national origin:

(i) Deny an individual any services, financial aid or other benefit provided by the business or other activity;

(ii) Provide any service, financial aid or other benefit to an individual which is different or is provided in a different manner, from that provided to others by the business or other activity;

(iii) Subject an individual to segregation or separate treatment in any manner related to his receipt of any service, financial aid or other benefit from the business or other activity;

(iv) Restrict an individual in any way in the enjoyment of any advantage or privilege enjoyed by others receiving any service, financial aid or other benefit from the business or other activity;

(v) Treat an individual differently from others in determining whether he satisfies any admission, enrollment, quota, eligibility, membership or other requirement or condition which individuals must meet in order to be provided any service, financial aid or other benefit provided by the business or other activity.

(2) The enumeration of specific forms of prohibited discrimination in this paragraph does not limit the generality of the prohibition in paragraph (a) of this section.

(3) This regulation does not prohibit the consideration of race, color, or national origin if the purpose and effect are to remove or overcome the consequences of practices or impediments which have restricted the availability of, or participation in, the program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance, on the grounds of race, color, or national origin. Where previous discriminatory practice or usage tends, on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, to exclude individuals from participation in, to deny them the benefits of, or to subject them to discrimination under any program to which this regulation applies, the provisions of §112.7(a) shall apply to the employment practices of the recipient or other persons subject to the regulation, to the extent necessary to assure equality of opportunity and nondiscriminatory treatment.

or organizations which apply for or receive financial assistance of the kind described in §112.2(a)(5), may not discriminate in the treatment accommodations or services they provide to their patients, students, visitors, guests, members, passengers, or patrons in the conduct of such businesses or other enterprises, whether or not operated for profit.

[31 FR 2274, Feb. 4, 1966]

§ 112.7 Illustrative applications.

(a) Employment. The discrimination prohibited by §112.4 includes but is not limited to any action (taken directly or through contractual or other arrangements) which subjects an individual to discrimination on the ground of race, color or national origin in any employment practice, including recruitment or recruitment advertising, employment, layoff or termination, upgrading, demotion, or transfer, rates of pay or other forms of compensation, and use of facilities.

(b) Financial assistance. The discrimination prohibited by §112.5 includes but is not limited to the failure or refusal, because of the race, color, or national origin of a person, to extend a loan or equity financing to him or to any business concern of which he is an owner or employee; or, in the case of financing which has actually been extended, the failure or refusal, because of the race, color, or national origin of the borrower or of an owner or employee of the borrower, to accord the borrower fair treatment and the customary courtesies regarding such matters as default, grace periods and the like.

(c) Accommodations or services. The discrimination prohibited by §112.6 includes but is not limited to the failure or refusal, because of the race, color, or national origin of a person, to accept him on a nonsegregated basis as a patient, student, visitor, guest, member, customer, passenger or patron.

(d) Affirmative action. (1) In some situations even though past discriminatory practices have been abandoned, the consequences of such practices continue to impede the full availability of equal opportunity. If the efforts required of the applicant or recipient under §112.3(b)(3) to provide information as to the availability of equal opportunity, and the rights of individuals under this regulation, have failed to overcome these consequences, it will become necessary for such applicant or recipient to take additional steps to make equal opportunity fully available to racial and nationality groups previously subjected to discrimination.

(2) Even though an applicant or recipient has never used discriminatory policies, the opportunities in the business it operates may not in fact be equally available to some racial or nationality groups. In such circumstances a recipient may properly give special consideration to race, color, or national origin to make opportunity more widely available to such groups.


§ 112.8 Assurances required.

An application for any of the financial assistance described in §112.2(a) shall, as a condition to its approval and the extension of such assistance, contain or be accompanied by an assurance that the recipient will comply with this part. Such an assurance shall contain provisions authorizing the acceleration of the maturity of the recipient’s financial obligation to the SBA in the event of a failure to comply, and provisions which give the United States a right to seek judicial enforcement of the terms of the assurance. SBA shall specify the form of the foregoing assurance for each program, and the extent to which like assurances will be required of contractors and subcontractors, transferees, successors in interest, and other participants in the program.

§ 112.9 Compliance information.

(a) Cooperation and assistance. SBA shall to the fullest extent practicable seek the cooperation of applicants and recipients in obtaining compliance with this part and shall provide assistance and guidance to applicants and recipients to help them comply voluntarily with this part.

(b) Compliance reports. Each applicant or recipient shall keep such records and submit to SBA timely, complete and accurate compliance reports at
§ 112.11 Procedure for effecting compliance.

(a) General. (1) If there appears to be a failure or threatened failure to comply with this part, and if the noncompliance or threatened noncompliance cannot be corrected by informal means, compliance with this part may be effected by suspending, terminating, or refusing any financial assistance approved but not yet disbursed to an applicant or, in the case of a loan which
§ 112.12 Effect on other regulations; forms and instructions.

(a) Effect on other regulations. All regulations, orders or like directions here-tofore issued by SBA which impose require-ments designed to prohibit any discrimination against individuals on the grounds of race, color, or national origin and which authorize the suspension or termination of or refusal to grant to or to continue financial assistance to any applicant for or recipient of such assistance for failure to comply with such requirements, are hereby sup-ersued to the extent that such discrimi-nation is prohibited by this part.

(b) Noncompliance with §112.8. If an applicant fails or refuses to furnish an assurance required under §112.8 or other-wise fails or refuses to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to that section Federal financial assis-tance may be refused in accordance with the procedures of paragraph (c) of this section. SBA shall not be required to provide assistance in such a case during the pendency of the administrative proceedings under such paragraph ex-cept that SBA shall continue assistance during the pendency of such pro-ceedings where such assistance is due and payable pursuant to an application therefor approved prior to the effective date of this part. Such proceedings shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions of part 134 of this chap-ter by an Administrative Law Judge of the Office of Hearings and Appeals, who shall issue an initial decision in the case. The Administrator shall be the reviewing official for purposes of §134.228. The applicant’s failure to file a timely motion in accordance with §§134.222 and 134.231, requesting that the matter be scheduled for an oral hearing, shall constitute waiver of the right to an oral hearing but shall not prevent the submission of written in-for-mation and argument for the record in accordance with the provisions of part 134.

(c) Conditions precedent. No order sus-pending, terminating, or refusing fi-nancial assistance shall become effec-tive until (1) SBA has advised the applicant or recipient of his failure to comply and has determined that com-
Small Business Administration

except that nothing in this part shall be deemed to relieve any person of any obligation assumed or imposed under any such superseded regulation, order, instruction, or like direction prior to the effective date of this part. Nothing in this part, however, shall be deemed to supersede any of the following (including future amendments thereof):

(1) Executive Order 11246 and regulations issued thereunder, or (2) any other orders, regulations or instructions, insofar as such order, regulations, or instructions prohibit discrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in any program or situation to which this part is inapplicable or prohibit discrimination on any other ground.

(b) Forms and instructions. SBA shall issue and promptly make available to interested persons forms and detailed instructions and procedures for effectuating this part.

(c) Supervision and coordination. The Administrator may from time to time assign to officials of SBA or to officials of other agencies of the Government with the consent of such agencies, responsibilities in connection with the effectuation of the purpose of Title VI of the Act and this part (other than responsibility for final decision as provided in §112.13), including the achievement of effective coordination and maximum uniformity within SBA and within the Executive Branch of the Government in the application of Title VI and this part to similar programs and in similar situations. Any action taken, determination made, or requirement imposed by an official of another Department or agency acting pursuant to an assignment of responsibility under this subsection shall have the same effect as though such action had been taken by the Administrator of SBA.


APPENDIX A TO PART 112

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of program</th>
<th>Authority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Financial Programs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular business loans</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a) and 7(a)(11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handicapped assistance loans.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small business energy loans</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(12).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small general contractors</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnam-era and Disabled Veterans Loan Program.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor small business investment companies and their small business concerns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disaster Loans</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(b)(1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic injury (EIDL)</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(b)(2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal action—economic injury.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(b)(3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonfinancial Programs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women’s business enterprise</td>
<td>Executive Order 12138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Development Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 8(a) and Pub. L. 95–507, as amended by Pub. L. 96–481.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of competency</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 8(b)(7) and Pub. L. 95–49.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcontracting Assistance Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 8(d) and Pub. L. 95–507.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Assistance Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans affairs programs</td>
<td>Pub. L. 93–237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private sector initiatives</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 8(b)(1).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART 113—NONDISCRIMINATION IN FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS OF SBA—EFFECTUATION OF POLICIES OF FEDERAL GOVERNMENT AND SBA ADMINISTRATOR

Subpart A—General Provisions

§113.1 Purpose.

(a) Part 112 of this chapter, issued pursuant to Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, or handicapping condition. All programs of SBA are also covered by part 113 of title 13 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

Note: All programs listed above are also covered by part 113 of title 13 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

[50 FR 1441, Jan. 11, 1985]

Subpart B—Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex in Education Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance

INTRODUCTION

§113.100 Purpose and effective date.

§113.105 Definitions.

§113.110 Remedial and affirmative action and self-evaluation.

§113.115 Assurance required.

§113.120 Transfers of property.

§113.125 Effect of other requirements.

§113.130 Effect of employment opportunities.

§113.135 Designation of responsible employee and adoption of grievance procedures.

§113.140 Dissemination of policy.

COVERAGE

§113.200 Application.

§113.205 Educational institutions and other entities controlled by religious organizations.

§113.210 Military and merchant marine educational institutions.

§113.215 Membership practices of certain organizations.

§113.220 Admissions.

§113.225 Educational institutions eligible to submit transition plans.

§113.230 Transition plans.

§113.235 Statutory amendments.

DISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF SEX IN ADMISSION AND RECRUITMENT PROHIBITED

§113.300 Admission.

§113.305 Preference in admission.

§113.310 Recruitment.

DISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF SEX IN EDUCATION PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES PROHIBITED

§113.400 Education programs or activities.

§113.405 Housing.

§113.410 Comparable facilities.

§113.415 Access to course offerings.

§113.420 Access to schools operated by LEAs.

§113.425 Counseling and use of appraisal and counseling materials.

§113.430 Financial assistance.

§113.435 Employment assistance to students.

§113.440 Health and insurance benefits and services.

§113.445 Marital or parental status.

§113.450 Athletics.

§113.455 Textbooks and curricular materials.

DISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF SEX IN EMPLOYMENT IN EDUCATION PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES PROHIBITED

§113.500 Employment.

§113.505 Employment criteria.

§113.510 Recruitment.

§113.515 Compensation.

§113.520 Job classification and structure.

§113.525 Fringe benefits.

§113.530 Marital or parental status.

§113.535 Effect of state or local law or other requirements.

§113.540 Advertising.

§113.545 Pre-employment inquiries.

§113.550 Sex as a bona fide occupational qualification.

PROCEDURES

§113.600 Notice of covered programs.

§113.605 Enforcement procedures.


Source: 44 FR 20068, Apr. 4, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§113.1 Purpose.

(a) Part 112 of this chapter, issued pursuant to Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, prohibits discrimination on
the basis of race, color, or national origin by some recipients of financial assistance from SBA. The purpose of this part is to reflect to the fullest extent possible the nondiscrimination policies of the Federal Government as expressed in the several statutes, Executive Orders, and messages of the President dealing with civil rights and equality of opportunity, and in the previous determination of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration that discrimination based on race, color, religion, sex, marital status, handicap or national origin shall be prohibited, to the extent that it is not prohibited by part 112 of this chapter, to all recipients of financial assistance from SBA.

(b) In accordance with Pub. L. 94–239, 15 U.S.C. 1691, cited as the Equal Credit Act Amendments of 1976, it is unlawful for any recipient creditor to discriminate against any applicant, with respect to any aspect of a credit transaction because of race, color, religion, national origin, sex, marital status, age: (Provided, the applicant has the capacity to contract), because all or part of the applicant’s income derives from any public assistance program, or because the applicant has in good faith exercised any right under the Consumer Credit Protection Act.

(c) It is the intention of the Administrator that the prohibitions in this part supplement those in part 112 of this chapter, that the two parts be read in pari materia, and that the procedures established herein be harmonized to the maximum extent feasible with those established in part 112 of this chapter.

§ 113.2 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) The term Federal financial assistance includes (1) grants and loans of Federal funds, (2) the grant or donation of Federal property and interests in property, (3) the sale and lease of, and the permission to use (on other than a casual or transient basis), Federal property or any interest in such property without consideration, or at a nominal consideration, or at a consideration which is reduced for the purpose of assisting the recipient, or in recognition of the public interest to be served by such sale or lease to the recipient, and (5) any Federal agreement, arrangement, or other contract which has as one of its purposes the provision of assistance.

(b) The terms applicant and recipient mean, respectively, one who applies for and one who receives any of the financial assistance under any of the statutes referred to in paragraph (a) of this section. The term recipient also shall be deemed to include subrecipients of SBA financial assistance, i.e., concerns which secondarily receive financial assistance from the primary recipients of such financial assistance. For the purposes of this part, a paragraph (b) lender (13 CFR 120.4(b)) shall be deemed a recipient of financial assistance.

(c) The term religion includes all aspects of religious observance and practice, as well as belief.

(d) The term qualified handicapped person means (1) with respect to employment, a handicapped person who, with reasonable accommodation, can perform the essential functions of the job in question and (2) with respect to services, a handicapped person who meets the essential eligibility requirements for the receipt of such services.

(e) The term handicapped person, as defined by the guideline set forth by the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare in §85.31 of title 45 of the CFR (43 FR 2137, dated January 13, 1978), means any person who has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities, has a record of such an impairment, or is regarded as having such an impairment.

(f) As used in paragraph (e) of this section, the phrase:

1. Physical or mental impairment means (i) any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: Neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive; digestive; genitourinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine; or (ii) any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental
§ 113.3 Discrimination prohibited.

To the extent not covered or prohibited by part 112 of this chapter, recipients of financial assistance may not:

(a) Discriminate with regard to goods, services, or accommodations offered or provided by the aided business or other enterprise, whether or not operated for profit, because of race, color, religion, sex, handicap, or national origin of a person, or fail or refuse to accept a person on a nonsegregated basis as a patient, student, visitor, guest, customer, passenger, or patron.

(b) With regard to employment practices within the aided business or other enterprise, whether or not operated for profit; fail or refuse, because of race, color, religion, sex or national origin of a person, to seek or retain the person’s services, or to provide the person with opportunities for advancement or promotion, or accord an employee the rank and rate of compensation, including fringe benefits, merited by the employee’s services and abilities.

(c) With regard to employment practices within the aided business or other enterprise, whether or not operated for profit; discriminate against a qualified handicapped person; or because of handicap, fail or refuse to seek or retain the person’s services or to provide the person with opportunities for advancement or promotion, or accord an employee the rank and rate of compensation, including fringe benefits, merited by the employee’s services and abilities. All employment decisions shall be made in a manner which ensures that discrimination on the basis of handicap does not occur. Such decisions may not limit, segregate, or classify job applicants or employees in any way that adversely affects the opportunities or status of qualified handicapped individuals.

(d) Participate in a contractual or other relationship that has the effect of subjecting job applicants or employees to discrimination prohibited by this part. The relationships referred to in this paragraph include those with employment and referral agencies, labor unions, organizations providing or administering fringe benefits to employees of the recipient, and organizations providing training and apprenticeship programs. Activities covered by this part are as follows:

(1) Recruitment, advertising, and the processing of applications for employment;

(2) Hiring, upgrading, promotion, award of tenure, demotion, transfer, layoff, termination, right of return from layoff, and rehiring.
§ 113.3–1 Consideration of race, color, religion, sex, marital status, handicap, or national origin.

(a) This regulation does not prohibit the consideration of race, color, religion, sex, marital status, handicap, or national origin if the purpose and effect are to remove or overcome the
§113.3-2 Accommodations to religious observance and practice.

A recipient of financial assistance must accommodate to the religious observances and practices of an employee or prospective employee unless the recipient demonstrates that it is unable to reasonably accommodate to an employee’s or prospective employee’s religious observance or practice without undue hardship on the operation of the business. As part of this obligation, recipient must make reasonable accommodations to the religious observances and practices of an employee or prospective employee who...
Small Business Administration

§ 113.5

regularly observes Friday evening and Saturday, or some other day of the week, as Sabbath and/or who observes certain religious holidays during the year and who is conscientiously opposed to performing work or engaging in similar activity on such days, when such accommodations can be made without undue hardship on the conduct of the employer’s business. In determining the extent of a recipient’s obligations under this section, at least the following factors should be considered: (a) Business necessity, (b) financial costs and expenses, and (c) resulting personnel problems.

§ 113.3–3 Structural accommodations for handicapped clients.

(a) Existing facilities. Recipients in preexisting structures shall make their goods or services accessible to and usable by handicapped clients. Where structural changes are necessary to make the recipient’s goods or services accessible, such changes shall be made as soon as practicable, but in no event later than three years after the effective date of this Regulation. A plan setting forth the steps necessary to complete such structural changes shall be developed and submitted to SBA. If practical, interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons, will be consulted.

(b) Design, construction, and alteration. New facilities shall be designed and constructed to be readily accessible to and usable by persons with handicaps. Alterations to existing facilities that affect usability shall, to the maximum extent feasible, be designed and constructed to be readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons.

(c) Conformance with Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards. (1) Effective as of January 18, 1991, design, construction, or alteration of buildings in conformance with sections 3-8 of the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS) (appendix A to 41 CFR subpart 101-19.6) shall be deemed to comply with the requirements of this section with respect to those buildings. Departures from particular technical and scoping requirements of UFAS by the use of other methods are permitted where substantially equivalent or greater access to and usability of the building is provided.

(2) For purposes of this section, section 4.1.6(1)(g) of UFAS shall be interpreted to exempt from the requirements of UFAS only mechanical rooms and other spaces that, because of their intended use, will not require accessibility to the public or beneficiaries or result in the employment or residence therein of persons with physical handicaps.

(3) This section does not require recipients to make building alterations that have little likelihood of being accomplished without removing or altering a load-bearing structural member.

§ 113.4 Assurances required.

An application for financial assistance shall, as a condition to its approval and the extension of such assistance, contain or be accompanied by an assurance that the recipient will comply with this part. Such an assurance shall contain provisions authorizing the acceleration of the maturity of the recipient’s financial obligations to SBA in the event of a failure to comply, and provisions which give the United States a right to seek judicial enforcement of the terms of the assurance. SBA shall specify the form of the foregoing assurance for each program, and the extent to which like assurances will be required of contractors and subcontractors, transferees, successors in interest, and other participants in the program.

§ 113.5 Compliance information.

(a) Cooperation and assistance: SBA shall to the fullest extent practicable seek the cooperation of applicants and recipients in obtaining compliance with this part and shall provide assistance and guidance to applicants and recipients to help them comply voluntarily with this part. Recipients are expected to continually evaluate their compliance status, with the assistance of interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons.

(b) Compliance reports: Each applicant or recipient shall keep such records
§ 113.6 Conduct of investigations.

(a) Periodic compliance reviews. SBA shall from time to time review the practices of recipients to determine whether they are complying with this part.

(b) Complaints. Any person who believes that he, she or any class of individuals has been subjected to discrimination prohibited by this part may, personally or through a representative, file with SBA a written complaint. A complaint must be filed not later than 180 days from the date of the alleged discrimination, unless the time for filing is extended by SBA.

(c) Investigations. SBA will make a prompt investigation whenever a compliance review, report, complaint, or any other information indicates a possible failure to comply with this part. The investigation should include, where appropriate, a review of the pertinent practices and policies of the applicant or recipient, the circumstances under which the possible noncompliance with this part occurred, and other factors relevant to a determination as to whether the applicant or recipient has failed to comply with this part.

(d) Resolution of matters. (1) If an investigation pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section indicates a failure to comply with this part, SBA will so inform the applicant or recipient and the matter will be resolved by informal means whenever possible. If it has been determined that the matter cannot be resolved by informal means, action will be taken as provided for in §113.7.

(2) If an investigation does not warrant action pursuant to paragraph (d)(1) of this section, SBA will so inform the applicant or recipient and the complainant, if any, in writing.
§ 113.7 Procedure for effecting compliance.

(a) General. (1) If there appears to be a failure or threatened failure to comply with this part and if the noncompliance or threatened noncompliance cannot be corrected by informal means, compliance with this part may be effected by suspending, terminating, or refusing any financial assistance approved but not yet disbursed to an applicant. In the case of loans partially or fully disbursed, compliance with this part may be effected by calling, canceling, terminating, accelerating repayment, or suspending in whole or in part the financial assistance provided. In addition compliance may be effected by any other means authorized by law.

(2) Such other means may include but are not limited to (i) legal action by SBA to enforce its rights, embodied in the assurances described in §113.4; (ii) a reference to the Department of Justice with a recommendation that appropriate proceedings be brought to enforce any rights of the United States under any law of the United States; and (iii) any applicable proceedings under State or local law.

(b) Noncompliance with §113.4. If an applicant fails or refuses to furnish an assurance required under §113.4 or otherwise fails or refuses to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to that section, Federal financial assistance may be refused in accordance with the procedures of paragraph (c) of this section. SBA shall not be required to provide assistance in such a case during the pendency of the administrative proceedings under such paragraph except that SBA shall continue assistance during the pendency of such proceedings where such assistance is due and payable pursuant to an application therefor approved prior to the effective date of this part. Such proceedings shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions of part 134 of this chapter by an Administrative Law Judge of the Office of Hearings and Appeals, who shall issue an initial decision in the case. The Administrator shall be the reviewing official for purposes of §134.228. The applicant’s failure to file a timely motion in accordance with §§134.222 and 134.211, requesting that the matter be scheduled for an oral hearing, shall constitute waiver of the right to an oral hearing but shall not prevent the submission of written information and argument for the record in accordance with the provisions of part 134.

(c) Condition precedent. Under this part 113, no order suspending, terminating, refusing, calling, canceling, or accelerating repayment of financial assistance in whole or in part shall become effective until (1) SBA has advised the applicant or recipient of his failure to comply and has determined that compliance cannot be secured by voluntary means; (2) there has been an express finding on the record after an opportunity for an oral hearing, of a failure by the applicant or recipient to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to this part; and (3) the initial decision has become final pursuant to §134.227(b).

(d) Other means authorized by law. No action to effect compliance by any other means authorized by law shall be taken until:

(1) SBA has determined that compliance cannot be secured by voluntary means.

(2) The action has been approved by the Administrator or the Administrator’s designee.

(3) The applicant or recipient or other person has been notified of its failure to comply and of the action to be taken to effect compliance.

(4) The expiration of at least 10 days from the mailing of such notice to the applicant or recipient or other person.
§ 113.8 Effect on other regulations, forms and instructions.

(a) Effect on other regulations. All regulations, orders of like directions heretofore issued by SBA which impose requirements designed to prohibit any discrimination against individuals on the grounds of race, color, religion, sex, handicap, marital status, age, or national origin and which authorize the suspension or termination of a refusal to grant or to continue financial assistance to any applicant for or recipient of such assistance for failure to comply with such requirements, are hereby superseded to the extent that such discrimination is prohibited by this part, except that nothing in this part shall be deemed to relieve any person of any obligation assumed or imposed under any such superseded regulation, order, instruction or like direction prior to the effective date of this part.

(b) Forms and instructions. SBA shall issue and promptly make available to interested persons forms and detailed instructions and procedures for effectuating this part.

(c) Supervision and coordination. The Administrator may from time-to-time assign to officials of SBA or to officials of other agencies of the Government, with the consent of such agencies, responsibilities in connection with the effectuation of the purposes of this part (other than responsibility of first decisions as provided in §113.9) including the achievement of effective coordination and maximum uniformity within SBA and within the executive branch of the Government in the application of this part and of comparable regulations issued by other agencies of the Government to similar situations. Any action taken, determination made, or requirement imposed by an official of another department or agency acting pursuant to an assignment of responsibility under this subsection shall have the same effect as though such action had been taken by the Administrator of SBA.


APPENDIX A TO SUBPART A OF PART 113

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of program</th>
<th>Authority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Financial Programs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular business loans</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handicapped assistance</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small business energy loans</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(12).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small general contractors loans</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export revolving line of credit</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(14).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnam-era and Disabled Veterans Loan Program.</td>
<td><em>small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor State development company loans (501) and their small business concerns.</td>
<td><em>small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor State and local development company loans (502) and their small business concerns.</td>
<td><em>small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor certified development companies (503) and their small business concerns.</td>
<td><em>small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor small business investment companies and their small business concerns.</td>
<td><em>small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollution Control ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surety bond guarantees ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lease guarantees (not funded) disaster loans.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical .................</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic injury (EIDL) ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currency fluctuation—economic injury.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonfinancial Programs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women’s business enterprise</td>
<td>Executive Order 12138.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small business innovation and research.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement automated source system.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Development Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Business Institute ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of competency ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcontracting Assistance Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Assistance Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, sec. 7(a)(13).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

152
**Subpart B—Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Sex in Education Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance**

**AUTHORITY:** 20 U.S.C. 1681, 1682, 1683, 1685, 1686, 1687, 1688.

**SOURCE:** 65 FR 52865, 52876, Aug. 30, 2000, unless otherwise noted.

## § 113.100 Purpose and effective date.

The purpose of these Title IX regulations is to effectuate Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended (except sections 904 and 906 of those Amendments) (20 U.S.C. 1681, 1682, 1683, 1685, 1686, 1687, 1688), which is designed to eliminate (with certain exceptions) discrimination on the basis of sex in any education program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance, whether or not such program or activity is offered or sponsored by an educational institution as defined in these Title IX regulations. The effective date of these Title IX regulations shall be September 29, 2000.

## § 113.105 Definitions.

As used in these Title IX regulations, the term:

- **Administratively separate unit** means a school, department, or college of an educational institution (other than a local educational agency) admission to which is independent of admission to any other component of such institution.

- **Admission** means selection for part-time, full-time, special, associate, transfer, exchange, or any other enrollment, membership, or matriculation in or at an education program or activity operated by a recipient.

- **Applicant** means one who submits an application, request, or plan required to be approved by an official of the Federal agency that awards Federal financial assistance, or by a recipient, as a condition to becoming a recipient.

- **Designated agency official** means Assistant Administrator for Equal Employment and Civil Rights Compliance.

- **Educational institution** means a local educational agency (LEA) as defined by 20 U.S.C. 8801(18), a preschool, a private elementary or secondary school, or an applicant or recipient that is an institution of graduate higher education, an institution of undergraduate higher education, an institution of professional education, or an institution of vocational education, as defined in this section.

- **Federal financial assistance** means any of the following, when authorized or extended under a law administered by the Federal agency that awards such assistance:
  1. A grant or loan of Federal financial assistance, including funds made available for:
     a. The acquisition, construction, renovation, restoration, or repair of a building or facility or any portion thereof; and
     b. Scholarships, loans, grants, wages, or other funds extended to any entity for payment to or on behalf of students admitted to that entity, or extended directly to such students for payment to that entity.
  2. A grant of Federal real or personal property or any interest therein, including surplus property, and the proceeds of the sale or transfer of such property, if the Federal share of the fair market value of the property is not, upon such sale or transfer, properly accounted for to the Federal Government.

- **(4) Sale or lease of Federal property or any interest therein at nominal consideration, or at consideration reduced for the purpose of assisting the recipient or in recognition of public interest to be served thereby, or permission to use Federal property or any interest therein without consideration.**
§ 113.110 Remedial and affirmative action and self-evaluation.

(a) Remedial action. If the designated agency official finds that a recipient has discriminated against persons on the basis of sex in an education program or activity, such recipient shall take such remedial action as the designated agency official deems necessary to overcome the effects of such discrimination.

(b) Affirmative action. In the absence of a finding of discrimination on the basis of sex in an education program or activity, a recipient must take affirmative action to make the educational opportunities and programs it operates available to, and to attract qualified students of each sex, to the maximum extent consistent with legal requirements.

Institution of graduate higher education means an institution that:

(1) Offers academic study beyond the bachelor of arts or bachelor of science degree, whether or not leading to a certificate of any higher degree in the liberal arts and sciences;

(2) Awards any degree in a professional field beyond the first professional degree (regardless of whether the first professional degree in such field is awarded by an institution of undergraduate higher education or professional education); or

(3) Awards no degree and offers no further academic study, but operates ordinarily for the purpose of facilitating research by persons who have received the highest graduate degree in any field of study.

Institution of professional education means an institution (except any institution of undergraduate higher education) that offers a program of academic study that leads to a first professional degree in a field for which there is a national specialized accrediting agency recognized by the Secretary of Education.

Institution of undergraduate higher education means:

(1) An institution offering at least two but less than four years of college-level study beyond the high school level, leading to a diploma or an associate degree, or wholly or principally creditable toward a baccalaureate degree; or

(2) An institution offering academic study leading to a baccalaureate degree; or

(3) An agency or body that certifies credentials or offers degrees, but that may or may not offer academic study.

Institution of vocational education means a school or institution (except an institution of professional or graduate or undergraduate higher education) that has as its primary purpose preparation of students to pursue a technical, skilled, or semiskilled occupation or trade, or to pursue study in a technical field, whether or not the school or institution offers certificates, diplomas, or degrees and whether or not it offers full-time study.

Recipient means any State or political subdivision thereof, or any instrumentality of a State or political subdivision thereof, any public or private agency, institution, or organization, or other entity, or any person, to whom Federal financial assistance is extended directly or through another recipient and that operates an education program or activity that receives such assistance, including any subunit, successor, assignee, or transferee thereof.

Student means a person who has gained admission.


Title IX regulations means the provisions set forth at §§113.100 through 113.605.

Transition plan means a plan subject to the approval of the Secretary of Education pursuant to section 901(a)(2) of the Education Amendments of 1972, 20 U.S.C. 1681(a)(2), under which an educational institution operates in making the transition from being an educational institution that admits only students of one sex to being one that admits students of both sexes without discrimination.

§ 113.110 Remedial and affirmative action and self-evaluation.

(a) Remedial action. If the designated agency official finds that a recipient has discriminated against persons on the basis of sex in an education program or activity, such recipient shall take such remedial action as the designated agency official deems necessary to overcome the effects of such discrimination.

(b) Affirmative action. In the absence of a finding of discrimination on the basis of sex in an education program or activity, a recipient must take affirmative action to make the educational opportunities and programs it operates available to, and to attract qualified students of each sex, to the maximum extent consistent with legal requirements.

(c) Self-evaluation. Each recipient education institution shall, within one year of September 29, 2000:

(1) Evaluate, in terms of the requirements of these Title IX regulations, its current policies and practices and the effects thereof concerning admission of students, treatment of students, and employment of both academic and non-academic personnel working in connection with the recipient’s education program or activity;

(2) Modify any of these policies and practices that do not or may not meet the requirements of these Title IX regulations; and

(3) Take appropriate remedial steps to eliminate the effects of any discrimination that resulted or may have resulted from adherence to these policies and practices.

(d) Availability of self-evaluation and related materials. Recipients shall maintain on file for at least three years following completion of the evaluation required under paragraph (c) of this section, a description of any modifications made pursuant to paragraph (c)(2) of this section and of any remedial steps taken pursuant to paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

§ 113.115 Assurance required.

(a) General. Either at the application stage or the award stage, Federal agencies must ensure that applications for Federal financial assistance or awards of Federal financial assistance contain, be accompanied by, or be covered by a specifically identified assurance from the applicant or recipient, satisfactory to the designated agency official, that each education program or activity operated by the applicant or recipient and to which these Title IX regulations apply will be operated in compliance with these Title IX regulations. An assurance of compliance with these Title IX regulations shall not be satisfactory to the designated agency official if the applicant or recipient to whom such assurance applies fails to commit itself to take whatever remedial action is necessary in accordance with §113.110(a) to eliminate existing discrimination on the basis of sex or to eliminate the effects of past discrimination whether occurring prior to or subsequent to the submission to the designated agency official of such assurance.

(b) Duration of obligation. (1) In the case of Federal financial assistance extended to provide real property or structures thereon, such assurance shall obligate the recipient or, in the case of a subsequent transfer, the transferee, for the period during which the real property or structures are used to provide an education program or activity.

(2) In the case of Federal financial assistance extended to provide personal property, such assurance shall obligate the recipient for the period during which it retains ownership or possession of the property.

(3) In all other cases such assurance shall obligate the recipient for the period during which Federal financial assistance is extended.

(c) Form. (1) The assurances required by paragraph (a) of this section, which may be included as part of a document that addresses other assurances or obligations, shall include that the applicant or recipient will comply with all applicable Federal statutes relating to nondiscrimination. These include but are not limited to: Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended (20 U.S.C. 1681–1683, 1685–1688).

(2) The designated agency official will specify the extent to which such assurances will be required of the applicant’s or recipient’s subgrantees, contractors, subcontractors, transferees, or successors in interest.
§ 113.120 Transfers of property.

If a recipient sells or otherwise transfers property financed in whole or in part with Federal financial assistance to a transferee that operates any education program or activity, and the Federal share of the fair market value of the property is not upon such sale or transfer properly accounted for to the Federal Government, both the transferor and the transferee shall be deemed to be recipients, subject to the provisions of §§113.205 through 113.235(a).

§ 113.125 Effect of other requirements.


(b) Effect of State or local law or other requirements. The obligation to comply with these Title IX regulations is not obviated or alleviated by any State or local law or other requirement that would render any applicant or student ineligible, or limit the eligibility or participation of any applicant or student, on the basis of sex, to practice any occupation or profession.

(c) Effect of rules or regulations of private organizations. The obligation to comply with these Title IX regulations is not obviated or alleviated by any rule or regulation of any organization, club, athletic or other league, or association that would render any applicant or student ineligible to participate or limit the eligibility or participation of any applicant or student, on the basis of sex, in any education program or activity operated by a recipient and that receives Federal financial assistance.

§ 113.130 Effect of employment opportunities.

The obligation to comply with these Title IX regulations is not obviated or alleviated because employment opportunities in any occupation or profession are or may be more limited for members of one sex than for members of the other sex.

§ 113.135 Designation of responsible employee and adoption of grievance procedures.

(a) Designation of responsible employee. Each recipient shall designate at least one employee to coordinate its efforts to comply with and carry out its responsibilities under these Title IX regulations, including any investigation of any complaint communicated to such recipient alleging its noncompliance with these Title IX regulations or alleging any actions that would be prohibited by these Title IX regulations. The recipient shall notify all its students and employees of the name, office address, and telephone number of the employee or employees appointed pursuant to this paragraph.

(b) Complaint procedure of recipient. A recipient shall adopt and publish grievance procedures providing for prompt and equitable resolution of student and employee complaints alleging any action that would be prohibited by these Title IX regulations.

§ 113.140 Dissemination of policy.

(a) Notification of policy. (1) Each recipient shall implement specific and continuing steps to notify applicants for admission and employment, students and parents of elementary and secondary school students, employees, sources of referral of applicants for admission and employment, and all unions or professional organizations holding collective bargaining or professional agreements with the recipient, that it does not discriminate on the basis of sex in the educational programs or activities that it operates, and that it is required by Title IX and

13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)
these Title IX regulations not to discriminate in such a manner. Such notification shall contain such information, and be made in such manner, as the designated agency official finds necessary to apprise such persons of the protections against discrimination assured them by Title IX and these Title IX regulations, but shall state at least that the requirement not to discriminate in education programs or activities extends to employment there-in, and to admission thereto unless §§113.300 through 113.310 do not apply to the recipient, and that inquiries concerning the application of Title IX and these Title IX regulations to such recipient may be referred to the employee designated pursuant to §113.135, or to the designated agency official.

(2) Each recipient shall make the initial notification required by paragraph (a)(1) of this section within 90 days of September 29, 2000 or of the date these Title IX regulations first apply to such recipient, whichever comes later, which notification shall include publication in:

(i) Newspapers and magazines operated by such recipient or by student, alumnae, or alumni groups for or in connection with such recipient; and

(ii) Memoranda or other written communications distributed to every student and employee of such recipient.

(b) Publications. (1) Each recipient shall prominently include a statement of the policy described in paragraph (a) of this section in each announcement, bulletin, catalog, or application form that it makes available to any person of a type, described in paragraph (a) of this section, or which is otherwise used in connection with the recruitment of students or employees.

(2) A recipient shall not use or distribute a publication of the type described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section that suggests, by text or illustration, that such recipient treats applicants, students, or employees differently on the basis of sex except as such treatment is permitted by these Title IX regulations.

(c) Distribution. Each recipient shall distribute without discrimination on the basis of sex each publication described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and shall apprise each of its admission and employment recruitment representatives of the policy of non-discrimination described in paragraph (a) of this section, and shall require such representatives to adhere to such policy.

COVERAGE

§ 113.200 Application.

Except as provided in §§113.205 through 113.235(a), these Title IX regulations apply to every recipient and to each education program or activity operated by such recipient that receives Federal financial assistance.

§ 113.205 Educational institutions and other entities controlled by religious organizations.

(a) Exemption. These Title IX regulations do not apply to any operation of an educational institution or other entity that is controlled by a religious organization to the extent that application of these Title IX regulations would not be consistent with the religious tenets of such organization.

(b) Exemption claims. An educational institution or other entity that wishes to claim the exemption set forth in paragraph (a) of this section shall do so by submitting in writing to the designated agency official a statement by the highest-ranking official of the institution, identifying the provisions of these Title IX regulations that conflict with a specific tenet of the religious organization.

§ 113.210 Military and merchant marine educational institutions.

These Title IX regulations do not apply to an educational institution whose primary purpose is the training of individuals for a military service of the United States or for the merchant marine.

§ 113.215 Membership practices of certain organizations.

(a) Social fraternities and sororities. These Title IX regulations do not apply to the membership practices of social fraternities and sororities that are exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, 26 U.S.C. 501(a), the active membership of which consists primarily of
§ 113.220 Admissions.

(a) Admissions to educational institutions prior to June 24, 1973, are not covered by these Title IX regulations.

(b) Administratively separate units. For the purposes only of this section, §§ 113.225 and 113.230, and §§ 113.300 through 113.310, each administratively separate unit shall be deemed to be an educational institution.

(c) Application of §§ 113.300 through 113.310. Except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section, §§ 113.300 through 113.310 apply to each institution or administratively separate unit that:

(1) Admitted students of only one sex as regular students as of June 23, 1972; or

(2) Admitted students of only one sex as regular students as of June 23, 1965, but thereafter admitted, as regular students, students of the sex not admitted prior to June 23, 1965.

(b) Provision for transition plans. An educational institution to which this section applies shall not discriminate on the basis of sex in admission or recruitment in violation of §§ 113.300 through 113.310.

§ 113.230 Transition plans.

(a) Submission of plans. An institution to which § 113.225 applies and that is composed of more than one administratively separate unit may submit either a single transition plan applicable to all such units, or a separate transition plan applicable to each such unit.

(b) Content of plans. In order to be approved by the Secretary of Education, a transition plan shall:

(1) State the name, address, and Federal Interagency Committee on Education Code of the educational institution submitting such plan, the administratively separate units to which the plan is applicable, and the name, address, and telephone number of the person to whom questions concerning the plan may be addressed. The person who submits the plan shall be the chief administrator or president of the institution, or another individual legally authorized to bind the institution to all actions set forth in the plan.

(2) State whether the educational institution or administratively separate unit admits students of both sexes as regular students and, if so, when it began to do so.

(3) Identify and describe with respect to the educational institution or administratively separate unit any obstacles to admitting students without discrimination on the basis of sex.

(4) Describe in detail the steps necessary to eliminate as soon as practicable each obstacle so identified and
§ 113.235 Statutory amendments.

(a) This section, which applies to all provisions of these Title IX regulations, addresses statutory amendments to Title IX.

(b) These Title IX regulations shall not apply to or preclude:

(1) Any program or activity of the American Legion undertaken in connection with the organization or operation of any Boys State conference, Boys Nation conference, Girls State conference, or Girls Nation conference;

(2) Any program or activity of a secondary school or educational institution specifically for:

(1) The promotion of any Boys State conference, Boys Nation conference, Girls State conference, or Girls Nation conference; or

(2) The selection of students to attend any such conference;

(3) Father-son or mother-daughter activities at an educational institution or in an education program or activity, but if such activities are provided for students of one sex, opportunities for reasonably comparable activities shall be provided to students of the other sex;

(4) Any scholarship or other financial assistance awarded by an institution of higher education to an individual because such individual has received such award in a single-sex pageant based upon a combination of factors related to the individual’s personal appearance, poise, and talent. The pageant, however, must comply with other non-discrimination provisions of Federal law.

(c) Program or activity or program means:

(1) All of the operations of any entity described in paragraphs (c)(1)(i) through (iv) of this section, any part of which is extended Federal financial assistance:

(i) (A) A department, agency, special purpose district, or other instrumentality of a State or of a local government; or

(B) The entity of such State or local government that distributes such assistance and each such department or agency (and each other State or local government entity) to which the assistance is extended, in the case of assistance to a State or local government;

(ii) (A) A college, university, or other postsecondary institution, or a public system of higher education; or

(B) A local educational agency (as defined in section 8801 of title 20), system of vocational education, or other school system;

(iii) (A) An entire corporation, partnership, or other private organization, or an entire sole proprietorship—

(1) If assistance is extended to such corporation, partnership, private organization, or sole proprietorship as a whole; or

(2) Which is principally engaged in the business of providing education, health care, housing, social services, or parks and recreation; or

(B) The entire plant or other comparable, geographically separate facility to which Federal financial assistance is extended, in the case of any other corporation, partnership, private organization, or sole proprietorship; or
(iv) Any other entity that is established by two or more of the entities described in paragraphs (c)(1)(i), (ii), or (iii) of this section.

(2)(i) Program or activity does not include any operation of an entity that is controlled by a religious organization if the application of 20 U.S.C. 1681 to such operation would not be consistent with the religious tenets of such organization.

(ii) For example, all of the operations of a college, university, or other post-secondary institution, including but not limited to traditional educational operations, faculty and student housing, campus shuttle bus service, campus restaurants, the bookstore, and other commercial activities are part of a “program or activity” subject to these Title IX regulations if the college, university, or other institution receives Federal financial assistance.

(d)(1) Nothing in these Title IX regulations shall be construed to require or prohibit any person, or public or private entity, to provide or pay for any benefit or service, including the use of facilities, related to an abortion. Medical procedures, benefits, services, and the use of facilities, necessary to save the life of a pregnant woman or to address complications related to an abortion are not subject to this section.

(2) Nothing in this section shall be construed to permit a penalty to be imposed on any person or individual because such person or individual is seeking or has received any benefit or service related to a legal abortion. Accordingly, subject to paragraph (d)(1) of this section, no person shall be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any academic, extracurricular, research, occupational training, employment, or other educational program or activity operated by a recipient that receives Federal financial assistance because such individual has sought or received, or is seeking, a legal abortion, or any benefit or service related to a legal abortion.

§ 113.300 Admission.

(a) General. No person shall, on the basis of sex, be denied admission, or be subjected to discrimination in admission, by any recipient to which §§113.300 through §§113.310 apply, except as provided in §§113.225 and §§113.230.

(b) Specific prohibitions. (1) In determining whether a person satisfies any policy or criterion for admission, or in making any offer of admission, a recipient to which §§113.300 through 113.310 apply shall not:

(i) Give preference to one person over another on the basis of sex, by ranking applicants separately on such basis, or otherwise;

(ii) Apply numerical limitations upon the number or proportion of persons of either sex who may be admitted; or

(iii) Otherwise treat one individual differently from another on the basis of sex.

(2) A recipient shall not administer or operate any test or other criterion for admission that has a disproportionately adverse effect on persons on the basis of sex unless the use of such test or criterion is shown to predict validly success in the education program or activity in question and alternative tests or criteria that do not have such a disproportionately adverse effect are shown to be unavailable.

(c) Prohibitions relating to marital or parental status. In determining whether a person satisfies any policy or criterion for admission that has a disproportionately adverse effect on persons on the basis of sex unless the use of such test or criterion is shown to predict validly success in the education program or activity in question and alternative tests or criteria that do not have such a disproportionately adverse effect are shown to be unavailable.

(1) Shall not apply any rule concerning the actual or potential marital, family, or marital status of a student or applicant that treats persons differently on the basis of sex;

(2) Shall not discriminate against or exclude any person on the basis of pregnancy, childbirth, termination of pregnancy, or recovery therefrom, or establish or follow any rule or practice that so discriminates or excludes;
§ 113.400 Education programs or activities.

(a) General. Except as provided elsewhere in these Title IX regulations, no person shall, on the basis of sex, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any academic, extracurricular, research, occupational training, or other education program or activity operated by a recipient that receives Federal financial assistance. Sections 113.400 through 113.455 do not apply to actions of a recipient in connection with admission of its students to an education program or activity of a recipient to which §§ 113.300 through 113.310 do not apply, or an entity, not a recipient, to which §§ 113.300 through 113.310 would not apply if the entity were a recipient.

(b) Specific prohibitions. Except as provided in §§ 113.400 through 113.455, in providing any aid, benefit, or service to a student, a recipient shall not, on the basis of sex:

(1) Treat one person differently from another in determining whether such person satisfies any requirement or condition for the provision of such aid, benefit, or service;

(2) Provide different aid, benefits, or services or provide aid, benefits, or services in a different manner;

(3) Deny any person any such aid, benefit, or service;

(4) Subject any person to separate or different rules of behavior, sanctions, or other treatment;

(5) Apply any rule concerning the domicile or residence of a student or applicant, including eligibility for in-state fees and tuition;

(6) Aid or perpetuate discrimination against any person by providing significant assistance to any agency, organization, or person that discriminates on the basis of sex in providing any aid, benefit, or service to students or employees;

(7) Otherwise limit any person in the enjoyment of any right, privilege, advantage, or opportunity.
§ 113.405 Assistance administered by a recipient educational institution to study at a foreign institution. A recipient educational institution may administer or assist in the administration of scholarships, fellowships, or other awards established by foreign or domestic wills, trusts, or similar legal instruments, or by acts of foreign governments and restricted to members of one sex, that are designed to provide opportunities to study abroad, and that are awarded to students who are already matriculating at or who are graduates of the recipient institution; Provided, that a recipient educational institution that administers or assists in the administration of such scholarships, fellowships, or other awards that are restricted to members of one sex provides, or otherwise makes available, reasonable opportunities for similar studies for members of the other sex. Such opportunities may be derived from either domestic or foreign sources.

(d) Aids, benefits or services not provided by recipient. (1) This paragraph (d) applies to any recipient that requires participation by any applicant, student, or employee in any education program or activity not operated wholly by such recipient, or that facilitates, permits, or considers such participation as part of or equivalent to an education program or activity operated by such recipient, including participation in educational consortia and cooperative employment and student-teaching assignments.

(2) Such recipient:
   (i) Shall develop and implement a procedure designed to assure itself that the operator or sponsor of such other education program or activity takes no action affecting any applicant, student, or employee of such recipient that these Title IX regulations would prohibit such recipient from taking; and
   (ii) Shall not facilitate, require, permit, or consider such participation if such action occurs.

§ 113.405 Housing.

(a) Generally. A recipient shall not, on the basis of sex, apply different rules or regulations, impose different fees or requirements, or offer different services or benefits related to housing, except as provided in this section (including housing provided only to married students).

(b) Housing provided by recipient. (1) A recipient may provide separate housing on the basis of sex.

(2) Housing provided by a recipient to students of one sex, when compared to that provided to students of the other sex, shall be as a whole:
   (i) Proportionate in quantity to the number of students of that sex applying for such housing; and
   (ii) Comparable in quality and cost to the student.

(c) Other housing. (1) A recipient shall not, on the basis of sex, administer different policies or practices concerning occupancy by its students of housing other than that provided by such recipient.

(2)(i) A recipient which, through solicitation, listing, approval of housing, or otherwise, assists any agency, organization, or person in making housing available to any of its students, shall take such reasonable action as may be necessary to assure itself that such housing as is provided to students of one sex, when compared to that provided to students of the other sex, is as a whole:
   (A) Proportionate in quantity; and
   (B) Comparable in quality and cost to the student.

(ii) A recipient may render such assistance to any agency, organization, or person that provides all or part of such housing to students of only one sex.

§ 113.410 Comparable facilities.

A recipient may provide separate toilet, locker room, and shower facilities on the basis of sex, but such facilities provided for students of one sex shall be comparable to such facilities provided for students of the other sex.

§ 113.415 Access to course offerings.

(a) A recipient shall not provide any course or otherwise carry out any of its education program or activity separately on the basis of sex, or require or refuse participation therein by any of its students on such basis, including health, physical education, industrial, business, vocational, technical, home
§ 113.430 Financial assistance.

(a) General. Except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, in providing financial assistance to any of its students, a recipient shall not:

(1) On the basis of sex, provide different amounts or types of such assistance, limit eligibility for such assistance that is of any particular type or source, apply different criteria, or otherwise discriminate;

courses, services, and facilities comparable to each course, service, and facility offered in or through such schools.

§ 113.425 Counseling and use of appraisal and counseling materials. 

(a) Counseling. A recipient shall not discriminate against any person on the basis of sex in the counseling or guidance of students or applicants for admission.

(b) Use of appraisal and counseling materials. A recipient that uses testing or other materials for appraising or counseling students shall not use different materials for students on the basis of their sex or use materials that permit or require different treatment of students on such basis unless such different materials cover the same occupations and interest areas and the use of such different materials is shown to be essential to eliminate sex bias. Recipients shall develop and use internal procedures for ensuring that such materials do not discriminate on the basis of sex. Where the use of a counseling test or other instrument results in a substantially disproportionate number of members of one sex in any particular course of study or classification, the recipient shall take such action as is necessary to assure itself that such disproportion is not the result of discrimination in the instrument or its application.

§ 113.420 Access to schools operated by LEAs.

A recipient that is a local educational agency shall not, on the basis of sex, exclude any person from admission to:

(a) Any institution of vocational education operated by such recipient; or

(b) Any other school or educational unit operated by such recipient, unless such recipient otherwise makes available to such person, pursuant to the same policies and criteria of admission, economics, music, and adult education courses.

(b)(1) With respect to classes and activities in physical education at the elementary school level, the recipient shall comply fully with this section as expeditiously as possible but in no event later than one year from September 29, 2000. With respect to physical education classes and activities at the secondary and post-secondary levels, the recipient shall comply fully with this section as expeditiously as possible but in no event later than three years from September 29, 2000.

(2) This section does not prohibit grouping of students in physical education classes and activities by ability as assessed by objective standards of individual performance developed and applied without regard to sex.

(3) This section does not prohibit separation of students by sex within physical education classes or activities during participation in wrestling, boxing, rugby, ice hockey, football, basketball, and other sports the purpose or major activity of which involves bodily contact.

(4) Where use of a single standard of measuring skill or progress in a physical education class has an adverse effect on members of one sex, the recipient shall use appropriate standards that do not have such effect.

(5) Portions of classes in elementary and secondary schools, or portions of education programs or activities, that deal exclusively with human sexuality may be conducted in separate sessions for boys and girls.

(6) Recipients may make requirements based on vocal range or quality that may result in a chorus or choruses of one or predominantly one sex.
§ 113.435 Employment assistance to students.

(a) Assistance by recipient in making available outside employment. A recipient that assists any agency, organization, or person in making employment available to any of its students:

(1) Shall assure itself that such employment is made available without discrimination on the basis of sex; and

(2) Shall not render such services to any agency, organization, or person that discriminates on the basis of sex in its employment practices.

(b) Employment of students by recipients. A recipient that employs any of its students shall not do so in a manner that violates §§ 113.500 through 113.550.

§ 113.440 Health and insurance benefits and services.

Subject to § 113.235(d), in providing a medical, hospital, accident, or life insurance benefit, service, policy, or plan to any of its students, a recipient shall not discriminate on the basis of sex, or provide such benefit, service, policy, or plan in a manner that would violate §§ 113.500 through 113.550 if it were provided to employees of the recipient. This section shall not prohibit a recipient from providing any benefit or service that may be used by a different proportion of students of one sex than of the other, including family planning services. However, any recipient that provides full coverage health service shall provide gynecological care.

§ 113.445 Marital or parental status.

(a) Status generally. A recipient shall not apply any rule concerning a student’s actual or potential parental, family, or marital status that treats students differently on the basis of sex.

(b) Pregnancy and related conditions. (1) A recipient shall not discriminate against any student, or exclude any student from its education program or activity, including any class or extracurricular activity, on the basis of such student’s pregnancy, childbirth, false
pregnancy, termination of pregnancy, or recovery therefrom, unless the student requests voluntarily to participate in a separate portion of the program or activity of the recipient.

(2) A recipient may require such a student to obtain the certification of a physician that the student is physically and emotionally able to continue participation as long as such a certification is required of all students for other physical or emotional conditions requiring the attention of a physician.

(3) A recipient that operates a portion of its education program or activity separately for pregnant students, admittance to which is completely voluntary on the part of the student as provided in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, shall ensure that the separate portion is comparable to that offered to non-pregnant students.

(4) Subject to §113.235(d), a recipient shall treat pregnancy, childbirth, false pregnancy, termination of pregnancy and recovery therefrom in the same manner and under the same policies as any other temporary disability with respect to any medical or hospital benefit, service, plan, or policy that such recipient administers, operates, offers, or participates in with respect to students admitted to the recipient’s educational program or activity.

(5) In the case of a recipient that does not maintain a leave policy for its students, or in the case of a student who does not otherwise qualify for leave under such a policy, a recipient shall treat pregnancy, childbirth, false pregnancy, termination of pregnancy, and recovery therefrom as a justification for a leave of absence for as long a period of time as is deemed medically necessary by the student’s physician, at the conclusion of which the student shall be reinstated to the status that she held when the leave began.

§ 113.450 Athletics.

(a) General. No person shall, on the basis of sex, be excluded from participation in, or denied the benefits of, be treated differently from another person, or otherwise be discriminated against in any interscholastic, intercollegiate, club, or intramural athletics offered by a recipient, and no recipient shall provide any such athletics separately on such basis.

(b) Separate teams. Notwithstanding the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, a recipient may operate or sponsor separate teams for members of each sex where selection for such teams is based upon competitive skill or the activity involved is a contact sport. However, where a recipient operates or sponsors a team in a particular sport for members of one sex but operates or sponsors no such team for members of the other sex, and athletic opportunities for members of that sex have previously been limited, members of the excluded sex must be allowed to try out for the team offered unless the sport involved is a contact sport. For the purposes of these Title IX regulations, contact sports include boxing, wrestling, rugby, ice hockey, football, basketball, and other sports the purpose or major activity of which involves bodily contact.

(c) Equal opportunity. (1) A recipient that operates or sponsors interscholastic, intercollegiate, club, or intramural athletics shall provide equal athletic opportunity for members of both sexes. In determining whether equal opportunities are available, the designated agency official will consider, among other factors:

(i) Whether the selection of sports and levels of competition effectively accommodate the interests and abilities of members of both sexes;

(ii) The provision of equipment and supplies;

(iii) Scheduling of games and practice time;

(iv) Travel and per diem allowance;

(v) Opportunity to receive coaching and academic tutoring;

(vi) Assignment and compensation of coaches and tutors;

(vii) Provision of locker rooms, practice, and competitive facilities;

(viii) Provision of medical and training facilities and services;

(ix) Provision of housing and dining facilities and services;

(x) Publicity.

(2) For purposes of paragraph (c)(1) of this section, unequal aggregate expenditures for members of each sex or unequal expenditures for male and female
§ 113.455 Teams if a recipient operates or sponsors separate teams will not constitute noncompliance with this section, but the designated agency official may consider the failure to provide necessary funds for teams for one sex in assessing equality of opportunity for members of each sex.

(d) Adjustment period. A recipient that operates or sponsors interscholastic, intercollegiate, club, or intramural athletics at the elementary school level shall comply fully with this section as expeditiously as possible but in no event later than one year from September 29, 2000. A recipient that operates or sponsors interscholastic, intercollegiate, club, or intramural athletics at the secondary or postsecondary school level shall comply fully with this section as expeditiously as possible but in no event later than three years from September 29, 2000.

§ 113.455 Textbooks and curricular material.

Nothing in these Title IX regulations shall be interpreted as requiring or prohibiting or abridging in any way the use of particular textbooks or curricular materials.

DISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF SEX IN EMPLOYMENT IN EDUCATION PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES PROHIBITED

§ 113.500 Employment.

(a) General. (1) No person shall, on the basis of sex, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination in employment, or recruitment, consideration, or selection therefor, whether full-time or part-time, under any education program or activity operated by a recipient that receives Federal financial assistance.

(2) A recipient shall make all employment decisions in any education program or activity operated by such recipient in a nondiscriminatory manner and shall not limit, segregate, or classify applicants or employees in any way that could adversely affect any applicant’s or employee’s employment opportunities or status because of sex.

(3) A recipient shall not enter into any contractual or other relationship which directly or indirectly has the effect of subjecting employees or students to discrimination prohibited by §§113.500 through 113.550, including relationships with employment and referral agencies, with labor unions, and with organizations providing or administering fringe benefits to employees of the recipient.

(4) A recipient shall not grant preferences to applicants for employment on the basis of attendance at any educational institution or entity that admits as students only or predominantly members of one sex, if the giving of such preferences has the effect of discriminating on the basis of sex in violation of these Title IX regulations.

(b) Application. The provisions of §§113.500 through 113.550 apply to:

(1) Recruitment, advertising, and the process of application for employment;

(2) Hiring, upgrading, promotion, consideration for and award of tenure, demotion, transfer, layoff, termination, application of nepotism policies, right of return from layoff, and rehiring;

(3) Rates of pay or any other form of compensation, and changes in compensation;

(4) Job assignments, classifications, and structure, including position descriptions, lines of progression, and seniority lists;

(5) The terms of any collective bargaining agreement;

(6) Granting and return from leaves of absence, leave for pregnancy, childbirth, false pregnancy, termination of pregnancy, leave for persons of either sex to care for children or dependents, or any other leave;

(7) Fringe benefits available by virtue of employment, whether or not administered by the recipient;

(8) Selection and financial support for training, including apprenticeship, professional meetings, conferences, and other related activities, selection for tuition assistance, selection for sabbaticals and leaves of absence to pursue training;

(9) Employer-sponsored activities, including social or recreational programs; and

(10) Any other term, condition, or privilege of employment.
§ 113.505 Employment criteria.

A recipient shall not administer or operate any test or other criterion for any employment opportunity that has a disproportionately adverse effect on persons on the basis of sex unless:

(a) Use of such test or other criterion is shown to predict validly successful performance in the position in question; and

(b) Alternative tests or criteria for such purpose, which do not have such disproportionately adverse effect, are shown to be unavailable.

§ 113.510 Recruitment.

(a) Nondiscriminatory recruitment and hiring. A recipient shall not discriminate on the basis of sex in the recruitment and hiring of employees. Where a recipient has been found to be presently discriminating on the basis of sex in the recruitment or hiring of employees, or has been found to have so discriminated in the past, the recipient shall recruit members of the sex so discriminated against so as to overcome the effects of such past or present discrimination.

(b) Recruitment patterns. A recipient shall not recruit primarily or exclusively at entities that furnish as applicants only or predominantly members of one sex if such actions have the effect of discriminating on the basis of sex in violation of §§113.500 through 113.550.

§ 113.515 Compensation.

A recipient shall not make or enforce any policy or practice that, on the basis of sex:

(a) Makes distinctions in rates of pay or other compensation;

(b) Results in the payment of wages to employees of one sex at a rate less than that paid to employees of the opposite sex for equal work on jobs the performance of which requires equal skill, effort, and responsibility, and that are performed under similar working conditions.

§ 113.520 Job classification and structure.

A recipient shall not:

(a) Classify a job as being for males or for females;

(b) Maintain or establish separate lines of progression, seniority lists, career ladders, or tenure systems based on sex; or

(c) Maintain or establish separate lines of progression, seniority systems, career ladders, or tenure systems for similar jobs, position descriptions, or job requirements that classify persons on the basis of sex, unless sex is a bona fide occupational qualification for the positions in question as set forth in §113.550.

§ 113.525 Fringe benefits.

(a) "Fringe benefits" defined. For purposes of these Title IX regulations, fringe benefits means: Any medical, hospital, accident, life insurance, or retirement benefit, service, policy or plan, any profit-sharing or bonus plan, leave, and any other benefit or service of employment not subject to the provision of §113.515.

(b) Prohibitions. A recipient shall not:

(1) Discriminate on the basis of sex with regard to making fringe benefits available to employees or make fringe benefits available to spouses, families, or dependents of employees differently upon the basis of the employee’s sex;

(2) Administer, operate, offer, or participate in a fringe benefit plan that does not provide for equal periodic benefits for members of each sex and for equal contributions to the plan by such recipient for members of each sex; or

(3) Administer, operate, offer, or participate in a pension or retirement plan that establishes different optional or compulsory retirement ages based on sex or that otherwise discriminates in benefits on the basis of sex.

§ 113.530 Marital or parental status.

(a) General. A recipient shall not apply any policy or take any employment action:

(1) Concerning the potential marital, parental, or family status of an employee or applicant for employment that treats persons differently on the basis of sex; or

(2) Which is based upon whether an employee or applicant for employment is the head of household or principal wage earner in such employee’s or applicant’s family unit.
§113.535 Effect of state or local law or other requirements.

(a) Prohibitory requirements. The obligation to comply with §§113.500 through 113.550 is not obviated or alleviated by the existence of any State or local law or other requirement that imposes prohibitions or limits upon employment of members of one sex that are not imposed upon members of the other sex.

(b) Benefits. A recipient that provides any compensation, service, or benefit to members of one sex pursuant to a State or local law or other requirement shall provide the same compensation, service, or benefit to members of the other sex.
in covered programs. Copies of this notice also shall be made available upon request to the Federal agency’s office that enforces Title IX.

§ 113.605 Enforcement procedures.

The investigative, compliance, and enforcement procedural provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. 2000d) (“Title VI”) are hereby adopted and applied to these Title IX regulations. These procedures may be found at 13 CFR part 112.

[65 FR 52876, Aug. 30, 2000]

PART 114—ADMINISTRATIVE CLAIMS UNDER THE FEDERAL TORT CLAIMS ACT AND REPRESENTATION AND INDEMNIFICATION OF SBA EMPLOYEES

Subpart A—Administrative Tort Claims

Sec.
114.100 Definitions.
114.101 What do these regulations cover?
114.102 When, where and how do I present a claim?
114.103 Who may file a claim?
114.104 What evidence and information may SBA require relating to my claim?
114.105 Who investigates and considers my claim?
114.106 What if my claim exceeds $5,000?
114.107 What if my claim exceeds $25,000 or has other special features?
114.108 What if my claim is approved?
114.109 What if my claim is denied?

Subpart B—Representation and Indemnification of SBA Employees

114.110 What is SBA’s policy with respect to indemnifying and providing legal representation to SBA employees?
114.111 Does the attorney-client privilege apply when SBA employees are represented by the Government?


Source: 61 FR 2401, Jan. 26, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Administrative Tort Claims

§ 114.100 Definitions.

As used throughout this part 114, date of accrual means the date you know or reasonably should have known of your injury. The date of accrual will depend on the facts of each case. Site means the geographic location where the incident giving rise to your claim occurred.

§ 114.101 What do these regulations cover?

This part applies only to monetary claims you assert under the Federal Tort Claims Act, 28 U.S.C. 2671 et seq., for injury to or loss of property, personal injury, or death arising from the negligent or wrongful act or omission of any SBA employee acting within the scope of his or her employment.

§ 114.102 When, where and how do I present a claim?

(a) When. You must present your claim within 2 years of the date of accrual.

(b) Where. You may present your claim at the SBA District Office nearest to the site of the action giving rise to the claim and within the same state as the site. If your claim is based on the acts or omissions of an employee of SBA’s Disaster Assistance Program, you may present your claim to the appropriate SBA District Office or to the Disaster Assistance Office nearest to the site of the action giving rise to the claim.

(c) How. You must use an official form which can be obtained from the SBA office where you file the claim or give other written notice of your claim, stating the specific amount of your alleged damages and providing enough information to enable SBA to investigate your claim. You may present your claim in person or by mail, but your claim will not be considered presented until SBA receives the written information.

[64 FR 40283, July 26, 1999]

§ 114.103 Who may file a claim?

(a) If a claim is based on factors listed in the first column, then it may be presented by persons listed in the second column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Claim factors</th>
<th>Claim presenters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Injury to or loss of property</td>
<td>The owner of the property, his or her duly authorized agent, or legal representative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 114.104 What evidence and information may SBA require relating to my claim?

(a) For a claim based on injury to or loss of property:
(1) Proof you own the property.
(2) A specific statement of the damage you claim with respect to each item of property.
(3) Itemized receipts for payment for necessary repairs or itemized written estimates of the cost of such repairs.
(4) A statement listing date of purchase, purchase price and salvage value, where repair is not economical.
(5) Full information about potential insurance coverage and any insurance claims or payments relating to your claim.
(6) Any other information that may be relevant to the government’s alleged liability or the damages you claim.

(b) For a claim based on personal injury, including pain and suffering:
(1) A written report from your health care provider stating the nature and extent of your injury and treatment, the degree of your temporary or permanent disability, your prognosis, period of hospitalization, and any diminished earning capacity.
(2) A written report following a physical, dental or mental examination of you by a physician employed by SBA or another Federal Agency. If you want a copy of this report, you must request it in writing, furnish SBA with the written report of your health care provider, if SBA requests it, and make or agree to make available to SBA any other medical reports relevant to your claim.
(3) Itemized bills for medical, dental and hospital expenses you have incurred, or itemized receipts of payment for these expenses.
(4) Your health care provider’s written statement of the expected expenses related to any necessary future treatment.
(5) A statement from your employer showing actual time lost from employment, whether you are a full or part-time employee, and the wages or salary you actually lost.
(6) Documentary evidence showing the amount of earnings you actually lost if you are self-employed.
(7) Information about the existence of insurance coverage and any insurance claims or payments relating to the claim in question.
(8) Any other information that may be relevant to the government’s alleged liability or the damages you claim.

(c) For a claim based on death:
(1) An authenticated death certificate or other competent evidence showing cause of death, date of death, and age of the decedent.
(2) Evidence of decedent’s employment or occupation at the time of death, including monthly or yearly salary or earnings, and the duration of such employment or occupation.
(3) Full names, addresses, birth dates, kinship, and marital status of the decedent’s survivors, including identification of those survivors who were dependent upon the decedent for support at the time of his or her death.
(4) Evidence of the support provided by the decedent to each dependent survivor at the time of his or her death.
(5) A summary of the decedent’s general physical and mental condition before death.
(6) Itemized bills or receipts for payments for medical and burial expenses.
(7) For pain and suffering damage claims, a physician’s detailed statement specifying the injuries suffered, the duration of pain and suffering, any drugs administered for pain, and the decedent’s physical condition in the interval between injury and death.
(8) Any other information that may be relevant to the government’s alleged liability or the damages claimed.
§ 114.105 Who investigates and considers my claim?

(a) SBA may investigate, or ask another Federal agency to investigate, your claim. SBA also may request any Federal agency to conduct a physical examination of you and provide a report to SBA. SBA will reimburse the Federal agency for the costs of that examination when authorized or required by statute or regulation.

(b) In those cases in which SBA investigates your claim, and which arise out of the acts or omissions of employees other than employees of the Disaster Assistance Program, the SBA District Counsel in the office with jurisdiction over the site where the action giving rise to the claim occurred will investigate and make recommendations or determination with respect to your claim. In those cases in which SBA investigates your claim, and which arise out of acts or omissions of Disaster Assistance Program employees, the SBA Disaster Area Counsel in the office with jurisdiction over the site where the action giving rise to the claim occurred will investigate and make recommendations or a determination with respect to your claim. The District Counsel, or Disaster Area Counsel, where appropriate, may negotiate with you, and is authorized to use alternative dispute resolution mechanisms, which are non-binding on SBA, when they may promote the prompt, fair and efficient resolution of your claim.

(c) If your claim is for $5,000 or less, the District Counsel or Disaster Area Counsel who investigates your claim may deny the claim, or may recommend approval, compromise, or settlement of the claim to the Associate General Counsel for Litigation, who will in such a case take final action.

[61 FR 2401, Jan. 26, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 40283, July 26, 1999]

§ 114.106 What if my claim exceeds $5,000?

The District Counsel or Disaster Area Counsel, as appropriate, must review and investigate your claim and forward it with a report and recommendation to the Associate General Counsel for Litigation, who may approve or deny an award, compromise, or settlement of claims in excess of $5,000, but not exceeding $25,000.

[64 FR 40283, July 26, 1999]

§ 114.107 What if my claim exceeds $25,000 or has other special features?

(a) The U.S. Attorney General or designee must approve in writing any award, compromise, or settlement of a claim in excess of $25,000. For this purpose, a principal claim and any derivative or subrogated claim are considered a single claim.

(b) SBA must consult with the Department of Justice before adjusting, determining, compromising, or settling a claim whenever the General Counsel or designee determines:

(1) The claim involves a new precedent or a new point of law; or

(2) The claim involves or may involve a question of policy; or

(3) The United States is or may be entitled to indemnity or contribution from a third party and SBA is unable to adjust the third party claim; or

(4) Approval of a claim, as a practical matter, will or may control the disposition of a related claim in which the amount to be paid may exceed $25,000.

(c) SBA must consult with the Department of Justice before adjusting, determining, compromising, or settling a claim whenever SBA learns that the United States, or any of its employees, agents, or cost-plus contractors, is involved in litigation based on a claim arising out of the same incident or transaction.

(d) SBA, acting through its General Counsel or designee, must make any referrals to the Department of Justice for approval or consultation by transmitting them in writing to the Assistant Attorney General, Civil Division.

(1) The referral must contain a short and concise statement of the facts and the reason for the request or referral, copies of the relevant portions of the claim file, and SBA’s views and recommendations.

(2) SBA may make this referral at any time after a claim is presented.

§ 114.108 What if my claim is approved?

SBA will notify you in writing if it approves your claim. The District
§ 114.109 Counsel or Disaster Area Counsel investigating your claim will forward to you, your agent or your legal representative the forms necessary to indicate satisfaction of your claim and your acceptance of the payment. Acceptance by you, your agent or your legal representative of any award, compromise or settlement releases all your claims against the United States under the Federal Tort Claims Act. This means that it binds you, your agent or your legal representative, and any other person on whose behalf or for whose benefit the claim was presented. It also constitutes a complete release of your claim against the United States and its employees. If you are represented by counsel, SBA will designate you and your counsel as joint payees and will deliver the check to counsel. Payment is contingent upon the waiver of your claim and is subject to the availability of appropriated funds.

[64 FR 40283, July 26, 1999]

§ 114.109 What if my claim is denied?

SBA will notify you or your agent or legal representative in writing by certified or registered mail if it denies your claim. You have a right to file suit in an appropriate U.S. District Court not later than six months after the date the notification was mailed.

Subpart B—Representation and Indemnification of SBA Employees

§ 114.110 What is SBA’s policy with respect to indemnifying and providing legal representation to SBA employees?

(a) If an SBA employee engages in conduct, within the scope of his or her employment, which gives rise to a claim, and the SBA Administrator or designee determines that any of the following actions relating to the claim are in SBA’s interest, SBA may:

1. Indemnify the employee after a verdict, judgment, or other monetary award is rendered personally against the employee in any civil suit in state or federal court or any arbitration proceeding;

2. Settle or compromise the claim; and/or

3. Pay for, or request that the Department of Justice provide, legal representation to the employee once personally named in such a suit.

(b) If you are an SBA employee, you may ask SBA to settle or compromise your claim, provide you with legal representation, or provide you with indemnification for a verdict, judgment, award entered against you in a suit. To do so, you must submit a timely written request to the General Counsel, with appropriate documentation, including copies of any pleadings, verdict, judgment, award, or settlement proposal. The General Counsel will decide all requests for representation or settlement, and will forward to the Administrator, with the accompanying documentation and a recommendation, any requests for indemnification.

(c) Any payments by SBA under this section will be contingent upon the availability of appropriated funds.

§ 114.111 Does the attorney-client privilege apply when SBA employees are represented by the Government?

When attorneys employed by SBA participate in any process in which SBA seeks to determine whether SBA should request the Department of Justice to provide representation to an SBA employee sued, subpoenaed, or charged in his or her individual capacity, or whether attorneys employed by SBA should provide representational assistance for such an employee, those attorneys undertake a full and traditional attorney-client relationship with the employee with respect to the attorney-client privilege. If representation is authorized, SBA attorneys who assist in the representation of an SBA employee also undertake a full and traditional attorney-client relationship with the employee with respect to the attorney-client privilege. Unless authorized by the employee, the attorney must not disclose to anyone other than attorneys also responsible for the employee’s representation information communicated to the attorney by the client-employee during the course of the attorney-client relationship. The attorney-client privilege will continue with respect to that information whether or not representation is provided, and even if the employee’s representation is denied or discontinued.
Small Business Administration

PART 115—SURETY BOND GUARANTEE

Sec.
115.1 Overview of regulations.
115.2 Savings clause.

Subpart A—Provisions for All Surety Bond Guarantees

115.10 Definitions.
115.11 Applying to participate in the Surety Bond Guarantee Program.
115.12 General program policies and provisions.
115.13 Eligibility of Principal.
115.14 Loss of Principal’s eligibility for future assistance.
115.15 Underwriting and servicing standards.
115.16 Determination of Surety’s Loss.
115.17 Minimization of Surety’s Loss.
115.18 Refusal to issue further guarantees; suspension and termination of PSB status.
115.19 Denial of liability.
115.20 Insolvency of Surety.
115.21 Audits and investigations.

Subpart B—Guarantees Subject to Prior Approval

115.30 Submission of Surety’s guarantee application.
115.31 Guarantee percentage.
115.32 Fees and Premiums.
115.33 Surety bonding line.
115.34 Minimization of Surety’s Loss.
115.35 Claims for reimbursement of Losses.
115.36 Indemnity settlements and reinstatement of Principal.

Subpart C—Preferred Surety Bond (PSB) Guarantees

115.60 Selection and admission of PSB Sureties.
115.61 Duration of PSB program.
115.62 Prohibition on participation in Prior Approval program.
115.63 Allotment of guarantee authority.
115.64 Timeliness requirement.
115.65 General PSB procedures.
115.66 Fees.
115.67 Changes in Contract or bond amount.
115.68 Guarantee percentage.
115.69 Imminent Breach.
115.70 Claims for reimbursement of Losses.
115.71 Denial of liability.


SOURCE: 61 FR 3271, Jan. 31, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 115.10 Definitions.

AA/SG means SBA’s Associate Administrator for Surety Guarantees.
Affiliate is defined in part 121 of this chapter.
Ancillary Bond means a bond incidental and essential to the performance of a Contract for which there is a guaranteed Final Bond.
Bid Bond means a bond conditioned upon the bidder on a Contract entering into the Contract, and furnishing the required Payment and Performance Bonds. The term does not include a forfeiture bond unless it is issued for a jurisdiction where statute or settled decisional law requires forfeiture bonds for public works.
Contract means a written obligation of the Principal requiring the furnishing of services, supplies, labor, materials, machinery, equipment, or construction. A Contract must not prohibit a Surety from performing the Contract upon default of the Principal. A Contract does not include a permit, subdivision contract, lease, land contract, evidence of debt, financial guarantee (e.g., a contract requiring any payment by the Principal to the Obligee), warranty of performance or efficiency, warranty of fidelity, or release.
§ 115.10

13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)

of lien (other than for claims under a guaranteed bond). It includes a maintenance agreement of 2 years or less which covers defective workmanship or materials only. With SBA’s written approval, it can also include a longer maintenance agreement covering defective workmanship or materials, or a maintenance agreement covering something other than defective workmanship or materials. To qualify for such approval, the agreement must be ancillary to the Contract for which SBA is guaranteeing a bond, must be required to be performed by the same Principal, and must be customarily required in the relevant trade or industry.

Execution means signing by a representative or agent of the Surety with the authority and power to bind the Surety.

Final Bond means a Performance Bond and/or a Payment Bond.

Imminent Breach means a threat to the successful completion of a bonded Contract which, unless remedied by the Surety, makes a default under the bond appears inevitable.


Loss has the meaning set forth in §115.16.

Obligee means:
(1)(i) In the case of a Bid Bond, the Person requesting bids for the performance of a Contract; or
(1)(ii) In the case of a Final Bond, the Person who has contracted with a Principal for the completion of the Contract and to whom the primary obligation of the Surety runs in the event of a breach by the Principal.
(2) In either case, no Person (other than a Federal department or agency) may be named co-Obligee or Obligee on a bond or on a rider to the bond unless that Person is bound by the contract to the Principal (or to the Surety, if the Surety has arranged completion of the Contract) to the same extent as the original Obligee. In no event may the addition of one or more co-Obligees increase the aggregate liability of the Surety under the bond.

OSG means SBA’s Office of Surety Guarantees.

Payment Bond means a bond which is conditioned upon the payment by the Principal of money to persons who have a right of action against such bond, including those who have furnished labor, materials, equipment and supplies for use in the performance of the Contract. A Payment Bond can not require the Surety to pay an amount which exceeds the claimant’s actual loss or damage.

Performance Bond means a bond conditioned upon the completion by the Principal of a Contract in accordance with its terms.

Person means a natural person or a legal entity.

Premium means the amount charged by a Surety to issue bonds. The Premium is determined by applying an approved rate (see §§115.32(a) and 115.60(a)(2)) to the bond or contract amount. The Premium does not include surcharges for extra services, whether or not considered part of the “premium” under local law.

Principal means, in the case of a Bid Bond, the Person bidding for the award of a Contract. In the case of Final Bonds and Ancillary Bonds, Principal means the Person primarily liable to complete the Contract, or to make Contract-related payments to other persons, and is the Person whose performance or payment is bonded by the Surety. A Principal may be a prime contractor or a subcontractor.

Prior Approval Agreement means the Surety Bond Guarantee Agreement (SBA Form 990) entered into between a Prior Approval Surety and SBA under which SBA agrees to guarantee a specific bond.

Prior Approval Surety means a Surety which must obtain SBA’s prior approval on each guarantee and which has entered into one or more Prior Approval Agreements with SBA.

PSB Agreement means the Preferred Surety Bond Guarantee Agreement entered into between a PSB Surety and SBA.

PSB Surety means a Surety that has been admitted to the Preferred Surety Bond (PSB) Program.

Surety means a company which:
(1)(i) Under the terms of a Bid Bond, agrees to pay a sum of money to the
Obligee if the Principal breaches the conditions of the bond:
(ii) Under the terms of a Performance Bond, agrees to pay a sum of money or to incur the cost of fulfilling the terms of a Contract if the Principal breaches the conditions of the Contract; and
(iii) Under the terms of a Payment or an Ancillary Bond, agrees to make payment to all who have a right of action against such bond, including those who have furnished labor, materials, equipment and supplies in the performance of the Contract.

(2) The term Surety includes an agent, independent agent, underwriter, or any other company or individual empowered to act on behalf of the Surety.

§ 115.11 Applying to participate in the Surety Bond Guarantee Program.
Sureties interested in participating as Prior Approval Sureties or PSB Sureties should apply in writing to the AA/SG at 409 3rd Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416. OSG will determine the eligibility of the applicant considering its standards and procedures for underwriting, administration, claims and recovery. Each applicant must be a corporation listed by the U.S. Treasury as eligible to issue bonds in connection with Federal procurement contracts.

§ 115.12 General program policies and provisions.
(a) Description of Surety Bond Guarantee Programs. SBA guarantees Sureties participating in the Surety Bond Guarantee Programs against a portion of their Losses incurred and paid as a result of a Principal’s breach of the terms of a Bid Bond, Final Bond or Ancillary Bond, on any eligible Contract. In the Prior Approval Program, the Surety must obtain SBA’s approval before a guaranteed bond can be issued. In the PSB Program, selected Sureties may issue, monitor, and service SBA guaranteed bonds without further SBA approval.

(b) Eligibility of bonds. Bid Bonds and Final Bonds are eligible for an SBA guarantee if they are executed in connection with an eligible Contract and are of a type listed in the “Contract Bonds” section of the current Manual of Rules, Procedures and Classifications of the Surety Association of America (100 Wood Avenue South, Iselin, New Jersey 08830). Ancillary Bonds may also be eligible for SBA’s guarantee. A Performance Bond must not prohibit a Surety from performing the Contract upon default of the Principal.

(c) Expiration of Bid Bond Guarantee. A Bid Bond guarantee expires 120 days after Execution of the Bid Bond, unless the Surety notifies SBA in writing before the 120th day that a later expiration date is required. The notification must include the new expiration date.

(d) Guarantee agreement. The terms and conditions of SBA’s bond guarantee agreements, including the guarantee percentage, may vary from Surety to Surety, depending on past experience with SBA. If the guarantee percentage is not fixed by the Investment Act, it is determined by OSG after considering, among other things, the rating or ranking assigned to the Surety by recognized authority, and the Surety’s Loss rate, average Contract amount, average bond penalty per guaranteed bond, and ratio of Bid Bonds to Final Bonds, all in comparison with other Sureties participating in the same SBA Surety Bond Guarantee Program (Prior Approval or PSB) to a comparable degree. Any guarantee agreement under this part is made exclusively for the benefit of SBA and the Surety, and does not confer any rights (such as a right of action against SBA) or benefits on any other party.

(e) Amount of Contract—(1) Statutory ceiling. The amount of the Contract to be bonded must not exceed $2,000,000 in face value at the time of the bond’s Execution.

(2) Aggregation of Contract amounts. The amounts of two or more Contracts for a “single project” are aggregated to determine the Contract amount unless the Contracts are to be performed in phases and the prior bond is released before the beginning of each succeeding phase. A bond may be considered released even if the warranty period it is covering has not yet expired. For purposes of this paragraph, a “single project” means one represented by two or more Contracts of one Principal or
§ 115.13 Eligibility of Principal.

(a) General eligibility. In order to be eligible for a bond guaranteed by SBA, the Principal must comply with the following requirements:

1. Size. Together with its Affiliates, it must qualify as a small business under part 121 of this title.

2. Character. It must possess good character and reputation. A Principal meets this standard if each owner of 20% or more of its equity, and each of its officers, directors, or general partners, possesses good character and reputation. A Person’s good character and reputation is presumed absent when:
   i. The Person is under indictment for, or has been convicted of a felony, or a final civil judgment has been entered stating that such Person has committed a breach of trust or has violated a law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or business relationships; or
   ii. A regulatory authority has revoked, canceled, or suspended a license of the Person which is necessary to perform the Contract; or
   iii. The Person has obtained a bond guarantee by fraud or material misrepresentation (as described in §115.19(b)), or has failed to keep the Surety informed of unbonded contracts or of a contract bonded by another Surety, as required by a bonding line commitment under §115.33.

3. Need for bond. It must certify that a bond is expressly required by the bid solicitation or the original Contract in order to bid on the Contract or to serve as a prime contractor or subcontractor.

4. Availability of bond. It must certify that a bond is not obtainable on reasonable terms and conditions without SBA’s guarantee.

5. Partial subcontract. It must certify the percentage of work under the Contract to be subcontracted. SBA will not guarantee bonds for Principals who are primarily brokers or who have effectively transferred control over the project to one or more subcontractors.

6. Debarment. It must certify that the Principal is not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from transactions with any Federal department or agency, under governmentwide debarment and suspension rules.

(b) Conflict of interest. A Principal is not eligible for an SBA-guaranteed bond issued by a particular Surety if that Surety, or an Affiliate of that Surety, or a close relative or member of the household of that Surety or Affiliate owns, directly or indirectly, 10% or more of the Principal. This prohibition also applies to ownership interests in any of the Principal’s Affiliates.

§ 115.14 Loss of Principal’s eligibility for future assistance.

(a) Ineligibility. A Principal and its Affiliates lose eligibility for further SBA bond guarantees if any of the following occurs under an SBA-guaranteed bond issued on behalf of the Principal:

1. Legal action under the guaranteed bond has been initiated.

2. The Obligee has declared the Principal to be in default under the Contract.

3. The Surety has established a claim reserve for the bond of at least $1000.

4. The Surety has requested reimbursement for Losses incurred under the bond.

5. The guarantee fee has not been paid by the Principal.
§ 115.15 Underwriting and servicing standards.

(b) Reinstatement of Principal's eligibility. Prior Approval Sureties should refer to §115.36(b) for provisions on reinstatement of the Principal's eligibility. A PSB Surety may reinstate a Principal's eligibility upon the Surety's determination that reinstatement is appropriate.

§ 115.16 Determination of Surety's Loss.

Loss is determined as follows:

(a) Loss under a Bid Bond is the lesser of the penal sum or the amount which is the difference between the bonded bid and the next higher responsive bid. In either case, the Loss is reduced by any amounts the Surety recovers by reason of the Principal's defenses against the Obligee's demand for performance by the Principal and any sums the Surety recovers from indemnitors and other salvage.

(b) Loss under a Payment Bond is, at the Surety's option, the sum necessary to pay all just and timely claims against the Principal for the value of labor, materials, equipment and supplies furnished for use in the performance of the bonded Contract and other covered debts, or the penal sum of the Payment Bond. In either case, the Loss includes interest (if any), but Loss is reduced by any amounts recovered (through offset or otherwise) by reason of the Principal's claims against laborers, materialmen, subcontractors, suppliers, or other rightful claimants, and by any amounts recovered from indemnitors and other salvage.

(c) Loss under a Performance Bond is, at the Surety's option, the sum necessary to meet the cost of fulfilling the terms of a bonded Contract or the penal sum of the bond. In either case, the Loss includes interest (if any), but Loss is reduced by any amounts recovered (through offset or otherwise) by reason of the Principal's defenses or causes of action against the Obligee, and by any amounts recovered from indemnitors and other salvage.

(d) Loss under an Ancillary Bond is the amount covered by such bond which is attributable to the Contract for which guaranteed Final Bonds were Executed.

(e) Loss includes the following expenses if they are itemized, documented and attributable solely to the Loss under the guaranteed bond:

(1) Amounts actually paid by the Surety which are specifically allocable to the investigation, adjustment, negotiation, compromise, settlement of, or resistance to a claim for Loss resulting from the breach of the terms of the bonded Contract. Any cost allocation method must be reasonable and must comply with generally accepted accounting principles; and

(2) Amounts actually paid by the Surety for court costs and reasonable attorney's fees incurred to mitigate any Loss under paragraphs (a) through (e)(1) of this section including suits to obtain sums due from Obligees, indemnitors, Principals and others.

(f) Loss does not include the following expenses:

...
§ 115.17 Minimization of Surety’s Loss.

(a) Indemnity agreements and collateral—(1) Requirements. The Surety must take all reasonable action to minimize risk of Loss including, but not limited to, obtaining from each Principal a written indemnity agreement which covers actual Losses under the Contract and Imminent Breach payments under §115.34(a) or §115.69. The indemnity agreement must be secured by such collateral as the Surety or SBA finds appropriate. Indemnity agreements from other Persons, secured or unsecured, may also be required by the Surety or SBA.

(2) Prohibitions. No indemnity agreement may be obtained from the Surety, its agent or any other representative of the Surety. The Surety must not separately collateralize the portion of its bond which is not guaranteed by SBA.

(b) Salvage and recovery—(1) General. The Surety must pursue all possible sources of salvage and recovery. Salvage and recovery includes all payments made in settlement of the Surety’s claim, even though the Surety has incurred other losses as a result of that Principal which are not reimbursable by SBA.

(2) SBA’s share. SBA is entitled to its guaranteed percentage of all salvage and recovery from a defaulted Principal, its guarantors and indemnitors, and any other party, received by the Surety in connection with the guaranteed bond or any other bond issued by the Surety on behalf of the Principal unless such recovery is unquestionably identifiable as related solely to the non-guaranteed bond. The Surety must reimburse or credit SBA (in the same proportion as SBA’s share of Loss) within 90 days of receipt of any recovery by the Surety.

(3) Multiple Sureties. In any dispute between two or more Sureties concerning recovery under SBA guaranteed bonds, the dispute must first be brought to the attention of OSG for an attempt at mediation and settlement.

§ 115.18 Refusal to issue further guarantees; suspension and termination of PSB status.

(a) Improper surety bond guarantee practices—(1) Improper practices. SBA may refuse to issue further guarantees to a Prior Approval Surety or may suspend the preferred status of a PSB Surety, by written notice stating all reasons for such decision and the effective date. Reasons for such a decision include, but are not limited to, a determination that the Surety (in its underwriting, its efforts to minimize Loss, its claims or recovery practices, or its documentation related to SBA guaranteed bonds) has failed to adhere to prudent standards or practices, including any standards or practices required by SBA, as compared to those of other Sureties participating in the same SBA Surety Bond Guarantee Program to a comparable degree.

(2) Regulatory violations, fraud. Acts of wrongdoing such as fraud, material misrepresentation, breach of the Prior Approval or PSB Agreement, or regulatory violations (as defined in §§115.19(d) and 115.19(h)) also constitute sufficient grounds for refusal to issue further guarantees, or in the case of a PSB Surety, termination of preferred status.

(3) Audit; records. The failure of a Surety to consent to SBA’s audit or to maintain and produce records constitutes grounds for SBA to refuse to issue further guarantees for a Prior Approval Surety, to suspend a PSB Surety from participation, and to refuse to honor claims submitted by a Prior Approval or PSB Surety until the Surety consents to the audit.
(4) **Excessive Losses.** If a Surety experiences excessive Losses on SBA guaranteed bonds relative to those of other Sureties participating in the same SBA Surety Bond Guarantee Program to a comparable degree, SBA may also require the renegotiation of the guarantee percentage and/or SBA’s charge to the Surety for bonds executed thereafter.

(b) **Lack of business integrity.** A Surety’s participation in the Surety Bond Guarantee Programs may be denied, suspended, or terminated upon the occurrence of any event in paragraphs (b) (1) through (5) of this section involving any of the following Persons: The Surety or any of its officers, directors, partners, or other individuals holding at least 20% of the Surety’s voting securities, and any agents, underwriters, or any individual empowered to act on behalf of any of the preceding Persons.

1. If a State or other authority has revoked, canceled, or suspended the license required of such Person to engage in the surety business, the right of such Person to participate in the SBA Surety Bond Guarantee Program may be denied, terminated, or suspended, as applicable, in that jurisdiction or in other jurisdictions. Ineligibility or suspension from the Surety Bond Guarantee Programs is for at least the duration of the license suspension.

2. If such Person has been indicted or otherwise formally charged with a misdemeanor or felony bearing on such Person’s fitness to participate in the SBA Surety Bond Guarantee Programs, the participation of such Person may be suspended pending disposition of the charge. Upon conviction, participation may be denied or terminated.

3. If a final civil judgment is entered holding that such Person has committed a breach of trust or violation of a law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or relationships, participation may be denied or terminated.

4. If such Person has made a material misrepresentation or willfully false statement in the presentation of oral or written information to SBA in connection with an application for a surety bond guarantee or the presentation of a claim, or committed a material breach of the Prior Approval or PSB Agreement or a material violation of the regulations (all as described in §115.19), participation may be denied or terminated.

5. If such Person is debarred, suspended, voluntarily excluded from, or declared ineligible for participation in Federal programs, participation may be denied or terminated.

(c) **Notification requirement.** The Prior Approval or PSB Surety must promptly notify SBA of the occurrence of any event in paragraphs (b) (1) through (5) of this section, or if any of the Persons described in paragraph (b) of this section does not, or ceases to, qualify as a Surety. SBA may require submission of a Statement of Personal History (SBA Form 912) from any of these Persons.

(d) **SBA proceedings.** Decisions to suspend, terminate, deny participation in, or deny reinstatement in the Surety Bond Guarantee program are made by the AA/SG. A Surety may file a petition for review of suspensions and terminations with the SBA Office of Hearings and Appeals (OHA) under part 134 of this chapter. SBA’s Administrator may, pending a decision pursuant to part 134 of this chapter, suspend the participation of any Surety for any of the causes listed in paragraphs (b) (1) through (5) of this section.

(e) **Effect on guarantee.** A guarantee issued by SBA before a suspension or termination under this section remains in effect, subject to SBA’s right to deny liability under the guarantee.

§ 115.19 **Denial of liability.**

In addition to equitable and legal defenses and remedies under contract law, the Act and the regulations in this part, SBA is not liable under a Prior Approval or PSB Agreement if any of the circumstances in paragraphs (a) through (h) of this section exist.

(a) **Excess Contract or bond amount.** The total Contract amount at the time of Execution of the bond exceeds $2,000,000 in face value (see §115.12(e)), or the bond amount at any time exceeds the total Contract amount.

(b) **Misrepresentation or fraud.** The Surety obtained the Prior Approval or
PSB Agreement, or applied for reimbursement for losses, by fraud or material misrepresentation. Material misrepresentation includes (but is not limited to) both the making of an untrue statement of material fact and the omission of a statement of material fact necessary to make a statement not misleading in light of the circumstances in which it was made. Material misrepresentation also includes the adoption by the Surety of a material misstatement made by others which the Surety knew under generally accepted underwriting standards should have known to be false or misleading. The Surety’s failure to disclose its ownership (or the ownership by any owner of at least 20% of the Surety’s equity) of an interest in a Principal or an Obligee is considered the omission of a statement of material fact.

(c) Material breach. The Surety has committed a material breach of one or more terms or conditions of its Prior Approval or PSB Agreement. A material breach is considered to have occurred if:

(1) Such breach (or such breaches in the aggregate) causes an increase in the Contract amount or in the bond amount of at least 25% or $50,000; or

(2) One of the conditions under Part B of Title IV of the Investment Act is not met.

d) Substantial regulatory violation. The Surety has committed a “substantial violation” of SBA regulations. For purposes of this paragraph, a “substantial violation” is a violation which causes an increase in the bond amount of at least 25% or $50,000 in the aggregate, or is contrary to the purposes of the Surety Bond Guarantee Programs.

e) Alteration. Without obtaining prior written approval from SBA (which may be conditioned upon payment of additional fees), the Surety agrees to or acquiesces in any material alteration in the terms, conditions, or provisions of the bond, including but not limited to the following acts:

(1) Naming as an Obligee or co-Obligee any Person that does not qualify as an Obligee under §115.10; or

(2) In the case of a Prior Approval Surety, acquiescing in any alteration to the bond which would increase the bond amount by at least 25% or $50,000.

(f) Timeliness. (1) Either:

(i) The bond was Executed prior to the date of SBA’s guarantee; or

(ii) The bond was Executed (or approved, if the Surety is legally bound by such approval) after the work under the Contract had begun, unless SBA executes a “Surety Bond Guarantee Agreement Addendum” (SBA Form 991) after receiving all of the following from the Surety:

(A) Satisfactory evidence, including a certified copy of the Contract (or a sworn affidavit from the Principal), showing that the bond requirement was contained in the original Contract, or other documentation satisfactory to SBA, showing why a bond was not previously obtained and is now being required;

(B) Certification by the Principal that all taxes and labor costs are current, and listing all suppliers and subcontractors, indicating that they are all paid to date, and attaching a waiver of lien from each; or an explanation satisfactory to SBA why such documentation cannot be produced; and

(C) Certification by the Obligee that all payments due under the Contract to date have been made and that the job has been satisfactorily completed to date.

(2) For purposes of this paragraph (f)(1)(ii) of this section, work under a Contract is considered to have begun when a Principal takes any action at the job site which would have exposed its Surety to liability under applicable law had a bond been Executed (or approved, if the Surety is legally bound by such approval) at the time.

(ii) For purposes of this paragraph (f), the Surety must maintain a contemporaneous record of the Execution and approval of each bond.

(g) Principal fee. The Surety has not remitted to SBA the Principal’s payment for the full amount of the guarantee fee within the time period required under §115.30(d) for Prior Approval Sureties or §115.66 for PSB Sureties. SBA may reinstate the guarantee upon a showing that the Contract is not in default and that a valid reason exists why a timely submission was not made.
(h) Other regulatory violations. The occurrence of any of the following:

(1) The Principal on the bonded Contract is not a small business;
(2) The bond was not required under the bid solicitation or the original Contract;
(3) The bond was not eligible for guarantee by SBA because the bonded contract was not a Contract as defined in §115.10;
(4) The loss occurred under a bond that was not guaranteed by SBA;
(5) The loss incurred by the Surety was not a Loss as determined under §115.16; or
(6) The Surety’s loss under a Performance Bond did not result from the Principal’s breach or Imminent Breach of the Contract.

§115.20 Insolvency of Surety.

(a) Successor in interest. If a Surety becomes insolvent, all rights or benefits conferred on the Surety under a valid and binding Prior Approval or PSB Agreement will accrue only to the trustee or receiver of the insolvent Surety except for the guaranteed portion of any Loss incurred and actually paid by such Surety or its trustee or receiver under the guaranteed bonds.

(b) Filing requirement. The trustee or receiver must submit to SBA quarterly status reports accounting for all funds received and all settlements being considered.

§115.21 Audits and investigations.

(a) Audits—(1) Scope of audit. SBA may audit in the office of a Prior Approval or PSB Surety, the Surety’s attorneys or consultants, or the Principal or its subcontractors, all documents, files, books, records, tapes, disks and other material relevant to SBA’s guarantee, commitments to guarantee a surety bond, or agreements to indemnify the Prior Approval or PSB Surety. See §115.18(a)(3) for consequences of failure to comply with this section.

(2) Frequency of PSB audits. Each PSB Surety is subject to audit at least once each year by examiners selected and approved by SBA.

(b) Records. The Surety must maintain the records listed in this paragraph (b) for the term of each bond, plus any additional time required to settle any claims of the Surety for reimbursement from SBA and to attempt salvage or other recovery, plus an additional 3 years. If there are any unresolved audit findings in relation to a particular bond, the Surety must maintain the related records until the findings are resolved. The records to be maintained include the following:

(1) A copy of the bond;
(2) A copy of the bonded Contract;
(3) All documentation submitted by the Principal in applying for the bond;
(4) All information gathered by the Surety in reviewing the Principal’s application;
(5) All documentation of any of the events set forth in §115.35(a) or §115.65(c)(2);
(6) All records of any transaction for which the Surety makes payment under or in connection with the bond, including but not limited to claims, bills (including lawyers’ and consultants’ bills), judgments, settlement agreements and court or arbitration decisions, consultants’ reports, Contracts and receipts;
(7) All documentation relating to efforts to mitigate Losses, including documentation required by §115.34(a) or §115.69 concerning Imminent Breach;
(8) All records of any accounts into which fees and funds obtained in mitigation of Losses were paid and from which payments were made under the bond, and any other trust accounts, and any reconciliations of such accounts;
(9) Job status reports received from Obligees and documentation of each unanswered request for a job status report; and
(10) All documentation relating to any collateral held by or available to the Surety.

(c) Purpose of audit. SBA’s audit will determine, but not be limited to:

(1) The adequacy and sufficiency of the Surety’s underwriting and credit analysis, its documentation of claims and claims settlement procedures and
activities, and its recovery procedures and practices;

(2) The Surety’s minimization of Loss, including the exercise of bond options upon Contract default; and

(3) The Surety’s loss ratio in comparison with other Sureties participating in the same SBA Surety Bond Guarantee Program to a comparable degree.

(d) Investigations. SBA may conduct investigations to inquire into the possible violation by any Person of the Small Business Act or the Investment Act, or of any rule or regulation under those Acts, or of any order issued under those Acts, or of any Federal law relating to programs and operations of SBA.

Subpart B—Guarantees Subject to Prior Approval

§ 115.30 Submission of Surety’s guarantee application.

(a) Legal effect of application. By submitting an application to SBA for a bond guarantee, the Prior Approval Surety certifies that the Principal meets the eligibility requirements set forth in §115.13 and that the underwriting standards set forth in §115.15 have been met.

(b) SBA’s determination. SBA’s approval or decline of a guarantee application is made in writing by an authorized SBA officer. The officer may provide telephone notice before the Prior Approval Surety receives SBA’s guarantee approval form if the officer has already signed the form. In the event of a conflict between the telephone notice and the written form, the written form controls.

(c) Reconsideration-appeal of SBA determination. A Prior Approval Surety may request reconsideration of a decline from the SBA officer who made the decision. If the decision on reconsideration is negative, the Surety may appeal to an individual designated by the AA/SG. If the decision is again adverse, the Surety may appeal to the AA/SG, who will make the final decision.

(d) Notice and payment to SBA. When the Surety has Executed a Final Bond, including a Final Bond under a bonding line, the Surety must complete the Prior Approval Agreement, and submit the form, together with the Principal’s payment for its guarantee fee (see §115.32(b)) to SBA within 45 days, or in the case of a bonding line, within 15 business days (see §115.33(d)(2)) after Execution of the bond.

§ 115.31 Guarantee percentage.

(a) Ninety percent. SBA reimburses a Prior Approval Surety for 90% of the Loss incurred and paid if:

(1) The total amount of the Contract at the time of Execution of the bond is $100,000 or less; or

(2) The bond was issued on behalf of a small business owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals or on behalf of a qualified HUBZone small business concern.

(b) Eighty percent. SBA reimburses a Prior Approval Surety in an amount not to exceed 80% of the Loss incurred and paid on bonds for Contracts in excess of $100,000 which are executed on behalf of non-disadvantaged concerns.

(c) Contract increase to over $100,000. If the Contract amount increases to more than $100,000 after Execution of the bond, the guarantee percentage decreases by one percentage point for each $5,000 of increase or part thereof, but it does not decrease below 80%. This provision applies only to guarantees which qualify under paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(d) Contract increase to over $2,000,000. If the Contract amount increases above the statutory limit of $2,000,000 after Execution of the bond, SBA’s share of the Loss is limited to that percentage of the increased Contract amount which the statutory limit represents, multiplied by the guarantee percentage approved by SBA. For example if a Contract amount increases to $2,100,000, SBA’s share of the Loss under an 80% guarantee is limited to 76.1% (2,000,000 / 2,100,000 = 95.2% × 80% = 76.1%).

(e) Contract decrease to $100,000 or less. If the Contract amount decreases to $100,000 or less after Execution of the bond, SBA’s guarantee percentage increases to 90% if the Surety provides...
§ 115.32 Fees and Premiums.

(a) Surety’s Premium. A Prior Approval Surety must not charge a Principal an amount greater than that authorized by the appropriate insurance department. The Surety must not require the Principal to purchase casualty or other insurance or any other services from the Surety or any Affiliate or agent of the Surety. The Surety must not charge non-Premium fees to a Principal unless the Surety performs other services for the Principal, the additional fee is permitted by State law, and the Principal agrees to the fee.

(b) SBA charge to Principal. SBA does not charge Principals application or Bid Bond guarantee fees. If SBA guarantees a Final Bond, the Principal must pay a guarantee fee equal to a certain percentage of the Contract amount. The percentage is determined by SBA and is published in Notices in the FEDERAL REGISTER from time to time. The Principal’s fee is rounded to the nearest dollar and is to be remitted to SBA by the Surety together with the form required under § 115.30(d). See paragraph (d) of this section for additional requirements when the Contract amount changes.

(c) SBA charge to Surety. SBA does not charge Sureties application or Bid Bond guarantee fees. Subject to §115.18(a)(d), the Surety must pay SBA a guarantee fee on each guaranteed bond (other than a Bid Bond) in the ordinary course of business. The fee is a certain percentage of the bond Premium, determined by SBA and published in Notices in the FEDERAL REGISTER from time to time. The fee is rounded to the nearest dollar. SBA does not receive any portion of a Surety’s non-Premium charges. See paragraph (d) of this section for additional requirements when the bond amount or the Contract amount changes.

(d) Contract or bond increases/decreases—(1) Notification and approval. The Prior Approval Surety must notify SBA of any increases or decreases in the Contract or bond amount that aggregate 25% or $50,000, as soon as the Surety acquires knowledge of the change. Whenever the original bond amount increases as a result of a single change order of at least 25% or $50,000, the prior written approval of such increase by SBA is required on a supplemental Prior Approval Agreement (Supplemental Form 990) and is conditioned upon payment by the Surety of the increase in the Principal’s guarantee fee as set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(2) Increases; fees. Notification of increases in the Contract or bond amount under this paragraph (d) must be accompanied by payment of the increase in the Principal’s guarantee fee computed on the increase in the Contract amount. If the increase in the Principal’s fee is less than $40, such increase is not due until all unpaid increases in the Principal’s fee aggregate at least $40. The Surety’s check for payment of the increase in the Surety’s guarantee fee, computed on the increase in the bond Premium, may be submitted in the ordinary course of business. Increases in the Surety’s fee are not due until they aggregate at least $40.

(3) Decreases; refunds. Whenever SBA is notified of a decrease in the Contract or bond amount, SBA will refund to the Principal a proportionate amount of the Principal’s guarantee fee and rebate to the Surety a proportionate amount of SBA’s Premium share in the ordinary course of business. If the amount to be refunded or rebated is less than $40, such refund or rebate will not be made until the amounts to be refunded or rebated, respectively, aggregate at least $40. Upon receipt of the refund, the Surety must promptly pay a proportionate amount of its Premium to the Principal.

§ 115.33 Surety bonding line.

A surety bonding line is a written commitment by SBA to a Prior Approval Surety which provides for the Surety’s Execution of multiple bonds for a specified small business strictly within pre-approved terms, conditions and limitations. In applying for a bonding line, the Surety must provide SBA with information on the applicant as
§ 115.33

requested. In addition to the other limitations and provisions set forth in this part 115, the following conditions apply to each surety bonding line:

(a) Underwriting. A bonding line may be issued by SBA for a Principal only if the underwriting evaluation is satisfactory. The Prior Approval Surety must require the Principal to keep it informed of all its contracts, whether bonded by the same or another surety or unbonded, during the term of the bonding line.

(b) Bonding line conditions. The bonding line contains limitations on the following:

(1) The term of the bonding line, not to exceed 1 year subject to renewal in writing;

(2) The total dollar amount of the Principal’s bonded and unbonded work on hand at any time, including outstanding bids, during the term of the bonding line;

(3) The number of such bonded and unbonded contracts outstanding at any time during the term of the bonding line;

(4) The maximum dollar amount of any single guaranteed bonded Contract;

(5) The timing of Execution of bonds under the bonding line—bonds must be dated and Executed before the work on the underlying Contract has begun, or the Surety must submit to SBA the documentation required under §115.19(f)(1)(ii); and

(6) Any other limitation related to type, specialty of work, geographical area, or credit.

(c) Excess bonding. If, after a bonding line is issued, the Principal desires a bond and the Surety desires a guarantee exceeding a limitation of the bonding line, the Surety must submit an application to SBA under regular procedures.

(d) Submission of forms to SBA—(1) Bid Bonds. Within 15 business days after the Execution of any Bid Bonds under a bonding line, the Surety must submit a “Surety Bond Guarantee Underwriting Review” (SBA Form 994B) to SBA for approval. If that form is already on file with SBA and no new financial statements are required or have been received from the Principal, a “Surety Bond Guarantee Review Update” (SBA Form 994C) may be submitted instead. If the Surety fails to submit these forms together with the Principal’s payment for its guarantee fee within this time period, SBA’s guarantee of the bond will be void from its inception unless SBA determines otherwise upon a showing that a valid reason exists why the timely submission was not made.

(2) Final Bonds. Within 15 business days after the Execution of any Final Bonds under a bonding line, the Surety must submit a signed Prior Approval Agreement and a “Surety Bond Guarantee Underwriting Review” (SBA Form 994B) to SBA for approval. If that form is already on file with SBA and no new financial statements are required or have been received from the Principal, a “Surety Bond Guarantee Review Update” (SBA Form 994C) may be submitted instead. If the Surety fails to submit these forms together with the Principal’s payment for its guarantee fee within this time period, SBA’s guarantee of the bond will be void from its inception unless SBA determines otherwise upon a showing that the Contract is not in default and a valid reason exists why the timely submission was not made.

(3) Additional information. The Surety must submit any other data SBA requests.

(e) Cancellation of bonding line—(1) Optional cancellation. Either SBA or the Surety may cancel a bonding line at any time, with or without cause, upon written notice to the other party. Upon the receipt of any adverse information concerning the Principal, the Surety must promptly notify SBA, and SBA may cancel the bonding line.

(2) Mandatory cancellation. Upon the occurrence of a default by the Principal, whether under a contract bonded by the same or another surety or an unbonded contract, the Surety must immediately cancel the bonding line.

(3) Effect of cancellation. Cancellation of a bonding line by SBA is effective upon receipt of written notice by the Surety. Bonds issued before the effective date of cancellation remain guaranteed by SBA. Upon cancellation by SBA or the Surety, the Surety must promptly notify the Principal in writing.
§ 115.34 Minimization of Surety’s Loss.

(a) Imminent Breach—(1) Prior approval requirement. SBA will reimburse its guaranteed share of payments made by a Surety to avoid or attempt to avoid an Imminent Breach of the terms of a Contract covered by an SBA guaranteed bond only if the payments were made with the prior approval of OSG. OSG’s prior approval will be given only if the Surety demonstrates to SBA’s satisfaction that a breach is imminent and that there is no other recourse to prevent such breach.

(2) Amount of reimbursement. The aggregate of the payments by SBA to avoid Imminent Breach cannot exceed 10% of the Contract amount, unless the Administrator finds that a greater payment (not to exceed the guaranteed share of the bond penalty) is necessary and reasonable. In no event will SBA make any duplicate payment pursuant to this or any other provision of this part 115.

(b) Salvage and recovery. A Prior Approval Surety must pursue all possible sources of salvage and recovery until SBA concurs with the Surety’s recommendation for a discontinuance or for a settlement. The Surety must certify that continued pursuit of salvage and recovery would be neither economically feasible nor a viable strategy in maximizing recovery. See also §115.17(b).

(3) Recordkeeping requirement. The Surety must keep records of payments made to avoid Imminent Breach.

§ 115.35 Claims for reimbursement of Losses.

(a) Notification requirements—(1) Events requiring notification. A Prior Approval Surety must notify OSG of the occurrence of any of the following:

(i) Legal action under the bond has been initiated.

(ii) The Obligee has declared the Principal to be in default under the Contract.

(iii) The Surety has established a claim reserve for the bond.

(iv) The Surety has received any adverse information concerning the Principal’s financial condition or possible inability to complete the project or to pay laborers or suppliers.

(2) Timing of notification. Notification must be made in writing at the earlier of the time the Surety applies for a guarantee on behalf of an affected Principal, or within 30 days of the date the Surety acquires knowledge, or should have acquired knowledge, of any of the listed events.

(b) Surety action. The Surety must take all necessary steps to mitigate Losses resulting from any of the events in paragraph (a) of this section, including the disposal at fair market value of any collateral held by or available to the Surety. Unless SBA notifies the Surety otherwise, the Surety must take charge of all claims or suits arising from a defaulted bond, and compromise, settle and defend such suits. The Surety must handle and process all claims under the bond and all settlements and recoveries as it does on non-guaranteed bonds.

(c) Claim reimbursement requests. (1) Claims for reimbursement for Losses which the Surety has paid must be submitted (together with a copy of the bond, the bonded Contract, and any indemnity agreements) with the initial claim to OSG on a “Default Report, Claim for Reimbursement and Record of Administrative Action” (SBA Form 994H), within 1 year from the time of each disbursement. Claims submitted after 1 year must be accompanied by substantiation satisfactory to SBA. The date of the claim for reimbursement is the date of receipt of the claim by SBA, or such later date as additional information requested by SBA is received.

(2) The Surety must also submit evidence of the disposal of all collateral at fair market value.

(3) SBA may request additional information prior to reimbursing the Surety for its Loss.

(4) Subject to the offset provisions of part 140, SBA pays its share of the Loss incurred and paid by the Surety within 90 days of receipt of the requisite information.

(5) Claims for reimbursement and any additional information submitted are subject to review and audit by SBA, including but not limited to the Surety’s compliance with SBA’s regulations and forms.
§ 115.36 Status updates. The Surety must submit semiannual status reports on each claim 6 months after the initial default notice, and then every 6 months. The Surety must notify SBA immediately of any substantial changes in the status of the claim or the amounts of Loss reserves.

(e) Reservation of SBA rights. The payment by SBA of a Surety’s claim does not waive or invalidate any of the terms of the Prior Approval Agreement, the regulations set forth in this part 115, or any defense SBA may have against the Surety. Within 30 days of receipt of notification that a claim or any portion of a claim should not have been paid by SBA, the Surety must repay the specified amounts to SBA.

§ 115.36 Indemnity settlements and reinstatement of Principal.

(a) Indemnity settlements. (1) An indemnity settlement occurs when a defaulted Principal and its Surety agree upon an amount, less than the actual loss under the bond, which will satisfy the Principal’s indebtedness to the Surety. Sureties must not agree to any indemnity settlement proposal or enter into any such agreement without SBA’s concurrence.

(2) Any settlement proposal submitted for SBA’s consideration must include current financial information, including financial statements, tax returns, and credit reports, together with the Surety’s written recommendations. It should also indicate whether the Principal is interested in further bonding.

(3) The Surety must pay SBA its pro rata share of the settlement amount within 90 days of receipt. Prior to closing the file on a Principal, the Surety must certify that SBA has received its pro rata share of all indemnity recovery.

(b) Conditions for reinstatement. At any time after a Principal becomes ineligible for further bond guarantees under §115.14(a), the Surety may recommend that such Principal’s eligibility be reinstated. OSG may agree to reinstate the Principal and its Affiliates if:

(1) The Principal’s guarantee fee has been paid to SBA and SBA receives evidence that the Principal has paid all delinquent amounts due to the Surety (including amounts for Imminent Breach); or

(2) The Surety has settled its claim with the Principal for an amount and on terms accepted by OSG; or

(3) The Principal contests a claim and provides collateral, acceptable to the Surety and OSG, which has a liquidation value of at least the amount of the claim including related expenses; or

(4) The Principal’s indebtedness to the Surety is discharged by operation of law (e.g., bankruptcy discharge); or

(5) OSG and the Surety determine that further bond guarantees are appropriate.

(c) Underwriting after reinstatement. A guarantee application submitted after reinstatement of the Principal’s eligibility is subject to a very stringent underwriting review.

Subpart C—Preferred Surety Bond (PSB) Guarantees

§ 115.60 Selection and admission of PSB Sureties.

(a) Selection of PSB Sureties. SBA’s selection of PSB Sureties will be guided by, but not limited to, these factors:

(1) An underwriting limitation of at least $2,000,000 on the U.S. Treasury Department list of acceptable sureties;

(2) An agreement to charge Principals no more than the Surety Association of America’s advisory premium rates in effect on August 1, 1987;

(3) Premium income from contract bonds guaranteed by any government agency (Federal, State or local) of no more than one- quarter of the total contract bond premium income of the Surety;

(4) The vesting of underwriting authority for SBA guaranteed bonds only in employees of the Surety;

(5) The vesting of final settlement authority for claims and recovery under the PSB program only in employees of the Surety’s permanent claims department; and

(6) The rating or ranking designations assigned to the Surety by recognized authority.

(b) Admission of PSB Sureties. A Surety admitted to the PSB program must
execute a PSB Agreement before approving SBA guaranteed bonds. No SBA guarantee attaches to bonds approved before the AA/SG or designee has countersigned the Agreement.

§ 115.65 General PSB procedures.

(a) Retention of information. A PSB Surety must comply with all applicable SBA regulations and obtain from its applicants all the information and certifications required by SBA. The PSB Surety must document compliance with SBA regulations and retain such certifications in its files, including a contemporaneous record of the date of approval and Execution of each bond. See also §115.19(f). The certifications and other information must be made available for inspection by SBA or its agents and must be available for submission to SBA in connection with the Surety’s claims for reimbursement. The PSB Surety must retain the certifications and other information for the term of the bond, plus such additional time as may be required to settle any claims of the Surety for reimbursement from SBA and to attempt salvage or other recovery, plus an additional 3 years. If there are any unresolved audit findings in relation to a particular bond, the Surety must maintain the related certifications and

§ 115.64 Timeliness requirement.

There must be no Execution or approval of a bond by a PSB Surety after commencement of work under a Contract unless the Surety obtains written approval from the AA/SG. To apply for such approval, the Surety must submit a completed “Surety Bond Guarantee Agreement Addendum” (SBA Form 991), together with the evidence and certifications described in §115.19(f)(1)(ii).

§ 115.63 Allotment of guarantee authority.

(a) General. SBA allots to each PSB Surety a periodic maximum guarantee authority. No SBA guarantee attaches to bonds approved by a PSB Surety if the bonds exceed the allotted authority for the period in which the bonds are approved. No reliance on future authority is permitted. An allotment can be increased only by prior written permission of SBA.

(b) Execution of Bid Bonds. When the PSB Surety executes a Bid Bond, SBA debits the Surety’s allotment for an amount equal to the guarantee percentage of the estimated penal sum of the Final Bond SBA would guarantee if the Contract were awarded. If the Contract is then awarded for an amount other than the bid amount, or if the bid is withdrawn or the Bid Bond guarantee has expired (see §115.12(c)), SBA debits or credits the Surety’s allotment accordingly.

(c) Execution of Final Bonds. If the PSB Surety executes a guaranteed Final Bond, but not the related Bid Bond, SBA debits the Surety’s allotment for an amount equal to the guarantee percentage of the penal sum of the Final Bond. SBA will debit the allotment for decreases, in the bond amount.

(d) Release and non-issuance of Final Bonds. The release of Final Bonds upon completion of the Contract does not restore the corresponding allotment. If, however, a PSB Surety approves a Final Bond but never issues the bond, SBA will credit the Surety’s allotment for an amount equal to the guarantee percentage of the penal sum of the bond. In that event, the Surety must notify SBA as soon as possible, but in no event later than 5 business days after the non-issuance has been determined. Until the Surety has so notified SBA, it cannot rely on such credit.
§ 115.66 Fees.

The PSB Surety must pay SBA a certain percentage of the Premium it charges on Final Bonds. The PSB Surety must also remit to SBA the Principal’s payment for its guarantee fee, equal to a certain percentage of the Contract amount. The fee percentages are determined by SBA and are published in Notices in the Federal Register from time to time. Each fee is rounded to the nearest dollar. The Surety must remit SBA’s Premium share and the Principal’s guarantee fee with the bordereau listing the related Final Bond, as required in the PSB Agreement.

§ 115.67 Changes in Contract or bond amount.

(a) Increases. The PSB Surety must process Contract or bond amount increases within its allotment in the same manner as initial guaranteed bond issuances (see §115.65(c)(1)). The Surety must present checks for additional fees due from the Principal and the Surety on increases aggregating 25% of the contract or bond amount or $50,000, and attach such payments to the respective monthly bordereau. If the additional Principal’s fee or Surety’s fee is less than $40, such fee is not due until all unpaid increases in such fee aggregate at least $40.

(b) Decreases. If the Contract or bond amount is decreased, SBA will refund to the Principal a proportionate amount of the guarantee fee, and adjust SBA’s Premium share accordingly in the ordinary course of business. No refund or adjustment will be made until the amounts to be refunded or rebated, respectively, aggregate at least $40.

§ 115.68 Guarantee percentage.

SBA reimburses a PSB Surety in an amount not to exceed 70% of the Loss incurred and paid. Where the Contract amount, after the Execution of the bond, increases beyond the statutory limit of $2,000,000, SBA’s share of the Loss is limited to that percentage of the increased Contract amount which the statutory limit represents, multiplied by the guarantee percentage approved by SBA. For an example, see §115.31(d).

[61 FR 3271, Jan. 31, 1996, as amended at 66 FR 30804, June 8, 2001]

§ 115.69 Imminent Breach.

(a) No prior approval requirement. SBA will reimburse a PSB Surety for the guaranteed portion of payments the Surety makes to avoid or attempt to avoid an Imminent Breach of the terms of a Contract covered by an SBA guaranteed bond. The PSB Surety does not need SBA approval to make Imminent Breach payments.

(b) Amount of reimbursement. The aggregate of the payments by SBA under this section cannot exceed 10% of the
Contract amount, unless the Administrator finds that a greater payment (not to exceed the guaranteed portion of the bond penalty) is necessary and reasonable. In no event will SBA make any duplicate payment under any provision of these regulations in this part.

(c) Recordkeeping requirement. The PSB Surety must keep records of payments made to avoid Imminent Breach.

§115.70 Claims for reimbursement of Losses.

(a) How claims are submitted. A PSB Surety must submit claims for reimbursement on a form approved by SBA no later than 1 year from the date the Surety paid the amount. Loss is determined as of the date of receipt by SBA of the claim for reimbursement, or as of such later date as additional information requested by SBA is received. Subject to the offset provisions of part 140, SBA pays its share of Loss within 90 days of receipt of the requisite information. Claims for reimbursement and any additional information submitted are subject to review and audit by SBA.

(b) Surety responsibilities. The PSB Surety must take all necessary steps to mitigate Losses when legal action against a bond has been instituted, when the Obligee has declared a default, and when the Surety has established a claim reserve. The Surety may dispose of collateral at fair market value only. Unless SBA notifies the Surety otherwise, the Surety must take charge of all claims or suits arising from a defaulted bond, and compromise, settle or defend the suits. The Surety must handle and process all claims under the bond and all settlements and recoveries in the same manner as it does on non-guaranteed bonds.

(c) Reservation of SBA’s rights. The payment by SBA of a PSB Surety’s claim does not waive or invalidate any of the terms of the PSB Agreement, the regulations in this part 115, or any defense SBA may have against the Surety. Within 30 days of receipt of notification that a claim or any portion of a claim should not have been paid by SBA, the Surety must repay the specified amounts to SBA.

§115.71 Denial of liability.

In addition to the grounds set forth in §115.19, SBA may deny liability to a PSB Surety if:

(a) The PSB Surety’s guaranteed bond was in an amount which, together with all other guaranteed bonds, exceeded the allotment for the period during which the bond was approved, and no prior SBA approval had been obtained;

(b) The PSB Surety’s loss was incurred under a bond which was not listed on the bordereau for the period when it was approved; or

(c) The loss incurred by the PSB Surety is not attributable to the particular Contract for which an SBA guaranteed bond was approved.

PART 117—Nondiscrimination in Federally Assisted Programs of SBA—Effectuation of the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as Amended

Sec.

117.1 Purpose.
117.2 Application of this part.
117.3 Definitions.
117.4 Discrimination prohibited and exceptions.
117.5 Illustrative applications.
117.6 Remedial and affirmative action by recipients.
117.7 Assurances required.
117.8 Responsibilities of SBA recipients.
117.9 Compliance information.
117.10 Review procedures.
117.11 Complaint procedures.
117.12 Mediation.
117.13 Investigation and resolution of matters.
117.14 Intimidating or retaliatory acts prohibited.
117.15 Procedure for effecting compliance.
117.16 Hearings.
117.17 Decisions and notices.
117.18 Judicial review.
117.19 Effect on other regulations.
117.20 Supervision and coordination.

APPENDIX A TO PART 117


SOURCE: 50 FR 41648, Oct. 11, 1985, unless otherwise noted.
§ 117.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to effectuate the provisions of The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended (hereinafter referred to as the Act), to the end that no person in the United States shall, on the basis of age, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under programs receiving financial assistance or any financial activities of the Small Business Administration to which this Act applies. The Act also permits recipients of Federal funds to continue to use certain age distinctions and other factors other than age which meet the requirements of the Act and these regulations in the conduct of programs and the provision of services to the public.

§ 117.2 Application of this part.

(a) This part applies to all recipients of assistance under programs administered by the Small Business Administration and to programs of financial assistance by the Small Business Administration, whether or not listed in appendix A.

(b) For the purposes of this part, the prohibition against age discrimination applies to natural persons of all ages.

(c) This part does not apply to the employment practices of any recipients.

§ 117.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) The term act means the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended (Title III of Pub. L. 94-135).

(b) The term action means any act, activity, policy, rule, standard, or method of administration; or the use of any policy, rule, standard, or method of administration.

(c) The term age means how old a person is, or the number of years from the date of a person’s birth.

(d) The term age distinction means any action using age or an age-related term.

(e) The term age-related means a word or words which necessarily imply a particular age or range of ages (for example, children, adult, older persons, but not student).

(f) The term agency means a Federal department or agency that is empowered to extend financial assistance.

(g) The term applicant means one who applies for Federal financial assistance.

(h) The term Federal financial assistance includes: (1) Grants and loans of Federal funds; (2) the grant or donation of Federal property and interests in property; (3) the detail of Federal personnel; (4) the sale and lease of, and the permission to use (on other than a casual or transient basis), Federal property or any interest in such property without consideration, or at a nominal consideration, or at a consideration which is reduced for the purpose of assisting the recipient, or in recognition of the public interest to be served by such sale or lease to the recipient; and (5) any Federal agreement, arrangement, or other contract which has as one of its purposes the provision of assistance.

(i) The term normal operation means the operation of a business or activity without significant changes that would impair its ability to meet its objectives.

(j) The term recipient means one who receives any Federal financial assistance under any program administered by the Small Business Administration. (See Appendix A.) The term recipient also shall be deemed to include subrecipients of SBA financial assistance.

(k) The term SBA means the Small Business Administration.

(l) The term subrecipient means any business concern that receives Federal financial assistance from the primary recipient of such financial assistance. A subrecipient is generally regarded as a recipient of Federal financial assistance and has all the duties of a recipient in these regulations.

(m) The term statutory objective means the purposes of the legislation as stated in an act, statute or ordinance or can be shown in the legislative history of any Federal statute, State statute, or local statute or ordinance adopted by an elected, general purpose legislative body.
§ 117.4 Discrimination prohibited and exceptions.

(a) General. To the extent that this part applies, no person in the United States shall, on the basis of age, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any business or activity receiving Federal financial assistance.

(b) Specific discriminatory actions prohibited. To the extent that this part applies, a recipient business or other activity may not, directly or through contractual arrangements, on the ground of age:

(1) Deny an individual any services, financial aid or other benefit provided by the business or other activity, except where sanctioned by one of the exceptions stated in § 117.4 (d), (e) or (f) of this section.

(2) Provide any service, financial aid or other benefit, except as sanctioned by one of the exceptions stated below, in such a way as to deny or limit persons in their efforts to participate in federally-assisted programs;

(3) Treat an individual differently from others, except as sanctioned by an exception stated below, in determining whether the person satisfied any admission, enrollment, eligibility, membership, or other requirement or condition which individuals must meet in order to be provided any service, financial aid or other benefit provided by the business or activity.

(c) The specific forms of prohibited discrimination in paragraph (b) of this section does not limit the generality of the prohibition in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) Exception 1. A recipient is permitted to take an action otherwise prohibited by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, if the action reasonably takes into account age as a factor necessary to the normal operation or the achievement of any statutory objective of a business or activity. An action reasonably takes into account age as a factor necessary to the normal operation or the achievement of any statutory objective of a business or activity, if:

(1) Age is used as a measure or approximation of one or more other characteristics; and

(2) The other characteristic(s) must be measured or approximated in order for the normal operation of the business or activity to continue, or to achieve any statutory objective of the business or activity; and

(3) The other characteristic(s) can be reasonably measured or approximated by the use of age; and

(4) The other characteristic(s) are impractical to measure directly on an individual basis.

Note: All of the above factors must be met in order to exclude a business activity from the provisions of this part.

(e) Exception 2. A recipient is permitted to take an action otherwise prohibited by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section which is based on a factor other than age, even though that action may have a disproportionate effect on persons of different ages. An action may be based on a factor other than age if the factor bears a direct and substantial relationship to the normal operation of the business or activity or to the achievement of a statutory objective.

(f) Exception 3. A recipient is permitted to take an action otherwise prohibited by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section if an age distinction is contained in that part of a Federal, State or local statute or ordinance adopted by an elected general purpose legislative body which provides any benefits or assistance to, establishes criteria for participation in, or describes intended beneficiaries or target groups in age-related terms.

(g) The burden of proving that an age distinction or other action falls within the exceptions outlined in paragraphs (d), (e), and (f) of this section on the recipient of Federal financial assistance.

§ 117.5 Illustrative applications.

(a) Discrimination in providing financial assistance. Development companies and small business investment companies, which apply for or receive any financial assistance may not discriminate on the ground of age in providing financial assistance to small business concerns. Such discrimination prohibited by § 117.4 includes but is not limited to the failure or refusal, because of the age of the applicant, or the age of
§ 117.6 Remedial and affirmative action by recipients.

(a) Where a recipient is found to have discriminated on the basis of age, the recipient shall take any remedial action which the Agency may require to overcome the effects of the discrimination. If another recipient exercises control over the recipient that has discriminated, both recipients may be required to take remedial action.

(b) Even in the absence of a finding of discrimination, a recipient may take affirmative action to overcome the effects of conditions that resulted in limited participation in the recipient’s business or program on the basis of age.

(c) If a recipient operating a program which serves the elderly or children in addition to persons of other ages, provides special benefits to the elderly or to children, the provision of those benefits shall be presumed to be voluntary affirmative action provided that it does not have the effect of excluding otherwise eligible persons from participation in the program.

§ 117.7 Assurances required.

An application for financial assistance under any program administered by the Small Business Administration shall, as a condition of its approval and the extension of such assistance, contain or be accompanied by an assurance that the recipient will comply with this part. SBA shall specify the form of the foregoing assurance for each program, and the extent to which like assurances will be required of contractors and subcontractors, transferees, successors, and other participants in the program.

§ 117.8 Responsibilities of SBA recipients.

(a) Each SBA recipient has the primary responsibility to ensure that its programs and activities are in compliance with the Act and these regulations, and shall take steps to eliminate violations of the Act. A recipient also has responsibility to maintain records, provide information, and to afford SBA access to its records to the extent SBA finds necessary to determine whether the recipient is in compliance with the Act and these regulations. (OMB No. 3245-0076)

(b) Where a recipient passes on Federal financial assistance from SBA to subrecipients, the recipient shall provide the subrecipients written notice of their obligations under the Act and these regulations.

(c) Each recipient shall make necessary information about the Act and these regulations available to its program beneficiaries in order to inform
them about the protections against discrimination provided by the Act and these regulations.

(d) Whenever an assessment indicates a violation of the Act and the SBA regulations, the recipient shall take corrective action.

§ 117.9 Compliance information.

(a) Cooperation and assistance. SBA shall, to the fullest extent practicable, seek the cooperation of recipients in obtaining compliance with this part and shall provide assistance and guidance to recipients to help them comply voluntarily with this part.

(b) Record Keeping. Each recipient shall keep records in such form, and containing such information which SBA determines may be necessary to ascertain whether the recipient has complied or is complying with this part (OMB No. 3245-0076). In the case of a small business concern which receives financial assistance from a development company or from a small business investment company, the small business concern shall also keep such records and information as may be necessary to enable SBA to determine if the small business concern is complying with this part.

(c) Each recipient shall provide to SBA, upon request, information and reports which SBA determines are necessary to ascertain whether the recipient is complying with the Act and these regulations.

(d) Access to sources of information. Each recipient shall permit reasonable access by SBA during normal business hours to such of its books, records, accounts, and other sources of information, and its facilities as may be pertinent to ascertain compliance with this part. Where any information required of an applicant or recipient is in the exclusive possession of any other agency, institution or person and that agency, institution or person shall fail or refuse to furnish the information, the recipient shall so certify and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the required information. The recipient will be held responsible for submitting the information. Failure to submit information or permit access to sources of information required by SBA will subject the recipient to enforcement procedure as provided in §117.15 of this part.

(Information collection requirements in paragraph (c) were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 3245-0076)

§ 117.10 Review procedures.

(a) SBA shall from time to time review the practices of recipients to determine whether they are complying with this part. As part of a compliance review or complaint investigation, SBA may require a recipient employing 15 or more full-time employees to complete a written self-evaluation, in a manner specified by the Agency, of any age distinction imposed in its program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance.

(b) If a compliance review or pre-award review indicates a violation of the Act or these regulations, SBA will attempt to achieve voluntary compliance with the Act. If voluntary compliance with the recipient cannot be achieved, such recipient will be subject to the enforcement procedure contained in §117.15 of these regulations. A refusal to permit an on-site compliance review during normal working hours may constitute noncompliance with this part.

§ 117.11 Complaint procedures.

(a) Any person who believes that he/she or any specific class of individuals is being or has been subjected to discrimination by SBA, a recipient, or an applicant for assistance, prohibited by this part may, by himself/herself or by a representative, file with SBA a written complaint. The complainant has the right to have a representative at all stages of the complaint procedure.

(b) A complaint must be filed not later than 180 days from the date of the alleged discrimination, unless the time filing is extended by SBA. The Administrator, the Director, Office of Equal Employment Opportunity and Compliance, and the Chief, Office of Civil Rights Compliance, are the only officials who may waive the 180-day time limit for filing complaints under this part. SBA will consider the date a complaint is filed to be the date upon which the complaint is sufficient to be processed.
§ 117.12 Mediation.

(a) SBA shall, after ensuring that the complaint falls within the coverage of this Act and all information necessary for further processing is contained therein, unless the age distinction complained of is clearly within an exception, promptly refer the complaint to the Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service (FMCS).

(b) SBA shall, to the extent possible, require the participation of the recipient and the complainant in the mediation process in an effort to reach a mutually satisfactory settlement of the complaint or make an informed judgment that an agreement is not possible. Both parties need not meet with the mediator at the same time.

§ 117.13 Investigation and resolution of matters.

(a) SBA will make a prompt investigation whenever a compliance review indicates a possible failure to comply with this part by the recipient and additional information is needed by SBA to assure compliance with this part, or when an unresolved complaint has been returned by the FMCS, or when it appears that the complainant or the recipient is failing to comply with a mediation agreement. The investigation shall include a review of the pertinent practices and policies of the recipient, the circumstances under which the possible noncompliance with this part occurred, and other factors relevant to a determination as to whether the recipient is complying, is not complying, or has failed to comply with this part.
§ 117.15

(b) Resolution of matters. If an investigation indicates a failure to comply with this part, SBA will so inform the complainant, if applicable, and the recipient that the matter will be resolved by informal means that are mutually agreeable to the parties, whenever possible.

(1) If, during the course of an investigation, the matter is resolved by informal means, SBA will put any agreement in writing and have it signed by the parties and an authorized official of SBA.

(2) If investigation indicates a violation of the Act or these regulations, SBA will attempt to achieve voluntary compliance. If SBA cannot achieve voluntary compliance, it will begin enforcement as described in §117.15.

(3) If an investigation does not warrant action, SBA will so inform the complainant, if applicable, and the recipient in writing.

§ 117.14 Intimidating or retaliatory acts prohibited.

No complainant, recipient or other person shall intimidate, threaten, coerce, or discriminate against any individual for the purpose of interfering with any right or privilege secured by this part or because an individual or group has made a complaint, testified, assisted, or participated in any manner in an investigation, review, enforcement process, or hearing under this part. The identity of complainants shall be kept confidential except to the extent necessary to carry out the purposes of this part, including the conduct of any investigation, hearing, mediation, or judicial proceeding.

§ 117.15 Procedure for effecting compliance.

(a) General. (1) If there appears to be a failure or threatened failure to comply with this part by an applicant or recipient and if the noncompliance or threatened noncompliance cannot be resolved by informal means, compliance with this part may be effected by suspending, terminating, or refusing any financial assistance approved but not yet disbursed to an applicant. In the case of loans partially or fully disbursed, compliance with this part may be effected by calling, canceling, terminating, accelerating repayment, or suspending in whole or in part the Federal financial assistance provided. The determination of the recipient’s violation may be made only after a recipient has had an opportunity for a hearing on the record before an administrative law judge.

(2) In addition, compliance may be effected by any other means authorized by law. Such other means may include, but are not limited to:

(i) Action by SBA to accelerate the maturity of the recipient’s obligation;

(ii) Referral to the Department of Justice with a recommendation that appropriate proceedings be brought to enforce any rights of the United States under any law of the United States or obligations of the recipient created by the Act or this part; and

(iii) Use of any requirement or referral to any Federal, State or local government agency that will have the effect of correcting a violation of the Act or these regulations.

(3) If there appears to be a failure or threatened failure to comply with this part by an SBA program office or official, the Chief, Office of Civil Rights Compliance, through the Director, Office of Equal Employment Opportunity and Compliance, will recommend appropriate corrective action to the Administrator. Any resulting adverse action against an SBA employee shall follow Office of Personnel Management and SBA procedures for such action.

(b) Noncompliance with §§117.7 and 117.9. If an applicant fails or refuses to furnish an assurance required under §117.7, or fails to provide information or allow SBA access to information under §117.9 or otherwise fails or refuses to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to those sections, Federal financial assistance may be deferred for a period not to exceed 60 days after the applicant has received a notice for an opportunity for hearing under §§117.16, or unless a hearing has begun within that time, or the time for beginning the hearing has been extended by mutual consent of the recipient and the Agency, for purposes of determining what constitutes mutual consent, the Agency shall be deemed to have consented to any extension requested by
§ 117.16 Hearings.

(a) Opportunity for hearing. Whenever an opportunity for a hearing is required by §117.15, reasonable notice shall be given by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, to the affected applicant or recipient. This notice shall advise the applicant or recipient of the action proposed to be taken, the specific provision under which the proposed action against it is to be taken, and the matters of fact or law asserted as the basis for this action, and either:

(1) Fix a date not less than 20 days after the date of such notice within which the applicant or recipient may request the Office of Hearings and Appeals (OHA) that the matter be scheduled for hearing; or

(2) Advise the applicant or recipient that the matter in question has been set down for hearing at a stated place and time. The time and place so fixed shall be reasonable and shall be subject to change for cause. The complainant shall be advised of the time and place of the hearing. An applicant or recipient may waive a hearing and submit written information and argument for the record. The failure of an applicant or recipient to appear at a hearing for which a date has been set shall be deemed to be a waiver of the right to a hearing and as consent to the making of a decision on the basis of such information as is available.

(b) Time and place of hearing. Hearings shall be held at OHA in Washington, DC, at a time fixed by OHA unless that office determines that the convenience of the complainant, applicant, recipient or SBA requires that another place be selected. Hearings shall be held before an administrative law judge designated in accordance with the Administrative Procedure Act.

(c) Right to counsel. In all proceedings under this section, the applicant or recipient and SBA shall have the right to be represented by counsel.

(1) SBA has advised the applicant or recipient of the failure to comply and has determined that compliance cannot be secured by voluntary means;

(2) There has been an express finding on the record, after an opportunity for hearing, of a failure by the applicant or recipient to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to this part;

(3) The action has been approved by the Administrator of SBA pursuant to §117.17; and

(4) The expiration of 30 days after SBA has filed with the committee of the House and the committee of the Senate having legislative jurisdiction over the form of financial assistance involved, a full written report of the circumstances and the grounds for such action.

(d) Other means authorized by law. No action to effect compliance by any other means authorized by law shall be taken until:

(1) SBA has determined that compliance cannot be secured by voluntary means;

(2) The action has been approved by the Administrator or designee;

(3) The expiration of 30 days after SBA has filed with the committee of the House and the committee of the Senate having legislative jurisdiction over the form of financial assistance involved, a full written report of the circumstances and the grounds for such action;

(4) The applicant or recipient has been notified of the failure to comply, and of the action to be taken to effect compliance; and

(5) The expiration of at least 10 days from the mailing of such notice to the applicant or recipient or other person. During this period of at least 10 days from the mailing of such notice to the applicant or recipient or other person, additional efforts shall be made to persuade the applicant or recipient to comply with this part and to take such corrective action as may be appropriate.
(d) Procedures, evidence, and record. (1) The hearings, decisions, and any administrative review shall be conducted in conformity with the Administrative Procedure Act and 13 CFR part 134. Such rules of procedure should be consistent with this section, relate to the conduct of the hearing, provide for giving of notices to those referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, taking of testimony, exhibits, arguments, and briefs, request for findings and other related matters. SBA, the complainant, if any, and the applicant or recipient shall be entitled to introduce all relevant evidence on the issues as stated in the notice for hearing, or as determined by the administrative law judge conducting the hearing at the outset of or during the hearing.

(2) Technical rules of evidence may be waived by the administrative law judge conducting a hearing pursuant to this part, but rules or principles designed to assure production of the most credible evidence available, and subject testimony to test by cross-examination shall be applied where reasonably necessary. The administrative law judge may exclude irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious evidence. All documents and other evidence offered or taken for the record shall be open to examination by the parties and opportunity shall be given to refute facts and arguments advanced on either side of the issues. A transcript shall be made of the oral evidence except to the extent the substance thereof is stipulated for the record. All decisions shall be based upon the hearing record and written findings shall be made.

(e) Consolidated or joint hearings. In cases in which the same or related facts are asserted to constitute noncompliance or threatened noncompliance with this part, with respect to two or more forms of financial assistance to which this part applies, or noncompliance with this part and the regulations of one or more other Federal agencies issued under the Act, the Administrator may, by agreement with such other agencies, provide for the conduct of consolidated or joint hearings, and for the application to such hearings of rules and procedures not inconsistent with this part. Final decisions in such cases, insofar as this part is concerned, shall be made in accordance with §117.17.

§ 117.17 Decisions and notices.

(a) Decision by an administrative law judge. If the hearing is held by an administrative law judge, such administrative law judge shall either make an initial decision, if so authorized, or certify the entire record, including recommended findings and proposed decision, to the Administrator for a final decision and a copy of such initial decision or certification shall be mailed to the applicant or recipient and the complainant. Where the initial decision is made by the administrative law judge, the applicant or recipient may, within 30 days of the mailing of such notice of initial decision, file with the Administrator exceptions to the initial decision, with the reasons therefor. In the absence of exceptions, the Administrator may, by motion within 45 days after the initial decision, serve on the applicant or recipient a notice that he/she will review the decision. Upon the filing of such exceptions or of such notice of review, the Administrator shall review the initial decision and issue his/her decision thereon, including the reasons therefor. The decision of the Administrator shall be made promptly to the applicant or recipient, and the complainant, if any. In the absence of either exceptions or a notice of review, the initial decision shall constitute the final decision of the Administrator.

(b) Decisions on record or review by the Administrator. Whenever a record is certified to the Administrator for decision or the Administrator reviews the decision of an administrative law judge pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, or whenever the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services or the Department of Justice conducts the hearing, the applicant or recipient shall be given reasonable opportunity to file briefs or other written statements of its contentions and a copy of the final decision of the Administrator shall be given in writing to the applicant or recipient and the complainant, if any.

(c) Decisions on record where a hearing is waived. Whenever a hearing is waived pursuant to §117.16, a decision shall be
made by the Administrator on the record and a copy of such decision shall be given in writing to the applicant or recipient, and to the complainant, if any.

(d) **Rulings required.** Each decision of an administrative law judge or the Administrator shall set forth the ruling on each finding, conclusion, or exception presented, and shall identify the requirement or requirements imposed by or pursuant to this part with which it is found that the applicant or recipient has failed to comply.

(e) **Decision by the Administrator.** The Administrator shall make any final decision which provides for the suspension or termination of, or the refusal to grant or continue Federal financial assistance, acceleration repayment or the imposition of any other sanction available under the regulations or taken under other means authorized by law.

(f) **Content of orders.** The final decision may provide for accelerating of repayment, suspension or termination of, or refusal to approve, disburse, or continue Federal financial assistance, in whole or in part, under the programs involved, and may contain such terms, conditions, and other provisions as are consistent with and will effectuate the purposes of the Act and this part, including provisions designed to assure that no Federal financial assistance will, thereafter, be extended under such program to the applicant or recipient determined by such decision to have failed to comply with this part, unless and until it corrects its noncompliance and satisfies the Administrator that it will fully comply with this part.

(g) **Post termination proceedings.** (1) An applicant or recipient adversely affected by an order issued under paragraph (e) of this section shall be restored to full eligibility to receive Federal financial assistance only if it satisfies the terms and conditions of that order for such eligibility and it brings itself into compliance with this regulation and provides reasonable assurance that it will fully comply with this regulation.

(2) Any applicant or recipient adversely affected by an order entered pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section may at any time request the Administrator to restore fully its eligibility to receive Federal financial assistance. Any such request shall be supported by information showing that the applicant or recipient has met the requirements of paragraph (g)(1) of this section. If the Administrator determines that those requirements have been satisfied, he/she shall restore such eligibility.

(3) If the Administrator denies any such request, the applicant or recipient may submit a request for a hearing in writing, specifying why it believes the denial to have been in error. It shall thereupon be given an expeditious hearing, with a decision on the record, in accordance with rules and procedures issued by the Administrator. The applicant or recipient shall be restored to such eligibility if it proves at such hearing that it satisfied the requirements of paragraph (g)(1) of this section. While proceedings under this paragraph are pending, the sanctions imposed by the order issued under paragraph (f) of this section shall remain in effect.

§ 117.18 Judicial review.

(a) The complainant may file a civil action following the exhaustion of administrative remedies under the Act. Administrative remedies are exhausted if:

(1) 180 days have elapsed since the complainant filed the complaint and the Agency has made no finding with regard to the complaint; or

(2) The Agency has issued a finding in favor of the recipient.

(b) If the Agency fails to make a finding within 180 days or issues a finding in favor of the recipient, the Agency shall:

(1) Advise the complainant of this fact;

(2) Advise the complainant of the right to file a civil action for injunctive relief; and

(3) Inform the complainant:

(i) That the complainant may bring a civil action only in a United States district court for the district in which the recipient is found or transacts business;

(ii) That a complainant prevailing in a civil action has the right to be
Small Business Administration

awarded the costs of the action, including reasonable attorney’s fees, but that
the complainant must demand these costs in the complaint;

(iii) That before commencing the action the complainant shall give 30 days
notice by registered mail to the Secretary of the Department of Health and
Human Services, the Attorney General of the United States and the recipient;

(iv) That the notice must state: The alleged violation of the Act; the relief
requested; the court in which the complainant is bringing the action; and
whether or not attorney’s fees are demanded in the event the complainant
prevails; and

(v) That the complainant may not bring an action if the same alleged vio-
lalion of the Act by the same recipient is the subject of a pending action in
any court of the United States.

§ 117.19 Effect on other regulations.

(a) All regulations, orders or like di-
rections heretofore issued by SBA
which impose requirements designed to
prohibit any discrimination against in-
dividuals on the grounds of age and
which authorize the suspension or ter-
mination of or refusal to grant or to
continue financial assistance to any
applicant for or recipient of such as-
sistance for failure to comply with
such requirements, are hereby super-
seded to the extent that such discrimi-
nation is prohibited by this part, ex-
cept that nothing in this part shall be
deemed to relieve any person of any ob-
ligation assumed or imposed under any
such superseded regulation, order, in-
struction, or like direction prior to the
effective date of this part. Nothing in
this part, however, shall be deemed to
supersede any of the following (includ-
ing future amendments thereof):

(1) Executive Order 11246, as amened,
and regulations issued thereunder;

(2) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of
1964, as amended;

(3) The Equal Credit Opportunity
Act, as amended and Regulation B of
the Board of Governors of the Federal
Reserve System, (12 CFR part 202);

(4) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation
Act of 1973, as amended;

(5) Title VIII of the Civil Rights Act
of 1968;

(6) Title IX of the Educational
Amendments of 1972;

(7) Section 633(b) of the Small Busi-
ness Act;

(8) Part 113 of title 13 of the Code of
Federal Regulations (13 CFR part 113);

or

(9) Any other statute, order, regula-
tion or instruction, insofar as such order, regulations, or instruction pro-
hibits discrimination on the grounds of
age in any program or situation to
which this part is inapplicable on any
other ground.

§ 117.20 Supervision and coordination.

The Administrator may from time to
time assign to officials of SBA or to of-
ficials of other agencies of the Govern-
ment with the consent of such agen-
cies, responsibilities in connection
with the effectuation of the purpose of
the Act and this part (other than re-
sponsibility for final decision as pro-
vided in § 117.17), including the achieve-
ment of effective coordination and
maximum uniformity within SBA and
within the Executive Branch of the
Government in the application of the
Act and this part to similar programs
and in similar situations. Respon-
sibility for administering and enforcing
this part is assigned by the Adminis-
trator, to the Office of Civil Rights
Compliance, Office of Equal Employ-
ment Opportunity and Compliance of
the Small Business Administration.

APPENDIX A TO PART 117

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of program</th>
<th>Authority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Business Loans .....................</td>
<td>Small Business Act, section 7(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor State Development</td>
<td>Small Business Investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>companies (501) and their small</td>
<td>Act, Title V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business concerns.</td>
<td>Small Business Investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor State Development</td>
<td>Act, Title V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>companies (502) and their small</td>
<td>Small Business Investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business concerns.</td>
<td>Act, Title V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor certified development</td>
<td>Small Business Investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>companies (503) and their small</td>
<td>Act, Title III.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business concerns.</td>
<td>Small Business Investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debtor small business invest-</td>
<td>Act, Title IV, Part A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ment companies and their small</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business concerns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollution Control .................</td>
<td>Small Business Investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Act, Title IV, Part A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disaster Loans:</td>
<td>Small Business Act, section 7(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical, including riot ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, section 7(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Injury (EIDL) ..........</td>
<td>Small Business Act, section 7(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Action Loan Program.</td>
<td>Small Business Act, section 7(b)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VerDate 11<MAY>2000 01:40 Jan 18, 2002 Jkt 197039 PO 00000 Frm 00199 Fmt 8010 Sfmt 8002 Y:\SGML\197039T.XXX pfrm01 PsN: 197039T 199
PART 119—PROGRAM FOR INVESTMENT IN MICROENTREPRENEURS ("PRIME" OR "THE ACT")

§ 119.1 What is the Program for Investment in Microentrepreneurs ("PRIME" or "the Act")?

PRIME authorizes SBA to make grants to "qualified organizations" to fund training and technical assistance for disadvantaged entrepreneurs, build these organizations' own capacity to give training and technical assistance, fund research and development of "best practices" in microenterprise development and technical assistance programs for disadvantaged microentrepreneurs, and to fund other undertakings the Administrator or designee deems consistent with these purposes.

§ 119.2 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part, the following definitions apply:

Capacity Building Grant means a grant made under the Act identified under § 119.4(b).

Capacity building services means services provided to an organization or program that is currently, or is developing as, a microenterprise development organization or program, for the purpose of enhancing its ability to provide training and technical assistance to disadvantaged microentrepreneurs.

Collaborative means two or more non-profit entities that agree to act jointly as a qualified organization under this part.

Developer means a person interested in starting or acquiring a microenterprise.

Disadvantaged entrepreneur, or economically disadvantaged microentrepreneur, means the owner, majority owner, or developer, of a microenterprise who is also—

(1) A low-income person;
(2) A very low-income person; or
(3) An entrepreneur who lacks adequate access to capital or other resources essential for business success, or is economically disadvantaged, as defined in this part.

Discretionary Grant means a grant made under the Act identified under § 119.4(d).

Economically disadvantaged entrepreneur, or economically disadvantaged microentrepreneur, means the owner, majority owner, or developer, of a microenterprise who is also—

(1) A low-income person;
(2) A very low-income person; or
(3) An entrepreneur who lacks adequate access to capital or other resources essential for business success, or is economically disadvantaged, as defined in this part.


SOURCE: 66 FR 29013, May 29, 2001, unless otherwise noted.
Small Business Administration § 119.2

Microentrepreneur, means an owner, majority owner, or developer of a microenterprise whose ability to compete in the free enterprise system has been impaired due to diminished capital and credit opportunities as compared to others in the industry such that his or her ownership of a small business would help to qualify the small business for assistance under section 7(j) or section 8(a) programs of the Small Business Act.

Grantee means a recipient of a grant under the Act.

Group has the same meaning as “collaborative” as defined in this section.

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, pueblo, nation, or other organized group or community, including any Alaska Native village or regional or village corporation, as defined in or established pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, which is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services the United States provides to Indians because of their status as Indians.

Indian tribe jurisdiction means Indian country, as defined in 18 U.S.C. 1151, and any other lands, title to which is either held by the United States in trust for the benefit of any Indian tribe or individual or held by any tribe or individual subject to a restriction by the United States against alienation, and any land held by Alaska Native groups, regional corporations, and village corporations, as defined in or established under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, public domain Indian allotments, and former Indian reservations in the State of Oklahoma.

Intermediary means a private, nonprofit entity serving or seeking to serve microenterprise development organizations or programs identified under §119.3.

Large microenterprise development organization or program means a microenterprise development organization or program with 10 or more full time employees or equivalents, including its executive director, as of the date it files its application with SBA for a PRIME grant.

Local community means an identifiable area and population constituting a political subdivision of a state.

Low-income person means a person having an income, adjusted for family size, of not more than—

1. For metropolitan areas, 80 percent of the median income; and
2. For non-metropolitan areas, the greater of—
   1. 80 percent of the area median income; or
   2. 80 percent of the statewide non-metropolitan area median income.

Microenterprise means a sole proprietorship, partnership or corporation that—

1. Has fewer than 5 employees, including the owner; and
2. Generally lacks access to conventional loans, equity, or other banking services.

Microenterprise development organization or program means a nonprofit entity, or a program administered by such an entity, including community development corporations or other nonprofit development organizations and social service organizations, that provides services to disadvantaged microentrepreneurs.

Qualified organization means an organization eligible for a PRIME grant identified under §119.3.

Research and Development Grant means a grant made under the Act identified under §119.4(c).

Severe constraints on available sources of matching funds means the documented inability of a qualified organization applying for a PRIME grant to raise matching funds or in-kind resources from non-Federal sources during the 2 years immediately prior to the date of its application because of a lack of or increased scarcity of monetary or in-kind resources from potential non-Federal sources.

Small microenterprise development organization or program means a microenterprise development organization or program with less than 10 full time employees or equivalents, including its executive director, as of the date it files its application with SBA for a PRIME grant.

Technical Assistance Grant means a grant made under the Act identified under §119.4(a).

Training and technical assistance means services and support provided to disadvantaged entrepreneurs, such as,
§ 119.3 What types of organizations are eligible for PRIME grants?

An organization eligible for a PRIME grant ("qualified organization") is one that is:

(a) A microenterprise development organization or program as defined in §119.2(q) (or a group or collaborative thereof) that has a demonstrated record of delivering microenterprise services to disadvantaged microentrepreneurs;

(b) An intermediary, as defined in §119.2(l);

(c) A microenterprise development organization or program as defined in §119.2(q) that is accountable to a local community, working with a State or local government or Indian tribe; or

(d) An Indian tribe acting on its own, if the Indian tribe can certify that no private organization or program referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of this section exists within its jurisdiction.

§ 119.4 What services or activities must PRIME grant funds be used for?

A recipient of a PRIME grant ("grantee") must use PRIME grants to—

(a) Provide training and technical assistance to disadvantaged microentrepreneurs ("Technical Assistance Grant");

(b) Provide training and capacity building services to microenterprise development organizations and programs to assist them to develop microenterprise training and services ("Capacity Building Grant");

(c) Aid in researching and developing the best practices in the field of microenterprise development and technical assistance programs for disadvantaged microentrepreneurs ("Research and Development Grant"); or

(d) Conduct such other activities as the Administrator or designee determines to be consistent with the purposes of the Act ("Discretionary Grant").

§ 119.5 How are PRIME grant awards allocated?

(a) At least 50 percent of the number of grant awards made under this part will be awarded to qualified organizations that benefit very low-income persons, including those residing on Indian reservations. In general, SBA will make grant award decisions to serve diverse populations by including as recipients both large and small microenterprise development organizations, and organizations serving urban, rural, and Indian tribal communities.

(b) SBA will allocate the funding available for awards as follows:

1. A minimum of 75 percent for Technical Assistance Grants;

2. A minimum of 15 percent for Capacity Building Grants; and

3. The remaining 10 percent or less may be allocated by SBA, in its sole discretion to be used for:

   (i) Research and Development Grants; or

   (ii) Discretionary Grants.

§ 119.6 What are the minimum and maximum amounts for an award?

(a) The minimum grant award for Technical Assistance and Capacity Building Grants will be $50,000 during the first year of the award, subject to the availability of funds.

(b) There is no minimum grant award for Research and Development or Discretionary Grants.

(c) The maximum amount that an individual grant recipient may receive in any fiscal year from a single award or multiple awards, under any of the purposes of the program, may not exceed $250,000 or 10 percent of the total grant funds available for award in that fiscal year, whichever is less.
§ 119.7 How long and in what amounts will grant funding be available to a single grantee?

(a) Generally, the funding period for a PRIME grant will be one year. Subject to availability of funds and continuing authorization, funding may be available on an annual basis allowing for the initial grant plus up to four option years, for a project period of up to five years. Decisions regarding option year awards and the funding levels of these awards will depend upon availability of funding and the grantee's performance as measured against project objectives and milestones. A grantee that enters into a cooperative agreement must submit a separate application to have the support continued for each subsequent year. In all cases, continuation awards require a determination by SBA that continued funding is in the best interest of the Federal Government. Neither the approval of any application nor the entering into of any cooperative agreement commits or obligates the Federal Government in any way to make any additional, supplemental, continuation or other award with respect to any grantee.

(b) For Technical Assistance and Capacity Building Grants, after a grantee receives an initial grant, funding for any option year(s) must be no more than 67 percent of the initial grant amount.

(c) For Research and Development and Discretionary Grants, after a grantee receives an initial grant, funding for any option year(s) will be approved at the discretion of the SBA.

(d) In the final year of a project, grantees may apply to extend the expiration date of a grant if additional time beyond the established expiration date is required to assure adequate completion of the original scope of work within the funds already made available. For this purpose, the grantee may make an extension request for a one-time, no-cost extension, not to exceed 12 months, prior to the established expiration date. Written notification of such an extension, with the supporting reasons, must be received by the SBA Grant Officer at least 60 days prior to the expiration of the award. SBA reserves the right to disapprove the extension if the requirements set forth in OMB Circular A–110, paragraph .25(e)(2) are not met or if the extension is not in the best interests of SBA.

§ 119.8 Are there matching requirements for grantees?

Applicants and grantees must match SBA funding as follows:

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, applicants and grantees must match Federal assistance with funds from sources other than the Federal Government in an amount not less than 50 percent of the grant amount awarded each year. Sources such as fees, grants, gifts, income from loan sources, and in-kind resources of a grant recipient from non-Federal public or private sources may be used to comply with the matching funds requirement;

(b) Grantees receiving funds in option years as described in §119.7(b) through (c) are subject to the matching requirements of this section.

(c) Applicants or grantees with severe constraints on available sources of matching funds may request that the Administrator or designee reduce or eliminate the matching requirements. Any reductions or eliminations must not exceed 10 percent of the aggregate of all PRIME grant funds made available by SBA in any fiscal year. By requesting a waiver, the applicant is implying that, but for the waiver, the proposed programming will not be possible at the levels requested.

(d) An applicant may request a waiver of the matching fund requirement by submitting a written request with its application for funding. The request must justify, and evidence, the need for a waiver. As evidence, the request must include, but is not limited to:

1. The cause and extent of the constraints on the historical and projected ability to raise matching funds as demonstrated by financial statements and letters of rejection from previous funders and potential new funding sources;

2. Evidence of efforts to raise match specific to the subject application, including negative responses, and

3. Based on those efforts, a list of any matching funds expected for the PRIME grant.
§ 119.9 How will a qualified organization apply for PRIME grant awards?

(a) SBA will issue Program Announcements specifying the terms, conditions, and evaluation criteria for each potential set of awards. Program Announcements will summarize the purpose of the available funds; will advise potential applicants regarding how to obtain an application packet; and will provide summary information regarding deadlines and other requirements. Program Announcements may specify any limitations, special rules, procedures, and restrictions for available funding.

(b) Applicants may submit applications in response to the Program Announcements. Each applicant shall submit an application for a grant in accordance with this part and the applicable Program Announcement.

(c) SBA reserves the right to consider at the same time multiple applications from a single applicant when appropriate.

§ 119.10 Will SBA give preferential consideration to other SBA program participants?

In making grants under this part, SBA will not give preferential consideration to an applicant that is a participant in programs established under section 7(m) of the Small Business Act.

§ 119.11 What information will be requested in an application under the PRIME program?

Each application must contain the information and documentation specified in the applicable Program Announcement including, but not limited to, the following items:

(a) For applications seeking Technical Assistance Grants:

(1) Identifying information and core documentation for the applicant including such items as the applicant’s articles of incorporation, by-laws, proof of IRS tax-exempt status, financial statements, and reference contacts.

(2) A description of past and present activities and technical qualifications of the applicant, including workshops, programs and other technical assistance services, with specific descriptions of the extent to which such services have reached low and very low-income individuals, and the success rates of clients.

(3) A list of applicant’s community partnerships and collaborations with state and local entities, and a description of how such partnerships and collaborations are serving microentrepreneurs.

(4) A description of the proposed activity for which the applicant will use PRIME grant funds, including training programming plans; a plan for outreach and delivery; applicant’s capacity to provide thorough and detailed reports; and a description of the applicant’s current data collection and management system, such as computer hardware, software and internet capabilities.

(5) In the event the applicant is a collaborative, a plan for maintaining internal controls, accountability, and program quality control among the participants of the collaborative.

(6) Resumes of the personnel that will be administering and managing the proposed activities under the PRIME grant, showing knowledge in such areas as business development, business structures, financial management, and business training and counseling.

(7) A list of grants received, and/or contracts entered into, that are similar in scope to the subject grant, including name of Federal or other agency providing funding, grant or contract number, and a summary of services provided.

(b) For applicants seeking Capacity Building Grants:

(1) See paragraphs (a)(1), (5), (6) and (7) of this section.
§ 119.12 What criteria will SBA use to evaluate applications for funding under the PRIME program?

During the first year for which funding is available for the PRIME program, SBA will give special consideration to organizations located in and serving areas of, or with a history of successful outreach to, low-income and very low-income persons, to enable the PRIME program to assist those with the greatest need first. SBA will evaluate applications for funding in accordance with the specific goals of the Act, and as more fully described in the Program Announcements. Evaluation criteria include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) Applications for Technical Assistance Grants:

1. Applicants will compete based on expertise and ability to fulfill the purposes of the Act.

2. SBA will evaluate organizational structure, financial stability, financial management systems, personnel capacity, and electronic communication capabilities (or potential for same). SBA will also evaluate data collection capabilities, reporting capacities, and ability to account for performance and outcome.

3. SBA will evaluate the applicant’s history of providing technical assistance to low-income and very low-income microentrepreneurs. This factor includes patterns of program growth, client success, outcomes of training, success in establishing new businesses, and success in arranging micro-level financing when the client indicates financing as a goal.

(b) Applications for Capacity Building Grants:

1. SBA will evaluate the criteria set forth in paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

2. SBA will evaluate the applicant’s ability to use community partnerships and collaborations with state and local entities to better serve low-income and very low-income microentrepreneurs.

(c) Applications for Discretionary Grants:

1. SBA will evaluate the applicant’s history of providing technical assistance to low-income and very low-income microentrepreneurs. This factor includes patterns of program growth, client success, outcomes of training, success in establishing new businesses, and success in arranging micro-level financing when the client indicates financing as a goal.

2. SBA will evaluate the applicant’s ability to use community partnerships and collaborations with state and local entities to better serve low-income and very low-income microentrepreneurs.

3. SBA will evaluate expected impact on client MDOs; expected impact
§ 119.13 How will an applicant make a subgrant?

(a) An applicant that wants to make subgrants using PRIME grant funds must receive written approval from SBA prior to making subgrants. The applicant must identify the subgrantee(s) and describe in detail what the subgrant(s) will do to help the grantee implement its proposal. An applicant must submit information to SBA demonstrating that, through the subgrant(s), the grantee’s program will:

(1) Provide expanded services to the community,

(2) Provide a method by which one or more previously unserved communities will gain access to the program, or

(3) Provide other specific benefits to the clients, such as specialized training, expanded schedules of operation, or other benefits.

(b) If an applicant has identified potential subgrant(s) at the time it submits an application for a PRIME grant, the applicant must include the information requested in paragraph (a) of this section in the application. Otherwise, the applicant or grantee may submit the requested information at such time that approvals for subgrantee(s) are requested.

(c) A grantee may not use more than 7.5 percent of the assistance received under its PRIME grant for administrative expenses in connection with the making of subgrants.

§ 119.14 Are there limitations regarding the use of program income?

Program income, as defined in OMB Circular A–110, may only be used to further PRIME program objectives. As such, fees collected from clients, and other program income as defined, may be used to help fund the matching requirement. All program income, as defined, shall be reported on financial reports submitted to SBA and added to funds committed to the project by SBA and the recipient organization. However, any interest earned in excess of the maximum allowable amount as specified in the OMB circular incorporated into the grant must be returned to the Federal Government by the grantee.

§ 119.15 If a grantee is unable to spend the entire amount allotted for a single fiscal year, can the funds be carried over to the next year?

(a) The grantee may request approval to use unexpended funds in the next budget period. This is permissible if funds are to be used for a non-severable, non-recurring project or activity within the scope of the PRIME program. Non-severable means a project in its entirety that cannot be subdivided. The request for using unexpended funds in the next budget period must include the following:

(1) SF 424, budget pages, and justification;

(2) Explanation of why the funds were not expended during the period in which they were awarded; and

(3) Evidence of match. The match requirement for funds carried over to the next budget period can be met by using any excess of matching funds from the current budget period, new matching funds, or a combination of both.

(b) The request must be made no later than 60 days before the end of the
Small Business Administration

budget/project period or the de-obligation process will begin. Approved requests will require the issuance of a revised Notice of Award. Expenditures for funds carried over to the next budget period must be tracked separately.

§ 119.16 What are the reporting, record keeping, and related requirements for grantees?

A grantee must keep records and meet the other requirements of section 115 of the Riegle Community Development and Regulatory Improvement Act of 1994 (Riegle Act), as if it were a community development financial institution. (See 12 U.S.C. §714). In addition to meeting requirements of the Riegle Act, a grantee must also maintain data allowing it to measure the impact of services provided by it and any subgrantees, and, if specifically required by the terms of the PRIME grant, measure the success rate of individual clients whom the grantees assist. SBA will detail such requirements in its Program Announcements.

§ 119.17 What types of oversight will SBA provide to grantees?

(a) In addition to reports required under the Riegle Act, SBA will require reports in accordance with applicable OMB circulars. Such reports will include the following information:

(1) For recipients of Technical Assistance and Capacity Building Grants, for the first two years of receiving grant funding, narrative performance reports and financial status reports will be required quarterly within 15 calendar days of the end of each quarter. Thereafter, grantees may request that SBA reduce the frequency of reports from quarterly to semi-annually. The frequency of reporting then will be determined at the discretion of SBA. In addition, details of expenditures will be required with each request for payment. Grantees will be required to submit audited financial statements on an annual basis, if available, or annual financial statements prepared by a licensed, independent public accountant, within 120 calendar days of the end of the grantee’s fiscal year.

(2) For recipients of Research and Development Grants, reports will be required in accordance with agreed upon milestones and as part of the disbursement process.

(3) For recipients of Discretionary Grants, reports will be required as appropriate for the project, or on a schedule as described in paragraph(a)(1) of this section, whichever is more frequent.

(b) In addition, SBA may, from time to time, make site visits to the grantee, and review all applicable books and records.

§ 119.18 What are the restrictions against lobbying?

No assistance made available under the PRIME program may be expended by a grantee or subgrantee to pay any person to influence, or attempt to influence, any agency, elected official, officer, or employee of a Federal, State, or local government in connection with its participation in the program.

§ 119.19 Is fundraising an allowable expense under the PRIME program?

Expenditures of grant funds for fundraising activities are not allowable costs under this program. Applicants must be able to raise matching funds without the assistance of grant funds. Unless the full requirement for matching funds is waived, the applicant must demonstrate that it has adequate fundraising resources to obtain the required non-Federal matching funds to perform the project.

§ 119.20 Should grantees and subgrantees raise conflict of interest matters with SBA?

Each grantee or subgrantee must provide SBA with a copy of its conflicts of interest policies prior to receipt of funding under the program. Such policies must clearly describe the grantee’s or subgrantee’s protections from conflicts of interest or the appearance thereof in the handling of grant funding and program provision under this program.

PART 120—BUSINESS LOANS

GENERAL DESCRIPTIONS OF SBA’S BUSINESS LOAN PROGRAMS

Sec.
120.1 Which loan programs does this part cover?
120.2 Descriptions of the business loan programs.
120.3 Pilot programs.

DEFINITIONS
120.10 Definitions.

Subpart A—Policies Applying to All Business Loans

ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS
120.100 What are the basic eligibility requirements for all applicants for SBA business loans?
120.101 Credit not available elsewhere.
120.102 Funds not available from alternative sources, including personal resources of principals.
120.103 Are farm enterprises eligible?
120.104 Are businesses financed by SBICs eligible?
120.105 Special consideration for veterans.

INELIGIBLE BUSINESSES AND ELIGIBLE PASSIVE COMPANIES
120.110 What businesses are ineligible for SBA business loans?
120.111 What conditions must an Eligible Passive Company satisfy?

USES OF PROCEEDS
120.120 What are eligible uses of proceeds?
120.130 Restrictions on uses of proceeds.
120.131 Leasing part of new construction or existing building to another business.

ETHICAL REQUIREMENTS
120.140 What ethical requirements apply to participants?

CREDIT CRITERIA FOR SBA LOANS
120.150 What are SBA’s lending criteria?
120.151 What is the statutory limit for total loans to a Borrower?
120.160 Loan conditions.

REQUIREMENTS IMPOSED UNDER OTHER LAWS AND ORDERS
120.170 Flood insurance.
120.171 Compliance with child support obligations.
120.172 Flood-plain and wetlands management.
120.173 Lead-based paint.
120.174 Earthquake hazards.
120.175 Coastal barrier islands.
120.176 Compliance with other laws.

ENFORCEABILITY DESPITE RULE CHANGES
120.180 Are rules enforceable if they are changed later?

13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)

LOAN APPLICATIONS
120.190 Where does an applicant apply for a loan?
120.191 The contents of a business loan application.
120.192 Approval or denial.
120.193 Reconsideration after denial.

COMPUTERIZED SBA FORMS
120.194 Use of computer forms.

REPORTING OF FEES
120.195 Disclosure of fees.

Subpart B—Policies Specific to 7(a) Loans

BONDING REQUIREMENTS
120.200 What bonding requirements exist during construction?

LIMITATIONS ON USE OF PROCEEDS
120.201 Refinancing unsecured or under-secured loans.
120.202 Restrictions on loans for changes in ownership.

MATURITIES; INTEREST RATES; LOAN AND GUARANTEE AMOUNTS
120.210 What percentage of a loan may SBA guarantee?
120.211 What limits are there on the amounts of direct loans?
120.212 What limits are there on loan maturities?
120.213 What fixed interest rates may a Lender charge?
120.214 What conditions apply for variable interest rates?
120.215 What interest rates apply to smaller loans?

FEES FOR GUARANTEED LOANS
120.220 Fees that Lender pays SBA.
120.221 Fees which the Lender may collect from a loan applicant.
120.222 Fees which the Lender or Associate may not collect from the Borrower or share with third parties.

Subpart C—Special Purpose Loans

120.300 Statutory authority.

DISABLED ASSISTANCE LOAN PROGRAM (DAL)
120.310 What assistance is available for the disabled?
120.311 Definitions.
120.312 DAL–1 use of proceeds and other program conditions.
120.313 DAL–2 use of proceeds and other program conditions.
120.314 Resolving doubts about creditworthiness.
120.315 Interest rate and loan limit.
Small Business Administration

BUSINESSES OWNED BY LOW INCOME INDIVIDUALS

120.320 Policy.

ENERGY CONSERVATION

120.330 Who is eligible for an energy conservation loan?
120.331 What devices or techniques are eligible for a loan?
120.332 What are the eligible uses of proceeds?
120.333 Are there any special credit criteria?

EXPORT WORKING CAPITAL PROGRAM (EWCP)

120.340 What is the Export Working Capital Program?
120.341 Who is eligible?
120.342 What are eligible uses of proceeds?
120.343 Collateral.
120.344 Unique requirements of the EWCP.

INTERNATIONAL TRADE LOANS

120.345 Policy.
120.346 Eligibility.
120.347 Use of proceeds.
120.348 Amount of guarantee.

QUALIFIED EMPLOYEE TRUSTS (ESOP)

120.350 Policy.
120.351 Definitions.
120.352 Use of proceeds.
120.353 Collateral.
120.354 Creditworthiness.

VETERANS LOAN PROGRAM

120.360 Which veterans are eligible?
120.361 Other conditions of eligibility.

POLUTION CONTROL PROGRAM

120.370 Policy.

LOANS TO PARTICIPANTS IN THE 8(A) PROGRAM

120.375 Policy.
120.376 Special requirements.
120.377 Use of proceeds.

DEFENSE ECONOMIC TRANSITION ASSISTANCE

120.380 Program.
120.381 Eligibility.
120.382 Repayment ability.
120.383 Restrictions on loan processing.

CAPLINES PROGRAM

120.390 Revolving credit.

BUILDERS LOAN PROGRAM

120.391 What is the Builders Loan Program?
120.392 Who may apply?
120.393 Are there special application requirements?
120.394 What are the eligible uses of proceeds?
120.395 What is SBA’s collateral position?
120.396 What is the term of the loan?
120.397 Are there any special restrictions?

Subpart D—Lenders

120.400 Loan Guarantee Agreements.

PARTICIPATION CRITERIA

120.410 Requirements for all participating Lenders.
120.411 Preferences.
120.412 Other services Lenders may provide Borrowers.
120.413 Advertisement of relationship with SBA.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

120.414 SBA access to Lender files.
120.415 Suspension or revocation of eligibility to participate.

PARTICIPATING LENDER FINANCINGS

120.420 Definitions.
120.421 Which Lenders may securitize?
120.422 Are all securitizations subject to this subpart?
120.423 Which 7(a) loans may a Lender securitize?
120.424 What are the basic conditions a Lender must meet to securitize?
120.425 What are the minimum elements that SBA will require before consenting to a securitization?
120.426 What action will SBA take if a securitizer transfers the subordinated tranche prior to the termination of the holding period?
120.427 Will SBA approve a securitization application from a capital impaired Securitizer?
120.428 What happens to a securitizer’s other PLP responsibilities if SBA suspends its PLP approval privilege?

OTHER CONVEYANCES

120.430 What conveyances are covered by §§120.430 through 120.435?
120.431 Which Lenders may sell, sell participations in, or pledge 7(a) loans?
120.432 Under what circumstances does this subpart permit sales of, or sales of participating interests in, 7(a) loans?
120.433 What are SBA’s other requirements for sales and sales of participating interests?
120.434 What are SBA’s requirements for loan pledges?
120.435 Which loan pledges do not require notice to or consent by SBA?

CERTIFIED LENDERS PROGRAM (CLP)

120.440 What is the Certified Lenders Program?
120.441 How does a Lender become a CLP Lender?
120.442 Suspension or revocation of CLP status.
Pt. 120

PREFERRED LENDERS PROGRAM (PLP)

120.450 What is the Preferred Lenders Program?
120.451 How does a Lender become a PLP Lender?
120.452 What are the requirements of PLP loan processing?
120.453 What are the requirements of a PLP Lender in servicing and liquidating SBA guaranteed loans?
120.454 PLP performance review.
120.455 Suspension or revocation of PLP status.

SMALL BUSINESS LENDING COMPANIES (SBLC)

120.470 What is an SBLC?
120.471 Records.
120.472 Reports to SBA.
120.473 Change of ownership or control.
120.474 Prohibited financing.
120.475 Audits.
120.476 Suspension or revocation.

Subpart E—Loan Administration

120.500 General.

SERVICING

120.510 Servicing direct and immediate participation loans.
120.511 Servicing guaranteed loans.
120.512 Who services the loan after SBA honors its guarantee?
120.513 What servicing actions require the prior written consent of SBA?

SBA’S PURCHASE OF A GUARANTEED PORTION

120.520 When does SBA honor its guarantee?
120.521 What interest rate applies after SBA purchases its guaranteed portion?
120.522 How much accrued interest does SBA pay to the Lender or Registered Holder when SBA purchases the guaranteed portion?
120.523 What is the “earliest uncured payment default”?
120.524 When is SBA released from liability on its guarantee?

DEFERMENT, EXTENSION OF MATURITY AND LOAN MORATORIUM

120.530 Deferment of payment.
120.531 Extension of maturity.
120.532 What is a loan Moratorium?

LIQUIDATION OF COLLATERAL

120.540 What are SBA’s policies concerning the liquidation of collateral and the sale of business loans and physical disaster assistance loans, physical disaster business loans and economic injury disaster loans?

HOMESTEAD PROTECTION FOR FARMERS

120.550 What is homestead protection for farmers?
120.551 Who is eligible for homestead protection?
120.552 Lease.
120.553 Appeal.
120.554 Conflict of laws.

Subpart F—Secondary Market

FISCAL AND TRANSFER AGENT (FTA)

120.600 Definitions.
120.601 SBA Secondary Market.

CERTIFICATES

120.610 Form and terms of Certificates.
120.611 Pools backing Pool Certificates.
120.612 Loans eligible to back Certificates.
120.613 Secondary Participation Guarantee Agreement.

THE SBA GUARANTEE OF A CERTIFICATE

120.620 SBA guarantee of a Pool Certificate.
120.621 SBA guarantee of an Individual Certificate.

POOL ASSEMBLERS

120.630 Qualifications to be a Pool Assembler.
120.631 Suspension or termination of Pool Assembler.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

120.640 Administration of the Pool and Individual Certificates.
120.641 Disclosure to purchasers.
120.642 Requirements before the FTA issues Pool Certificates.
120.643 Requirements before the FTA issues Individual Certificates.
120.644 Transfers of Certificates.
120.645 Redemption of Certificates.
120.650 Registration duties of FTA in Secondary Market.
120.651 Claim to FTA by Registered Holder to replace Certificate.
120.652 FTA fees.

SUSPENSION OR REVOCATION OF PARTICIPANT IN SECONDARY MARKET

120.660 Suspension or revocation.

Subpart G—Microloan Program

120.700 What is the Microloan Program?
120.701 Definitions.
120.702 Are there limitations on who can be an Intermediary or on where an Intermediary may operate?
120.703 How does an organization apply to become an Intermediary?
120.704 How are applications evaluated?
120.705 What is a Specialized Intermediary?
Small Business Administration

120.706 What are the terms and conditions of an SBA loan to an intermediary?
120.707 What conditions apply to loans by Intermediaries to Microloan borrowers?
120.708 What is the Intermediary’s financial contribution?
120.709 What is the Microloan Revolving Fund?
120.710 What is the Loan Loss Reserve Fund?
120.711 What are the terms and conditions of an SBA loan to an intermediary?
120.712 How does an Intermediary get a grant to assist Microloan borrowers?
120.713 Does SBA provide technical assistance to Intermediaries?
120.714 How are grants made to non-lending technical assistance providers (NTAP)?
120.715 Does SBA guarantee any loans an Intermediary obtains from another source?
120.716 Suspension or revocation of an Intermediary or NTAP.

Subpart H—Development Company Loan Program (504)

120.800 What is the purpose of the 504 program?
120.801 How is a 504 Project financed?
120.802 Definitions.

Certification Procedures to Become a CDC

120.810 Applications for certification as a CDC.
120.811 Public notice of CDC certification application.
120.812 Probationary period for newly certified CDCs.

Requirements for CDC Certification and Operation

120.820 CDC non-profit status.
120.821 CDC Area of Operations.
120.822 CDC membership.
120.823 CDC Board of Directors.
120.824 Professional management and staff.
120.825 Financial ability to operate.
120.826 Basic requirements for operating a CDC.
120.827 Services a CDC provides to small businesses.
120.828 Minimum level of CDC lending activity.
120.829 Job Opportunity average a CDC must maintain.
120.830 Reports a CDC must submit.

Extending a CDC’s Area of Operations

120.835 Application to expand an Area of Operations.
120.836 Public notice and opportunity for response.
120.837 SBA decision on application for a new CDC or for an existing CDC to expand Area of Operations.
120.838 Expiration of existing, temporary expansions.
120.839 Case-by-case extensions.

Accredited Lenders Program (ALP)

120.840 Accredited Lenders Program.

Premier Certified Lenders Program

120.845 Premier Certified Lenders Program (PCLP).

Associate Development Companies (ADCs)

120.850 ADC functions.
120.851 ADC eligibility and operating requirements.
120.852 Suspension and revocation of ADCs.

Ethical Requirements

120.855 CDC and ADC ethical requirements.

Project Economic Development Goals

120.860 Required objectives.
120.861 Job creation or retention.
120.862 Other economic development objectives.

Leasing Policies Specific to 504 Loans

120.870 Leasing Project Property.
120.871 Leasing part of an existing building to another business.

Loan-Making Policies Specific to 504 Loans

120.880 Basic eligibility requirements.
120.881 Ineligible Projects for 504 loans.
120.882 Eligible Project costs for 504 loans.
120.883 Eligible administrative costs for 504 loans.
120.884 Ineligible costs for 504 loans.

Interim Financing

120.890 Source of interim financing.
120.891 Certifications of disbursement and completion.
120.892 Certifications of no adverse change.

Permanent Financing

120.900 What are the sources of permanent financing?

The Borrower’s Contribution

120.910 How much must the Borrower contribute?
120.911 Land contributions.
120.912 Borrowed contributions.
120.913 May an SBIC provide the contribution?

Third Party Loans

120.920 Required participation by the Third Party Lender.
120.921 Terms of Third Party loans.
120.922 Pre-existing debt on the Project Property.
§ 120.1 Which loan programs does this part cover?

This part regulates SBA’s financial assistance to small businesses under its general business loan programs (“7(a) loans”) authorized by section 7(a) of the Small Business Act (“the Act”), 15 U.S.C. 636(a), its microloan demonstration loan program (“Microloans”) authorized by section 7(m) of the Act, 15 U.S.C. 636(m), and its development company program (“504 loans”) authorized by Title V of the Small Business Investment Act, 15 U.S.C. 695 to 697f (“Title V”). These three programs constitute the business loan programs of the SBA.

§ 120.2 Descriptions of the business loan programs.

(a) 7(a) loans. (1) 7(a) loans provide financing for general business purposes and may be:

(i) A direct loan by SBA;

(ii) An immediate participation loan by a Lender and SBA; or

(iii) A guaranteed loan (deferred participation) by which SBA guarantees a portion of a loan made by a Lender.

(2) A guaranteed loan is initiated by a Lender agreeing to make an SBA guaranteed loan to a small business and applying to SBA for SBA’s guarantee under a blanket guarantee agreement (participation agreement) between SBA and the Lender. If SBA agrees to guarantee (authorizes) a portion of the loan, the Lender funds and services the loan. If the small business defaults on the loan, SBA’s guarantee requires SBA to purchase its portion of the outstanding balance, upon demand by the Lender and subject to specific conditions. Regulations specific to 7(a) loans are found in subpart B of this part.

(b) Microloans. SBA makes loans and loan guarantees to non-profit Intermediaries that make short-term loans up to $25,000 to eligible small businesses for general business purposes, except payment of personal debts. SBA also makes grants to Intermediaries for use in providing management assistance and counseling to small businesses. Regulations specific to these...
§ 120.10

loans are found in subpart G of this part.

(c) 504 loans. Projects involving 504 loans require long-term fixed-asset financing for small businesses. A Certified Development Company (CDC) provides the final portion of this financing with a 504 loan made from the proceeds of a Debenture issued by the CDC, guaranteed 100 percent by SBA (with the full faith and credit of the United States), and sold to investors. The regulations specific to these loans are found in subpart H of this part.

§ 120.3 Pilot programs.

The Administrator of SBA may from time to time suspend, modify, or waive rules for a limited period of time to test new programs or ideas. The Administrator shall publish a document in the FEDERAL REGISTER explaining the reasons for these actions.

DEFINITIONS

§ 120.10 Definitions.

The following terms have the same meaning wherever they are used in this part. Defined terms are capitalized wherever they appear.

Associate. (1) An Associate of a Lender or CDC is:

(i) An officer, director, key employee, or holder of 20 percent or more of the value of the Lender’s or CDC’s stock or debt instruments, or an agent involved in the loan process;

(ii) Any entity in which one or more individuals referred to in paragraphs (1)(i) of this definition or a Close Relative of any such individual owns or controls at least 20 percent.

(2) An Associate of a small business is:

(i) An officer, director, owner of more than 20 percent of the equity, or key employee of the small business;

(ii) Any entity in which one or more individuals referred to in paragraphs (2)(i) of this definition owns or controls at least 20 percent; and

(iii) Any individual or entity in control of or controlled by the small business (except a Small Business Investment Company ("SBIC") licensed by SBA).

(3) For purposes of this definition, the time during which an Associate relationship exists commences six months before the following dates and continues as long as the certification, participation agreement, or loan is outstanding:

(i) For a CDC, the date of certification by SBA;

(ii) For a Lender, the date of application for a loan guarantee on behalf of an applicant; or

(iii) For a small business, the date of the loan application to SBA, the CDC, the Intermediary, or the Lender.

Authorization is SBA’s written agreement providing the terms and conditions under which SBA will make or guarantee business loans. It is not a contract to make a loan.

Borrower is the obligor of an SBA business loan.

Certified Development Company ("CDC") is an entity authorized by SBA to deliver 504 financing to small businesses.

Close Relative is a spouse; a parent; or a child or sibling, or the spouse of any such person.

Eligible Passive Company is a small entity or trust which does not engage in regular and continuous business activity, which leases real or personal property to an Operating Company for use in the Operating Company’s business, and which complies with the conditions set forth in §120.111.

Intermediary is the entity in the Microloan program that receives SBA financial assistance and makes loans to small businesses in amounts up to $25,000.

Lender is an institution that has executed a participation agreement with SBA under the guaranteed loan program.

Loan Instruments are the Authorization, note, instruments of hypothecation, and all other agreements and documents related to a loan.

Operating Company is an eligible small business actively involved in conducting business operations now or about to be located on real property owned by an Eligible Passive Company, or using or about to use in its business operations personal property owned by an Eligible Passive Company.

Preference is any arrangement giving a Lender or a CDC a preferred position.

VerDate 11<MAY>2000 01:40 Jan 18, 2002 Jkt 197039 PO 00000 Frm 00213 Fmt 8010 Sfmt 8010 Y:\SGML\197039T.XXX pfrm01 PsN: 197039T
§ 120.100 What are the basic eligibility requirements for all applicants for SBA business loans?

To be eligible for an SBA business loan, a small business applicant must:
(a) Be an operating business (except for loans to Eligible Passive Companies);
(b) Be organized for profit;
(c) Be located in the United States;
(d) Be small under the size requirements of part 121 of this chapter (including affiliates). See subpart H of this part for the size standards of part 121 of this chapter which apply only to 504 loans; and
(e) Be able to demonstrate a need for the desired credit.

§ 120.101 Credit not available elsewhere.

SBA provides business loan assistance only to applicants for whom the desired credit is not otherwise available on reasonable terms from non-Federal sources. SBA requires the Lender or CDC to certify or otherwise show that the desired credit is unavailable to the applicant on reasonable terms and conditions from non-Federal sources without SBA assistance, taking into consideration the prevailing rates and terms in the community in or near where the applicant conducts business, for similar purposes and periods of time. Submission of an application to SBA by a Lender or CDC constitutes certification by the Lender or CDC that it has examined the availability of credit to the applicant, has based its certification upon that examination, and has substantiation in its file to support the certification.

§ 120.102 Funds not available from alternative sources, including personal resources of principals.

(a) An applicant for a business loan must show that the desired funds are not available from the personal resources of any owner of 20 percent or more of the equity of the applicant. SBA will require the use of personal resources from any such owner as an injection to reduce the SBA funded portion of the total financing package (i.e., any SBA loans and any other financing, including loans from any other source) when that owner's liquid assets exceed the amounts specified in paragraphs (a) (1) through (3) of this section. When the total financing package:

1. Is $250,000 or less, each 20 percent owner of the applicant must inject any personal liquid assets which are in excess of two times the total financing package or $100,000, whichever is greater;
2. Between $250,001 and $500,000, each 20 percent owner of the applicant must inject any personal liquid assets which are in excess of one and one-half times the total financing package or $500,000, whichever is greater;
3. Exceeds $500,000, each 20 percent owner of the applicant must inject any personal liquid assets which are in excess of one times the total financing package or $750,000, whichever is greater.

(b) Any liquid assets in excess of the applicable amount set forth in paragraph (a) of this section must be used to reduce the SBA portion of the total financing package. These funds must...
be injected prior to the disbursement of the proceeds of any SBA financing.

(c) For purposes of this section, liquid assets means cash or cash equivalent, including savings accounts, CDs, stocks, bonds, or other similar assets. Equity in real estate holdings and other fixed assets are not to be considered liquid assets.

§ 120.103 Are farm enterprises eligible?

Federal financial assistance to agricultural enterprises is generally made by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA), but may be made by SBA under the terms of a Memorandum of Understanding between SBA and USDA. Farm-related businesses which are not agricultural enterprises are eligible businesses under SBA’s business loan programs.

§ 120.104 Are businesses financed by SBICs eligible?

SBA may make or guarantee loans to a business financed by an SBIC if SBA’s collateral position will be superior to that of the SBIC. SBA may also make or guarantee a loan to an otherwise eligible small business which temporarily is owned or controlled by an SBIC under the regulations in part 107 of this chapter. SBA neither guarantees SBIC loans nor makes loans jointly with SBICs.

§ 120.105 Special consideration for veterans.

SBA will give special consideration to a small business owned by a veteran or, if the veteran chooses not to apply, to a business owned or controlled by one of the veteran’s dependents. If the veteran is deceased or permanently disabled, SBA will give special consideration to one survivor or dependent. SBA will process the application of a business owned or controlled by a veteran or dependent promptly, resolve close questions in the applicant’s favor, and pay particular attention to maximum loan maturity. For SBA loans, a veteran is a person honorably discharged from active military service.

INELIGIBLE BUSINESSES AND ELIGIBLE PASSIVE COMPANIES

§ 120.110 What businesses are ineligible for SBA business loans?

The following types of businesses are ineligible:

(a) Non-profit businesses (for-profit subsidiaries are eligible);

(b) Financial businesses primarily engaged in the business of lending, such as banks, finance companies, and factors (pawn shops, although engaged in lending, may qualify in some circumstances);

(c) Passive businesses owned by developers and landlords that do not actively use or occupy the assets acquired or improved with the loan proceeds (except Eligible Passive Companies under §120.111);

(d) Life insurance companies;

(e) Businesses located in a foreign country (businesses in the U.S. owned by aliens may qualify);

(f) Pyramid sale distribution plans;

(g) Businesses deriving more than one-third of gross annual revenue from legal gambling activities;

(h) Businesses engaged in any illegal activity;

(i) Private clubs and businesses which limit the number of memberships for reasons other than capacity;

(j) Government-owned entities (except for businesses owned or controlled by a Native American tribe);

(k) Businesses principally engaged in teaching, instructing, counseling or indoctrinating religion or religious beliefs, whether in a religious or secular setting;

(l) Consumer and marketing cooperatives (producer cooperatives are eligible);

(m) Loan packagers earning more than one third of their gross annual revenue from packaging SBA loans;

(n) Businesses with an Associate who is incarcerated, on probation, on parole, or has been indicted for a felony or a crime of moral turpitude;

(o) Businesses in which the Lender or CDC, or any of its Associates owns an equity interest;

(p) Businesses which:
§ 120.111 What conditions must an Eligible Passive Company satisfy?

An Eligible Passive Company must use loan proceeds to acquire or lease, and/or improve or renovate, real or personal property (including eligible refinancing), that it leases to one or more Operating Companies for conducting the Operating Company’s business (references to Operating Company in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section mean each Operating Company). Any ownership structure or legal form may qualify as an Eligible Passive Company.

(a) Conditions that apply to all legal forms:

(1) The Operating Company must be an eligible small business, and the proposed use of the proceeds must be an eligible use if the Operating Company were obtaining the financing directly;
(2) The Eligible Passive Company (with the exception of a trust) and the Operating Company each must be small under the appropriate size standards in part 121 of this chapter;
(3) The lease between the Eligible Passive Company and the Operating Company must be in writing and must be subordinated to SBA’s mortgage, trust deed lien, or security interest on the property. Also, the Eligible Passive Company (as landlord) must furnish as collateral for the loan an assignment of all rents paid under the lease;
(4) The lease between the Eligible Passive Company and the Operating Company, including options to renew exercisable solely by the Operating Company, must have a remaining term at least equal to the term of the loan;
(5) The Operating Company must be a guarantor or a co-borrower (with the Eligible Passive Company) of the loan (in a 7(a) loan including working capital, the Operating Company must be a co-borrower); and
(6) Each holder of an ownership interest constituting at least 20 percent of the Eligible Passive Company and the Operating Company must guarantee the loan (the trustee shall execute the guarantee on behalf of any trust).

(b) Additional conditions that apply to trusts. The eligibility status of the trustor will determine trust eligibility. All donors to the trust will be deemed to have trustor status for eligibility purposes. A trust qualifying as an Eligible Passive Company may engage in other activities as authorized by its trust agreement. The trustee must warrant and certify that the trust will not be revoked or substantially amended for the term of the loan without the consent of SBA. The trustee must guarantee the loan. For purposes of this section, the trustee shall certify to SBA that:

(1) The trustee has authority to act;
(2) The trust has the authority to borrow funds, pledge trust assets, and lease the property to the Operating Company;
(3) The trustee has provided accurate, pertinent language from the trust agreement confirming the above; and
(4) The trustee has provided and will continue to provide SBA with a true and complete list of all trustors and donors.

USES OF PROCEEDS

§ 120.120 What are eligible uses of proceeds?

A small business must use an SBA business loan for sound business purposes. The uses of proceeds are prescribed in each loan’s Authorization.

(a) A Borrower may use loan proceeds from any SBA loan to:

1. Acquire land (by purchase or lease);
2. Improve a site (e.g., grading, streets, parking lots, landscaping), including up to 5 percent for community improvements such as curbs and sidewalks;
3. Purchase one or more existing buildings;
4. Convert, expand or renovate one or more existing buildings;
5. Construct one or more new buildings; and/or
6. Acquire (by purchase or lease) and install fixed assets (for a 504 loan, these assets must have a useful life of at least 10 years and be at a fixed location, although short-term financing for equipment, furniture, and furnishings may be permitted where essential to and a minor portion of the 504 Project).

(b) A Borrower may also use 7(a) and microloan proceeds for:

1. Inventory;
2. Supplies;
3. Raw materials; and
4. Working capital (if the Operating Company is a co-Borrower with an Eligible Passive Company, part of the loan proceeds may be applied for working capital if used for that purpose only by the Operating Company).

(c) A Borrower may use 7(a) loan proceeds for refinancing certain outstanding debts.

§ 120.130 Restrictions on uses of proceeds.

SBA will not authorize nor may a Borrower use loan proceeds for the following purposes (including the replacement of funds used for any such purpose):

(a) Payments, distributions or loans to Associates of the applicant (except for ordinary compensation for services rendered);

(b) Refinancing a debt owed to a Small Business Investment Company (“SBIC”);

(c) Floor plan financing or other revolving line credit, except under §120.390;

(d) Investments in real or personal property acquired and held primarily for sale, lease, or investment (except for a loan to an Eligible Passive Company or to a small contractor under §120.310);

(e) A purpose which does not benefit the small business; or

(f) Any use restricted by §§120.201 through 120.203 and 120.884 (specific to 7(a) loans and 504 loans respectively).

§ 120.131 Leasing part of new construction or existing building to another business.

(a) If the SBA business loan involves the construction of a new building, a Borrower may lease up to 33 percent of the Rentable Property for a short term to any third party if reasonable growth projections show that the Borrower will need additional space within three years and will use all of the additional space within ten years. If the Borrower is an Eligible Passive Company leasing 100 percent of the Project space to one or more Operating Company, the Operating Company, or Operating Companies together, may sublease up to 33 percent of the Rentable Property to a third party under the same conditions. (See §120.870(c) for an exception with respect to 504 Projects.)

(b) If the SBA business loan involves the acquisition, renovation, or reconstruction of an existing building, the Borrower may lease up to 49 percent of the Project space to one or more Operating Company, the Operating Company, or Operating Companies together may sublease up to 49 percent of its Rentable Property to a third party under the same conditions. (For 504 loans, see §120.871.)

[64 FR 2117, Jan. 13, 1999; 64 FR 27445, May 20, 1999]
§ 120.140 ETHICAL REQUIREMENTS

§ 120.140 What ethical requirements apply to participants?

Lenders, Intermediaries, CDCs, and Associate Development Companies ("ADCs") (in this section, collectively referred to as "Participants"), must act ethically and exhibit good character. Ethical indiscretion of an Associate of a Participant or a member of a CDC will be attributed to the Participant. A Participant must promptly notify SBA if it obtains information concerning the unethical behavior of an Associate. The following are examples of such unethical behavior. A Participant may not:

(a) Self-deal;

(b) Have a real or apparent conflict of interest with a small business with which it is dealing (including any of its Associates or an Associate’s Close Relatives) or SBA;

(c) Own an equity interest in a business that has received or is applying to receive SBA financing (during the term of the loan or within 6 months prior to the loan application);

(d) Be incarcerated, on parole, or on probation;

(e) Knowingly misrepresent or make a false statement to SBA;

(f) Engage in conduct reflecting a lack of business integrity or honesty;

(g) Be a convicted felon, or have an adverse final civil judgment (in a case involving fraud, breach of trust, or other conduct) that would cause the public to question the Participant’s business integrity, taking into consideration such factors as the magnitude, repetition, harm caused, and remoteness in time of the activity or activities in question;

(h) Accept funding from any source that restricts, prioritizes, or conditions the types of small businesses that the Participant may assist under an SBA program or that imposes any conditions or requirements upon recipients of SBA assistance inconsistent with SBA’s loan programs or regulations;

(i) Fail to disclose to SBA all relationships between the small business and its Associates (including Close Relatives of Associates), the Participant, and/or the lenders financing the Project of which it is aware or should be aware;

(j) Fail to disclose to SBA whether the loan will:

(1) Reduce the exposure of a Participant or an Associate of a Participant in a position to sustain a loss;

(2) Directly or indirectly finance the purchase of real estate, personal property or services (including insurance) from the Participant or an Associate of the Participant;

(3) Repay or refinance a debt due a Participant or an Associate of a Participant; or

(4) Require the small business, or an Associate (including Close Relatives of Associates), to invest in the Participant (except for institutions which require an investment from all members as a condition of membership, such as a Production Credit Association);

(k) Issue a real estate forward commitment to a builder or developer; or

(l) Engage in any activity which taints its objective judgment in evaluating the loan.

§ 120.150 CREDIT CRITERIA FOR SBA LOANS

§ 120.150 What are SBA’s lending criteria?

The applicant (including an Operating Company) must be creditworthy. Loans must be so sound as to reasonably assure repayment. SBA will consider:

(a) Character, reputation, and credit history of the applicant (and the Operating Company, if applicable), its Associates, and guarantors;

(b) Experience and depth of management;

(c) Strength of the business;

(d) Past earnings, projected cash flow, and future prospects;

(e) Ability to repay the loan with earnings from the business;

(f) Sufficient invested equity to operate on a sound financial basis;

(g) Potential for long-term success;

(h) Nature and value of collateral (although inadequate collateral will not be the sole reason for denial of a loan request); and

(i) The effect any affiliates (as defined in part 121 of this chapter) may have on the ultimate repayment ability of the applicant.
§ 120.172 Flood-plain and wetlands management.

(a) All loans must conform to requirements of Executive Orders 11988, “Flood Plain Management” (3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 117) and 11990, “Protection of Wetlands” (3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 121). Lenders, Intermediaries, CDCs, and SBA must comply with requirements applicable to them. Applicants must show:

1. Whether the location for which financial assistance is proposed is in a floodplain or wetland;
2. If it is in a floodplain, that the assistance is in compliance with local land use plans; and
3. That any necessary construction or use permits will be issued.

(b) Generally, there is an 8-step decision making process with respect to:

1. Construction or acquisition of anything, other than a building;
2. Repair and restoration equal to more than 50% of the market value of a building; or
3. Replacement of destroyed structures.

(c) SBA may determine for the following types of actions, on a case-by-case basis, that the full 8-step process is not warranted and that only the first step (determining if a proposed action is in the base floodplain) need be completed:

1. Actions located outside the base floodplain;
§ 120.173 Lead-based paint.

If loan proceeds are for the construction or rehabilitation of a residential structure, lead-based paint may not be used on any interior surface, or on any exterior surface that is readily accessible to children under the age of seven years.

§ 120.174 Earthquake hazards.

When loan proceeds are used to construct a new building or an addition to an existing building, the construction must conform with the “National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program (“NEHRP”) Recommended Provisions for the Development of Seismic Regulations for New Buildings” (which can be obtained from the Federal Emergency Management Agency, Publications Office, Washington, DC) or a code identified by SBA as being substantially equivalent.

§ 120.175 Coastal barrier islands.

SBA and Intermediaries may not make or guarantee any loan within the Coastal Barrier Resource System.

§ 120.176 Compliance with other laws.

All SBA loans are subject to all applicable laws, including (without limitation) the civil rights laws (see parts 112, 113, 117 and 136 of this chapter), prohibiting discrimination on the grounds of race, color, national origin, religion, sex, marital status, disability or age. SBA requests agreements or evidence to support or document compliance with these laws, including reports required by applicable statutes or the regulations in this chapter.

§ 120.180 Are rules enforceable if they are changed later?

Regulations and contractual provisions in effect at the time of a transaction govern an SBA loan financing transaction, notwithstanding subsequent rule or contract changes. SBA may conduct an enforcement action regarding any violation of provisions of regulations or contracts applicable at the time, but no longer in effect or in use.

Loan Applications

§ 120.190 Where does an applicant apply for a loan?

An applicant for a business loan should apply to:
(a) A Lender for a guaranteed or immediate participation loan;
(b) A CDC for a 504 loan;
(c) An Intermediary for a Microloan; or
(d) SBA for a direct loan.

§ 120.191 The contents of a business loan application.

For most business loans, SBA requires that an application for a business loan contain, among other things, a description of the history and nature of the business, the amount and purpose of the loan, the collateral offered for the loan, current financial statements, historical financial statements (or tax returns if appropriate) for the past three years, IRS tax verification, and a business plan, when applicable. Personal histories and financial statements will be required from principals of the applicant (and the Operating Company, if applicable).

§ 120.192 Approval or denial.

Applicants receive notice of approval or denial by the Lender, CDC, Intermediary, or SBA, as appropriate. Notice of denial will include the reasons. If a loan is approved, an Authorization will be issued.
§ 120.193 Reconsideration after denial.

An applicant or recipient of a business loan may request reconsideration of a denied loan or loan modification request within 6 months of denial. Applicants denied due to a size determination can appeal that determination under part 121 of this chapter. All others must be submitted to the office that denied the original request. To prevail, the applicant must demonstrate that it has overcome all legitimate reasons for denial. Six months after denial, a new application is required. If the reconsideration is denied, a second and final reconsideration may be considered by the Associate Administrator for Financial Assistance (AA/FA), whose decision is final.

COMPUTERIZED SBA FORMS

§ 120.194 Use of computer forms.

Any Applicant or Participant may use computer generated SBA application forms, closing forms, and other forms designated by SBA if the forms are exact reproductions of SBA forms.

REPORTING OF FEES

§ 120.195 Disclosure of fees.

An Applicant for a business loan must identify to SBA the name of each Agent as defined in part 103 of this chapter that helped the applicant obtain the loan, describing the services performed, and disclosing the amount of each fee paid or to be paid by the applicant to the Agent in conjunction with the performance of those services.

Subpart B—Policies Specific to 7(a) Loans

BONDING REQUIREMENTS

§ 120.200 What bonding requirements exist during construction?

On 7(a) loans which finance construction, the Borrower must supply a 100 percent payment and performance bond and builder’s risk insurance, unless waived by SBA.

LIMITATIONS ON USE OF PROCEEDS

§ 120.201 Refinancing unsecured or undersecured loans.

A Borrower may not use 7(a) loan proceeds to pay any creditor in a position to sustain a loss causing a shift to SBA of all or part of a potential loss from an existing debt.

§ 120.202 Restrictions on loans for changes in ownership.

A Borrower may not use 7(a) loan proceeds to purchase a portion of a business or a portion of another owner’s interest. One or more current owners may use loan proceeds to purchase the entire interest of another current owner, or a Borrower can purchase ownership of an entire business.

MATURES; INTEREST RATES; LOAN AND GUARANTEE AMOUNTS

§ 120.210 What percentage of a loan may SBA guarantee?

SBA’s guarantee percentage must not exceed the applicable percentage established in section 7(a) of the Act. The maximum allowable guarantee percentage on a loan will be determined by the loan amount. As of October 12, 1995, the percentages are: Loans of $100,000 or less may receive a maximum guarantee of 80 percent. All other loans may receive a maximum guarantee of 75 percent, not to exceed $750,000, unless otherwise authorized by SBA.

§ 120.211 What limits are there on the amounts of direct loans?

(a) The statutory limit for direct loans made under the authority of section 7(a)(1)-(19) of the Small Business Act is $350,000. SBA has established an administrative limit of $150,000 for direct loans. The AA/FA may authorize acceptance of an application up to the statutory limit.

(b) The statutory limit for direct loans made under the authority of section 7(a)(20) is $750,000. SBA has established an administrative limit of $150,000. The Associate Administrator for Minority Enterprise Development...
§ 120.212 What limits are there on loan maturities?

The term of a loan shall be:
(a) The shortest appropriate term, depending upon the Borrower’s ability to repay;
(b) Ten years or less, unless it finances or refinances real estate or equipment with a useful life exceeding ten years; and
(c) A maximum of 25 years, including extensions. (A portion of a loan used to acquire or improve real property may have a term of 25 years plus an additional period needed to complete the construction or improvements.)

§ 120.213 What fixed interest rates may a Lender charge?

(a) Fixed Rates for Guaranteed Loans. A loan may have a reasonable fixed interest rate. SBA periodically publishes the maximum allowable rate in the FEDERAL REGISTER.
(b) Direct loans. A statutory formula based on the cost of money to the Federal government determines the interest rate on direct loans. SBA publishes the rate periodically in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 120.214 What conditions apply for variable interest rates?

A Lender may use a variable rate of interest, upon SBA’s approval. SBA’s maximum allowable rates apply only to the initial rate on the date SBA received the loan application. SBA shall approve the use of a variable interest rate under the following conditions:
(a) Frequency. The first change may occur on the first calendar day of the month following initial disbursement, using the base rate (see paragraph (c) of this section) in effect on the first business day of the month. After that, changes may occur no more often than monthly.
(b) Range of fluctuation. The amount of fluctuation shall be equal to the movement in the base rate. The difference between the initial rate and the ceiling rate may be no greater than the difference between the initial rate and the floor rate.
(c) Base rate. The base rate shall be the prime rate in effect on the first business day of the month, printed in a national financial newspaper published each business day, or the SBA Optional Peg Rate which SBA publishes quarterly in the FEDERAL REGISTER.
(d) Maturities under 7 years. For loans with maturities under seven years, the maximum interest rate shall not exceed two and one-quarter (2 1/4) percentage points over the base rate.
(e) Maturities of 7 years or more. For loans with maturities of seven or more years, the maximum interest rate shall not exceed two and three-quarters (2 3/4) percentage points over the base rate.
(f) Amortization. Initial amortization of principal and interest may be recomputed and reassessed as interest rates fluctuate, as directed by SBA. With prior approval of SBA, the Lender may use certain other amortization methods, except that SBA does not allow balloon payments.

§ 120.215 What interest rates apply to smaller loans?

For a loan over $25,000 but not exceeding $50,000, the interest rate may be one percent more than the maximum interest rate described above. For a loan of $25,000 or less, the maximum interest rate described above may be increased by two percentage points.


FEES FOR GUARANTEED LOANS

§ 120.220 Fees that Lender pays SBA.

(a) The Lender pays a guarantee fee to SBA for each loan as follows:
### § 120.222

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guaranteed portion of loan</th>
<th>Fee measured as percentage of guaranteed portion</th>
<th>When payable</th>
<th>Lender may get fee from borrower</th>
<th>When SBA refunds fee from borrower</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 Months or less</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>With Guarantee Application.</td>
<td>Within 90 days of SBA Approval.</td>
<td>If Application Withdrawn or Denied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More Than 12 months and Total Guaranteed Portion is $80,000 or Less.</td>
<td>2.0% of Guaranteed Portion.</td>
<td>Within 90 Days of SBA Approval.</td>
<td>After First Disbursement.</td>
<td>If Loan Cancelled and Never Disbursed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More Than 12 Months and Amount of Guaranteed Portion of Loan That is $250,000 or Less.</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>Within 90 Days of SBA Approval.</td>
<td>After First Disbursement.</td>
<td>If Loan Cancelled and Never Disbursed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More Than 12 Months and Amount of Guaranteed Portion of Loan Between $250,000 and $500,000.</td>
<td>3.0% of 1st $250,000 plus 3.5% of balance.</td>
<td>Within 90 Days of SBA Approval.</td>
<td>After First Disbursement.</td>
<td>If Loan Cancelled and Never Disbursed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More Than 12 Months and Amount of Guaranteed Portion of Loan Exceeding $500,000.</td>
<td>3.0% of 1st $250,000 plus 3.5% of next $250,000 plus 3.875% of the Amount Exceeding $500,000.</td>
<td>Within 90 Days of SBA Approval.</td>
<td>After First Disbursement.</td>
<td>If Loan Cancelled and Never Disbursed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Also, if SBA substantially changes the Lender’s loan terms and approves the loan, but the modified terms are unacceptable to the Borrower or Lender. (The Lender must request refund in writing within 30 calendar days of the approval).

---

(b) If the guarantee fee is not paid, SBA may terminate the guarantee. The Borrower may use working capital loan proceeds to reimburse the Lender for the guarantee fee. Acceptance of the guarantee fee by SBA shall not waive any right of SBA arising from the Lender’s misconduct or violation of any provision of this part, the guarantee agreement, the Authorization, or other loan documents.

(c) The Lender shall also pay SBA an annual service fee equal to 0.5 percent of the outstanding balance of the guaranteed portion of each loan. The service fee cannot be charged to the Borrower. The Lender may institute a late fee charge for delinquent payments of the annual service fee to cover administrative costs associated with collecting delinquent fees.

§ 120.221 Fees which the Lender may collect from a loan applicant.

(a) Service and packaging fees. The Lender may charge an applicant reasonable fees (customary for similar Lenders in the geographic area where the loan is being made) for packaging and other services. The Lender must advise the applicant in writing that the applicant is not required to obtain or pay for unwanted services. The applicant is responsible for deciding whether fees are reasonable. SBA may review these fees at any time. Lender must refund any such fee considered unreasonable by SBA.

(b) Extraordinary servicing. Subject to prior written SBA approval, if all or part of a loan will have extraordinary servicing needs, the Lender may charge the applicant a service fee not to exceed 2 percent per year on the outstanding balance of the part requiring special servicing.

(c) Out-of-pocket expenses. The Lender may collect from the applicant necessary out-of-pocket expenses such as filing or recording fees.

(d) Late payment fee. The Lender may charge the Borrower a late payment fee not to exceed 5 percent of the regular loan payment.

(e) No prepayment fee. The Lender may not charge a fee for full or partial prepayment of a loan.

§ 120.222 Fees which the Lender or Associate may not collect from the Borrower or share with third parties.

The Lender or its Associate may not:

(a) Require the applicant or Borrower to pay the Lender, an Associate, or any party designated by either, any fees or charges for goods or services, including insurance, as a condition for obtaining an SBA guaranteed loan (unless permitted by this part);

(b) Charge an applicant any commitment, bonus, broker, commission, referral or similar fee;

(c) Charge points or add-on interest;
§ 120.300 Share any premium received from the sale of an SBA guaranteed loan in the secondary market with a Service Provider, packager, or other loan-referral source; or
(e) Charge the Borrower for legal services, unless they are hourly charges for requested services actually rendered.

Subpart C—Special Purpose Loans

§ 120.300 Statutory authority.
Congress has authorized several special purpose programs in various subsections of section 7(a) of the Act. Generally, 7(a) loan policies, eligibility requirements and credit criteria enumerated in subpart B of this part apply to these programs. The sections of this subpart prescribe the special conditions applying to each special purpose program. As with other business loans, special purpose loans are available only to the extent funded by annual appropriations.

DISABLED ASSISTANCE LOAN PROGRAM (DAL)

§ 120.310 What assistance is available for the disabled?
Section 7(a)(10) of the Act authorizes SBA to guarantee or make direct loans to the disabled. SBA distinguishes two kinds of assistance:
(a) DAL–1. DAL–1 Financial Assistance is available to non-profit public or private organizations for disabled individuals that employ such individuals; or
(b) DAL–2. DAL–2 Financial Assistance is available to:
(1) Small businesses wholly owned by disabled individuals; and
(2) Disabled individuals to establish, acquire, or operate a small business.

§ 120.311 Definitions.
(a) Organization for the disabled means one which:
(1) Is organized under federal or state law to operate in the interest of disabled individuals;
(2) Is non-profit;
(3) Employs disabled individuals for seventy-five percent of the time needed to produce commodities or services for sale; and
(4) Complies with occupational and safety standards prescribed by the Department of Labor.
(b) Disabled individual means a person who has a permanent physical, mental or emotional impairment, defect, ailment, disease or disability which limits the type of employment for which the person would otherwise be qualified.

§ 120.312 DAL–1 use of proceeds and other program conditions.
(a) DAL–1 applicants must submit appropriate documents to establish program eligibility.
(b) Generally, applicants may use loan proceeds for any 7(a) loan purposes. Loan proceeds may not be used:
(1) To purchase or construct facilities if construction grants and mortgage assistance are available from another Federal source; or
(2) For supportive services (expenses incurred by a DAL–1 organization to subsidize wages of low producers, health and rehabilitation services, management, training, education, and housing of disabled workers).
(c) SBA does not consider a DAL–1 organization to have a conflict of interest if one or more of its Associates is an Associate of the Lender.

§ 120.313 DAL–2 use of proceeds and other program conditions.
(a) The DAL–2 loan proceeds may be used for any 7(a) loan purposes.
(b) An applicant may use DAL–2 loan proceeds to acquire an eligible small business without complying with the change of ownership conditions in §120.202.
(c) A DAL–2 applicant must submit evidence from a physician, psychiatrist, or other qualified professional as to the permanent nature of the disability and the limitation it places on the applicant.

§ 120.314 Resolving doubts about creditworthiness.
For the purpose of the DAL Program, SBA shall resolve doubts concerning the creditworthiness of an applicant in favor of the applicant. However, the applicant must present satisfactory evidence of repayment ability. Personal
§ 120.315 Interest rate and loan limit.

The interest rate on direct DAL loans is three percent. There is an administrative limit of $150,000 on a direct DAL loan.

§ 120.320 Policy.

Section 7(a)(11) of the Act authorizes SBA to guarantee or make direct loans to establish, preserve or strengthen small business concerns:

(a) Located in an area having high unemployment according to the Department of Labor;

(b) Located in an area in which a high percentage of individuals have a low income inadequate to satisfy basic family needs; and

(c) More than 50 percent owned by low income individuals.

§ 120.330 Who is eligible for an energy conservation loan?

SBA may make or guarantee loans to assist a small business to design, engineer, manufacture, distribute, market, install, or service energy devices or techniques designed to conserve the Nation’s energy resources.

§ 120.331 What devices or techniques are eligible for a loan?

Eligible energy conservation devices or techniques include:

(a) Solar thermal equipment;

(b) Photovoltaic cells and related equipment;

(c) A product or service which increases the energy efficiency of existing equipment, methods of operation or systems which use fossil fuels, and which is on the Energy Conservation Measures list of the Secretary of Energy;

(d) Equipment producing energy from wood, biological waste, grain or other biomass energy sources;

(e) Equipment for cogeneration of energy, district heating or production of energy from industrial waste;

(f) Hydroelectric power equipment;

(g) Wind energy conversion equipment; and

(h) Engineering, architectural, consulting, or other professional services necessary or appropriate for any of the devices or techniques in paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section.

§ 120.332 What are the eligible uses of proceeds?

(a) Acquire property. The Borrower may use the loan proceeds to acquire land necessary for imminent plant construction, buildings, machinery, equipment, furniture, fixtures, facilities, supplies, and material needed to accomplish any of the eligible program purposes in §120.330.

(b) Research and development. Up to 30% of loan proceeds may be used for research and development:

(1) Of an existing product or service; or

(2) A new product or service.

(c) Working capital. The Borrower may use proceeds for working capital for entering or expanding in the energy conservation market.

§ 120.333 Are there any special credit criteria?

In addition to regular credit evaluation criteria, SBA shall weigh the greater risk associated with energy projects. SBA shall consider such factors as quality of the product or service, technical qualifications of the applicant’s management, sales projections, and financial status.

§ 120.340 What is the Export Working Capital Program (EWCP)?

Under the EWCP, SBA guarantees short-term working capital loans made by participating lenders to exporters (section 7(a)(14) of the Act). Loan maturities may be for up to three years with annual renewals. Proceeds can be used only to finance export transactions. Loans can be for single or multiple export transactions. An export transaction is the production and payment associated with a sale of goods or services to a foreign buyer.
§ 120.341 Who is eligible?

In addition to the eligibility criteria applicable to all 7(a) loans, an applicant must be in business for one full year at the time of application, but not necessarily in the exporting business. SBA may waive this requirement if the applicant has sufficient export trade experience or other managerial experience.

§ 120.342 What are eligible uses of proceeds?

Loan proceeds may be used:
(a) To acquire inventory;
(b) To pay the manufacturing costs of goods for export;
(c) To purchase goods or services for export;
(d) To support standby letters of credit;
(e) For pre-shipment working capital; and
(f) For post-shipment foreign accounts receivable financing.

§ 120.343 Collateral.

A Borrower must give SBA a first security interest sufficient to cover 100 percent of the EWCP loan amount (such as insured accounts receivable or letters of credit). Collateral must be located in the United States, its territories or possessions.

§ 120.344 Unique requirements of the EWCP.

(a) An applicant must submit cash flow projections to support the need for the loan and the ability to repay. After the loan is made, the loan recipient must submit continual progress reports.
(b) SBA does not limit the amount of extraordinary servicing fees, as referenced in §120.221(b), under the EWCP.
(c) SBA does not prescribe the interest rates for the EWCP, but will monitor these rates for reasonableness.

INTERNATIONAL TRADE LOANS

§ 120.345 Policy.

Section 7(a)(16) of the Act authorizes SBA to guarantee loans to small businesses that are:
(a) Engaged or preparing to engage in international trade; or
(b) Adversely affected by import competition.

§ 120.346 Eligibility.

(a) An applicant must establish that:
(1) The loan proceeds will significantly expand an existing export market or develop new export markets; or
(2) The applicant business is adversely affected by import competition; and
(3) Upgrading facilities or equipment will improve the applicant’s competitive position.
(b) The applicant must have a business plan reasonably supporting its projected export sales.

§ 120.347 Use of proceeds.

The Borrower may use loan proceeds to acquire, construct, renovate, modernize, improve, or expand facilities and equipment to be used in the United States to produce goods or services involved in international trade, and to develop and penetrate foreign markets.

§ 120.348 Amount of guarantee.

SBA can guarantee up to $1,250,000 for a combination of fixed-asset financing and working capital, supplies and EWCP assistance. The fixed-asset portion of the loan cannot exceed $1,000,000 and the non-fixed-asset portion cannot exceed $750,000.

QUALIFIED EMPLOYEE TRUSTS (ESOP)

§ 120.350 Policy.

Section 7(a)(15) of the Act authorizes SBA to guarantee a loan to a qualified employee trust ("ESOP") to:
(a) Help finance the growth of its employer’s small business; or
(b) Purchase ownership or voting control of the employer.

§ 120.351 Definitions.

All terms specific to ESOPs have the same definition for purposes of this section as in the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) Code (title 26 of the United States Code) or regulations (26 CFR chapter I).

§ 120.352 Use of proceeds.

Loan proceeds may be used for two purposes.
§ 120.376 Other conditions of eligibility.

(a) Management and daily operations of the business must be directed by one or more of the veteran owners whose veteran status was used to qualify for the loan.

(b) This direct loan program is available only if private sector financing and guaranteed loans are not available.

(c) A veteran may qualify only once for this program on a direct loan basis.

POUTION CONTROL PROGRAM

§ 120.370 Policy.

Section 7(a)(12) of the Act authorizes SBA to guarantee loans up to $1,000,000 to an eligible small business to plan, design or install a pollution control facility. An applicant must meet the eligibility requirements for 7(a) loans.

LOANS TO PARTICIPANTS IN THE 8(A) PROGRAM

§ 120.375 Policy.

Section 7(a)(20) of the Act authorizes SBA to provide direct (unilaterally or together with Lenders) or guaranteed loans to firms participating in the 8(a) Program.

§ 120.376 Special requirements.

The following special conditions apply (otherwise, 7(a) loan eligibility criteria apply):

(a) The Associate Administrator of Minority Enterprise Development (“MED”) may waive the direct loan administrative ceiling of $150,000, and raise it to $750,000.

(b) The SBA portion of a guaranteed loan must not exceed $750,000.

(c) The interest rate on a guaranteed loan shall be the same as on 7(a) guaranteed business loans. The interest rate on a direct loan shall be one percent less than on a regular direct loan.

(d) For a direct loan or SBA’s portion of an immediate participation loan, SBA shall subordinate its security interest on all collateral to other debt of the applicant.
§ 120.377 Use of proceeds.

The loan proceeds shall not be used for debt refinancing. Only a manufacturing concern may use loan proceeds for working capital.

DEFENSE ECONOMIC TRANSITION ASSISTANCE

§ 120.380 Program.

Section 7(a)(21) of the Act authorizes SBA to guarantee loans to help eligible small businesses transition from defense to civilian markets, or eligible individuals adversely impacted by base closures or defense cutbacks to acquire or open and operate a small business.

§ 120.381 Eligibility.

(a) Eligible small businesses. A small business is eligible if it has been detrimentally impacted by the closure (or substantial reduction) of a Department of Defense installation, or the termination (or substantial reduction) of a Department of Defense Program on which the small business was a prime contractor, subcontractor, or supplier at any tier.

(b) Eligible individual. An eligible individual, for purposes of this program, includes the following persons involuntarily separated from their position or voluntarily terminated under a program offering inducements to encourage early retirement:

(1) A member of the Armed Forces of the United States (honorably discharged);

(2) A civilian employee of the Department of Defense; or

(3) An employee of a prime contractor, subcontractor, or supplier at any tier of a Department of Defense program.

(c) Defense loan and technical assistance (DELTA). The DELTA program provides financial and technical assistance to defense dependent small businesses which have been adversely affected by defense reductions. The goal of the program is to assist these businesses to diversify into the commercial market while remaining part of the defense industrial base. Complete information on eligibility and other rules is available from each SBA district office.

§ 120.382 Repayment ability.

SBA shall resolve reasonable doubts concerning the small business’ proposed business plan for transition to non-defense-related markets in favor of the loan applicant in determining the sound value of the proposed loan.

§ 120.383 Restrictions on loan processing.

Since greater risk may be associated with a loan to an applicant under this program, a Certified Lender or Preferred Lender shall not make a defense economic assistance loan under the PLP or CLP programs.

CAPLINES PROGRAM

§ 120.390 Revolving credit.

(a) CapLines finances eligible small businesses’ short-term, revolving and non-revolving working-capital needs. SBA regulations governing the 7(a) loan program govern business loans made under this program. Under CapLines, SBA generally can guarantee up to $750,000.

(b) CapLines proceeds can be used to finance the cyclical, recurring, or other identifiable short-term operating capital needs of small businesses. Proceeds can be used to create current assets or used to provide financing against the current assets that already exist.

BUILDERS LOAN PROGRAM

§ 120.391 What is the Builders Loan Program?

Under section 7(a)(9) of the Act, SBA may make or guarantee loans to finance small general contractors to construct or rehabilitate residential or commercial property for resale. This program provides an exception under specified conditions to the general rule against financing investment property. “Construct” and “rehabilitate” mean only work done on-site to the structure, utility connections and landscaping.

§ 120.392 Who may apply?

A construction contractor or homebuilder with a past history of profitable construction or rehabilitation projects of comparable type and size
§ 120.393 Are there special application requirements?

(a) An applicant must submit documentation from:
   (1) A mortgage lender indicating that permanent mortgage money is available to qualified purchasers to buy such properties;
   (2) A real estate broker indicating that a market exists for the proposed building and that it will be compatible with its neighborhood; and
   (3) An architect, appraiser or engineer agreeing to make inspections and certifications to support interim disbursements.

(b) The Borrower may substitute a letter from a qualified Lender for one or more of the letters.

§ 120.394 What are the eligible uses of proceeds?

A Borrower must use the loan proceeds solely to acquire, construct or substantially rehabilitate an individual residential or commercial building for sale. “Substantial” means rehabilitation expenses of more than one-third of the purchase price or fair market value at the time of the application. A Borrower may use up to 20 percent of the proceeds to acquire land, and up to 5 percent for community improvements such as curbs and sidewalks.

§ 120.395 What is SBA’s collateral position?

SBA will require a lien on the building which must be in no less than a second position.

§ 120.396 What is the term of the loan?

The loan must not exceed sixty (60) months plus the estimated time to complete construction or rehabilitation.

§ 120.397 Are there any special restrictions?

The borrower must not use loan proceeds to purchase vacant land for possible future construction or to operate or hold rental property for future rehabilitation. SBA may allow rental of the property only if the rental will improve the ability to sell the property. The sale must be a legitimate change of ownership.

Subpart D—Lenders

§ 120.400 Loan Guarantee Agreements.

SBA may enter into a Loan Guarantee Agreement with a Lender to make deferred participation (guaranteed) loans. Such an agreement does not obligate SBA to participate in any specific proposed loan that a Lender may submit. The existence of a Loan Guarantee Agreement does not limit SBA’s rights to deny a specific loan or establish general policies. See also §§120.441(b) and 120.451(d) concerning Supplemental Guarantee Agreements.

PARTICIPATION CRITERIA

§ 120.410 Requirements for all participating Lenders.

A Lender must:

(a) Have a continuing ability to evaluate, process, close, disburse, service and liquidate small business loans;

(b) Be open to the public for the making of such loans (not be a financing subsidiary, engaged primarily in financing the operations of an affiliate);

(c) Have continuing good character and reputation, and otherwise meet and maintain the ethical requirements of §120.140;

(d) Be supervised and examined by a State or Federal regulatory authority, satisfactory to SBA; and

(e) In order to make Low Documentation loans, be:
   (1) A bank or thrift institution which has executed an SBA Form 750, Loan Guaranty Agreement, and which has at least 20 qualified loans outstanding as of the call report date closest to the date of its fiscal year end, or
   (2) An institution other than a bank or thrift institution which has executed an SBA Form 750, Loan Guaranty Agreement, and which has at least 20 qualified loans outstanding as of its latest fiscal year end. For purposes of this paragraph (e), a qualified loan is one which was initially approved in the amount of $100,000 or less and is classified as a commercial, industrial or
§ 120.411 Commercial real estate loan for purposes of call reporting. A lender may request an exception to the requirements of this paragraph (e) from the SBA Associate Administrator for Financial Assistance.


§ 120.411 Preferences.

An agreement to participate under the Act may not establish any Preferences in favor of the Lender.

§ 120.412 Other services Lenders may provide Borrowers.

Subject to §120.140 Lenders, their Associates or the designees of either may provide services to and contract for goods with a Borrower only after full disbursement of the loan to the small business or to an account not controlled by the Lender, its Associate, or the designee. A Lender, an Associate, or a designee providing such services must do so under a written contract with the small business, based on time and hourly charges, and must maintain time and billing records for examination by SBA. Fees cannot exceed those charged by established professional consultants providing similar services. See also §120.195.

§ 120.413 Advertisement of relationship with SBA.

A Lender may refer in its advertising to its participation with SBA. The advertising may not:
(a) State or imply that the Lender, or any of its Borrowers, has or will receive preferential treatment from SBA;
(b) Be false or misleading; or
(c) Make use of SBA’s seal.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 120.414 SBA access to Lender files.

A Lender must allow SBA’s authorized representatives, during normal business hours, access to its files to review, inspect and copy all records and documents relating to SBA guaranteed loans.

Currency Rate and the SBA 7(a) loan portfolio Currency Rate as calculated by dividing the securitizer’s Currency Rate by the SBA 7(a) loan portfolio Currency Rate.

(f) Good Standing—A Lender is in “good standing” with SBA if it:

(1) Is in compliance with all applicable:
   (i) Laws and regulations;
   (ii) Policies; and
   (iii) Procedures;
   (2) Is in good financial condition as determined by SBA;
   (3) Is not under investigation or indictment for, or has not been convicted of, or had a judgment entered against him for a felony or fraud, or charges relating to a breach of trust or violation of a law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or relationships; and
   (4) Does not have any officer or employee who has been under investigation or indictment for, or has been convicted of, or had a judgment entered against him for a felony or fraud, or charges relating to a breach of trust or violation of a law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or relationships unless, the Securitization Committee has determined that good standing exists despite the existence of such person.

(g) Initial Currency Rate—The Initial Currency Rate (ICR) is the securitizer’s benchmark Currency Rate. SBA will calculate the securitizer’s ICR as of the end of the calendar quarter immediately prior to the first securitization completed after April 12, 1999. This calculation will include all 7(a) loans which are outstanding and were approved in any fiscal year prior to SBA’s current fiscal year. Each quarter, SBA will compare each securitizer’s Currency Rate to its ICR.

(h) Initial Currency Rate Percentage—The Initial Currency Rate Percentage (ICRP) measures the relationship between a securitizer’s Initial Currency Rate and the SBA 7(a) loan portfolio Currency Rate at the time of the first securitization after April 12, 1999. The ICRP is calculated by dividing the securitizer’s Currency Rate by the SBA 7(a) loan portfolio Currency Rate. SBA will calculate the securitizer’s ICRP as of the end of the calendar quarter immediately prior to the first securitization completed after April 12, 1999.

(i) Loss Rate—A securitizer’s “loss rate,” as calculated by SBA, is the aggregate principal amount of the securitizer’s 7(a) loans determined uncollectable by SBA for the most recent 10-year period, excluding SBA’s current fiscal year activity, divided by the aggregate original principal amount of 7(a) loans disbursed by the securitizer during that period.

(j) Nondepository Institution—A “nondepository institution” is a Small Business Lending Company (“SBLC”) regulated by SBA or a Business and Industrial Development Company (“BIDCO”) or other nondepository institution participating in SBA’s 7(a) program.

(k) Securitization—A “securitization” is the pooling and sale of the unguaranteed portion of SBA guaranteed loans to a trust, special purpose vehicle, or other mechanism, and the issuance of securities backed by those loans to investors in either a private placement or public offering.

§ 120.421 Which Lenders may securitize?

All SBA participating Lenders may securitize subject to SBA’s approval.

§ 120.422 Are all securitizations subject to this subpart?

All securitizations are subject to this subpart. Until additional regulations are promulgated, SBA will consider securitizations involving multiple Lenders on a case by case basis, using the conditions in §120.425 as a starting point. SBA will consider securitizations by affiliates as single Lender securitizations for purposes of this subpart.

§ 120.423 Which 7(a) loans may a Lender securitize?

A Lender may only securitize 7(a) loans that will be fully disbursed within 90 days of the securitization’s closing date. If the amount of a fully disbursed loan increases after a securitization settles, the Lender must retain the increased amount.
§ 120.424 What are the basic conditions a Lender must meet to securitize?

To securitize, a Lender must:

(a) Be in good standing as determined by the Associate Administrator for Financial Assistance (AA/FA);

(b) Use a securitization structure which is satisfactory to SBA;

(c) Use documents acceptable to SBA, including SBA’s model multi-party agreement, as amended from time to time;

(d) Obtain SBA’s written consent, which it may withhold in its sole discretion, prior to executing a commitment to securitize; and

(e) Cause the original notes to be stored at the FTA, as defined in §120.600, and other loan documents to be stored with a party approved by SBA.

§ 120.425 What are the minimum elements that SBA will require before consenting to a securitization?

A securitizer must comply with the following three conditions:

(a) Capital Requirement—All securitizers must be considered to be “well capitalized” by their regulator. SBA will consider a depository institution to be in compliance with this section if it meets the definition of “well capitalized” used by its bank regulator. SBA’s capital requirement does not change the requirements that banks already meet. For nondepository institutions, SBA, as the regulator, will consider a non-depository institution to be “well capitalized” if it maintains a minimum unencumbered paid in capital and paid in surplus equal to at least 10 percent of its assets, excluding the guaranteed portion of 7(a) loans. The capital charge applies to the remaining balance outstanding on the unguaranteed portion of the securitizer’s 7(a) loans in its portfolio and in any securitization pools. Each nondepository institution must submit annual audited financial statements demonstrating that it has met SBA’s capital requirement.

(b) Subordinated Tranche—A securitizer or its wholly owned subsidiary must retain a tranche of the securities issued in the securitization (subordinated tranche) equal to the greater of two times the securitizer’s Loss Rate or 2 percent of the principal balance outstanding at the time of securitization of the unguaranteed portion of the loans in the securitization. This tranche must be subordinate to all other securities issued in the securitization including other subordinated tranches. The securitizer or its wholly owned subsidiary may not sell, pledge, transfer, assign, sell participations in, or otherwise convey the subordinated tranche during the first 6 years after the closing date of the securitization. The securities evidencing the subordinated tranche must bear a legend stating that the securities may not be sold until 6 years after the issue date. SBA’s Securitization Committee may modify the formula for determining the tranche size for a securitizer creating a securitization from a pool of loans located in a region affected by a severe economic downturn if the Securitization Committee concludes that enforcing this section might exacerbate the adverse economic conditions in the region. SBA will work with the securitizer to verify the accuracy of the data used to make the Loss Rate calculation.

(c) PLP Privilege Suspension.

(1) Suspension: If a securitizer’s Currency Rate declines, SBA may suspend the securitizer’s PLP unilateral loan approval privileges (PLP approval privileges) if the decline from the securitizer’s ICR is more than the Benchmark Number as published in the FEDERAL REGISTER from time to time and the securitizer’s Currency Rate Percentage is less than its ICRP. The securitizer will first be placed on probation for one quarter. If, at the end of the probationary quarter the securitizer has not met either of the following conditions in paragraph (c)(1)(i) or (c)(1)(ii) of this section, SBA will suspend the securitizer’s PLP approval privileges and will not approve additional securitization requests from that securitizer. SBA will provide written notice at least 10 days prior to the effective date of suspension. The suspension will last a minimum of 3 months. During the suspension period, the securitizer must use Certified VerDate 11<MAY>2000 01:40 Jan 18, 2002 Jkt 197039 PO 00000 Frm 00232 Fmt 8010 Sfmt 8010 Y:\SGML\197039T.XXX pfrm01 PsN: 197039T
§ 120.431 Lender or Regular Procedures to process 7(a) loan applications. The prohibition will end if, at the end of the probationary quarter: (i) the securitizer has improved its Currency Rate to above its ICR less the Benchmark Number; or (ii) its Currency Rate Percentage is either the same or greater than its ICRP.

(2) Reinstatement: The suspension will remain in effect until the securitizer meets either the condition in paragraph (c)(1)(i) or (c)(1)(ii) of this section. If the securitizer meets either condition by the end of the 3-month period, notifies SBA with acceptable documentation, and SBA agrees, SBA will reinstate the securitizer. If the securitizer cannot meet either condition, the suspension will remain in effect. The securitizer may then petition the SBA Securitization Committee (Committee) for reinstatement. The Committee will consider the economic conditions in the securitizer’s market area, the securitizer’s efforts to improve its Currency Rate, and the quality of the securitizer’s 7(a) loan packages and servicing. The Committee may consider only one petition by a securitizer per quarter.

(3) The Benchmark Number. SBA will monitor the Benchmark Number. If economic conditions or policy considerations warrant, SBA may modify the Benchmark Number to protect the safety and soundness of the 7(a) program.

(4) Data. SBA will calculate Currency Rate and Currency Rate Percentages quarterly from financial information that securitizers provide. SBA will work with a securitizer to verify the accuracy of the data used to make the Currency Rate calculation.


§ 120.426 What action will SBA take if a securitizer transfers the subordinated tranche prior to the termination of the holding period?

If a securitizer transfers the subordinated tranche prior to the termination of the holding period, SBA will suspend immediately the securitizer’s ability to make new 7(a) loans. The securitizer will have 30 calendar days to submit an explanation to SBA’s Securitization Committee (“Committee”). The Committee will have 30 calendar days to review the explanation and determine whether to lift the suspension. If an explanation is not received within 30 calendar days or the explanation is not satisfactory to the Committee, SBA may transfer the servicing of the applicable securitized loans, including the securitizers’ servicing fee on the guaranteed and unguaranteed portions and the premium protection fee on the guaranteed portion, to another SBA participating Lender.

§ 120.427 Will SBA approve a securitization application from a capital impaired Securitizer?

If a securitizer does not maintain the level of capital required by this subpart, SBA will not approve a securitization application from that securitizer.

§ 120.428 What happens to a securitizer’s other PLP responsibilities if SBA suspends its PLP approval privilege?

The securitizer must continue to service and liquidate loans according to its PLP Supplemental Agreement.

OTHER CONVEYANCES

SOURCE: Sections 120.430 through 120.435 appear at 64 FR 6509, 6510, Feb. 10, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 120.430 What conveyances are covered by §§ 120.430 through 120.435?

Sections 120.430 through 120.435 cover all other transactions in which a Lender sells, sells a participating interest in, or pledges an SBA guaranteed loan other than for the purpose of securitizing and other than conveyances covered under Subpart F, Secondary Market, of this part.

§ 120.431 Which Lenders may sell, sell participations in, or pledge 7(a) loans?

All Lenders may sell, sell participations in, or pledge 7(a) loans in accordance with this subpart.
§ 120.432 Under what circumstances does this subpart permit sales of, or sales of participating interests in, 7(a) loans?

(a) A Lender may sell all of its interest in a 7(a) loan to another Lender operating under a current Loan Guarantee Agreement (SBA Form 750) ("participating Lender"), with SBA’s prior written consent, which SBA may withhold in its sole discretion. A Lender may not sell any of its interest in a 7(a) loan to a nonparticipating Lender. The purchasing Lender must take possession of the promissory note and other loan documents, and service the sold 7(a) loan. The purchasing Lender purchases the loan subject to SBA’s existing rights including its right to deny liability on its guarantee as provided in §120.524. After purchase, the purchased loan will be subject to the purchasing Lender’s Loan Guarantee Agreement.

(b) A Lender may sell, or sell a participating interest in, a part of a 7(a) loan to another participating Lender. If the Lender retains ownership of a part of the unguaranteed portion of the loan equal to at least 10 percent of the outstanding principal balance of the loan, the Lender must give SBA prior written notice of the transaction, and the Lender must continue to hold the note and service the loan. If a Lender retains ownership of a part of the unguaranteed portion of the loan equal to less than 10 percent of the outstanding principal balance of the loan, the Lender must obtain SBA’s prior written consent to the transaction, which consent SBA may withhold in its sole discretion. The Lender must continue to hold the note and other loan documents, and service the loan unless SBA otherwise agrees in its sole discretion. For purposes of determining the percentage of ownership a Lender has retained, SBA will not consider a Lender to be the owner of the part of a loan in which it has sold a participating interest.

§ 120.433 What are SBA’s other requirements for sales and sales of participating interests?

SBA requires the following:

(a) The Lender must be in good standing as determined by the AA/FA; and

(b) In transactions requiring SBA’s consent, all documentation must be satisfactory to SBA, including, if SBA determines it to be necessary, a multi-party agreement.

§ 120.434 What are SBA’s requirements for loan pledges?

(a) Except as set forth in §120.435, SBA must give its prior written consent to all pledges of any portion of a 7(a) loan, which consent SBA may withhold in its sole discretion;

(b) The Lender must be in good standing as determined by the AA/FA;

(c) All loan documents must be satisfactory to SBA and must include a multi-party agreement among SBA, Lender, the pledgee, FTA and such other parties as SBA determines are necessary;

(d) The Lender must use the proceeds of the loan secured by the 7(a) loans only for financing 7(a) loans and for costs and expenses directly connected with the borrowing for which the loans are pledged;

(e) The Lender must remain the servicer of the loans and retain possession of all loan documents other than the original promissory notes;

(f) The Lender must deposit the original promissory notes at the FTA; and

(g) The Lender must retain an economic interest in and the ultimate risk of loss on the unguaranteed portion of the loans.

§ 120.435 Which loan pledges do not require notice to or consent by SBA?

Notwithstanding the provisions of §120.434(d), 7(a) loans may be pledged for the following purposes without notice to or consent by SBA:

(a) Treasury tax and loan accounts;

(b) The deposit of public funds;

(c) Uninvested trust funds;

(d) Discount borrowings at a Federal Reserve Bank; or

(e) Advances by a Federal Home Loan Bank.
CERTIFIED LENDERS PROGRAM (CLP)

§ 120.440 What is the Certified Lenders Program?

Under the Certified Lenders Program (CLP), designated Lenders process, close, service, and may liquidate, SBA guaranteed loans. SBA gives priority to applications and servicing actions submitted by Lenders under this program, and will provide expedited loan processing or servicing. All other rules in this part 120 relating to the operations of Lenders apply to CLP Lenders.


§ 120.441 How does a Lender become a CLP Lender?

(a) An SBA field office may nominate a Lender or a Lender may request a field office to consider it for CLP status. SBA district directors may approve and renew a Lender’s CLP status. The district director will consider whether the Lender:

(1) Has the ability to process, close, service and liquidate loans;

(2) Has a satisfactory performance history with SBA, including the submission of complete and accurate loan guarantee application packages;

(3) Has an acceptable SBA purchase rate; and

(4) Has shown the ability to work well with the local SBA office.

(b) If the district director does not approve a request for CLP status, the Lender may appeal to the AA/FA, whose decision will be final. If SBA grants CLP status, it applies only in the field office that processed the CLP designation. A CLP Lender must execute a Supplemental Guarantee Agreement that will specify a term not to exceed two years.

§ 120.442 Suspension or revocation of CLP status.

The AA/FA may suspend or revoke CLP status upon written notice providing the reasons at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of the suspension or revocation. Reasons for suspension or revocation may include a loan performance record unacceptable to SBA, failure to make the required number of loans under the expedited procedures, or violations of applicable statutes, regulations or published SBA policies and procedures. A CLP Lender may appeal the suspension or revocation made under this section under procedures found in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA remains in effect pending resolution of the appeal.

PREFERRED LENDERS PROGRAM (PLP)

§ 120.450 What is the Preferred Lenders Program?

Under the Preferred Lenders Program (PLP), designated Lenders process, close, service, and liquidate SBA guaranteed loans with reduced requirements for documentation to and prior approval by SBA.

§ 120.451 How does a Lender become a PLP Lender?

(a) An SBA field office serving the area in which a Lender’s office is located can nominate the Lender, or a Lender can request a field office to consider it for PLP status. The SBA field office will forward its recommendation and supporting documentation to the AA/FA for final decision.

(b) In making its decision, SBA considers whether the Lender:

(1) Has the required ability to process, close, service and liquidate loans;

(2) Has the ability to develop and analyze complete loan packages; and

(3) Has a satisfactory performance history with SBA.

(c) If the Lender is approved, the AA/FA will designate the area in which it can make PLP loans.

(d) Before it can operate as a PLP Lender, the approved Lender must execute a Supplemental Guarantee Agreement, which will specify a term not to exceed two years.

(e) When a PLP’s Supplemental Guarantee Agreement expires, SBA may recertify it as a PLP Lender for an additional term not to exceed two years. Prior to recertification, SBA will review a PLP Lender’s loans, policies and procedures. The recertification decision of the AA/FA is final.
§ 120.452

(f) A PLP Lender may request an expansion of the territory in which it can process PLP loans by submitting its request to a loan processing center. The center will obtain the recommendation of each SBA office in the area into which the PLP Lender would like to expand its PLP operations. The center will forward the recommendations to the AA/FA for final decision. If a PLP Lender is not a CLP Lender in a territory into which it seeks to expand its PLP status, it automatically obtains CLP status in that territory when it is granted PLP status for the territory.

§ 120.453 What are the requirements of PLP loan processing?

(a) Subparts A and B of this part govern the making of PLP loans, except for the following:

(1) Certain types of businesses, loans, and loan programs are not eligible for PLP, as detailed in published SBA policy and procedures.

(2) A Lender may not make a PLP business loan which reduces its existing credit exposure for any Borrower, except in cases where an interim loan(s) has been made for other than real estate construction purposes to the Borrower which was approved by the Lender within 90 days of receipt of the issuance of a subsequent PLP loan number.

(3) SBA will not guarantee more than the specified statutory percentage of any PLP loan.

(b) A PLP Lender notifies SBA of its approval of a PLP loan by submitting to SBA’s loan processing center appropriate documentation signed by two of the PLP’s authorized representatives. SBA will attach the SBA guarantee and notify the PLP Lender of the SBA loan number (if it does not identify a problem with eligibility, and funds are available).

(c) The PLP Lender is responsible for all PLP loan decisions regarding eligibility (including size) and creditworthiness. The PLP Lender is also responsible for confirming that all PLP loan closing decisions are correct, and that it has complied with all requirements of law and SBA regulations.

§ 120.454 PLP performance review.

SBA may review the performance of a PLP Lender. SBA may charge the PLP Lender a fee to cover the costs of this review.

§ 120.455 Suspension or revocation of PLP status.

The AA/FA may suspend or revoke PLP status upon written notice providing the reasons at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of the suspension or revocation. Reasons for suspension or revocation may include loan performance unacceptable to SBA, failure to make the required number of loans under the expedited procedures, or violations of applicable statutes, regulations or published SBA policies and procedures. A PLP Lender may appeal the suspension or revocation made under this section under procedures found in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA remains in effect pending resolution of the appeal.
§ 120.470 What is an SBLC?

A Small Business Lending Company (SBLC) is a nondepository lending institution licensed by SBA. SBA supervises, examines, and regulates SBLCs. An SBLC is subject to all applicable SBA regulations, including those governing Lenders. SBA has imposed a moratorium on licensing new SBLCs since January, 1982.

(a) An SBLC may only make:

(1) Loans under section 7(a) (except section 7(a)(13)) of the Act in participation with SBA; and/or

(2) SBA guaranteed loans to microlenders in the SBA Microloan program (see subpart G of this part). Such loans are subject to the same conditions as guaranteed loans made to SBA-designated microlenders by SBA participating Lenders.

(b) In addition to complying with §§120.400 through 120.413, an SBLC must meet the following requirements:

(1) Business structure. It must be a corporation (profit or non-profit).

(2) Written agreement. It must sign a written agreement with SBA.

(3) Capital structure. It must have unencumbered paid-in capital and paid-in surplus of at least $1,000,000, or ten percent of the aggregate of its share of all outstanding loans, whichever is more.

(4) Capital impairment. It must avoid capital impairment at all times. Impairment exists if the retained earnings deficit of an SBLC exceeds 50 percent of combined paid-in capital and paid-in-surplus, excluding treasury stock. An SBLC must give SBA prompt written notice of any capital impairment within 30 calendar days of the month-end financial report that first reflects the impairment. Until the impairment is cured, an SBLC may not present any loans to SBA for guarantee.

(5) Issuance of securities. Without prior written SBA approval, it must not issue any securities (including stock options and debt securities) except stock dividends and common stock issued for cash or direct obligations of, or obligations fully guaranteed as to principal and interest by, the United States.

(6) Voluntary capital reduction. Without prior written SBA approval, it must not voluntarily reduce its capital, or purchase and hold more than 2 percent of any class or combination of classes of its stock.

(7) Reserves for losses. It must maintain a reserve in the amount of anticipated losses on loans and receivables.

(8) Internal control. It must adopt a plan designed to safeguard its funds and other assets, to assure the reliability of its personnel, and to maintain the accuracy of its financial data.

(9) Dual control. It must maintain dual control over disbursement of funds and withdrawal of securities. An SBLC may disburse funds only by checks or wire transfers authorized by signatures of two or more officers covered by the SBLC’s fidelity bond, except that checks in an amount of $1,000 or less may be signed by one bonded officer. There must be two or more bonded officers, or one bonded officer and a bonded employee to open safe deposit boxes or withdraw securities from safekeeping. The SBLC shall furnish to each depository bank, custodian, or entity providing safe deposit boxes a certified copy of the resolution implementing these control procedures.

(10) Fidelity insurance. It must maintain a Brokers Blanket Bond, Standard Form 14, or Finance Companies Blanket Bond, Standard Form 15, or such other form of coverage as SBA may approve, in a minimum amount of $500,000 executed by a surety holding a certificate of authority from the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 9304–9308.

(11) Common control. It must not control, be controlled by, or be under common control with, another SBLC. Without prior written SBA approval, an Associate of another SBLC or of any entity which directly or indirectly controls or is under common control with another SBLC.

(12) Management. An SBLC must employ full time professional management.

(13) Borrowed funds. Without SBA’s prior written approval, it must not be
§ 120.471 Records.

Each SBLC must comply with the following requirements concerning records:

(a) Maintenance of Records. It must maintain accurate and current financial records, including books of account, minutes of stockholder, directors, and executive committee meetings, and all documents and supporting materials relating to the SBLC’s transactions at its principal business office. Securities held by a custodian pursuant to a written agreement shall be exempt from this requirement.

(b) Preservation of records. (1) It must preserve in a manner permitting immediate retrieval the following documentation for the financial statements required by § 120.472 (and of the accompanying certified public accountant’s opinion), for the following specified periods:

(i) Preserve permanently:
(A) All general and subsidiary ledgers (or other records) reflecting asset, liability, capital stock and surplus, income, and expense accounts;
(B) All general and special journals (or other records forming the basis for entries in such ledgers); and
(C) The corporate charter, bylaws, application for determination of eligibility to participate with SBA, and all minutes books, capital stock certificates or stubs, stock ledgers, and stock transfer registers;

(ii) Preserve for at least 6 years following final disposition of the related loan:
(A) All applications for financing;
(B) Lending, participation, and escrow agreements;
(C) Financing instruments; and
(D) All other documents and supporting material relating to such loans, including correspondence.

(2) Records and other documents referred to in this section may be preserved electronically if the original is available for retrieval within a reasonable period.

§ 120.472 Reports to SBA.

An SBLC must submit the following to the AA/FA:

(a) An audited financial statement prepared by a certified public accountant within three months after the close of each fiscal year, and interim financial reports when requested by SBA;

(b) A report of any legal or administrative proceeding, by or against the SBLC, or against an officer, director, or employee of the SBLC for an alleged breach of official duty, within 10 days after initiating or learning of the proceeding, as well as notification of the terms of any settlement or final judgment (in addition to any reporting under applicable SBA Forms);

(c) Copies of any report furnished to its stockholders (including any prospectus, letter, or other publication concerning the financial operations of the SBLC);

(d) A summary of any changes in the SBLC’s organization or financing, such as:

(1) Any change in its name, address or telephone number;
(2) Any change in its charter, bylaws, or its officers or directors (to be accompanied by a statement of personal history on an approved SBA form);
(3) Any changes in capitalization (including those identified in § 120.470);
(4) Any changes affecting the eligibility of the SBLC to continue to participate as an SBLC; and
(5) Notice of a pledge of stock within 30 calendar days of the transaction if 10 percent or more of the stock is pledged by any person (or group of persons acting in concert) as collateral for indebtedness, and such pledge does not involve a transfer for which prior written approval of SBA is required under § 120.473;

(e) Such other reports as SBA may require from time to time by written directive.

§ 120.473 Change of ownership or control.

(a) Any change of ownership or control without prior written approval of
SBA is prohibited. An SBLC must request approval of any such change from the AA/FA. Pending the approval, the SBLC may not register the proposed new owners on its transfer books nor permit them to participate in any manner in the conduct of the SBLC’s affairs. Change of ownership or control includes:

(1) Any transfer of 10 percent or more of any class of the SBLC’s stock, and any agreement providing for such transfer;
(2) Any transfer that could result in the beneficial ownership by any person or group of persons acting in concert of 10 percent or more of any class of its stock, and any agreement providing for such transfer;
(3) Any merger, consolidation, or reorganization; or
(4) Any other transaction or agreement that transfers control of the SBLC.

(b) If transfer of ownership or control is subject to the approval of any State or Federal chartering, licensing, or other regulatory authority, copies of any documents filed with such authority must, at the same time, be transmitted to the AA/FA.

§ 120.474 Prohibited financing.
An SBLC may not make a loan to a small business that has received financing (or a commitment for financing) from an SBIC that is an Associate of the SBLC.

§ 120.475 Audits.
Every SBLC is subject to periodic audits by SBA’s Office of Inspector General, Auditing Division, and the cost of such audits will be assessed against the SBLC, except for the first audit. Fees are structured based on the SBLC’s assets as of the date of the latest audited financial statement submitted to SBA before the audit. The fee schedule is set forth in SBA’s Standard Operating Procedures manual.

§ 120.476 Suspension or revocation.
SBA may revoke or suspend an SBLC for a violation of law, these regulations, or any agreement with SBA. An appeal can be made following the procedures set forth in part 134 of this chapter.

Subpart E—Loan Administration

§ 120.500 General.
This subpart outlines the general loan administration policies applicable to loan servicing and liquidation.

SERVICING

§ 120.510 Servicing direct and immediate participation loans.
SBA services the direct loans that it makes. Generally, the Lender services immediate participation loans that it makes and in which SBA participates.

§ 120.511 Servicing guaranteed loans.
The Lender services guaranteed loans, holds the Loan Instruments and receives the Borrower’s payments of principal and interest.

§ 120.512 Who services the loan after SBA honors its guarantee?
Generally, after SBA honors its guarantee, the Lender must continue to hold the Loan Instruments and service and liquidate the loan. The Lender must execute a Certificate of Interest showing SBA’s percentage of the loan, and must submit a liquidation plan to SBA for each loan to be liquidated. If SBA elects to service or liquidate the loan, the Lender must assign the Loan Instruments to SBA.

§ 120.513 What servicing actions require the prior written consent of SBA?
Except as otherwise provided in a Supplemental Guarantee Agreement with the Lender, SBA must give its prior written consent before the Lender takes any of the following actions:

(a) Alters substantially the terms or conditions of any Loan Instrument (for example, any increase in the principal amount or change in the interest rate, or action conferring a Preference on the Lender);
(b) Releases collateral having a cumulative value in excess of 20 percent of the original loan amount;
(c) Accelerates the maturity of the note;
(d) Sues upon any Loan Instrument;
§ 120.520  Compromises or waives any claim against any Borrower, guarantor, obligor or standby creditor arising out of any Loan Instrument; or

(f) Increases the amount of any prior lien held by the Lender on the collateral securing the loan.

§ 120.520 When does SBA honor its guarantee?

(a) SBA, in its sole discretion, may purchase a guaranteed portion of a loan at any time. A Lender may demand in writing that SBA honor its guarantee if the Borrower is in default on any installment for more than 60 calendar days (or less if SBA agrees) and the default has not been cured. If a Borrower cures a default before a Lender requests purchase by SBA, the Lender’s right to request purchase on that default lapses.

(b) Purchase by SBA of the guaranteed portion does not waive any of SBA’s rights to recover money paid on the guarantee, based upon the Lender’s negligence, misconduct, or violation of this part, including those actions listed in §120.524(a), the Loan Guarantee Agreement or the Loan Instruments.

§ 120.521 What interest rate applies after SBA purchases its guaranteed portion?

When SBA purchases the guaranteed portion of a fixed interest rate loan, the rate of interest remains as stated in the note. On loans with a fluctuating interest rate, the interest rate that the Borrower owes will be at the rate in effect at the time of the earliest uncured payment default, or the rate in effect at the time of purchase (where no default has occurred).

§ 120.522 How much accrued interest does SBA pay to the Lender or Registered Holder when SBA purchases the guaranteed portion?

(a) Rate of interest. If SBA purchases the guaranteed portion from a Lender or from a Registered Holder (if sold in the Secondary Market), it will pay accrued interest at:

(1) The rate in the note if it is a fixed rate loan; or

(2) The rate in effect on the date of the earliest uncured payment default, or of SBA’s purchase (if there has been no default).

(b) Payment to Lender. If the Lender submits a complete purchase request to SBA within 120 days of the earliest uncured payment default, SBA will pay accrued interest to the Lender from the last interest paid-to-date up to the date of payment. If the Lender requests SBA to purchase after 120 days from the date of the earliest uncured payment default date, SBA will pay only 120 days of interest. For LowDoc loans, the interest paid to the Lender will be governed by the Supplemental Guarantee Agreement.

(c) Payment to Registered Holder. SBA will pay a Registered Holder all accrued interest up to the date of payment.

(d) Extension of the 120 day period. Before the 120 days expire, the SBA field office may extend the period if the Lender and SBA agree that the Borrower can cure the default within a reasonable and definite period of time or that the benefits from doing so otherwise will exceed the costs of SBA paying additional interest. If the 120 days have passed, only the AA/FA or designee can extend the period.

§ 120.523 What is the “earliest uncured payment default”?

The earliest uncured payment default is the date of the earliest failure by a Borrower to pay a regular installment of principal and/or interest when due. Payments made by the Borrower before a Lender makes its request to SBA to purchase are applied to the earliest uncured payment default. If the installment is paid in full, the earliest uncured payment default date will advance to the next unpaid installment date. If a Borrower makes any payment after the Lender makes its request to SBA to purchase, the earliest uncured payment default date does not change because the Lender has already exercised its right to request purchase.

§ 120.524 When is SBA released from liability on its guarantee?

(a) SBA is released from liability on a loan guarantee (in whole or in part,
within SBA’s exclusive discretion), if any of the events below occur:

(1) The Lender has failed to comply materially with any of the provisions of these regulations, the Loan Guarantee Agreement, or the Authorization;

(2) The Lender has failed to make, close, service, or liquidate a loan in a prudent manner;

(3) The Lender’s improper action or inaction has placed SBA at risk;

(4) The Lender has failed to disclose a material fact to SBA regarding a guaranteed loan in a timely manner;

(5) The Lender has misrepresented a material fact to SBA regarding a guaranteed loan;

(6) SBA has received a written request from the Lender to terminate the guarantee:

(7) The Lender has not paid the guarantee fee within the period required under SBA rules and regulations;

(8) The Lender has failed to request that SBA purchase a guarantee within 120 days after maturity of the loan;

(9) The Lender has failed to use required SBA forms or exact electronic copies; or

(10) The Borrower has paid the loan in full.

(b) If SBA determines, after purchasing its guaranteed portion of a loan, that any of the events set forth in paragraph (a) of this section occurred in connection with that loan, SBA is entitled to recover any money paid on the guarantee plus interest from the Lender responsible for those events.

(c) If the Lender’s loan documentation indicates that one or more of the events in paragraph (a) of this section may have occurred, SBA may undertake such investigation as it deems necessary to determine whether to honor or deny the guarantee, and may withhold a decision on whether to honor the guarantee until the completion of such investigation.

(d) Any information provided to SBA prior to Lender’s request for SBA to honor its guarantee shall not prejudice SBA’s right to deny liability for a guarantee if one or more of the events listed in paragraph (a) of this section occur.

(e) Unless SBA provides written notice to the contrary, the Lender remains responsible for all loan servicing and liquidation actions until SBA honors its guarantee in full.

DEFERMENT, EXTENSION OF MATURETY AND LOAN MORATORIUM

§ 120.530 Deferment of payment.

SBA may agree to defer payments on a business loan for a stated period of time, and use such other methods as it considers necessary and appropriate to help in the successful operation of the Borrower. This policy applies to all business loan programs, including 504 loans.

§ 120.531 Extension of maturity.

SBA may agree to extend the maturity of a loan for up to 10 years beyond its original maturity if the extension will aid in the orderly repayment of the loan.

§ 120.532 What is a loan Moratorium?

SBA may assume a Borrower’s obligation to repay principal and interest on a loan by agreeing to make the payments to the Lender on behalf of the Borrower under terms and conditions set by SBA. This relief is called a “Moratorium.” Complete information concerning this program may be obtained from local SBA offices.

LIQUIDATION OF COLLATERAL

§ 120.540 What are SBA’s policies concerning the liquidation of collateral and the sale of business loans and physical disaster assistance loans, physical disaster business loans and economic injury disaster loans?

(a) Liquidation policy. SBA or the Lender may liquidate collateral securing a loan if the loan is in default or there is no reasonable prospect that the loan can be repaid within a reasonable period.

(b) Sale and conversion of loans. Without the consent of the Borrower, SBA may:

(1) Sell a direct loan;

(2) Convert a guaranteed or immediate participation loan to a direct loan; or

(3) Convert an immediate participation loan to a guaranteed loan or a loan owned solely by the Lender.
§ 120.550 Sell direct and purchased 7(a) and 501, 502, 503 and 504 loans and physical disaster home loans, physical disaster business loans and economic injury disaster loans in asset sales. SBA will offer these loans for sale to qualified bidders by means of competitive procedures at publicly advertised sales. Bidder qualifications will be set for each sale in accordance with the terms and conditions of each sale.

(c) Disposal of collateral and assets acquired through foreclosure or conveyance. SBA or the Lender may sell real and personal property (including contracts and claims) pledged to secure a loan that is in default in accordance with the provisions of the related security instrument (see §120.550 for Homestead Protection for Farmers).

(1) Competitive bids or negotiated sales. Generally, SBA will offer loan collateral and acquired assets for public sale through competitive bids at auctions or sealed bid sales. The Lender may use negotiated sales if consistent with its usual practice for similar non-SBA assets.

(2) Lease of acquired property. Normally, neither SBA nor a Lender will rent or lease acquired property or grant options to purchase. SBA and the Lender will consider proposals for a lease if it appears a property cannot be sold advantageously and the lease may be terminated on reasonable notice upon receipt of a favorable purchase offer.

(d) Recoveries and security interests shared. SBA and the Lender will share pro rata (in accordance with their respective interests in a loan) all loan payments or recoveries, including proceeds from asset sales, all reasonable expenses (including advances for the care, preservation, and maintenance of collateral securing the loan and the payment of senior lienholders), and any security interest or guarantee (excluding SBA’s guarantee) which the Lender or SBA may hold or receive in connection with a loan.

(e) Guarantors. Guarantors of financial assistance have no rights of contribution against SBA on an SBA guaranteed or direct loan. SBA is not deemed to be a co-guarantor with any other guarantors.

§ 120.550 What is homestead protection for farmers?

SBA may lease to a farmer-Borrower the farm residence occupied by the Borrower and a reasonable amount of adjoining property (no more than 10 acres and seven farm buildings), if they were acquired by SBA as a result of a defaulted farm loan made or guaranteed by SBA (see the Consolidated Farm and Rural Development Act, 7 U.S.C. 1921, for qualifying loan purposes).

§ 120.551 Who is eligible for homestead protection?

SBA must notify the Borrower in possession of the availability of these homestead protection rights within 30 days after SBA acquires the property. A farmer-Borrower must:

(a) Apply for the homestead occupancy to the SBA field office which serviced the loan within 90 days after SBA acquires the property;

(b) Provide evidence that the farm produces farm income reasonable for the area and economic conditions;

(c) Show that at least 60 percent of the Borrower and spouse’s gross annual income came from farm or ranch operations in at least any two out of the last six calendar years;

(d) Have resided on the property during the previous six years; and

(e) Be personally liable for the debt.

§ 120.552 Lease.

If approved, the applicant must personally occupy the residence during the term of the lease and pay a reasonable rent to SBA. The lease will be for a period of at least 3 years, but no more than 5 years. A lease of less than 5 years may be renewed, but not beyond 5 years from the original lease date. During or at the end of the lease period, the lessee has a right of first refusal to reacquire the homestead property under terms and conditions no less
§ 120.553 Appeal.
If the application is denied, the Borrower may appeal the decision to the AA/FA. Until the conclusion of any appeal, the Borrower may retain possession of the homestead property.

§ 120.554 Conflict of laws.
In the event of a conflict between the homestead provisions at §§120.550 through 120.553 of this part, and any state law relating to the right of a Borrower to designate for separate sale or to redeem part or all of the real property securing a loan foreclosed by the Lender, state law shall prevail.

Subpart F—Secondary Market

FISCAL AND TRANSFER AGENT (FTA)

§ 120.600 Definitions.
(a) Certificate is the document the FTA issues representing a beneficial fractional interest in a Pool (Pool Certificate), or an undivided interest in the entire guaranteed portion of an individual 7(a) guaranteed loan (Individual Certificate).
(b) Current means that no repayment from a Borrower to a Lender is over 29 days late measured from the due date of the payment on the records of the FTA’s central registry (Pools) or the entity servicing the loan (individual guaranteed portion).
(c) FTA is the SBA’s fiscal and transfer agent.
(d) Note Rate is the interest rate on the Borrower’s note.
(e) Net Rate is the interest rate on an individual guaranteed portion of a loan in a Pool.
(f) Pool is an aggregation of SBA guaranteed portions of loans made by Lenders.
(g) Pool Assembler is a financial institution that:
(1) Organizes and packages a Pool by acquiring the SBA guaranteed portions of loans from Lenders;
(2) Resells fractional interests in the Pool to Registered Holders; and
(3) Directs the FTA to issue Certificates.
(h) Pool Rate is the interest rate on a Pool Certificate.
(i) Registered Holder is the Certificate owner listed in FTA’s records.
(j) SBA’s Secondary Market Program Guide is an issuance from SBA which describes the characteristics of Secondary Market transactions.

§ 120.601 SBA Secondary Market.
The SBA secondary market (“Secondary Market”) consists of the sale of Certificates, representing either the entire guaranteed portion of an individual 7(a) guaranteed loan or an undivided interest in a Pool consisting of the SBA guaranteed portions of a number of 7(a) guaranteed loans. By the terms of such Certificate, SBA guarantees a Registered Holder timely payment of principal and interest from the loan or loans underlying the Certificate. Transactions involving interests in Pools or the sale of individual guaranteed portions of loans are governed by the contracts entered into by the parties, SBA’s Secondary Market Program Guide, and this subpart. See sections 5 (f), (g), and (h) of the Small Business Act (15 U.S.C. 634 (f), (g) and (h)).

CERTIFICATES

§ 120.610 Form and terms of Certificates.
(a) General form and content. Each Certificate must be registered with the FTA. SBA must approve the terms of the Certificate.
(b) Face amount of Pool Certificate. The face amount of a Pool Certificate cannot be less than a minimum amount as specified in the Program Guide, and the dollar amount of Certificates must be in increments which SBA will specify in the Program Guide (except for one Certificate in each Pool). SBA may change these requirements based upon an analysis of market conditions and program experience, and will publish any such change in the FEDERAL REGISTER.
(c) Basis of payment for Pool Certificates. Principal installments and interest payments are based on the unpaid principal balance of the portion of the Pool represented by a Pool Certificate. All prepayments on loans in the Pool
§ 120.611 Pools backing Pool Certificates.

(a) Pool characteristics. As set forth in the Program Guide, each Pool must have:

(1) A minimum number of guaranteed portions of loans;
(2) A minimum aggregate principal balance of the guaranteed portions;
(3) A maximum percentage of the Pool which an individual guaranteed portion may constitute;
(4) A maximum allowable difference between the highest and lowest note interest rates;
(5) A maximum allowable difference between the remaining terms to maturity of the loans in the Pool; and
(6) A minimum weighted average maturity at Pool formation.

(b) Adjustment of Pool characteristics. SBA may adjust the Pool characteristics periodically based upon program experience and market conditions.

§ 120.612 Loans eligible to back Certificates.

(a) Pool Certificates are backed by the SBA guaranteed portions of loans comprising the Pool. An Individual Certificate is backed by the SBA guaranteed portion of a single loan. Any such loan must:

(1) Be current as of the date the Pool is formed or the individual guaranteed portion of a loan is initially sold in the Secondary Market;
(2) Be guaranteed under the Act; and
(3) Meet such other standards as SBA may determine to be necessary for the successful operation of the Secondary Market program.
(b) The loans that back a Pool must meet the SBA requirements in effect at the time the Pool is formed.

§ 120.613 Secondary Participation Guarantee Agreement.

When a Lender wants to sell the guaranteed portion of a loan, it enters into a Secondary Participation Guarantee Agreement (“SPGA”) with SBA and the prospective purchaser. The terms of sale between the Lender and the purchaser cannot require the Lender or SBA to repurchase the guaranteed portion of the loan except in accordance with the terms of the SPGA. Before execution of the SPGA, the Lender must:

(a) Submit to FTA a copy of the proposed SPGA, the note, and such other documents as SBA may require;
(b) Disburse to the Borrower the full amount of the loan; and
(c) Pay SBA all guarantee fees relevant to the loan in full.

THE SBA GUARANTEE OF A CERTIFICATE

§ 120.620 SBA guarantee of a Pool Certificate.

(a) Extent of Guarantee. SBA guarantees to a Registered Holder the timely payment of principal and interest installments and any prepayment or other recovery of principal to which the Registered Holder is entitled. If the Borrower of a loan in a Pool backing the Certificates does not make a required installment payment, SBA, through the FTA, will make advances to maintain the schedule of interest and principal payments to the Registered Holders.
(b) SBA guarantee backed by full faith and credit. SBA’s guarantee of the Pool Certificate is backed by the full faith and credit of the United States.

§ 120.621 SBA guarantee of an Individual Certificate.

(a) Extent of SBA guarantee. With respect to Individual Certificates, SBA guarantees to purchase from the Registered Holder the guaranteed portion of the loan for an amount equal to the
unpaid principal and accrued interest due as of the date of SBA’s purchase, less deductions for applicable fees. Unlike the SBA guarantee with respect to pooled loans, SBA does not guarantee timely payment on Individual Certificates.

(b) What triggers the SBA guarantee. SBA’s guarantee to the Registered Holder may be called upon when:
(1) The Borrower remains in uncured default for 60 days on payments of principal or interest due on the note;
(2) The Lender fails to send to the FTA on a timely basis payments it received from the Borrower; or
(3) The FTA fails to send to the Registered Holder on a timely basis any payments it has received from the Lender.

(c) Full faith and credit. SBA’s guarantee to the Registered Holder is backed by the full faith and credit of the United States.

§ 120.630 Qualifications to be a Pool Assembler.

(a) Application to become Pool Assembler. The application to become a Pool Assembler is available from the AA/FA. In order to qualify as a Pool Assembler, an entity must send the application to the AA/FA, with an application fee, and certify that it:
(2) Meets all financial and other applicable requirements of its regulatory authority and the Government Securities Act of 1986, as amended (Pub. L. 99–571, 100 Stat. 3208);
(3) Has the financial capability to assemble acceptable and eligible guaranteed loan portions in sufficient quantity to support the issuance of Pool Certificates; and
(4) Is in good standing with SBA (as the AA/FA determines), the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (“OCC”) if it is a national bank, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation if it is a bank not regulated by the OCC, or the National Association of Securities Dealers if it is a member.

(b) Approval by SBA. An entity may not submit Pool applications to the FTA until SBA has approved the application to become a Pool Assembler.

(c) Conduct of business by Pool Assembler. An entity continues to qualify as a Pool Assembler so long as it:
(1) Meets the eligibility standards in paragraph (a) of this section;
(2) Conducts its business in accordance with SBA regulations and accepted securities or banking industry practices, ethics, and standards; and
(3) Maintains its books and records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or in accordance with the guidelines of the regulatory body governing its activities.

§ 120.631 Suspension or termination of Pool Assembler.

(a) Suspension or termination. The AA/FA may suspend a Pool Assembler from operating in the Secondary Market for up to 18 months or terminate its status as a Pool Assembler, if the Pool Assembler (and/or its Associates):
(1) Does not comply with any of the requirements in § 120.630 (a) and (c);
(2) Has been indicted or otherwise formally charged with, or convicted of, a misdemeanor or felony;
(3) Has received an adverse civil judgment that it has committed a breach of trust or a violation of a law or regulation protecting the integrity of business transactions or relationships;
(4) Has not formed a Pool for at least three years; or
(5) Is under investigation by its regulatory authority for activities which may affect its fitness to participate in the Secondary Market.

(b) Suspension procedures. The AA/FA shall notify a Pool Assembler by certified mail, return receipt requested, of the decision to suspend and the reasons therefore at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of the suspension. The Pool Assembler may appeal the suspension made under this section pursuant to the procedures set forth in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA shall remain in effect pending resolution of the appeal.

(c) Notice of termination. In order to terminate a Pool Assembler, the AA/FA shall first issue an order to show cause why the SBA should not terminate the Pool Assembler’s participation in the Secondary Market. The Pool Assembler
§ 120.640 Administration of the Pool and Individual Certificates.

(a) **FTA responsibility.** The FTA has the responsibility to administer each Pool or Individual Certificate. It shall maintain a registry of Registered Holders and other information as SBA requires.

(b) **Self-liquidating.** Each Pool or individual guaranteed portion of a loan in the Secondary Market is self-liquidating because of Borrower payments or prepayments, redemption by SBA, and/or payments by SBA or the Lender after default by the Borrower. Substitution of the guaranteed portions of existing loans for defaulted loans is not permitted.

(c) **SBA’s right to subrogation.** If SBA pays a claim under a guarantee with respect to a Certificate issued under this subpart, it must be subrogated fully to the rights satisfied by such payment.

(d) **SBA ownership rights not limited.** No Federal, State or local law can preclude or limit the exercise by SBA of its ownership rights in the portions of loans constituting the Pool against which the Certificates are issued.

§ 120.641 Disclosure to purchasers.

(a) **Information to purchaser.** Prior to any sale, the Pool Assembler, Registered Holder of an Individual Certificate, or any subsequent seller must disclose to the purchaser, verbally or in writing, information on the terms, conditions, and yield as described in the SBA Secondary Market Program Guide.

(b) **Information on transfer document.** The seller must provide the same information described in paragraph (a) of this section in writing on the transfer document when the seller submits it to the FTA. After the sale of an Individual Certificate, the FTA will provide the disclosure information in writing to the purchaser.

(c) **Information in prospectus.** If the Registered Holder is a trust, investment Pool, mutual fund or other security, it must disclose the information in paragraph (a) of this section to investors through a prospectus and other promotional material if an Individual Certificate or Pool Certificate is placed into or used as the backing for the investment vehicle.

§ 120.642 Requirements before the FTA issues Pool Certificates.

Before the FTA issues any Pool Certificate, the Pool Assembler must deliver to it the following documents:

(a) A properly completed Pool application form;

(b) Either:
   (1) Individual Certificates evidencing the guaranteed portions comprising the Pool; or
   (2) An executed SPGA and related documentation for the loans whose guaranteed portions are to be part of the Pool; and

(c) Any other documentation which SBA may require.

§ 120.643 Requirements before the FTA issues Individual Certificates.

(a) **FTA issuance of initial Certificate.** Before the FTA can issue the Individual Certificate for a guaranteed portion of a loan, the original seller must provide the following documents to the FTA:
   (1) An executed SPGA;
   (2) A copy of the note representing the guaranteed loan; and
   (3) Any other documentation which SBA may require.

(b) **Review of documentation.** SBA may review or require the FTA to review any documentation before the FTA issues a Certificate.

§ 120.644 Transfers of Certificates.

(a) **General rule.** Certificates are transferable. Transfers in the Secondary Market must comply with Article 8 of the Uniform Commercial Code of the State of New York. The seller must use the detached form of assignment (SBA Form 1088), unless the seller and purchaser choose to use another form which the SBA approves. The FTA may refuse to issue a Certificate.

246
§ 120.660 Suspension or revocation.

(a) Suspension or revocation of Lender, broker, dealer, or Registered Holder for violation of Secondary Market rules and regulations. The AA/FA may suspend or revoke the privilege of a Lender, broker, dealer, or Registered Holder for violation of Secondary Market rules and regulations.
§ 120.700 What is the Microloan Program?

The Microloan Program assists women, low income individuals, minority entrepreneurs, and other small businesses which need small amounts of financial assistance. Under this program, SBA makes direct and guaranteed loans to Intermediaries (as defined below) who use the proceeds to make loans to eligible borrowers. SBA may also make grants under the program to Intermediaries and other qualified nonprofit entities to be used for marketing, management, and technical assistance to the program’s target population.

§ 120.701 Definitions.

(a) Deposit account is a demand, time, savings, passbook, or similar account maintained with an insured depository institution (not including an account evidenced by a Certificate of Deposit).

(b) Economically Distressed Area is a county or equivalent division of local government of a state in which, according to the most recent available data from the United States Bureau of the Census, 40 percent or more of the residents have an annual income that is at or below the poverty level.

(c) Grant is a Federal award of money, or property in lieu of money (including cooperative agreements) to an eligible grantee that must account for its use. The term does not include the provision of technical assistance, revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, direct appropriations, or any fellowship or other lump sum award.

(d) Insured depository institution has the same meaning as in section 3(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, 12 U.S.C. 1813(c).

(e) Intermediary is an entity participating in the Microloan Demonstration Program which makes and services Microloans to eligible small businesses.
Small Business Administration

§ 120.702 Are there limitations on who can be an Intermediary or on where an Intermediary may operate?

(a) Prior experience requirement. To be eligible to be an Intermediary, an organization must:

(1) Have made and serviced short-term fixed rate loans of not more than $35,000 to newly established or growing small businesses for at least one year; and

(2) Have at least one year of experience providing technical assistance to its borrowers.

(b) Limitation to one state. An Intermediary may not operate in more than one state unless the AA/FA determines that it would be in the best interests of the small business community for it to operate across state lines.

§ 120.703 How does an organization apply to become an Intermediary?

(a) Application Process. Organizations interested in becoming Intermediaries should contact SBA for information on the application process.

(b) Documentation in support of application. The application must include a detailed narrative statement describing:

(1) The types of businesses assisted in the past and those the applicant intends to assist with Microloans;

(2) The average size of the loans made in the past and the average size of intended Microloans;

(3) The extent to which the applicant will make Microloans to small businesses in rural areas;

(4) The geographic area in which the applicant intends to operate, including a description of the economic and demographic conditions existing in the intended area of operations;

(5) The availability and cost of obtaining credit for small businesses in the area;

(6) The applicant’s experience and qualifications in providing marketing, management, and technical assistance to small businesses; and

(7) Any plan to use other technical assistance resources (such as counselors from the Service Corps of Retired Executives) to help Microloan borrowers.

§ 120.704 How are applications evaluated?

(a) Evaluation criteria. In selecting Intermediaries, SBA will attempt to insure that Microloans are available to small businesses in all industries and particularly to small businesses located in urban and rural areas.

(b) Preference for organizations which make very small loans. In selecting Intermediaries, SBA will give priority to applicants which maintain a portfolio of loans averaging $10,000 or less.
(c) Consideration of quasi-governmental organizations. Generally, SBA will consider applications by quasi-governmental organizations only when it determines that program services for a particular geographic area would be best provided by such organization.

§ 120.705 What is a Specialized Intermediary?

At the end of an Intermediary’s first year of participation in the program, SBA will determine whether it qualifies as a Specialized Intermediary. A Specialized Intermediary is an Intermediary that maintains a portfolio of Microloans averaging $10,000 or less. Specialized Intermediaries qualify for lower interest rates on SBA loans. If, after the first year, an Intermediary qualifies as a Specialized Intermediary, the interest rate is applied retroactively to SBA loans made to the Intermediary. After the first year SBA will determine an Intermediary’s qualifications as a Specialized Intermediary annually, based on its lending practices during the term of its participation in the program. Specialized Intermediaries also qualify for a greater amount of technical assistance grant funding.

§ 120.706 What are the terms and conditions of an SBA loan to an Intermediary?

(a) Loan Amount. An Intermediary may not borrow more than $750,000 in the first year of participation in the program. In later years, the Intermediary’s obligation to SBA may not exceed an aggregate of $3.5 million subject to statutory limitations on the total amount of funds available per state.

(b) Repayment terms. During the first year of the loan, an Intermediary is not required to make any payments, but interest accrues from the date that SBA disburses the loan proceeds to the Intermediary. After that, SBA will determine the periodic payments. The loan must be repaid within 10 years.

(c) Interest rate. The interest rate is equal to the rate applicable to five-year obligations of the United States Treasury, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth percent, less 1.25 percent. However, the interest rate for Specialized Intermediaries is equal to the rate applicable to five-year obligations of the United States Treasury, adjusted to the nearest one-eighth percent, less two percent.

(d) Collateral. As security for repayment of the SBA loan, an Intermediary must pledge to SBA a first lien position in the MRF (described below), LLRF (described below), and all notes receivable from Microloans.

(e) Default. If for any reason an Intermediary is unable to make payment to SBA when due, SBA may accelerate maturity of the loan and demand payment in full. In this event, or if an Intermediary violates this part or the terms of its loan agreement, it must surrender possession of all collateral described in paragraph (d) of this section to SBA. The Intermediary is not obligated to pay SBA any loss or deficiency which may remain after liquidation of the collateral unless the loss was caused by fraud, negligence, violation of any of the ethical requirements of §120.140, or violation of any other provision of this part.

(f) Fees. SBA does not charge Intermediaries any fees for loans under this Program. An Intermediary may, however, pay minimal closing costs to third parties, such as filing and recording fees.

§ 120.707 What conditions apply to loans by Intermediaries to Microloan borrowers?

(a) General. An Intermediary may make Microloans to any small business eligible to receive financial assistance under this part. A borrower may also use Microloans to establish a nonprofit child care business. Proceeds from Microloans may be used only for working capital and acquisition of materials, supplies, furniture, fixtures, and equipment. SBA does not review Microloans for creditworthiness.

(b) Amount and maturity. Generally, Intermediaries should not make a Microloan of more than $10,000 to any borrower. An Intermediary may not...
Small Business Administration

§ 120.711 What rules govern Intermediaries?

Intermediaries must operate in accordance with applicable statutes, regulations, policy notices, SBA’s Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs), and the information in the application.
§ 120.712 How does an Intermediary get a grant to assist Microloan borrowers?

(a) General. An Intermediary is eligible to receive grant funding from SBA of not more than 25 percent of the outstanding balance of all SBA loans to the Intermediary. The Intermediary must contribute, solely from non-Federal sources, an amount equal to 25 percent of the grant. Contributions may be made in cash or in kind.

(b) Limitations on grant funds. An Intermediary may not borrow its contribution. It may only use grant funds to provide Microloan borrowers with marketing, management, and technical assistance, except that:

(1) Up to 25 percent of the grant funds may be used to provide information and technical assistance to prospective Microloan borrowers; and

(2) Grant monies may be used to attend training required by SBA. Intermediaries may not enter into third party contracts for the provision of technical assistance to program clients.

(c) Exception to contribution requirement. Intermediaries which make at least 50 percent of their loans to small businesses located in or owned by residents of Economically Distressed Areas are not subject to the contribution requirement in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) Intermediaries eligible to receive additional grant monies. An Intermediary may receive an additional SBA grant equal to five percent of the outstanding balance of all loans received from SBA (with no obligation to contribute additional matching funds) if:

(1) The Intermediary makes at least 25 percent of its loans to small businesses located in or owned by residents of an Economically Distressed Area; or

(2) The Intermediary is a Specialized Intermediary.

(e) Third party contracts for technical assistance. An Intermediary may use no more than 25 percent of the grant funds it receives from SBA for contracts with third parties for the latter to provide technical assistance to Microloan borrowers.

§ 120.713 Does SBA provide technical assistance to Intermediaries?

SBA may procure technical assistance for an Intermediary to improve its knowledge, skill, and understanding of microlending by awarding a grant to a more experienced Intermediary. SBA may also obtain such assistance for prospective Intermediaries in areas of the country that are either not served or underserved by an existing Intermediary.

§ 120.714 How are grants made to non-lending technical assistance providers (NTAP)?

SBA selects non-lending technical assistance providers (NTAP) to receive grant funds for technical assistance to Microloan borrowers.

(a) Grant procedure for non-Intermediaries. Any nonprofit entity that is not an Intermediary may apply to SBA for a grant to provide marketing, management and technical assistance to low-income individuals for the purpose of assisting them in obtaining private sector financing in amounts of $35,000 or less. To qualify, it must submit information regarding its ability to provide this assistance. If approved, the grant agreement will establish the terms and conditions for the grant.

(b) Number and amount of grants. In each year of the Microloan Program, SBA may make no more than 55 grants to non-Intermediaries for terms of up to five years. A grant may not exceed $200,000.

(c) Contribution by nonprofit entity. The nonprofit entity must contribute an amount equal to 20 percent of the grant. The contribution from the nonprofit entity must come solely from non-Federal sources, and may include direct costs or in-kind contributions paid for under non-Federal programs.

§ 120.715 Does SBA guarantee any loans an Intermediary obtains from another source?

(a) SBA may guarantee not less than 90 percent of loans made by for-profit or nonprofit entities (or an alliance of
such entities) to no more than 10 Intermediaries in urban areas and 10 Intermediaries in Rural Areas (as defined in §120.10).

(b) Any loan guaranteed by SBA under this section will have a term of 10 years. If an Intermediary receives such a loan, it will not need to repay any principal or interest during the first year, although the interest will accrue. During the second through fifth years, the Intermediary will pay interest only. During the sixth through tenth years, it will pay interest and fully amortize the principal.

(c) The interest rate on any loan under this section shall be calculated as described in §120.706.


§120.716 Suspension or revocation of an Intermediary or NTAP.

(a) The AA/FA may suspend or revoke the participation status of an Intermediary or NTAP from the Microloan Program, or may impose other sanctions in the best interests of the program, if it fails to comply with the laws, regulations, and policies governing the program or if it fails to meet any one of the following minimum performance standards.

(1) For Intermediaries only: An Intermediary must
   (i) Close and fund a minimum of four microloans per year, and
   (ii) Satisfactorily provide in-house technical assistance to microloan clients and prospective microloan clients.

(2) For NTAPs only: An NTAP must show that, for every thirty clients for which it provided technical assistance, one client received a loan from the private sector.

(3) For Intermediaries and NTAPs: An Intermediary and an NTAP must
   (i) Cover the service territory assigned by SBA, including honoring the SBA determined boundaries of neighboring Intermediaries and NTAPs,
   (ii) Fulfill reporting requirements, (iii) Manage program funds and matching funds in a satisfactory and financially sound manner,
   (iv) Communicate and file reports via the internet within six months after beginning participation in the program,
   (v) Maintain a currency rate of 85% or more (that is loans that are no more than 30 days late in scheduled payments),
   (vi) Maintain a default rate of 15% or less of the cumulative dollars loaned under the program, and
   (vii) Attend Microloan Program training conferences offered by SBA, or such substitute training as may be approved by SBA on a case by case basis.

(b) The AA/FA, on a case by case basis, may impose pre-suspension or revocation sanctions which may include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Accelerated reporting requirements;
(2) Accelerated loan repayment requirements for outstanding program debt to SBA; and
(3) Imposition of a temporary lending and/or training moratorium.

(c) Revocation from the Microloan Program will include:

(1) Removal from the program;
(2) Liquidation of MRF and LLRF accounts, by SBA, and application of liquidated funds to any outstanding balance owed to SBA;
(3) Payment of outstanding debt to SBA by the Intermediary;
(4) Forfeiture or repayment of any unused grant funds by the Intermediary or NTAP;
(5) Debarment of the organization from receipt of federal funds until loan and grant repayment requirements are met.

(d) An Intermediary or NTAP may appeal a suspension or revocation under procedures found in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA remains in effect pending resolution of the appeal.

[66 FR 47073, Sept. 11, 2001]

Subpart H—Development Company Loan Program (504)

§120.800 What is the purpose of the 504 program?

As authorized by Congress, SBA has established this program to foster economic development, create or preserve job opportunities, and stimulate growth, expansion, and modernization of small businesses.
§ 120.801 How is a 504 Project financed?

(a) One or more small businesses may apply for 504 financing through a CDC serving the area where the 504 Project is located. SBA issues an Authorization if it agrees to guarantee part of the funding for a Project.

(b) Usually, a Project requires interim financing from an interim lender (often the same lender that later provides a portion of the permanent financing).

(c) Generally, permanent financing of the Project consists of:

1. A contribution by the small business in an amount of at least 10 percent of the Project costs;

2. A loan made with the proceeds of a CDC Debenture for up to 40 percent of the Project costs and certain administrative costs, collateralized by a second lien on the Project Property; and

3. A Third Party Loan comprising the balance of the financing, collateralized by a first lien on the Project property (see § 120.920).

(d) The Debenture is guaranteed 100 percent by SBA (with the full faith and credit of the United States), and sold to Underwriters who form Debenture Pools. Investors purchase interests in Debenture Pools and receive Certificates representing ownership of all or part of a Debenture Pool. SBA and CDCs use various agents to facilitate the sale and service of the Certificates and the orderly flow of funds among the parties.


§ 120.802 Definitions.

The following terms have the same meaning wherever they are used in this subpart. Defined terms are capitalized wherever they appear.

**Area of Operations** is the geographic area where SBA has approved a CDC’s request to provide 504 program services to small businesses on a permanent basis.

**Associate Development Company (ADC)** is an entity approved by SBA to assist CDCs to deliver 504 financing.

**Central Servicing Agent (CSA)** is an entity that receives and disburses funds among the various parties involved in 504 financing under a master servicing agent agreement with SBA.

**Certificate** is a document issued by SBA or its agent representing ownership of all or part of a Debenture Pool.

**Debenture** is an obligation issued by a CDC and guaranteed 100 percent by SBA, the proceeds of which are used to fund a 504 loan.

**Debenture Pool** is an aggregation of Debentures.

**Investor** is an owner of a beneficial interest in a Debenture Pool.

**Job Opportunity** is a full time (or equivalent) permanent job created within two years of receipt of 504 funds, or retained in the community because of a 504 loan.

**Local Economic Area** is an area, as determined by SBA, that is in a State other than the State in which an existing CDC (or an applicant applying to become a CDC) is incorporated, shares a border with the CDC’s existing Area of Operations (or applicant’s proposed Area of Operations) in its State of incorporation, and is a part of a local trade area that is contiguous to the CDC’s Area of Operations (or applicant’s proposed Area of Operations) within its State of incorporation. Examples of a local trade area would be a city that is bisected by a State line or a metropolitan statistical area that is bisected by a State line.

**Multi-State CDC** is a CDC that is incorporated in one State and is authorized by SBA to operate as a CDC in a State contiguous to its State of incorporation beyond any contiguous Local Economic Areas.

**Net Debenture Proceeds** are the portion of Debenture proceeds that finance eligible Project costs (excluding administrative costs).

**Project** is the purchase or lease, and/or improvement or renovation of long-term fixed assets by a small business, with 504 financing, for use in its business operations.

**Project Property** is one or more long-term fixed assets, such as land, buildings, machinery, and equipment, acquired or improved by a small business, with 504 financing, for use in its business operations.

**Third Party Loan** is a loan from a commercial or private lender, investor, or Federal (non-SBA), State or local...
government source that is part of the Project financing. Underwriter is an entity approved by SBA to form Debenture Pools and arrange for the sale of Certificates. [61 FR 3235, Jan. 31, 1996, as amended at 64 FR 2118, Jan. 13, 1999; 65 FR 42632, July 11, 2000]

CERTIFICATION PROCEDURES TO BECOME A CDC

§ 120.810 Applications for certification as a CDC.

Applicants for certification as a CDC must apply to the SBA District Office serving the area in which the applicant has or proposes to locate its headquarters. (a) An SBA District Office may accept an application for a county only if:

1. There is no CDC that includes the county in its Area of Operations;
2. Any CDCs that include the county in their Areas of Operations have not averaged together at least one 504 loan approval per 100,000 population per year averaged over the 24 months prior to SBA receiving a complete application from the applicant; and the county has not become part of another CDC’s Area of Operations within the prior 24 months; or
3. The county is part of the Area of Operations of only one CDC; the county has a population of 100,000 or more; the county has not become part of another CDC’s Area of Operations within the prior 24 months; or

(b) An applicant whose application has been accepted must then demonstrate that it satisfies the certification and operating criteria in §§120.820 through 120.829 and the need for 504 services in the Area Of Operations (if there is already a CDC in the Area of Operations, the applicant must justify the need for another and present a plan to avoid duplication or overlap). Applications must also include an operating budget approved by the applicant’s Board of Directors, and a plan to meet CDC operating requirements (without specializing in a particular industry). An applicant’s proposed Area of Operations may include Local Economic Areas. An applicant may not apply to cover an area as a Multi-State CDC. The AA/FA shall make the certification decision. [65 FR 42632, July 11, 2000]

§ 120.811 Public notice of CDC certification application.

(a) As part of the application process, the applicant must publish a notice in a general circulation newspaper in the proposed Area of Operations, including the name and location of the proposed CDC, its purpose and Area of Operations, and the names and addresses of its officers and directors. The applicant shall send a copy of the notice to SBA. The notice shall provide the public at least 30 days to submit written comments to the District Office. The SBA shall consider the comments in making its decision on the application.

(b) CDCs serving the proposed Area of Operations shall be directly notified and given at least 30 days to comment.

§ 120.812 Probationary period for newly certified CDCs.

(a) Newly certified CDCs will be on probation for a period of two years, at the end of which the CDC must petition for:

1. Permanent CDC status;
2. A single, one-year extension of probation; or
3. ADC status.

(b) SBA will consider failure to file a petition before the end of the probationary period as a withdrawal from the 504 program. If the CDC elects ADC status or withdrawal, it must transfer all funded and/or approved loans to another CDC, SBA, or another servicer approved by SBA.

REQUIREMENTS FOR CDC CERTIFICATION AND OPERATION

§ 120.820 CDC non-profit status.

A CDC must be a non-profit corporation in good standing. (For-profit CDCs certified by SBA prior to January 1, 1987 may retain their certifications.) An SBIC may not become a CDC. [65 FR 42632, July 11, 2000]
§ 120.821 CDC Area of Operations.

A CDC must have a designated Area of Operations, specified by the CDC and approved by SBA. There can be only one statewide CDC in each state, which must foster economic development throughout the state and provide 504 assistance to areas not adequately served by other CDCs.

§ 120.822 CDC membership.

(a) A CDC must have at least 25 members (or stockholders for for-profit CDCs approved prior to January 1, 1987). The CDC membership must meet annually. No person or entity may own or control more than 10 percent of the CDC’s voting membership (or stock). Members must be representative of and provide evidence of active support in the Area of Operations. Members must be from each of the following groups:

1. Government organizations responsible for economic development in the Area of Operations and acceptable to SBA;
2. Financial institutions that provide commercial long term fixed asset financing in the Area of Operations;
3. Community organizations dedicated to economic development in the Area of Operations such as chambers of commerce, foundations, trade associations, colleges, or universities; and

(b) A CDC that is incorporated in one State and is operating as a Multi-State CDC in another State must meet the membership requirements for each State.

[65 FR 42632, July 11, 2000]

§ 120.823 CDC Board of Directors.

The CDC must have a Board of Directors chosen from the membership by the members, and representing at least three of the four membership groups. No single group shall control. No person who is a member of a CDC’s staff may be a voting member of the Board except for the CDC manager. The Board Members must be responsible officials of the organizations they represent and at least one member other than the CDC manager must possess commercial lending experience. The Board must meet at least quarterly and shall be responsible for CDC staff decisions and actions. A quorum shall require at least 5 Directors authorized to vote. When the Board votes on SBA loan approval or servicing actions, at least one Board Member with commercial loan experience acceptable to SBA, other than the CDC manager, must be present and vote. There must be no actual or apparent conflict of interest with respect to any actions of the Board.

(a) The Board may establish a Loan Committee of non-Board Members that reports to the Board. Loan Committee members must include at least one member with commercial lending experience acceptable to SBA. All members of the Loan Committee must live or work in the Area of Operations of the State where the 504 project they are voting on is located unless the project falls under one of the exceptions listed in Sec. 120.839, Case-by-case extensions. No CDC staff may serve on a Loan Committee. A quorum must have at least five committee members authorized to vote. The CDC’s Board must ratify the actions of any Loan Committee. There must be no actual or apparent conflict of interest with respect to any actions of the Loan Committee.

(b) If the CDC is incorporated in one State and is approved as a Multi-State CDC to operate in another State, the CDC must meet the Board requirements for each State and must have a Loan Committee for each State.

[65 FR 42632, July 11, 2000]

§ 120.824 Professional management and staff.

A CDC must have full-time professional management, including an Executive Director (or the equivalent) managing daily operations. It must also have a full-time professional staff qualified by training and experience to market the 504 Program, package and process loan applications, close loans, service, and, if authorized by SBA, liquidate the loan portfolio, and sustain a sufficient level of service and activity in the Area of Operations. CDCs may obtain, under written contract, marketing, packaging, processing, closing, servicing or liquidation services provided by qualified individuals and entities who live or do business in the
Small Business Administration

§ 120.827 Services a CDC provides to small businesses.

(a) A CDC must operate in and adequately service its Area of Operations. It must market the 504 program, package and process 504 loan applications, and close and service 504 loans. A CDC’s loan portfolio must be diversified by business sector.

(b) A CDC may provide small businesses with financial and technical assistance, or may help small businesses

[65 FR 42632, July 11, 2000]

§ 120.825 Financial ability to operate.

A CDC must be able to sustain its operations continuously, with reliable sources of funds (such as income from services rendered and contributions from government or other sponsors). Any funds generated from 503 and 504 loan activity by a CDC remaining after payment of staff and overhead expenses must be retained by the CDC as a reserve for future operations or for investment in other local economic development activity in its Area of Operations. If a CDC is operating as a Multi-State CDC, it must maintain a separate accounting for each State of all 504 fee income and expenses and provide, upon SBA’s request, evidence that the funds resulting from its Multi-State CDC operations are being invested in economic development activities in each State in which they were generated.

[65 FR 42633, July 11, 2000]

§ 120.826 Basic requirements for operating a CDC.

A CDC must operate in accordance with applicable statutes, regulations, policy notices, SBA’s SOPs, and the information in its application. It must supply to SBA current and accurate information about all certification and operational requirements, and maintain the records and submit the reports required by SBA.

§ 120.827 Services a CDC provides to small businesses.

(a) A CDC must operate in and adequately service its Area of Operations. It must market the 504 program, package and process 504 loan applications, and close and service 504 loans. A CDC’s loan portfolio must be diversified by business sector.

(b) A CDC may provide small businesses with financial and technical assistance, or may help small businesses
§ 120.828 Minimum level of CDC lending activity.

A CDC must provide at least two 504 loan approvals each full fiscal year.

§ 120.829 Job Opportunity average a CDC must maintain.

(a) A CDC’s portfolio must reflect an average of one Job Opportunity per $35,000 of 504 loan funding. The AA/FA may permit a CDC to average up to one per $45,000 for good cause in:
(1) Alaska;
(2) Hawaii;
(3) State-designated urban or rural jobs and enterprise zones;
(4) Empowerment Zones and Enterprise Communities; and
(5) Labor Surplus Areas listed in the Department of Labor’s publication “Area Trends.”

(b) A CDC must indicate in its annual report the Job Opportunities actually or estimated to be provided by each Project.

(c) If a CDC does not maintain the required average, it may retain its certification if it justifies to SBA’s satisfaction its failure to do so in its annual report and shows how it intends to attain the required average.

§ 120.830 Reports a CDC must submit.

A CDC must submit the following reports to SBA:

(a) An annual report within 90 days after the end of the CDC’s fiscal year, and such interim reports as SBA may require;

(b) Resumes for all new Associates and staff;

(c) Reports of involvement in any legal proceeding;

(d) Changes in organizational status;

(e) Changes in any condition that affects its eligibility to continue to participate in the 504 program; and

(f) Quarterly service reports on each loan in its portfolio which is 60 days or more past due (and interim reports upon request by SBA).

EXTENDING A CDC’S AREA OF OPERATIONS

§ 120.835 Application to expand an Area of Operations.

An existing, active CDC applying to expand its Area of Operations must be operating in conformance with all existing SBA regulations, policies, and performance benchmarks and be well qualified to serve the proposed area. A CDC seeking to expand its Area of Operations must apply in writing to the SBA District Office where the CDC is headquartered, unless it is applying to be a Multi-State CDC. In that case, the CDC must apply to the SBA District Office that services the area where the Multi-State CDC intends to locate its principal office for that State.

(a) An SBA District Office may accept a CDC’s application to expand its Area of Operations into a county within its State of incorporation, or in a Local Economic Area only if:
(1) There is no CDC that includes the county in its Area of Operations; or
(2) Any CDCs that include the county in their Areas of Operations have not averaged together at least one 504 loan approval per 100,000 population per year averaged over the 24 months prior to SBA receiving a complete application from the applicant CDC; and the county has not become part of an Area of Operations of another CDC within the prior 24 months; or
(3) The county is part of the Area of Operations of only one CDC; the county has a population of 100,000 or more; the county has not become part of an Area of Operations within the prior 24 months of another CDC; the applicant is incorporated in the State where the county is located; and the CDC that includes the county in its Area of Operations submits a statement of no objection to the application.

(b) An SBA District Office may accept a CDC’s application to expand and service an area as a Multi-State CDC only if:
(1) There is no CDC that includes the county in its Area of Operations, or the
§ 120.838 SBA decision on application for a new CDC or for an existing CDC to expand Area of Operations.

The processing District Office must solicit the comments of any other District Office in which the CDC operates or proposes to operate. The processing District Office must determine that the CDC is in compliance with SBA’s regulations, policies, and performance benchmarks, including pre-approval and annual review by SBA of any management or staff contracts, and the timely submission of all annual reports. In making its recommendation on the application, the District Office may consider any information presented to it regarding the requesting CDC, the existing CDC, or CDCs that may be affected by the application, and the proposed Area of Operations.

(a) The SBA District office will submit the application, recommendation, and supporting materials within 60 days of the receipt of a complete application from the CDC to the AA/FA, who will make the final decision. The AA/FA may consider any information submitted or available related to the applicant and the application.

(b) If a CDC is approved to operate as a Multi-State CDC, any unilateral authority that a CDC has in its State of incorporation under any SBA program, including Accredited Lender’s Program (ALP), Premier Certified Lenders Program (PCLP), or Expedited Closing Process (Priority CDC), does not carry over into a State in which it is approved to operate as a Multi-State CDC. The CDC must earn the status in each State based solely on its activity and performance in that State.

[65 FR 42633, July 11, 2000]

§ 120.838 Expiration of existing, temporary expansions.

All existing, temporary expansions of Areas of Operation shall expire 6 months after March 1, 1996, unless a CDC applies for permanent expansion before the expiration date.
§ 120.839 Case-by-case extensions.

(a) A CDC may apply to make an individual loan for a Project outside its Area of Operations to the District Office serving the area in which the Project will be located if:

(1) The applicant CDC has previously assisted the business to obtain a 504 loan;

(2) The applicant small business or CDC can document in writing to the AA/FA specific circumstances that would prevent the existing CDC or CDCs serving the area from assisting the business adequately; or

(3) The existing CDC or CDCs serving the area agree to permit the applicant CDC to make the loan.

(b) The applicant CDC must demonstrate that it adequately can service the loan.

(c) The AA/FA may approve the request for good cause shown.


ACCREDITED LENDERS PROGRAM (ALP)

§ 120.840 Accredited Lenders Program.

The SBA may designate a CDC as an Accredited Lender. SBA will provide an Accredited Lender with expedited loan processing or servicing action. (a) Applications. CDCs may apply to the SBA field office with which it is most active. The SBA office will send its recommendation and the application to the AA/FA for final decision.

(b) Eligibility. In order to be eligible to receive Accredited Lender status, a CDC must have been an active participant in the 504 loan program for not less than the preceding 12 months. In evaluating an application to be an Accredited Lender, SBA will consider all relevant factors, including:

(1) The CDC’s ability to work with the local SBA office;

(2) The quality of past performance; and

(3) The quality of the loan portfolio, including the default rate.

(c) Term of designation. CDCs will be designated as ALPs for a two year period, and are eligible to renew the designation for additional two year periods.

(d) Suspension and revocation. The AA/FA may suspend or revoke ALP designation upon written notice stating the reasons therefore at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of the suspension or revocation. Reasons for suspension or revocation may include loan performance unacceptable to SBA or violations of applicable statutes, regulations or published SBA policies and procedures. An ALP may appeal the suspension or revocation made under this section pursuant to the procedures set forth in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA shall remain in effect pending resolution of the appeal.

PREMIER CERTIFIED LENDERS PROGRAM

§ 120.845 Premier Certified Lenders Program (PCLP).

The SBA has established a pilot program (“Program”) to designate a number of CDCs as Premier Certified Lenders (“Premier CDCs”), and to authorize them to approve, close, service, foreclose, litigate, and liquidate 504 loans subject to SBA regulations, procedures, and policies. A Premier CDC’s authority to approve loans under the Program is subject to SBA’s determination that the loan and Borrower meet SBA’s eligibility requirements.

(a) PCLP Loan Approvals. A Premier CDC notifies SBA of its approval of a PCLP loan by submitting appropriate documentation to SBA’s loan processing center. SBA will notify the Premier CDC of the SBA loan number (if it does not identify a problem with eligibility, and funds are available).

(b) Premier CDC Exposure. A Premier CDC must reimburse SBA for 10% of any loss (including attorney’s fees and litigation costs and expenses) incurred by SBA as a result of a default by the Premier CDC on a Debenture issued under the PCLP (“Exposure”).

(c) Loss Reserve. A Premier CDC must establish a loss reserve to provide funds to pay its Exposure to SBA.

(1) Assets. (i) A Premier CDC’s loss reserve must be composed of any combination of:

(A) Segregated funds on deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions in which the Premier CDC has granted to SBA, in a manner acceptable to SBA, a first priority perfected security interest to secure the
§ 120.850

Premier CDC’s obligations to SBA under the PCLP; or

(B) Irrevocable letters of credit.

(ii) SBA must be named as the beneficiary of all letters of credit. A Premier CDC’s loss reserve deposits in an institution may exceed the institution’s insured amount, but only if the institution is “well-capitalized” as defined in regulations of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, as amended (12 CFR 325.103) (“well capitalized bank”).

(iii) A loss reserve letter of credit must:

(A) Be issued by a well-capitalized bank;

(B) Have a term equal to or longer than the maturity of the PCLP loan which triggered the requirement for the Premier CDC to contribute to the loss reserve;

(C) Be irrevocable;

(D) Be otherwise acceptable to the SBA;

(E) Have an issuer who remains well-capitalized throughout the term of the letter of credit, or SBA may require an additional loss reserve contribution by the contributing Premier CDC.

(2) Contributions. A Premier CDC’s loss reserve must total 1 percent of the Debentures it issues under the PCLP Program. A Premier CDC must contribute 50 percent of the required loss reserve attributable to each PCLP loan when the Debenture it issues under the PCLP Program is closed, 25 percent within 1 year after the Debenture is closed, and 25 percent within 2 years after the Debenture is closed.

(3) Reimbursement. SBA determines a Premier CDC’s Exposure on a loan and withdraws the amount necessary to cover the Exposure. If, after full use of any assets in the loss reserve, there are not enough loss reserve assets to cover a Premier CDC’s Exposure, the Premier CDC must pay SBA any difference between the Exposure and the loss reserve assets withdrawn by SBA to cover the Exposure within 45 days of a demand for payment by SBA.

(4) Replenishment. If SBA withdraws assets from the loss reserve to cover a Premier CDC’s Exposure, the Premier CDC must replace the withdrawn loss reserve assets within 30 days of the withdrawal with contributions equal to or greater than the amount of the assets withdrawn.

(5). Withdrawal. A Premier CDC may withdraw loss reserve assets attributable to any repaid Debenture upon written approval by SBA.

(d) Review. SBA will review a Premier CDC’s PCLP loans annually.

(e) Suspension and revocation. The AA/FA may suspend or revoke a CDC’s Premier designation upon written notice stating the reasons for the suspension or revocation at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of the suspension or revocation. Reasons for suspension or revocation may include loan performance unacceptable to SBA, failure to meet loss reserve or eligibility criteria, or violations of applicable statutes, regulations, or published SBA policies and procedures. A Premier CDC may appeal the suspension or revocation made under this section pursuant to the procedures set forth in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA shall remain in effect pending resolution of the appeal.

(f) Applications. A CDC may obtain information concerning this pilot program from the Office of Program Development in the Office of Financial Assistance at SBA’s Headquarters. A CDC may submit its application to the SBA field office in which it is most active. The SBA field office will send the application with its recommendation to the AA/FA for a final decision.

(g) Acceptance into Program. When determining a CDC’s application, SBA will consider the CDC’s ability to work with the local SBA office and the quality of past performance.

(h) Program period. The PCLP pilot program ends on October 1, 2000.

§ 120.850 ADC functions.

(a) An ADC must support local economic development efforts. An ADC may package, close, and service loans for a CDC under a written contract approved by SBA. Such contracts must meet Service Provider criteria, and specify the rights and responsibilities of the parties (including payment
§ 120.851 ADC eligibility and operating requirements.

(a) An ADC must demonstrate to SBA and maintain the following:
(1) Adequate management ability;
(2) A Board of Directors meeting at least quarterly and chosen from the membership by the members;
(3) A professional staff, including at least one qualified full-time professional with small business lending experience available during regular business hours; and
(4) A budget or financial statements showing the financial capability and funding to sustain continuing operations.

(b) An ADC may contract out for staff services only if SBA gives prior approval. The contract, subject to SBA audit, may not be self-serving, and compensation must be reasonable and customary.

§ 120.852 Suspension and revocation of ADCs.

SBA may require corrective action, or the AA/FA may suspend or revoke ADC status upon written notice stating the reasons therefore at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of the suspension or revocation. Reasons for suspension or revocation may include violations of applicable statutes, regulations or published SBA policies and procedures. An ADC may appeal the suspension or revocation made under this section pursuant to the procedures set forth in part 134 of this chapter. The action of the AA/FA shall remain in effect pending resolution of the appeal.

§ 120.855 CDC and ADC ethical requirements.

CDCs, ADCs and their Associates must act ethically and exhibit good character. They must meet all of the ethical requirements of §120.140. In addition, they are subject to the following:

(a) Any benefit flowing to an Associate or his or her employer from activities as an Associate must be merely incidental (this requirement does not prevent an Associate or an Associate’s employer from engaging in a business relationship with the CDC and/or the Borrower in the regular course of business, including providing interim financing or Third-Party loans); and

(b) Unless waived by SBA for good cause, an Associate may not be an officer, director, or manager of more than one CDC or ADC (except that the membership or Board of Directors of a broader-based CDC may include a member or director of a local CDC within its Area of Operations).

PROJECT ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT GOALS

§ 120.860 Required objectives.

A Project must achieve at least one of the economic development objectives set forth in §120.861 or §120.862.

§ 120.861 Job creation or retention.

A Project must create or retain one Job Opportunity for every $35,000 guaranteed by SBA.

§ 120.862 Other economic development objectives.

A Project that achieves any of the following community development or public policy goals is eligible if the CDC’s overall portfolio of 504 loans, including the subject loan, meets or exceeds the CDC’s required Job Opportunity average. Loan applications must indicate how the Project will meet the specified economic development objective.

(a) Community Development goals:
(1) Improving, diversifying or stabilizing the economy of the locality;
(2) Stimulating other business development;
Small Business Administration

§ 120.881 Ineligible Projects for 504 loans.

In addition to the ineligible businesses and uses of proceeds specified in subpart A of this part, the following

(a) Bringing new income into the community;
(b) Assisting manufacturing firms (Standard Industrial Classification Manual (SIC) Codes 20–49); or
(c) Assisting businesses in Labor Surplus Areas as defined by the Department of Labor.

(b) Public Policy goals:
(1) Revitalizing a business district of a community with a written revitalization or redevelopment plan;
(2) Expanding exports;
(3) Expanding Minority Enterprise development (See §124.105(b) for minority groups who qualify for this description);
(4) Aiding rural development;
(5) Increasing productivity and competitiveness (retooling, robotics, modernization, competition with imports);
(6) Modernizing or upgrading facilities to meet health, safety, and environmental requirements; or
(7) Assisting businesses in or moving to areas affected by Federal budget reductions, including base closings, either because of the loss of Federal contracts or the reduction in revenues in the area due to a decreased Federal presence.


§ 120.871 Leasing part of an existing building to another business.

(a) The costs of interior finishing of space to be leased out to another business are not eligible Project costs.
(b) Third-party loan proceeds used to renovate the leased space do not count towards the 504 first mortgage requirement or the Borrower’s contribution.


§ 120.880 Basic eligibility requirements.

In addition to the eligibility requirements specified in subpart A, to be an eligible Borrower for a 504 loan, a small business must:

(a) Use the Project Property (except that an Eligible Passive Company may lease to an Operating Company); and

(b) Together with its affiliates, meet one of the following size standards:

(1) It does not have a tangible net worth in excess of $6 million, and does not have an average net income after Federal income taxes (excluding any carry-over losses) for the preceding two years in excess of $2 million; or

(2) It meets the size standards in part 121 of this chapter for the industry in which it is primarily engaged.

Projects are ineligible for 504 financing:
(a) Relocation of any of the operations of a small business which will cause a net reduction of one-third or more in the workforce of a relocating small business or a substantial increase in unemployment in any area of the country, unless the CDC can justify the loan because:
   (1) The relocation is for key economic reasons and crucial to the continued existence, economic wellbeing, and/or competitiveness of the applicant; and
   (2) The economic development benefits to the applicant and the receiving community outweigh the negative impact on the community from which the applicant is moving; and
(b) Projects in foreign countries (loans financing real or personal property located outside the United States or its possessions).

§ 120.882 Eligible Project costs for 504 loans.

Eligible Project costs which may be paid with the proceeds of 504 loans are:
(a) Costs directly attributable to the Project including expenditures incurred by the Borrower (with its own funds or from a loan):
   (1) To acquire land used in the Project prior to applying to SBA for the 504 loan; or
   (2) For any other expense toward a Project within nine months prior to receipt by SBA of a complete loan application, unless the time limit is extended or waived by SBA for good cause;
(b) In Projects involving construction, a contingency reserve for cost overruns not to exceed 10 percent of construction cost;
(c) Professional fees directly attributable and essential to the Project, such as title insurance, architecture, engineering, accounting, environmental studies, and legal fees (other than legal fees associated with the closing); and
(d) Repayment of interim financing including points, fees and interest.

§ 120.883 Eligible administrative costs for 504 loans.

The following administrative costs are not part of Project costs, but may be paid with the proceeds of the 504 loan and the Debenture (see §120.971):
(a) SBA guarantee fee;
(b) Funding fee (to cover the cost of a public issuance of securities and the Trustee);
(c) CDC processing fee;
(d) Borrower’s out-of-pocket costs associated with the closing of the 504 loan (other than legal fees);
(e) CDC Closing Fee (see §120.971(a)(2)) up to a maximum of $2,500; and
(f) Underwriters’ fee.
[64 FR 2118, Jan. 13, 1999]

§ 120.884 Ineligible costs for 504 loans.

Costs not directly attributable and necessary for the Project may not be paid with proceeds of the 504 loan. These include, but are not limited to, the following:
(a) Debt refinancing (other than interim financing).
(b) Third-Party Loan fees (commitment, broker, finders, origination, processing fees of permanent financing).
(c) Ancillary business expenses, such as:
   (1) Working capital;
   (2) Counseling or management services fees;
   (3) Incorporation/organization costs;
   (4) Franchise fees; and
   (5) Advertising.
(d) Fixed-asset Project components, such as:
   (1) Short-term equipment, furniture, and furnishings (unless essential to and a minor portion of the Project);
   (2) Automobiles, trucks, and airplanes; and
   (3) Construction equipment (except for heavy duty construction equipment integral to a business’ operations and meeting the IRS definition of capital equipment).
§ 120.912 Source of interim financing.

A Project may use interim financing for all Project costs except the Borrower’s contribution. Any source (including a CDC) may supply interim financing provided:

(a) The financing is not derived from any SBA program, directly or indirectly;

(b) The terms and conditions of the financing are acceptable to SBA;

(c) The source is not the Borrower or an Associate of the Borrower; and

(d) The source has the experience and qualifications to monitor properly all Project construction and progress payments. (If the source lacks such experience or qualifications, SBA may require the interim loan to be managed by a third party such as a bank or professional construction manager.)

§ 120.911 Certifications of disbursement and completion.

Before the Debenture is issued, the interim lender must certify the amount disbursed. The CDC must certify that the Project was completed in accordance with the final plans and specifications (except as provided in §120.961).

§ 120.912 Certifications of no adverse change.

Following completion of the Project, the following certifications must be made before the 504 loan closing:

(a) The interim lender must certify to the CDC that it has no knowledge of any unremedied substantial adverse change in the condition of the small business since the application to the interim lender;

(b) The Borrower (or Operating Company) must certify to the CDC that there has been no unremedied substantial adverse change in its financial condition or its ability to repay the 504 loan since the date of application, and must furnish interim financial statements, current within 90 days of closing; and

(c) The CDC must issue an opinion to the best of its knowledge that there has been no unremedied substantial adverse change in the Borrower’s (or Operating Company’s) ability to repay the 504 loan since its submission of the loan application to SBA.

PERMANENT FINANCING

§ 120.900 What are the sources of permanent financing?

Permanent financing for each Project must come from three sources: the Borrower’s contribution, Third-Party Loans, and the 504 loan. Typically, the Borrower contributes 10 percent of the permanent financing, Third-Party Loans 50 percent and the 504 loan 40 percent.

THE BORROWER'S CONTRIBUTION

§ 120.910 How much must the Borrower contribute?

(a) The Borrower must contribute to the Project cash (or property acceptable to SBA obtained with the cash) or land (that is part of the Project Property), in an amount equal to the following percentage of the Project cost, excluding administrative costs:

(1) At least 15 percent, if the Borrower (or Operating Company if the Borrower is an Eligible Passive Company) has operated for two years or less;

(2) At least 15 percent, if the Project involves the acquisition, construction, conversion, or expansion of a limited or single purpose building or structure;

(3) At least 20 percent, if the Project involves conditions described in paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section; or

(4) At least 10 percent, in all other circumstances.

(b) The source of the contribution may be a CDC or any other source except an SBA business loan program (see §120.913 for SBIC exception).

§ 120.911 Land contributions.

The Borrower’s contribution may be land (including buildings, structures and other site improvements which will be part of the Project Property) previously acquired by the Borrower or the CDC.

§ 120.912 Borrowed contributions.

The Borrower may borrow its cash contribution from the CDC or a third
§ 120.913 May an SBIC provide the contribution?  
Subject to part 107 of this chapter, SBIC's may provide financing for all or part of the Borrower's contribution to the project. SBA shall consider SBIC funds to be derived from federal sources if the SBIC has leverage (as defined in part 107 of this chapter). If the SBIC does not have leverage, the investment will be considered to be from private funds. SBIC financing must be subordinated to the 504 loan and may not be repaid at a faster rate than the Debenture.

§ 120.920 Required participation by the Third Party Lender.  
(a) Amount of Third Party Loans. A Project financing must include one or more Third Party Loans totaling at least as much as the 504 loan. However, the Third Party Loans must total at least 50 percent of the total cost of the Project if:

(1) The Borrower (or Operating Company, if the Borrower is an Eligible Passive Company) has operated for two years or less, or

(2) The Project is for the acquisition, construction, conversion or expansion of a limited or single purpose asset.

(b) Third Party Loan collateral. Third Party Loans usually are collateralized by a first lien on the Project property. The SBA cannot guarantee these loans.

§ 120.921 Terms of Third Party Loans.  
(a) Maturity. A Third Party Loan must have a term of at least 7 years when the 504 loan is for a term of 10 years and 10 years when the 504 loan is for 20 years. If there is more than one Third Party Loan, an overall loan maturity must be calculated, taking into account the maturities and amounts of each loan. If there is a balloon payment, it must be justified in the loan report and clearly identified in the Loan Authorization.

(b) Interest rates. Interest rates must be reasonable. SBA must establish and publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a maximum interest rate for any Third Party Loan from commercial financial institutions. The rate shall remain in effect until changed.

(c) Other terms. The Third Party Loan must not have any early call feature or contain any demand provisions unless the loan is in default. By participating, a Third Party Loan lender waives, as to the CDC/SBA financing, any provision in its deed of trust, or mortgage, or other documents prohibiting further encumbrances or subordinate debt. In the event of default, the Third Party Lender must give the CDC and SBA written notice of default within 30 days of the event of default and at least 60 days prior to foreclosure.

(d) Future advances. The Third Party Loan must not be open-ended. After completion of the Project, the Third Party Lender may not make future advances under the Third Party Loan except expenditures to collect amounts due the Third Party Loan notes, maintain collateral and protect the Third Party Lender’s lien position on the Third Party Loan.

(e) Subordination. The Third Party Lender’s lien will be subordinate to the CDC/SBA lien regarding any prepayment penalties, late fees, other default charges, and escalated interest after default due under the Third Party Loan.

(f) Escalation upon default. A Third Party Lender may not escalate the rate of interest upon default to a rate greater than the maximum rate set forth in paragraph (b) of this section. Regarding any Project that SBA approved after September 30, 1996, SBA will only pay the interest rate on the note in effect before the date of the Borrower’s default.

§ 120.1204 Miscellaneous.  
(a) The term ‘‘Third Party Loan’’ shall mean a loan made by a person other than the Borrower or the Operating Company, secured by a first lien on the Project property, the proceeds of which are used to finance a portion of the Project.

(b) In this section, the term ‘‘Third Party Lender’’ shall mean the person or institution making the Third Party Loan.

§ 120.1205 Authority.  
(a) Authority for the terms of this section shall come from 42 U.S.C. 602(a)(1) and 15 U.S.C. 635(a)(1).

(b) Authority for the terms of section 120.913 shall come from section 504 of Title 15, United States Code.
§ 120.922 Pre-existing debt on the Project Property.
In addition to its share of Project cost, a Third-Party Loan may include consolidation of existing debt on the Project Property. The consolidation must not improve the lien position of the Lender on the pre-existing debt, unless the debt is a previous Third-Party Loan.

§ 120.923 What are the policies on subordination?
(a) Financing provided by the seller of Project Property must be subordinate to the 504 loan. SBA may waive the subordination requirement if the property is classified as “other real estate owned” by a national bank or other Federally regulated lender and SBA considers the property to be of sufficient value to support the 504 loan.
(b) A Borrower is eligible for a 504 loan even if part of the Project financing is tax-exempt. SBA’s lien position must not be subordinate to loans made from the proceeds of the tax-exempt obligation.

§ 120.924 Prepayment of subordinate financing.
The Borrower must not prepay any Project financing subordinate to the 504 loan without SBA’s prior written consent.

§ 120.925 Preferences.
No Third Party Lender shall establish a Preference.

§ 120.926 Referral fee.
The CDC may receive a referral fee from the Third Party Lender if the CDC secured the lender for the Borrower under a written contract. The Borrower cannot pay this fee. If a CDC charges a referral fee, the CDC will be construed as a Referral Agent under part 103 of this chapter.

§ 120.930 Amount.
(a) Generally, a 504 loan may not exceed 40 percent of total Project cost plus 100 percent of eligible administrative costs. For good cause shown, SBA may authorize an increase in the percentage of Project costs covered up to 50 percent. No more than 50 percent of eligible Project costs can be from Federal sources, whether received directly or indirectly through an intermediary.
(b) Generally, the minimum 504 loan must be $50,000, although, upon good cause shown, SBA may permit a 504 loan as small as $25,000. The amount of the Debenture must equal the amount of the 504 Loan plus administrative costs.
(c) Upon completion of the Project, the Debenture amount will be reduced by the amount that the unused contingency reserve exceeds 2 percent of the anticipated Debenture.

§ 120.931 504 lending limits.
The outstanding balance of all SBA financial assistance to a Borrower and its affiliates under the 504 program covered by this part must not exceed $750,000 ($1,000,000 if one or more of the public policy goals enumerated in § 120.862(b) applies to the Project).

§ 120.932 Interest rate.
The interest rate of the 504 Loan and the Debenture which funds it is set by the SBA and approved by the Secretary of the Treasury.

§ 120.933 Maturity.
The term of a 504 Loan and the Debenture which funds it shall be either 10 or 20 years.

§ 120.934 Collateral.
The CDC/SBA takes a junior lien position (usually a second lien) on the Project collateral. In rare circumstances, collateral other than the Project collateral may be accepted by SBA. Sometimes secondary collateral is required. All collateral must be insured against such hazards and risks as SBA may require, with provisions for notice to SBA and the CDC in the event of impending lapse of coverage.

§ 120.935 Deposit.
At the time of application for a 504 loan, the CDC may require a deposit from the Borrower of $2,500 or 1 percent of the Net Debenture Proceeds, whichever is less. The deposit may be applied to the loan processing fee if the application is accepted, but must be refunded if the application is denied. If
§ 120.936 Subordination to CDC.

SBA, in its sole discretion, may permit subordination of the Debenture to any other obligation of the CDC, except debt incurred by the CDC to obtain funds to loan to the Borrower for the Borrower’s required contribution to the Project financing.

§ 120.937 Assumption.

A 504 loan may be assumed with SBA’s prior written approval.

§ 120.938 Default.

(a) Upon occurrence of an event of default specified in the 504 note which requires automatic acceleration, the note becomes due and payable. Upon occurrence of an event of default which does not require automatic acceleration, SBA may forbear acceleration of the note and attempt to resolve the default. If the default is not cured subsequently, the note shall be accelerated. In either case, upon acceleration of the note, the Debenture which funded it is also due immediately, and SBA must honor its guarantee of the Debenture. SBA shall not reimburse the investor for any premium paid.

(b) If a CDC defaults on a Debenture, SBA generally shall limit its recovery to the payments made by the small business to the CDC on the loan made from the Debenture proceeds, and the collateral securing the defaulted loan. However, SBA will look to the CDC for the entire amount of the Debenture in the case of fraud, negligence, or misrepresentation by the CDC.

§ 120.939 Borrower prohibition.

Neither a Borrower nor an Associate of the Borrower may purchase an interest in a Debenture Pool in which the Debenture that funded its 504 loan has been placed.

§ 120.940 Prepayment of the 504 loan or Debenture.

The Borrower may prepay its 504 loan, if it pays the entire principal balance, unpaid interest, any unpaid fees, and any prepayment premium established in the note. If the Borrower prepays, the CDC must prepay the corresponding Debenture with interest and premium. If one of the Debentures in a Debenture Pool is prepaid, the Investors in that Debenture Pool must be paid pro rata, and SBA’s guarantee on the entire Debenture Pool must be proportionately reduced. If the entire Debenture Pool is paid off, SBA may call all Certificates backed by the Pool for redemption.

§ 120.941 Certificates.

(a) The face value of a Certificate must be at least $25,000. Certificates are issued in registered form and transferred only by entry on the central registry maintained by the Trustee. SBA guarantees the timely payment of principal and interest on the Certificates.

(b) Before the sale of a Certificate, the seller, or the broker or dealer acting as the seller’s agent, must disclose to the purchaser the terms, conditions, yield, and premium and other characteristics not guaranteed by SBA.

DEBENTURE SALES AND SERVICE AGENTS

§ 120.950 SBA and CDC must appoint agents.

SBA and the CDC must appoint the following agents to facilitate the sale and service of the Certificates and disbursement of the proceeds.

§ 120.951 Selling agent.

The CDC, with SBA approval, shall appoint a Selling Agent to select underwriters, negotiate the terms and conditions of Debenture offerings with the underwriters, and direct and coordinate Debenture sales.

§ 120.952 Fiscal agent.

SBA shall appoint a Fiscal Agent to assess the financial markets, minimize the cost of sales, arrange for the production of the Offering Circular, Debenture Certificates, and other required documents, and monitor the performance of the Trustee and the underwriters.

§ 120.953 Trustee.

SBA must appoint a Trustee to:

(a) Issue Certificates;
§ 120.960 Responsibility for closing.

The CDC is responsible for the 504 Loan closing. The Debenture closing is the joint responsibility of the CDC and SBA.
§ 120.961 Construction escrow accounts.

The CSA, title company, CDC attorney, or bank may hold Debenture proceeds in escrow to complete Project components such as landscaping and parking lots, and acquire machinery and equipment if the component or acquisition is a minor portion of the total Project and has been contracted for completion or delivery at a specified price and specific future date. The escrow agent must disburse funds upon approval by the CDC and the SBA, supported by invoices and payable jointly to the small business and the designated contractor.

SERVICING AND FEES

§ 120.970 Servicing of 504 loans and Debentures.

The CDC must service the 504 loan in accordance with the Loan Authorization, these regulations, SBA policies and procedures, and prudent lending standards until paid in full, including review of the small business’s financial statements, tax filings, insurance, and security filings. In doing so, CDCs must comply with the provisions of §120.513. In addition, CDCs must comply with the servicing requirements set forth in SBA’s SOP. CDCs must report promptly to SBA any adverse trend, condition or information relevant to a Borrower. Upon request by a CDC, SBA may agree to defer a Borrower’s monthly payment. SBA may negotiate agreements with CDCs to liquidate loans.

§ 120.971 Allowable fees paid by Borrower.

(a) CDC fees. CDCs may charge the following fees to the Borrower:
   (1) Processing fee. The CDC may charge up to 1.5 percent of the net Debenture proceeds to process the financing. Two-thirds of this fee will be considered earned and may be collected by the CDC when the Authorization for the Debenture is issued by SBA. The portion of the processing fee paid by the Borrower may be reimbursed from the Debenture proceeds;
   (2) Closing fee. The CDC may charge a reasonable closing fee sufficient to reimburse it for the expenses of its in-house or outside legal counsel, and other miscellaneous closing costs (CDC Closing Fee). Closing costs, other than legal fees, may be funded out of the Debenture proceeds;
   (3) Servicing fee. The CDC will charge a monthly servicing fee of at least 0.625 percent per annum and no more than 2 percent per annum on the unpaid balance of the loan as determined at five-year anniversary intervals. A servicing fee greater than 1.5 percent in a rural area and 1 percent everywhere else requires SBA’s prior written approval, based on evidence of substantial need. The servicing fee may be paid only from loan payments received. The fees may be accrued without interest and collected from the CSA when the payments are made.
   (4) Late fees. Loan payments received after the 15th of each month may be subject to a late payment fee of 5 percent of the late payment or $100, whichever is greater. These fees will be collected by the CSA on behalf of the CDC, and
   (5) Assumption fee. Upon SBA’s written approval, a CDC may charge an assumption fee not to exceed 1 percent of the outstanding principal balance of the loan being assumed.

(b) CSA fees. The CSA may charge an initiation fee on each loan and a monthly servicing fee under the terms of the Master Servicing Agreement.

(c) Other agent fees. Agent fees and charges necessary to market and service Debentures and Certificates may be assessed to the Borrower or the investor. The fees must be approved by SBA and published periodically in the Federal Register.

(d) SBA fees. (1) SBA charges a 0.5 percent guarantee fee on the Debenture.
   (2) For loans approved by SBA after September 30, 1996, SBA charges a fee of not more than 0.9375 percent annually on the unpaid principal balance of the loan as determined at five-year anniversary intervals.
   (e) Miscellaneous fees. A funding fee not to exceed 0.25 percent of the Debenture may be charged to cover costs incurred by the trustee, fiscal agent, transfer agent.

§ 120.972 Third Party Lender participation fee and Development Company fee.

(a) Participation fee. For loans approved by SBA after September 30, 1996, SBA must collect a one-time fee from the Third Party Lender equal to 50 basis points on its total participation in a Project when the Third Party Lender occupies a senior credit position to SBA in the project.

(b) Development company fee. For loans approved by SBA after September 30, 1996, SBA must collect an annual fee from the CDC equal to 0.125 percent of the outstanding principal balance of the debenture. The fee must be paid from the servicing fees collected by the CDC and cannot be paid from any additional fees imposed on the Borrowers.

[64 FR 2119, Jan. 13, 1999]

§ 120.973 Oversight and evaluation of CDCs and ADCs.

SBA may conduct an operational review of a CDC or ADC. The SBA Office of Inspector General may conduct, supervise or coordinate audits pursuant to the Inspector General Act. The CDC or ADC must cooperate and make its staff, records, and facilities available.


CDC TRANSFER, SUSPENSION AND REVOCATION

§ 120.980 Transfer of CDC to ADC status.

SBA shall transfer to ADC status any CDC that fails to meet the activity level required by SBA, on average over two consecutive fiscal years. SBA shall notify the CDC in writing of the action and of the opportunity for a hearing pursuant to part 134 of this chapter at least 10 business days prior to the transfer. During the pendency of a hearing, SBA’s action will remain in effect.

§ 120.981 Voluntary transfer and surrender of CDC certification.

A CDC may not transfer its certification or withdraw from the 504 program without SBA’s consent. The CDC must provide a plan to SBA to transfer its portfolio. The portfolio may only be transferred with SBA’s written consent. If a CDC desires to withdraw from the 504 program, it must forfeit its portfolio to SBA. SBA may conduct an audit of the transferring or withdrawing CDC.

§ 120.982 Correcting CDC servicing deficiencies.

SBA may require corrective action, including the transfer of existing or pending financings to another CDC in good standing. SBA must notify the CDC in writing of any servicing, reporting or collection deficiencies and the corrective actions to be taken. SBA may instruct the CSA to withhold service and late fees and may assess the CDC up to $250 per day for expenses incurred by SBA to correct the deficiencies. If non-compliance continues for 90 days, SBA may take the fees as compensation for its efforts to obtain compliance.

§ 120.983 Transfer of CDC servicing to SBA or another CDC.

If a CDC fails to correct servicing deficiencies, or is unable or unwilling to service its portfolio, SBA may assume the servicing or require the transfer of all or part of the CDC’s portfolio to another CDC within or adjoining the deficient CDC’s Area of Operations. If there is no suitable CDC, SBA may approve a transfer to another entity. Future service fees from transferred loans will be paid to the transferee. In addition, the CDC’s processing authority will be temporarily suspended.

§ 120.984 Suspension or revocation of CDC certification.

(a) Suspend or revoke. The AA/FA may suspend or revoke the CDC’s certification if a CDC:

(1) Violates a statute, an SBA regulation, or the terms of a Debenture, authorization, or agreement with SBA;

(2) Makes a material false statement, knowingly misrepresents, or fails to state a material fact;

(3) Fails to maintain good character;

(4) Fails to operate according to prudent lending standards;

(5) Fails to correct servicing, collection, reporting, or other deficiencies; or
§ 120.990

(b) Transfer portfolio. Upon suspension or revocation, the CDC must transfer its remaining portfolio and any 504 applications or financings in process to another CDC designated or approved by SBA. If a pending 504 financing is completed after a transfer, any deposit must also be transferred. Any fees must be apportioned by SBA between the two CDCs in proportion to services performed.

(c) Provide written notice. SBA must give written notice to the CDC at least 10 business days prior to the effective date of a suspension or revocation, informing the CDC of the opportunity for a hearing pursuant to part 134 of this chapter.

§ 120.991 Effect of other laws.

No State or local law may preclude or limit SBA’s exercise of its rights with respect to notes, guarantees, Debentures and Debenture Pools, or of its enforcement rights to foreclose on collateral.

PART 121—SMALL BUSINESS SIZE REGULATIONS

Subpart A—Size Eligibility Provisions and Standards

PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICABILITY

Sec.
121.101 What are SBA size standards?
121.102 How does SBA establish size standards?
121.103 What is affiliation?
121.104 How does SBA calculate annual receipts?
121.105 How does SBA define “business concern or concern”?
121.106 How does SBA calculate number of employees?
121.107 How does SBA determine a concern’s “primary industry”?
121.108 What are the penalties for misrepresentation of size status?
SIZE STANDARDS USED TO DEFINE SMALL BUSINESS CONCERNS
121.201 What size standards has SBA identified by North American Industry Classification System codes?
SIZE ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR SBA FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE
121.301 What size standards are applicable to financial assistance programs?
121.302 When does SBA determine the size status of an applicant?
121.303 What size procedures are used by SBA before it makes a formal size determination?
121.304 What are the size requirements for refinancing an existing SBA loan?
121.305 What size eligibility requirements exist for obtaining business loans relating to particular procurements?
SIZE ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR GOVERNMENT Procurement
121.401 What procurement programs are subject to size determinations?
121.402 What size standards are applicable to procurement assistance programs?
121.403 Are SBA size determinations and NAICS code designations binding on parties?
121.404 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?
121.405 May a business concern self-certify its small business size status?
121.406 How does a small business concern qualify to provide manufactured products under small business set-aside or MED procurements?
121.407 What are the size procedures for multiple item procurements?
121.408 What are the size procedures for SBA’s Certificate of Competency Program?
121.409 What size standard applies in an unrestricted procurement for Certificate of Competency purposes?
121.410 What are the size standards for SBA’s Section 8(d) Subcontracting Program?
121.411 What are the size procedures for SBA’s Section 8(d) Subcontracting Program?
121.412 What are the size procedures for partial small business set-asides?
121.413 What size must a concern be to be eligible for the Very Small Business program?
Small Business Administration

Size Eligibility Requirements for Sales or Lease of Government Property

121.501 What programs for sales or leases of Government property are subject to size determinations?
121.502 What size standards are applicable to programs for sales or leases of Government property?
121.503 Are SBA size determinations binding on parties?
121.504 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?
121.505 May a business concern self-certify its size status?

Size Eligibility Requirements for the Minority Enterprise Development (MED) Program

121.601 What is a small business for purposes of admission to SBA’s Minority Enterprise Development (MED) program?
121.602 At what point in time must a MED applicant be small?
121.603 How does SBA determine whether a Participant is small for a particular MED subcontract?
121.604 Are MED Participants considered small for purposes of other SBA assistance?

Size Eligibility Requirements for the Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) Program

121.701 What SBIR programs are subject to size determinations?
121.702 What size standards are applicable to the SBIR program?
121.703 Are formal size determinations binding on parties?
121.704 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?
121.705 Must a business concern self-certify its size status?

Size Eligibility Requirements for Paying Reduced Patent Fees

121.801 May patent fees be reduced if a concern is small?
121.802 What size standards are applicable to reduced patent fees programs?
121.803 Are formal size determinations binding on parties?
121.804 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?
121.805 May a business concern self-certify its size status?

Size Eligibility Requirements for Compliance With Programs of Other Agencies

121.901 Can other Government agencies obtain SBA size determinations?
121.902 What size standards are applicable to programs of other agencies?
121.903 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?

Procedures for Size Protests and Requests for Formal Size Determinations

121.1001 Who may initiate a size protest or a request for formal size determination?
121.1002 Who makes a formal size determination?
121.1003 Where should a size protest be filed?
121.1004 What time limits apply to size protests?
121.1005 How must a protest be filed with the contracting officer?
121.1006 When will a size protest be referred to an SBA Government Contracting Area Office?
121.1007 Must a protest of size status relate to a particular procurement and be specific?
121.1008 What happens after SBA receives a size protest or a request for a formal size determination?
121.1009 What are the procedures for making the size determination?
121.1010 How does a concern become recertified as a small business?

Appeals of Size Determinations and NAICS Code Designations

121.1101 Are formal size determinations subject to appeal?
121.1102 Are NAICS code designations subject to appeal?
121.1103 What are the procedures for appealing an NAICS code designation?

Subpart B—Other Applicable Provisions

Waivers of the Nonmanufacturer Rule for Classes of Products and Individual Contracts

121.1201 What is the Nonmanufacturer Rule?
121.1202 When will a waiver of the Nonmanufacturer Rule be granted for a class of products?
§ 121.101  What are SBA size standards?

(a) SBA’s size standards define whether a business entity is small and, thus, eligible for Government programs and preferences reserved for “small business” concerns. Size standards have been established for types of economic activity, or industry, generally under the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS).

(b) NAICS is described in the North American Industry Classification Manual—United States, 1997 which is available from the National Technical Information Service, 5285 Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161; by calling 1(800) 553-6847 or 1(703) 605-6000; or via the Internet at http://www.ntis.gov/yellowbk/1nty205.htm. The manual includes definitions for each industry, tables showing relationships between 1997 NAICS and 1987 SICs, and a comprehensive index. NAICS assigns codes to all economic activity within twenty broad sectors. Section 121.201 provides a full table of small business size standards matched to the U.S. NAICS industry codes. A full table matching a size standard with each NAICS Industry or U.S. Industry code is also published annually by SBA in the Federal Register.

[65 FR 30840, May 15, 2000]

§ 121.102  How does SBA establish size standards?

(a) SBA considers economic characteristics comprising the structure of an industry, including degree of competition, average firm size, start-up costs and entry barriers, and distribution of firms by size. It also considers technological changes, competition from other industries, growth trends, historical activity within an industry, unique factors occurring in the industry which may distinguish small firms from other firms, and the objectives of its programs and the impact on those programs of different size standard levels.

(b) As part of its review of a size standard, SBA will investigate if any concern at or below a particular standard would be dominant in the industry. SBA will take into consideration market share of a concern and other appropriate factors which may allow a concern to exercise a major controlling influence on a national basis in which a number of business concerns are engaged. Size standards seek to ensure that a concern that meets a specific size standard is not dominant in its field of operation.

(c) Please address any requests to change existing size standards or establish new ones for emerging industries to the Assistant Administrator for Size Standards, Small Business Administration, 409 3rd Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.
(b) Exclusion from affiliation coverage.

(1) Business concerns owned in whole or substantial part by investment companies licensed, or development companies qualifying, under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended, are not considered affiliates of such investment companies or development companies.

(2) Business concerns owned and controlled by Indian Tribes, Alaska Regional or Village Corporations organized pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601), Native Hawaiian Organizations, or Community Development Corporations authorized by 42 U.S.C. 9805 are not considered affiliates of such entities, or with other concerns owned by these entities solely because of their common ownership.

(3) Business concerns which are part of an SBA approved pool of concerns for a joint program of research and development as authorized by the Small Business Act are not affiliates of one another because of the pool.

(4) Business concerns which lease employees from concerns primarily engaged in leasing employees to other businesses or which enter into a co-employer arrangement with a Professional Employer Organization (PEO) are not affiliated with the leasing company or PEO solely on the basis of a leasing agreement.

(5) For financial, management or technical assistance under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended, (an applicant is not affiliated with the investors listed in paragraphs (b)(5)(i) through (vi) of this section.

(i) Venture capital operating companies, as defined in the U.S. Department of Labor regulations found at 29 CFR 2510.3-101(d);

(ii) Employee benefit or pension plans established and maintained by the Federal government or any state, or their political subdivisions, or any agency or instrumentality thereof, for the benefit of employees;

(iii) Employee benefit or pension plans within the meaning of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (29 U.S.C. 1001, et seq.);

(iv) Charitable trusts, foundations, endowments, or similar organizations exempt from Federal income taxation under section 501(c) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (26 U.S.C. 501(c));

(v) Investment companies registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (1940 Act) (15 U.S.C. 80a-1, et seq.); and

(vi) Investment companies, as defined under the 1940 Act, which are not registered under the 1940 Act because they are beneficially owned by less than 100 persons, if the company's sales literature or organizational documents indicate that its principal purpose is investment in securities rather than the operation of commercial enterprises.

(6) A protege firm is not an affiliate of a mentor firm solely because the protege firm receives assistance from the mentor firm under Federal Mentor-Protege programs.

(c) Affiliation based on stock ownership.

(1) A person is an affiliate of a concern if the person owns or controls, or has the power to control 50 percent or more of its voting stock, or a block of stock which affords control because it is large compared to other outstanding blocks of stock.

(2) If two or more persons each owns, controls or has the power to control less than 50 percent of the voting stock of a concern, with minority holdings that are equal or approximately equal in size, but the aggregate of these minority holdings is large as compared with any other stock holding, each such person is presumed to be an affiliate of the concern.

(d) Affiliation arising under stock options, convertible debentures, and agreements to merge. Since stock options, convertible debentures, and agreements to merge (including agreements in principle) affect the power to control a concern, SBA treats them as though the rights granted have been exercised (except that an affiliate cannot use them to appear to terminate control over another concern before it actually does so). SBA gives present effect to an agreement to merge or sell stock whether such agreement is unconditional, conditional, or finalized but unexecuted. Agreements to open or continue negotiations towards the possibility of a merger or a sale of stock
at some later date are not considered “agreements in principle” and, thus, are not given present effect.

(e) Affiliation based on common management. Affiliation arises where one or more officers, directors or general partners controls the board of directors and/or the management of another concern.

(f) Affiliation based on joint venture arrangements. (1) Parties to a joint venture are affiliates if any one of them seeks SBA financial assistance for use in connection with the joint venture.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(3) of this section, concerns submitting offers on a particular procurement or property sale as joint venturers are affiliated with each other with regard to the performance of that contract.

(3) Exclusion from affiliation. (i) A joint venture or teaming arrangement of two or more business concerns may submit an offer as a small business for a Federal procurement without regard to affiliation under this paragraph (f) so long as each concern is small under the size standard corresponding to the NAICS code assigned to the contract, provided:

(A) The procurement qualifies as a “bundled” requirement, at any dollar value, within the meaning of §125.2(d)(1)(i) of this chapter; or

(B) The procurement is other than a “bundled” requirement within the meaning of §125.2(d)(1)(i) of this chapter, and:

(1) For a procurement having a revenue-based size standard, the dollar value of the procurement, including options, exceeds half the size standard corresponding to the NAICS code assigned to the contract; or

(2) For a procurement having an employee-based size standard, the dollar value of the procurement, including options, exceeds $10 million.

(ii) A joint venture or teaming arrangement of at least one 8(a) Participant and one or more other business concerns may submit an offer for a competitive 8(a) procurement without regard to affiliation under paragraph (f) of this section so long as the requirements of 13 CFR 124.513(b)(1) are met.

(iii) Two firms approved by SBA to be a mentor and protege under 13 CFR 124.520 may joint venture as a small business for any Federal Government procurement, provided the protege qualifies as small for the size standard corresponding to the NAICS code assigned to the procurement and, for purposes of 8(a) sole source requirements, has not reached the dollar limit set forth in 13 CFR 124.519.

(4) A contractor and subcontractor are treated as joint venturers if the ostensible subcontractor will perform primary and vital requirements of a contract or if the prime contractor is unusually reliant upon the ostensible subcontractor. All requirements of the contract are considered in reviewing such relationship, including contract management, technical responsibilities, and the percentage of subcontracted work.

(5) For size purposes, a concern must include in its revenues its proportionate share of joint venture receipts.

(g) Affiliation based on franchise and license agreements. The restraints imposed on a franchisee or licensee by its franchise or license agreement relating to standardized quality, advertising, accounting format and other similar provisions, generally will not be considered in determining whether the franchisor or licensor is affiliated with the franchisee or licensee provided the franchisee or licensee has the right to profit from its efforts and bears the risk of loss commensurate with ownership. Affiliation may arise, however, through other means, such as common ownership, common management or excessive restrictions upon the sale of the franchise interest.

Subchapter S corporations; Form 1065 for partnerships; and Form 1040, Schedule F for farm or Schedule C for sole proprietorships). However, the term receipts excludes net capital gains or losses, taxes collected for and remitted to a taxing authority if included in gross or total income, proceeds from the transactions between a concern and its domestic or foreign affiliates (if also excluded from gross or total income on a consolidated return filed with the IRS), and amounts collected for another by a travel agent, real estate agent, advertising agent, conference management service provider, freight forwarder or customs broker.

(2) Completed fiscal year means a taxable year including any short period. Taxable year and short period have the meaning attributed to them by the IRS.

(3) Unless otherwise defined in this section, all terms shall have the meaning attributed to them by the IRS.

§ 121.106 How does SBA calculate number of employees?

(a) Employees counted in determining size include all individuals employed on a full-time, part-time, temporary, or other basis. SBA will consider the totality of the circumstances,
§ 121.107 How does SBA determine a concern’s “primary industry”?  

In determining the primary industry in which a concern or a concern combined with its affiliates is engaged, SBA considers the distribution of receipts, employees and costs of doing business among the different industries in which business operations occurred for the most recently completed fiscal year. SBA may also consider other factors, such as the distribution of patents, contract awards, and assets.

§ 121.108 What are the penalties for misrepresentation of size status?  

In addition to other laws which may be applicable, section 16(d) of the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 645(d), provides severe criminal penalties for knowingly misrepresenting the small business size status of a concern in connection with procurement programs. Section 16(a) of the Act also provides, in part, for criminal penalties for knowingly making false statements or misrepresentations to SBA for the purpose of influencing in any way the actions of the Agency.

SIZE STANDARDS USED TO DEFINE SMALL BUSINESS CONCERNS

§ 121.201 What size standards has SBA identified by North American Industry Classification System codes?

The size standards described in this section apply to all SBA programs unless otherwise specified in this part. The size standards themselves are expressed either in number of employees or annual receipts in millions of dollars, unless otherwise specified. The number of employees or annual receipts indicates the maximum allowed for a concern and its affiliates to be considered small.

### SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111110</td>
<td>Soybean Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111120</td>
<td>Oilsseed (except Soybean) Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111130</td>
<td>Dry Pea and Bean Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111140</td>
<td>Wheat Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111150</td>
<td>Corn Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111160</td>
<td>Rice Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111191</td>
<td>Oilsseed and Grain Combination Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111199</td>
<td>All Other Grain Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111201</td>
<td>Potato Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111219</td>
<td>Other Vegetable (except Potato) and Melon Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111310</td>
<td>Orange Groves</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111320</td>
<td>Citrus (except Orange) Groves</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111331</td>
<td>Apple Orchards</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sector 11—Agriculture, Forestry and Fishing

Subsector 111—Crop Production
Small Business Administration

§ 121.201

SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>111133</td>
<td>Grape Vineyards</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111133</td>
<td>Strawberry Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111134</td>
<td>Berry (except Strawberry) Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111135</td>
<td>Tree Nut Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111136</td>
<td>Fruit and Tree Nut Combination Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111139</td>
<td>Other Noncitrus Fruit Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111141</td>
<td>Mushroom Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111149</td>
<td>Other Food Crops Grown Under Cover</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111141</td>
<td>Nursery and Tree Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111142</td>
<td>Floriculture Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111910</td>
<td>Tobacco Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111920</td>
<td>Cotton Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111930</td>
<td>Sugarcane Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111940</td>
<td>Hay Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111991</td>
<td>Sugar Beet Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111992</td>
<td>Peanut Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111998</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Crop Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 112—Animal Production

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>112111</td>
<td>Beef Cattle Ranching and Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112112</td>
<td>Cattle Feedlots</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112120</td>
<td>Dairy Cattle and Milk Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112210</td>
<td>Hog and Pig Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112310</td>
<td>Chicken Egg Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112320</td>
<td>Broilers and Other Meat Type Chicken Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112330</td>
<td>Turkey Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112340</td>
<td>Poultry Hatcheries</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112390</td>
<td>Other Poultry Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112410</td>
<td>Sheep Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112420</td>
<td>Goat Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112511</td>
<td>Finfish Farming and Fish Hatcheries</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112512</td>
<td>Shellfish Farming</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112519</td>
<td>Other Animal Aquaculture</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112910</td>
<td>Apiculture</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112920</td>
<td>Horse and Other Equine Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112930</td>
<td>Fur-Bearing Animal and Rabbit Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112990</td>
<td>All Other Animal Production</td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 113—Forestry and Logging

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>113110</td>
<td>Timber Tract Operations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113610</td>
<td>Forest Nurseries and Gathering of Forest Products</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113310</td>
<td>Logging</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 114—Fishing, Hunting and Trapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>114111</td>
<td>Finfish Fishing</td>
<td>$3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114112</td>
<td>Shellfish Fishing</td>
<td>$3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114118</td>
<td>Other Marine Fishing</td>
<td>$3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114210</td>
<td>Hunting and Trapping</td>
<td>$3.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 115—Support Activities for Agriculture and Forestry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>115111</td>
<td>Cotton Ginning</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115112</td>
<td>Soil Preparation, Planting, and Cultivating</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115113</td>
<td>Crop Harvesting, Primarily by Machine</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115114</td>
<td>Postharvest Crop Activities (except Cotton Ginning)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115115</td>
<td>Farm Labor Contractors and Crew Leaders</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115116</td>
<td>Farm Management Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115210</td>
<td>Support Activities for Animal Production</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115310</td>
<td>Support Activities for Forestry</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sector 21—Mining

Subsector 211—Oil and Gas Extraction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>211111</td>
<td>Crude Petroleum and Natural Gas Extraction</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>211112</td>
<td>Natural Gas Liquid Extraction</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 212—Mining (except Oil and Gas)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>212111</td>
<td>Bituminous Coal and Lignite Surface Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212112</td>
<td>Bituminous Coal Underground Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212211</td>
<td>Gold Ore Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212212</td>
<td>Silver Ore Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212231</td>
<td>Lead and Zinc Ore Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212234</td>
<td>Copper Ore and Nickel Ore Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212291</td>
<td>Uranium-Radium-Vanadium Ore Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212299</td>
<td>All Other Metal Ore Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212311</td>
<td>Dimension Stone Mining and Quarrying</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212312</td>
<td>Crushed and Broken Limestone Mining and Quarrying</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212313</td>
<td>Crushed and Broken Granite Mining and Quarrying</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212319</td>
<td>Other Crushed and Broken Stone Mining and Quarrying</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212321</td>
<td>Construction Sand and Gravel Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212322</td>
<td>Industrial Sand Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212325</td>
<td>Clay and Ceramic and Refractory Minerals Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212391</td>
<td>Potash, Soda, and Borate Mineral Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212392</td>
<td>Phosphate Rock Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212393</td>
<td>Other Chemical and Fertilizer Mineral Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212399</td>
<td>All Other Nonmetallic Mineral Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 213—Support Activities for Mining**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>213111</td>
<td>Drilling Oil and Gas Wells</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213112</td>
<td>Support Activities for Oil and Gas Operations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213113</td>
<td>Support Activities for Coal Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213114</td>
<td>Support Activities for Metal Mining</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213115</td>
<td>Support Activities for Nonmetallic Minerals (except Fuels)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sector 22—Utilities**

**Subsector 221—Utilities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>221111</td>
<td>Hydroelectric Power Generation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221112</td>
<td>Fossil Fuel Electric Power Generation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221113</td>
<td>Nuclear Electric Power Generation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221119</td>
<td>Other Electric Power Generation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221121</td>
<td>Electric Bulk Power Transmission and Control</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221122</td>
<td>Electric Power Distribution</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221210</td>
<td>Natural Gas Distribution</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221310</td>
<td>Water Supply and Irrigation Systems</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221320</td>
<td>Sewage Treatment Facilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221330</td>
<td>Steam and Air-Conditioning Supply</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sector 23—Construction**

**Subsector 233—Building, Developing and General Contracting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>233110</td>
<td>Land Subdivision and Land Development</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Small Business Administration**  

**§ 121.201**

**SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>233210</td>
<td>Single Family Housing Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233220</td>
<td>Multifamily Housing Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233310</td>
<td>Manufacturing and Industrial Building Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233320</td>
<td>Commercial and Institutional Building Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 234—Heavy Construction**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>234110</td>
<td>Highway and Street Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234120</td>
<td>Bridge and Tunnel Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234910</td>
<td>Water, Sewer, and Pipeline Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234920</td>
<td>Power and Communication Transmission Line Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234930</td>
<td>Industrial Nonbuilding Structure Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234990</td>
<td>All Other Heavy Construction</td>
<td>$27.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 235—Special Trade Contractors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>235110</td>
<td>Plumbing, Heating and Air-Conditioning Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235210</td>
<td>Painting and Wall Covering Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235310</td>
<td>Electrical Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235410</td>
<td>Masonry and Stone Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235420</td>
<td>Drywall, Plastering, Acoustical and Insulation Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235430</td>
<td>Tile, Marble, Terrazzo and Mosaic Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235510</td>
<td>Carpentry Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235520</td>
<td>Floor Laying and Other Floor Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235610</td>
<td>Roofing, Siding and Sheet Metal Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235710</td>
<td>Concrete Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235810</td>
<td>Water Well Drilling Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235910</td>
<td>Structural Steel Erection Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235920</td>
<td>Glass and Glazing Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235930</td>
<td>Excavation Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235940</td>
<td>Wrecking and Demolition Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235950</td>
<td>Building Equipment and Other Machinery Installation Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235990</td>
<td>All Other Special Trade Contractors</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Except Dredging and Surface Cleanup Activities** $17.0

**Sectors 31–33—Manufacturing**

**Subsector 311—Food Manufacturing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>311111</td>
<td>Dog and Cat Food Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311119</td>
<td>Other Animal Food Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311211</td>
<td>Flour Milling</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311212</td>
<td>Rice Milling</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311213</td>
<td>Malt Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311221</td>
<td>Wet Corn Milling</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311222</td>
<td>Soybean Processing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311223</td>
<td>Other Oilseed Processing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311225</td>
<td>Fats and Oils Refining and Blending</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311230</td>
<td>Breakfast Cereal Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311311</td>
<td>Sugarcane Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311312</td>
<td>Cane Sugar Refining</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311313</td>
<td>Beet Sugar Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311320</td>
<td>Chocolate and Confectionery Manufacturing from Cacao Beans</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311330</td>
<td>Confectionery Manufacturing from Purchased Chocolate</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311340</td>
<td>Non-Chocolate Confectionery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311411</td>
<td>Frozen Fruit, Juice and Vegetable Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311412</td>
<td>Frozen Specialty Food Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311421</td>
<td>Fruit and Vegetable Canning</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311422</td>
<td>Specialty Canning</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311423</td>
<td>Dried and Dehydrated Food Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311511</td>
<td>Fluid Milk Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311512</td>
<td>Creamery Butter Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311513</td>
<td>Cheese Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311514</td>
<td>Dry, Condensed, and Evaporated Dairy Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311520</td>
<td>Ice Cream and Frozen Dessert Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311611</td>
<td>Animal (except Poultry) Slaughtering</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Subsector 312—Apparel Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>311612</td>
<td>Meat Processed from Carcasses</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311613</td>
<td>Rendering and Meat By-product Processing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31615</td>
<td>Poultry Processing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31711</td>
<td>Seafood Canning</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31712</td>
<td>Fresh and Frozen Seafood Processing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31811</td>
<td>Retail Bakeries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31812</td>
<td>Commercial Bakeries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31813</td>
<td>Frozen Cakes, Pies, and Other Pastries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31821</td>
<td>Cookie and Cracker Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31822</td>
<td>Flour Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31823</td>
<td>Dry Pasta Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31830</td>
<td>Tortilla Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31911</td>
<td>Roasted Nuts and Peanut Butter Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31912</td>
<td>Other Snack Food Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31913</td>
<td>Coffee and Tea Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31993</td>
<td>Flavored Syrup and Concentrate Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31941</td>
<td>Mayonnaise, Dressing and Other Prepared Sauce</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31942</td>
<td>Spice and Extract Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31999</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Food Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subsector 313—Textile Mills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>313111</td>
<td>Yarn Spinning Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313112</td>
<td>Yarn Texturizing, Throwing and Twisting Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313113</td>
<td>Thread Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313210</td>
<td>Broadwoven Fabric Mills</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313221</td>
<td>Narrow Fabric Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313222</td>
<td>Schiffli Machine Embroidery</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313230</td>
<td>Nonwoven Fabric Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313241</td>
<td>Welt Knit Fabric Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313243</td>
<td>Other Knit Fabric and Lace Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313311</td>
<td>Broadwoven Fabric Finishing Mills</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313312</td>
<td>Textile and Fabric Finishing (except Broadwoven)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313320</td>
<td>Fabric Coating Mills</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subsector 314—Textile Product Mills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>314110</td>
<td>Carpet and Rug Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314120</td>
<td>Curtain and Drapery Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314129</td>
<td>Other Household Textile Product Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314911</td>
<td>Textile Bag Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314912</td>
<td>Canvas and Related Product Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314991</td>
<td>Rope, Cordage and Twine Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314992</td>
<td>Tire Cord and Tire Fabric Mills</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314998</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Textile Product Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subsector 315—Apparel Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>315111</td>
<td>Sheer Hosiery Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315119</td>
<td>Other Hosiery and Stock Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315191</td>
<td>Outerwear Knitting Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315192</td>
<td>Underwear and Nightwear Knitting Mills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315211</td>
<td>Women's and Boys' Cut and Sew Apparel Contractors</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315212</td>
<td>Women's, Girls', and Infants' Cut and Sew Apparel Contractors</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAICS codes</td>
<td>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</td>
<td>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315221</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Cut and Sew Underwear and Nightwear Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315222</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Cut and Sew Suit, Coat and Overcoat Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315223</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Cut and Sew Shirt (except Work Shirt) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315224</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Cut and Sew Trouser, Slack and Jean Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315225</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Cut and Sew Work Clothing Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315228</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Cut and Sew Other Outerwear Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315232</td>
<td>Women’s and Girls’ Cut and Sew Blouse and Shirt Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315233</td>
<td>Women’s and Girls’ Cut and Sew Dress Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315234</td>
<td>Setup Paperboard Box Manufacturing, Coat, Tailored Jacket and Skirt Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315239</td>
<td>Women’s and Girls’ Cut and Sew Other Outerwear Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315291</td>
<td>Infants’ Cut and Sew Apparel Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315292</td>
<td>Fur and Leather Apparel Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315299</td>
<td>All Other Cut and Sew Apparel Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315991</td>
<td>Hat, Cap and Millinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315992</td>
<td>Glove and Mitten Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315993</td>
<td>Men’s and Boys’ Neckwear Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315999</td>
<td>Other Apparel Accessories and Other Apparel Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 316—Leather and Allied Product Manufacturing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>316110</td>
<td>Leather and Hide Tanning and Finishing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316211</td>
<td>Rubber and Plastics Footwear Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316212</td>
<td>House Slipper Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316213</td>
<td>Men’s Footwear (except Athletic) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316214</td>
<td>Women’s Footwear (except Athletic) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316219</td>
<td>Other Footwear Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316991</td>
<td>Luggage Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316992</td>
<td>Women’s Handbag and Purse Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316993</td>
<td>Personal Leather Good (except Women’s Handbag and Purse) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316999</td>
<td>All Other Leather Good Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 321—Wood Product Manufacturing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>321113</td>
<td>Sawmills</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321114</td>
<td>Wood Preservation</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321211</td>
<td>Hardwood Veneer and Plywood Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321212</td>
<td>Softwood Veneer and Plywood Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321213</td>
<td>Engineered Wood Member (except Truss) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321214</td>
<td>Truss Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321219</td>
<td>Reconstituted Wood Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321911</td>
<td>Wood Window and Door Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321912</td>
<td>Cut Stock, Resawing Lumber, and Planing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321918</td>
<td>Other Millwork (including Flooring)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321920</td>
<td>Wood Container and Pallet Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321991</td>
<td>Manufactured Home (Mobile Home) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321992</td>
<td>Prefabricated Wood Building Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321999</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Wood Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 322—Paper Manufacturing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>322110</td>
<td>Pulp Mills</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322121</td>
<td>Paper (except Newsprint) Mills</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322122</td>
<td>Newsprint Mills</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322211</td>
<td>Paperboard Mills</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322212</td>
<td>Corrugated and Solid Fiber Box Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322214</td>
<td>Folding Paperboard Box Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322215</td>
<td>Non-Folding Sanitary Food Container Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322222</td>
<td>Coated and Laminated Paper Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322223</td>
<td>Plastics, Foil, and Coated Paper Bag Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322224</td>
<td>Uncoated Paper and Multifill Bag Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322225</td>
<td>Laminated Aluminum Foil Manufacturing for Flexible Packaging Uses</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322226</td>
<td>Surface-Coated Paperboard Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322231</td>
<td>Die-Cut Paper and Paperboard Office Supplies Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAICS codes</td>
<td>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</td>
<td>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322232</td>
<td>Envelope Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322233</td>
<td>Stationery, Tablet, and Related Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322291</td>
<td>Sanitary Paper Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>322299</td>
<td>All Other Converted Paper Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323110</td>
<td>Commercial Lithographic Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323111</td>
<td>Commercial Gravure Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323112</td>
<td>Commercial Flexographic Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323113</td>
<td>Commercial Screen Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323114</td>
<td>Quick Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323115</td>
<td>Digital Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323116</td>
<td>Manifold Business Forms Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323117</td>
<td>Books Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323118</td>
<td>Blankbook, Loose-leaf Binders and Devices Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323119</td>
<td>Other Commercial Printing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323121</td>
<td>Tradebinding and Related Work</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323122</td>
<td>Prepress Services</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324110</td>
<td>Petroleum Refineries</td>
<td>1,500*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324121</td>
<td>Asphalt Paving Mixture and Block Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324122</td>
<td>Asphalt Shingle and Coating Materials Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324199</td>
<td>All Other Petroleum and Coal Products Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325110</td>
<td>Petrochemical Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325120</td>
<td>Industrial Gas Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325131</td>
<td>Inorganic Dye and Pigment Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325132</td>
<td>Synthetic Organic Dye and Pigment Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325181</td>
<td>Alkalies and Chlorine Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325182</td>
<td>Carbon Black Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325183</td>
<td>All Other Basic Inorganic Chemical Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325191</td>
<td>Gum and Wood Chemical Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325192</td>
<td>Cyclic Crude and Intermediate Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325193</td>
<td>Ethyl Alcohol Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325199</td>
<td>All Other Basic Organic Chemical Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325211</td>
<td>Plastics Material and Resin Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325212</td>
<td>Synthetic Rubber Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325221</td>
<td>Cellulosic Organic Fiber Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325222</td>
<td>Noncellulosic Organic Fiber Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325311</td>
<td>Nitrogenous Fertilizer Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325312</td>
<td>Phosphatic Fertilizer Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325314</td>
<td>Fertilizer (Mixing Only) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325320</td>
<td>Pesticide and Other Agricultural Chemical Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325411</td>
<td>Medicinal and Botanical Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325412</td>
<td>Pharmaceutical Preparation Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325413</td>
<td>In-Vitro Diagnostic Substance Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325414</td>
<td>Biological Product (except Diagnostic) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325530</td>
<td>Paint and Coating Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325611</td>
<td>Soap and Other Detergent Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325612</td>
<td>Polish and Other Sanitation Good Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325613</td>
<td>Surface Active Agent Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325620</td>
<td>Toilet Preparation Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325691</td>
<td>Painting Ink Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325990</td>
<td>Explosives Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325991</td>
<td>Custom Compounding of Purchased Resins</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325992</td>
<td>Photographic Film, Paper, Plate and Chemical Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325998</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Chemical Product and Preparation Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326111</td>
<td>Unsupported Plastics Bag Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 323—Printing and Related Support Activities

Subsector 324—Petroleum and Coal Products Manufacturing

Subsector 325—Chemical Manufacturing

Subsector 326—Plastics and Rubber Products Manufacturing
### SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>326112</td>
<td>Unsupported Plastics Packaging Film and Sheet Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326113</td>
<td>Unsupported Plastics Film and Sheet (except Packaging) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326121</td>
<td>Unsupported Plastics Profile Shapes Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326130</td>
<td>Plastics Pipe and Pipe Fitting Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326131</td>
<td>Laminated Plastics Plate, Sheet and Shape Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326140</td>
<td>Polystyrene Foam Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326141</td>
<td>Urethane and other Foam Product (except Polystyrene) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326160</td>
<td>Plastics Bottle Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326191</td>
<td>Plastics Plumbing Fixture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326192</td>
<td>Resilient Floor Covering Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326199</td>
<td>All Other Plastics Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326211</td>
<td>Tire Manufacturing (except Retreading)</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326212</td>
<td>Tire Retreading</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326220</td>
<td>Rubber and Plastics Hoses and Belting Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326221</td>
<td>Rubber Product Manufacturing for Mechanical Use</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326239</td>
<td>All Other Rubber Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 327—Nonmetallic Mineral Product Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>327111</td>
<td>Vitreous China Plumbing Fixture and China and Earthenware Bathroom Accessories Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327112</td>
<td>Vitreous China, Fine Earthenware and Other Pottery Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327113</td>
<td>Porcelain Electrical Supply Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327121</td>
<td>Brick and Structural Clay Tile Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327122</td>
<td>Ceramic Wall and Floor Tile Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327123</td>
<td>Other Structural Clay Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327124</td>
<td>Clay Refractory Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327125</td>
<td>Nonclay Refractory Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327211</td>
<td>Flat Glass Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327212</td>
<td>Other Pressed and Blown Glass and Glassware Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327213</td>
<td>Glass Container Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327215</td>
<td>Glass Product Manufacturing Made of Purchased Glass</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327310</td>
<td>Cement Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327320</td>
<td>Ready-Mix Concrete Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327331</td>
<td>Concrete Block and Brick Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327332</td>
<td>Concrete Pipe Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327390</td>
<td>Other Concrete Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327410</td>
<td>Lime Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327420</td>
<td>Gypsum Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327910</td>
<td>Abrasive Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327991</td>
<td>Cut Stone and Stone Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327992</td>
<td>Ground or Treated Mineral and Earth Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327993</td>
<td>Mineral Wool Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>327999</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Nonmetallic Mineral Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 331—Primary Metal Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>331111</td>
<td>Iron and Steel Mills</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331112</td>
<td>Electrometallurgical Ferroalloy Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331210</td>
<td>Iron and Steel Pipe and Tube Manufacturing from Purchased Steel</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331221</td>
<td>Cold-Rolled Steel Shape Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331311</td>
<td>Steel Wire Drawing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331312</td>
<td>Alumina Refining</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331313</td>
<td>Primary Aluminum Production</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331315</td>
<td>Secondary Smelting and Alloying of Aluminum</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331316</td>
<td>Aluminum Sheet, Plate and Foil Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331317</td>
<td>Aluminum Extruded Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331318</td>
<td>Other Aluminum Rolling and Drawing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331411</td>
<td>Primary Smelting and Refining of Copper</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331419</td>
<td>Primary Smelting and Refining of Nonferrous Metal (except Copper and Aluminum)</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331421</td>
<td>Copper Rolling, Drawing and Extruding</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331423</td>
<td>Secondary Smelting, Refining, and Alloying of Copper</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331429</td>
<td>Secondary Smelting, Refining, and Alloying of Nonferrous Metal (except Copper and Aluminum)</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331511</td>
<td>Iron Foundries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 121.201  
13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)  
SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>331512</td>
<td>Steel Investment Foundries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331513</td>
<td>Steel Foundries (except Investment)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331521</td>
<td>Aluminum Die-Casting Foundries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331522</td>
<td>Nonferrous (except Aluminum) Die-Casting Foundries</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331524</td>
<td>Aluminum Foundries (except Die-Casting)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331525</td>
<td>Copper Foundries (except Die-Casting)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>331528</td>
<td>Other Nonferrous Foundries (except Die-Casting)</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333293</td>
<td>Printing Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333292</td>
<td>Textile Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333291</td>
<td>Paper Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333220</td>
<td>Plastics and Rubber Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333210</td>
<td>Sawmill and Woodworking Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333132</td>
<td>Oil and Gas Field Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333131</td>
<td>Mining Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333120</td>
<td>Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333111</td>
<td>Farm Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333112</td>
<td>Lawn and Garden Tractor and Home Lawn and Garden Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333120</td>
<td>Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333131</td>
<td>Mining Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333132</td>
<td>Oil and Gas Field Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333210</td>
<td>Sawmill and Woodworking Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333220</td>
<td>Plastics and Rubber Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333210</td>
<td>Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333220</td>
<td>Plastics and Rubber Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333210</td>
<td>Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333220</td>
<td>Plastics and Rubber Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333210</td>
<td>Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 333—Machinery Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>333111</td>
<td>Farm Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333112</td>
<td>Lawn and Garden Tractor and Home Lawn and Garden Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333120</td>
<td>Construction Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333131</td>
<td>Mining Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333132</td>
<td>Oil and Gas Field Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333210</td>
<td>Sawmill and Woodworking Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333220</td>
<td>Plastics and Rubber Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333291</td>
<td>Paper Industry Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333292</td>
<td>Textile Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333293</td>
<td>Printing Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

286
### Small Business Administration

#### § 121.201

**Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>333294</td>
<td>Food Product Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333295</td>
<td>Semiconductor Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333298</td>
<td>All Other Industrial Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333312</td>
<td>Commercial Laundry, Dyeing and Pressing Machine Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333313</td>
<td>Office Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333315</td>
<td>Photographic and Photocopying Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333411</td>
<td>Air Purification Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333412</td>
<td>Industrial and Commercial Fan and Blower Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333414</td>
<td>Heating Equipment (except Warm Air Furnaces) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333415</td>
<td>Air-Conditioning and Warm Air Heating Equipment and Commercial and Industrial Refrigeration Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333511</td>
<td>Industrial Mold Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333512</td>
<td>Machine Tool (Metal Cutting Types) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333513</td>
<td>Machine Tool (Metal Forming Types) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333514</td>
<td>Special Die and Tool, Die Set, Jig and Fixture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333515</td>
<td>Cutting Tool and Machine Tool Accessory Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333516</td>
<td>Rolling Mill Machinery and Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333518</td>
<td>Other Metalworking Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333611</td>
<td>Turbine and Turbine Generator Set Unit Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333612</td>
<td>Speed Changer, Industrial High-Speed Drive and Gear Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333613</td>
<td>Mechanical Power Transmission Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333618</td>
<td>Other Engine Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333912</td>
<td>Air and Gas Compressor Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333913</td>
<td>Measuring and Dispensing Pump Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333921</td>
<td>Elevator and Moving Stairway Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333922</td>
<td>Conveyor and Conveying Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333923</td>
<td>Overhead Traveling Crane, Hoist and Monorail System Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333924</td>
<td>Industrial Truck, Tractor, Trailer and Stackcar Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333991</td>
<td>Power-Driven Hand Tool Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333992</td>
<td>Welding and Soldering Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333993</td>
<td>Packaging Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333994</td>
<td>Industrial Process Furnace and Oven Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333995</td>
<td>Fluid Power Cylinder and Actuator Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333996</td>
<td>Fluid Power Pump and Motor Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333997</td>
<td>Scale and Balance (except Laboratory) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333999</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous General Purpose Machinery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 334—Computer and Electronic Product Manufacturing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>334111</td>
<td>Electronic Computer Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334112</td>
<td>Computer Storage Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334113</td>
<td>Computer Terminal Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334119</td>
<td>Other Computer Peripheral Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334205</td>
<td>Telephone Apparatus Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334220</td>
<td>Radio and Television Broadcasting and Wireless Communications Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334290</td>
<td>Other Communications Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334310</td>
<td>Audio and Video Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334411</td>
<td>Electron Tube Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334412</td>
<td>Bare Printed Circuit Board Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334413</td>
<td>Semiconductor and Related Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334414</td>
<td>Electronic Capacitor Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334415</td>
<td>Electronic Resistor Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334416</td>
<td>Electronic Coil, Transformer, and Other Inductor Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334417</td>
<td>Electronic Connector Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334418</td>
<td>Printed Circuit Assembly (Electronics Assembly) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334419</td>
<td>Other Electronic Component Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334510</td>
<td>Electromedical and Electrotherapeutic Apparatus Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334511</td>
<td>Search, Detection, Navigation, Guidance, Aeronautical, and Nautical System and Instrument Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334512</td>
<td>Automatic Environmental Control Manufacturing for Residential, Commercial and Appliance Use.</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334513</td>
<td>Instruments and Related Products Manufacturing for Measuring, Displaying, and Controlling Industrial Process Variables</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

287
### NAICS Codes and Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>336514</td>
<td>Totalizing Fluid Meter and Counting Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336515</td>
<td>Instrument Manufacturing for Measuring and Testing Electricity and Electrical Signals</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336416</td>
<td>Analytical Laboratory Instrument Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336417</td>
<td>Irradiation Apparatus Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336418</td>
<td>Watch, Clock, and Part Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336419</td>
<td>Other Measuring and Controlling Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336411</td>
<td>Software Reproducing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336412</td>
<td>Prerecorded Compact Disc (except Software), Tape, and Record Reproducing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336413</td>
<td>Magnetic and Optical Recording Media Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 335—Electrical Equipment, Appliance and Component Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>335110</td>
<td>Electric Lamp Bulb and Part Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335121</td>
<td>Residential Electric Lighting Fixture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335122</td>
<td>Commercial, Industrial and Institutional Electric Lighting Fixture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335129</td>
<td>Other Lighting Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335211</td>
<td>Electric Housewares and Household Fan Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335212</td>
<td>Household Vacuum Cleaner Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335221</td>
<td>Household Cooking Appliance Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335222</td>
<td>Household Refrigerator and Home Freezer Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335224</td>
<td>Household Laundry Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335228</td>
<td>Other Major Household Appliance Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335311</td>
<td>Power, Distribution and Specialty Transformer Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335312</td>
<td>Motor and Generator Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335313</td>
<td>Switchgear and Switchboard Apparatus Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335314</td>
<td>Relay and Industrial Control Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335911</td>
<td>Storage Battery Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335912</td>
<td>Primary Battery Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335921</td>
<td>Fiber Optic Cable Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335929</td>
<td>Other Communication and Energy Wire Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335931</td>
<td>Current-Carrying Wiring Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335932</td>
<td>Noncurrent-Carrying Wiring Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335991</td>
<td>Carbon and Graphite Product Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335999</td>
<td>Other Miscellaneous Electrical Equipment and Component Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 336—Transportation Equipment Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>336611</td>
<td>Automobile Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336612</td>
<td>Light Truck and Utility Vehicle Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336620</td>
<td>Heavy Duty Truck Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336621</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Body Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336622</td>
<td>Truck Trailer Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336623</td>
<td>Motor Home Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336624</td>
<td>Travel Trailer and Camper Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336631</td>
<td>Carburetor, Piston, Piston Ring and Valve Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336632</td>
<td>Vehicular Lighting Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336632</td>
<td>Other Motor Vehicle Electrical and Electronic Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336633</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Steering and Suspension Components (except Spring) Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336634</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Brake System Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336635</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Transmission and Power Train Parts Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336636</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Seating and Interior Trim Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336637</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Stamping</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336639</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Air-Conditioning Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336639</td>
<td>All Other Motor Vehicle Parts Manufacturing</td>
<td>750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336641</td>
<td>Aircraft Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336642</td>
<td>Aircraft Engine and Engine Parts Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336643</td>
<td>Other Aircraft Part and Auxiliary Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336644</td>
<td>Guided Missile and Space Vehicle Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336645</td>
<td>Guided Missile and Space Vehicle Propulsion Unit and Propulsion Unit Parts Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336649</td>
<td>Other Guided Missile and Space Vehicle Parts and Auxiliary Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336650</td>
<td>Railroad Rolling Stock Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336651</td>
<td>Ship Building and Repairing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336652</td>
<td>Boat Building</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336691</td>
<td>Motorcycle, Bicycle and Parts Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAICS codes</td>
<td>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</td>
<td>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336992</td>
<td>Military Armored Vehicle, Tank and Tank Component Manufacturing</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336999</td>
<td>All Other Transportation Equipment Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 337—Furniture and Related Product Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>337110</td>
<td>Wood Kitchen Cabinet and Counter Top Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337121</td>
<td>Upholstered Household Furniture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337122</td>
<td>Nonupholstered Wood Household Furniture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337124</td>
<td>Metal Household Furniture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337125</td>
<td>Household Furniture (except Wood and Metal) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337127</td>
<td>Institutional Furniture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337129</td>
<td>Wood Television, Radio, and Sewing Machine Cabinet Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337211</td>
<td>Wood Office Furniture Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337212</td>
<td>Custom Architectural Woodwork and Millwork Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337214</td>
<td>Office Furniture (Except Wood) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337215</td>
<td>Showcase, Partition, Shelving, and Locker Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337910</td>
<td>Mattress Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337920</td>
<td>Blind and Shade Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 339—Miscellaneous Manufacturing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>339111</td>
<td>Laboratory Apparatus and Furniture Manufacturing</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339112</td>
<td>Surgical and Medical Instrument Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339113</td>
<td>Surgical Appliance and Supplies Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339114</td>
<td>Dental Equipment and Supplies Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339115</td>
<td>Ophthalmic Goods Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339116</td>
<td>Dental Laboratories</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339911</td>
<td>Jewelry (except Costume) Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339912</td>
<td>Silverware and Holloware Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339913</td>
<td>Jewelers' Material and Lapidary Work Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339914</td>
<td>Costume Jewelry and Novelty Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339920</td>
<td>Sporting and Athletic Goods Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339931</td>
<td>Doll and Stuffed Toy Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339932</td>
<td>Game, Toy, and Children's Vehicle Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339941</td>
<td>Pen and Mechanical Pencil Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339942</td>
<td>Lead Pencil and Art Good Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339943</td>
<td>Marking Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339944</td>
<td>Carbon Paper and Inked Ribbon Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339950</td>
<td>Sign Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339991</td>
<td>Gasket, Packing, and Sealing Device Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339992</td>
<td>Musical Instrument Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339993</td>
<td>Fastener, Button, Needle and Pin Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339994</td>
<td>Broom, Brush and Mop Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339995</td>
<td>Bunk Bed Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339999</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Manufacturing</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sector 42—Wholesale Trade

(Not applicable to Government procurement of supplies. The nonmanufacturer size standard of 500 employees shall be used for purposes of Government procurement of supplies.)

Subsector 421—Wholesale Trade—Durable Goods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>421110</td>
<td>Automobile and Other Motor Vehicle Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421120</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Supplies and New Part Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421130</td>
<td>Tire and Tube Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421140</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Parts (Used) Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421200</td>
<td>Furniture Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421220</td>
<td>Home Furnishing Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421310</td>
<td>Lumber, Plywood, Millwork and Wood Panel Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421320</td>
<td>Brick, Stone and Related Construction Material Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421330</td>
<td>Roofing, Siding and Insulation Material Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421390</td>
<td>Other Construction Material Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421410</td>
<td>Photographic Equipment and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421420</td>
<td>Office Equipment Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421430</td>
<td>Computer and Computer Peripheral Equipment and Software Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421440</td>
<td>Other Commercial Equipment Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421450</td>
<td>Medical, Dental and Hospital Equipment and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>421460</td>
<td>Ophthalmic Goods Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421490</td>
<td>Other Professional Equipment and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421510</td>
<td>Metal Service Centers and Offices</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421520</td>
<td>Coal and Other Mineral and Ore Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421610</td>
<td>Electrical Apparatus and Equipment, Wiring Supplies and Construction Material Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421620</td>
<td>Electrical Appliance, Television and Radio Set Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421690</td>
<td>Other Electronic Parts and Equipment Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421710</td>
<td>Hardware Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421720</td>
<td>Plumbing and Heating Equipment and Supplies (Hydronics) Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421730</td>
<td>Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Equipment and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421740</td>
<td>Refrigeration Equipment and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421810</td>
<td>Construction and Mining (except Oil Well) Machinery and Equipment Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421820</td>
<td>Farm and Garden Machinery and Equipment Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421830</td>
<td>Industrial Machinery and Equipment Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421840</td>
<td>Industrial Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421850</td>
<td>Service Establishment Equipment and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421860</td>
<td>Transportation Equipment and Supplies (except Motor Vehicle) Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421910</td>
<td>Sporting and Recreational Goods and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421920</td>
<td>Toy and Hobby Goods and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421930</td>
<td>Recyclable Material Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421940</td>
<td>Jewelry, Watch, Precious Stone and Precious Metal Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421990</td>
<td>Other Miscellaneous Durable Goods Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 422—Wholesale Trade—Nondurable Goods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>422110</td>
<td>Printing and Writing Paper Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422120</td>
<td>Stationary and Office Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422130</td>
<td>Industrial and Personal Service Paper Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422210</td>
<td>Drugs and Druggists' Sundries Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422310</td>
<td>Piece Goods, Notions and Other Dry Goods Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422320</td>
<td>Men's and Boys' Clothing and Furnishings Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422330</td>
<td>Women's, Children's, and Infants' Clothing and Accessories Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422340</td>
<td>Footwear Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422410</td>
<td>General Line Grocery Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422420</td>
<td>Packaged Frozen Food Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422430</td>
<td>Dairy Product (except Dried or Canned) Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422440</td>
<td>Poultry and Poultry Product Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422450</td>
<td>Confectionery Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422460</td>
<td>Fish and Seafood Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422470</td>
<td>Meat and Meat Product Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422480</td>
<td>Fresh Fruit and Vegetable Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422490</td>
<td>Other Grocery and Related Products Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422510</td>
<td>Grain and Field Bean Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422520</td>
<td>Livestock Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422580</td>
<td>Other Farm Product Raw Material Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422610</td>
<td>Plastics Materials and Basic Forms and Shapes Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422690</td>
<td>Other Chemical and Allied Products Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422710</td>
<td>Petroleum Bulk Stations and Terminals</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422720</td>
<td>Petroleum and Petroleum Products Wholesalers (except Bulk Stations and Terminals)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422810</td>
<td>Beer and Ale Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422820</td>
<td>Wine and Distilled Alcoholic Beverage Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422910</td>
<td>Farm Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422920</td>
<td>Book, Periodical and Newspaper Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422930</td>
<td>Flower, Nursery Stock and Florists' Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422940</td>
<td>Tobacco and Tobacco Product Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422950</td>
<td>Paint, Varnish and Supplies Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422990</td>
<td>Other Miscellaneous Nondurable Goods Wholesalers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sectors 44—45—Retail Trade**

**Subsector 441—Motor Vehicle and Parts Dealers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>441110</td>
<td>New Car Dealers</td>
<td>$21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441120</td>
<td>Used Car Dealers</td>
<td>$17.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441210</td>
<td>Recreational Vehicle Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441221</td>
<td>Motorcycle Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>441222</td>
<td>Boat Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441229</td>
<td>All Other Motor Vehicle Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCEPT</td>
<td>Aircraft Dealers, Retail</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441310</td>
<td>Automotive Parts and Accessories Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441320</td>
<td>Tire Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Subsector 442—Furniture and Home Furnishings Stores
| 44210       | Furniture Stores                              | $5.0                                                        |
| 44220       | Floor Covering Stores                         | $5.0                                                        |
| 442291      | Window Treatment Stores                       | $5.0                                                        |
| 442299      | All Other Home Furnishings Stores             | $5.0                                                        |
| Subsector 443—Electronics and Appliance Stores
| 443111      | Household Appliance Stores                    | $6.5                                                        |
| 443112      | Radio, Television and Other Electronics Stores| $6.5                                                        |
| 443120      | Computer and Software Stores                  | $6.5                                                        |
| 443130      | Camera and Photographic Supplies Stores       | $5.0                                                        |
| Subsector 444—Building Material and Garden Equipment and Supplies Dealers
| 444110      | Home Centers                                  | $5.0                                                        |
| 444120      | Paint and Wallpaper Stores                    | $5.0                                                        |
| 444130      | Hardware Stores                               | $5.0                                                        |
| 444190      | Other Building Material Dealers               | $5.0                                                        |
| 444210      | Outdoor Power Equipment Stores                | $5.0                                                        |
| 444220      | Nursery and Garden Centers                    | $5.0                                                        |
| Subsector 445—Food and Beverage Stores
| 445110      | Supermarkets and Other Grocery (except Convenience) Stores | $20.0 |
| 445210      | Convenience Stores                            | $20.0                                                       |
| 445220      | Meat Markets                                  | $5.0                                                        |
| 445230      | Fish and Seafood Markets                      | $5.0                                                        |
| 445291      | Baked Goods Stores                            | $5.0                                                        |
| 445299      | Confectionery and Nut Stores                  | $5.0                                                        |
| 445299      | All Other Specialty Food Stores               | $5.0                                                        |
| 445310      | Beer, Wine and Liquor Stores                  | $5.0                                                        |
| Subsector 446—Health and Personal Care Stores
| 446110      | Pharmacies and Drug Stores                    | $5.0                                                        |
| 446120      | Cosmetics, Beauty Supplies and Perfume Stores | $5.0                                                        |
| 446130      | Optical Goods Stores                          | $5.0                                                        |
| 446191      | Food (Health) Supplement Stores               | $5.0                                                        |
| 446199      | All Other Health and Personal Care Stores     | $5.0                                                        |
| Subsector 447—Gasoline Stations
| 447110      | Gasoline Stations with Convenience Stores     | $20.0                                                       |
| 447190      | Other Gasoline Stations                        | $6.5                                                        |
| Subsector 448—Clothing and Clothing Accessories Stores
| 448110      | Men’s Clothing Stores                         | $6.5                                                        |
| 448120      | Women’s Clothing Stores                        | $6.5                                                        |
| 448130      | Children’s and Infants’ Clothing Stores       | $5.0                                                        |
| 448140      | Family Clothing Stores                         | $6.5                                                        |
| 448150      | Clothing Accessories Stores                   | $5.0                                                        |
| 448190      | Other Clothing Stores                          | $5.0                                                        |
| 448210      | Shoe Stores                                   | $6.5                                                        |
| 448310      | Jewelry Stores                                | $5.0                                                        |
| 448320      | Luggage and Leather Goods Stores              | $5.0                                                        |
### Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 451—Sporting Good, Hobby, Book and Music Stores</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451110</td>
<td>Sporting Goods Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451200</td>
<td>Hobby, Toy and Game Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451320</td>
<td>Gift, Novelty and Souvenir Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451332</td>
<td>Used Merchandise Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451390</td>
<td>Pet and Pet Supplies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451391</td>
<td>Art Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451392</td>
<td>Manufactured (Mobile) Home Dealers</td>
<td>$9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451393</td>
<td>Tobacco Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451398</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Store Retailers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451410</td>
<td>Electronic Shopping and Mail-Order Houses</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451420</td>
<td>Vending Machine Operators</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451430</td>
<td>Heating Oil Dealers</td>
<td>$9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451432</td>
<td>Liquefied Petroleum Gas (Bottled Gas) Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451439</td>
<td>Other Fuel Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451440</td>
<td>Other Direct Selling Establishments</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 452—General Merchandise Stores</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452110</td>
<td>Department Stores</td>
<td>$20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452120</td>
<td>Warehouse Clubs and Superstores</td>
<td>$20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452190</td>
<td>All Other General Merchandise Stores</td>
<td>$8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 453—Miscellaneous Store Retailers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453110</td>
<td>Florists</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453210</td>
<td>Office Supplies and Stationery Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453220</td>
<td>Gift, Novelty and Souvenir Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453310</td>
<td>Used Merchandise Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453390</td>
<td>Pet and Pet Supplies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453393</td>
<td>Manufactured (Mobile) Home Dealers</td>
<td>$9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453399</td>
<td>Tobacco Stores</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>453398</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Store Retailers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454110</td>
<td>Electronic Shopping and Mail-Order Houses</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454210</td>
<td>Vending Machine Operators</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454311</td>
<td>Heating Oil Dealers</td>
<td>$9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454312</td>
<td>Liquefied Petroleum Gas (Bottled Gas) Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454319</td>
<td>Other Fuel Dealers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>454390</td>
<td>Other Direct Selling Establishments</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sectors 48–49—Transportation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 481—Air Transportation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>481110</td>
<td>Scheduled Passenger Air Transportation</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>481120</td>
<td>Scheduled Freight Air Transportation</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>481210</td>
<td>Nonscheduled Chartered Passenger Air Transportation</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>481219</td>
<td>Nonscheduled Chartered Freight Air Transportation</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>481220</td>
<td>Other Nonscheduled Air Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 482—Rail Transportation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>482110</td>
<td>Line-Haul Railroads</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>482120</td>
<td>Short Line Railroads</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 483—Water Transportation15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483110</td>
<td>Deep Sea Freight Transportation</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483120</td>
<td>Coastal and Great Lakes Freight Transportation</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483130</td>
<td>Coastal and Great Lakes Passenger Transportation</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483140</td>
<td>Inland Water Freight Transportation</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483210</td>
<td>Inland Water Passenger Transportation</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsector 484—Truck Transportation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484110</td>
<td>General Freight Trucking, Local</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484120</td>
<td>General Freight Trucking, Long-Distance, Truckload</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484122</td>
<td>General Freight Trucking, Long-Distance, Less Than Truckload</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484210</td>
<td>Used Household and Office Goods Moving</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484220</td>
<td>Specialized Freight (except Used Goods) Trucking, Local</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Small Business Administration

#### § 121.201

**Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Subsector 485—Transit and Ground Passenger Transportation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>485111</td>
<td>Mixed Mode Transit Systems</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485112</td>
<td>Commuter Rail Systems</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485119</td>
<td>Other Urban Transit Systems</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485210</td>
<td>Intercity and Rural Bus Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485310</td>
<td>Taxi Service</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485320</td>
<td>Limousine Service</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485410</td>
<td>School and Employee Bus Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485510</td>
<td>Charter Bus Industry</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485991</td>
<td>Special Needs Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>485999</td>
<td>All Other Transit and Ground Passenger Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 486—Pipeline Transportation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>486110</td>
<td>Pipeline Transportation of Crude Oil</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486210</td>
<td>Pipeline Transportation of Natural Gas</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486910</td>
<td>Pipeline Transportation of Refined Petroleum Products</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486990</td>
<td>All Other Pipeline Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 487—Scenic and Sightseeing Transportation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>487110</td>
<td>Scenic and Sightseeing Transportation, Land</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>487210</td>
<td>Scenic and Sightseeing Transportation, Water</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>487990</td>
<td>Scenic and Sightseeing Transportation, Other</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 488—Support Activities for Transportation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>488111</td>
<td>Air Traffic Control</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488119</td>
<td>Other Airport Operations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488190</td>
<td>Other Support Activities for Air Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488210</td>
<td>Support Activities for Rail Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488310</td>
<td>Port and Harbor Operations</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488320</td>
<td>Marine Cargo Handling</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488330</td>
<td>Navigational Services to Shipping</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488390</td>
<td>Other Support Activities for Water Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488410</td>
<td>Motor Vehicle Towing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488490</td>
<td>Other Support Activities for Road Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488510</td>
<td>Freight Transportation Arrangement</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488591</td>
<td>Packing and Crating</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488999</td>
<td>All Other Support Activities for Transportation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 491—Postal Service

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>491110</td>
<td>Postal Service</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 492—Couriers and Messengers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>492110</td>
<td>Couriers</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>492210</td>
<td>Local Messengers and Local Delivery</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 493—Warehousing and Storage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>493110</td>
<td>General Warehousing and Storage</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>493120</td>
<td>Refrigerated Warehousing and Storage</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>493130</td>
<td>Farm Product Warehousing and Storage</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>493190</td>
<td>Other Warehousing and Storage</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sector 51—Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>511110</td>
<td>Newspaper Publishers</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511210</td>
<td>Periodical Publishers</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>511130</td>
<td>Book Publishers</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511140</td>
<td>Database and Directory Publishers</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511191</td>
<td>Greeting Card Publishers</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511199</td>
<td>All Other Publishers</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511210</td>
<td>Software Publishers</td>
<td>$200,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 512—Motion Picture and Sound Recording Industries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>512110</td>
<td>Motion Picture and Video Production</td>
<td>$21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512120</td>
<td>Motion Picture and Video Distribution</td>
<td>$21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512130</td>
<td>Motion Picture Theaters (except Drive-Ins)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512132</td>
<td>Drive-In Motion Picture Theaters</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512191</td>
<td>Teleproduction and Other Post-Production Services</td>
<td>$21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512199</td>
<td>Other Motion Picture and Video Industries</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512210</td>
<td>Record Production</td>
<td>$60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512220</td>
<td>Integrated Record Production/Distribution</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512230</td>
<td>Music Publishers</td>
<td>$500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512240</td>
<td>Sound Recording Studios</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512290</td>
<td>Other Sound Recording Industries</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 513—Broadcasting and Telecommunications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>513111</td>
<td>Radio Networks</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513112</td>
<td>Radio Stations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513120</td>
<td>Television Broadcasting</td>
<td>$10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513210</td>
<td>Cable Networks</td>
<td>$11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513220</td>
<td>Cable and Other Program Distribution</td>
<td>$11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513310</td>
<td>Wired Telecommunications Carriers</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513321</td>
<td>Paging</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513322</td>
<td>Cellular and Other Wireless Telecommunications</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513330</td>
<td>Telecommunications Resellers</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513340</td>
<td>Satellite Telecommunications</td>
<td>$11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513390</td>
<td>Other Telecommunications</td>
<td>$11.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 514—Information Services and Data Processing Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>514110</td>
<td>News Syndicates</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514120</td>
<td>Libraries and Archives</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514191</td>
<td>On-Line Information Services</td>
<td>$16.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514199</td>
<td>All Other Information Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514210</td>
<td>Data Processing Services</td>
<td>$18.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sector 52—Finance and Insurance

#### Subsector 522—Credit Intermediation and Related Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>522110</td>
<td>Commercial Banking</td>
<td>$100 mil in assets*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522120</td>
<td>Savings Institutions</td>
<td>$100 mil in assets*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522130</td>
<td>Credit Unions</td>
<td>$100 mil in assets*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522140</td>
<td>Other Depository Credit Intermediation</td>
<td>$100 mil in assets*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522190</td>
<td>Consumer Lending</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522210</td>
<td>Real Estate Credit</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522220</td>
<td>International Trade Financing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522284</td>
<td>Secondary Market Financing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522289</td>
<td>All Other Non-Depository Credit Intermediation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522310</td>
<td>Mortgage and Nonmortgage Loan Brokers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522320</td>
<td>Financial Transactions Processing, Reserve, and Clearing House Activities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522390</td>
<td>Other Activities Related to Credit Intermediation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 523—Financial Investments and Related Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>523110</td>
<td>Investment Banking and Securities Dealing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523120</td>
<td>Securities Brokerage</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523130</td>
<td>Commodity Contracts Dealing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523140</td>
<td>Commodity Contracts Brokerage</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523210</td>
<td>Securities and Commodity Exchanges</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAICS codes</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523910</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Intermediation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523920</td>
<td>Portfolio Management</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523930</td>
<td>Investment Advice</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523991</td>
<td>Trust, Fiduciary and Custody Activities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523999</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Financial Investment Activities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 524—Insurance Carriers and Related Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>524113</td>
<td>Direct Life Insurance Carriers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524114</td>
<td>Direct Health and Medical Insurance Carriers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524126</td>
<td>Direct Property and Casualty Insurance Carriers</td>
<td>$1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524127</td>
<td>Direct Title Insurance Carriers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524128</td>
<td>Other Direct Insurance (except Life, Health and Medical) Carriers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524130</td>
<td>Reinsurance Carriers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524210</td>
<td>Insurance Agencies and Brokerages</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524291</td>
<td>Claims Adjusting</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524292</td>
<td>Third Party Administration of Insurance and Pension Funds</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524298</td>
<td>All Other Insurance Related Activities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 525—Funds, Trusts and Other Financial Vehicles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>525110</td>
<td>Pension Funds</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525120</td>
<td>Health and Welfare Funds</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525190</td>
<td>Other Insurance Funds</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525910</td>
<td>Open-End Investment Funds</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525920</td>
<td>Trusts, Estates, and Agency Accounts</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525930</td>
<td>Real Estate Investment Trusts</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525990</td>
<td>Other Financial Vehicles</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sector 53—Real Estate and Rental and Leasing**

**Subsector 531—Real Estate**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>531110</td>
<td>Lessor of Residential Buildings and Dwellings</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531120</td>
<td>Lessor of Nonresidential Buildings (except Miniwarehouses)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531130</td>
<td>Lessor of Miniwarehouses and Self Storage Units</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531190</td>
<td>Lessor of Other Real Estate Property</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>EXCEPT</strong> Leasing of Building Space to Federal Government by Owners</td>
<td>$15.0^3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531210</td>
<td>Offices of Real Estate Agents and Brokers</td>
<td>$1.5^4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531311</td>
<td>Residential Property Managers</td>
<td>$1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531312</td>
<td>Nonresidential Property Managers</td>
<td>$1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531320</td>
<td>Offices of Real Estate Appraisers</td>
<td>$1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531390</td>
<td>Other Activities Related to Real Estate</td>
<td>$1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 532—Rental and Leasing Services**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>532111</td>
<td>Passenger Car Rental</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532112</td>
<td>Passenger Car Leasing</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532120</td>
<td>Truck, Utility Trailer, and RV (Recreational Vehicle) Rental and Leasing</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532201</td>
<td>Consumer Electronics and Appliances Rental</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532220</td>
<td>Formal Wear and Costume Rental</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532230</td>
<td>Video Tape and Disc Rental</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532291</td>
<td>Horse Health Equipment Rental</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532292</td>
<td>Recreational Goods Rental</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532299</td>
<td>All Other Consumer Goods Rental</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532310</td>
<td>General Rental Centers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532411</td>
<td>Commercial Air, Rail, and Water Transportation Equipment Rental and Leasing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532412</td>
<td>Construction, Mining and Forestry Machinery and Equipment Rental and Leasing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532490</td>
<td>Other Machinery and Equipment Rental and Leasing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 533—Lessors of Nonfinancial Intangible Assets (except Copyrighted Works)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>533110</td>
<td>Lessor of Nonfinancial Intangible Assets (except Copyrighted Works)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAICS codes</td>
<td>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</td>
<td>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sector 54—Professional, Scientific and Technical Services</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subsector 541—Professional, Scientific and Technical Services</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541110</td>
<td>Offices of Lawyers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541191</td>
<td>Title Abstract and Settlement Offices</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541199</td>
<td>All Other Legal Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541211</td>
<td>Offices of Certified Public Accountants</td>
<td>$6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541213</td>
<td>Tax Preparation Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541214</td>
<td>Payroll Services</td>
<td>$6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541218</td>
<td>Other Accounting Services</td>
<td>$6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541310</td>
<td>Architectural Services</td>
<td>$4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541320</td>
<td>Landscape Architectural Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541330</td>
<td>Engineering Services</td>
<td>$4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541340</td>
<td>Drafting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541350</td>
<td>Map Drafting</td>
<td>$4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541360</td>
<td>Geophysical Surveying and Mapping Services</td>
<td>$4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541370</td>
<td>Surveying and Mapping (except Geophysical)</td>
<td>$4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541380</td>
<td>Mapmaking</td>
<td>$4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541390</td>
<td>Testing Laboratories</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541410</td>
<td>Interior Design Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541420</td>
<td>Industrial Design Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541430</td>
<td>Graphic Design Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541490</td>
<td>Other Specialized Design Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541511</td>
<td>Custom Computer Programming Services</td>
<td>$18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541512</td>
<td>Computer Systems Design Services</td>
<td>$18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541513</td>
<td>Computer Facilities Management Services</td>
<td>$18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541519</td>
<td>Other Computer Related Services</td>
<td>$18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541611</td>
<td>Administrative Management and General Management Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541612</td>
<td>Human Resources and Executive Search Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541613</td>
<td>Marketing Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541614</td>
<td>Process, Physical Distribution and Logistics Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541618</td>
<td>Other Management Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541620</td>
<td>Environmental Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541690</td>
<td>Other Scientific and Technical Consulting Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541710</td>
<td>Research and Development in the Physical, Engineering, and Life Sciences</td>
<td>$500 (^{11})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541720</td>
<td>Research and Development in the Social Sciences and Humanities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541810</td>
<td>Advertising Agencies</td>
<td>$5.0 (^{16})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541820</td>
<td>Public Relations Agencies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541830</td>
<td>Media Buying Agencies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541840</td>
<td>Media Representatives</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541850</td>
<td>Display Advertising</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541860</td>
<td>Direct Mail Advertising</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541870</td>
<td>Advertising Material Distribution Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541980</td>
<td>Other Services Related to Advertising</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541990</td>
<td>Marketing Research and Public Opinion Polling</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541991</td>
<td>Photography Studios, Portrait</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541992</td>
<td>Commercial Photography</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541993</td>
<td>Translation and Interpretation Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541994</td>
<td>Veterinary Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541995</td>
<td>All Other Professional, Scientific and Technical Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sector 55—Management of Companies and Enterprises**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>551111</td>
<td>Offices of Bank Holding Companies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>551112</td>
<td>Offices of Other Holding Companies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Small Business Administration

#### § 121.201

**Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.=Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sector 56—Administrative and Support, Waste Management and Remediation Services</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subsector 561—Administrative and Support Services</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561110</td>
<td>Office Administrative Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561210</td>
<td>Facilities Support Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>563110</td>
<td>Employment Placement Agencies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561310</td>
<td>Temporary Help Services</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561330</td>
<td>Employee Leasing Services</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561410</td>
<td>Document Preparation Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561421</td>
<td>Telephone Answering Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561422</td>
<td>Telemarketing Bureaus</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561421</td>
<td>Other Business Service Centers (including Copy Shops)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561440</td>
<td>Collection Agencies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561450</td>
<td>Credit Bureaus</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561491</td>
<td>Repossession Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561492</td>
<td>Court Reporting and Stenotype Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561499</td>
<td>All Other Business Support Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561510</td>
<td>Travel Agencies</td>
<td>$1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561520</td>
<td>Tour Operators</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561591</td>
<td>Convention and Visitors Bureaus</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561599</td>
<td>All Other Travel Arrangement and Reservation Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561611</td>
<td>Investigation Services</td>
<td>$9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561612</td>
<td>Security Guards and Patrol Services</td>
<td>$9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561613</td>
<td>Armored Car Services</td>
<td>$9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561621</td>
<td>Security Systems Services (except Locksmiths)</td>
<td>$9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561622</td>
<td>Locksmiths</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561710</td>
<td>Exterminating and Pest Control Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561720</td>
<td>Janitorial Services</td>
<td>$12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561730</td>
<td>Landscaping Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561740</td>
<td>Carpet and Upholstery Cleaning Services</td>
<td>$3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561790</td>
<td>Other Services to Buildings and Dwellings</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561910</td>
<td>Packaging and Labeling Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561920</td>
<td>Convention and Trade Show Organizers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561990</td>
<td>All Other Support Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Subsector 562—Waste Management and Remediation Services</strong></td>
<td><strong>EXCEPT</strong> Environmental Remediation Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562111</td>
<td>Solid Waste Collection</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562121</td>
<td>Hazardous Waste Treatment and Disposal</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562191</td>
<td>Other Nonhazardous Waste Treatment and Disposal</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562212</td>
<td>Solid Waste Landfill</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562213</td>
<td>Solid Waste Combustors and Incinerators</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562910</td>
<td>Remediation Services</td>
<td>$11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Subsector 61—Educational Services</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subsector 611—Educational Services</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611110</td>
<td>Elementary and Secondary Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611210</td>
<td>Junior Colleges</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611310</td>
<td>Colleges, Universities and Professional Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611410</td>
<td>Business and Secretarial Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611420</td>
<td>Computer Training</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611430</td>
<td>Professional and Management Development Training</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611510</td>
<td>Cosmetology and Barber Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611512</td>
<td>Flight Training</td>
<td>$18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611513</td>
<td>Apprenticeship Training</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611519</td>
<td>Other Technical and Trade Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

NAICS codes

*Sector 56—Administrative and Support, Waste Management and Remediation Services*

- Subsector 561—Administrative and Support Services
  - Office Administrative Services: $5.0
  - Facilities Support Services: $5.0
  - Employment Placement Agencies: $5.0
  - Temporary Help Services: $10.0
  - Employee Leasing Services: $10.0
  - Document Preparation Services: $5.0
  - Telephone Answering Services: $5.0
  - Telemarketing Bureaus: $5.0
  - Other Business Service Centers (including Copy Shops): $5.0
  - Collection Agencies: $5.0
  - Credit Bureaus: $5.0
  - Repossession Services: $5.0
  - Court Reporting and Stenotype Services: $5.0
  - All Other Business Support Services: $5.0
  - Travel Agencies: $1.0
  - Tour Operators: $5.0
  - Convention and Visitors Bureaus: $5.0
  - All Other Travel Arrangement and Reservation Services: $5.0
  - Investigation Services: $9.0
  - Security Guards and Patrol Services: $9.0
  - Armored Car Services: $9.0
  - Security Systems Services (except Locksmiths): $9.0
  - Locksmiths: $5.0
  - Exterminating and Pest Control Services: $5.0
  - Janitorial Services: $12.0
  - Landscaping Services: $5.0
  - Carpet and Upholstery Cleaning Services: $3.5
  - Other Services to Buildings and Dwellings: $5.0
  - Packaging and Labeling Services: $5.0
  - Convention and Trade Show Organizers: $5.0
  - All Other Support Services: $5.0

- Subsector 562—Waste Management and Remediation Services
  - Solid Waste Collection: $10.0
  - Hazardous Waste Treatment and Disposal: $10.0
  - Other Nonhazardous Waste Treatment and Disposal: $10.0
  - Solid Waste Landfill: $10.0
  - Solid Waste Combustors and Incinerators: $10.0
  - Remediation Services: $11.5
  - Environmental Remediation Services: $18.5
  - Materials Recovery Facilities: $10.0
  - Septic Tank and Related Services: $5.0
  - All Other Miscellaneous Waste Management Services: $5.0

- **Sector 61—Educational Services**

  - Subsector 611—Educational Services
    - Elementary and Secondary Schools: $5.0
    - Junior Colleges: $5.0
    - Colleges, Universities and Professional Schools: $5.0
    - Business and Secretarial Schools: $5.0
    - Computer Training: $5.0
    - Professional and Management Development Training: $5.0
    - Cosmetology and Barber Schools: $5.0
    - Flight Training: $18.5
    - Apprenticeship Training: $5.0
    - Other Technical and Trade Schools: $5.0

---

*NAICS codes*

*Sector 56—Administrative and Support, Waste Management and Remediation Services*

- Subsector 561—Administrative and Support Services
  - Office Administrative Services
  - Facilities Support Services
  - Employment Placement Agencies
  - Temporary Help Services
  - Employee Leasing Services
  - Document Preparation Services
  - Telephone Answering Services
  - Telemarketing Bureaus
  - Private Mail Centers
  - Other Business Service Centers (including Copy Shops)
  - Collection Agencies
  - Credit Bureaus
  - Repossession Services
  - Court Reporting and Stenotype Services
  - All Other Business Support Services
  - Travel Agencies
  - Tour Operators
  - Convention and Visitors Bureaus
  - All Other Travel Arrangement and Reservation Services
  - Investigation Services
  - Security Guards and Patrol Services
  - Armored Car Services
  - Security Systems Services (except Locksmiths)
  - Locksmiths
  - Exterminating and Pest Control Services
  - Janitorial Services
  - Landscaping Services
  - Carpet and Upholstery Cleaning Services
  - Other Services to Buildings and Dwellings
  - Packaging and Labeling Services
  - Convention and Trade Show Organizers
  - All Other Support Services

- Subsector 562—Waste Management and Remediation Services
  - Solid Waste Collection
  - Hazardous Waste Treatment and Disposal
  - Other Nonhazardous Waste Treatment and Disposal
  - Solid Waste Landfill
  - Solid Waste Combustors and Incinerators
  - Remediation Services
  - Environmental Remediation Services
  - Materials Recovery Facilities
  - Septic Tank and Related Services
  - All Other Miscellaneous Waste Management Services

- **Sector 61—Educational Services**

  - Subsector 611—Educational Services
    - Elementary and Secondary Schools
    - Junior Colleges
    - Colleges, Universities and Professional Schools
    - Business and Secretarial Schools
    - Computer Training
    - Professional and Management Development Training
    - Cosmetology and Barber Schools
    - Flight Training
    - Apprenticeship Training
    - Other Technical and Trade Schools
§ 121.201

SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>611610</td>
<td>Fine Arts Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611620</td>
<td>Sports and Recreation Instruction</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611630</td>
<td>Language Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611691</td>
<td>Exam Preparation and Tutoring</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611692</td>
<td>Automobile Driving Schools</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611698</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Schools and Instruction</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611710</td>
<td>Educational Support Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sector 62—Health Care and Social Assistance

Subsector 621—Ambulatory Health Care Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>621111</td>
<td>Offices of Physicians (except Mental Health Specialists)</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621112</td>
<td>Offices of Physicians, Mental Health Specialists</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621210</td>
<td>Offices of Dentists</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621310</td>
<td>Offices of Chiropractors</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621320</td>
<td>Offices of Optometrists</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621340</td>
<td>Offices of Mental Health Practitioners (except Physicians)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621391</td>
<td>Offices of Podiatrists</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621399</td>
<td>Offices of All Other Miscellaneous Health Practitioners</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621410</td>
<td>Family Planning Centers</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621420</td>
<td>Outpatient Mental Health and Substance Abuse Centers</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621491</td>
<td>HMO Medical Centers</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621492</td>
<td>Kidney Dialysis Centers</td>
<td>$25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621493</td>
<td>Freestanding Ambulatory Surgical and Emergency Centers</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621498</td>
<td>All Other Outpatient Care Centers</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621511</td>
<td>Medical Laboratories</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621512</td>
<td>Diagnostic Imaging Centers</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621610</td>
<td>Home Health Care Services</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621910</td>
<td>Ambulance Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621991</td>
<td>Blood and Organ Banks</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621999</td>
<td>All Other Miscellaneous Ambulatory Health Care Services</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 622—Hospitals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>622110</td>
<td>General Medical and Surgical Hospitals</td>
<td>$25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>622210</td>
<td>Psychiatric and Substance Abuse Hospitals</td>
<td>$25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>622310</td>
<td>Specially (except Psychiatric and Substance Abuse) Hospitals</td>
<td>$25.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 623—Nursing and Residential Care Facilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>623110</td>
<td>Nursing Care Facilities</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623210</td>
<td>Residential Mental Retardation Facilities</td>
<td>$7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623220</td>
<td>Residential Mental Health and Substance Abuse Facilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623311</td>
<td>Continuing Care Retirement Communities</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623312</td>
<td>Homes for the Elderly</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623990</td>
<td>Other Residential Care Facilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subsector 624—Social Assistance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>624110</td>
<td>Child and Youth Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624120</td>
<td>Services for the Elderly and Persons with Disabilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624190</td>
<td>Other Individual and Family Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624210</td>
<td>Community Food Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624221</td>
<td>Temporary Shelters</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624229</td>
<td>Other Community Housing Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624230</td>
<td>Emergency and Other Relief Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624310</td>
<td>Vocational Rehabilitation Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624410</td>
<td>Child Day Care Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sector 71—Arts, Entertainment, and Recreation

Subsector 711—Performing Arts, Spectator Sports and Related Industries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>711110</td>
<td>Theater Companies and Dinner Theaters</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711120</td>
<td>Dance Companies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711130</td>
<td>Musical Groups and Artists</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711190</td>
<td>Other Performing Arts Companies</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

298
### Small Business Administration

#### § 121.201

**Small Business Size Standards by NAICS Industry—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>711211</td>
<td>Sports Teams and Clubs</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711212</td>
<td>Race Tracks</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712119</td>
<td>Other Spectator Sports</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711210</td>
<td>Promoters of Performing Arts, Sports and Similar Events with Facilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711210</td>
<td>Promoters of Performing Arts, Sports and Similar Events without Facilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712410</td>
<td>Agents and Managers for Artists, Athletes, Entertainers and Other Public Figures</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711210</td>
<td>Independent Artists, Writers, and Performers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 712—Museums, Historical Sites and Similar Institutions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>712110</td>
<td>Museums</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712120</td>
<td>Historical Sites</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712130</td>
<td>Zoos and Botanical Gardens</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712190</td>
<td>Nature Parks and Other Similar Institutions</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 713—Amusement, Gambling and Recreation Industries**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>713110</td>
<td>Amusement and Theme Parks</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713120</td>
<td>Amusement Arcades</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713210</td>
<td>Casinos (except Casino Hotels)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713290</td>
<td>Other Gambling Industries</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713910</td>
<td>Golf Courses and Country Clubs</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713920</td>
<td>Skiing Facilities</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713930</td>
<td>Marinas</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713940</td>
<td>Fitness and Recreational Sports Centers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713990</td>
<td>Bowling Centers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713990</td>
<td>All Other Amusement and Recreation Industries</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sector 72—Accommodation and Food Services**

**Subsector 721—Accommodation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>722110</td>
<td>Hotels (except Casino Hotels) and Motels</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722120</td>
<td>Casino Hotels</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722191</td>
<td>Bed and Breakfast Inns</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722199</td>
<td>All Other Traveler Accommodation</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722190</td>
<td>RV (Recreational Vehicle) Parks and Campgrounds</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722140</td>
<td>Recreational and Vacation Camps (except Campgrounds)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722130</td>
<td>Rooming and Boarding Houses</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subsector 722—Food Services and Drinking Places**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>722210</td>
<td>Full-Service Restaurants</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722211</td>
<td>Limited-Service Restaurants</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722212</td>
<td>Cafeterias</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722213</td>
<td>Snack and Nonalcoholic Beverage Bars</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722310</td>
<td>Food Service Contractors</td>
<td>$15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722320</td>
<td>Caterers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722330</td>
<td>Mobile Food Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722410</td>
<td>Drinking Places (Alcoholic Beverages)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sector 81—Other Services**

**Subsector 811—Repair and Maintenance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>811111</td>
<td>General Automotive Repair</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811112</td>
<td>Automotive Exhaust System Repair</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811113</td>
<td>Automotive Transmission Repair</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811118</td>
<td>Other Automotive Mechanical and Electrical Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811121</td>
<td>Automotive Body, Paint and Interior Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811122</td>
<td>Automotive Glass Replacement Shops</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811191</td>
<td>Automotive Oil Change and Lubrication Shops</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811192</td>
<td>Car Washes</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811198</td>
<td>All Other Automotive Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811211</td>
<td>Consumer Electronics Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811212</td>
<td>Computer and Office Machine Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811213</td>
<td>Communication Equipment Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811219</td>
<td>Other Electronic and Precision Equipment Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SMALL BUSINESS SIZE STANDARDS BY NAICS INDUSTRY—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description (N.E.C.—Not Elsewhere Classified)</th>
<th>Size standard in number of employees or millions of dollars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>811310</td>
<td>Commercial and Industrial Machinery and Equipment (except Automotive and Electronic) Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811411</td>
<td>Home and Garden Equipment Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811412</td>
<td>Appliance Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811420</td>
<td>Upholstery and Furniture Repair</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811430</td>
<td>Footwear and Leather Goods Repair</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>811480</td>
<td>Other Personal and Household Goods Repair and Maintenance</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 812—Personal and Laundry Services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>812111</td>
<td>Barber Shops</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812112</td>
<td>Beauty Salons</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812113</td>
<td>Nail Salons</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812191</td>
<td>Diet and Weight Reducing Centers</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812199</td>
<td>Other Personal Care Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812210</td>
<td>Funeral Homes and Funeral Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812220</td>
<td>Cemeteries and Crematories</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812310</td>
<td>Coin-Operated Laundries and Drycleaners</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812320</td>
<td>Drycleaning and Laundry Services (except Coin-Operated)</td>
<td>$3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812331</td>
<td>Linen Supply</td>
<td>$10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812332</td>
<td>Industrial Launderers</td>
<td>$10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812391</td>
<td>Pet Care (except Veterinary) Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812392</td>
<td>Photo Finishing Laboratories (except One-Hour)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812392</td>
<td>One-Hour Photo Finishing</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812393</td>
<td>Parking Lots and Garages</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>812399</td>
<td>All Other Personal Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subsector 813—Religious, Grantmaking, Civic, Professional and Similar Organizations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAICS codes</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Size standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>813110</td>
<td>Religious Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813211</td>
<td>Grantmaking Foundations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813212</td>
<td>Voluntary Health Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813219</td>
<td>Other Grantmaking and Giving Services</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813311</td>
<td>Human Rights Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813312</td>
<td>Environment, Conservation and Wildlife Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813319</td>
<td>Other Social Advocacy Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813410</td>
<td>Civic and Social Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813410</td>
<td>Business Associations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813420</td>
<td>Professional Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813430</td>
<td>Labor Unions and Similar Labor Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813440</td>
<td>Political Organizations</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813490</td>
<td>Other Similar Organizations (except Business, Professional, Labor, and Political Organizations)</td>
<td>$5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Footnotes**

1. **NAICS codes 221111, 221112, 221113, 221119, 221121, and 221122**—A firm is small if, including its affiliates, it is primarily engaged in the generation, transmission, and/or distribution of electric energy for sale and its total electric output for the preceding fiscal year did not exceed 4 million megawatt hours.

2. **NAICS code 234990**—Dredging: To be considered small for purposes of Government procurement, a firm must perform at least 40 percent of the volume dredged with its own equipment or equipment owned by another small dredging concern.

3. **NAICS code 311411**—For purposes of Government procurement for food canning and preserving, the standard of 500 employees excludes agricultural labor as defined in §3306(k) of the Internal Revenue Code, 26 U.S.C. §3306(k).

4. **NAICS code 324110**—For purposes of Government procurement, the firm may not have more than 1,500 employees nor more than 75,000 barrels per day capacity of petroleum-based inputs, including crude oil or bona fide feedstocks. Capacity includes owned or leased facilities as well as facilities under a processing agreement or an arrangement such as an exchange agreement or a throughput. The total product to be delivered under the contract must be at least 90 percent refined by the successful bidder from either crude oil or bona fide feedstocks.
5. **NAICS code 326211**—For Government procurement, a firm is small for bidding on a contract for pneumatic tires within Census Classification codes 30111 and 30112, provided that:
   (a) The value of tires within Census Classification codes 30111 and 30112 which it manufactured in the United States during the preceding calendar year was more than 50 percent of the value of its total worldwide manufacture,
   (b) the value of pneumatic tires within Census Classification codes 30111 and 30112 comprising its total worldwide manufacture during the preceding calendar year was less than 5 percent of the value of all such tires manufactured in the United States during that period, and
   (c) the value of the principal product which it manufactured or otherwise produced, or sold worldwide during the preceding calendar year is less than 10 percent of the total value of such products manufactured or otherwise produced or sold in the United States during that period.

6. **NAICS Subsectors 333, 334, 335 and 336**—For rebuilding machinery or equipment on a factory basis, or equivalent, use the NAICS code for a newly manufactured product. Concerns performing major rebuilding or overhaul activities do not necessarily have to meet the criteria for being a “manufacturer” although the activities may be classified under a manufacturing NAICS code. Ordinary repair services or preservation are not considered rebuilding.

7. **NAICS code 336113**—Contracts for the rebuilding or overhaul of aircraft ground support equipment on a contract basis are classified under NAICS code 336113.

8. **NAICS Codes 522110, 522120, 522190, 522210 and 522390**—A financial institution’s assets are determined by averaging the assets reported on its four quarterly financial statements for the preceding year. “Assets” for the purposes of this size standard means the assets defined according to the Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council 044 call report form.

9. **NAICS code 531190**—Leasing of building space to the Federal Government by Owners: For Government procurement, a size standard of $15.0 million in gross receipts applies to the owners of building space leased to the Federal Government. The standard does not apply to an agent.

10. **NAICS codes 488510 (part), 531210, 541110, 561510 and 561920**—As measured by total revenues, but excluding funds received in trust for an unaffiliated third party, such as bookings or sales subject to commissions. The commissions received are included as revenue.

11. **NAICS code 547710**—For research and development contracts requiring the delivery of a manufactured product, the appropriate size standard is that of the manufacturing industry.

(a) “Research and Development” means laboratory or other physical research and development. It does not include economic, educational, engineering, operations, systems, or other nonphysical research; or computer programming, data processing, commercial and/or medical laboratory testing.

(b) For purposes of the Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) program only, a different definition has been established by law. See §121.701 of these regulations.

(c) “Research and Development” for guided missiles and space vehicles includes evaluations and simulation, and other services requiring thorough knowledge of complete missiles and spacecraft.

12. **NAICS code 561210**—Facilities Management, a component of NAICS 561210, includes establishments, not classified elsewhere, which provide overall management and personnel to perform a variety of related support services in operating a complete facility in or around a specific building, or within another business or Government establishment. Facilities management means furnishing three or more personnel supply services which may include, but are not limited to secretarial services, typists, word processing, maintaining files and/or libraries, telephone answering, switchboard operation, reproduction or mimeograph service, mailing service, writers, bookkeeping, financial or business management, public relations, conference planning, minor office equipment maintenance and repair, use of information systems (not programming), word processing, travel arrangements, maintaining files and/or libraries.

13. **NAICS code 233990 (All Other Special Trade Contractors) and NAICS code 561210 (Facilities Support Services)**—Base Maintenance:

(a) If one of the activities of base maintenance, as defined in paragraph (b) (below in this endnote) can be identified with a separate industry and that activity (or industry) accounts for 50 percent or more of the value of an entire contract, then the proper size standard is that of the particular industry, and not the base maintenance size standard.

(b) “Base Maintenance” requires the performance of three or more separate activities in the areas of service or special trade construction industries. If services are performed, these activities must each be in a separate NAICS code including, but not limited to, Janitorial and Custodial Service, Fire Prevention Service, Messenger Service, Commissary Service, Protective Guard Service, and Grounds Maintenance and Landscaping Service. If the contract requires the use of special trade contractors (plumbing, painting, plastering, carpentry, etc.), all such special trade construction activities are considered a single activity and classified as
§ 121.301 What size standards are applicable to financial assistance programs?

(a) For Business Loans and Disaster Loans (other than physical disaster loans), an applicant must not exceed the size standard for the industry in which:

(1) The applicant combined with its affiliates is primarily engaged; and

(2) The applicant alone is primarily engaged.

(b) For Development Company programs, an applicant must meet one of the following standards:

(1) The same standards applicable under paragraph (a) of this section; or

(2) Including its affiliates, tangible net worth not in excess of $6 million, and average net income after Federal income taxes (excluding any carry-over losses) for the preceding two completed fiscal years not in excess of $2 million.

If the applicant is not required by law to pay Federal income taxes at the enterprise level, but is required to pass income through to its shareholders, partners, beneficiaries, or other equitable owners, the applicant’s “net income after Federal income taxes” will be its net income reduced by an amount computed as follows:

(i) If the applicant is not required by law to pay State (and local, if any) income taxes at the enterprise level, multiply its net income by the marginal State income tax rate (or by the combined State and local income tax rates, as applicable) that would have applied if it were a taxable corporation.

(ii) Multiply the applicant’s net income, less any deduction for State and local income taxes calculated under paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, by the marginal Federal income tax rate that would have applied if the applicant were a taxable corporation.
§ 121.303 What size procedures are used by SBA before it makes a formal size determination?

(a) A concern that submits an application for financial assistance is deemed to have certified that it is small under the applicable size standard. SBA may question the concern’s status based on information supplied in the application or from any other source.

(b) A small business investment company, a development company, a surety bond company, or a preferred lender may accept as true the size information provided by an applicant, unless credible evidence to the contrary is apparent.

(c) Size is initially considered by the individual with final financial assistance authority. This is not a formal
§ 121.304 What are the size requirements for refinancing an existing SBA loan?

(a) A concern that applies to refinance an existing SBA loan or guarantee will be considered small for the refinancing even though its size has increased since the date of the original financing to exceed its applicable size standard, provided that:

(1) The increase in size is due to natural growth (as distinguished from merger, acquisition or similar management action); and

(2) SBA determines that refinancing is necessary to protect the Government’s financial interest.

(b) If a concern’s size has increased other than by natural growth, the concern and its affiliates must be small at the time the application for refinancing is accepted for processing by SBA.

§ 121.305 What size eligibility requirements exist for obtaining business loans relating to particular procurements?

A concern qualified as small for a particular procurement, including an 8(a) subcontract, is small for financial assistance directly and primarily relating to the performance of the particular procurement.

SIZE ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR GOVERNMENT PROCUREMENT

§ 121.401 What procurement programs are subject to size determinations?

The requirements set forth in §§ 121.401 through 121.413 cover all procurement programs for which status as a small business is required, including the small business set-aside program, SBA’s Certificate of Competency program, SBA’s 8(a) Business Development program, the Small Business Subcontracting program authorized under section 8(d) of the Small Business Act, the Federal Small Disadvantaged Business (SDB) programs, the HUBZone program, and the Very Small Business (VSB) program.

[63 FR 46642, Sept. 2, 1998]

§ 121.402 What size standards are applicable to procurement assistance programs?

(a) A concern must meet the size standard for the NAICS code specified in the solicitation.

(b) The procuring agency contracting officer, or authorized representative, designates the proper NAICS code and size standard in a solicitation, selecting the NAICS code which best describes the principal purpose of the product or service being acquired. Primary consideration is given to the industry descriptions in the NAICS United States Manual, the product or service description in the solicitation and any attachments to it, the relative value and importance of the components of the procurement making up the end item being procured, and the function of the goods or services being purchased. Other factors considered include previous Government procurement classifications of the same or similar products or services, and the classification which would best serve the purposes of the Small Business Act. A procurement is usually classified according to the component which accounts for the greatest percentage of contract value.

(c) The NAICS code assigned to a procurement and its corresponding size
§ 121.406 How does a small business concern qualify to provide manufactured products under small business set-aside or MED procurements?

(a) General. In order to qualify as a small business concern for a small business set-aside or 8(a) contract to provide manufactured products, an offeror must either:

(1) Be the manufacturer of the end item being procured (and the end item must be manufactured or produced in the United States); or

(2) Comply with the requirements of paragraph (b), (c) or (d) of this section as a nonmanufacturer, a kit assembler or a supplier under Simplified Acquisition Procedures.

(b) Nonmanufacturers. (1) A concern may qualify for a requirement to provide manufactured products as a nonmanufacturer if it:

(i) Does not exceed 500 employees;

(ii) Is primarily engaged in the wholesale or retail trade and normally sells the items being supplied to the general public; and

(iii) Will supply the end item of a small business manufacturer or processor made in the United States, or obtains a waiver of such requirement pursuant to paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) For size purposes, there can be only one manufacturer of the end item being acquired. The manufacturer is
the concern which, with its own facilities, performs the primary activities in transforming inorganic or organic substances, including the assembly of parts and components, into the end item being acquired. The end item must possess characteristics which, as a result of mechanical, chemical or human action, it did not possess before the original substances, parts or components were assembled or transformed. The end item may be finished and ready for utilization or consumption, or it may be semifinished as a raw material to be used in further manufacturing. Firms which perform only minimal operations upon the item being procured do not qualify as manufacturers of the end item. SBA will evaluate the following factors in determining whether a concern is the manufacturer of the end item:

(i) The proportion of total value in the end item added by the efforts of the concern, excluding costs of overhead, testing, quality control, and profit; and

(ii) The importance of the elements added by the concern to the function of the end item, regardless of their relative value.

(3) The Administrator or designee may waive the requirement set forth in paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section under the following two circumstances:

(i) The contracting officer has determined that no small business manufacturer or processor reasonably can be expected to offer a product meeting the specifications (including period for performance) required by a particular solicitation and SBA reviews and accepts that determination; or

(ii) SBA determines that no small business manufacturer or processor of the product or class of products is available to participate in the Federal procurement market.

(4) The two waiver possibilities identified in paragraph (b)(3) of this section are called “individual” and “class” waivers respectively, and the procedures for them are contained in §121.1204.

(5) Any SBA waiver of the nonmanufacturer rule has no effect on requirements external to the Small Business Act which involve domestic sources of supply, such as the Buy American Act.

(c) Kit assemblers. (1) Where the manufactured item being acquired is a kit of supplies or other goods provided by an offeror for a special purpose, the offeror cannot exceed 500 employees, and 50 percent of the total value of the components of the kit must be manufactured by business concerns in the United States which are small under the size standards for the NAICS codes of the components being assembled. The offeror need not itself be the manufacturer of any of the items assembled.

(2) Where the Government has specified an item for the kit which is not produced by U.S. small business concerns, such item shall be excluded from the calculation of total value in paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(d) Simplified Acquisition Procedures. Where the procurement of a manufactured item is processed under Simplified Acquisition Procedures, as defined in §13.101 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) (48 CFR 13.101), and where the anticipated cost of the procurement will not exceed $25,000, the offeror need not supply the end product of a small business concern as long as the product acquired is manufactured or produced in the United States, and the offeror does not exceed 500 employees. The offeror need not itself be the manufacturer of any of the items acquired.

§121.407 What are the size procedures for multiple item procurements?

If a procurement calls for two or more specific end items or types of services with different size standards and the offeror may submit an offer on any or all end items or types of services, the offeror must meet the size standard for each end item or service item for which it submits an offer. If the procurement calls for more than one specific end item or type of service and an offeror is required to submit an offer on all items, the offeror may qualify as a small business for the procurement if it meets the size standard of the item which accounts for the greatest percentage of the total contract value.
§ 121.408 What are the size procedures for SBA's Certificate of Competency Program?

(a) A firm which applies for a COC must file an “Application for Small Business Size Determination” (SBA Form 355). If the initial review of SBA Form 355 indicates the applicant, including its affiliates, is small for purposes of the COC program, SBA will process the application for COC. If the review indicates the applicant, including its affiliates, is other than small, SBA will initiate a formal size determination as set forth in §121.1009. In such a case, SBA will not further process the COC application until a formal size determination is made.

(b) A concern is ineligible for a COC if a formal SBA size determination finds the concern other than small.

§ 121.409 What size standard applies in an unrestricted procurement for Certificate of Competency purposes?

For the purpose of receiving a Certificate of Competency in an unrestricted procurement, the applicable size standard is that corresponding to the NAICS code set forth in the solicitation. For a manufactured product, a concern must also furnish a domestically produced or manufactured product, regardless of the size status of the product manufacturer. The offeror need not be the manufacturer of any of the items acquired.


§ 121.410 What are the size standards for SBA's Section 8(d) Subcontracting Program?

For subcontracting purposes pursuant to section 8(d) of the Small Business Act, a concern is small:

(a) For subcontracts of $10,000 or less which relate to Government procurements, if its number of employees (including its affiliates) does not exceed 500 employees. However, subcontracts for engineering services awarded under the National Energy Policy Act of 1992 have the same size standard as Military and Aerospace Equipment and Military Weapons under NAICS code 541330;

(b) For subcontracts exceeding $10,000 which relate to Government procurements, if its number of employees or average annual receipts (including its affiliates) does not exceed the size standard for the product or service it is providing on the subcontract; and

(c) For subcontracts for financial services, if the concern (including its affiliates) is a commercial bank or savings and loan association whose assets do not exceed $100 million.


§ 121.411 What are the size procedures for SBA's Section 8(d) Subcontracting Program?

(a) Prime contractors may rely on the information contained in SBA's Procurement Automated Source System (PASS), or equivalent data base maintained or sanctioned by SBA, as an accurate representation of a concern's size and ownership characteristics for purposes of maintaining a small business source list. Even though a concern is on a small business source list, it must still qualify and self-certify as a small business at the time it submits its offer as a section 8(d) subcontractor.

(b) Upon determination of the successful subcontract offeror for a competitive subcontract, but prior to award, the prime contractor must inform each unsuccessful subcontract offeror of the name and location of the apparent successful offeror.

(c) The self-certification of a concern subcontracting or proposing to subcontract under section 8(d) of the Small Business Act may be protested by the contracting officer, the prime contractor, the appropriate SBA official or any other interested party.

§ 121.412 What are the size procedures for partial small business set-asides?

A firm is required to meet size standard requirements only for the small business set-aside portion of a procurement, and is not required to qualify as a small business for the unrestricted portion.
§ 121.413 What size must a concern be to be eligible for the Very Small Business program?

A concern is a very small business (see §125.7 of this chapter) if, together with its affiliates, it has no more than 15 employees and its average annual receipts do not exceed $1 million.

[63 FR 46642, Sept. 2, 1998]

SIZE ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR SALES OR LEASE OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY

§ 121.501 What programs for sales or leases of Government property are subject to size determinations?

Sections 121.501 through 121.512 apply to small business size determinations for the purpose of the sale or lease of Government property, including the Timber Sales Program, the Special Salvage Timber Sales Program, and the sale of Government petroleum, coal and uranium.

§ 121.502 What size standards are applicable to programs for sales or leases of Government property?

(a) Unless otherwise specified in this part—

(1) A concern primarily engaged in manufacturing is small for sales or leases of Government property if it does not exceed 500 employees;

(2) A concern not primarily engaged in manufacturing is small for sales or leases of Government property if it has annual receipts not exceeding $2 million.

(b) Size status for such sales and leases is determined by the primary industry of the applicant business concern.

§ 121.503 Are SBA size determinations binding on parties?

Formal size determinations based upon a specific Government sale or lease, or made in response to a request from another Government agency under §121.901, are binding upon the parties. Other SBA opinions provided to contracting officers or others are only advisory, and are not binding or appealable.

§ 121.504 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?

SBA determines the size status of a concern (including its affiliates) as of the date the concern submits a written self-certification that it is small to the Government as part of its initial offer including price where there is a specific sale or lease at issue, or as set forth in §121.903 if made in response to a request of another Government agency.

§ 121.505 What is the effect of a self-certification?

(a) A contracting officer may accept a concern’s self-certification as true for the particular sale or lease involved, in the absence of a written protest by other offerors or other credible information which would cause the contracting officer or SBA to question the size of the concern.

(b) Procedures for protesting the self-certification of an offeror are set forth in §§121.1001 through 121.1009.

§ 121.506 What definitions are important for sales or leases of Government-owned timber?

(a) Forest product industry means logging, wood preserving, and the manufacture of lumber and wood related products such as veneer, plywood, hardboard, particle board, or wood pulp, and of products of which lumber or wood related products are the principal raw materials.

(b) Logging of timber means felling and bucking, yarding, and/or loading. It does not mean hauling.

(c) Manufacture of logs means, at a minimum, breaking down logs into rough cuts of the finished product.

(d) Sell means, in addition to its usual and customary meaning, the exchange of sawlogs for sawlogs on a product-for-product basis with or without monetary adjustment, and an indirect transfer, such as the sale of the assets of a concern after it has been awarded one or more set-aside sales of timber.

(e) Significant logging of timber means that a concern uses its own employees to perform at least two of the following: felling and bucking, yarding, and loading.
§ 121.507 What are the size standards and other requirements for the purchase of Government-owned timber (other than Special Salvage Timber)?

(a) To be small for purposes of the sale of Government-owned timber (other than Special Salvage Timber) a concern must:
   (1) Be primarily engaged in the logging or forest products industry;
   (2) Not exceed 500 employees, taking into account its affiliates; and
   (3) If it does not intend at the time of the offer to resell the timber—
      (i) Agree that it will manufacture the logs with its own facilities or those of another business which meets the requirements of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section;
      (ii) Agree that if it eventually resells the timber, it will resell no more than 50% of the sawtimber volume to other businesses which do not meet the requirements of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section; and
      (iii) Agree that if it becomes acquired or controlled by a business which does not meet the requirements of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section, it will require as a condition of the acquisition or change of control that the acquiring or controlling business resell at least 70% of the sawtimber volume to businesses which do meet the requirements of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section; or
   (4) If it intends at the time of offer to resell the timber—
      (i) Agree that it will not sell more than 50% of such timber (50% of such timber if the concern is an Alaskan business) to a business which does not meet the requirements of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section; and
      (ii) Agree that if the concern is an Alaskan business, to a business which does not meet the requirements of paragraphs (a)(1) and (a)(2) of this section.

(b) For a period of three years following the date upon which a concern purchases timber under a small business set-aside (other than through the Special Salvage Timber Sale program), it must maintain a record of:
   (1) The name, address and size status of every concern to which it sells the timber or sawlogs; and
   (2) The species, grades and volumes of sawlogs sold.

(c) For a period of three years following the date upon which a concern purchases timber, it must by contract require all small business repurchasers of the sawlogs or timber it purchased under the small business set-aside to maintain the records described in paragraph (b) of this section.

§ 121.508 What are the size standards and other requirements for the purchase of Government-owned Special Salvage Timber?

(a) In order to purchase Government-owned Special Salvage Timber from the United States Forest Service or the Bureau of Land Management as a small business, a concern must:
   (1) Be primarily engaged in the logging or forest product industry;
   (2) Have, together with its affiliates, no more than twenty-five employees during any pay period for the last twelve months; and
   (3) If it does not intend at the time of offer to resell the timber—
      (i) Agree that it will manufacture a significant portion of the logs with its own employees; and
      (ii) Agree that it will log the timber only with its own employees or with employees of another business which is eligible for award of a Special Salvage Timber sales contract; or
      (4) If it intends at the time of offer to resell the timber, agree that it will perform a significant portion of timber logging with its own employees and that it will subcontract the remainder of the timber logging to a concern which is eligible for award of a Special Salvage Timber sales contract.

§ 121.509 What is the size standard for leasing of Government land for coal mining?

A concern is small for this purpose if it:
§ 121.510
(a) Together with its affiliates, does not have more than 250 employees;  
(b) Maintains management and control of the actual mining operations of the tract; and  
(c) Agrees that if it subleases the Government land, it will be to another small business, and that it will require its sublessors to agree to the same.

§ 121.510 What is the size standard for leasing of Government land for uranium mining?
A concern is small for this purpose if, together with its affiliates, does not have more than 100 employees.

§ 121.511 What is the size standard for buying Government-owned petroleum?
A concern is small for this purpose if it is primarily engaged in petroleum refining and meets the size standard for a petroleum refining business.

§ 121.512 What is the size standard for stockpile purchases?
A concern is small for this purpose if:
(a) It is primarily engaged in the purchase of materials which are not domestic products; and  
(b) Its annual receipts, together with its affiliates, do not exceed $42 million.

SIZE ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE MINORITY ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT (MED) PROGRAM

§ 121.601 What is a small business for purposes of admission to SBA’s Minority Enterprise Development (MED) program?
An applicant must be small under the size standard corresponding to its primary industry classification in order to be admitted to SBA’s Minority Enterprise Development (MED) program.

§ 121.602 At what point in time must a MED applicant be small?
A MED applicant must be small for its primary industry at the time SBA certifies it for admission into the program.

§ 121.603 How does SBA determine whether a Participant is small for a particular MED subcontract?
(a) Self certification by Participant. A MED Participant must certify that it qualifies as a small business under the NAICS code assigned to a particular MED subcontract as part of its initial offer including price to the procuring agency. The Participant also must submit a copy of its offer, including its self-certification as to size, to the appropriate SBA district office at the same time it submits the offer to the procuring agency. See §121.404 for the time at which size is determined for, and §121.406 for the applicability of the nonmanufacturer rule to, MED procurements.

(b) Verification of size by SBA. Within 30 days of its receipt of a Participant’s size self-certification for a particular MED subcontract, the SBA district office serving the geographic area in which the Participant’s principal office is located will review the Participant’s self-certification and determine if it is small for purposes of that subcontract. The SBA district office will review the Participant’s most recent financial statements and other relevant data and then notify the Participant of its decision.

(c) Changes in size between date of self-certification and date of award. (1) Where SBA verifies that the selected Participant is small for a particular procurement, subsequent changes in size up to the date of award, except those due to merger with or acquisition by another business concern, will not affect the firm’s size status for that procurement.  
(2) Where a Participant has merged with or been acquired by another business concern between the date of its self-certification and the date of award, the concern must recertify its size status, and SBA must verify the new certification before award can occur.

(d) Finding Participant to be other than small. (1) A Participant may request a formal size determination (pursuant to §§121.1001 through 121.1009) with the SBA Government Contracting Area Office serving the geographic area in which the principal office of the Participant is located within 5 working days of its receipt of notice from the SBA district office that it is not small for a particular MED subcontract.
§ 121.801 May patent fees be reduced if a concern is small?

These sections apply to size status for the purpose of paying reduced patent fees authorized by Pub. L. 97–247, 96 Stat. 317. The eligibility requirements
§ 121.802 What size standards are applicable to reduced patent fees programs?

A concern eligible for reduced patent fees is one:

(a) Whose number of employees, including affiliates, does not exceed 500 persons; and

(b) Which has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed (and is under no obligation to do so) any rights in the invention to any person who made it and could not be classified as an independent inventor, or to any concern which would not qualify as a non-profit organization or a small business concern under this section.

§ 121.803 Are formal size determinations binding on parties?

Size determinations by authorized SBA officials are formal actions, based upon a specific patent application pursuant to the rules of the Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce, and are binding upon the parties. Other SBA opinions provided to patent applicants or others are only advisory, and are not binding or appealable.

§ 121.804 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?

Size status is determined as of the date of the patent applicant’s written verification of size.

§ 121.805 May a business concern self-certify its size status?

(a) A concern verifies its size status with its submission of its patent application.

(b) Any attempt to establish small size status improperly (fraudulently, through gross negligence, or otherwise) may result in remedial action by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) In the absence of credible information indicating otherwise, the Patent and Trademark Office may accept the verification by the concern as a small business as true.

(d) Questions concerning the size verification are resolved initially by the Patent and Trademark Office. If not verified as small, the applicant may request a formal SBA size determination.

SIZE ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR COMPLIANCE WITH PROGRAMS OF OTHER AGENCIES

§ 121.901 Can other Government agencies obtain SBA size determinations?

Upon request by another Government agency, SBA will provide a size determination, under SBA rules, standards and procedures, for its use in determining compliance with small business requirements of its statutes, regulations or programs.

§ 121.902 What size standards are applicable to programs of other agencies?

(a) SBA size standards. The size standards for compliance with programs of other agencies are those for SBA programs which are most comparable to the programs of such other agencies, unless otherwise agreed by the agency and SBA.

(b) Special size standards. (1) Federal agencies or departments promulgating regulations relating to small businesses usually use SBA size criteria. In limited circumstances, if they decide the SBA size standard is not appropriate, then agency heads may establish a small business definition for the exclusive use of such program which is more appropriate, but only when:

(i) The size standard is first proposed for public comment pursuant to the Administrative Procedure Act, 4 U.S.C. 553;

(ii) The proposed size standard provides for determining size measured by average number of employees over 12 months for manufacturing concerns, average annual revenues over three years for concerns providing services, and data over a period of not less than three years for all other concerns (unless approved by SBA, “annual receipts” and “number of employees” must be determined in accordance with §§121.104 and 121.106, respectively); and
(iii) The proposed size standard is approved by SBA’s Administrator.

(2) In order to receive the approval of SBA’s Administrator, the agency head must:

(i) Request approval prior to publishing the proposed rule containing the size standard. The request must include: an explanation of the contemplated industry size standard, the reasons the SBA size standard is not appropriate, and the reasons the proposed size standard would be appropriate; and a certification that there will be compliance with the criteria set forth in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) and (b)(1)(ii) of this section; and

(ii) Agree to provide written notice to SBA’s Administrator prior to publishing the contemplated size standard as a final rule. The notice must include: a copy of the intended final rule, including the preamble, or a separate written justification for the intended size standard followed by a copy of the intended final rule and preamble prior to its publication; copies of all public comments relating to the size standard received in response to the proposed rule; and any other supporting documentation relevant to the size standard and requested by SBA’s Administrator.

(3) When approving any size standard established pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, SBA’s Administrator will ensure that the size standard varies from industry to industry to the extent necessary to reflect the differing characteristics of the various industries, and consider other relevant factors.

(4) Where the agency head is developing a size standard for the sole purpose of performing a Regulatory Flexibility Analysis pursuant to the Regulatory Flexibility Act, the department or agency may, after consultation with the SBA Office of Advocacy, establish a size standard different from SBA’s which is more appropriate for such analysis.

§ 121.903 When does SBA determine the size status of a business concern?

For the purpose of compliance with programs of other agencies, SBA will base its size determination on the size of the concern as of the date set forth in the request of the other agency.

§ 121.1001 Who may initiate a size protest or request a formal size determination?

(a) Size Status Protests. (1) For SBA’s Small Business Set-Aside Program, including the Property Sales Program, the following entities may file a size protest in connection with a particular procurement or sale:

(i) Any offeror;

(ii) The contracting officer;

(iii) The SBA Government Contracting Area Director having responsibility for the area in which the headquarters of the protested offeror is located, regardless of the location of a parent company or affiliates, or the Associate Administrator for Government Contracting; and

(iv) Other interested parties. Other interested parties include large businesses where only one concern submitted an offer for the specific procurement in question. A concern found to be other than small in connection with the procurement is not an interested party unless there is only one remaining offeror after the concern is found to be other than small.

(2) For competitive 8(a) contracts, the following entities may protest:

(i) Any offeror;

(ii) The contracting officer;

(iii) The SBA Government Contracting Area Director having responsibility for the area in which the district office that services the apparent successful offeror is located, regardless of the location of a parent company or affiliates, or the Associate Administrator for 8(a) Business Development.

(3) For SBA’s Subcontracting Program, the following entities may protest:

(i) The prime contractor;

(ii) The contracting officer;

(iii) Other potential subcontractors;

(iv) The responsible SBA Government Contracting Area Director or the Associate Administrator for Government Contracting; and

(v) Other interested parties.
(4) For SBA’s Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) Program, the following entities may protest:
   (i) A prospective offeror;
   (ii) The funding agreement officer;
   (iii) The responsible SBA Government Contracting Area Director or the Assistant Administrator for Technology; and
   (iv) Other interested parties.
(5) For the Department of Defense’s Small Disadvantaged Business (SDB) Program, and any other similar program of another Federal agency, the following entities may file a protest in connection with a particular SDB procurement:
   (i) Any offeror for the specific SDB requirement;
   (ii) The contracting officer; and
   (iii) The responsible SBA Government Contracting Area Director, the Associate Administrator for Government Contracting, or the Associate Administrator for MED.
(6) For SBA’s HUBZone program, the following entities may protest in connection with a particular HUBZone procurement:
   (i) Any concern that submits an offer for a specific HUBZone set-aside contract;
   (ii) Any concern that submitted an offer in full and open competition and its opportunity for award will be affected by a price evaluation preference given a qualified HUBZone SBC;
   (iii) The contracting officer; and
   (iv) The Associate Administrator for Government Contracting, or designee.
(7) For any unrestricted Government procurement in which status as a small business may be beneficial, including, but not limited to, the award of a contract to a small business where there are tie bids, the opportunity to seek a Certificate of Competency by a small business, and SDB price evaluation preferences, the following entities may protest in connection with a particular procurement:
   (i) Any offeror;
   (ii) The contracting officer; and
   (iii) The responsible SBA Government Contracting Area Director, the Associate Administrator for Government Contracting, or the Associate Administrator for MED.

(b) Request for Size Determinations. (1) For SBA’s Financial Assistance Programs, the following entities may request a formal size determination:
   (i) The applicant for assistance; and
   (ii) The SBA official with authority to take final action on the assistance requested. That official may also request the appropriate Government Contracting Area Office to determine whether affiliation exists between an applicant for financial assistance and one or more other entities for purposes of determining whether the applicant would exceed the loan limit amount imposed by §120.151 of this chapter.
   (2) For SBA’s 8(a) BD program:
      (i) Concerning initial or continued 8(a) BD eligibility, the following entities may request a formal size determination:
         (A) The 8(a) BD applicant concern or Participant; or
         (B) The Assistant Administrator of the Division of Program Certification and Eligibility or the Associate Administrator for 8(a)BD.
      (ii) Concerning individual sole source 8(a) contract awards, the following entities may request a formal size determination:
         (A) The Participant nominated for award of the particular sole source contract;
         (B) The SBA program official with authority to execute the 8(a) contract; or
         (C) The SBA District Director in the district office that services the Participant, or the Associate Administrator for 8(a)BD.
   (3) For SBA’s Certificate of Competency Program, the following entities may request a formal size determination:
      (i) The offeror who has applied for a COC; and
      (ii) The responsible SBA Government Contracting Area Director or the Associate Administrator for Government Contracting.
   (4) For SBA’s sale or lease of government property, the following entities may request a formal size determination:
      (i) The responsible SBA Government Contracting Area Director or the Associate Administrator for Government Contracting; and

314
(ii) Authorized officials of other Federal agencies administering a property sales program.

(5) For eligibility to pay reduced patent fees, the following entities may request a formal size determination:

(i) The applicant for the reduced patent fees; and


(6) For purposes of determining compliance with small business requirements of another Government agency program not otherwise specified in this section, an official with authority to administer the program involved may request a formal size determination.


§ 121.1002 Who makes a formal size determination?

The responsible Government Contracting Area Director or designee makes all formal size determinations in response to either a size protest or a request for a formal size determination, with the exception of size determinations for purposes of the Disaster Loan Program, which will be made by the Disaster Area Office Director or designee responsible for the area in which the disaster occurred.

§ 121.1003 Where should a size protest be filed?

A protest involving a government procurement or sale must be filed with the contracting officer for the procurement or sale, who must forward the protest to the SBA Government Contracting Area Office serving the area in which the headquarters of the protested concern is located, regardless of the location of any parent company or affiliates.

§ 121.1004 What time limits apply to size protests?

(a) Protests by entities other than contracting officers or SBA. (1) Non-negotiated procurement or sale. A protest must be received by the contracting officer prior to the close of business on the 5th day, exclusive of Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, after the contracting officer has notified the protestor of the identity of the prospective awardees.

(2) Negotiated procurement. A protest must be received by the contracting officer prior to the close of business on the 5th day, exclusive of Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, after the contracting officer has notified the protestor of the identity of the prospective awardees.

(3) Multiple award schedule. On a multiple award schedule procurement set aside for small business, protests will be considered timely if received by SBA at any time prior to the expiration of the contract period (including renewals).

(b) Protests by contracting officers or SBA. The time limitations in paragraph (a) of this section do not apply to contracting officers or SBA, and they may file protests before or after awards, except to the extent set forth in paragraph (e) of this section.

(c) Effect of contract award. A timely filed protest applies to the procurement in question even though a contracting officer awarded the contract prior to receipt of the protest.

(d) Untimely protests. A protest received after the allotted time limits must still be forwarded to SBA. SBA will dismiss untimely protests.

(e) Premature protests. A protest filed by any party, including the contracting officer, before bid opening or notification to offerors of the selection of the apparent successful offer will be dismissed as premature.

§ 121.1005 How must a protest be filed with the contracting officer?

A protest must be delivered to the contracting officer by hand, telegram, mail, FAX, or telephone. If a protest is made by telephone, the contracting officer must later receive a confirming letter either within the 5-day period in §121.1004(a)(1) or postmarked no later than one day after the date of the telephone protest.

§ 121.1006 When will a size protest be referred to an SBA Government Contracting Area Office?

(a) A contracting officer who receives a protest (other than from SBA) must forward the protest promptly to the SBA Government Contracting Area Office serving the area in which the headquarters of the offeror is located.
§ 121.1007 Must a protest of size status relate to a particular procurement and be specific?

(a) Particular procurement. A protest challenging the size of a concern which does not pertain to a particular procurement or sale will not be acted on by SBA.

(b) A protest must include specific facts. A protest must be sufficiently specific to provide reasonable notice as to the grounds upon which the protested concern’s size is questioned. Some basis for the belief or allegation stated in the protest must be given. A protest merely alleging that the protested concern is not small or is affiliated with unnamed other concerns does not specify adequate grounds for the protest. No particular form is prescribed for a protest. Where materials supporting the protest are available, they should be submitted with the protest.

(c) Non-specific protests will be dismissed. Protests which do not contain sufficient specificity will be dismissed by SBA.

§ 121.1008 What happens after SBA receives a size protest or a request for a formal size determination?

(a) When a size protest is received, the SBA Government Contracting Area Director, or designee, will promptly notify the contracting officer, the protested concern, and the protestor that a protest has been received. In the event the size protest pertains to a requirement involving SBA’s SBIR Program, the Government Contracting Area Director will advise the Assistant Administrator for Technology of the receipt of the protest. SBA will provide a copy of the protest to the protested concern along with a blank SBA Application for Small Business Size Determination (SBA Form 355) by certified mail, return receipt requested, or by any overnight delivery service that provides proof of receipt. SBA will ask the protested concern to respond to the allegations of the protestor.

(b) When SBA receives a request for a formal size determination in accord with §121.1001(b), SBA will provide a blank copy of SBA Form 355 to the concern whose size is at issue.

(c) The protested concern or concern whose size is at issue must return the completed SBA Form 355 and all other requested information to SBA within 3 working days from the date of receipt of the blank form from SBA. SBA has discretion to grant an extension of time to file the form. The firm must attach to the completed SBA Form 355 its answers to the allegations contained in the protest, where applicable, together with any supporting material.

(d) If a concern does not submit a completed SBA Form 355, answers to the protest allegations, or other requested information within the allotted time provided by SBA, or if it submits incomplete information, SBA may presume that disclosure of the form, any information missing from it, or other missing information would show or tend to show that the concern is other than a small business.


§ 121.1009 What are the procedures for making the size determination?

(a) Time frame for making size determination. After receipt of a protest or a request for a formal size determination, SBA will make a formal size determination within 10 working days, if possible.

(b) Basis for determination. The size determination will be based primarily on information supplied by the protestor or the entity requesting the
Small Business Administration §121.1010

size determination and the subject concern. The determination, however, may also be based on other grounds not raised in the protest or request for size determination. SBA may utilize other information in its files and may make inquiries including requests to the protestor, the protested concern and any alleged affiliates, or other persons for additional specific information.

(c) Burden of persuasion. The concern whose size is under consideration has the burden of establishing its small business size.

(d) Weight of evidence. SBA will give greater weight to specific, signed, factual evidence than to general, unsupported allegations or opinions. In the case of refusal or failure to furnish requested information within a required time period, SBA may assume that disclosure would be contrary to the interests of the party failing to make disclosure.

(e) Formal size determination. The SBA will base its formal size determination upon the record, including reasonable inferences from the record, and will state in writing the basis for its findings and conclusions.

(f) Notification of determination. SBA will promptly notify the contracting officer, the protestor, and the protested offeror, as well as each affiliate or alleged affiliate, of the size determination. The notification will be by certified mail, return receipt requested, or by any overnight delivery service that provides proof of receipt.

(g) Results of an SBA size determination. (1) A formal size determination becomes effective immediately and remains in full force and effect unless and until reversed by OHA.

(2) Once SBA has determined that a concern is other than small for purposes of a particular procurement, the concern cannot later become eligible for the procurement by reducing its size.

(3) A concern determined to be other than small for a particular size standard is ineligible for any procurement or assistance authorized by the Small Business Act or the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, requiring the same or a lower size standard, unless recertified as small pursuant to §121.1010. Following an adverse size determination, a concern cannot again self-certify as small within the same or a lower size standard unless it is recertified as small by SBA. If it does so, it may be in violation of criminal laws, including section 16(d) of the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 645(d). If the concern has already certified itself as small on a pending procurement or on another assistance application, the concern must immediately inform the officials responsible for the pending procurement or other requested assistance of the adverse size determination.

(h) Limited reopening of size determinations. In cases where the size determination contains clear administrative error or a clear mistake of fact, SBA may, in its sole discretion, reopen the size determination to correct the error or mistake, provided the case has not been accepted for review by OHA.

§121.1010 How does a concern become recertified as a small business?

(a) A concern may request SBA to recertify it as small at any time by filing an application for recertification with the Government Contracting Area Office responsible for the area in which the headquarters of the applicant is located, regardless of the location of parent companies or affiliates. No particular form is prescribed for the application; however, the request for recertification must be accompanied by a current completed SBA Form 355 and any other information sufficient to show a significant change in its ownership, management, or other factors bearing on its status as a small concern.

(b) Recertification will not be required nor will the prohibition against future self-certification apply if the adverse SBA size determination is based solely on a finding of affiliation due to a joint venture (e.g., ostensible subcontracting) limited to a particular Government procurement or property sale, or is based on an ineligible manufacturer where the eligible small business bidder or offeror is a nonmanufacturer on a particular Government procurement.

(c) A denial of an application for recertification is a formal size determination and may be reviewed by OHA at the discretion of that office.
(d) The granting of an application for recertification has future effect only. While it is a formal size determination, notice of recertification is required to be given only to the applicant.

Appeals of Size Determinations and NAICS Code Designations

§ 121.1101 Are formal size determinations subject to appeal?

There is no right of appeal of a size determination. OHA, however, may, in its sole discretion, review a formal size determination made by a SBA Government Contracting Area Office or by a Disaster Area Office. Unless OHA accepts a petition for review of a formal size determination, the size determination made by a SBA Government Contracting Area Office or by a Disaster Area Office is the final decision of SBA. The procedures for requesting discretionary reviews by OHA of formal size determinations are set forth in part 134 of this chapter.

§ 121.1102 Are NAICS code designations subject to appeal?

Appeals may be made to OHA, which has exclusive jurisdiction to determine appeals of NAICS code designations pursuant to part 134 of this chapter.


§ 121.1103 What are the procedures for appealing an NAICS code designation?

(a) Generally, any interested party who has been adversely affected by an NAICS code designation may appeal the designation to OHA. However, with respect to a particular sole source 8(a) contract, only the Associate Administrator for 8(a)BD may appeal.

(b) Procedures for perfecting NAICS code appeals with OHA are contained in §19.303 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations, 48 CFR 19.303.


Subpart B—Other Applicable Provisions

Waivers of the Nonmanufacturer Rule for Classes of Products and Individual Contracts

§ 121.1201 What is the Nonmanufacturer Rule?

The Nonmanufacturer Rule is set forth in §121.406(b).

§ 121.1202 When will a waiver of the Nonmanufacturer Rule be granted for a class of products?

(a) A waiver for a class of products (class waiver) will be granted when there are no small business manufacturers or processors available to participate in the Federal market for that class of products.

(b) Federal market means acquisitions by the Federal Government from offerors located in the United States, or such smaller area as SBA designates if it concludes that the class of products is not supplied on a national basis.

(1) When considering the appropriate market area for a product, SBA presumes that the entire United States is the relevant Federal market, unless it is clearly demonstrated that a class of products cannot be procured on a national basis. This presumption may be particularly difficult to overcome in the case of manufactured products, since such items typically have a market area encompassing the entire United States.

(2) When considering geographic segmentation of a Federal market, SBA will not necessarily use market definitions dependent on airline radius, political, or SBA regional boundaries. Market areas typically follow established transportation routes rather than jurisdictional borders. SBA examines the following factors, among others, in cases where geographic segmentation for a class of products is urged:

(i) Whether perishability affects the area in which the product can practically be sold;

(ii) Whether transportation costs are high as a proportion of the total value
§ 121.1204

What are the procedures for requesting and granting waivers?

(a) Waivers for classes of products. (1) SBA may, at its own initiative, examine a class of products for possible waiver of the Nonmanufacturer Rule.

(2) Any interested person, business, association, or Federal agency may submit a request for a waiver for a particular class of products. Requests should be addressed or hand-carried to the Associate Administrator of Government Contracting, Small Business Administration, 409 3rd Street SW., Washington, DC 20416.

(3) Requests for a waiver of a class of products need not be in any particular form, but should include a statement of the class of products to be waived, the applicable NAICS code, and detailed information on the efforts made to identify small business manufacturers or processors for the class.

(4) If SBA decides that there are small business manufacturers or processors in the Federal procurement market, it will deny the request for waiver, issue notice of the denial, and provide the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of the sources found. If SBA does not initially confirm the existence of small business manufacturers or processors in the Federal market, it will:

(1) Publish notices in the Commerce Business Daily and the FEDERAL REGISTER seeking information on small business manufacturers or processors, announcing a notice of intent to waive the Nonmanufacturer Rule for that class of products and affording the public a 15-day comment period; and

(2) If no small business sources are identified, publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER stating that no small business sources were found and that a waiver of the Nonmanufacturer Rule for that class of products has been granted.

(5) An expedited procedure for issuing a class waiver may be used for emergency situations, but only if the contracting officer provides a determination materially the same as one of unusual and compelling urgency. Under the expedited procedure, if a small business manufacturer or processor is not identified by a PASS search, the SBA will grant the waiver for the class of products and then publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER. The notice will state that a waiver has been granted, and solicit public comment for future procurements.
§ 121.1205 How is a list of previously granted class waivers obtained?

A list of classes of products for which waivers of the Nonmanufacturer Rule have been granted will be maintained in SBA’s Procurement Automated Source System (PASS). A list of such waivers may also be obtained by contacting the Office of Government Contracting at the Small Business Administration, 409 3rd Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416, or at the nearest SBA Government Contracting Area Office.
Small Business Administration

Pt. 123

123.4 What is a disaster area and why is it important?
123.5 What kinds of loans are available?
123.6 What does SBA look for when considering a disaster loan applicant?
123.7 Are there restrictions on how disaster loans can be used?
123.8 Does SBA charge any fees for obtaining a disaster loan?
123.9 What happens if I don’t use loan proceeds for the intended purpose?
123.10 What happens if I cannot use my insurance proceeds to make repairs?
123.11 Does SBA require collateral for any of its disaster loans?
123.12 Are books and records required?
123.13 What happens if my loan application is denied?
123.14 How does the Federal Debt Collection Procedures Act of 1990 apply?
123.15 What if I change my mind?
123.16 How are loans administered and serviced?
123.17 Do other Federal requirements apply?
123.18 Can I request an increase in the amount of a physical disaster loan or an economic injury loan?

Subpart B—Home Disaster Loans

123.100 Am I eligible to apply for a home disaster loan?
123.101 When am I not eligible for a home disaster loan?
123.102 What circumstances would justify my relocating?
123.103 What happens if I am forced to move from my home?
123.104 What interest rate will I pay on my home disaster loan?
123.105 How much can I borrow with a home disaster loan and what limits apply on use of funds and repayment terms?
123.106 What is eligible refinancing?
123.107 What is mitigation?

Subpart C—Physical Disaster Business Loans

123.200 Am I eligible to apply for a physical disaster business loan?
123.201 When am I not eligible to apply for a physical disaster business loan?
123.202 How much can my business borrow with a physical disaster business loan?
123.203 What interest rate will my business pay on a physical disaster business loan and what are the repayment terms?

Subpart D—Economic Injury Disaster Loans

123.300 Is my business eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan?
§ 123.1 Subpart G—Economic Injury Disaster Loans as a Result of the September 11, 2001 Terrorist Attacks

123.600 Are economic injury disaster loans under this subpart limited to the geographic areas contiguous to the declared disaster areas?

123.601 Is my business eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

123.602 When would my business not be eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

123.603 What is the interest rate on an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

123.604 How can my business spend my economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

123.605 How long do I have to apply for a loan under this subpart?

123.606 May I request an increase in the amount of an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?


SOURCE: 61 FR 3304, Jan. 31, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Overview

§ 123.1 What do these rules cover?

This part covers the disaster loan programs authorized under the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 636(b), (c), and (f). Since SBA cannot predict the occurrence or magnitude of disasters, it reserves the right to change the rules in this part, without advance notice, by publishing interim emergency regulations in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 123.2 What are disaster loans and disaster declarations?

SBA offers low interest, fixed rate loans to disaster victims, enabling them to repair or replace property damaged or destroyed in declared disasters. It also offers such loans to affected small businesses to help them recover from economic injury caused by such disasters. Disaster declarations are official notices recognizing that specific geographic areas have been damaged by floods and other acts of nature, riots, civil disorders, or industrial accidents such as oil spills. These disasters are sudden events which cause severe physical damage, and do not include slower physical occurrences such as shoreline erosion or gradual land settling. Sudden physical events that cause substantial economic injury may be disasters even if they do not cause physical damage to a victim’s property. Past examples include ocean conditions causing significant displacement (major ocean currents) or closure (toxic algae blooms) of customary fishing waters, as well as contamination of food or other products for human consumption from unforeseeable and unintended events beyond the control of the victims.

§ 123.3 How are disaster declarations made?

(a) There are four ways in which disaster declarations are issued which make SBA disaster loans possible:

(1) The President declares a Major Disaster and authorizes Federal assistance, including individual assistance (temporary housing and Individual and Family Grant Assistance).

(2) SBA makes a physical disaster declaration, based on the occurrence of at least a minimum amount of physical damage to buildings, machinery, equipment, inventory, homes and other property. Such damage usually must meet the following tests:

(i) In any county or other smaller political subdivision of a State or U.S. possession, at least 25 homes or 25 businesses, or a combination of at least 25 homes, businesses, or other eligible institutions, each sustain uninsured losses of 40 percent or more of the estimated fair replacement value or pre-disaster fair market value of the damaged property, whichever is lower; or

(ii) In any such political subdivision, at least three businesses each sustain uninsured losses of 40 percent or more of the estimated fair replacement value or pre-disaster fair market value of the damaged property, whichever is lower; and

(iii) The Governor of the State in which the disaster occurred submits a written request to SBA for a physical disaster declaration by SBA (OMB Approval No. 3245–0121). This request
§ 123.8 Does SBA charge any fees for obtaining a disaster loan?

SBA does not charge points, closing, or servicing fees on any disaster loan.
§ 123.9 You will be responsible for payment of any closing costs owed to third parties, such as recording fees and title insurance premiums. If your loan is made in participation with a financial institution, SBA will charge a guarantee fee to the financial institution, which then may recover the guarantee fee from you.

§ 123.9 What happens if I don't use loan proceeds for the intended purpose?

(a) When SBA approves each loan application, it issues a loan authorization which specifies the amount of the loan, repayment terms, any collateral requirements, and the permitted use of loan proceeds. If you wrongfully misapply these proceeds, you will be liable to SBA for one and one-half times the proceeds disbursed to you as of the date SBA learns of your wrongful misapplication. Wrongful misapplication means the willful use of any loan proceeds without SBA approval contrary to the loan authorization. If you fail to use loan proceeds for authorized purposes for 60 days or more after receiving a loan disbursement check, such non-use also is considered a wrongful misapplication of the proceeds.

(b) If SBA learns that you may have misapplied your loan proceeds, SBA will notify you at your last known address, by certified mail, return receipt requested. You will be given at least 30 days to submit to SBA evidence that you have not misapplied the loan proceeds or that you have corrected any such misapplication. Any failure to respond in time will be considered an admission that you misapplied the proceeds. If SBA finds a wrongful misapplication, it will cancel any undisbursed loan proceeds, call the loan, and begin collection measures to collect your outstanding loan balance and the civil penalty. You may also face criminal prosecution or civil or administrative action.

§ 123.10 What happens if I cannot use my insurance proceeds to make repairs?

If you must pay insurance proceeds to the holder of a recorded lien or encumbrance against your damaged property instead of using them to make repairs, you may apply to SBA for the full amount needed to make such repairs. If you voluntarily pay insurance proceeds to a recorded lienholder, your loan eligibility is reduced by the amount of the voluntary payment.

§ 123.11 Does SBA require collateral for any of its disaster loans?

Generally, SBA will not require that you pledge collateral to secure a disaster home loan or a physical disaster business loan of $10,000 or less, or an economic injury disaster loan of $5,000 or less. For loans larger than these amounts, you will be required to provide available collateral such as a lien on the damaged or replacement property, a security interest in personal property, or both.

(a) Sometimes a borrower, including affiliates as defined in part 121 of this title, will have more than one loan after a single disaster. In deciding whether collateral is required, SBA will add up all physical disaster loans to see if they exceed $10,000 and all economic injury disaster loans to see if they exceed $5,000.

(b) SBA will not decline a loan if you lack a particular amount of collateral as long as it is reasonably sure that you can repay your loan. If you refuse to pledge available collateral when requested by SBA, however, SBA may decline or cancel your loan.

§ 123.12 Are books and records required?

You must retain complete records of all transactions financed with your SBA loan proceeds, including copies of all contracts and receipts, for a period of 3 years after you receive your final disbursement of loan proceeds. If you have a physical disaster business or economic injury loan, you must also maintain current and accurate books of account, including financial and operating statements, insurance policies, and tax returns. You must retain applicable books and records for 3 years after your loan matures including any extensions, or from the date when your loan is paid in full, whichever occurs first. You must make available to SBA or other authorized government personnel upon request all such books and
records for inspection, audit, and reproduction during normal business hours and you must also permit SBA and any participating financial institution to inspect and appraise your assets. (OMB Approval No. 3245–0110.)

§ 123.13 What happens if my loan application is denied?

(a) If SBA denies your loan application, SBA will notify you in writing and set forth the specific reasons for the denial. Any applicant whose request for a loan is declined for reasons other than size (not being a small business) has the right to present information to overcome the reason or reasons for the decline and to request reconsideration in writing. (OMB Approval No. 3245–0122.)

(b) Any decline due to size can only be appealed as set forth in part 121 of this chapter.

(c) Any request for reconsideration must be received by the SBA office that declined the original application within six months of the date of the declined notice. After six months, a new loan application is required.

(d) A request for reconsideration must contain all significant new information that you rely on to overcome SBA’s denial of your original loan application. Your request for reconsideration of a business loan application must also be accompanied by current business financial statements.

(e) If SBA declines your application a second time, you have the right to appeal in writing to the Area Director’s Office. All appeals must be received by the office that declined the prior reconsideration within 30 days of the decline action. Your request must state that you are appealing, and must give specific reasons why the decline action should be reversed.

(f) The decision of the Area Director is final unless:

(1) The Area Director does not have authority to approve the requested loan;

(2) The Area Director refers the matter to the Associate Administrator for Disaster Assistance; or

(3) The Associate Administrator for Disaster Assistance, upon a showing of special circumstances, requests the Area Director’s office to forward the matter to him or her for final consideration. Special circumstances may include, but are not limited to, policy considerations, alleged improper acts by SBA personnel or others in processing the application, and conflicting policy interpretations between two Area Offices.

§ 123.14 How does the Federal Debt Collection Procedures Act of 1990 apply?

(a) Under the Federal Debt Collection Procedures Act of 1990 (28 U.S.C. 3201(e)), a debtor who owns property which is subject to an outstanding judgment lien for a debt owed to the United States generally is not eligible to receive physical and economic injury disaster loans. The SBA Associate Administrator for Disaster Assistance, or designee, may waive this restriction as to disaster loans upon a demonstration of good cause. Good cause means a written representation by you under oath which convinces SBA that:

(1) The declared disaster was a major contributing factor to the delinquency which led to the judgment lien, regardless of when the original debt was incurred; or

(2) The disaster directly prevented you from fulfilling the terms of an agreement with SBA or any other Federal Government entity to satisfy its pre-disaster judgment lien; in this situation, the judgment creditor must certify to SBA that you were complying with the agreement to satisfy the judgment lien when the disaster occurred; or

(3) Other circumstances exist which would justify a waiver.

(b) The waiver determination by the Associate Administrator for Disaster Assistance, or designee, is a final, non-appealable decision. The granting of a waiver does not include loan approval; a waiver recipient must then follow normal loan application procedures.

§ 123.15 What if I change my mind?

If SBA required you to pledge collateral for your loan, you may change your mind and rescind your loan pursuant to the Consumer Credit Protection Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601, and Regulation Z of the Federal Reserve Board, 12 CFR part
§ 123.16 How are loans administered and serviced?

(a) If you obtained your disaster loan from a participating lender, that lender is responsible for closing and servicing your loan. If you obtained your loan directly from SBA, your loan will be closed and serviced by SBA. The SBA rules on servicing are found in part 120 of this chapter.

(b) If you are unable to pay your SBA loan installments in a timely manner for reasons substantially beyond your control, you may request that SBA suspend your loan payments, extend your maturity, or both.

§ 123.17 Do other Federal requirements apply?

As a condition of disbursement, you must be in compliance with certain requirements relating to flood insurance, lead-based paint, earthquake hazards, coastal barrier islands, and child support obligations, as set forth in §§120.170 through 120.175 of this chapter.

§ 123.18 Can I request an increase in the amount of a physical disaster loan?

SBA will consider your request for an increase in your loan if you can show that the eligible cost of repair or replacement of damages increased because of events occurring after the loan approval that were beyond your control. An eligible cost is one which is related to the disaster for which SBA issued the original loan. For example, if you discover hidden damage within a reasonable time after SBA approved your disaster loan and before repair, renovation, or reconstruction is complete, you may request an increase. Or, if applicable building code requirements were changed since SBA approved your original loan, you may request an increase in your loan amount.

§ 123.19 May I request an increase in the amount of an economic injury loan?

SBA will consider your request for an increase in the loan amount if you can show that the increase is essential for your business to continue and is based on events occurring after SBA approved your original loan which were beyond your control. For example, delays may have occurred beyond your control which prevent you from resuming your normal business activity in a reasonable time frame. Your request for an increase in the loan amount must be related to the disaster for which the SBA economic injury disaster loan was originally made.

§ 123.20 How long do I have to request an increase in the amount of a physical disaster loan or an economic injury loan?

You should request a loan increase as soon as possible after you discover the need for the increase, but not later than two years after SBA approved your physical disaster or economic injury loan. After two years, the SBA Associate Administrator for Disaster Assistance (AA/DA) may waive this limitation after finding extraordinary and unforeseeable circumstances.

Subpart B—Home Disaster Loans

§ 123.100 Am I eligible to apply for a home disaster loan?

(a) You are eligible to apply for a home disaster loan if you:

1. Own and occupy your primary residence and have suffered a physical loss to your primary residence, personal property, or both; or

2. Do not own your primary residence, but have suffered a physical loss to your personal property. Family members sharing a residence are eligible if they are not dependents of the owners of the residence.

(b) Losses may be claimed only by the owners of the property at the time of the disaster, and all such losses will be verified by SBA. SBA will consider beneficial ownership as well as legal
§ 123.101 When am I not eligible for a home disaster loan?

You are not eligible for a home disaster loan if:

(a) You have been convicted, during the past year, of a felony during and in connection with a riot or civil disorder or other declared disaster;

(b) You acquired voluntarily more than a 50 percent ownership interest in the damaged property after the disaster, and no contract of sale existed at the time of the disaster;

(c) Your damaged property can be repaired or replaced with the proceeds of insurance, gifts or other compensation, including condemnation awards (with one exception, these amounts must either be deducted from the amount of the claimed losses or, if received after SBA has approved and disbursed a loan, must be paid to SBA as principal payments on your loan. You must notify SBA of any such recoveries collected after receiving an SBA disaster loan (OMB Approval No. 3245–0124)). The one exception applies to amounts received under the Individual and Family Grant Program of the Federal Emergency Management Agency solely to meet an emergency need pending processing of an SBA disaster loan (OMB Approval No. 3245–0124)).

(d) SBA determines that you assumed the risk (for example, by not maintaining flood insurance as required by an earlier SBA disaster loan when the current loss is also due to flood);

(e) Your damaged property is a secondary home (although if you rented the property out before the disaster and the property would not constitute a “residence” under the provisions of Section 280A of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 280A), you may be eligible for a physical disaster business loan);

(f) Your damaged property is the type of vehicle normally used for recreational purposes, such as motorhomes, aircraft, and boats;

(g) Your damaged property consists of cash or securities;

(h) The replacement value of your damaged personal property is extraordinarily high and not easily verified, such as the value of antiques, artworks, or hobby collections;

(i) You or other principal owners of the damaged property are presently incarcerated, or on probation or parole following conviction for a serious criminal offense;

(j) Your only interest in the damaged property is in the form of a security interest, mortgage, or deed of trust;

(k) The damaged building, including contents, was newly constructed or substantially improved on or after February 9, 1989, and (without a significant business justification) is located seaward of mean high tide or entirely in or over water; or

(l) You voluntarily decide to relocate outside the business area in which the disaster has occurred, and there are no special or unusual circumstances leading to your decision (business area means the municipality which provides general governmental services to your damaged home or, if not located in a municipality, the county or equivalent political entity in which your damaged home is located).

§ 123.102 What circumstances would justify my relocating?

SBA may approve a loan if you intend to relocate outside the business area in which the disaster has occurred if your relocation is caused by such special or unusual circumstances as:

(a) Demonstrable risk that the business area will suffer future disasters;

(b) A change in employment status (such as loss of job, transfer, lack of adequate job opportunities within the business area or scheduled retirement within 18 months after the disaster occurs);

(c) Medical reasons; or

(d) Special family considerations which necessitate a move outside of the business area.

§ 123.103 What happens if I am forced to move from my home?

If you must relocate inside or outside the business area because local authorities will not allow you to repair your damaged property, SBA considers this to be a total loss and a mandatory
§ 123.104 What interest rate will I pay on my home disaster loan?

If you can obtain credit elsewhere, your interest rate is set by a statutory formula, but will not exceed 8 percent per annum. If you cannot obtain credit elsewhere, your interest rate is one-half the statutory rate, but will not exceed 4 percent per annum. Credit elsewhere means that, with your cash flow and disposable assets, SBA believes you could obtain financing from non-federal sources on reasonable terms. If you cannot obtain credit elsewhere, you also may be able to borrow from SBA to refinance existing recorded liens against your damaged real property. Under prior legislation, some SBA disaster loans had split interest rates. On any such loan, repayments of principal are applied first to that portion of the loan with the lowest interest rate.

§ 123.105 How much can I borrow with a home disaster loan and what limits apply on use of funds and repayment terms?

(a) For all disasters occurring on or after October 26, 1993, there are limits on how much money you can borrow for particular purposes:

(1) $40,000 for repair or replacement of household and personal effects;

(2) $200,000 for repair or replacement of a primary residence (including upgrading in order to meet minimum standards of safety and decency or current building code requirements). Repair or replacement of landscaping and/or recreational facilities cannot exceed $5,000;

(3) $200,000 for eligible refinancing purposes; and

(4) 20 percent of the loan amount (not including refinancing) up to a maximum of $48,000 for mitigation (see §123.107).

(b) You may not use loan proceeds to repay any debts on personal property, secured or unsecured, unless you incurred those debts as a direct result of the disaster.

(c) SBA determines the loan maturity and repayment terms based on your needs and your ability to pay. Generally, you will pay equal monthly installments of principal and interest, beginning five months from the date of the loan, as shown on the Note securing the loan. SBA will consider other payment terms if you have seasonal or fluctuating income, and SBA may allow installment payments of varying amounts over the first two years of the loan. The maximum maturity for a home disaster loan is 30 years. There is no penalty for prepayment of home disaster loans.

§ 123.106 What is eligible refinancing?

(a) If your home (primary residence) is totally destroyed or substantially damaged, and you do not have credit elsewhere, SBA may allow you to borrow money to refinance recorded liens or encumbrances on your home. Your home is totally destroyed or substantially damaged if it has suffered uninsured or otherwise uncompensated damage which, at the time of the disaster, is either:

(1) 40 percent or more of the home’s market value or replacement cost at the time of the disaster, including land value, whichever is less; or

(2) 50 percent or more of its market value or replacement cost at the time of the disaster, not including land value, whichever is less.

(b) Your home disaster loan for refinancing existing liens or encumbrances cannot exceed an amount equal to the lesser of $200,000, or the physical damage to your primary residence after reductions for any insurance or other recovery.

§ 123.107 What is mitigation?

Mitigation means specific measures taken by you to protect against recurring damage in similar future disasters. Examples include elevation of flood prone structures, retaining walls, sea walls, grading and contouring land, relocating utilities, and retrofitting and strengthening structures to protect against high winds, earthquake, flood, wildfire, or other natural hazards. The money that you can borrow
Small Business Administration

for mitigation is limited to the lesser of the cost of mitigation, or 20 percent of your loan to repair or replace your damaged primary residence and personal property. SBA will not accept a request for a loan increase for mitigation filed after final disbursement of your original loan unless you can show that your request was late because of substantial reasons beyond your control. Sections 123.400 through 123.407 address pre-disaster mitigation.


Subpart C—Physical Disaster Business Loans

§ 123.200 Am I eligible to apply for a physical disaster business loan?

(a) Almost any business concern or charitable or other non-profit entity whose real or tangible personal property is damaged in a declared disaster area is eligible to apply for a physical disaster business loan. Your business may be a sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation, limited liability company, or other legal entity recognized under State law. Your business’ size (average annual receipts or number of employees) is not taken into consideration in determining your eligibility for a physical disaster business loan. If your damaged business occupied rented space at the time of the disaster, and the terms of your business’ lease require you to make repairs to your business’ building, you may have suffered a physical loss and can apply for a physical disaster business loan to repair the property. In all other cases, the owner of the building is the eligible loan applicant.

(b) Damaged vehicles, of the type normally used for recreational purposes, such as motorhomes, aircraft, and boats, may be repaired or replaced with SBA loan proceeds if you can submit evidence that the damaged vehicles were used in your business at the time of the disaster.

§ 123.201 When am I not eligible to apply for a physical disaster business loan?

(a) You are not eligible for a physical disaster business loan if your business is an agricultural enterprise or if you (or any principal of the business) fit into any of the categories in §123.101.

Agricultural enterprise means a business primarily engaged in the production of food and fiber, ranching and raising of livestock, aquaculture and all other farming and agriculture-related industries.

(b) Sometimes a damaged business entity (whether in the form of a corporation, limited liability company, partnership, or sole proprietorship) is engaged in both agricultural enterprise and a non-agricultural business venture. If the agricultural enterprise part of your business entity has suffered a physical disaster, that enterprise is not eligible for SBA physical disaster assistance. If the non-agricultural business venture of your entity has suffered physical disaster damage, that part of your business operation would be eligible for SBA physical disaster assistance. If both the agricultural enterprise part and the non-agricultural business venture have incurred physical disaster damage, only the non-agricultural business venture of your business entity would be eligible for SBA physical disaster assistance.

(c) If your business is going to relocate voluntarily outside the business area in which the disaster occurred, you are not eligible for a physical disaster business loan. If, however, the relocation is due to uncontrollable or compelling circumstances, SBA will consider the relocation to be involuntary and eligible for a loan. Such circumstances may include, but are not limited to:

(1) The elimination or substantial decrease in the market for your products or services, as a consequence of the disaster;

(2) A change in the demographics of your business area within 18 months prior to the disaster, or as a result of the disaster, which makes it uneconomical to continue operations in your business area;

(3) A substantial change in your cost of doing business, as a result of the disaster, which makes the continuation of your business in the business area not economically viable;

(4) Location of your business in a hazardous area such as a special flood
§ 123.202 How much can my business borrow with a physical disaster business loan?

(a) Disaster business loans, including both physical disaster and economic injury loans to the same borrower, together with its affiliates, cannot exceed the lesser of the uncompensated physical loss and economic injury or $1.5 million. Physical disaster loans may include amounts to meet current building code requirements. If your business is a major source of employment, SBA may waive the $1.5 million limitation. A major source of employment is a business concern which has one or more locations in the disaster area which:

(1) Employed 10 percent or more of the entire work force within the commuting area of a geographically identifiable community (no larger than a county), provided that the commuting area does not extend more than 50 miles from such community; or

(2) Employed 5 percent of the work force in an industry within the disaster area and, if the concern is a non-manufacturing concern, employed no less than 50 employees in the disaster area, or if the concern is a manufacturing concern, employed no less than 150 employees in the disaster area; or

(3) Employed no less than 250 employees within the disaster area.

(b) SBA will consider waiving the $1.5 million loan limit only if:

(1) Your damaged location or locations are out of business or in imminent danger of going out of business as a result of the disaster, and a loan in excess of $1.5 million is necessary to reopen or keep open the damaged locations in order to avoid substantial unemployment in the disaster area; and

(2) You have used all reasonably available funds from your business, its affiliates and its principal owners (20% or greater ownership interest) and all available credit elsewhere (as described in §123.104) to alleviate your physical damage and economic injury.

(c) Physical disaster business borrowers may request refinancing of liens on both damaged real property and machinery and equipment, but for an amount reduced by insurance or other compensation. To do so, your business property must be totally destroyed or substantially damaged, which means:

(1) 40 percent or more of the aggregate value (lesser of market value or replacement cost at the time of the disaster) of the damaged real property (including land) and damaged machinery and equipment; or

(2) 50 percent or more of the aggregate value (lesser of market value or replacement cost at the time of the disaster) of the damaged real property (excluding land) and damaged machinery and equipment.

(d) Loan funds allocated for repair or replacement of landscaping or recreational facilities may not exceed $5,000 unless the landscaping or recreational facilities fulfilled a functional need or contributed to the generation of business.

§ 123.302 What interest rate will my business pay on a physical disaster business loan and what are the repayment terms?

(a) SBA will announce interest rates with each disaster declaration. If your business, together with its affiliates and principal owners, have credit elsewhere, your interest rate is set by a statutory formula, but will not exceed 8 percent per annum. If you do not have credit elsewhere, your interest rate will not exceed 4 percent per annum. The maturity of your loan depends upon your repayment ability, but cannot exceed 3 years if you have credit elsewhere. Otherwise, the maximum maturity is 30 years.

(b) Generally, you must pay equal monthly installments, of principal and interest, beginning five months from the date of the loan as shown on the Note. SBA will consider other payment terms if you have seasonal or fluctuating income, and SBA may allow installment payments of varying amounts over the first two years of the loan. There is no penalty for prepayment for disaster loans.

Subpart D—Economic Injury Disaster Loans

§ 123.300 Is my business eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan?

(a) If your business is located in a declared disaster area, and suffered substantial economic injury as a direct result of a declared disaster, you are eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan.

(1) Substantial economic injury is such that a business concern is unable to meet its obligations as they mature or to pay its ordinary and necessary operating expenses.

(2) Loss of anticipated profits or a drop in sales is not considered substantial economic injury for this purpose.

(b) Economic injury disaster loans are available only if you were a small business (as defined in part 121 of this chapter) when the declared disaster commenced, you and your affiliates and principal owners (20% or more ownership interest) have used all reasonably available funds, and you are unable to obtain credit elsewhere (see §123.104).

(c) Eligible businesses do not include agricultural enterprises, but do include—

(1) Small nurseries affected by a drought disaster designated by the Secretary of Agriculture (nurseries are commercial establishments deriving 50 percent or more of their annual receipts from the production and sale of ornamental plants and other nursery products, including, but not limited to, bulbs, florist greens, foliage, flowers, flower and vegetable seeds, shrubbery, and sod);

(2) Small agricultural cooperatives; and

(3) Producer cooperatives.

§ 123.301 When would my business not be eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan?

Your business is not eligible for an economic disaster loan if you (or any principal of the business) fit into any of the categories in §§123.101 and 123.201, or if your business is:

(a) Engaged in lending, multi-level sales distribution, speculation, or investment (except for real estate investment with property held for rental when the disaster occurred);

(b) A non-profit or charitable concern;

(c) A consumer or marketing cooperative;

(d) Not a small business concern; or

(e) Deriving more than one-third of gross annual revenue from legal gambling activities;

(f) A loan packager which earns more than one-third of its gross annual revenue from packaging SBA loans;

(g) Principally engaged in teaching, instructing, counseling, or indoctrinating religion or religious beliefs, whether in a religious or secular setting; or

(h) Primarily engaged in political or lobbying activities.


§ 123.302 What is the interest rate on an economic injury disaster loan?

Your economic injury loan will have an interest rate of 4 percent per annum or less.
§ 123.303 How can my business spend my economic injury disaster loan?

(a) You can only use the loan proceeds for working capital necessary to carry your concern until resumption of normal operations and for expenditures necessary to alleviate the specific economic injury, but not to exceed that which the business could have provided had the injury not occurred.

(b) Loan proceeds may not be used to:

(1) Refinance indebtedness which you incurred prior to the disaster event;

(2) Make payments on loans owned by another federal agency (including SBA) or a Small Business Investment Company licensed under the Small Business Investment Act;

(3) Pay, directly or indirectly, any obligations resulting from a federal, state or local tax penalty as a result of negligence or fraud, or any non-tax criminal fine, civil fine, or penalty for non-compliance with a law, regulation, or order of a federal, state, regional, or local agency or similar matter;

(4) Repair physical damage; or

(5) Pay dividends or other disbursements to owners, partners, officers or stockholders, except for reasonable remuneration directly related to their performance of services for the business.

Subpart E—Pre-Disaster Mitigation Loans

SOURCE: Sections 123.400 through 123.407 appear at 64 FR 48276, Sept. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 123.400 What is a pre-disaster mitigation loan?

Congress has authorized a pilot program for 5 fiscal years from 2000 through 2004 for SBA to make low interest, fixed rate loans to small businesses to use mitigation measures in support of Project Impact, a formal mitigation program established by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA).

§ 123.401 What types of mitigating measures are eligible for a pre-disaster mitigation loan?

Mitigation means specific measures taken by you to protect your real property or leasehold improvements from future disasters in Project Impact communities. If you are a landlord, the measures must be for protection of property leased primarily for commercial rather than residential purposes, to be determined on a comparative square footage basis. Additionally, SBA will consider providing a pre-disaster mitigation loan for relocation if your commercial real property is located in a SFHA (Special Flood Hazard Area) and you relocate outside the SFHA but remain in the same Project Impact community. If the mitigation measures protect against a flood hazard, the applicant small business must be located in an existing structure in a SFHA. The local Project Impact coordinator will confirm that your proposed project is in accordance with specific Project Impact priorities and goals of that community. SBA will verify that the cost estimate is reasonable to accomplish each project to accomplish the stated desired mitigation results. SBA verification and subsequent loan approval are not a guarantee that the project will prevent damages in future disasters.

§ 123.402 What businesses are eligible to apply for pre-disaster mitigation loans?

Each State, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands have at least one FEMA Project Impact community. Only those small businesses located in Project Impact communities are eligible to apply for a pre-disaster mitigation loan. Your small business may be a sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation, limited liability company, or other legal entity recognized under State law. Your small business must have been in existence for at least one year prior to submitting an application for this loan. Your business (together with its affiliates) must be small (as defined in part 121 of this chapter) as of the date SBA accepts the application for processing, and SBA must also determine that the business, its affiliates and its owners do not have the financial resources to fund the mitigation measures without undue hardship.
§ 123.403 When would my business not be eligible to apply for a pre-disaster mitigation loan?

Your business is not eligible for a pre-disaster mitigation loan if it, together with its affiliates, fits into any of the categories in §§123.101, 123.201, and 123.301.

§ 123.404 How much can my business borrow with a pre-disaster mitigation loan?

Each borrower, together with its affiliates, may borrow up to $50,000 per year. SBA will fund approved loans in the order in which SBA accepted the application for processing. SBA will consider mitigation measures that cost more than $50,000 per year if the business can identify sources that will fund the cost above $50,000.

§ 123.405 What is the interest rate on a pre-disaster mitigation loan?

Your pre-disaster mitigation loan will have an interest rate of 4 percent per annum or less.

§ 123.406 How do I apply for a pre-disaster mitigation loan and which loans will be funded?

(a) At the beginning of each fiscal year commencing October 1st 1999, SBA will publish a declaration in the Federal Register announcing the availability of pre-disaster mitigation loans. The declaration will designate at least a 30 day application filing period in the first six months of the fiscal year, the application filing deadline, and the locations for obtaining and filing loan applications. Additional application periods may be announced each year depending on the availability of funds. In addition to the Federal Register, SBA will use FEMA and the local media to inform potential loan applicants where to obtain loan applications. SBA will not accept any applications after the announced deadline unless SBA reopens the application filing period.

(b) Complete an SBA pre-disaster mitigation loan application package which includes a written statement from the local Project Impact coordinator that the project is in accordance with the specific priorities and goals of the local community. The application must be filed during the announced filing period.

(c) An SBA Disaster Area Office will notify the Office of Disaster Assistance (ODA) when it has accepted a complete application for processing. The Area Office will approve, decline, or withdraw (stop processing) the application if the applicant does not give SBA required information. The Area Office will notify ODA of its decision. ODA will then direct the Area Office to make the loan based on availability of loan funds and the date SBA accepted the complete application package.

§ 123.407 What happens if SBA denies or withdraws my pre-disaster mitigation loan application?

(a) If SBA denies your loan application, SBA will notify you in writing and give you the specific reasons for the denial. If you disagree with SBA’s decision, you may respond under §123.13. If SBA approves your application after reconsideration or appeal, SBA will use the date the Area Office received the request for reconsideration or appeal to determine the order of funding.

(b) If SBA withdraws your loan application and you later submit the missing information, and SBA approves the loan, SBA will use the date it reaccepts the application to determine the order of funding.

Subpart F—Military Reservist Economic Injury Disaster Loans

SOURCE: 66 FR 38530, July 25, 2001, unless otherwise noted.

§ 123.500 Definitions.

The following terms have the same meaning wherever they are used in this subpart:

(a) Essential employee is an individual (whether or not an owner of a small business) whose managerial or technical expertise is critical to the successful day-to-day operations of a small business.

(b) Military reservist is a member of a reserve component of the Armed Forces ordered to active duty during a period of military conflict.

(c) Period of military conflict means:
§ 123.501 When is your business eligible to apply for a Military Reservist Economic Injury Disaster Loan?

Your business is eligible to apply for a Military Reservist EIDL if:

(a) It is a small business as defined in 13 CFR part 121,
(b) The owner of the business is a military reservist and an essential employee or the business employs a military reservist who is an essential employee,
(c) The essential employee has been called-up to active military duty during a period of military conflict existing on or after March 24, 1999, and
(d) The business has suffered or is likely to suffer substantial economic injury as a result of the absence of the essential employee.

§ 123.502 When is your business ineligible to apply for a Military Reservist EIDL?

Your business is ineligible for a Military Reservist EIDL if it, together with its affiliates, is subject to any of the following conditions:

(a) Any of your business’ principal owners has been convicted, during the past year, of a felony during and in connection with a riot or civil disorder;
(b) You have assumed the risk associated with employing the military reservist, as determined by SBA (for example, hiring the “essential employee” before the employee has received call-up orders or been notified that they are imminent);
(c) Any of your business’ principal owners is presently incarcerated, or on probation or parole following conviction of a serious criminal offense;
(d) Your business is an agricultural enterprise. Agricultural enterprise means a business primarily engaged in the production of food and fiber, ranching and raising of livestock, aquaculture and all other farming and agriculture-related industries. (See 13 CFR 121.107, “How does SBA determine a concern’s primary industry?”) Sometimes a business is engaged in both agricultural and non-agricultural business activities. If the primary business activity of the business is not an agricultural enterprise, it may apply for a Military Reservist EIDL, but loan proceeds may not be used, directly or indirectly, for the benefit of the agricultural enterprises;
(e) Your business is engaged in any illegal activity;
(f) Your business is a government owned entity (except for a business owned or controlled by a Native American tribe);
(g) Your business presents live performances of a prurient sexual nature or derives directly or indirectly more than an insignificant gross revenue through the sale of products or services, or through the presentation of any depictions or displays, of a prurient sexual nature;
(h) Your business is engaged in lending, multi-level sales distribution, speculation, or investment (except for real estate investment with property held for commercial rental);
(i) Your business is a non-profit or charitable concern;
(j) Your business is a consumer or marketing cooperative;
(k) Your business is not a small business concern;
(l) Your business derives more than one-third of its gross annual revenue from legal gambling activities;
(m) Your business is a loan packager which earns more than one-third of its gross annual revenue from packaging SBA loans;
Small Business Administration

§ 123.507

(n) Your business’ principal activity is teaching, instructing, counseling, or indoctrinating religion or religious beliefs, whether in a religious or secular setting; or

(o) Your business’ principal activity is political or lobbying activities.

§ 123.503 When can you apply for a Military Reservist EIDL?

Your small business can apply for a Military Reservist EIDL any time beginning on the date your essential employee receives official call-up orders and ending 90 days after the date the essential employee is discharged or released from active duty.

§ 123.504 How do you apply for a Military Reservist EIDL?

To apply for a Military Reservist EIDL, you must complete a SBA Military Reservist EIDL application package (SBA Form 5R and supporting documentation can be obtained through SBA’s Disaster Area Office) including:

(a) A copy of the essential employee’s official call-up orders for active duty showing the date of call up, and if known, the date of release from active duty;

(b) A statement from the business owner that the reservist is essential to the successful day-to-day operations of the business (detailing the employee’s duties and responsibilities and explaining why these duties and responsibilities can’t be completed in the essential employee’s absence);

(c) A certification by the essential employee supporting that he or she concurs with the business owner’s statement as described in paragraph (b) of this section;

(d) A written explanation and financial estimate of how the call-up of the essential employee has or will result in economic injury to your business;

(e) The steps your business is taking to alleviate the economic injury; and

(f) The business owners’ certification that the essential employee will be offered the same or a similar job upon the employee’s return from active duty.

§ 123.505 What if you are both an essential employee and the owner of the small business and you started active duty before applying for a Military Reservist EIDL?

If you are both an essential employee and the owner of the small business and you started active duty before applying for a Military Reservist EIDL, a person who has a power of attorney with the authority to borrow and make other related commitments on your behalf, may complete and submit the EIDL loan application package for you.

§ 123.506 How much can you borrow under the Military Reservist EIDL Program?

You can borrow an amount equal to the substantial economic injury you have suffered or are likely to suffer until normal operations resume as a result of the absence of one or more essential employees called to active duty, up to a maximum of $1.5 million.

§ 123.507 Under what circumstances will SBA consider waiving the $1.5 million loan limit?

SBA will consider waiving the $1.5 million dollar limit if you can certify to the following conditions and SBA approves of such certification based on the information supplied in your application:

(a) Your small business is a major source of employment. A major source of employment:

(1) Employs 10 percent or more of the workforce within the commuting area of the geographically identifiable community (no larger than a county) in which the business employing the essential employee is located, provided that the commuting area does not extend more than 50 miles from such community; or

(2) Employs 5 percent of the workforce in an industry within such commuting area and, if the small business is a non-manufacturing small business, employs no less than 50 employees in the same commuting area, or if the small business is a manufacturing small business, employs no less than 100 employees in the commuting area; or
§ 123.508 Employment and financial condition

(3) Employs no less than 250 employees within such commuting area;
(b) Your small business is in imminent danger of going out of business as a result of one or more essential employees being called up to active duty during a period of military conflict, and a loan in excess of $1.5 million is necessary to reopen or keep open the small business; and
(c) Your small business has used all reasonably available funds from the small business, its affiliates, its principal owners and all available credit elsewhere to alleviate the small business’ economic injury. Credit elsewhere means financing from non-Federal sources on reasonable terms given your available cash flow and disposable assets which SBA believes your small business, its affiliates and principal owners could obtain.

§ 123.508 How can you use Military Reservist EIDL funds?

Your small business can use Military Reservist EIDL to:
(a) Meet obligations as they mature,
(b) Pay ordinary and necessary operating expenses, or
(c) Enable the business to market, produce or provide products or services ordinarily marketed, produced, or provided by the business, which cannot be done as a result of the essential employee’s military call-up.

§ 123.509 What can’t you use Military Reservist EIDL funds for?

Your small business can not use Military Reservist EIDL funds for purposes described in §123.303(b) (See §123.303, “How can my business spend my economic injury disaster loan?”).

§ 123.510 What if you don’t use your Military Reservist EIDL funds as authorized?

If your small business does not use Military Reservist EIDL funds as authorized by §123.508, then §123.9 applies (See §123.9, “What happens if I don’t use loan proceeds for the intended purpose?”).

§ 123.511 How will SBA disburse Military Reservist EIDL funds?

SBA will disburse your funds in quarterly installments (unless otherwise specified in your loan authorization agreement) based on a continued need as demonstrated by comparative financial information. On or about 30 days before your scheduled fund disbursement, SBA will request ordinary and usual financial statements (including balance sheets and profit and loss statements). Based on this information, SBA will assess your continued need for disbursements under this program. Upon making such assessment, SBA will notify you of the status of future disbursements.

§ 123.512 What is the interest rate on a Military Reservist EIDL?

The interest rate on a Military Reservist EIDL will be 4 percent per annum or less. SBA will publish the interest rate quarterly in the Federal Register.

Subpart G—Economic Injury Disaster Loans as a Result of the September 11, 2001 Terrorist Attacks

§ 123.600 Are economic injury disaster loans under this subpart limited to the geographic areas contiguous to the declared disaster areas?

No. Notwithstanding §123.4, SBA may make economic injury disaster loans outside the declared disaster areas and the contiguous geographic areas to small business concerns that have suffered substantial economic injury as a direct result of the destruction of the World Trade Center or the damage to the Pentagon on September 11, 2001, or as a direct result of any related federal action taken between September 11, 2001 and October 22, 2001.

§ 123.601 Is my business eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

(a) If your business has suffered substantial economic injury as a direct result of the destruction of the World Trade Center or the damage to the Pentagon on September 11, 2001, or as a direct result of any related federal action taken between September 11, 2001 and October 22, 2001, you are eligible to
apply for an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart.

(1) Substantial economic injury is such that a business concern is unable to meet its obligations as they mature or to pay its ordinary and necessary operating expenses.

(2) Loss of anticipated profits or a drop in sales is not considered substantial economic injury for this purpose.

(b) Economic injury disaster loans are available under this subpart only if you were a small business (as defined in part 121 of this chapter) on September 11, 2001, you and your affiliates and principal owners (20% or more ownership interest) have used all reasonably available funds, and you are unable to obtain credit elsewhere (see §123.104).

(c) Eligible businesses do not include agricultural enterprises, but do include small agricultural cooperatives and producer cooperatives.

§123.602 When would my business not be eligible to apply for an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

Your business is not eligible for an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart if you (or any principal of the business) fit into any of the categories in §§123.101 and 123.201, or if your business is:

(a) Engaged in lending, multi-level sales distribution, speculation, or investment (except for real estate investment with property held for rental on September 11, 2001);

(b) A non-profit or charitable concern;

(c) A consumer or marketing cooperative;

(d) Not a small business concern; or

(e) Deriving more than one-third of gross annual revenue from legal gambling activities;

(f) A loan packager which earns more than one-third of its gross annual revenue from packaging SBA loans;

(g) Principally engaged in teaching, instructing, counseling, or indoctrinating religion or religious beliefs, whether in a religious or secular setting; or

(h) Primarily engaged in political or lobbying activities.

§123.603 What is the interest rate on an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

Your economic injury disaster loan under this subpart will have an interest rate of 4 percent per annum or less.

§123.604 How can my business spend my economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

(a) You can only use the loan proceeds for working capital necessary to carry your concern until resumption of normal operations and for expenditures necessary to alleviate the specific economic injury, but not to exceed that which the business could have provided had the injury not occurred.

(b) Loan proceeds may not be used to:

(1) Refinance indebtedness which you incurred prior to September 11, 2001;

(2) Make payments on loans owned by another federal agency (including SBA) or a Small Business Investment Company licensed under the Small Business Investment Act;

(3) Pay, directly or indirectly, any obligations resulting from a federal, state or local tax penalty as a result of negligence or fraud, or any non-tax criminal fine, civil fine, or penalty for non-compliance with a law, regulation, or order of a federal, state, regional, or local agency or similar matter;

(4) Repair physical damage; or

(5) Pay dividends or other disbursements to owners, partners, officers, or stockholders, except for reasonable remuneration directly related to their performance of services for the business.

§123.605 How long do I have to apply for a loan under this subpart?

You have until January 22, 2002 to apply for a loan under this subpart. Your application must be postmarked no later than this date. SBA has the discretion, for good cause, to extend the application deadline by publication of a notice in the Federal Register.

§123.606 May I request an increase in the amount of an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart?

Yes. Notwithstanding §123.20, you may request an increase in the amount of an economic injury disaster loan under this subpart not later than one
year after the date SBA approves your initial request.

PART 124—8(A) BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT/SMALL DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS STATUS DETERMINATIONS

Subpart A—8(a) Business Development

PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICABILITY
Sec.
124.1 What is the purpose of the 8(a) Business Development program?
124.2 What length of time may a business participate in the 8(a) BD program?
124.3 What definitions are important in the 8(a) BD program?

ELIGIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR PARTICIPATION IN THE 8(A) BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT PROGRAM
124.101 What are the basic requirements a concern must meet for the 8(a) BD program?
124.102 What size business is eligible to participate in the 8(a) BD program?
124.103 Who is socially disadvantaged?
124.104 Who is economically disadvantaged?
124.105 What does it mean to be unconditionally owned by one or more disadvantaged individuals?
124.106 When do disadvantaged individuals control an applicant or Participant?
124.107 What is potential for success?
124.108 What other eligibility requirements apply for individuals or businesses?
124.109 Do Indian tribes and Alaska Native Corporations have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?
124.110 Do Native Hawaiian Organizations have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?
124.111 Do Community Development Corporations (CDCs) have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?

APPLYING TO THE 8(A) BD PROGRAM
124.201 May any business submit an application?
124.202 Where must an application be filed?
124.203 What must a concern submit to apply to the 8(a) BD program?
124.204 How does SBA process applications for 8(a) BD program admission?
124.205 Can an applicant ask SBA to reconsider SBA’s initial decision to decline its application?
124.206 What appeal rights are available to an applicant that has been denied admission?

124.207 Can an applicant reapply for admission to the 8(a) BD program?

EXITING THE 8(A) BD PROGRAM
124.301 What are the ways a business may leave the 8(a) BD program?
124.302 What is early graduation?
124.303 What is termination?
124.304 What are the procedures for early graduation and termination?
124.305 What is suspension and how is a Participant suspended from the 8(a) BD program?

BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT
124.401 Which SBA field office services a Participant?
124.402 How does a Participant develop a business plan?
124.403 How is a business plan updated and modified?
124.404 What business development assistance is available to Participants during the two stages of participation in the 8(a) BD program?
124.405 How does a Participant obtain Federal Government surplus property?

CONTRACTUAL ASSISTANCE
124.501 What general provisions apply to the award of 8(a) contracts?
124.502 How does an agency offer a procurement to SBA for award through the 8(a) BD program?
124.503 How does SBA accept a procurement for award through the 8(a) BD program?
124.504 What circumstances limit SBA’s ability to accept a procurement for award as an 8(a) contract?
124.505 When will SBA appeal the terms or conditions of a particular 8(a) contract or a procuring activity decision not to reserve a requirement for the 8(a) BD program?
124.506 At what dollar threshold must an 8(a) procurement be competed among eligible Participants?
124.507 What procedures apply to competitive 8(a) procurements?
124.508 How is an 8(a) contract executed?
124.509 What are non-8(a) business activity targets?
124.510 What percentage of work must a Participant perform on an 8(a) contract?
124.511 How is fair market price determined for an 8(a) contract?
124.512 Delegation of contract administration to procuring agencies.
124.513 Under what circumstances can a joint venture be awarded an 8(a) contract?
124.514 Exercise of 8(a) options and modifications.
124.515 Can a Participant change its ownership or control and continue to perform
§ 124.2 Can a firm reapply for SDB certification?
124.1013 Is there a list of certified SDBs?
124.1014 How long does an SDB certification last?
124.1015 What is the effect of receiving an SDB certification?
124.1016 Can SBA re-evaluate the SDB status of a firm after SBA certifies it to be SDB?
124.1017 Who may protest the disadvantaged status of a concern?
124.1018 When will SBA not decide an SDB protest?
124.1019 Who decides disadvantaged status protests?
124.1020 What procedures apply to disadvantaged status protests?
124.1021 What format, degree of specificity, and basis does SBA require to consider an SDB protest?
124.1022 What will SBA do when it receives an SDB protest?
124.1023 How does SBA make disadvantaged status determinations in considering an SDB protest?
124.1024 Appeals of disadvantaged status determinations.


Subpart A—8(a) Business Development

SOURCE: 63 FR 35739, June 30, 1998, unless otherwise noted.

PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICABILITY

§ 124.1 What is the purpose of the 8(a) Business Development program?

Sections 8(a) and 7(j) of the Small Business Act authorize a Minority Small Business and Capital Ownership Development program (designated the 8(a) Business Development or “8(a) BD” program for purposes of the regulations in this part). The purpose of the 8(a) BD program is to assist eligible small disadvantaged business concerns compete in the American economy through business development.

§ 124.2 What length of time may a business participate in the 8(a) BD program?

A Participant receives a program term of nine years from the date of SBA’s approval letter certifying the concern’s admission to the program.
§ 124.3 The Participant must maintain its program eligibility during its tenure in the program and must inform SBA of any changes that would adversely affect its program eligibility. A firm that completes its nine year term of participation in the 8(a) BD program is deemed to graduate from the program. The nine year program term may be shortened only by termination, early graduation or voluntary graduation as provided for in this subpart.

§ 124.3 What definitions are important in the 8(a) BD program?

Alaska Native means a citizen of the United States who is a person of one-fourth degree or more Alaskan Indian (including Tsimshian Indians not enrolled in the Metlakatla Indian Community), Eskimo, or Aleut blood, or a combination of those bloodlines. The term includes, in the absence of proof of a minimum blood quantum, any citizen whom a Native village or Native group regards as an Alaska Native if their father or mother is regarded as an Alaska Native.

Alaska Native Corporation or ANC means any Regional Corporation, Village Corporation, Urban Corporation, or Group Corporation organized under the laws of the State of Alaska in accordance with the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, as amended (43 U.S.C. 1601, et seq.)

Bona fide place of business, for purposes of 8(a) construction procurements, means a location where a Participant regularly maintains an office which employs at least one full-time individual within the appropriate geographical boundary. The term does not include construction trailers or other temporary construction sites.

Community Development Corporation or CDC means a nonprofit organization responsible to residents of the area it serves which has received financial assistance under 42 U.S.C. 9805, et seq.

Concern is defined in part 121 of this title.

Days means calendar days unless otherwise specified.

Day-to-day operations of a firm means the marketing, production, sales, and administrative functions of the firm.

Immediate family member means father, mother, husband, wife, son, daughter, brother, sister, grandfather, grandmother, grandson, granddaughter, father-in-law, and mother-in-law.

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community of Indians, including any ANC, which is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians, or is recognized as such by the State in which the tribe, band, nation, group, or community resides. See definition of “tribally-owned concern.”

Native Hawaiian means any individual whose ancestors were natives, prior to 1778, of the area which now comprises the State of Hawaii.

Native Hawaiian Organization means any community service organization serving Native Hawaiians in the State of Hawaii which is a not-for-profit organization chartered by the State of Hawaii, is controlled by Native Hawaiians, and whose business activities will principally benefit such Native Hawaiians.

Negative control is defined in part 121 of this title.

Non-disadvantaged individual means any individual who does not claim disadvantaged status, does not qualify as disadvantaged, or upon whose disadvantaged status an applicant or Participant does not rely in qualifying for 8(a) BD program participation.

Participant means a small business concern admitted to participate in the 8(a) BD program.

Primary industry classification means the four digit Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) code designation which best describes the primary business activity of the 8(a) BD applicant or Participant. The SIC code designations are described in the Standard Industrial Classification Manual published by the U.S. Office of Management and Budget.

Principal place of business means the business location where the individuals who manage the concern’s day-to-day operations spend most working hours and where top management’s business records are kept. If the offices from which management is directed and where the business records are kept are
in different locations, SBA will determine the principal place of business for program purposes.

Program year means a 12-month period of an 8(a) BD Participant’s program participation. The first program year begins on the date that the concern is certified to participate in the 8(a) BD program and ends one year later. Each subsequent program year begins on the Participant’s anniversary of program certification and runs for one 12-month period.

Same or similar line of business means business activities within the same two-digit “Major Group” of the SIC Manual as the primary industry classification of the applicant or Participant. The phrase “same business area” is synonymous with this definition.

Self-marketing of a requirement occurs when a Participant identifies a requirement that has not been committed to the 8(a) BD program and, through its marketing efforts, causes the procuring activity to offer that specific requirement to the 8(a) BD program on the Participant’s behalf. A firm which identifies and markets a requirement which is subsequently offered to the 8(a) BD program as an open requirement or on behalf of another Participant has not “self-marketed” the requirement within the meaning of this part.

Tribally-owned concern means any concern at least 51 percent owned by an Indian tribe as defined in this section.

Unconditional ownership means ownership that is not subject to conditions precedent, conditions subsequent, executory agreements, voting trusts, restrictions on or assignments of voting rights, or other arrangements causing or potentially causing ownership benefits to go to another (other than after death or incapacity). The pledge or encumbrance of stock or other ownership interest as collateral, including seller-financed transactions, does not affect the unconditional nature of ownership if the terms follow normal commercial practices and the owner retains control absent violations of the terms.
disadvantage must stem from circumstances beyond their control.

(b) Members of designated groups. (1) There is a rebuttable presumption that the following individuals are socially disadvantaged: Black Americans; Hispanic Americans; Native Americans (American Indians, Eskimos, Aleuts, or Native Hawaiians); Asian Pacific Americans (persons with origins from Burma, Thailand, Malaysia, Indonesia, Singapore, Brunei, Japan, China (including Hong Kong), Taiwan, Laos, Cambodia (Kampuchea), Vietnam, Korea, The Philippines, U.S. Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands (Republic of Palau), Republic of the Marshall Islands, Federated States of Micronesia, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, Samoa, Macao, Fiji, Tonga, Kiribati, Tuvalu, or Nauru); Subcontinent Asian Americans (persons with origins from India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Bhutan, the Maldives Islands or Nepal); and members of other groups designated from time to time by SBA according to procedures set forth at paragraph (d) of this section. Being born in a country does not, by itself, suffice to make the birth country an individual’s country of origin for purposes of being included within a designated group.

(2) An individual must demonstrate that he or she has held himself or herself out, and is currently identified by others, as a member of a designated group if SBA requires it.

(3) The presumption of social disadvantage may be overcome with credible evidence to the contrary. Individuals possessing or knowing of such evidence should submit the information in writing to the Associate Administrator for 8(a) BD (AA/8(a)BD) for consideration.

(c) Individuals not members of designated groups. (1) An individual who is not a member of one of the groups presumed to be socially disadvantaged in paragraph (b)(1) of this section must establish individual social disadvantage by a preponderance of the evidence.

(2) Evidence of individual social disadvantage must include the following elements:

   (i) At least one objective distinguishing feature that has contributed to social disadvantage, such as race, ethnic origin, gender, physical handicap, long-term residence in an environment isolated from the mainstream of American society, or other similar causes not common to individuals who are not socially disadvantaged;

   (ii) Personal experiences of substantial and chronic social disadvantage in American society, not in other countries; and

   (iii) Negative impact on entry into or advancement in the business world because of the disadvantage. SBA will consider any relevant evidence in assessing this element. In every case, however, SBA will consider education, employment and business history, where applicable, to see if the totality of circumstances shows disadvantage in entering into or advancing in the business world.

(A) Education. SBA considers such factors as denial of equal access to institutions of higher education, exclusion from social and professional association with students or teachers, denial of educational honors rightfully earned, and social patterns or pressures which discouraged the individual from pursuing a professional or business education.

(B) Employment. SBA considers such factors as unequal treatment in hiring, promotions and other aspects of professional advancement, pay and fringe benefits, and other terms and conditions of employment; retaliatory or discriminatory behavior by an employer; and social patterns or pressures which have channelled the individual into nonprofessional or non-business fields.

(C) Business history. SBA considers such factors as unequal access to credit or capital, acquisition of credit or capital under commercially unfavorable circumstances, unequal treatment in opportunities for government contracts or other work, unequal treatment by potential customers and business associates, and exclusion from business or professional organizations.

(d) Socially disadvantaged group inclusion. (1) General. Representatives of an identifiable group whose members believe that the group has suffered chronic racial or ethnic prejudice or cultural bias may petition SBA to be included...
Small Business Administration

§ 124.104 Who is economically disadvantaged?

(a) General. Economically disadvantaged individuals are socially disadvantaged individuals whose ability to compete in the free enterprise system has been impaired due to diminished capital and credit opportunities as compared to others in the same or similar line of business who are not socially disadvantaged.

(b) Submission of narrative and financial information. (1) Each individual claiming economic disadvantage must describe it in a narrative statement, and must submit personal financial information.

(2) When married, an individual claiming economic disadvantage also must submit separate financial information for his or her spouse, unless the individual and the spouse are legally separated.

(c) Factors to be considered. In considering diminished capital and credit opportunities, SBA will examine factors relating to the personal financial condition of any individual claiming disadvantaged status, including personal income for the past two years (including bonuses and the value of company stock given in lieu of cash), personal net worth, and the fair market value of all assets, whether encumbered or not. SBA will also consider the financial condition of the applicant compared to the financial profiles of small businesses in the same primary industry classification, or, if not available, in similar lines of business, which are not owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals in evaluating the individual’s access to credit and capital. The financial profiles that SBA compares include total assets, net sales, pre tax profit, sales/working capital ratio, and net worth.

(1) Transfers within two years. (i) Except as set forth in paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section, SBA will attribute to an individual claiming disadvantaged status any assets which that individual has transferred to an immediate family member, or to a trust a beneficiary of which is an immediate family member, for less than fair market value, within two years prior to a concern’s application for participation in the 8(a) BD
§ 124.105 What does it mean to be unconditionally owned by one or more disadvantaged individuals?

An applicant or Participant must be at least 51 percent unconditionally and directly owned by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals who are citizens of the United States, except for concerns owned by Indian tribes, Alaska Native Corporations, Native Hawaiian Organizations, or Community Development Corporations (CDCs). See §124.3 for definition of unconditional ownership; and §§124.109, 124.110, and 124.111, respectively, for special ownership requirements for concerns owned by Indian tribes, ANCs, Native Hawaiian Organizations, and CDCs.

(a) Ownership must be direct. Ownership by one or more disadvantaged individuals must be direct ownership. An applicant or Participant owned principally by another business entity or by a trust (including employee stock ownership trusts) that is in turn owned and controlled by one or more disadvantaged individuals does not meet this requirement. However, ownership by a trust, such as a living trust, may be treated as the functional equivalent of ownership by a disadvantaged individual where the trust is revocable, and the disadvantaged individual is the grantor, a trustee, and the sole current beneficiary of the trust.

(b) Ownership of a partnership. In the case of a concern which is a partnership, at least 51 percent of every class of partnership interest must be unconditionally owned by one or more disadvantaged individuals as determined by SBA to be socially and economically disadvantaged. The ownership must be reflected in the concern’s partnership agreement.

(c) Ownership of a limited liability company. In the case of a concern which is a limited liability company, at least 51 percent of each class of member interest must be unconditionally owned by one or more individuals as determined by SBA to be socially and economically disadvantaged.
(d) Ownership of a corporation. In the case of a concern which is a corporation, at least 51 percent of each class of voting stock outstanding and 51 percent of the aggregate of all stock outstanding must be unconditionally owned by one or more individuals determined by SBA to be socially and economically disadvantaged.

(e) Stock options’ effect on ownership. In determining unconditional ownership, SBA will disregard any unexercised stock options or similar agreements held by disadvantaged individuals. However, any unexercised stock options or similar agreements (including rights to convert non-voting stock or debentures into voting stock) held by non-disadvantaged individuals will be treated as exercised, except for any ownership interests which are held by investment companies licensed under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958.

(f) Dividends and distributions. One or more disadvantaged individuals must be entitled to receive:

1. At least 51 percent of the annual distribution of dividends paid on the stock of a corporate applicant concern;
2. 100 percent of the value of each share of stock owned by them in the event that the stock is sold; and
3. At least 51 percent of the retained earnings of the concern and 100 percent of the unencumbered value of each share of stock owned in the event of dissolution of the corporation.

(g) Ownership of another Participant. The individuals determined to be disadvantaged for purposes of one Participant, their immediate family members, and the Participant itself, may not hold, in the aggregate, more than a 20 percent equity ownership interest in any other single Participant.

(h) Ownership restrictions for non-disadvantaged individuals and concerns. (1) A non-disadvantaged individual (in the aggregate with all immediate family members) or a non-Participant concern that is a general partner or stockholder with at least a 10 percent ownership interest in one Participant may not own more than a 10 percent interest in another Participant that is in the developmental stage or more than a 20 percent interest in another Participant in the transitional stage of the program. This restriction does not apply to financial institutions licensed or chartered by Federal, state or local government, including investment companies which are licensed under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958.

(2) A non-Participant concern in the same or similar line of business may not own more than a 10 percent interest in a Participant that is in the developmental stage or more than a 20 percent interest in a Participant in a transitional stage of the program, except that a former Participant or a principal of a former Participant (except those that have been terminated from 8(a) BD program participation pursuant to §§ 124.303 and 124.304) may have an equity ownership interest of up to 20 percent in a current Participant in the developmental stage of the program or up to 30 percent in a transitional stage Participant, in the same or similar line of business.

(i) Change of ownership. A Participant may change its ownership or business structure so long as one or more disadvantaged individuals own and control it after the change and SBA approves the transaction in writing prior to the change. The decision to approve or deny a Participant’s request for a change in ownership or business structure will be made and communicated to the firm by the AA/8(a)BD. The decision of the AA/8(a)BD is the final decision of the Agency. The AA/8(a)BD will issue a decision within 60 days from receipt of a request containing all necessary documentation, or as soon thereafter as possible. If 60 days lapse without a decision from SBA, the Participant cannot presume that it can complete the change without written approval from SBA. A decision to deny a request for change of ownership or business structure may be grounds for program termination where the change is made nevertheless.

1. Any Participant that was awarded one or more 8(a) contracts may substitute one disadvantaged individual for another disadvantaged individual without requiring the termination of those contracts or a request for waiver under §124.515, as long as it receives SBA’s approval prior to the change.

2. Where the previous owner held less than a 10 percent interest in the
§ 124.106 When do disadvantaged individuals control an applicant or Participant?

Control is not the same as ownership, although both may reside in the same person. SBA regards control as including both the strategic policy setting exercised by boards of directors and the day-to-day management and administration of business operations. An applicant or Participant’s management and daily business operations must be conducted by one or more disadvantaged individuals, except for concerns owned by Indian tribes, ANCs, Native Hawaiian Organizations, or Community Development Corporations (CDCs). (See §§ 124.109, 124.110, and 124.111, respectively, for the requirements for concerns owned by Indian tribes or ANCs, for concerns owned by Native Hawaiian Organizations, and for CDC-owned concerns.) Disadvantaged individuals managing the concern must have managerial experience of the extent and complexity needed to run the concern. A disadvantaged individual need not have the technical expertise or possess a required license to be found to control an applicant or Participant if he or she can demonstrate that he or she has ultimate managerial and supervisory control over those who possess the required licenses or technical expertise. However, where a critical license is held by a non-disadvantaged individual having an equity interest in the applicant or Participant firm, the non-disadvantaged individual may be found to control the firm.

(a) (1) An applicant or Participant must be managed on a full-time basis by one or more disadvantaged individuals who possess requisite management capabilities.

(2) A disadvantaged full-time manager must hold the highest officer position (usually President or Chief Executive Officer) in the applicant or Participant.

(3) One or more disadvantaged individuals who manage the applicant or Participant must devote full-time to
the business during the normal working hours of firms in the same or similar line of business. Work in a wholly-owned subsidiary of the applicant or participant may be considered to meet the requirement of full-time devotion. This applies only to a subsidiary owned by the 8(a) firm, and not to firms in which the disadvantaged individual has an ownership interest.

(4) Any disadvantaged manager who wishes to engage in outside employment must notify SBA of the nature and anticipated duration of the outside employment and obtain the prior written approval of SBA. SBA will deny a request for outside employment which could conflict with the management of the firm or could hinder it in achieving the objectives of its business development plan.

(5) Except as provided in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, a disadvantaged owner’s unexercised right to cause a change in the control or management of the applicant concern does not in itself constitute disadvantaged control and management, regardless of how quickly or easily the right could be exercised.

(b) In the case of a partnership, one or more disadvantaged individuals must serve as general partners, with control over all partnership decisions. A partnership in which no disadvantaged individual is a general partner will be ineligible for participation.

(c) In the case of a limited liability company, one or more disadvantaged individuals must serve as management members, with control over all decisions of the limited liability company.

(d) One or more disadvantaged individuals must control the Board of Directors of a corporate applicant or Participant.

(1) SBA will deem disadvantaged individuals to control the Board of Directors where:

(i) A single disadvantaged individual owns 100% of all voting stock of an applicant or Participant concern;

(ii) A single disadvantaged individual owns at least 51% of all voting stock of an applicant or Participant concern, the individual is on the Board of Directors and no super majority voting requirements exist for shareholders to approve corporation actions. Where super majority voting requirements are provided for in the concern’s articles of incorporation, its by-laws, or by state law, the disadvantaged individual must own at least the percent of the voting stock needed to overcome any such super majority voting requirements; or

(iii) More than one disadvantaged shareholder seeks to qualify the concern (i.e., no one individual owns 51%), each such individual is on the Board of Directors, together they own at least 51% of all voting stock of the concern, no super majority voting requirements exist, and the disadvantaged shareholders can demonstrate that they have made enforceable arrangements to permit one of them to vote the stock of all as a block without a shareholder meeting. Where the concern has super majority voting requirements, the disadvantaged shareholders must own at least that percentage of voting stock needed to overcome any such super majority ownership requirements.

(2) Where an applicant or Participant does not meet the requirements set forth in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the disadvantaged individual(s) upon whom eligibility is based must control the Board of Directors through actual numbers of voting directors or, where permitted by state law, through weighted voting (e.g., in a concern having a two-person Board of Directors where one individual on the Board is disadvantaged and one is not, the disadvantaged vote must be weighted—worth more than one vote—in order for the concern to be eligible for 8(a) participation). Where a concern seeks to comply with this paragraph:

(i) Provisions for the establishment of a quorum cannot permit non-disadvantaged Directors to control the Board of Directors, directly or indirectly;

(ii) Any Executive Committee of Directors must be controlled by disadvantaged directors unless the Executive Committee can only make recommendations to and cannot independently exercise the authority of the Board of Directors.

(3) An applicant must inform SBA of any super majority voting requirements provided for in its articles of incorporation, its by-laws, by state law,
or otherwise. Similarly, after being admitted to the program, a Participant must inform SBA of changes regarding super majority voting requirements.

(4) Non-voting, advisory, or honorary Directors may be appointed without affecting disadvantaged individuals’ control of the Board of Directors.

(5) Arrangements regarding the structure and voting rights of the Board of Directors must comply with applicable state law.

(e) Non-disadvantaged individuals may be involved in the management of an applicant or Participant, and may be stockholders, partners, limited liability members, officers, and/or directors of the applicant or Participant. However, no such non-disadvantaged individual or immediate family member may:

(1) Exercise actual control or have the power to control the applicant or Participant;

(2) Be a former employer or a principal of a former employer of any disadvantaged owner of the applicant or Participant, unless it is determined by the AA/8(a)BD that the relationship between the former employer or principal and the disadvantaged individual or applicant concern does not give the former employer actual control or the potential to control the applicant or Participant and such relationship is in the best interests of the 8(a) BD firm;

(3) Receive compensation from the applicant or Participant in any form as directors, officers or employees, including dividends, that exceeds the compensation to be received by the highest officer (usually CEO or President). The highest ranking officer may elect to take a lower salary than a non-disadvantaged individual only upon demonstrating that it helps the applicant or Participant. In the case of a Participant, the Participant must also obtain the prior written consent of the AA/8(a)BD or designee before changing the compensation paid to the highest ranking officer to be below that paid to a non-disadvantaged individual.

(f) Non-disadvantaged individuals who transfer majority stock ownership or control of the firm to an immediate family member within two years prior to the application and remain involved in the firm as a stockholder, officer, director, or key employee of the firm are presumed to control the firm. The presumption may be rebutted by showing that the transferee has independent management experience necessary to control the operation of the firm.

(g) Non-disadvantaged individuals or entities may be found to control or have the power to control in any of the following circumstances, which are illustrative only and not all inclusive:

(1) In circumstances where an applicant or Participant seeks to establish disadvantaged control of the Board of Directors through paragraph (d)(2) of this section, non-disadvantaged individuals control the Board of Directors of the applicant or Participant, either directly through majority voting membership, or indirectly, where the by-laws allow non-disadvantaged individuals effectively to prevent a quorum or block actions proposed by the disadvantaged individuals.

(2) A non-disadvantaged individual or entity, having an equity interest in the applicant or participant, provides critical financial or bonding support or a critical license to the applicant or Participant which directly or indirectly allows the non-disadvantaged individual significantly to influence business decisions of the Participant.

(3) A non-disadvantaged individual or entity controls the applicant or Participant or an individual disadvantaged owner through loan arrangements. Providing a loan guaranty on commercially reasonable terms does not, by itself, give a non-disadvantaged individual or entity the power to control a firm.

(4) Business relationships exist with non-disadvantaged individuals or entities which cause such dependence that the applicant or Participant cannot exercise independent business judgment without great economic risk.

§ 124.107 What is potential for success?

The applicant concern must possess reasonable prospects for success in competing in the private sector if admitted to the 8(a) BD program. To do so, it must be in business in its primary industry classification for at least two full years immediately prior to the date of its 8(a) BD application,
§ 124.108

What other eligibility requirements apply for individuals or businesses?

(a) Good character. The applicant or Participant and all its principals must have good character.

(1) If, during the processing of an application, adverse information is obtained from the applicant or a credible source regarding possible criminal conduct by the applicant or any of its principals, no further action will be taken on the application until SBA’s Inspector General has collected relevant information and has advised the AA/8(a)BD of his or her findings. The
AA/8(a)BD will consider those findings when evaluating the application.

(2) Violations of any of SBA’s regulations may result in denial of participation in the 8(a) BD program. The AA/8(a)BD will consider the nature and severity of the violation in making an eligibility determination.

(3) Debarred or suspended concerns or concerns owned by debarred or suspended persons are ineligible for admission to the 8(a) BD program.

(4) An applicant is ineligible for admission to the 8(a) BD program if the applicant concern or a proprietor, partner, limited liability member, director, officer, or holder of at least 10 percent of its stock, or another person (including key employees) with significant authority over the concern:

(i) Lacks business integrity as demonstrated by information related to an indictment or guilty plea, conviction, civil judgment, or settlement; or

(ii) Is currently incarcerated, or on parole or probation pursuant to a pretrial diversion or following conviction for a felony or any crime involving business integrity.

(5) If, during the processing of an application, SBA determines that an applicant has knowingly submitted false information, regardless of whether correct information would cause SBA to deny the application, and regardless of whether correct information was given to SBA in accompanying documents, SBA will deny the application. If, after admission to the program, SBA discovers that false information has been knowingly submitted by a firm, SBA will initiate termination proceedings and suspend the firm under §§124.304 and 124.305. Whenever SBA determines that the applicant submitted false information, the matter will be referred to SBA’s Office of Inspector General for review.

(b) One-time eligibility. Once a concern or disadvantaged individual upon whom eligibility was based has participated in the 8(a) BD program, neither the concern nor that individual will be eligible again.

(1) An individual who claims disadvantage and completes the appropriate SBA forms to qualify an applicant has participated in the 8(a) BD program if SBA approves the application.

(2) Use of eligibility will take effect on the date of the concern’s approval for admission into the program.

(3) An individual who uses his or her one-time eligibility to qualify a concern for the 8(a) BD program will be considered a non-disadvantaged individual for ownership or control purposes of another applicant or Participant. The criteria restricting participation by non-disadvantaged individuals will apply to such an individual. See §§124.105 and 124.106.

(4) When at least 50% of the assets of a concern are the same as those of a former Participant, the concern will not be eligible for entry into the program.

(5) Participants which change their form of business organization and transfer their assets and liabilities to the new organization may do so without affecting the eligibility of the new organization provided the previous business is dissolved and all other eligibility criteria are met. In such a case, the new organization may complete the remaining program term of the previous organization. A request for a change in business form will be treated as a change of ownership under §124.105(1).

(c) Wholesalers. An applicant concern seeking admission to the 8(a) BD program as a wholesaler need not demonstrate that it is capable of meeting the requirements of the nonmanufacturer rule for its primary industry classification.

(d) Brokers. Brokers are ineligible to participate in the 8(a) BD program. A broker is a concern that adds no material value to an item being supplied to a procuring activity or which does not take ownership or possession of or handle the item being procured with its own equipment or facilities.

(e) Federal financial obligations. Neither a firm nor any of its principals that fails to pay significant financial obligations owed to the Federal Government, including unresolved tax liens and defaults on Federal loans or other Federally assisted financing, is eligible for admission to or participation in the 8(a) BD program.
(f) Achievement of benchmarks. Where actual participation by disadvantaged businesses in a particular SIC Major Group exceeds the benchmark limitations established by the Department of Commerce, SBA, in its discretion, may decide not to accept an application for 8(a) BD participation from a concern whose primary industry classification falls within that Major Group.

[63 FR 35739, 35772, June 30, 1998]

§ 124.109 Do Indian tribes and Alaska Native Corporations have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Special rules for ANCs. Small business concerns owned and controlled by ANCs are eligible for participation in the 8(a) program and must meet the eligibility criteria set forth in §124.112 to the extent the criteria are not inconsistent with this section. ANC-owned concerns are subject to the same conditions that apply to tribally-owned concerns, as described in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, except that the following provisions and exceptions apply only to ANC-owned concerns:

(1) Alaska Natives and descendants of Natives must own a majority of both the total equity of the ANC and the total voting powers to elect directors of the ANC through their holdings of settlement common stock. Settlement common stock means stock of an ANC issued pursuant to 43 U.S.C. 1606(g)(1), which is subject to the rights and restrictions listed in 43 U.S.C. 1606(h)(1).

(2) An ANC that meets the requirements set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section is deemed economically disadvantaged under 43 U.S.C. 1626(e), and need not establish economic disadvantage as required by paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(3) Even though an ANC can be either for profit or non-profit, a small business concern owned and controlled by an ANC must be for profit to be eligible for the 8(a) program. The concern will be deemed owned and controlled by the ANC where both the majority of stock or other ownership interest and total voting power are held by the ANC and holders of its settlement common stock.

(4) The Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act provides that a concern which is majority owned by an ANC shall be deemed to be both owned and controlled by Alaska Natives and an economically disadvantaged business. Therefore, an individual responsible for control and management of an ANC-owned applicant or Participant need not establish personal social and economic disadvantage.

(5) Paragraphs (b)(3)(i), (ii) and (iv) of this section are not applicable to an ANC, provided its status as an ANC is clearly shown in its articles of incorporation.

(6) Paragraph (c)(1) of this section is not applicable to an ANC-owned concern to the extent it requires an express waiver of sovereign immunity or a “sue and be sued” clause.

(b) Tribal eligibility. In order to qualify a concern which it owns and controls for participation in the 8(a) BD program, an Indian tribe must establish its own economic disadvantaged status under paragraph (b)(2) of this section. Thereafter, it need not reestablish such status in order to have other businesses that it owns certified for 8(a) BD program participation, unless specifically required to do so by the AA/8(a)BD or designee. Each tribally-owned concern seeking to be certified for 8(a) BD participation must comply with the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section.

(1) Social disadvantage. An Indian tribe as defined in §124.3 is considered to be socially disadvantaged.

(2) Economic disadvantage. In order to be eligible to participate in the 8(a) BD program, the Indian tribe must demonstrate to SBA that the tribe itself is economically disadvantaged. This must involve the consideration of available data showing the tribe’s economic condition, including but not limited to, the following information:

(i) The number of tribal members.

(ii) The present tribal unemployment rate.

(iii) The per capita income of tribal members, excluding judgment awards.

(iv) The percentage of the local Indian population below the poverty level.

(v) The tribe’s access to capital.

(vi) The tribal assets as disclosed in a current tribal financial statement. The
statement must list all assets including those which are encumbered or held in trust, but the status of those encumbered or in trust must be clearly delineated.

(vii) A list of all wholly or partially owned tribal enterprises or affiliates and the primary industry classification of each. The list must also specify the members of the tribe who manage or control such enterprises by serving as officers or directors.

(3) Forms and documents required to be submitted. Except as otherwise provided in this section, the Indian tribe generally must submit the forms and documents required of 8(a) BD applicants as well as the following material:

(i) A copy of all governing documents such as the tribe’s constitution or business charter.

(ii) Evidence of its recognition as a tribe eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States or by its state of residence.

(iii) Copies of its articles of incorporation and bylaws as filed with the organizing or chartering authority, or similar documents needed to establish and govern a non-corporate legal entity.

(iv) Documents or materials needed to show the tribe’s economically disadvantaged status as described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(c) Business eligibility. In order to be eligible to participate in the 8(a) BD program, a concern which is owned by an eligible Indian tribe (or wholly owned Indian tribe) must meet the conditions set forth in paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(7) of this section.

(1) Legal business entity organized for profit and susceptible to suit. The applicant or participating concern must be a separate and distinct legal entity organized or chartered by the tribe, or Federal or state authorities. The concern’s articles of incorporation, partnership agreement or limited liability company articles of organization must contain express sovereign immunity waiver language, or a “sue and be sued” clause which designates United States Federal Courts to be among the courts of competent jurisdiction for all matters relating to SBA’s programs including, but not limited to, 8(a) BD program participation, loans, and contract performance. Also, the concern must be organized for profit, and the tribe must possess economic development powers in the tribe’s governing documents.

(2) Size. (i) A tribally-owned applicant concern must qualify as a small business concern as defined for purposes of Federal Government procurement in part 121 of this title. The particular size standard to be applied is based on the primary industry classification of the applicant concern.

(ii) A tribally-owned Participant must certify to SBA that it is a small business pursuant to the provisions of part 121 of this title for the purpose of performing each individual contract which it is awarded.

(iii) In determining the size of a small business concern owned by a socially and economically disadvantaged Indian tribe (or a wholly owned business entity of such tribe) for either 8(a) BD program entry or contract award, the firm’s size shall be determined independently without regard to its affiliation with the tribe, any entity of the tribal government, or any other business enterprise owned by the tribe, unless the Administrator determines that one or more such tribally-owned business concerns have obtained, or are likely to obtain, a substantial unfair competitive advantage within an industry category.

(3) Ownership. (i) For corporate entities, a tribe must own at least 51 percent of the voting stock and at least 51 percent of the aggregate of all classes of stock. For non-corporate entities, a tribe must own at least a 51 percent interest.

(ii) A tribe cannot own 51% or more of another firm which, either at the time of application or within the previous two years, has been operating in the 8(a) program under the same primary SIC code as the applicant. A tribe may, however, own a Participant or an applicant that conducts or will conduct secondary business in the 8(a) BD program under the same SIC code that a current Participant owned by the tribe operates in the 8(a) BD program as its primary SIC code.

(iii) The restrictions of §124.105(h) do not apply to tribes; they do, however,
§ 124.110 Do Native Hawaiian Organizations have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Concerns owned by economically disadvantaged Native Hawaiian Organizations, as defined in §124.3, are eligible for participation in the 8(a) program and other federal programs requiring SBA to determine social and economic disadvantage as a condition of eligibility. Such concerns must meet all eligibility criteria set forth in §§124.101 - 124.108.

(b) The management and daily business operations of a tribally-owned concern must be controlled by the tribe, through one or more disadvantaged individual members who possess sufficient management experience of an extent and complexity needed to run the concern, or through management as follows:

(A) Management may be provided by committees, teams, or Boards of Directors which are controlled by one or more members of an economically disadvantaged tribe, or

(B) Management may be provided by non-tribal members if SBA determines that such management is required to assist the concern’s development, that the tribe will retain control of all management decisions common to boards of directors, including strategic planning, budget approval, and the employment and compensation of officers, and that a written management development plan exists which shows how disadvantaged tribal members will develop managerial skills sufficient to manage the concern or similar tribally-owned concerns in the future.

(ii) Members of the management team, business committee members, officers, and directors are precluded from engaging in any outside employment or other business interests which conflict with the management of the concern or prevent the concern from achieving the objectives set forth in its business development plan. This is not intended to preclude participation in tribal or other activities which do not interfere with such individual’s responsibilities in the operation of the applicant concern.

(5) Individual eligibility limitation. SBA does not deem an individual involved in the management or daily business operations of a tribally-owned concern to have used his or her individual eligibility within the meaning of §124.108(b).

(6) Potential for success. (i) A tribally-owned applicant concern must be in business for at least two years, as evidenced by income tax returns for each of the two previous tax years showing operating revenues in the primary industry in which the applicant is seeking 8(a) BD certification, or demonstrate potential for success as set forth in paragraph (c)(6)(ii) of this section.

(ii) In determining whether a tribally-owned concern has the potential for success, SBA will look at a number of factors including, but not limited to:

(A) The technical and managerial experience and competency of the individual(s) who will manage and control the daily operation of the concern;

(B) The financial capacity of the concern; and

(C) The concern’s record of performance on any previous Federal or private sector contracts in the primary industry in which the concern is seeking 8(a) certification.

(7) Other eligibility criteria. (i) As with other 8(a) applicants, a tribally-owned applicant concern shall not be denied admission into the 8(a) program due solely to a determination that specific contract opportunities are unavailable to assist the development of the concern unless:

(A) The Government has not previously procured and is unlikely to procure the types of products or services offered by the concern; or

(B) The purchase of such products or services by the Federal Government will not be in quantities sufficient to support the developmental needs of the applicant and other program participants providing the same or similar items or services.

(ii) Except for the tribe itself, the concern’s officers, directors, and all shareholders owning an interest of 20% or more must demonstrate good character. See §124.108(a).
§ 124.111 Do Community Development Corporations (CDCs) have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Concerns owned at least 51 percent by CDCs (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) are eligible for participation in the 8(a) BD program and other federal programs requiring SBA to determine social and economic disadvantage as a condition of eligibility. These concerns must meet all eligibility criteria set forth in §124.101 through §124.108 and §124.112 to the extent that they are not inconsistent with this section.

(b) A concern that is at least 51 percent owned by a CDC (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) is considered to be controlled by such CDC and eligible for participation in the 8(a) BD program, provided it meets all eligibility criteria set forth or referred to in this section and its management and daily business operations are conducted by one or more individuals determined to have managerial experience of an extent and complexity needed to run the concern.

(c) A concern that is at least 51 percent owned by a CDC (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) must qualify as a small business concern as defined in part 121 of this title. The size standard corresponding to the primary industry classification of the applicant concern applies for determining size. SBA will determine the concern’s size independently, without regard to its affiliation with the CDC or any other business enterprise owned by the CDC, unless the Administrator determines that one or more such concerns owned by the CDC have obtained, or are likely to obtain, a substantial unfair competitive advantage within an industry category.

(i) The technical and managerial experience and competence of the individual(s) who will manage and control the daily operation of the concern.

(ii) The financial capacity of the concern; and

(iii) The concern’s record of performance on any previous Federal or private sector contracts in the primary industry in which the concern is seeking 8(a) certification.

§ 124.111 Do Community Development Corporations (CDCs) have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Concerns owned at least 51 percent by CDCs (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) are eligible for participation in the 8(a) BD program and other federal programs requiring SBA to determine social and economic disadvantage as a condition of eligibility. These concerns must meet all eligibility criteria set forth in §124.101 through §124.108 and §124.112 to the extent that they are not inconsistent with this section.

(b) A concern that is at least 51 percent owned by a CDC (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) is considered to be controlled by such CDC and eligible for participation in the 8(a) BD program, provided it meets all eligibility criteria set forth or referred to in this section and its management and daily business operations are conducted by one or more individuals determined to have managerial experience of an extent and complexity needed to run the concern.

(c) A concern that is at least 51 percent owned by a CDC (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) must qualify as a small business concern as defined in part 121 of this title. The size standard corresponding to the primary industry classification of the applicant concern applies for determining size. SBA will determine the concern’s size independently, without regard to its affiliation with the CDC or any other business enterprise owned by the CDC, unless the Administrator determines that one or more such concerns owned by the CDC have obtained, or are likely to obtain, a substantial unfair competitive advantage within an industry category.

(i) The technical and managerial experience and competence of the individual(s) who will manage and control the daily operation of the concern.

(ii) The financial capacity of the concern; and

(iii) The concern’s record of performance on any previous Federal or private sector contracts in the primary industry in which the concern is seeking 8(a) certification.

§ 124.111 Do Community Development Corporations (CDCs) have any special rules for applying to the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Concerns owned at least 51 percent by CDCs (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) are eligible for participation in the 8(a) BD program and other federal programs requiring SBA to determine social and economic disadvantage as a condition of eligibility. These concerns must meet all eligibility criteria set forth in §124.101 through §124.108 and §124.112 to the extent that they are not inconsistent with this section.

(b) A concern that is at least 51 percent owned by a CDC (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) is considered to be controlled by such CDC and eligible for participation in the 8(a) BD program, provided it meets all eligibility criteria set forth or referred to in this section and its management and daily business operations are conducted by one or more individuals determined to have managerial experience of an extent and complexity needed to run the concern.

(c) A concern that is at least 51 percent owned by a CDC (or a wholly owned business entity of a CDC) must qualify as a small business concern as defined in part 121 of this title. The size standard corresponding to the primary industry classification of the applicant concern applies for determining size. SBA will determine the concern’s size independently, without regard to its affiliation with the CDC or any other business enterprise owned by the CDC, unless the Administrator determines that one or more such concerns owned by the CDC have obtained, or are likely to obtain, a substantial unfair competitive advantage within an industry category.

(i) The technical and managerial experience and competence of the individual(s) who will manage and control the daily operation of the concern.

(ii) The financial capacity of the concern; and

(iii) The concern’s record of performance on any previous Federal or private sector contracts in the primary industry in which the concern is seeking 8(a) certification.
Small Business Administration § 124.112

(d) A CDC cannot own 51% or more of another firm which, either at the time of application or within the previous two years, has been operating in the 8(a) program under the same primary SIC code as the applicant. A CDC may, however, own a Participant or an applicant that conducts or will conduct secondary business in the 8(a) BD program under the same SIC code that a current Participant owned by the CDC operates in the 8(a) BD program as its primary SIC code.

(e) SBA does not deem an individual involved in the management or daily business operations of a CDC-owned concern to have used his or her individual eligibility within the meaning of §124.108(b).

(f)(1) A CDC-owned applicant concern must be in business for at least two years, as evidenced by income tax returns for each of the two previous tax years showing operating revenues in the primary industry in which the applicant is seeking 8(a) BD certification, or demonstrate potential for success as set forth in paragraph (e)(2) of this section.

(2) In determining whether a CDC-owned concern has the potential for success, SBA will look at a number of factors including, but not limited to:

(i) The technical and managerial experience and competence of the individual(s) who will manage and control the daily operation of the concern;

(ii) The financial capacity of the concern;

(iii) The concern’s record of performance on any previous Federal or private sector contracts in the primary industry in which the concern is seeking 8(a) certification.

(g) A CDC-owned applicant and all of its principals must have good character as set forth in §124.108(a).

§ 124.112 What criteria must a business meet to remain eligible to participate in the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Standards. In order for a concern (except those owned by Indian tribes, ANC, Native Hawaiian Organizations or CDCs to remain eligible, they must meet the criteria set forth in this §124.112 to the extent that they are not inconsistent with §124.109, §124.110 and §124.111, respectively. The concern must inform SBA in writing of any changes in circumstances which would adversely affect its program eligibility, especially economic disadvantage and ownership and control. Any concern that fails to meet the eligibility requirements after being admitted to the program will be subject to termination or early graduation under §§124.302 through 124.304, as appropriate.

(b) Submissions supporting continued eligibility. As part of an annual review, each Participant must annually submit to the servicing district office the following:

(1) A certification that it meets the 8(a) BD program eligibility requirements as set forth in §124.101 through §124.108 and paragraph (a) of this section;

(2) A certification that there have been no changed circumstances which could adversely affect the Participant’s program eligibility. If the Participant is unable to provide such certification, the Participant must inform SBA of any changes and provide relevant supporting documentation.

(3) Personal financial information for each disadvantaged owner;

(4) A record from each individual claiming disadvantaged status regarding the transfer of assets for less than fair market value to any immediate family member, or to a trust any beneficiary of which is an immediate family member, within two years of the date of the annual review. The record must provide the name of the recipient(s) and family relationship, and the difference between the fair market value of the asset transferred and the value received by the disadvantaged individual.

(5) A record of all payments, compensation, and distributions (including loans, advances, salaries and dividends) made by the Participant to each of its owners, officers or directors, or to any person or entity affiliated with such individuals;

(6) If it is an approved protege, a narrative report detailing the contacts it...
has had with its mentor and benefits it has received from the mentor/protege relationship. See §124.520(b)(4) for additional annual requirements;

(7) IRS Form 4506, Request for Copy or Transcript of Tax Form; and

(8) Such other information as SBA may deem necessary. For other required annual submissions, see §§124.601 through 124.603.

(c) Eligibility reviews. (1) Upon receipt of specific and credible information alleging that a Participant no longer meets the eligibility requirements for continued program eligibility, SBA will review the concern’s eligibility for continued participation in the program.

(2) Sufficient reasons for SBA to conclude that a socially disadvantaged individual is no longer economically disadvantaged include, but are not limited to, excessive withdrawals of funds or other assets withdrawn from the concern by its owners, or substantial personal assets, income or net worth of any disadvantaged owner. SBA may also consider access by the Participant firm to a significant new source of capital or loans since the financial condition of the Participant is considered in evaluating the disadvantaged individual’s economic status.

(d) Excessive withdrawals. (1) The term withdrawal includes, but is not limited to, the following: officer’s salary; cash dividends; distributions in excess of amounts needed to pay S Corporation taxes; cash and property withdrawals; bonuses; loans; advances; payments to immediate family members; investments on behalf of an owner, officer, or key employee; acquisition of a business not merged with the 8(a) Participant; charitable contributions; and speculative ventures.

(2) If SBA determines that excessive funds or other assets have been withdrawn from the Participant, SBA may:

(i) Initiate termination proceedings under §§124.303 and 124.304 where the withdrawals detrimentally affect the achievement of the Participant’s targets, objectives and goals set forth in its business plan, or its overall business development;

(ii) Initiate early graduation proceedings under §§124.302 and 124.303 where the withdrawals do not adversely affect the Participant’s business development; or

(iii) Require an appropriate reinvestment of funds or other assets, as well as any other actions SBA deems necessary to counteract the detrimental effects of the withdrawals, as a condition of the Participant maintaining program eligibility.

(3) Withdrawals are excessive if during any fiscal year of the Participant they exceed (i) $150,000 for firms with sales up to $1,000,000; (ii) $200,000 for firms with sales between $1,000,000 and $2,000,000; and (iii) $300,000 for firms with sales over $2,000,000.

(4) The fact that a concern’s net worth has increased despite withdrawals that are deemed excessive will not preclude SBA from determining that such withdrawals were detrimental to the attainment of the concern’s business objectives or to its overall business development.

APPLYING TO THE 8(a) BD PROGRAM

§124.201 May any business submit an application?

Any concern or any individual on behalf of a business has the right to apply for 8(a) BD program participation whether or not there is an appearance of eligibility.

§124.202 Where must an application be filed?

An application for 8(a) BD program admission must be filed in the SBA Division of Program Certification and Eligibility (DPCE) field office serving the territory in which the principal place of business is located. The SBA district office will provide an applicant concern with information regarding the 8(a) BD program and with all required application forms.

§124.203 What must a concern submit to apply to the 8(a) BD program?

Each 8(a) BD applicant concern must submit those forms and attachments required by SBA when applying for admission to the 8(a) BD program. These forms and attachments will include, but not be limited to, financial statements, Federal personal and business tax returns, and personal history statements. An applicant must also submit...
IRS Form 4506, Request for Copy or Transcript of Tax Form, to SBA. The application package may be in the form of an electronic application.

§ 124.204 How does SBA process applications for 8(a) BD program admission?

(a) The AA/8(a)BD is authorized to approve or decline applications for admission to the 8(a) BD program. The appropriate DPCE field office will receive, review and evaluate all 8(a) BD applications except those from ANC-owned applicants. SBA’s Anchorage District Office will receive all applications from ANC-owned applicants and review them for completeness before sending them to the AA/8(a)BD for further processing. The appropriate field office will advise each program applicant within 15 days after the receipt of an application whether the application is complete and suitable for evaluation and, if not, what additional information or clarification is required to complete the application. SBA will process an application for 8(a) BD program participation within 90 days of receipt of a complete application package by the DPCE field office. Incomplete application packages will not be processed.

(b) SBA, in its sole discretion, may request clarification of information contained in the application at any time in the application process. SBA will take into account any clarifications made by an applicant in response to a request for such by SBA.

(c) An applicant concern’s eligibility will be based on circumstances existing on the date of application, except where clarification is made pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section or as provided in paragraph (d) of this section.

(d) Changed circumstances for an applicant concern occurring subsequent to its application and which adversely affect eligibility will be considered and may constitute grounds for decline. The applicant must inform SBA of any changed circumstances that could adversely affect its eligibility for the program (particularly economic disadvantage and ownership and control) during its application review. Failure to inform SBA of any such changed circumstances constitutes good cause for which SBA may terminate the Participant if non-compliance is discovered after admittance.

(e) The decision of the AA/8(a)BD to approve or deny an application will be in writing. A decision to deny admission will state the specific reasons for denial, and will inform the applicant of any appeal rights.

(f) If the AA/8(a)BD approves the application, the date of the approval letter is the date of program certification for purposes of determining the concern’s program term.

§ 124.205 Can an applicant ask SBA to reconsider SBA’s initial decision to decline its application?

(a) An applicant may request the AA/8(a)BD to reconsider his or her initial decline decision by filing a request for reconsideration with the SBA field office that originally processed its application. Filing means submission by personal delivery, first-class mail, express mail, facsimile transmission followed by first-class mail, or commercial delivery service. The applicant must submit its request for reconsideration within 45 days of receiving notice that its application was declined. The applicant must provide any additional information and documentation pertinent to overcoming the reason(s) for the initial decline.

(b) The AA/8(a)BD will issue a written decision within 45 days of the regional DPCE’s receipt of the applicant’s request. The AA/8(a)BD may either approve the application, deny it on the same grounds as the original decision, or deny it on other grounds. If denied, the AA/8(a)BD will explain why the applicant is not eligible for admission to the 8(a) BD program and give specific reasons for the decline.

(c) If the AA/8(a)BD declines the application solely on issues not raised in the initial decline, the applicant can ask for reconsideration as if it were an initial decline.

§ 124.206 What appeal rights are available to an applicant that has been denied admission?

(a) An applicant may appeal a denial of program admission to SBA’s Office of Hearings and Appeals (OHA), if it is based solely on a negative finding of
§ 124.207

social disadvantage, economic disadvantage, ownership, control, or any combination of these four criteria. A denial decision that is based at least in part on the failure to meet any other eligibility criterion is not appealable and is the final decision of SBA.

(b) The applicant may appeal an initial decision of the AA/8(a)BD without requesting reconsideration, or may appeal the decision of the AA/8(a)BD on reconsideration.

c) The applicant may initiate an appeal by filing a petition in accordance with part 134 of this title with OHA within 45 days of the date of service (as defined in §134.204) of the Agency decision.

(d) If an appeal is filed with OHA, the written decision of the Administrative Law Judge is the final Agency decision. If an appealable decision is not appealed, the decision of the AA/8(a)BD is the final Agency decision.

§ 124.207 Can an applicant reapply for admission to the 8(a) BD program?

A concern which has been declined for 8(a) BD program admission may submit a new application for admission to the program 12 months after the date of the final Agency decision to decline.

EXITING THE 8(a) BD PROGRAM

§ 124.301 What are the ways a business may leave the 8(a) BD program?

A concern participating in the 8(a) BD program may leave the program by any of the following means:

(a) Graduation upon the expiration of the program term established pursuant to §124.2;

(b) Voluntary early graduation;

(c) Early graduation pursuant to the provisions of §§124.302 and 124.304; or

(d) Termination pursuant to the provisions of §§124.303 and 124.304.

§ 124.302 What is early graduation?

(a) General. SBA may graduate a firm from the 8(a) BD program prior to the expiration of its Program Term where SBA determines that:

(1) The concern has successfully completed the 8(a) BD program by substantially achieving the targets, objectives, and goals set forth in its business plan prior to the expiration of its program term, and has demonstrated the ability to compete in the marketplace without assistance under the 8(a) BD program; or

(2) One or more of the disadvantaged owners upon whom the Participant’s eligibility is based are no longer economically disadvantaged.

(b) Criteria for determining whether a Participant has met its goals and objectives. In determining whether a Participant has substantially achieved the targets, objectives and goals of its business plan and in assessing the overall competitive strength and viability of a Participant, SBA considers the totality of circumstances, including the following factors:

(1) Degree of sustained profitability;

(2) Sales trends, including improved ratio of non-8(a) sales to 8(a) sales since program entry;

(3) Business net worth, financial ratios, working capital, capitalization, and access to credit and capital;

(4) Current ability to obtain bonding;

(5) A comparison of the Participant’s business and financial profiles with profiles of non-8(a) BD businesses having the same primary four-digit SIC code as the Participant;

(6) Strength of management experience, capability, and expertise; and

(7) Ability to operate successfully without 8(a) contracts.

(c) Excessive withdrawals. SBA may graduate a Participant prior to the expiration of its program term where excessive funds or other assets have been withdrawn from the Participant (see §124.112(d)(3)), causing SBA to determine that the Participant has demonstrated the ability to compete in the marketplace without assistance under the 8(a) BD program.

(d) Benchmark achievement. SBA may graduate a Participant prior to the expiration of its program term where the Participant has substantially achieved the targets, objectives and goals of its business plan as adjusted under §124.403(d) and its primary industry classification falls within a SIC Major Group in which the benchmarks described in §124.403(d) have been achieved.

[63 FR 35739, 35772, June 30, 1998]
§ 124.303 What is termination?

(a) SBA may terminate the participation of a concern in the 8(a) BD program prior to the expiration of the concern’s Program Term for good cause. Examples of good cause include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Submission of false information in the concern’s 8(a) BD application, regardless of whether correct information would have caused the concern to be denied admission to the program, and regardless of whether correct information was given to SBA in accompanying documents or by other means.

(2) Failure by the concern to maintain its eligibility for program participation.

(3) Failure by the concern for any reason, including the death of an individual upon whom eligibility was based, to maintain ownership, full-time day-to-day management, and control by disadvantaged individuals.

(4) Failure by the concern to obtain prior written approval from SBA for any changes in ownership or business structure, management or control pursuant to §§124.105 and 124.106.

(5) Failure by the concern to disclose to SBA the extent to which non-disadvantaged persons or firms participate in the management of the Participant business concern.

(6) Failure by the concern or one or more of the concern’s principals to maintain good character.

(7) A pattern of failure to make required submissions or responses to SBA in a timely manner, including a failure to provide required financial statements, requested tax returns, reports, updated business plans, information requested by SBA’s Office of Inspector General, or other requested information or data within 30 days of the date of request.

(8) Cessation of business operations by the concern.

(9) Failure by the concern to pursue competitive and commercial business in accordance with its business plan, or failure in other ways to make reasonable efforts to develop and achieve competitive viability.

(10) A pattern of inadequate performance by the concern of awarded section 8(a) contracts.

(11) Failure by the concern to pay or repay significant financial obligations owed to the Federal Government.

(12) Failure by the concern to obtain and keep current any and all required permits, licenses, and charters, including suspension or revocation of any professional license required to operate the business.

(13) Excessive withdrawals, including transfers of funds or other business assets, from the concern for the personal benefit of any of its owners or any person or entity affiliated with the owners that hinder the development of the concern (see §124.112(d)).

(14) Unauthorized use of SBA direct or guaranteed loan proceeds or violation of an SBA loan agreement.

(15) Submission by or on behalf of a Participant of false information to SBA, including false certification of compliance with non-8(a) business activity targets under §124.507 or failure to report changes that adversely affect the program eligibility of an applicant or program participant under §124.204 and §124.112, where responsible officials of the 8(a) BD Participant knew or should have known the submission to be false.

(16) Debarment, suspension, voluntary exclusion, or ineligibility of the concern or its principals pursuant to part 145 of this title or FAR subpart 9.4 (48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4).

(17) Conduct by the concern, or any of its principals, indicating a lack of business integrity. Such conduct may be demonstrated by information related to a criminal indictment or guilty plea, a criminal conviction, or a judgment or settlement in a civil case.

(18) Willful failure by the Participant business concern to comply with applicable labor standards and obligations.

(19) Material breach of any terms and conditions of the 8(a) BD Program Participation Agreement.

(20) Willful violation by a concern, or any of its principals, of any SBA regulation pertaining to material issues.

(b) The examples of good cause listed in paragraph (a) of this section are intended to be illustrative only. Other grounds for terminating a Participant from the 8(a) BD program for cause may exist and may be used by SBA.
§ 124.304 What are the procedures for early graduation and termination?

(a) General. The same procedures apply to both early graduation and termination of Participants from the (a) BD program.

(b) Letter of Intent to Terminate or Graduate Early. When SBA believes that a Participant should be terminated or graduated prior to the expiration of its program term, SBA will notify the concern in writing. The Letter of Intent to Terminate or Graduate Early will set forth the specific facts and reasons for SBA’s findings, and will notify the concern that it has 30 days from the date of service (as defined in §134.204 of this title) of the letter to submit a written response to SBA explaining why the proposed ground(s) should not justify termination or early graduation. Service is defined in §134.204.

(c) Recommendation and decision. Following the 30-day response period, the Assistant Administrator for DPCE (AA/DPCE) or designee will consider the proposed early graduation or termination and any information submitted in response by the concern. Upon determining that early graduation or termination is not warranted, the AA/DPCE or designee will notify the Participant in writing. If early graduation or termination appears warranted, the AA/DPCE will make such a recommendation to the AA/BD, who will then make a decision whether to early graduate or terminate the concern. SBA will act in a timely manner in processing early graduation and termination actions.

(d) Notice requirements. Upon deciding that early graduation or termination is warranted, the AA/BD will issue a Notice of Early Graduation or Termination. The Notice will set forth the specific facts and reasons for the decision, and will advise the concern that it may appeal the decision in accordance with the provisions of part 134 of this title.

(e) Appeal to OHA. Procedures governing appeals of early graduation or termination to SBA’s OHA are set forth in part 134. If a Participant does not appeal a Notification of Early Graduation or Termination within 45 days of the date of service (as defined in §134.204), the decision of the AA/BD is the final agency decision effective on the date the appeal right expired.

(f) Effect of early graduation or termination. After the effective date of early graduation or termination, a Participant is no longer eligible to receive any (a) BD program assistance. However, such concern is obligated to complete previously awarded (a) contracts, including any priced options which may be exercised.

§ 124.305 What is suspension and how is a Participant suspended from the (a) BD program?

(a) At any time after SBA issues a Letter of Intent to Terminate pursuant to §124.304, the AA/BD may suspend (a) contract support and all other forms of (a) BD program assistance to that concern until the issue of the concern’s termination from the program is finally decided. The AA/BD may suspend a Participant when he or she determines that suspension is needed to protect the interests of the Federal Government, such as when information showing a clear lack of program eligibility or conduct indicating a lack of business integrity exists, including where the concern or one of its principals submitted false statements to the Federal Government. SBA will suspend a Participant where SBA determines that the Participant submitted false information in its (a) BD application.

(b) SBA will issue a Notice of Suspension to the Participant’s last known address by certified mail, return receipt requested. Suspension is effective as of the date of the issuance of the Notice. The Notice will provide the following information:

(1) The basis for the suspension;
(2) A statement that the suspension will continue pending the completion of further investigation, a final program termination determination, or some other specified period of time;
(3) A statement that awards of competitive and non-competitive (a) contracts, including those which have been “self-marketed” by a Participant, will not be made during the pendency of the suspension unless it is determined by the head of the relevant procuring
agency or an authorized representative to be in the best interest of the Government to do so, and SBA adopts that determination;

(4) A statement that the concern is obligated to complete previously awarded section 8(a) contracts;

(5) A statement that the suspension is effective nationally throughout SBA;

(6) A statement that a request for a hearing on the suspension will be considered by an Administrative Law Judge at OHA, and granted or denied as a matter of discretion.

(7) A statement that the firm’s participation in the program is suspended effective on the date the Notice is served, and that the program term will resume only if the suspension is lifted or the firm is not terminated.

(c) The applicant concern may appeal a Notice of Suspension by filing a petition in accordance with part 134 of this title with OHA within 45 days of the date of service (as defined in §134.204) of a Notice of Suspension pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section. It is contemplated that in most cases a hearing on the issue of the suspension will be afforded if the Participant requests one, but authority to grant a hearing is within the discretion of the Administrative Law Judge in OHA. A suspension remains in effect pending the result of its appeal.

(d) SBA has the burden of showing that adequate evidence exists that protection of the Federal Government’s interest requires suspension before OHA or the AA/8(a)BD makes a final determination regarding the termination action.

(1) The term “adequate evidence” means information contained in the record before the AA/8(a)BD at the time of his or her suspension decision that is sufficient to support the reasonable belief that the Government’s interests need to be protected.

(2) SBA need not demonstrate that an act or omission actually occurred in order for OHA to uphold a suspension. SBA’s burden in a suspension proceeding is limited to demonstrating that it had a reasonable belief that a particular act or omission occurred, and that that act or omission requires suspension to protect the interests of the Government.

(3) Unless the Administrative Law Judge consolidates the suspension and termination proceedings, OHA’s review is limited to determining whether the Government’s interests need to be protected, and will not consider the merits of the termination action.

(e) If there is a timely appeal, the decision of the Administrative Law Judge is the final SBA decision. If there is not a timely appeal, the decision of the AA/8(a)BD is the final Agency decision.

(f) Upon the request of SBA, OHA may consolidate suspension and termination proceedings when the issues presented are identical.

(g) Any program suspension which occurs under this section is effective until such time as SBA lifts the suspension or the Participant’s participation in the program is fully terminated. If the concern is ultimately not terminated from the 8(a) BD program, the suspension will be lifted and the length of the suspension will be added to the concern’s program term.

(h) SBA may suspend a Participant from program benefits where a change of ownership or business structure has been requested if ownership or control of the participant changed prior to SBA’s approval pending resolution of the request to change its ownership or control. If the change of ownership is approved, the length of the suspension will be added to the firm’s program term where the change in ownership results from the death or incapacity of a disadvantaged individual or where the firm requested prior approval and waited 60 days for SBA approval before making the change. The suspension will be commenced by the issuance of a notice similar to that required for termination-related suspensions under paragraph (b) of this section, except that a change of ownership suspension is not appealable.

(i) SBA does not recognize the concept of de facto suspension. Adding time to the end of a Participant’s program term equal to the length of a suspension will occur only where a concern’s program participation has been formally suspended in accordance with the procedures set forth in this section.

(j) A suspension from 8(a) BD participation under this section has no effect on a concern’s eligibility for non-8(a)
Federal Government contracts. However, a debarment or suspension under the Federal Acquisition Regulation (48 CFR, chapter 1) will disqualify a concern from receiving all Federal Government contracts, including 8(a) contracts.

BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT

§ 124.401 Which SBA field office services a Participant?

The SBA district office which serves the geographical territory where a Participant’s principal place of business is located normally will service the concern during its participation in the 8(a) BD program.

§ 124.402 How does a Participant develop a business plan?

(a) General. In order to assist the SBA servicing office in determining the business development needs of its portfolio Participants, each Participant must develop a comprehensive business plan setting forth its business targets, objectives, and goals.

(b) Submission of initial business plan. Each Participant must submit a business plan to its SBA servicing office as soon as possible after program admission. The Participant will not be eligible for 8(a) BD program benefits, including 8(a) contracts, until SBA approves its business plan.

(c) Contents of business plan. The business plan must contain at least the following:

(1) A detailed description of any products currently being produced and any services currently being performed by the concern, as well as any future plans to enter into one or more new markets;

(2) The applicant’s designation of its primary industry classification, as defined in §124.3;

(3) An analysis of market potential, competitive environment, and the concern’s prospects for profitable operations during and after its participation in the 8(a) BD program;

(4) An analysis of the concern’s strengths and weaknesses, with particular attention on ways to correct any financial, managerial, technical, or workforce conditions which could impede the concern from receiving and performing non-8(a) contracts;

(5) Specific targets, objectives, and goals for the business development of the concern during the next two years;

(6) Estimates of both 8(a) and non-8(a) contract awards that will be needed to meet its targets, objectives and goals; and

(7) Such other information as SBA may require.

§ 124.403 How is a business plan updated and modified?

(a) Annual review. Each Participant must annually review its business plan with its assigned Business Opportunity Specialist (BOS), and modify the plan as appropriate. The Participant must submit a modified plan and updated information to its BOS within thirty (30) days after the close of each program year. It also must submit a capability statement describing its current contract performance capabilities as part of its updated business plan.

(b) Contract forecast. As part of the annual review of its business plan, each Participant must annually forecast in writing its needs for contract awards for the next program year. The forecast must include:

(1) The aggregate dollar value of 8(a) contracts to be sought, broken down by sole source and competitive opportunities where possible;

(2) The aggregate dollar value of non-8(a) contracts to be sought;

(3) The types of contract opportunities to be sought, identified by product or service; and

(4) Such other information as SBA may request to aid in providing effective business development assistance to the Participant.

(c) Transition management strategy. Beginning in the first year of the transitional stage of program participation, each Participant must annually submit a transition management strategy to be incorporated into its business plan. The transition management strategy must describe:

(1) How the Participant intends to meet the applicable non-8(a) business activity target imposed by §124.507 during the transitional stage of participation; and

(2) The specific steps the Participant intends to take to continue its business growth and promote profitable business
§ 124.405 How does a Participant obtain Federal Government surplus property?

(a) General. Pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 636(j)(13)(F), eligible Participants may receive surplus Federal Government property from State Agencies for Surplus Property (SASPs). The procedures set forth in 41 CFR Part 101–44 and this section will be used to transfer surplus property to eligible Participants.

(b) Eligibility to receive Federal surplus property. To be eligible to receive Federal surplus property, on the date of transfer a concern must:

1. Be in the 8(a) BD program;
2. Be in compliance with all program requirements, including any reporting requirements;
3. Not be debarred, suspended, or declared ineligible under part 9, subpart 9.4 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations, Title 48 of the Code of Federal Regulations;
4. Not be under a pending 8(a) BD program suspension, termination or early graduation proceeding; and
5. Be engaged or expect to be engaged in business activities making the item useful to it.

(c) Use of acquired surplus property. Eligible Participants may acquire surplus Federal property from any SASP located in any state, provided the concern represents and agrees in writing:

1. As to what the intended use of the surplus property is to be and that this use is consistent with the objectives of the concern’s 8(a) business plan;
(ii) That it will use the property to be acquired in the normal conduct of its business activities or be liable for the fair rental value from the date of its receipt;

(iii) That it will not sell or transfer the property to be acquired to any party other than the Federal Government during its term of participation in the 8(a) program and for one year after it leaves the program;

(iv) That, at its own expense, it will return the property to a SASP or transfer it to another Participant if directed to do so by SBA because it has not used the property as intended within one year of receipt;

(v) That, should it breach its agreement not to sell or transfer the property, it will be liable to the Government for the established fair market value or the sale price, whichever is greater, of the property sold or transferred; and

(vi) That it will give SBA access to inspect the property and all records pertaining to it.

(2) A firm receiving surplus property pursuant to this section assumes all liability associated with or stemming from the use of the property.

(3) If the property is not placed in use for the purposes for which it was intended within one year of its receipt, SBA may direct the concern to deliver the property to another Participant or to the SASP from which it was acquired.

(4) Failure to comply with any of the commitments made under paragraph (c)(1) of this section constitutes a basis for termination from the 8(a) program.

(d) Procedures for acquiring Federal Government surplus property. (1) Participants may participate in the surplus property distribution program administered by the SASPs to the same extent, but with no special priority over, other authorized transferees. See 41 CFR subpart 101–44.2.

(2) Each Participant seeking to acquire Federal Government surplus property from a SASP must:

(i) Certify in writing to the SASP that it is eligible to receive the property pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section;

(ii) Make the written representations and agreement required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section; and

(iii) Identify to the SASP its servicing SBA field office.

(3) Upon receipt of the required certification, representations, agreement, and information set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the SASP must contact the appropriate SBA field office and obtain SBA’s verification that the concern seeking to acquire the surplus property is eligible, and that the identified use of the property is consistent with the concern’s business activities. SASPs may not release property to a Participant without this verification.

(4) The SASP and the Participant must agree on and record the fair market value of the surplus property at the time of the transfer to the Participant. The SASP must provide to SBA a written record, including the agreed upon fair market value, of each transaction to a Participant when any property has been transferred.

(e) Costs. Participants acquiring surplus property from a SASP must pay a service fee to the SASP which is equal to the SASP’s direct costs of locating, inspecting, and transporting the surplus property. If a Participant elects to incur the responsibility and the expense for transporting the acquired property, the concern may do so and no transportation costs will be charged by the SASP. In addition, the SASP may charge a reasonable fee to cover its costs of administering the program. In no instance will any SASP charge a Participant more for any service than their established fees charged to other transferees.

(f) Title. The title to surplus property acquired from a SASP will pass to the Participant when the Participant executes the applicable SASP distribution documents and takes possession of the property.

(g) Compliance. (1) SBA will periodically review whether Participants that have received surplus property have used and maintained the property as agreed. This review may include site visits to visually inspect the property to ensure that it is being used in a manner consistent with the terms of its transfer.
(2) Participants must provide SBA with access to all relevant records upon request.

(3) Where SBA receives credible information that transferred surplus property may have been disposed of or otherwise used in a manner that is not consistent with the terms of the transfer, SBA may investigate such claim to determine its validity.

(4) SBA may take any action to correct any noncompliance involving the use of transferred property still in possession of the Participant or to enforce any terms, conditions, reservations, or restrictions imposed on the property by the distribution document. Actions to enforce compliance, or which may be taken as a result of noncompliance, include the following:

(i) Requiring that the property be placed in proper use within a specified time;

(ii) Requiring that the property be transferred to another Participant having a need and use for the property, returned to the SASP serving the area where the property is located for distribution to another eligible transferee or to another SASP, or transferred through GSA to another Federal agency;

(iii) Recovery of the fair rental value of the property from the date of its receipt by the Participant; and

(iv) Initiation of proceedings to terminate the Participant from the 8(a) BD program.

(5) Where SBA finds that a recipient has sold or otherwise disposed of the acquired surplus property in violation of the agreement covering sale and disposal, the Participant is liable for the agreed upon fair market value of the property at the time of the transfer, or the sale price, whichever is greater. However, a Participant need not repay any amount where it can demonstrate to SBA’s satisfaction that the property is no longer useful for the purpose for which it was transferred and receives SBA’s prior written consent to transfer the property. For example, if a piece of equipment breaks down beyond repair, it may be disposed of without being subject to the repayment provision, so long as the concern receives SBA’s prior consent.

(6) Any funds received by SBA in enforcement of this section will be remitted promptly to the Treasury of the United States as miscellaneous receipts.

**Contractual Assistance**

§ 124.501 What general provisions apply to the award of 8(a) contracts?

(a) Pursuant to section 8(a) of the Small Business Act, SBA is authorized to enter into all types of contracts with other Federal agencies, including contracts to furnish equipment, supplies, services, leased real property, or materials to them or to perform construction work for them, and to contract the performance of these contracts to qualified Participants. Where practicable, simplified acquisition procedures should be used for 8(a) contracts at or below the simplified acquisition threshold. Where appropriate, SBA will delegate the contract execution function to procuring activities. In order to receive and retain a delegation of SBA’s contract execution and review functions, a procuring activity must report all 8(a) contract awards, modifications, and options to SBA.

(b) 8(a) contracts may either be sole source awards or awards won through competition with other Participants.

(c) Admission into the 8(a) BD program does not guarantee that a Participant will receive 8(a) contracts.

(d) A requirement for possible award may be identified by SBA, a particular Participant or the procuring activity itself. SBA will submit the capability statements provided to SBA annually under §124.403 to appropriate procuring activities for the purpose of matching requirements with Participants.

(e) Participants should market their capabilities to appropriate procuring activities to increase their prospects of receiving sole source 8(a) contracts.

(f) An 8(a) participant that identifies a requirement that appears suitable for award through the 8(a) BD program may request SBA to contact the procuring activity to request that the requirement be offered to the 8(a) BD program.

(g) A concern must be a current Participant in the 8(a) BD program at the
§ 124.502 How does an agency offer a procurement to SBA for award through the 8(a) BD program?

(a) A procuring activity contracting officer indicates his or her formal intent to award a procurement requirement as an 8(a) contract by submitting a written offering letter to SBA. The procuring activity may transmit the offering letter to SBA by electronic mail, if available, or by facsimile transmission, as well as by mail or commercial delivery service.

(b) Contracting officers must submit offering letters to the following locations:

(1) For competitive 8(a) requirements and those sole source requirements for which no specific Participant is nominated (i.e., open requirements) other than construction requirements, to the SBA district office serving the geographical area in which the procuring activity is located;

(2) For competitive and open construction requirements, to the SBA district office serving the geographical area in which the work is to be performed, or, in the case of such contracts to be performed overseas, to the Office of 8(a) BD located in SBA Headquarters;

(3) For sole source requirements offered on behalf of a specific Participant, to the SBA district office servicing that concern.

(c) An offering letter must contain the following information:

(1) A description of the work to be performed;

(2) The estimated period of performance;

(3) The SIC code that applies to the principal nature of the acquisition;

(4) The anticipated dollar value of the requirement, including options, if any;

(5) Any special restrictions or geographical limitations on the requirement;

(6) The location of the work to be performed for construction procurements;

(7) Any special capabilities or disciplines needed for contract performance;

(8) The type of contract to be awarded, such as firm fixed price, cost reimbursement, or time and materials;

(9) The acquisition history, if any, of the requirement;

(10) The names and addresses of any small business contractors which have performed on this requirement during the previous 24 months;

(11) A statement that prior to the offering no solicitation for the specific acquisition has been issued as a small business set-aside, or as a small disadvantaged business set-aside if applicable, and that no other public communication (such as a notice in the Commerce Business Daily) has been made showing the procuring activity’s clear intent to use any of these means of procurement;

(12) Identification of any specific Participant that the procuring activity contracting officer nominates for award of a sole source 8(a) contract, if appropriate, including a brief justification for the nomination, such as one of the following:

(i) The Participant, through its own efforts, marketed the requirement and caused it to be reserved for the 8(a) BD program; or

(ii) The acquisition is a follow-on or renewal contract and the nominated concern is the incumbent;

(13) Bonding requirements, if applicable;
§ 124.503 How does SBA accept a procurement for award through the 8(a) BD program?

(a) Acceptance of the requirement. Upon receipt of the procuring activity’s offer of a procurement requirement, SBA will determine whether it will accept the requirement for the 8(a) BD program. SBA’s decision whether to accept the requirement will be sent to the procuring activity in writing within 10 working days of receipt of the written offering letter if the contract is valued at more than the simplified acquisition threshold, and within two days of receipt of the offering letter if the contract is valued at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, unless SBA requests, and the procuring activity grants, an extension. SBA is not required to accept any particular procurement offered to the 8(a) BD program.

(1) Where SBA decides to accept an offering of a sole source 8(a) procurement, SBA will accept the offer both on behalf of the 8(a) BD program and in support of a specific Participant.

(2) Where SBA decides to accept an offering of a competitive 8(a) procurement, SBA will accept the offer on behalf of the 8(a) BD program.

(3) Where SBA has delegated its contract execution functions to a procuring activity, the procuring activity may assume that SBA accepts its offer for the 8(a) program if the procuring activity does not receive a reply to its offer within five days.

(4) In the case of procurement requirements valued at or below the Simplified Acquisition Procedures threshold:

(i) Where a procuring activity makes an offer to the 8(a) program on behalf of a specific Program Participant and does not receive a reply to its offer within two days, the procuring activity may assume the offer is accepted and proceed with award of an 8(a) contract;

(ii) Where SBA has delegated its 8(a) contract execution functions to an agency, SBA may authorize the procuring activity to award an 8(a) contract without requiring an offer and acceptance of the requirement for the 8(a) program. In such a case, the procuring activity must notify SBA of all 8(a) awards made under this authority.

(b) Verification of SIC code. As part of the acceptance process, SBA will verify the appropriateness of the SIC code designation assigned to the requirement by the procuring activity contracting officer.

(1) SBA will accept the SIC code assigned to the requirement by the procuring activity contracting officer as long as it is reasonable, even though other SIC codes may also be reasonable.

(2) If SBA and the procuring activity are unable to agree as to the proper SIC code designation for the requirement, SBA may either refuse to accept the requirement for the 8(a) BD program, appeal the contracting officer’s determination to the head of the agency pursuant to §124.505, or appeal the SIC code designation to OHA under part 134 of this title.

(c) Sole source award where procuring activity nominates a specific Participant. SBA will determine whether an appropriate match exists where the procuring activity identifies a particular Participant for a sole source award.

(1) Once SBA determines that a procurement is suitable to be accepted as an 8(a) sole source contract, SBA will normally accept it on behalf of the
§124.503 [13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)]

Participant recommended by the procuring activity, provided that:

(i) The procurement is consistent with the Participant’s business plan;

(ii) The Participant complies with its applicable non-8(a) business activity target imposed by §124.509(d);

(iii) The Participant is small for the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the requirement by the procuring activity contracting officer; and

(iv) The Participant has submitted required financial statements to SBA.

(2) If an appropriate match exists, SBA will advise the procuring activity whether SBA will participate in contract negotiations or whether SBA will authorize the procuring activity to negotiate directly with the identified Participant. Where SBA has delegated its contract execution functions to a procuring activity, SBA will also identify that delegation in its acceptance letter.

(3) If an appropriate match does not exist, SBA will notify the Participant and the procuring activity, and may then nominate an alternate Participant.

(d) Open requirements. When a procuring activity does not nominate a particular concern for performance of a sole source 8(a) contract (open requirement), the following additional procedures will apply:

(1) If the procurement is a construction requirement, SBA will examine the portfolio of Participants that have a bona fide place of business within the geographical boundaries served by the SBA district office where the work is to be performed to select a qualified Participant. If none is found to be qualified or a match for a concern in that district is determined to be impossible or inappropriate, SBA may nominate a Participant with a bona fide place of business within the geographical boundaries served by another district office within the same state, or may nominate a Participant having a bona fide place of business out of state but within a reasonable proximity to the work site. SBA’s decision will ensure that the nominated Participant is close enough to the work site to keep costs of performance reasonable.

(2) If the procurement is not a construction requirement, SBA may select any eligible, responsible Participant nationally to perform the contract.

(3) In cases in which SBA selects a Participant for possible award from among two or more eligible and qualified Participants, the selection will be based upon relevant factors, including business development needs, compliance with competitive business mix requirements (if applicable), financial condition, management ability, technical capability, and whether award will promote the equitable distribution of 8(a) contracts.

(e) Formal technical evaluations. Except for requirements for architectural and engineering services, SBA will not authorize formal technical evaluations for sole source 8(a) requirements. A procuring activity:

(1) Must request that a procurement be a competitive 8(a) award if it requires formal technical evaluations of more than one Participant for a requirement below the applicable competitive threshold amount; and

(2) May conduct informal assessments of several Participants’ capabilities to perform a specific requirement, so long as the statement of work for the requirement is not released to any of the Participants being assessed.

(f) Repetitive acquisitions. A procuring activity contracting officer must submit a new offering letter to SBA where he or she intends to award a follow-on or repetitive contract as an 8(a) award. This enables SBA to determine:

(1) Whether the requirement should be a competitive 8(a) award;

(2) A nominated firm’s eligibility, whether or not it is the same firm that performed the previous contract;

(3) The affect that contract award would have on the equitable distribution of 8(a) contracts; and

(4) Whether the requirement should continue under the 8(a) BD program.

(g) Basic Ordering Agreements (BOAs). A Basic Ordering Agreement (BOA) is not a contract under the FAR. See 48 CFR 16.703(a). Each order to be issued under the BOA is an individual contract. As such, the procuring activity must offer, and SBA must accept, each task order under a BOA in addition to offering and accepting the BOA itself.
Small Business Administration § 124.504

§ 124.504 What circumstances limit SBA’s ability to accept a procurement for award as an 8(a) contract?

SBA will not accept a procurement for award as an 8(a) contract if the circumstances identified in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section exist.

(a) Reservation as small business or SDB set-aside. The procuring activity issued a solicitation for or otherwise expressed publicly a clear intent to reserve the procurement as a small business or small disadvantaged business (SDB) set-aside prior to offering the requirement to SBA for award as an 8(a) contract. The AA/8(a)BD may permit the acceptance of the requirement, however, under extraordinary circumstances.

Example to paragraph (a). SBA may accept a requirement where a procuring activity made a decision to offer the requirement to the 8(a) BD program before the solicitation was sent out and the procuring activity acknowledges and documents that the solicitation was in error.

(b) Competition prior to offer and acceptance. The procuring activity competed a requirement among Participants prior to offering the requirement to SBA and receiving SBA’s formal acceptance of the requirement.

(1) Any competition conducted without first obtaining SBA’s formal acceptance of the procurement for the 8(a) BD program will not be considered an 8(a) competitive requirement.

(2) SBA may accept the requirement for the 8(a) BD program as a competitive 8(a) requirement, but only if the procuring activity agrees to resolicit the requirement using appropriate competitive 8(a) procedures.

(c) Adverse impact. SBA has made a written determination that acceptance of the procurement for 8(a) award would have an adverse impact on an individual small business, a group of small businesses located in a specific geographical location, or other small business programs. The adverse impact concept is designed to protect small business concerns which are performing Government contracts awarded outside the 8(a) BD program, and does not apply to follow-on or renewal 8(a) acquisitions. SBA will not consider adverse impact with respect to any requirement offered to the 8(a) program.
§ 124.504 under Simplified Acquisition Procedures.

(1) In determining whether the acceptance of a requirement would have an adverse impact on an individual small business, SBA will consider all relevant factors.

(i) In connection with a specific small business, SBA presumes adverse impact to exist where:

(A) The small business concern has performed the specific requirement for at least 24 months;

(B) The small business is performing the requirement at the time it is offered to the 8(a) BD program, or its performance of the requirement ended within 30 days of the procuring activity’s offer of the requirement to the 8(a) BD program; and

(C) The dollar value of the requirement that the small business is or was performing is 25 percent or more of its most recent annual gross sales (including those of its affiliates). For a multi-year requirement, the dollar value of the last 12 months of the requirement will be used to determine whether a small business would be adversely affected by SBA’s acceptance.

(ii) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, adverse impact does not apply to “new” requirements. A new requirement is one which has not been previously procured by the relevant procuring activity.

(A) Where a requirement is new, no small business could have previously performed the requirement and, thus, SBA’s acceptance of the requirement for the 8(a) BD program will not adversely impact any small business.

(B) Construction contracts, by their very nature (e.g., the building of a specific structure), are deemed new requirements.

(C) The expansion or modification of an existing requirement will be considered a new requirement where the magnitude of change is significant enough to cause a price adjustment of at least 25 percent (adjusted for inflation) or to require significant additional or different types of capabilities or work.

(D) SBA need not perform an impact determination where a new requirement is offered to the 8(a) BD program.

(ii) In determining whether the acceptance of a requirement would have an adverse impact on a group of small businesses, SBA will consider the effects of combining or consolidating various requirements being performed by two or more small business concerns into a single contract which would be considered a “new” requirement as compared to any of the previous smaller requirements. SBA may find adverse impact to exist if one of the existing small business contractors meets the presumption set forth in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section.

(3) In determining whether the acceptance of a requirement would have an adverse impact on other small business programs, SBA will consider all relevant factors, including but not limited to, the number and value of contracts in the subject industry reserved for the 8(a) BD program as compared with other small business programs.

(d) Benchmark achievement. Where actual participation by disadvantaged businesses in a SIC Major Group exceeds the benchmark limitations established by the Department of Commerce for that Major Group, SBA may elect not to accept a requirement having a SIC code within the Major Group that is offered to SBA for award as an 8(a) contract. In determining whether to accept a requirement in such a case, SBA will consider the developmental needs of Participants and other anticipated contracting opportunities available to them.

(e) Release for non-8(a) competition. In limited instances, SBA may decline to accept the offer of a follow-on or renewal 8(a) acquisition to give a concern previously awarded the contract that is leaving or has left the 8(a) BD program the opportunity to compete for the requirement outside the 8(a) BD program.

(1) SBA will consider release only where:

(i) The procurement awarded through the 8(a) BD program is being or was performed by either a Participant whose program term will expire prior to contract completion, or, by a former Participant whose program term expired within one year of the date of the offering letter;

(ii) The concern requests in writing that SBA decline to accept the offer...
prior to SBA’s acceptance of the requirement for award as an 8(a) contract; and

(iii) The concern qualifies as a small business for the requirement now offered to the 8(a) BD program.

(2) In considering release, SBA will balance the importance of the requirement to the concern’s business development needs against the business development needs of other Participants that are qualified to perform the requirement. This determination will include consideration of whether rejection of the requirement would seriously reduce the pool of similar types of contracts available for award as 8(a) contracts. SBA will seek the views of the procuring activity.

(3) If SBA declines to accept the offer and releases the requirement, it will recommend to the procuring activity that the requirement be procured as a small business or, if authorized, an SDB set-aside.

§ 124.505 When will SBA appeal the terms or conditions of a particular 8(a) contract or a procuring activity decision not to reserve a requirement for the 8(a) BD program?

(a) What SBA may appeal. The Administrator of SBA may appeal the following matters to the head of the procuring agency:

(1) A contracting officer’s decision not to make a particular procurement available for award as an 8(a) contract;

(2) A contracting officer’s decision to reject a specific Participant for award of an 8(a) contract after SBA’s acceptance of the requirement for the 8(a) BD program; and

(3) The terms and conditions of a proposed 8(a) contract, including the procuring activity’s SIC code designation and estimate of the fair market price.

(b) Procedures for appeal. (1) SBA must notify the contracting officer of the SBA Administrator’s intent to appeal an adverse decision within 5 working days of SBA’s receipt of the decision.

(2) Upon receipt of the notice of intent to appeal, the procuring activity must suspend further action regarding the procurement until the head of the procuring agency issues a written decision on the appeal, unless the head of the procuring agency makes a written determination that urgent and compelling circumstances which significantly affect interests of the United States will not permit waiting for a consideration of the appeal.

(3) The SBA Administrator must send a written appeal of the adverse decision to the head of the procuring agency within 15 working days of SBA’s notification of intent to appeal or the appeal may be considered withdrawn.

(4) By statute (15 U.S.C. 637(a)(1)(A)), the procuring agency head must specify in writing the reasons for a denial of an appeal brought by the Administrator under this section.

§ 124.506 At what dollar threshold must an 8(a) procurement be competed among eligible Participants?

(a) Competitive thresholds. (1) A procurement offered and accepted for the 8(a) BD program must be competed among eligible Participants if:

(i) There is a reasonable expectation that at least two eligible Participants will submit offers at a fair market price;

(ii) The anticipated award price of the contract, including options, will exceed $5,000,000 for contracts assigned manufacturing SIC codes and $3,000,000 for all other contracts; and

(iii) The requirement has not been accepted by SBA for award as a sole source 8(a) procurement on behalf of a tribally-owned or ANC-owned concern.

(2) For all types of contracts, the applicable competitive threshold amounts will be applied to the procuring activity estimate of the total value of the contract, including all options. For indefinite delivery or indefinite quantity type contracts, the thresholds are applied to the maximum order amount authorized.

(3) Where the estimate of the total value of a proposed 8(a) contract is less than the applicable competitive threshold amount and the requirement is accepted as a sole source requirement on that basis, award may be made even though the contract price arrived at through negotiations exceeds the competitive threshold, provided that the contract price is not
§ 124.507 What procedures apply to competitive 8(a) procurements?

(a) FAR procedures. Procuring activities will conduct competitions among and evaluate offers received from Participants in accordance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation (48 CFR, chapter 1).

(b) Eligibility determination by SBA. In either a negotiated or sealed bid competitive 8(a) acquisition, the procuring activity will request that the SBA district office servicing the apparent successful offeror determine that firm’s eligibility for award.

(1) Within 5 working days after receipt of a procuring activity’s request for an eligibility determination, SBA will determine whether the firm identified by the procuring activity is eligible for award.

(2) Eligibility is based on 8(a) BD program criteria, including whether the Participant is:

   (i) A small business under the SIC code assigned to the requirement;
   (ii) In compliance with any applicable competitive business mix target established or remedial measure imposed by §124.509 that does not include the denial of future 8(a) contracts;
   (iii) In the developmental stage of program participation if the solicitation restricts offerors to the developmental stage of participation; and
   (iv) A concern with a bona fide place of business in the applicable geographic area if the procurement is for construction.

(3) If SBA determines that the apparent successful offeror is ineligible, SBA will notify the procuring activity. The procuring activity will then send to
§ 124.509 How is an 8(a) contract executed?

(a) An 8(a) contract can be awarded in the following ways:

(1) As a tripartite agreement in which the procuring activity, SBA and the Participant all sign the appropriate contract documents. There may be separate prime and subcontract documents (i.e., a prime contract between the procuring activity and SBA and a subcontract between SBA and the selected 8(a) concern) or a combined contract document representing both the prime and subcontract relationships; or

(2) Where SBA has delegated contract execution authority to the procuring activity, directly by the procuring activity through a contract between the procuring activity and the Participant.

(b) Where SBA receives a contract for signature valued at or below the simplified acquisition threshold, it will sign the contract and return it to the procuring activity within three (3) days of receipt.

(c) In order to be eligible to receive a sole source 8(a) contract, a firm must be a current Participant on the date of award. (See §124.507(d) for competitive 8(a) awards.)

§ 124.509 What are non-8(a) business activity targets?

(a) General. (1) To ensure that Participants do not develop an unreasonable reliance on 8(a) awards, and to ease their transition into the competitive marketplace after graduating from the 8(a) BD program. Participants must make maximum efforts to obtain business outside the 8(a) BD program.

SBA the identity of the next highest evaluated firm for an eligibility determination. The process is repeated until SBA determines that an identified offeror is eligible for award.

(4) Except to the extent set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, SBA determines whether a Participant is eligible for a specific 8(a) competitive requirement as of the date that the Participant submitted its initial offer which includes price.

(5) If the procuring activity contracting officer believes that the apparent successful offeror is not responsible to perform the contract, he or she must refer the concern to SBA for a possible Certificate of Competency in accord with §125.5 of this title.

(c) Restricted competition. (1) Competition within stages of program participation. SBA may accept a competitive 8(a) requirement that is limited to Participants in developmental stage of program participation, or may accept a requirement to be competed among firms both in the developmental and transitional stages of program participation.

(2) Construction competitions. Based on its knowledge of the 8(a) BD portfolio, SBA will determine whether a competitive 8(a) construction requirement should be competed among only those Participants having a bona fide place of business within the geographical boundaries of one or more SBA district offices, within a state, or within the state and nearby areas. Only those Participants with bona fide places of business within the appropriate geographical boundaries are eligible to submit offers.

(3) Competition for all non-construction requirements. Except for construction requirements, all eligible Participants regardless of location may submit offers in response to competitive 8(a) solicitations. The only geographic restrictions pertaining to 8(a) competitive requirements, other than those for construction requirements, are any imposed by the solicitations themselves.

(d) Award to firms whose program terms have expired. A concern that has completed its term of participation in the 8(a) BD program may be awarded a competitive 8(a) contract if it was a Participant eligible for award of the contract on the initial date specified for receipt of offers contained in the contract solicitation, and if it continues to meet all other applicable eligibility criteria.

(1) Amendments to the solicitation extending the date for submissions of offers will be disregarded.

(2) For a negotiated procurement, a Participant may submit revised offers, including a best and final offer, and be awarded a competitive 8(a) contract if it was eligible as of the initial date specified for the receipt of offers in the solicitation, even though its program term may expire after that date.
§ 124.509  13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)

(2) During both the developmental and transitional stages of the 8(a) BD program, a Participant must make substantial and sustained efforts, including following a reasonable marketing strategy, to attain the targeted dollar levels of non-8(a) revenue established in its business plan. It must attempt to use the 8(a) BD program as a resource to strengthen the firm for economic viability when program benefits are no longer available.

(b) Required non-8(a) business activity targets during transitional stage. (1) General. During the transitional stage of the 8(a) BD program, a Participant must achieve certain targets of non-8(a) contract revenue (i.e., revenue from other than sole source or competitive 8(a) contracts). These targets are called non-8(a) business activity targets and are expressed as a percentage of total revenue. The targets call for an increase in non-8(a) revenue over time.

(2) Non-8(a) business activity targets. During their transitional stage of program participation, Participants must meet the following non-8(a) business activity targets each year:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participant’s year in the transitional stage</th>
<th>Non-8(a) business activity targets (required minimum non-8(a) revenue as a percentage of total revenue)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Reporting and verification of business activity. (1) Once admitted to the 8(a) BD program, a Participant must provide to SBA as part of its annual review:

(i) Annual financial statements with a breakdown of 8(a) and non-8(a) revenue in accord with §124.602; and

(ii) An annual report within 30 days from the end of the program year of all non-8(a) contracts, options, and modifications affecting price executed during the program year.

(2) At the end of each year of participation in the transitional stage, the BOS assigned to work with the Participant will review the Participant’s total revenues to determine whether the non-8(a) revenues have met the applicable target. In determining compliance, SBA will compare all 8(a) revenues received during the year, including those from options and modifications, to all non-8(a) revenues received during the year.

(d) Consequences of not meeting competitive business mix targets. (1) Except as set forth in paragraph (e) of this section, beginning at the end of the first year in the transitional stage (the fifth year of participation in the 8(a) BD program), any firm that does not meet its applicable competitive business mix target for the just completed program year will be ineligible for sole source 8(a) contracts in the current program year, unless and until the Participant corrects the situation as described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(2) If SBA determines that an 8(a) Participant has failed to meet its applicable competitive business mix target during any program year in the transitional stage of program participation, SBA may increase its monitoring of the Participant’s contracting activity during the ensuing program
Small Business Administration § 124.509

year. SBA will also notify the Participant in writing that the Participant will not be eligible for further 8(a) sole source contract awards until it has demonstrated to SBA that it has complied with its non-8(a) business activity requirements as described in paragraphs (d)(2)(i) and (d)(2)(ii) of this section. In order for a Participant to come into compliance with the non-8(a) business activity target and be eligible for further 8(a) sole source contracts, it may:

(i) Wait until the end of the current program year and demonstrate to SBA as part of the normal annual review process that it has met the revised non-8(a) business activity target; or

(ii) At its option, submit information regarding its non-8(a) revenue to SBA quarterly throughout the current program year in an attempt to come into compliance before the end of the current program year. If the Participant satisfies the requirements of paragraphs (d)(2)(ii)(A) or (d)(2)(ii)(B) of this section, SBA will reinstate the Participant’s ability to get sole source 8(a) contracts prior to its annual review.

(A) To qualify for reinstatement during the first six months of the current program year (i.e., at either the first or second quarterly review), the Participant must demonstrate that it has received non-8(a) revenue and new 8(a) contract awards that are equal to or greater than the dollar amount by which it failed to meet its non-8(a) business activity target for the just completed program year. For this purpose, SBA will not count options on existing non-8(a) contracts in determining whether a Participant has received new non-8(a) contract awards.

(B) To qualify for reinstatement during the last six months of the current program year (i.e., at either the nine-month or one year review), the Participant must demonstrate that it has achieved its non-8(a) business activity target as of that point in the current program year.

Example 1 to paragraph (d)(2). Firm A had $10 million in total revenue during year 2 in the transitional stage (year 6 in the program), but failed to meet the minimum non-8(a) business activity target of 25 percent. It had 8(a) revenues of $8.5 million and non-8(a) revenues of $1.5 million (15 percent). Based on total revenues of $10 million, Firm A should have had at least $2.5 million in non-8(a) revenues. Thus, Firm A missed its target by $1 million (its target ($2.5 million) minus its actual non-8(a) revenues ($1.5 million)). Because Firm A did not achieve its non-8(a) business activity target, it cannot receive 8(a) sole source awards until correcting that situation. The firm may wait until the next annual review to establish that it has met the revised target, or it can choose to report contract awards and other non-8(a) revenue to SBA quarterly. Firm A elects to submit information to SBA quarterly in year 3 of the transitional stage (year 7 in the program). In order to be eligible for sole source 8(a) contracts after either its 3 month or 6 month review, Firm A must show that it has received non-8(a) revenue and/or been awarded new non-8(a) contracts totaling $1 million (the amount by which it missed its target in year 2 of the transitional stage).

Example 2 to paragraph (d)(2). Firm B had $15 million in total revenue during year 2 in the transitional stage (year 6 in the program), of which $8.5 million were 8(a) revenues and $6.5 million were non-8(a) revenues. At its first two quarterly reviews during year 3 of the transitional stage (year 7 in the program), Firm B could not demonstrate that it had received at least $1 million in non-8(a) revenue and new 8(a) awards. In order to be eligible for sole source 8(a) contracts after its 9 month or 1 year review, Firm B must show that at least 35% (the non-8(a) business activity target for year 3 in the transitional stage) of all revenues received during year 3 in the transitional stage as of that point are from non-8(a) sources.

(3) In determining whether a Participant has achieved its required non-8(a) business activity target at the end of any program year in the transitional stage, or whether a Participant that failed to meet the target for the previous program year has achieved the required level of non-8(a) business at its nine-month review, SBA will measure 8(a) support by adding the base year value of all 8(a) contracts awarded during the applicable program year to the value of all options and modifications executed during that year.

(4) As a condition of eligibility for new 8(a) contracts, SBA may also impose other requirements on a Participant that fails to achieve the non-8(a) business activity targets. These include requiring the Participant to obtain management assistance, technical assistance, and/or counseling.
§ 124.510 Attend seminars relating to management assistance, business development, financing, marketing, accounting, or proposal preparation.

(5) SBA may initiate proceedings to terminate a Participant from the 8(a) BD program where the firm makes no good faith efforts to obtain non-8(a) revenues.

(e) Waiver of sole source prohibition. (1) The AA/8(a)BD, or his or her designee, may waive the requirement prohibiting a Participant from receiving further sole source 8(a) contracts when a Participant does not meet its non-8(a) business activity target where a denial of a sole source contract would cause severe economic hardship on the Participant so that the Participant’s survival may be jeopardized, or where extenuating circumstances beyond the Participant’s control caused the Participant not to meet its non-8(a) business activity target. The decision to grant or deny a request for a waiver is at SBA's discretion, and no appeal may be taken with respect to that decision.

(2) The SBA Administrator on a non-delegable basis may waive the requirement prohibiting a Participant from receiving further sole source 8(a) contracts when the Participant does not meet its non-8(a) business activity target where the head of a procuring activity represents to the SBA Administrator that award of a sole source 8(a) contract to the Participant is needed to achieve significant interests of the Government.

§ 124.510 What percentage of work must a Participant perform on an 8(a) contract?

(a) To assist the business development of Participants in the 8(a) BD program, an 8(a) contractor must perform certain percentages of work with its own employees. These percentages and the requirements relating to them are the same as those established for small business set-aside prime contractors, and are set forth in §125.6 of this title.

(b) A Participant must certify in its offer that it will meet the applicable percentage of work requirement. SBA will determine whether the firm will be in compliance as of the date of award of the contract for both sealed bid and negotiated procurements.

(c) Indefinite quantity contracts. (1) In order to ensure that the required percentage of costs on an indefinite quantity 8(a) award is performed by the Participant, the Participant must demonstrate semiannually that it has performed the required percentage to that date. For a service or supply contract, this does not mean that the Participant must perform 50 percent of the applicable costs for each task order with its own force, or that a Participant must have performed 50 percent of the applicable costs at any point in time during the contract’s life. Rather, the Participant must perform 50 percent of the applicable costs for the combined total of all task orders issued to date at six month intervals.

Example to paragraph (c)(1). Two task orders are issued under an 8(a) indefinite quantity service contract during the first six months of the contract. If $100,000 in personnel costs are incurred on the first task order, 90% of those costs ($90,000) are incurred for performance by the Participant’s own work force, and the second task order also requires $100,000 in personnel costs, the Participant would have to perform only 10 percent of the personnel costs on the second task order because it would still have performed 50% of the total personnel costs at the end of the six-month period ($100,000 out of $200,000).

(2) Where there is a guaranteed minimum condition in an indefinite quantity 8(a) award, the required performance of work percentage need not be met on task orders issued during the first six months of the contract. In such a case, however, the percentage of work that a Participant may further contract to other concerns during the first six months of the contract may not exceed 50 percent of the total guaranteed minimum dollar value to be provided by the contract. Once the guaranteed minimum amount is met, the general rule for indefinite quantity contracts set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

Example to paragraph (c)(2). Where a contract guarantees a minimum of $100,000 in professional services and the first task order is for $60,000 in such services, the Participant may perform as little as $10,000 of the personnel costs for that order. In such a case, however, the Participant must perform all of
§ 124.513 Under what circumstances can a joint venture be awarded an 8(a) contract?

(a) General. (1) If approved by SBA, a Participant may enter into a joint venture agreement with one or more other small business concerns, whether or not 8(a) Participants, for the purpose of performing a specific 8(a) contract.

(2) A joint venture agreement is permissible only where an 8(a) concern lacks the necessary capacity to perform the contract on its own, and the agreement is fair and equitable and will be of substantial benefit to the 8(a) concern. However, where SBA concludes that an 8(a) concern brings very
little to the joint venture relationship in terms of resources and expertise other than its 8(a) status, SBA will not approve the joint venture arrangement.

(b) Size of concerns to an 8(a) joint venture. (1) A joint venture of at least one 8(a) Participant and one or more other business concerns may submit an offer as a small business for a competitive 8(a) procurement so long as each concern is small under the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract, provided:

(i) The size of at least one 8(a) Participant to the joint venture is less than one half the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract; and

(ii)(A) For a procurement having a revenue-based size standard, the procurement exceeds half the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract; or

(B) For a procurement having an employee-based size standard, the procurement exceeds $10 million;

(2) For sole source and competitive 8(a) procurements that do not exceed the dollar levels identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, an 8(a) Participant entering into a joint venture agreement with another concern is considered to be affiliated for size purposes with the other concern with respect to performance of the 8(a) contract. The combined annual receipts or employees of the concerns entering into the joint venture must meet the size standard for the SIC code assigned to the 8(a) contract.

(3) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section, a joint venture between a protege firm and its approved mentor (see §124.520) will be deemed small provided the protege qualifies as small for the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the procurement and has not reached the dollar limit set forth in §124.519.

(c) Contents of joint venture agreement. Every joint venture agreement to perform an 8(a) contract, including those between mentors and proteges authorized by §124.520, must contain a provision:

(1) Setting forth the purpose of the joint venture;

(2) Designating an 8(a) Participant as the managing venturer of the joint venture, and an employee of the managing venturer as the project manager responsible for performance of the 8(a) contract;

(3) Stating that not less than 51 percent of the net profits earned by the joint venture will be distributed to the 8(a) Participant(s);

(4) Providing for the establishment and administration of a special bank account in the name of the joint venture. This account must require the signature of all parties to the joint venture or designees for withdrawal purposes. All payments due the joint venture for performance on an 8(a) contract will be deposited in the special account; all expenses incurred under the contract will be paid from the account as well;

(5) Itemizing all major equipment, facilities, and other resources to be furnished by each party to the joint venture, with a detailed schedule of cost or value of each;

(6) Specifying the responsibilities of the parties with regard to contract performance, source of labor and negotiation of the 8(a) contract;

(7) Obligating all parties to the joint venture to ensure performance of the 8(a) contract and to complete performance despite the withdrawal of any member;

(8) Designating that accounting and other administrative records relating to the joint venture be kept in the office of the managing venturer, unless approval to keep them elsewhere is granted by the District Director or his/her designee upon written request;

(9) Requiring the final original records be retained by the managing venturer upon completion of the 8(a) contract performed by the joint venture;

(10) Stating that quarterly financial statements showing cumulative contract receipts and expenditures (including salaries of the joint venture’s principals) must be submitted to SBA not later than 45 days after each operating quarter of the joint venture; and

(11) Stating that a project-end profit and loss statement, including a statement of final profit distribution, must
§ 124.515 Can a Participant change its ownership or control and continue to perform an 8(a) contract, and can it transfer performance to another firm?

(a) An 8(a) contract must be performed by the Participant that initially received it unless a waiver is granted under paragraph (b) of this section.

(1) An 8(a) contract, whether in the base or an option year, must be terminated for the convenience of the Government if:

(i) One or more of the individuals upon whom eligibility for the 8(a) BD program was based relinquishes or enters into any agreement to relinquish ownership or control of the Participant such that the Participant would no longer be controlled or at least 51% owned by disadvantaged individuals; or

(ii) The contract is transferred or novated for any reason to another firm.

(2) The procuring activity may not assess repurchase costs or other damages against the Participant due solely to the provisions of this section.

(b) The SBA Administrator may waive the requirements of paragraph (a)(1) of this section if requested to do so by the 8(a) contractor when:

(1) It is necessary for the owners of the concern to surrender partial control of such concern on a temporary basis in order to obtain equity financing;
§ 124.516  Who decides contract disputes arising between a Participant and a procuring activity after the award of an 8(a) contract?

For purposes of the Disputes Clause of a specific 8(a) contract, the contracting officer is that of the procuring activity. A dispute arising between an 8(a) contractor and the procuring activity contracting officer will be decided by the procuring activity, and appeals may be taken by the 8(a) contractor without SBA involvement.

§ 124.516  Who decides contract disputes arising between a Participant and a procuring activity after the award of an 8(a) contract?

For purposes of the Disputes Clause of a specific 8(a) contract, the contracting officer is that of the procuring activity. A dispute arising between an 8(a) contractor and the procuring activity contracting officer will be decided by the procuring activity, and appeals may be taken by the 8(a) contractor without SBA involvement.

§ 124.516  Who decides contract disputes arising between a Participant and a procuring activity after the award of an 8(a) contract?

For purposes of the Disputes Clause of a specific 8(a) contract, the contracting officer is that of the procuring activity. A dispute arising between an 8(a) contractor and the procuring activity contracting officer will be decided by the procuring activity, and appeals may be taken by the 8(a) contractor without SBA involvement.

§ 124.516  Who decides contract disputes arising between a Participant and a procuring activity after the award of an 8(a) contract?

For purposes of the Disputes Clause of a specific 8(a) contract, the contracting officer is that of the procuring activity. A dispute arising between an 8(a) contractor and the procuring activity contracting officer will be decided by the procuring activity, and appeals may be taken by the 8(a) contractor without SBA involvement.

§ 124.516  Who decides contract disputes arising between a Participant and a procuring activity after the award of an 8(a) contract?

For purposes of the Disputes Clause of a specific 8(a) contract, the contracting officer is that of the procuring activity. A dispute arising between an 8(a) contractor and the procuring activity contracting officer will be decided by the procuring activity, and appeals may be taken by the 8(a) contractor without SBA involvement.

§ 124.516  Who decides contract disputes arising between a Participant and a procuring activity after the award of an 8(a) contract?

For purposes of the Disputes Clause of a specific 8(a) contract, the contracting officer is that of the procuring activity. A dispute arising between an 8(a) contractor and the procuring activity contracting officer will be decided by the procuring activity, and appeals may be taken by the 8(a) contractor without SBA involvement.
§ 124.519 Are there any dollar limits on the amount of 8(a) contracts that a Participant may receive?

(a) A Participant (other than one owned by an Indian tribe or an ANC) may not receive sole source 8(a) contract awards where it has received a combined total of competitive and sole source 8(a) contracts in excess of the dollar amount set forth in this section during its participation in the 8(a) BD program.

1. For a firm having a revenue-based primary SIC code at time of program entry, the limit above which it can no longer receive sole source 8(a) contracts is five times the size standard corresponding to that SIC code as of...
§ 124.520 Mentor/protege program.

(a) General. The mentor/protege program is designed to encourage approved mentors to provide various forms of assistance to eligible Participants. This assistance may include technical and/or management assistance; financial assistance in the form of equity investments and/or loans; subcontracts; and/or assistance in performing prime contracts with the Government in the form of joint venture arrangements. The purpose of the mentor/protege relationship is to enhance the capabilities of the protege and to improve its ability to successfully compete for contracts.

(b) Mentors. Any concern that demonstrates a commitment and the ability to assist developing 8(a) Participants may act as a mentor and receive benefits as set forth in this section. This includes businesses that have graduated from the 8(a) BD program, firms that are in the transitional stage of program participation, other small businesses, and large businesses.

(1) In order to qualify as a mentor, a concern must demonstrate that it:
   (i) Possesses favorable financial health, including profitability for at least the last two years;
   (ii) Possesses good character;
   (iii) Does not appear on the federal list of debarred or suspended contractors; and
   (iv) Can impart value to a protege firm due to lessons learned and practical experience gained because of the 8(a) BD program, or through its general knowledge of government contracting.

(2) Generally, a mentor will have no more than one protege at a time. However, the AA/8(a)BD may authorize a concern to mentor more than one protege at a time where the concern can demonstrate that the additional mentor/protege relationship will not adversely affect the development of either protege firm (e.g., the second firm cannot be a competitor of the first firm).

(3) In order to demonstrate its favorable financial health, a firm seeking to be a mentor must submit its federal tax returns for the last two years to SBA for review.

(4) Once approved, a mentor must annually certify that it continues to possess good character and a favorable financial position.

(c) Proteges. (1) In order to initially qualify as a protege firm, a Participant must:
   (i) Be in the developmental stage of program participation;
§ 124.520

(ii) Have never received an 8(a) contract; or

(ii) Have a size that is less than half the size standard corresponding to its primary SIC code.

(2) Only firms that are in good standing in the 8(a) BD program (e.g., firms that do not have termination or suspension proceedings against them, and are up to date with all reporting requirements) may qualify as a protege.

(3) A protege firm may have only one mentor at a time.

(d) Benefits.

(1) A mentor and protege may joint venture as a small business for any government procurement, including procurements less than half the size standard corresponding to the assigned SIC code and 8(a) sole source contracts, provided both the mentor and the protege qualify as small for the procurement and, for purposes of 8(a) sole source requirements, the protege has not reached the dollar limit set forth in § 124.519.

(2) Notwithstanding the requirements set forth in §§ 124.105(g) and (h), in order to raise capital for the protege firm, the mentor may own an equity interest of up to 40% in the protege firm.

(3) Notwithstanding the mentor/protege relationship, a protege firm may qualify for other assistance as a small business, including SBA financial assistance.

(4) No determination of affiliation or control may be found between a protege firm and its mentor based on the mentor/protege agreement or any assistance provided pursuant to the agreement.

(e) Written agreement.

(1) The mentor and protege firms must enter a written agreement setting forth an assessment of the protege’s needs and describing the assistance the mentor commits to provide to address those needs (e.g., management and/or technical assistance, loans and/or equity investments, cooperation on joint venture projects, or subcontracts under prime contracts being performed by the mentor). The agreement must also provide that the mentor will provide such assistance to the protege firm for at least one year.

(2) The written agreement must be approved by the AA/8(a)BD. The agreement will not be approved if SBA determines that the assistance to be provided is not sufficient to promote any real developmental gains to the protege, or if SBA determines that the agreement is merely a vehicle to enable a non-8(a) participant to receive 8(a) contracts.

(3) The agreement must provide that either the protege or the mentor may terminate the agreement with 30 days advance notice to the other party to the mentor/protege relationship and to SBA.

(4) SBA will review the mentor/protege relationship annually to determine whether to approve its continuation for another year.

(5) SBA must approve all changes to a mentor/protege agreement in advance.

(f) Evaluating the mentor/protege relationship.

(1) In its annual business plan update required by § 124.403(a,) the protege must report to SBA for the protege’s preceding program year:

(i) All technical and/or management assistance provided by the mentor to the protege;

(ii) All loans to and/or equity investments made by the mentor in the protege;

(iii) All subcontracts awarded to the protege by the mentor, and the value of each subcontract;

(iv) All federal contracts awarded to the mentor/protege relationship as a joint venture (designating each as an 8(a), small business set aside, or unrestricted procurement), the value of each contract, and the percentage of the contract performed and the percentage of revenue accruing to each party to the joint venture; and

(v) A narrative describing the success such assistance has had in addressing the developmental needs of the protege and addressing any problems encountered.

(2) The protege must annually certify to SBA whether there has been any change in the terms of the agreement.

(3) SBA will review the protege’s report on the mentor/protege relationship as part of its annual review of the firm’s business plan pursuant to § 124.403. SBA may decide not to approve continuation of the agreement if it finds that the mentor has not provided the assistance set forth in the mentor/protege agreement or that the
§ 124.601 Miscellaneous Reporting Requirements

§ 124.601 What reports does SBA require concerning parties who assist Participants in obtaining federal contracts?

(a) Each Participant must submit annually a written report to its assigned BOS that includes a listing of any agents, representatives, attorneys, accountants, consultants and other parties (other than employees) receiving fees, commissions, or compensation of any kind to assist such participant in obtaining a Federal contract. The listing must indicate the amount of compensation paid and a description of the activities performed for such compensation.

(b) Failure to submit the report is good cause for the initiation of a termination proceeding pursuant to §§ 124.303 and 124.304.

§ 124.602 What kind of annual financial statement must a Participant submit to SBA?

(a) Participants with gross annual receipts of more than $5,000,000 must submit to SBA audited annual financial statements prepared by a licensed independent public accountant within 120 days after the close of the concern’s fiscal year.

(1) The servicing SBA District Director may waive the requirement for audited financial statements for good cause shown by the Participant.

(2) Circumstances where waivers of audited financial statements may be granted include, but are not limited to, the following:

(i) The concern has an unexpected increase in sales towards the end of its fiscal year that creates an unforeseen requirement for audited statements;

(ii) The concern unexpectedly experiences severe financial difficulties which would make the cost of audited financial statements a particular burden; and

(iii) The concern has been a Participant less than 12 months.

(b) Participants with gross annual receipts between $1,000,000 and $5,000,000 must submit to SBA reviewed annual financial statements prepared by a licensed independent public accountant within 90 days after the close of the concern’s fiscal year.

(c) Participants with gross annual receipts of less than $1,000,000 must submit to SBA an annual statement prepared in-house or a compilation statement prepared by a licensed independent public accountant, verified as to accuracy by an authorized officer, partner, limited liability member, or sole proprietor of the Participant, including signature and date, within 90 days after the close of the concern’s fiscal year.

(d) Any audited or reviewed financial statements submitted to SBA pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section must be prepared in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles.

(e) While financial statements need not be submitted until 90 or 120 days after the close of a Participant’s fiscal year, depending on the receipts of the concern, a Participant seeking to be awarded an 8(a) contract between the close of its fiscal year and such 90 or 120-day time period must submit a final sales report signed by the CEO or President to SBA in order for SBA to determine the concern’s eligibility for the 8(a) contract. This report must show a breakdown of 8(a) and non-8(a) sales.

(f) Notwithstanding the amount of a Participant’s gross annual receipts, SBA may require audited or reviewed statements whenever they are needed to obtain more complete information as to a concern’s assets, liabilities, income or expenses, such as when the concern’s capacity to perform a specific 8(a) contract must be determined, or when they are needed to determine continued program eligibility.

§ 124.603 What reports regarding the continued business operations of former Participants does SBA require?

Former Participants must provide such information as SBA may request concerning the former Participant’s continued business operations, contracts, and financial condition for a period of three years following the date
on which the concern graduates or is terminated from the program. Failure to provide such information when requested will constitute a violation of the regulations set forth in this part, and may result in the nonexercise of options on or termination of contracts awarded through the 8(a) BD program, debarment, or other legal recourse.

MANAGEMENT AND TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

§ 124.701 What is the purpose of the 7(j) management and technical assistance program?

Section 7(j)(1) of the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 636(j)(1), authorizes SBA to enter into grants, cooperative agreements, or contracts with public or private organizations to pay all or part of the cost of technical or management assistance for individuals or concerns eligible for assistance under sections 7(a)(11), 7(j)(10), or 8(a) of the Small Business Act.

§ 124.702 What types of assistance are available through the 7(j) program?

Through its private sector service providers, SBA may provide a wide variety of management and technical assistance to eligible individuals or concerns to meet their specific needs, including:

(a) Counseling and training in the areas of financing, management, accounting, bookkeeping, marketing, and operation of small business concerns; and

(b) The identification and development of new business opportunities.

§ 124.703 Who is eligible to receive 7(j) assistance?

The following businesses are eligible to receive assistance from SBA through its service providers:

(a) Businesses which qualify as small under part 121 of this title, and which are located in urban or rural areas with a high proportion of unemployed or low-income individuals, or which are owned by such low-income individuals; and

(b) Businesses eligible to receive 8(a) contracts.

§ 124.704 What additional management and technical assistance is reserved exclusively for concerns eligible to receive 8(a) contracts?

In addition to the management and technical assistance available under §124.702, Section 7(j)(10) of the Small Business Act authorizes SBA to provide additional management and technical assistance through its service providers exclusively to small business concerns eligible to receive 8(a) contracts, including:

(a) Assistance to develop comprehensive business plans with specific business targets, objectives, and goals;

(b) Other nonfinancial services necessary for a Participant’s growth and development, including loan packaging; and

(c) Assistance in obtaining equity and debt financing.

Subpart B—Eligibility, Certification, and Protests Relating to Federal Small Disadvantaged Business Programs

SOURCE: 63 FR 35772, June 30, 1998, unless otherwise noted.

§ 124.1001 General applicability.

(a) This subpart defines a Small Disadvantaged Business (SDB). It also sets forth procedures by which a firm can apply to be recognized as an SDB, including procedures to be used by private sector entities approved by SBA for determining whether a particular concern is owned and controlled by one or more disadvantaged individuals or Alaska Native Corporations (ANCs), Community Development Corporations (CDCs), Indian tribes (tribes) or Native Hawaiian Organizations (NHOs). Finally, this subpart establishes procedures by which SBA determines whether a particular concern qualifies as an SDB in response to a protest challenging the concern’s status as disadvantaged. Unless specifically stated otherwise, the phrase “socially and economically disadvantaged individuals” in this subpart includes tribes, ANC, CDC, and NHOs.

(b) Only small firms that are owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals
§ 124.1002  What is a Small Disadvantaged Business (SDB)?

(a) Reliance on 8(a) criteria. In determining whether a firm qualifies as an SDB, the criteria of social and economic disadvantage and other eligibility requirements established in subpart A of this part apply, including the requirements of ownership and control and disadvantaged status, unless otherwise provided in this subpart. Qualified Private Certifiers must use the 8(a) criteria applicable to ownership and control in determining whether a particular firm is actually owned and controlled by one or more individuals claiming disadvantaged status.

(b) SDB eligibility criteria. A small disadvantaged business (SDB) is a concern:

(1) Which qualifies as small under part 121 of this title for the size standard corresponding to the applicable four digit Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) code.

(2) Which is at least 51 percent unconditionally owned by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals as set forth in §124.105. For the requirements relating to tribes and ANCs, NHOs, or CDCs, see §§124.109, 124.110, and 124.111, respectively.

(3) Except for tribes, ANCs, NHOs, and CDCs, whose management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals. For the requirements relating to tribes and ANCs, NHOs, or CDCs, see §§124.109, 124.110, and 124.111, respectively.

(4) Which, for purposes of SDB procurement mechanisms authorized by 10 U.S.C. 2323 (such as price evaluation adjustments, evaluation factors or subfactors, monetary subcontracting incentives, or SDB set-asides) relating to the Department of Defense, NASA and the Coast Guard only, has the majority of its earnings accruing directly to the socially and economically disadvantaged individuals.

(c) Disadvantaged status. In assessing the personal financial condition of an individual claiming economic disadvantage, his or her net worth must be less than $750,000 after taking into account the exclusions set forth in §124.104(c)(2).

(d) Additional eligibility criteria. Except for tribes, ANCs, CDCs and NHOs, each individual claiming disadvantaged status must be a citizen of the United States.

(e) Potential for success not required. The potential for success requirement set forth in §124.107 does not apply as an eligibility requirement for an SDB.

(f) Joint ventures. Joint ventures are permitted for SDB procurement mechanisms (such as price evaluation adjustments, evaluation factors or subfactors, monetary subcontracting incentives, or SDB set-asides), provided that the requirements set forth in this paragraph are met.

(1) The disadvantaged participant(s) to the joint venture must have:

(i) Received an SDB certification from SBA; or

(ii) Submitted an application for SDB certification to SBA or a Private Certifier, and must not have received a negative determination regarding that application.
Small Business Administration

§ 124.1004

(2) For purposes of this paragraph, the term joint venture means two or more concerns forming an association to engage in and carry out a single, specific business venture for joint profit. Two or more concerns that form an ongoing relationship to conduct business would not be considered “joint venturers” within the meaning of this paragraph, and would also not be eligible to be certified as an SDB. The entity created by such a relationship would not be owned and controlled by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals. Each contract for which a joint venture submits an offer will be evaluated on a case by case basis.

(3) Except as set forth in 13 CFR §121.103(f)(3), a concern that is owned and controlled by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals entering into a joint venture agreement with one or more other business concerns is considered to be affiliated with such other concern(s) for size purposes. If the exception does not apply, the combined annual receipts or employees of the concerns entering into the joint venture must meet the applicable size standard corresponding to the SIC code designated for the contract.

(4) An SDB must be the managing venturer of the joint venture, and an employee of the managing venturer must be the project manager responsible for performance of the contract.

§ 124.1003 What is a Private Certifier?

A Private Certifier is an organization or business concern approved by SBA to determine whether firms are owned and controlled by one or more individuals claiming disadvantaged status. SBA may elect to arrange for one or more Private Certifiers to perform certain functions in the SDB Certification process. When that election is made, the provisions of §§124.1004 through 124.1007 will apply. SBA will establish more detailed standards regarding qualifications, monitoring, procedures and use, if any, of Private Certifiers in specific contracts or agreements between SBA and the Private Certifiers.

§ 124.1004 How does an organization or business concern become a Private Certifier?

(a) SBA may execute contracts or agreements with organizations or business concerns seeking to become Private Certifiers. Any such contract or agreement will include provisions for the oversight, monitoring, and evaluation of all certification activities by SBA.

(b) The organization or business concern must demonstrate a knowledge of SBA’s regulations regarding ownership and control, as well as business organizations and the legal principles affecting their ownership and control generally, including stock issuances, voting rights, convertability of debt to equity, options, and powers and responsibilities of officers and directors, general and limited partners, and limited liability members.

(c) The organization or concern must also, along with its principals, demonstrate good character. Good character does not exist for these purposes if the organization or concern or any of its principals:

(1) Is debarred or suspended under any Federal procurement or non-procurement debarment and suspension regulations; or

(2) Has been indicted or convicted for any criminal offense or suffered a civil judgment indicating a lack of business integrity.

(d) As a condition of approval, SBA may require that appropriate officers and/or key employees of the concern attend a training session on SBA’s rules and requirements.

(e) An organization or concern seeking to become a Private Certifier must agree to provide access to SBA of its books and records when requested, including records pertaining to its certification activities. Once SBA approves the organization or concern to be a Private Certifier, SBA may review
this information, as well as the decisions of the Private Certifier, in determining whether it will renew or extend the term of the Private Certifier, or terminate the Private Certifier for cause.

(f) SBA will include in any contract or agreement document authorizing an entity to act as a Private Certifier appropriate conditions to prohibit conflicts of interests between the Private Certifier and the firms for which it processes SDB applications and to protect the integrity of the decision-making process.

§ 124.1005 Can a fee be charged to a firm to process the firm’s application for SDB certification?

(a) With SBA’s approval, a Private Certifier may charge a reasonable fee to a firm in order to screen the firm’s application for completeness and to process a determination of ownership and control. The fee must be for actual services rendered and must not be related to whether or not the business concern is found to be owned and controlled by one or more individuals or entities claiming disadvantaged status.

(b) Where SBA makes the determination of ownership and control, SBA may collect a fee comparable to that which would be charged by a Private Certifier. From time to time, SBA will publish a Notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER identifying any fee that SBA will charge to process a firm’s determination of ownership and control. SBA will promptly remit any funds received pursuant to this section to the Treasury of the United States as miscellaneous receipts.

§ 124.1006 Is there a list of Private Certifiers?

SBA will maintain a list of approved Private Certifiers on SBA’s Home Page on the Internet. Any interested person may also obtain a copy of the list from the local SBA district office.

§ 124.1007 How long may an organization or business concern be a Private Certifier?

(a) SBA’s approval document will specify how long the organization or concern may be a Private Certifier. The initial contract or agreement will have a base period of one year, and may include option years or renewal provisions.

(b) SBA may terminate a contract or agreement with an organization or business concern which is a Private Certifier for the convenience of the Government at any time, and may terminate the contract or agreement for default where appropriate. Specific grounds for termination for default include, but are not limited to:

(1) Charging improper, unreasonable or contingent fees in violation of §124.1005;

(2) Engaging in prohibited business transactions with the firms for which it processes SDB applications in violation of §124.1004(f); or

(3) A demonstrated record of ownership and control determinations that are overturned on appeal by SBA’s Office of Hearings and Appeals (OHA) or by SBA as part of an SDB protest.

§ 124.1008 How does a firm become certified as an SDB?

Any firm may apply to be certified as an SDB. SBA’s field offices will provide further information and required application forms to any firm interested in SDB certification. In order to become certified as an SDB, a firm must apply to SBA or, if directed by SBA, to a Private Certifier. The application must include evidence demonstrating that the firm is owned and controlled by one or more individuals claiming disadvantaged status, along with certifications or narratives regarding the disadvantaged status of such individuals. See paragraph (e)(1) of this section. The firm also must submit information necessary for a size determination. See §121.1008. Current 8(a) BD Participants do not need to submit applications for SDB status. These concerns automatically qualify as SDBs by virtue of their status as 8(a) BD concerns. An 8(a) Participant’s continuing eligibility as an SDB will be reviewed as part of the concern’s 8(a) annual review.

(a) Filing an SDB application. (1) An interested firm must first submit a
required by paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, where appropriate.

(ii) If the Private Certifier finds that the applicant is not owned and controlled by the individuals claiming disadvantaged status, its decision must state the specific reasons for the finding, and inform the applicant of its right to appeal the decision to SBA pursuant to §124.1009.

(2) Where SBA determines ownership and control, SBA will first determine whether the applicant is owned and controlled by the individual(s) claiming to be disadvantaged. If SBA determines that the applicant is not owned and controlled by the individual(s) claiming disadvantaged status, SBA will issue a written decision addressing only the ownership and control issues. If SBA determines that the applicant is owned and controlled by the individual(s) claiming disadvantaged status, SBA will issue a single written decision as to whether the applicant qualifies as an SDB. Such a determination will include the ownership and control of the firm, the size status of the firm, and the disadvantaged status of those individuals claiming to be disadvantaged.

(3) In its sole discretion, SBA may analyze and determine whether a firm is owned and controlled by one or more individuals claiming disadvantaged status notwithstanding the availability of a Private Certifier to make such a decision.

(4) SBA reserves the right to re-evaluate an approved decision on ownership and control by a Private Certifier in a case where it has credible evidence that the Private Certifier has substantially disregarded the eligibility criteria.

(e) Disadvantaged determination. Once a concern receives a decision finding that it is owned and controlled by those individuals or entities claiming disadvantaged status (either through an initial determination or on appeal), SBA will determine whether the other eligibility criteria are met, and, if so, will include the SDB on the SBA-maintained list of qualified SDBs. SBA will make this determination within 30 days of receiving an SDB application, if practicable.
§ 124.1008

(1) Members of designated groups. (i) Those individuals claiming disadvantaged status that are members of the same designated groups that are presumed to be socially disadvantaged for purposes of SBA’s 8(a) BD program (see §124.103(b)) are presumed to be socially and economically disadvantaged for purposes of SDB certification. These individuals must represent that they are members of one of the designated groups, that they are identified as a member of one of the designated groups, that their net worth is less than $750,000 after taking into account the exclusions set forth in §124.104(c)(2), and that they are citizens of the United States.

(ii) Absent credible evidence to the contrary, SBA may accept these representations as true and certify the firm as an SDB.

(2) Individuals not members of designated groups. (i) Each individual claiming disadvantaged status who is not a member of one of the designated groups must submit a statement identifying personally how his or her entry into or advancement in the business world has been impaired because of personally specific factors (see §124.103(c)), and how his or her ability to compete in the free enterprise system has been impaired due to diminished capital and credit opportunities (see §§124.103(c) and 124.104).

(ii) Where a Private Certifier determines ownership and control, the Private Certifier must also review the disadvantaged status submission and any other required information, and send to SBA the following:

(A) An executive summary and analysis of the disadvantaged status submission;

(B) The application and all supporting documentation; and

(C) A certification that the application is complete and suitable for evaluation.

(3) Concerns owned by tribes, ANCs, CDCs, or NHOs: SBA will process SDB applications from concerns owned and controlled by tribes, ANCs, CDCs, or NHOs in the same way as those from concerns owned by individuals who are members of designated groups.

(4) SDB Determination. (1) If SBA’s AA/SDBCE determines that the individuals claiming disadvantage are disadvantaged and other eligibility criteria are met, he or she will certify the firm as an SDB.

(2) If SBA’s AA/SDBCE determines that one or more of the individuals claiming to be disadvantaged is not disadvantaged and their disadvantaged status is required to establish disadvantaged ownership and control of the applicant, or any of the other eligibility criteria are not met, he or she will reject the firm’s application for SDB certification. The AA/SDBCE will issue a written decision setting forth SBA’s reasons for decline.

(3)(i) If the AA/SDBCE declines the firm’s application for SDB certification, the firm may request that the AA/SDBCE reconsider his or her initial decline by submitting a written request to the AA/SDBCE within 45 days of the date of the AA/SDBCE’s decision. The applicant may provide any additional information and documentation pertinent to overcoming the reason(s) for the initial decline.

(ii) The AA/SDBCE will issue a written decision within 30 days of receiving the applicant’s request for reconsideration, if practicable. The AA/SDBCE may either approve the application, deny it on one or more of the same grounds as the initial decision, or deny it on other grounds. If the application is denied, the AA/SDBCE will explain why the applicant is not eligible for SDB certification and give specific reasons for the decline. If the AA/SDBCE declines the application solely on issues not raised in the initial decline, the applicant may request another reconsideration as if it were an initial decline. If the AA/SDBCE declines the application for one or more of the same reasons as addressed in the initial decline, the applicant is not entitled to a second reconsideration.

(4) Pursuant to part 134 of this title, a firm may appeal to OHA the AA/SDBCE’s decision that one or more of the individuals claiming disadvantaged status is not disadvantaged, or, where SBA determines ownership and control, that those claiming disadvantaged status do not own and control the applicant. (See §124.1009 for appeals from decisions by Private Certifiers.)
§ 124.1010 How does a firm appeal a decision of a Private Certifier?

Where a Private Certifier performs an ownership and control determination and finds that a firm is not owned and controlled by the individual(s) claiming disadvantaged status, the firm may appeal that decision to OHA pursuant to part 134 of this title. The firm must serve SBA’s Associate General Counsel for Procurement Law and the applicable Private Certifier with a copy of the appeal.

(a) The Private Certifier must submit to OHA the full record upon which its decision was based within two days of receiving notification that an appeal has been filed.

(b) The Private Certifier and SBA may each elect to appear or not appear in an appeal proceeding.

(c) OHA’s review is limited to the facts that were before the Private Certifier at the time of its final decision and any arguments submitted in or in response to the appeal. OHA will not consider any facts beyond those that were already presented to the Private Certifier unless the administrative judge determines that manifest injustice would occur if the appeal were limited to the record.

(d) OHA will decide whether it believes that the facts are supported by a preponderance of the evidence the Private Certifier’s determination regarding ownership and control.

(e) Where the facts presented in the record leave significant doubt as to whether the petitioner is or is not owned and controlled by one or more individuals claiming to be disadvantaged, the administrative judge may remand the case to the Private Certifier for reconsideration in accord with his or her remand order.

(f) If OHA finds that the firm is owned and controlled by the individual(s) claiming disadvantaged status, OHA will refer the application to SBA for further processing. If OHA finds that the firm is not owned and controlled by such individual(s), the administrative judge will state the reasons for that decision, which will be the final decision of the Agency.

§ 124.1009 How does a firm represent itself to be an SDB if it has not yet been certified as an SDB?

(a) General rule. Except as set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, a firm may represent itself to be an SDB for any Federal procurement program if it has submitted a complete...
application for SDB certification to SBA or a Private Certifier and it has not received a negative determination regarding that application from SBA or the Private Certifier. A firm that has received a negative determination of ownership and control or a negative determination regarding its disadvantaged status and is awaiting the resolution of its appeal of that determination may not represent itself to be an SDB.

(b) Where applicant becomes successful offeror. If a concern becomes the apparent successful offeror on a contract for which it would receive a benefit for being an SDB while its application for SDB certification is pending, either at SBA or a Private Certifier, the contracting officer for the particular contract must immediately inform SBA’s AA/SDBCE. SBA will then prioritize the firm’s SDB application and make a determination regarding the firm’s status as an SDB within 15 days from the date that SBA received the contracting officer’s notification.

(1) Where the apparent successful offeror’s completed application is pending an ownership and control determination with a Private Certifier, the concern must inform SBA which Private Certifier has its application. SBA will immediately contact the Private Certifier to require the Private Certifier to complete its ownership and control determination within 5 days of SBA’s notification. In appropriate circumstances, SBA may undertake to make the determination itself, and may recoup the cost of the determination from the Private Certifier.

(2) If requested to do so by the procuring activity contracting officer, SBA will determine whether other offerors are SDBs where they have represented that their completed applications for SDB status are pending at SBA or a Private Certifier and they could receive the award if SBA determines that the apparently successful offeror is not an SDB.

(3) If the contracting officer does not receive an SBA determination within 15 calendar days after the SBA’s receipt of the notification, the contracting officer will presume that the apparently successful offeror, and any other offerors referred to SBA in connection with the same procurement by the contracting officer, are not disadvantaged, and will make award accordingly, unless the contracting officer grants an extension to the 15-day response period.

(c) Representation as SDB for statistical purposes. A firm may represent itself as an SDB concern for general statistical purposes without regard to any application for SDB certification or its inclusion on the SBA-maintained list of qualified SDB’s.

(d) Subcontracting programs. Only firms that are on the SBA-maintained list of qualified SDBs may represent themselves as SDB concerns in order to receive a preference as an SDB for any Federal subcontracting program.

§124.1012 Can a firm reapply for SDB certification?

(a) A concern which has been denied SDB certification may reapply for certification at any time 12 months or more after the date of the most recent final decision of SBA to decline its application (either on appeal of an ownership and control determination, or a negative finding of disadvantaged status).

(b) A concern which received a decision that it was not owned and controlled by the individual(s) claiming disadvantaged status from a Private Certifier may reapply for SDB certification at any time 12 months or more after the date of the most recent final decision of SBA to decline its application.
§ 124.1013 Is there a list of certified SDBs?

(a) If SBA certifies a firm to be an SDB, SBA will enter the name of the firm into an SBA-maintained central on-line register, such as PRO-Net.

(b) The register of SDBs will contain the names of all firms that are currently certified to be SDBs, including the names of all firms currently participating in SBA’s 8(a) BD program.

(c) On a continuing basis, SBA will delete from the on-line register those firms that have:

1. Graduated or been terminated from SBA’s 8(a) BD program for any reason and have not otherwise received SDB certification (see §§124.1008(h) and 124.1014(b) for treatment of 8(a) graduates);

2. Been determined not to be an SDB in response to an SDB protest brought under §124.1017; or

3. Other than current 8(a) Participants, not received a renewed SDB certification after being on the register for three years (see §124.1014(c)).

§ 124.1014 How long does an SDB certification last?

(a) Once SBA certifies a firm to be an SDB by placing it on the list of qualified SDBs, the firm will generally remain on the SBA-maintained list of certified SDBs for a period of three years from the date of its certification.

1. A firm’s SDB certification will extend beyond three years where SBA finds the firm to be an SDB:

(i) On the merits in connection with a particular protest (see §124.1023(h)(2));

(ii) In connection with an SBA-initiated SDB determination (see §124.1016(a)(2)); or

(iii) As part of an 8(a) BD annual review.

2. Where SBA finds a firm not to be an SDB in connection with an SDB protest, an SBA-initiated SDB determination, or an 8(a) BD annual review, SBA will immediately decertify the firm as an SDB and remove it from the qualified list of SDBs.

(b) A firm that graduates from the 8(a) BD program will remain on the list of certified SDBs for a period of three years from the date of its last annual review.

(c) To remain on the SDB register after three years, a firm whose status as an SDB has not been upheld in connection with a protest or an SBA-initiated SDB determination, or has not been certified as an eligible 8(a) Participant as part of an annual review, must submit a new application and receive a new certification.

§ 124.1015 What is the effect of receiving an SDB certification?

(a) A firm that is certified to be an SDB may represent itself as an SDB for such purposes as Federal price evaluation adjustments, evaluation factors or subfactors, monetary subcontracting incentive programs, section 8(d) subcontracts, SDB set-asides, or any other programs which accept an SBA certification. A contracting officer may award a contract based on a firm’s representation that it is a certified SDB absent a protest that the protested concern’s circumstances have materially changed since SBA certified it as an SDB, or that the protested concern’s SDB application contained false or misleading information (see §124.1018(d)).

(b) For purposes of a particular Federal procurement, the firm must represent that it is both disadvantaged and small at the time it submits its initial offer including price (see part 121 of this title). At the same time, the firm must also represent that no material change has occurred in its SDB status since its SDB certification, or from the date of its application for SDB certification if its application has not yet been processed, and must specifically represent that the net worth of the disadvantaged individuals (not including concerns owned by tribes, ANCs, CDCs, or NHOs) upon whom the SDB certification was based still does not exceed $750,000.

(c) A firm’s status as “disadvantaged” or “small” may be protested pursuant to §§124.1017 through 124.1021 and §§121.1001 through 121.1005, respectively, despite the presence of the firm
on the SDB register, provided the protest contains specific allegations that the firm’s circumstances have materially changed since SBA certified it as an SDB, or that the firm’s SDB application contained false or misleading information.

§ 124.1016 Can SBA re-evaluate the SDB status of a firm after SBA certifies it to be SDB?

(a) SBA may initiate an SDB determination whenever it receives credible information calling into question a firm’s eligibility as an SDB, including an adverse determination from a DOT recipient of the firm’s status as a DBE. Upon its completion of an SDB determination, SBA will issue a written decision regarding the SDB status of the questioned firm.

(1) If SBA finds that the firm does not qualify as an SDB, SBA will decertify the firm as an SDB, and immediately remove the firm from the list of qualified SDBs. The firm may appeal SBA’s decision to OHA consistent with the provisions of §124.1008(f) and part 134 of this chapter.

(2) If SBA finds that the firm continues to qualify as an SDB, the determination remains in effect for three years from the date of the decision under the same conditions as if the concern had been granted SDB certification under §124.1008.

(b) An SDB firm must report within 10 days to the AA/SDBCE any changes in ownership and control or any other circumstances which could adversely affect its eligibility as an SDB.

§ 124.1017 Who may protest the disadvantaged status of a concern?

(a) In connection with a requirement for which the apparent successful offeror has invoked an SDB evaluation adjustment or an SDB set-aside, the following entities may protest the disadvantaged status of the apparent successful offeror:

(1) Any other concern which submitted an offer for that requirement, unless the contracting officer has found the concern to be non-responsive or outside the competitive range, or SBA has previously found the protesting concern to be ineligible for the requirement at issue;

(2) The procuring activity contracting officer; or

(3) SBA.

(b) In connection with an 8(d) subcontract, or a requirement for which the apparent successful offeror received an evaluation adjustment for proposing one or more SDB subcontractors, the procuring activity contracting officer or SBA may protest the disadvantaged status of a proposed subcontractor. Other interested parties may submit information to the contracting officer or SBA in an effort to persuade the contracting officer or SBA to initiate a protest.

(c) An interested party seeking to protest both the disadvantaged status and size of an apparent successful SDB offeror must submit two separate protests, one as to disadvantaged status pursuant to this subpart, and one as to size pursuant to part 121 of this title. An interested party seeking to protest only size of an apparent successful SDB offeror must submit a size protest to the contracting officer pursuant to part 121.

§ 124.1018 When will SBA not decide an SDB protest?

(a) SBA will not decide a protest as to disadvantaged status of any concern other than the apparent successful offeror.

(b) SBA will not normally consider a post award protest. SBA may consider a post award protest in its discretion where it determines that a protest decision after award would have a practical effect (e.g., where the contracting officer agrees to terminate the contract if the protest is sustained).

(c) SBA will not decide an untimely protest (see §124.1020(c)).

(d) SBA will not decide a non-specific protest or one that does not present credible evidence that the protested concern’s circumstances have materially changed since SBA certified it as an SDB, or that the protested concern’s SDB application contained false or misleading information (see §124.1021).

(e) An interested party may appeal SBA’s dismissal of a protest for lack of specificity, timeliness, or a basis upon which SBA will consider a protest to
§ 124.1019 Who decides disadvantaged status protests?

In response to a protest challenging the disadvantaged status of a concern, the SBA’s AA/SDBCE will determine whether the concern is disadvantaged.

§ 124.1020 What procedures apply to disadvantaged status protests?

(a) General. The protest procedures described in this section are separate and distinct from those governing size protests and appeals. All protests relating to whether a concern is a “small” business for purposes of any Federal program, including SDB set-asides and SDB evaluation adjustments, must be filed and processed pursuant to part 121 of this title.

(b) Filing. (1) All protests challenging the disadvantaged status of a concern with respect to a particular Federal procurement requirement must be submitted in writing to the procuring activity contracting officer, except in cases where the contracting officer or SBA initiates a protest.

(2) Any contracting officer who initiates a protest must submit the protest in writing to SBA in accord with paragraph (c) of this section.

(3) In cases where SBA initiates a protest, the protest must be submitted in writing to the AA/SDBCE and notification provided in accord with §124.1022(a).

(c) Timeliness of protest—(1) SDB evaluation adjustment and set-aside protests. (i) General. In order for a protest to be timely, it must be received by the contracting officer prior to the close of business on the fifth day, exclusive of Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, after the bid opening date for sealed bids, or after the receipt from the contracting officer of notification of the identity of the prospective awardee in negotiated acquisitions.

(ii) Oral protests. An oral protest relating to an SDB set-aside or SDB evaluation adjustment made to the contracting officer within the allotted 5-day period will be considered a timely protest only if the contracting officer receives a confirming letter postmarked, FAXed, or delivered no later than one calendar day after the date of such oral protest.

(iii) Protests of contracting officers or SBA. The time limitations in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section do not apply to contracting officers or SBA, and they may file protests before or after awards, except to the extent set forth in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(iv) Untimely protests. A protest received after the time limits set forth in this paragraph (c)(1) will be dismissed by SBA.

(2) Section 8(d) protests. In connection with an 8(d) subcontract, the contracting officer or SBA must submit a protest to the AA/SDBCE prior to the completion of performance by the intended 8(d) subcontractor.

(3) Premature protests. A protest in connection with any procurement which is submitted by any person, including the contracting officer, before bid opening or notification of intended award, whichever applies, will be considered premature, and will be returned to the protestor without action. A contracting officer that receives a premature protest must return it to the protestor without submitting it to the SBA.

(d) Referral to SBA. (1) Any contracting officer who receives a protest that is not premature must promptly forward it to the SBA’s AA/SDBCE, 409 3rd Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416.

(2) A contracting officer’s referral of a protest to SBA must contain the following:

(i) The written protest and any accompanying materials;

(ii) The date on which the protest was received by the contracting officer;

(iii) A copy of the protested concern’s self-representation as an SDB, and the date of such self-representation; and

(iv) The date of bid opening or the date on which notification of the apparent successful offeror was sent to all unsuccessful offerors, as applicable.
§ 124.1021 What format, degree of specificity, and basis does SBA require to consider an SDB protest?

(a) Format. An SDB protest need not be in any specific format in order for SBA to consider it.

(b) Specificity. A protest must be sufficiently specific to provide reasonable notice as to all grounds upon which the protested concern’s disadvantaged status is challenged.

1. SBA will dismiss a protest that merely asserts that the protested concern is not disadvantaged, without setting forth specific facts or allegations.

2. The contracting officer must forward to SBA any non-premature protest received, notwithstanding whether he or she believes it is sufficiently specific or timely.

(c) Basis. SBA will consider a protest challenging whether the apparent successful offeror is owned and controlled by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals, including whether one or more of the individuals claiming disadvantaged status is in fact socially or economically disadvantaged, only if the protest presents credible evidence that the firm’s circumstances have materially changed since SBA certified it as an SDB, or that the firm’s SDB application contained false or misleading information.

§ 124.1022 What will SBA do when it receives an SDB protest?

(a) Upon receipt of a protest challenging the disadvantaged status of a concern, the AA/SDBCE, or designee, will immediately notify the protestor and the contracting officer of the date the protest was received and whether it will be processed or dismissed for lack of timeliness or specificity.

(b) In cases where the protest is timely and sufficiently specific, the AA/SDBCE, or designee, will also immediately advise the protested concern of the protest and forward a copy of it to the protested concern.

1. The AA/SDBCE, or designee, is authorized to ask the protested concern to provide any or all of the following information and documentation, completed so as to show the circumstances existing on the date of self-representation: SBA Form 1010A, “Statement of Personal Eligibility” for each individual claiming disadvantaged status; SBA Form 1010B, “Statement of Business Eligibility;” SBA Form 413, “Personal Financial Statement,” for each individual claiming disadvantaged status; information as to whether the protested concern, or any of its owners, officers or directors, have applied for admission to or participated in the SBA’s 8(a) BD program and if so, the name of the company which applied or participated and the date of the application or entry into the program; business tax returns for the last two completed fiscal years prior to the date of self-representation; personal tax returns for the last two years prior to the date of self-representation for all individuals owning at least 10% of the business entity; annual business financial statements for the last two completed fiscal years prior to the date of self-representation; a current monthly or quarterly business financial statement no older than 90 days; articles of incorporation; corporate by-laws; partnership agreements; limited liability company articles of organization; and any other relevant information as to whether the protested concern is disadvantaged.

2. SBA’s disadvantaged status determination need not be limited to consideration only of the issues raised in the protest. SBA may consider other applicable criteria.

3. Unless the protest presents specific credible information which calls into question the veracity of application or other documents previously submitted to SBA by a current Participant in SBA’s 8(a) BD program, SBA will allow the Participant to submit, in lieu of the information specified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, a sworn affidavit or declaration that circumstances concerning the ownership and control of the business and the disadvantaged status of its principals have not changed since its application or entry into the program or its most recent annual review, and a copy of its most recently completed annual review.

1. If the ownership or control of the business or the disadvantaged status of
any principals have changed, the protested concern must comply with paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(ii) An affidavit or declaration may be allowed only if SBA admitted the protested concern to the 8(a) BD program, or conducted an annual review of the protested concern, during the 12-month period preceding the date on which SBA receives the protest, and if proceedings to suspend, terminate or early graduate the concern from the 8(a) BD program are not pending.

(c) Within 10 working days of the date that notification of the protest was received from the AA/SDBCE or designee, the protested concern must submit to the AA/SDBCE or designee, by personal delivery, FAX, or mail, the information and documentation requested pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section or the affidavit permitted by paragraph (b)(2) of this section. Materials submitted must be received by the close of business on the 10th working day.

(1) SBA will consider only materials submitted timely, and the late or non-submission of materials needed to make a disadvantaged status determination may result in sustaining the protest.

(2) The burden is on the protested concern to demonstrate its disadvantaged status, whether or not it is currently shown on the list of qualified SDBs.

(3) The protested concern must timely submit to SBA any information it deems relevant to a determination of its disadvantaged status.

§ 124.1023 How does SBA make disadvantaged status determinations in considering an SDB protest?

(a) General. The AA/SDBCE, or designee, will determine a protested concern’s disadvantaged status within 15 working days after receipt of a protest. If the procuring activity contracting officer does not receive an SBA determination within 15 working days after the SBA’s receipt of the protest, the contracting officer may presume that the challenged offeror is disadvantaged, unless the SBA requests and the contracting officer grants an extension to the 15-day response period.

(b) Award after protest. (1) After receiving a protest involving an offeror being considered for award, the contracting officer shall not award the contract until:

(i) The SBA has made an SDB determination, or

(ii) 15 working days have expired since SBA’s receipt of a protest and the contracting officer has not agreed to an extension of the 15-day response period.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the contracting officer may award a contract after the receipt of an SDB protest where he or she determines in writing that an award must be made to protect the public interest.

(c) Withdrawal of protest. If a protest is withdrawn, SBA will not complete a new disadvantaged status determination, and a previous SDB certification will stand.

(d) Basis for determination. (1) Except with respect to a concern which is a current Participant in SBA’s 8(a) BD program and is authorized under §124.1022(b)(3) to submit an affidavit concerning its disadvantaged status, the disadvantaged status determination will be based on the protest record, including reasonable inferences therefrom, as supplied by the protestor, protested concern, SBA or others.

(2) SBA may in its discretion make a part of the protest record information already in its files, and information submitted by the protestor, the protested concern, the contracting officer, or other persons contacted for additional specific information.

(e) Disadvantaged status. In evaluating the social and economic disadvantage of individuals claiming disadvantaged status, SBA will consider the same information and factors set forth in §§124.103 and 124.104. As provided in §124.1002(c), individuals claiming disadvantaged status must have a net worth that is less than $750,000, after taking into account the exclusions set forth in §124.104(c)(2).

(f) Disadvantaged status determination. In evaluating the social and economic disadvantage of individuals claiming disadvantaged status, SBA will consider the same information and factors set forth in §§124.103 and 124.104. As provided in §124.1002(c), individuals claiming disadvantaged status must have a net worth that is less than $750,000, after taking into account the exclusions set forth in §124.104(c)(2).
§ 124.1024 Appeals of disadvantaged status determinations.

(a) Who may appeal. Appeals of protest determinations may be filed with the SBA’s DADA/GC&MED by the protested concern, the protestor, or the contracting officer.

(b) Timeliness of appeal. An appeal must be in writing and must be received by the DADA/GC&MED no later than 5 working days after the date of receipt of the protest determination. SBA will dismiss any appeal received after the five-day time period.

(c) Notice of appeal. Notice of the appeal must be provided by the party bringing an appeal to the procuring activity contracting officer and either the protested concern or original protestor, as appropriate.

(d) Grounds for appeal. SBA will reexamine a protest determination only if there was a clear and significant error in the processing of the protest, or if the AA/SDBCE, or designee, failed to consider a significant material fact contained within the information supplied by the protestor or the protested concern. SBA will not consider protest determination appeals based on additional information or changed circumstances which were not disclosed at the time of the decision of the AA/SDBCE or designee, or which are based on disagreement with the findings and conclusions contained in the determination.

(e) Contents of appeal. No specific format is required for the appeal. However, the appeal must identify the protest determination which is appealed, and set forth a full and specific statement as to why the determination is erroneous under paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) Completion of appeal after award. An appeal may proceed to completion even though an award of the SDB acquisition or other procurement requirement which prompted the protest has been made, if so desired by the protested concern, or where SBA determines that a decision on appeal would have a material impact on contracting decisions, such as where the contracting officer agrees:

1. In the case where an award is made to a concern other than the protested concern, to terminate the contract and award to the protested concern if the appeal finds that the protested concern is disadvantaged; or

2. In the case where an award is made to the protested concern, to terminate the contract if the appeal finds that the protested concern is not disadvantaged.

(g) The appeal will be decided by the DADA/GC&MED, within 5 working days of its receipt, if practicable.
Small Business Administration

§ 125.2

(h) The appeal decision will be based only on the information and documentation in the protest record as supplemented by the appeal. SBA will provide a copy of the decision to the contracting officer, the protestor, and the protested concern, consistent with law.

(i) The decision of the DADA/GC&MED, is the final decision of the SBA, and cannot be further appealed to OHA.

PART 125—GOVERNMENT CONTRACTING PROGRAMS

Sec.
125.1 Programs included.
125.2 Prime contracting assistance.
125.3 Subcontracting assistance.
125.4 Government property sales assistance.
125.5 Certificate of Competency Program.
125.6 Prime contractor performance requirements (limitations on subcontracting).
125.7 What is the Very Small Business program?


SOURCE: 61 FR 3312, Jan. 31, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

§ 125.1 Programs included.

The regulations in this part relate to the Government contracting assistance programs of SBA. There are four main programs: Prime contracting assistance; Subcontracting assistance; Government property sales assistance; and the Certificate of Competency Program. The objective of the programs is to assist small businesses in obtaining a fair share of Federal Government contracts, subcontracts, and property sales.

§ 125.2 Prime contracting assistance.

(a) General. Small business concerns must receive any award or contract, or any contract for the sale of Government property, that SBA and the procuring or disposal agency determine to be in the interest of:

(1) Maintaining or mobilizing the Nation’s full productive capacity;
(2) War or national defense programs;
(3) Assuring that a fair proportion of the total purchases and contracts for property, services and construction for the Government in each industry category are placed with small business concerns; or
(4) Assuring that a fair proportion of the total sales of Government property is made to small business concerns.

(b) PCR and procuring activity responsibilities. (1) SBA Procurement Center Representatives (PCRs) are generally located at Federal agencies and buying activities which have major contracting programs. PCRs review all acquisitions not set-aside for small businesses to determine whether a set-aside is appropriate.

(2) A procuring activity must provide a copy of a proposed acquisition strategy (e.g., Department of Defense Form 2579, or equivalent) to the applicable PCR (or to the SBA Office of Government Contracting Area Office serving the area in which the buying activity is located if a PCR is not assigned to the procuring activity) at least 30 days prior to a solicitation’s issuance whenever a proposed acquisition strategy:

(i) Includes in its description goods or services currently being performed by a small business and the magnitude of the quantity or estimated dollar value of the proposed procurement would render small business prime contract participation unlikely;
(ii) Seeks to package or consolidate discrete construction projects; or
(iii) Meets the definition of a bundled requirement as defined in paragraph (d)(1)(i) of this section.

(3) Whenever any of the circumstances identified in paragraph (b)(2) of this section exist, the procuring activity must also submit to the applicable PCR (or to the SBA Office of Government Contracting Area Office serving the area in which the buying activity is located if a PCR is not assigned to the procuring activity) a written statement explaining why:

(i) If the proposed acquisition strategy involves a bundled requirement, the procuring activity believes that the bundled requirement is necessary and justified under the analysis required by paragraph (d)(3)(iii) of this section; or
(ii) If the description of the requirement includes goods or services currently being performed by a small business and the magnitude of the quantity or estimated dollar value of the proposed procurement would render small
§ 125.2 business prime contract participation unlikely, or if a proposed procurement for construction seeks to package or consolidate discrete construction projects:

(A) The proposed acquisition cannot be divided into reasonably small lots to permit offers on quantities less than the total requirement;

(B) Delivery schedules cannot be established on a basis that will encourage small business participation;

(C) The proposed acquisition cannot be offered so as to make small business participation likely; or

(D) Construction cannot be procured as separate discrete projects.

(4) In conjunction with their duties to promote the set-aside of procurements for small business, PCRs will identify small businesses that are capable of performing particular requirements, including teams of small business concerns for larger or bundled requirements (see §121.103(f)(3) of this chapter).

(5)(i) If a PCR believes that a proposed procurement will render small business prime contract participation unlikely, or if a PCR does not believe a bundled requirement to be necessary and justified, the PCR shall recommend to the procurement activity alternative procurement methods which would increase small business prime contract participation. Such alternatives may include:

(A) Breaking up the procurement into smaller discrete procurements;

(B) Breaking out one or more discrete components, for which a small business set-aside may be appropriate; and

(C) Reserving one or more awards for small companies when issuing multiple awards under task order contracts.

(ii) Where bundling is necessary and justified, the PCR will work with the procuring activity to tailor a strategy that preserves small business prime contract participation to the maximum extent practicable.

(iii) The PCR will also work to ensure that small business participation is maximized through subcontracting opportunities. This may include:

(A) Recommending that the solicitation and resultant contract specifically state the small business subcontracting goals which are expected of the contractor awardee; and

(B) Recommending that the small business subcontracting goals be based on total contract dollars instead of subcontract dollars.

(6) In cases where there is disagreement between a PCR and the contracting officer over the suitability of a particular acquisition for a small business set-aside, whether or not the acquisition is a bundled or substantially bundled requirement within the meaning of paragraph (d) of this section, the PCR may initiate an appeal to the head of the contracting activity. If the head of the contracting activity agrees with the contracting officer, SBA may appeal the matter to the secretary of the department or head of the agency. The time limits for such appeals are set forth in 19.505 of the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) (48 CFR 19.505).

(7) PCRs will work with a procuring activity’s Small Business Specialist (SBS) to identify proposed solicitations that involve bundling, and with the agency acquisition officials to revise the acquisition strategies for such proposed solicitations, where appropriate, to increase the probability of participation by small businesses, including small business contract teams, as prime contractors. If small business participation as prime contractors appears unlikely, the SBS and PCR will facilitate small business participation as subcontractors or suppliers.

(c) BPCR responsibilities.

(1) SBA is required by section 403 of Public Law 98–577 (15 U.S.C. 644(l)) to assign a breakout PCR (BPCR) to major contracting centers. A major contracting center is a center that, as determined by SBA, purchases substantial dollar amounts of other than commercial items, and which has the potential to achieve significant savings as a result of the assignment of a BPCR.

(2) BPCRs advocate full and open competition in the Federal contracting process and recommend the breakout for competition of items and requirements which previously have not been competed. They may appeal the failure by the buying activity to act favorably on a recommendation in accord with the appeal procedures set forth in

400
§125.2

§19.505 of the FAR (48 CFR 19.505). BPCRs also review restrictions and obstacles to competition and make recommendations for improvement. Other authorized functions of a BPCR are set forth in 48 CFR 19.403(c) of the FAR and Section 15(l) of the Act (15 U.S.C. 644(l)).

(d) Contract bundling—(1) Definitions—

(i) Bundled requirement or bundling. The term bundled requirement or bundling refers to the consolidation of two or more procurement requirements for goods or services previously provided or performed under separate smaller contracts into a solicitation of offers for a single contract that is likely to be unsuitable for award to a small business concern due to:

(A) The diversity, size, or specialized nature of the elements of the performance specified;

(B) The aggregate dollar value of the anticipated award;

(C) The geographical dispersion of the contract performance sites; or

(D) Any combination of the factors described in paragraphs (d)(1)(i) (A), (B), and (C) of this section.

(ii) Separate smaller contract. A separate smaller contract is a contract that has previously been performed by one or more small business concerns or was suitable for award to one or more small business concerns.

(iii) Substantial bundling. Substantial bundling is any contract consolidation, which results in an award whose average annual value is $10 million or more.

(2) Requirement to foster small business participation. The Small Business Act requires each Federal agency to foster the participation of small business concerns as prime contractors, subcontractors, and suppliers in the contracting opportunities of the Government. To comply with this requirement, agency acquisition planners must:

(i) Structure procurement requirements to facilitate competition by and among small business concerns, including small disadvantaged, 8(a) and women-owned business concerns; and

(ii) Avoid unnecessary and unjustified bundling of contract requirements that inhibits or precludes small business participation in procurements as prime contractors.

(3) Requirement for market research. In addition to the requirements of paragraph (b)(2) of this section and before proceeding with an acquisition strategy that could lead to a contract containing bundled or substantially bundled requirements, an agency must conduct market research to determine whether bundling of the requirements is necessary and justified. During the market research phase, the acquisition team should consult with the applicable PCR (or if a PCR is not assigned to the procuring activity, the SBA Office of Government Contracting Area Office serving the area in which the buying activity is located).

(4) Requirement to notify current small business contractors of intent to bundle. The procuring activity must notify each small business which is performing a contract that it intends to bundle that requirement with one or more other requirements at least 30 days prior to the issuance of the solicitation for the bundled or substantially bundled requirement. The procuring activity, at that time, should also provide to the small business the name, phone number and address of the applicable SBA PCR (or if a PCR is not assigned to the procuring activity, the SBA Office of Government Contracting Area Office serving the area in which the buying activity is located).

(5) Determining requirements to be necessary and justified. When the procuring activity intends to proceed with an acquisition involving bundled or substantially bundled procurement requirements, it must document the acquisition strategy to include a determination that the bundling is necessary and justified, when compared to the benefits that could be derived from meeting the agency’s requirements through separate smaller contracts.

(i) The procuring activity may determine a consolidated requirement to be necessary and justified if, as compared to the benefits that it would derive from contracting to meet those requirements if not consolidated, it would derive measurably substantial benefits. The procuring activity must quantify the identified benefits and explain how their impact would be measurably substantial. The benefits may
include cost savings and/or price reduction, quality improvements that will save time or improve or enhance performance or efficiency, reduction in acquisition cycle times, better terms and conditions, and any other benefits that individually, in combination, or in the aggregate would lead to:

(A) Benefits equivalent to 10 percent of the contract value (including options) where the contract value is $75 million or less; or

(B) Benefits equivalent to 5 percent of the contract value (including options) or $7.5 million, whichever is greater, where the contract value exceeds $75 million.

(ii) Notwithstanding paragraph (d)(5)(i) of this section, the Assistant Secretaries with responsibility for acquisition matters (Service Acquisition Executives) or the Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition and Technology (for other Defense Agencies) in the Department of Defense and the Deputy Secretary or equivalent in civilian agencies may, on a non-delegable basis determine that a consolidated requirement is necessary and justified when:

(A) There are benefits that do not meet the thresholds set forth in paragraph (d)(5)(i) of this section but, in the aggregate, are critical to the agency's mission success; and

(B) Procurement strategy provides for maximum practicable participation by small business.

(iii) The reduction of administrative or personnel costs alone shall not be a justification for bundling of contract requirements unless the administrative or personnel cost savings are expected to be substantial, in relation to the dollar value of the procurement to be consolidated (including options). To be substantial, such cost savings must be at least 10 percent of the contract value (including options).

(iv) In assessing whether cost savings and/or a price reduction would be achieved through bundling, the procuring activity and SBA must compare the price that has been charged by small businesses for the work not previously performed by small business.

(6) OMB Circular A–76 Cost Comparison Analysis. The substantial benefit analysis set forth in paragraph (d)(5)(i) of this section is not required where a requirement is subject to a Cost Comparison Analysis under OMB Circular A–76 (See 5 CFR 1310.3 for availability).

(7) Substantial bundling. Where a proposed procurement strategy involves a substantial bundling of contract requirements, the procuring agency must, in the documentation of that strategy, include a determination that the anticipated benefits of the proposed bundled contract justify its use, and must include, at a minimum:

(i) The analysis for bundled requirements set forth in paragraph (d)(5)(i) of this section;

(ii) An assessment of the specific impediments to participation by small business concerns as prime contractors that will result from the substantial bundling;

(iii) Actions designed to maximize small business participation as prime contractors, including provisions that encourage small business teaming for the substantially bundled requirement; and

(iv) Actions designed to maximize small business participation as subcontractors (including suppliers) at any tier under the contract or contracts that may be awarded to meet the requirements.

(8) Significant subcontracting opportunity. (i) Where a bundled or substantially bundled requirement offers a significant opportunity for subcontracting, the procuring agency must designate the following factors as significant factors in evaluating offers:

(A) A factor that is based on the rate of participation provided under the subcontracting plan for small business in the performance of the contract; and

(B) For the evaluation of past performance of an offeror, a factor that is based on the extent to which the offeror attained applicable goals for small business participation in the performance of contracts.

(ii) Where the offeror for such a bundled contract qualifies as a small business concern, the procuring agency must give to the offeror the highest
§ 125.3 Subcontracting assistance.

(a) The purpose of the subcontracting assistance program is to achieve maximum utilization of small business by major prime contractors. The Act requires other-than-small firms awarded contracts that offer subcontracting possibilities by the Federal Government in excess of $500,000, or $1 million for construction of a public facility, to submit a subcontracting plan to the contracting agency. The FAR sets forth the requirements for subcontracting plans in 48 CFR part 19, subpart 19.7, and 48 CFR 52.219-9.

(b) Upon determination of the successful subcontract offeror on a subcontract for which a small business, small disadvantaged business, and/or a HUBZone small business received a preference, but prior to award, the prime contractor must inform each unsuccessful offeror in writing of the name and location of the apparent successful offeror and if the successful offeror was a small business, small disadvantaged business, or HUBZone business. This applies to all subcontracts over $10,000.

(c) SBA Commercial Market Representatives (CMRs) facilitate the process of matching large prime contractors with small, small disadvantaged, and HUBZone subcontractors. CMRs identify, develop, and market small businesses to the prime contractors and assist the small concerns in obtaining subcontracts.

(d) Each CMR has a portfolio of prime contractors and conducts periodic compliance reviews and needs assessments of the companies in this portfolio. CMRs are also required to perform opportunity development and source identification. Opportunity development means assessing the current and future needs of the prime contractors. Source identification means identifying those small, small disadvantaged, and HUBZone concerns which can fulfill the needs assessed from the opportunity development process.

§ 125.4 Government property sales assistance.

(a) The purpose of SBA’s Government property sales assistance program is to:

(1) Insure that small businesses obtain their fair share of all Federal real and personal property qualifying for sale or other competitive disposal action; and

(2) Assist small businesses in obtaining Federal property being processed for disposal, sale, or lease.

(b) SBA property sales assistance primarily consists of two activities:

(1) Obtaining small business set-asides when necessary to insure that a fair share of Government property sales are made to small businesses; and

(2) Providing advice and assistance to small businesses on all matters pertaining to sale or lease of Government property.

(c) The program is intended to cover the following categories of Government property:

(1) Sales of timber and related forest products;

(2) Sales of strategic material from national stockpiles;

(3) Sales of royalty oil by the Department of Interior’s Minerals Management Service;

(4) Leases involving rights to minerals, petroleum, coal, and vegetation; and

(5) Sales of surplus real and personal property.

(d) SBA has established specific small business size standards and rules for the sale or lease of the different kinds of Government property. These provisions are contained in §§121.501 through 121.514 of this chapter.

§ 125.5 Certificate of Competency Program.

(a) General. (1) The Certificate of Competency (COC) Program is authorized under section 8(b)(7) of the Small Business Act. A COC is a written instrument issued by SBA to a Government contracting officer certifying that one or more named small business
concerns possess the responsibility to perform a specific Government procurement (or sale) contract. The COC Program is applicable to all Government procurement actions. For purposes of this Section, the term “United States” includes its territories, possessions, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(2) A contracting officer must, upon determining an apparently low small business offeror to be nonresponsible, refer that small business to SBA for a possible COC, even if the next low apparently responsible offeror is also a small business.

(3) A small business offeror referred to SBA as nonresponsible may apply to SBA for a COC. Where the applicant is a non-manufacturing offeror on a supply contract, the COC applies to the responsibility of the non-manufacturer, not to that of the manufacturer.

(b) COC Eligibility. (1) The offeror seeking a COC has the burden of proof to demonstrate its eligibility for COC review. To be eligible for the COC program, a firm must meet the following criteria:

(i) It must qualify as a small business concern under the size standard applicable to the procurement. Where the solicitation fails to specify a size standard or Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) code, SBA will assign the appropriate size standard to determine COC eligibility. SBA determines size eligibility as of the date described in §121.404 of this chapter.

(ii) A manufacturing, service, or construction concern must demonstrate that it will perform a significant portion of the proposed contract with its own facilities, equipment, and personnel. The contract must be performed or the end item manufactured within the United States.

(iii) A non-manufacturer making an offer on a small business set-aside contract for supplies must furnish end items that have been manufactured in the United States by a small business. A waiver of this requirement may be requested under §§121.1301 through 121.1305 of this chapter.

(iv) A non-manufacturer making an offer on an unrestricted procurement or a procurement utilizing simplified acquisition threshold procedures with a cost that does not exceed $25,000 must furnish end items manufactured in the United States to be eligible for a COC.

(v) An offeror intending to provide a kit consisting of finished components or other components provided for a special purpose, is eligible if:

(A) It meets the Size Standard for the SIC code assigned to the procurement;

(B) Each component comprising the kit was manufactured in the United States; and

(C) In the case of a set-aside, each component comprising the kit was manufactured by a small business under the size standard applicable to the component provided. A waiver of this requirement may be requested under §§121.1301 through 121.1305 of this chapter.

(2) SBA will determine a concern ineligible for a COC if the concern, or any of its principals, appears in the “Parties Excluded From Federal Procurement Programs” section found in the U.S. General Services Administration Office of Acquisition Policy Publication: List of Parties Excluded From Federal Procurement or Nonprocurement Programs. If a principal is unable to presently control the applicant concern, and appears in the Procurement section of the list due to matters not directly related to the concern itself, responsibility will be determined in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) An eligibility determination will be made on a case-by-case basis, where a concern or any of its principals appears in the Nonprocurement Section of the publication referred to in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(c) Referral of nonresponsibility determination to SBA. (1) A contracting officer who determines that an apparently successful offeror that has certified itself to be a small business with respect to a specific Government procurement lacks any element of responsibility (including competency, capability, capacity, credit, integrity or tenacity or perseverance) must refer the matter in writing to the SBA Government Contracting Area Office (Area Office) serving the area in which the
headquarters of the offeror is located. The referral must include a copy of the following:

(i) Solicitation;
(ii) Offer submitted by the concern whose responsibility is at issue for the procurement (its Best and Final Offer for a negotiated procurement);
(iii) Abstract of Bids, where applicable, or the Contracting Officer’s Price Negotiation Memorandum;
(iv) Preaward survey, where applicable;
(v) Contracting officer’s written determination of nonresponsibility;
(vi) Technical data package (including drawings, specifications, and Statement of Work); and
(vii) Any other justification and documentation used to arrive at the nonresponsibility determination.

(2) Contract award must be withheld by the contracting officer for a period of 15 working days (or longer if agreed to by SBA and the contracting officer) following receipt by the appropriate Area Office of a referral which includes all required documentation.

(3) The COC referral must indicate that the offeror has been found responsive to the solicitation, and also identify the reasons for the nonresponsibility determination.

(d) Application for COC. (1) Upon receipt of the contracting officer’s referral, the Area Office will inform the concern of the contracting officer’s negative responsibility determination, and offer it the opportunity to apply to SBA for a COC by a specified date.

(2) The COC application must include all information and documentation requested by SBA and any additional information which the firm believes will demonstrate its ability to perform on the proposed contract. The application should be returned as soon as possible, but no later than the date specified by SBA.

(3) Upon receipt of a complete and acceptable application, SBA may elect to visit the applicant’s facility to review its responsibility. SBA personnel may obtain clarification or confirmation of information provided by the applicant by directly contacting suppliers, financial institutions, and other third parties upon whom the applicant’s responsibility depends.

(e) Incomplete applications. If an application for a COC is materially incomplete or is not submitted by the date specified by SBA, SBA will close the case without issuing a COC and will notify the contracting officer and the concern with a declination letter.

(f) Reviewing an application. (1) The COC review process is not limited to the areas of nonresponsibility cited by the contracting officer. SBA may, at its discretion, independently evaluate the COC applicant for all elements of responsibility, but it may presume responsibility exists as to elements other than those cited as deficient. SBA may deny a COC for reasons of nonresponsibility not originally cited by the contracting officer.

(2) A small business will be rebuttably presumed nonresponsible if any of the following circumstances are shown to exist:

(i) Within three years before the application for a COC, the concern, or any of its principals, has been convicted of an offense or offenses that would constitute grounds for debarment or suspension under FAR subpart 9.4 (48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4), and the matter is still under the jurisdiction of a court (e.g., the principals of a concern are incarcerated, on probation or parole, or under a suspended sentence); or

(ii) Within three years before the application for a COC, the concern or any of its principals has had a civil judgment entered against it or them for any reason that would constitute grounds for debarment or suspension under FAR subpart 9.4 (48 CFR part, subpart 9.4).

(g) Decision by Area Director (“Director”). After reviewing the information submitted by the applicant and the information gathered by SBA, the Area Director will make a determination, either final or recommended as set forth in the following chart:
§ 125.5 Contracting actions SBA official or office with authority to make decision Finality of decision; options for contracting agencies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contracting actions</th>
<th>Director may approve or deny</th>
<th>Finality of decision; options for contracting agencies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$100,000 or less, or in accordance with Simplified Acquisition Threshold procedures.</td>
<td>(1) Director may deny</td>
<td>(1) Final. The Director will notify both applicant and contracting agency in writing of the decision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between $100,000 and $25 million</td>
<td>(2) Director may approve, subject to right of appeal and other options.</td>
<td>(2) Contracting agency may proceed under paragraph (h) or paragraph (i) of this section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceeding $25 million</td>
<td>(1) Director may deny</td>
<td>(1) Final.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Director must refer to SBA Headquarters recommendation for approval.</td>
<td>(2) Contracting agency may proceed under paragraph (j) of this section.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(h) Notification of intent to issue on a contract with a value between $100,000 and $25 million. Where the Director determines that a COC is warranted, he or she will notify the contracting officer of the intent to issue a COC, and of the reasons for that decision, prior to issuing the COC. At the time of notification, the contracting officer has the following options:

1. Accept the Director’s decision to issue the COC and award the contract to the concern. The COC issuance letter will then be sent, including as an attachment a detailed rationale of the decision;

2. Ask the Director to suspend the case for one of the following purposes:
   (i) To forward a detailed rationale for the decision to the contracting officer for review within a specified period of time;
   (ii) To afford the contracting officer the opportunity to submit to SBA Headquarters any documentation which the Area Office may not have considered.

(j) Decision by SBA Headquarters where contract value exceeds $25 million. Prior to taking final action, SBA Headquarters will contact the contracting agency at the secretariat level or agency equivalent and afford it the following options:

1. Ask SBA Headquarters to suspend the case so that the agency can meet agreement from the contracting officer, the Director must issue the COC. When such an agreement has been obtained, the Area Office will immediately forward the case file to SBA Headquarters.
   (1) The intent of the appeal procedure is to allow the contracting agency the opportunity to submit to SBA Headquarters any documentation which the Area Office may not have considered.
   (2) SBA Headquarters will furnish written notice to the Director, Office of Small and Disadvantaged Business Utilization (OSDBU) at the secretariat level of the procuring agency (with a copy to the contracting officer), that the case file has been received and that an appeal decision may be requested by an authorized official at that level. If the contracting agency decides to file an appeal, it must notify SBA Headquarters through its Director, OSDBU, within 10 working days (or a time period agreed upon by both agencies) of its receipt of the notice under paragraph (h) of this section. The appeal and any supporting documentation must be filed within 10 working days (or a different time period agreed to by both agencies) after SBA receives the request for a formal appeal.
   (3) The SBA Associate Administrator for Government Contracting (AA/GC) will make a final determination, in writing, to issue or to deny the COC.

(j) Decision by SBA Headquarters where contract value exceeds $25 million. Prior to taking final action, SBA Headquarters will contact the contracting agency at the secretariat level or agency equivalent and afford it the following options:

1. Ask SBA Headquarters to suspend the case so that the agency can meet

406
Small Business Administration

§ 125.6 Prime contractor performance requirements (limitations on subcontracting).

(a) In order to be awarded a full or partial small business set-aside contract, an 8(a) contract, or an unrestricted procurement where a concern has claimed a 10 percent small disadvantaged business (SDB) price evaluation preference, a small business concern must agree that:

(1) In the case of a contract for services (except construction), the concern will perform at least 50 percent of the cost of the contract incurred for personnel with its own employees.

(2) In the case of a contract for supplies or products (other than procurement from a non-manufacturer in such supplies or products), the concern will perform at least 50 percent of the cost of manufacturing the supplies or products (not including the costs of materials).

(3) In the case of a contract for general construction, the concern will perform at least 15 percent of the cost of the contract with its own employees (not including the costs of materials).

(ii) Submit to SBA Headquarters for evaluation any information which the contracting agency believes has not been considered.

(2) After reviewing all available information, the AA/GC will make a final decision to either issue or deny the COC. If the AA/GC’s decision is to deny the COC, the applicant and contracting agency will be informed in writing by the Area Office. If the decision is to issue the COC, a letter certifying the responsibility of the firm will be sent to the contracting agency by Headquarters and the applicant will be informed of such issuance by the Area Office. Except as set forth in paragraph (1) of this section, there can be no further appeal or reconsideration of the decision of the AA/GC.

(k) Notification of denial of COC. The notification to an unsuccessful applicant following either an Area Director or a Headquarters denial of a COC will briefly state all reasons for denial and inform the applicant that a meeting may be requested with appropriate SBA personnel to discuss the denial. Upon receipt of a request for such a meeting, the appropriate SBA personnel will confer with the applicant and explain the reasons for SBA’s action. The meeting does not constitute an opportunity to rebut the merits of the SBA’s decision to deny the COC, and is for the sole purpose of giving the applicant the opportunity to correct deficiencies so as to improve its ability to obtain future contracts either directly or, if necessary, through the issuance of a COC.

(i) Reconsideration of COC after issuance. (1) An approved COC may be reconsidered and possibly rescinded, at the sole discretion of SBA, where an award of the contract has not occurred, and one of the following circumstances exists:

(i) The COC applicant submitted false or omitted materially adverse information;

(ii) New materially adverse information has been received relating to the current responsibility of the applicant concern; or

(iii) The COC has been issued for more than 60 days (in which case SBA may investigate the firm’s current circumstances).

(2) Where SBA reconsiders and reaffirms the COC the procedures under paragraph (h) of this section do not apply.

(m) Effect of a COC. By the terms of the Act, a COC is conclusive as to responsibility. Where SBA issues a COC on behalf of a small business with respect to a particular contract, contracting officers are required to award the contract without requiring the firm to meet any other requirement with respect to responsibility.

(n) Effect of Denial of COC. Denial of a COC by SBA does not preclude a contracting officer from awarding a contract to the referred firm, nor does it prevent the concern from making an offer on any other procurement.

(o) Monitoring performance. Once a COC has been issued and a contract awarded on that basis, SBA will monitor contractor performance.

§ 125.6

(4) In the case of a contract for construction by special trade contractors, the concern will perform at least 25 percent of the cost of the contract with its own employees (not including the cost of materials).

(b) Definitions. The following definitions apply to this section:

(1) Cost of the contract. All allowable direct and indirect costs allocable to the contract, excluding profit or fees.

(2) Cost of contract performance incurred for personnel. Direct labor costs and any overhead which has only direct labor as its base, plus the concern’s General and Administrative rate multiplied by the labor cost.

(3) Cost of manufacturing. Those costs incurred by the firm in the production of the end item being acquired. These are costs associated with the manufacturing process, including the direct costs of fabrication, assembly, or other production activities, and indirect costs which are allocable and allowable. The cost of materials, as well as the profit or fee from the contract, are excluded.

(4) Cost of materials. Includes costs of the items purchased, handling and associated shipping costs for the purchased items (which includes raw materials), off-the-shelf items (and similar proportionately high-cost common supply items requiring additional manufacturing or incorporation to become end items), special tooling, special testing equipment, and construction equipment purchased for and required to perform on the contract. In the case of a supply contract, the acquisition of services or products from outside sources following normal commercial practices within the industry are also included.

(5) Off-the-shelf item. An item produced and placed in stock by a manufacturer, or stocked by a distributor, before orders or contracts are received for its sale. The item may be commercial or may be produced to military or Federal specifications or description. Off-the-shelf items are also known as Nondevelopmental Items (NDI).

(6) Personnel. Individuals who are “employees” under §121.106 of this chapter.

(7) Subcontracting. That portion of the contract performed by a firm, other than the concern awarded the contract, under a second contract, purchase order, or agreement for any parts, supplies, components, or subassemblies which are not available off-the-shelf, and which are manufactured in accordance with drawings, specifications, or designs furnished by the contractor, or by the government as a portion of the solicitation. Raw castings, forgings, and moldings are considered as materials, not as subcontracting costs. Where the prime contractor has been directed by the Government to use any specific source for parts, supplies, components subassemblies or services, the costs associated with those purchases will be considered as part of the cost of materials, not subcontracting costs.

(c) Compliance will be considered an element of responsibility and not a component of size eligibility.

(d) The period of time used to determine compliance will be the period of performance which the evaluating agency uses to evaluate the proposal or bid. If the evaluating agency fails to articulate in its solicitation the period of performance it will use to evaluate the proposal or bid, the base contract period, excluding options, will be used to determine compliance. In indefinite quantity contracts, performance over the guaranteed minimum will be used to determine compliance unless the evaluating agency articulates a different period of performance which it will use to evaluate the proposal or bid in its solicitation.

(e) Work to be performed by subsidiaries or other affiliates of a concern is not counted as being performed by the concern for purposes of determining whether the concern will perform the required percentage of work.

(f) The procedures of §125.5 apply where the contracting officer determines non-compliance, the procurement is a full or partial small business set-aside or an SDB has claimed a preference, and refers the matter to SBA for a COC determination.

(g) Where an offeror is exempt from affiliation under §121.103(f)(3) of this chapter and qualifies as a small business concern, the performance of work requirements set forth in this section apply to the cooperative effort of the
§ 125.7 What is the Very Small Business program?

(a) The Very Small Business (VSB) program is an extension of the small business set-aside program, administered by SBA as a pilot to increase opportunities for VSB concerns. Procurement requirements, including construction requirements, estimated to be between $2,500 and $50,000 must be reserved for eligible VSB concerns if the criteria in paragraph (c) of this section are met.

(b) Definitions.

(1) The term designated SBA district means the geographic area served by any of the following SBA district offices:

(i) Albuquerque, NM, serving New Mexico;

(ii) Los Angeles, CA, serving the following counties in California: Los Angeles, Santa Barbara, and Ventura;

(iii) Boston, MA, serving Massachusetts;

(iv) Louisville, KY, serving Kentucky;

(v) Columbus, OH, serving the following counties in Ohio: Adams, Allen, Ashland, Athens, Auglaize, Belmont, Brown, Butler, Champaign, Clark, Clermont, Clinton, Coshocton, Crawford, Darke, Delaware, Fairfield, Fayette, Franklin, Gallia, Greene, Guernsey, Hamilton, Hancock, Hardin, Highland, Hocking, Holmes, Jackson, Knox, Lawrence, Licking, Logan, Madison, Marion, Meigs, Mercer, Miami, Monroe, Montgomery, Morgan, Morrow, Muskingum, Noble, Paulding, Perry, Pickaway, Pike, Preble, Putnam, Richland, Ross, Scioto, Shelby, Union, Van Wert, Vinton, Warren, Washington, and Wyandot;

(vi) New Orleans, LA, serving Louisiana;

(vii) Detroit, MI, serving Michigan;


(ix) El Paso, TX, serving the following counties in Texas: Brewster, Culberson, El Paso, Hudspeth, Jeff Davis, Pecos, Presidio, Reeves, and Terrell; and

(x) Santa Ana, CA, serving the following counties in California: Orange, Riverside, and San Bernadino.

(2) The term very small business or VSB means a concern whose headquarters is located within the geographic area served by a designated SBA district and, together with its affiliates, has no more than 15 employees and has average annual receipts that do not exceed $1 million. The terms concerns, affiliates, average annual receipts, and employees have the meaning given to them in §§121.105, 121.103, 121.104, and 121.106, respectively, of this chapter.

(c)(1) A contracting officer must set aside for VSB concerns each procurement that has an anticipated dollar value between $2,500 and $50,000 if:

(i) In the case of a procurement for manufactured or supply items:

(A) The buying activity is located within the geographical area served by a designated SBA district, and

(B) There is a reasonable expectation of obtaining offers from two or more responsible VSB concerns headquartered within the geographical area served by that designated SBA district that are competitive in terms of market prices, quality and delivery;

or

(ii) In the case of a procurement for other than manufactured or supply items:

(A) The requirement will be performed within the geographical area served by a designated SBA district, and

(B) There is a reasonable expectation of obtaining offers from two or more responsible VSB concerns headquartered within the geographical area served by that designated SBA district that are competitive in terms of market prices, quality and delivery.
The geographic areas served by the SBA Los Angeles and Santa Ana District Offices will be treated as one designated SBA district for the purposes of this section.

(3) If the contracting officer determines that there is not a reasonable expectation of receiving at least two responsible offers from VSB concerns headquartered within the geographic area served by the applicable designated SBA district, he or she must include in the contract file the reason(s) for this determination, and solicit the procurement pursuant to the provisions of 48 CFR 19.502-2. SBA may appeal such determination using the same procedure described in 48 CFR 19.505.

(4) If the contracting officer receives only one acceptable offer from a responsible VSB concern in response to a VSB set-aside, the contracting officer will make an award to that firm. If the contracting officer receives no acceptable offers from responsible VSB concerns, he or she will withdraw the procurement and, if still valid, must re-solicit it pursuant to the provisions of 48 CFR 19.502-2.

(d) Where a procurement is set aside for VSB concerns, only those VSB concerns whose headquarters are located within the geographic area served by the applicable designated SBA district are eligible to submit offers in response to the solicitation.

(e) Nothing in this section shall be construed to alter in any way the procedures by which procuring activities award contracts under the SBA’s 8(a) Business Development program (see 13 CFR part 124).

(f) This pilot program terminates on September 30, 2000. Any award under this program must be made on or before this date.

[63 FR 46642, Sept. 2, 1998]

PART 126—HUBZONE PROGRAM

Subpart A—Provisions of General Applicability

Sec. 126.100 What is the purpose of the HUBZone program?
126.101 Which government departments or agencies are affected directly by the HUBZone program?
126.102 What is the effect of the HUBZone program on the section 8(d) subcontracting program?
126.103 What definitions are important in the HUBZone program?

Subpart B—Requirements to be a Qualified HUBZone SBC

126.200 What requirements must a concern meet to receive SBA certification as a qualified HUBZone SBC?
126.201 For this purpose, who does SBA consider to own a HUBZone SBC?
126.202 Who does SBA consider to control a HUBZone SBC?
126.203 What size standards apply to HUBZone SBCs?
126.204 May a qualified HUBZone SBC have affiliates?
126.205 May WOBs, 8(a) participants or SDBs be qualified HUBZone SBCs?
126.206 May non-manufacturers be certified as qualified HUBZone SBCs?
126.207 May a qualified HUBZone SBC have offices or facilities in another HUBZone or outside a HUBZone?

Subpart C—Certification

126.300 How may a concern be certified as a qualified HUBZone SBC?
126.301 Is there any other way for a concern to obtain certification?
126.302 When may a concern apply for certification?
126.303 Where must a concern file its certification?
126.304 What must a concern submit to SBA?
126.305 What format must the certification to SBA take?
126.306 How will SBA process the certification?
126.307 Where will SBA maintain the List of qualified HUBZone SBCs?
126.308 What happens if SBA inadvertently omits a qualified HUBZone SBC from the List?
126.309 How may a declined or de-certified concern seek certification at a later date?

Subpart D—Program Examinations

126.400 Who will conduct program examinations?
126.401 What will SBA examine?
126.402 When may SBA conduct program examinations?
126.403 May SBA require additional information from a HUBZone SBC?
126.404 What happens if SBA is unable to verify a qualified HUBZone SBC’s eligibility?
126.405 What happens if SBA verifies eligibility?
Small Business Administration

Subpart E—Maintaining HUBZone Status

§ 126.100 What is the purpose of the HUBZone program?

The purpose of the HUBZone program is to provide federal contracting assistance for qualified SBCs located in historically underutilized business zones in an effort to increase employment opportunities, investment, and economic development in such areas.

§ 126.101 Which government departments or agencies are affected directly by the HUBZone program?

(a) Until September 30, 2000, the HUBZone program applies only to procurements by the following departments and agencies:

(1) Department of Agriculture;
(2) Department of Defense;
(3) Department of Energy;
(4) Department of Health and Human Services;
412

§ 126.102

(5) Department of Housing and Urban Development;
(6) Department of Transportation;
(7) Department of Veterans Affairs;
(8) Environmental Protection Agency;
(9) General Services Administration; and
(10) National Aeronautics and Space Administration.

(b) After September 30, 2000, the HUBZone program will apply to all federal departments and agencies which employ one or more contracting officers as defined by 41 U.S.C. 423(f)(5).

(c) The HUBZone program does not apply to contracts awarded by state and local governments. However, state and local governments may use the List of qualified HUBZone SBCs to identify qualified HUBZone SBCs for similar programs authorized under state or local law.


§ 126.103

What definitions are important in the HUBZone program?

Administrator means the Administrator of the United States Small Business Administration (SBA).

AA/8(a)BD means SBA’s Associate Administrator for 8(a) Business Development.

AA/HUB means SBA’s Associate Administrator for the HUBZone Program.

ADA/GC&8(a)BD means SBA’s Associate Deputy Administrator for Government Contracting and 8(a) Business Development.

Certify means the process by which SBA determines that a HUBZone SBC is qualified for the HUBZone program and entitled to be included in SBA’s “List of Qualified HUBZone SBCs.”

Citizen means a person born or naturalized in the United States. SBA does not consider holders of permanent visas and resident aliens to be citizens.

Concern means a firm which satisfies the requirements in §§121.105(a) and (b) of this title.

Contract opportunity means a situation in which a requirement for a procurement exists, none of the exclusions from §126.605 applies, and any applicable conditions in §126.607 are met.

County means the political subdivisions recognized as a county by a state or commonwealth or which is an equivalent political subdivision such as a parish, borough, independent city, or municipio, where such subdivisions are not subdivisions within counties.

County unemployment rate is the rate of unemployment for a county based on the most recent data available from the United States Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics. The appropriate data may be found in the DOL/BLS publication titled “Supplement 2, Unemployment in States and Local Areas.” This publication is available for public inspection at the Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics, Division of Local Area Unemployment Statistics located at 2 Massachusetts Ave., NE, Room 4675, Washington D.C. 20212. A copy is also available at SBA, Office of AA/HUB, 409 3rd Street, SW, Washington D.C. 20416.

De-certify means the process by which SBA determines that a concern is no longer a qualified HUBZone SBC and removes that concern from its List.

Employee means a person (or persons) employed by a HUBZone SBC on a full-time (or full-time equivalent), permanent basis. Full-time equivalent includes employees who work 30 hours per week or more. Full-time equivalent also includes the aggregate of employees who work less than 30 hours a week, where the work hours of such employees add up to at least a 40 hour work week. The totality of the circumstances, including factors relevant for tax purposes, will determine whether persons are employees of a concern. Temporary employees, independent contractors or leased employees are not employees for these purposes.

Example 1: 4 employees each work 20 hours per week; SBA will regard that circumstance as 2 full-time equivalent employees.

Example 2: 1 employee works 20 hours per week and 1 employee works 15 hours per
week; SBA will regard that circumstance as not a full-time equivalent.

Example 3: 1 employee works 15 hours per week; 1 employee works 10 hours per week; and 1 employee works 20 hours per week; SBA will regard that circumstance as 1 full-time equivalent employee.

Example 4: 1 employee works 30 hours per week and 2 employees each work 15 hours per week; SBA will regard that circumstance as 1 full-time equivalent employee.

**HUBZone** means a historically underutilized business zone, which is an area located within one or more qualified census tracts, qualified non-metropolitan counties, or lands within the external boundaries of an Indian reservation. See other definitions in this section for further details.

**HUBZone small business concern** (HUBZone SBC) means a concern that is small as defined by §126.203, is exclusively owned and controlled by persons who are United States citizens, and has its principal office located in a HUBZone.

**HUBZone 8(a) concern** means a concern that is certified as an 8(a) program participant and which is also a qualified HUBZone SBC.

**Indian reservation** has the meaning used by the Bureau of Indian Affairs in §126.103. For the location of a Federal Depository Library, call toll-free (888) 293-6498 or contact the Bureau of the Census, Population Division, Washington D.C. 20233-8400.

**List** refers to the database of qualified HUBZone SBCs that SBA has certified.

**Median household income** has the meaning used by the Bureau of the Census, United States Department of Commerce, in its publication titled, “1990 Census of Population, Social and Economic Characteristics,” Report Number CP-2, pages B-14 and B-17. This publication is available for inspection at any local Federal Depository Library. For the location of a Federal Depository Library, call toll-free (888) 293-6498 or contact the Bureau of the Census, Income Statistics Division, Housing and Economic Statistics Division, Washington D.C. 20233-8400.

**Metropolitan statistical area** means an area as defined in section 143(k)(2)(B) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, (Title 26 of the United States Code).


**Person** means a natural person. Pursuant to the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 43 U.S.C. 1626(e), Alaska Native Corporations and any direct or indirect subsidiary corporations, joint ventures, and partnerships of a Native Corporation are deemed to be owned and controlled by Natives, and are thus persons.

**Principal office** means the location where the greatest number of the concern’s employees at any one location perform their work. However, for those concerns whose “primary industry” (see 13 CFR 121.107) is service or construction (see 13 CFR 121.201), the determination of principal office excludes the concern’s employees who perform the majority of their work at job-site locations to fulfill specific contract obligations.
§ 126.200 What requirements must a concern meet to receive SBA certification as a qualified HUBZone SBC?

(a) The concern must be a HUBZone SBC as defined in §126.103; and

(b) At least 35 percent of the concern's employees must reside in a HUBZone, and the HUBZone SBC must certify that it will attempt to maintain this percentage during the performance of any HUBZone contract it receives. When determining the percentage of employees that reside in a HUBZone, if the percentage results in a fraction round up to the nearest whole number,

Example 1: A concern has 25 employees, 35 percent or 8.75 employees must reside in a HUBZone. Thus, 9 employees must reside in a HUBZone.

Example 2: A concern has 95 employees, 35 percent or 33.25 employees must reside in a HUBZone. Thus, 34 employees must reside in a HUBZone.

and

(c) The HUBZone SBC must certify that it will ensure that it will comply with certain contract performance requirements in connection with contracts awarded to it as a qualified HUBZone SBC, as set forth in §126.700.

§ 126.201 For this purpose, who does SBA consider to own a HUBZone SBC?

An owner of a HUBZone SBC is a person who owns any legal or equitable interest in such HUBZone SBC. More specifically:

(a) Corporations. SBA will consider any person who owns stock, whether voting or non-voting, to be an owner. SBA will consider options to purchase stock to have been exercised. SBA will consider the right to convert debentures into voting stock to have been exercised.

(b) Partnerships. SBA will consider a partner, whether general or limited, to be an owner if that partner owns an equitable interest in the partnership.

(c) Sole proprietorships. The proprietor is the owner.
(d) Limited liability companies. SBA will consider each member to be an owner of a limited liability company.

Example 1: All stock of a corporation is owned by U.S. citizens. The president of the corporation, a non-U.S. citizen, owns no stock in the corporation, but owns options to purchase stock in the corporation. SBA will consider the option exercised, and the corporation is not eligible to be a qualified HUBZone SBC.

Example 2: A partnership is owned 99.9 percent by persons who are U.S. citizens, and 0.1 percent by someone who is not. The partnership is not eligible because it is not 100 percent owned by U.S. citizens.

§ 126.202 Who does SBA consider to control a HUBZone SBC?

Control means both the day-to-day management and long-term decision-making authority for the HUBZone SBC. Many persons share control of a concern, including each of those occupying the following positions: officer, director, general partner, managing partner, and manager. In addition, key employees who possess critical licenses, expertise or responsibilities related to the concern’s primary economic activity may share significant control of the concern. SBA will consider the control potential of such key employees on a case by case basis.

§ 126.203 What size standards apply to HUBZone SBCs?

(a) At time of application for certification. A HUBZone SBC must meet SBA’s size standards for its primary industry classification as defined in §121.201 of this title. If SBA is unable to verify that a concern is small, SBA may deny the concern status as a qualified HUBZone SBC, or SBA may request a formal size determination from the responsible Government Contracting Area Director or designee.

(b) At time of contract offer. A HUBZone SBC must be small within the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract.

§ 126.204 May a qualified HUBZone SBC have affiliates?

A concern may have affiliates provided that the aggregate size of the concern and all its affiliates is small as defined in part 121 of this title.

§ 126.205 May WOBs, 8(a) participants or SDBs be qualified HUBZone SBCs?

Yes. WOBs, 8(a) participants, and SDBs can qualify as HUBZone SBCs if they meet the additional requirements in this part.

§ 126.206 May non-manufacturers be certified as qualified HUBZone SBCs?

Non-manufacturers (referred to in the HUBZone Act of 1997 as “regular dealers”) may be certified as qualified HUBZone SBCs if they meet all of the requirements set forth in §126.200. For purposes of this part, a “non-manufacturer” is defined in §121.406(b)(1)(i) and (ii) of this title.

§ 126.207 May a qualified HUBZone SBC have offices or facilities in another HUBZone or outside a HUBZone?

Yes. A qualified HUBZone SBC may have offices or facilities in another HUBZone or even outside a HUBZone and still be a qualified HUBZone SBC. However, in order to qualify, the concern’s principal office must be located in a HUBZone.

Subpart C—Certification

§ 126.300 How may a concern be certified as a qualified HUBZone SBC?

A concern must apply to SBA for certification. The application must include a representation that it meets the eligibility requirements described in §126.200 and must submit relevant supporting information. SBA will consider the information provided by the concern in order to determine whether the concern qualifies. SBA, in its sole discretion, may rely solely upon the information submitted to establish eligibility, or may request additional information, or may verify the information before making a determination. If SBA determines that the concern is a qualified HUBZone SBC, it will issue a certification to that effect and add the concern to the List.

[66 FR 4645, Jan. 18, 2001]
§ 126.301 Is there any other way for a concern to obtain certification?

No. SBA certification is the only way to qualify for HUBZone program status.

§ 126.302 When may a concern apply for certification?

A concern may apply to SBA and submit the required information whenever it can represent that it meets the eligibility requirements, subject to §126.309. All representations and supporting information contained in the application must be complete and accurate as of the date of submission. The application must be signed by an officer of the concern who is authorized to represent the concern.

§ 126.303 Where must a concern file its certification?

The concern must file its certification with the AA/HUB, U.S. Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416.

§ 126.304 What must a concern submit to SBA?

(a) To be certified by SBA as a qualified HUBZone SBC, a concern must represent to SBA that under the definitions set forth in §126.103:

1. It is a small business concern that is both owned only by United States citizens and controlled only by United States citizens;
2. Its principal office is located in a HUBZone;
3. Not less than 35 percent of its employees reside in a HUBZone;
4. It will use good faith efforts to ensure that a minimum percentage of 35 percent of its employees continue to reside in a HUBZone so long as SBA certifies it as qualified and during the performance of any contract awarded to it on the basis of its status as a qualified HUBZone SBC; and
5. It will ensure that, where it enters into subcontracts to aid in performance of any prime contracts awarded to it because of its status as a qualified HUBZone SBC, it will incur not less than a certain minimum percentage of certain contract costs as set forth in §126.700.

(b) If the concern is applying for HUBZone status based on a location within the external boundaries of an Indian reservation, the concern must submit with its application for certification official documentation from the appropriate Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) Land Titles and Records Office with jurisdiction over the concern’s area, confirming that it is located within the external boundaries of an Indian reservation. BIA lists the Land Titles and Records Offices and their jurisdiction in 25 CFR 150.4 and 150.5. In cases where BIA is unable to verify whether the business is located within the external boundaries of an Indian reservation, applicants should contact the AA/HUB and SBA will assist them.

(c) In addition to these representations, the concern must submit the forms, attachments, and any additional information required by SBA.

§ 126.305 What format must the certification to SBA take?

A concern must submit the required information in either a written or electronic application form provided by SBA. An electronic application must be sufficiently authenticated for enforcement purposes.

§ 126.306 How will SBA process the certification?

(a) The AA/HUB is authorized to approve or decline certifications. SBA will receive and review all certifications, but SBA will not process incomplete packages. SBA will make its determination within 30 calendar days after receipt of a complete package whenever practicable. The decision of the AA/HUB is the final agency decision.

(b) SBA will base its certification on facts existing on the date of submission. SBA, in its sole discretion, may request additional information or clarification of information contained in the submission at any time.

(c) If SBA approves the application, SBA will send a written notice to the concern and automatically enter it on the List described in §126.307.

(d) A decision to deny eligibility must be in writing and state the specific reasons for denial.
§ 126.307 Where will SBA maintain the List of qualified HUBZone SBCs?

SBA maintains the List at its Internet website at http://www.sba.gov/HUB. Requesters also may obtain a copy of the List by writing to the AA/HUB at U.S. Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416 or via e-mail at aahub@sba.gov.

§ 126.308 What happens if SBA inadvertently omits a qualified HUBZone SBC from the List?

A HUBZone SBC that has received SBA’s notice of certification, but is not on the List within 10 business days thereafter should immediately notify the AA/HUB in writing at U.S. Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416 or via e-mail at aahub@sba.gov. The concern must appear on the List to be eligible for HUBZone contracts.

§ 126.309 How may a declined or de-certified concern seek certification at a later date?

A concern that SBA has declined or de-certified may seek certification no sooner than one year from the date of decline or de-certification if it believes that it has overcome all reasons for decline through changed circumstances, and is currently eligible.

Subpart D—Program Examinations

§ 126.400 Who will conduct program examinations?

SBA field staff or others designated by the AA/HUB will conduct program examinations.

§ 126.401 What will SBA examine?

(a) Eligibility. Examiners will verify that the qualified HUBZone SBC met the requirements set forth in §126.200 at the time of its application for certification and at the time of examination.

(b) Scope of review. Examiners may review any information related to the HUBZone SBC qualifying requirements, including documentation related to the location and ownership of the concern, the employee percentage requirements, and the concern’s attempt to maintain this percentage. The qualified HUBZone SBC must document each employee’s residence address through employment records. The examiner also may review property tax, public utility or postal records, and other relevant documents. The concern must retain documentation demonstrating satisfaction of the employee residence and other qualifying requirements for 6 years from date of submission to SBA.

§ 126.402 When may SBA conduct program examinations?

SBA may conduct a program examination at the time the concern certifies to SBA that it meets the requirements of the program or at any other time while the concern is on the List or subsequent to receipt of HUBZone contract benefits. For example, SBA may conduct a program examination to verify eligibility upon notification of a material change under §126.501. Additionally, SBA, in its sole discretion, may perform random program examinations to determine continuing compliance with program requirements, or it may conduct a program examination in response to credible information calling into question the HUBZone status of a small business concern. For protests to the HUBZone status of a small business concern in regard to a particular procurement, see §126.800.

§ 126.403 May SBA require additional information from a HUBZone SBC?

Yes. At the discretion of the AA/HUB, SBA has the right to require that a HUBZone SBC submit additional information as part of the certification process, or at any time thereafter. If SBA finds a HUBZone SBC is not qualified, SBA will de-certify the concern and delete its name from the List. SBA may choose to pursue penalties against any concern that has made material misrepresentations in its submissions to SBA in accordance with §126.900.

§ 126.404 What happens if SBA is unable to verify a qualified HUBZone SBC’s eligibility?

(a) Authorized SBA headquarters personnel will first notify the concern in writing of the reasons why it is no longer eligible.
§ 126.405 What happens if SBA verifies eligibility?

If SBA verifies that the concern is eligible, it will amend the date of certification on the List to reflect the date of verification.

Subpart E—Maintaining HUBZone Status

§ 126.500 How does a qualified HUBZone SBC maintain HUBZone status?

(a) Any qualified HUBZone SBC wishing to remain on the List must self-certify annually to SBA that it remains a qualified HUBZone SBC.

(b) Concerns wishing to remain in the program without any interruption must self-certify their continued eligibility to SBA within 30 calendar days after each annual anniversary of their date of certification. Failure to do so will result in SBA de-certifying the concern. The concern then would have to submit a new application for certification under §§126.300 through 126.306.

(c) The self-certification to SBA must be in writing and must represent that the circumstances relative to eligibility which existed on the date of certification showing on the List have not materially changed.

§ 126.501 What are a qualified HUBZone SBC's ongoing obligations to SBA?

The concern must immediately notify SBA of any material change which could affect its eligibility. The notification must be in writing, and must be sent or delivered to the AA/HUB to comply with this requirement. Failure of a qualified HUBZone SBC to notify SBA of such a material change will result in immediate de-certification and removal from the List, and SBA may seek the imposition of penalties under §126.900. If the concern later becomes eligible for the program, the concern must apply for certification pursuant to §§126.300 through 126.309 and must include with its application for certification a full explanation of why it failed to notify SBA of the material change. If SBA is not satisfied with the explanation provided, SBA may decline to certify the concern pursuant to §126.306.

§ 126.502 Is there a limit to the length of time a qualified HUBZone SBC may be on the List?

There is no limit to the length of time a qualified HUBZone SBC may remain on the List so long as it continues to follow the provisions of §§126.200, 126.500, and 126.501.

§ 126.503 When is a concern removed from the List?

If SBA determines at any time that a HUBZone SBC is not qualified, SBA may de-certify the HUBZone SBC, remove the concern from the List, and seek imposition of penalties pursuant to §126.900. An adverse finding in the resolution of a protest also may result in de-certification and removal from the List, and the imposition of penalties pursuant to §126.900. Failure to notify SBA of a material change which could affect a concern’s eligibility will result in immediate de-certification, removal from the List, and SBA may seek the imposition of penalties under §126.900.

Subpart F—Contractual Assistance

§ 126.600 What are HUBZone contracts?

HUBZone contracts are contracts awarded to a qualified HUBZone SBC through any of the following procurement methods:

(a) Sole source awards to qualified HUBZone SBCs;

(b) Set-aside awards based on competition restricted to qualified HUBZone SBCs; or

(c) Awards to qualified HUBZone SBCs through full and open competition after a price evaluation preference in favor of qualified HUBZone SBCs.
§ 126.601 What additional requirements must a qualified HUBZone SBC meet to bid on a contract?

(a) In order to submit an offer on a specific HUBZone contract, a concern must be small under the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract.

(b) At the time a qualified HUBZone SBC submits its offer on a specific contract, it must certify to the contracting officer that

(1) It is a qualified HUBZone SBC which appears on SBA’s List;

(2) There has been no material change in its circumstances since the date of certification shown on the List which could affect its HUBZone eligibility; and

(3) It is small under the SIC code assigned to the procurement.

(c) If bidding as a joint venture, each qualified HUBZone SBC must make the certifications in paragraphs (b)(1), (2), and (3) of this section separately under its own name.

(d) A qualified HUBZone SBC which is a non-manufacturer may submit an offer on a HUBZone contract for supplies if it meets the requirements of the non-manufacturer rule set forth at §121.406(b)(1)(i) and (ii) of this title, and if the small manufacturer providing the end item for the contract is also a qualified HUBZone SBC. However, for HUBZone contracts at or below $25,000 in total value, a qualified HUBZone SBC may supply the end item of any manufacturer, including a large business.


§ 126.602 Must a qualified HUBZone SBC maintain the employee residency percentage during contract performance?

The qualified HUBZone SBC must attempt to maintain the required percentage of employees who reside in a HUBZone during the performance of any contract awarded to the concern on the basis of HUBZone status. “Attempt to maintain” means making substantive and documented efforts to maintain that percentage such as written offers of employment, published advertisements seeking employees, and attendance at job fairs. HUBZone contracts are described more fully in §126.600. Enforcement of this paragraph will be the responsibility of SBA, which will monitor the requirement in accordance with §§126.400 through 126.405.

§ 126.603 Does HUBZone certification guarantee receipt of HUBZone contracts?

No. Qualified HUBZone SBCs should market their capabilities to appropriate procuring agencies in order to increase their prospects of having a requirement set aside for HUBZone contract award.

§ 126.604 Who decides if a contract opportunity for HUBZone set-aside competition exists?

The contracting officer for the contracting activity makes this decision.

§ 126.605 What requirements are not available for HUBZone contracts?

A contracting activity may not make a requirement available for a HUBZone contract if:

(a) The contracting activity otherwise would fulfill that requirement through award to Federal Prison Industries, Inc. under 18 U.S.C. 4124 or 4125, or to Javits-Wagner-O’Day Act participating non-profit agencies for the blind and severely disabled, under 41 U.S.C. 46 et seq., as amended; or

(b) An 8(a) participant currently is performing that requirement or SBA has accepted that requirement for performance under the authority of the section 8(a) program, unless SBA has consented to release of the requirement from the section 8(a) program; or

(c) The requirement is at or below the micropurchase threshold.

§ 126.606 May a contracting officer request that SBA release an 8(a) requirement for award as a HUBZone contract?

Yes. However, SBA will grant its consent only where neither the incumbent nor any other 8(a) participant(s) can perform the requirement, and where the section 8(a) program will not be adversely affected. The SBA official authorized to grant such consent is the AA/8(a)BD.
§ 126.607 When must a contracting officer set aside a requirement for qualified HUBZone SBCs?

(a) The contracting officer first must review a requirement to determine whether it is excluded from HUBZone contracting pursuant to § 126.605.

(b) The contracting officer must identify qualified HUBZone 8(a) concerns and other 8(a) concerns. The contracting officer must give first priority to qualified HUBZone 8(a) concerns.

(c) After determining that neither paragraph (a) or (b) of this section apply, the contracting officer must set aside the requirement for competition restricted to qualified HUBZone SBCs if the contracting officer:

(1) Has a reasonable expectation, after reviewing SBA’s list of qualified HUBZone SBCs that at least two responsible qualified HUBZone SBCs will submit offers; and

(2) Determines that award can be made at fair market price.

§ 126.608 Are there HUBZone contracting opportunities below the simplified acquisition threshold?

Yes. If the requirement is below the simplified acquisition threshold, the contracting officer should set-aside the requirement for consideration among qualified HUBZone SBCs using simplified acquisition procedures.

§ 126.609 What must the contracting officer do if a contracting opportunity does not exist for competition among qualified HUBZone SBCs?

If a contract opportunity for competition among qualified SBCs does not exist under the provisions of §126.607, the contracting officer must first consider the possibility of making an award to a qualified HUBZone SBC on a sole source basis, and then to a small business under small business set-aside procedures, in that order of precedence. If the criteria are not met for any of these special contracting authorities, then the contracting officer may solicit the procurement through another appropriate contracting method.

§ 126.610 May SBA appeal a contracting officer’s decision not to reserve a procurement for award as a HUBZone contract?

The Administrator may appeal a contracting officer’s decision not to make a particular requirement available for award as a HUBZone sole source or a HUBZone set-aside contract.

§ 126.611 What is the process for such an appeal?

(a) Notice of appeal. When the contracting officer rejects a recommendation by SBA’s Procurement Center Representative to make a requirement available for award as a HUBZone contract, he or she must notify the Procurement Center Representative as soon as practicable. If the Administrator intends to appeal the decision, SBA must notify the contracting officer no later than five business days after receiving notice of the contracting officer’s decision.

(b) Suspension of action. Upon receipt of notice of SBA’s intent to appeal, the contracting officer must suspend further action regarding the procurement until the head of the contracting activity issues a written decision on the appeal, unless the head of the contracting activity makes a written determination that urgent and compelling circumstances which significantly affect the interests of the United States compel award of the contract.

(c) Deadline for appeal. Within 15 business days of SBA’s notification to the contracting officer, SBA must file its formal appeal with the head of the contracting activity or that agency may consider the appeal withdrawn.

(d) Decision. The contracting activity must specify in writing the reasons for a denial of an appeal brought under this section.

§ 126.612 When may a contracting officer award sole source contracts to a qualified HUBZone SBC?

A contracting officer may award a sole source contract to a qualified HUBZone SBC only when the contracting officer determines that:

(a) None of the provisions of §§126.605 or 126.607 apply;
Small Business Administration

(b) The anticipated award price of the contract, including options, will not exceed:

(1) $5,000,000 for a requirement within the SIC codes for manufacturing; or
(2) $3,000,000 for a requirement within all other SIC codes;

c) Two or more qualified HUBZone SBCs are not likely to submit offers;

d) A qualified HUBZone SBC is a responsible contractor able to perform the contract; and

e) Contract award can be made at a fair and reasonable price.

§ 126.614 How does a price evaluation preference affect the bid of a qualified HUBZone SBC in full and open competition?

Where a contracting officer will award a contract on the basis of full and open competition, the contracting officer must deem the price offered by a qualified HUBZone SBC to be lower than the price offered by another offeror (other than another small business concern) if the price offered by the qualified HUBZone SBC is not more than 10 percent higher than the price offered by the otherwise lowest, responsive, and responsible offeror.

Example: In a full and open competition, a qualified HUBZone SBC submits an offer of $98; another small business concern submits an offer of $100; and a large business submits an offer of $93. The lowest, responsive, responsible offeror would be the large business. However, the contracting officer must apply the HUBZone price evaluation preference. If the qualified HUBZone SBC’s offer is not more than 10 percent higher than the large business’s offer, the contracting officer must deem the qualified HUBZone SBC’s price as lower than the price of the large business. In this example, the qualified HUBZone SBC’s offer is not more than 10 percent higher than the large business’s price and, consequently, the qualified HUBZone SBC displaces the large business as the lowest, responsive, and responsible offeror. If the HUBZone SBC offer were $101, the award would go to the large business at $93. If the HUBZone SBC will not benefit from the preference, the preference is not applied to change an offer.

§ 126.615 May a large business participate on a HUBZone contract?

A large business may not participate as a prime contractor on a HUBZone award, but may participate as a subcontractor to an otherwise qualified HUBZone SBC, subject to the contract performance requirements set forth in § 126.700.

§ 126.616 What requirements must a joint venture satisfy to bid on a HUBZone contract?

A joint venture may bid on a HUBZone contract if the joint venture meets all of the following requirements:

(a) HUBZone joint venture. A qualified HUBZone SBC may enter into a joint venture with one or more other qualified HUBZone SBCs, 8(a) participants, or WOBs for the purpose of performing a specific HUBZone contract.

(b) Size of concerns. A joint venture of at least one qualified HUBZone SBC and an 8(a) participant or a woman-owned small business concern may submit an offer for a HUBZone contract so long as each concern is small under the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract, provided:

(1) For a procurement having a revenue-based size standard, the procurement exceeds half the size standard corresponding to the SIC code assigned to the contract; and

(2) For a procurement having an employee-based size standard, the procurement exceeds $10 million.
(c) Performance of work. The aggregate of the qualified HUBZone SBCs to the joint venture, not each concern separately, must perform the applicable percentage of work required by §126.700.

Subpart G—Contract Performance Requirements

§126.700 What are the subcontracting percentages requirements under this program?

(a) Subcontracting percentage requirements. A qualified HUBZone SBC prime contractor can subcontract part of a HUBZone contract provided:

1. In the case of a contract for services (except construction), the qualified HUBZone SBC spends at least 50 percent of the cost of the contract performance incurred for personnel on the concern’s employees or on the employees of other qualified HUBZone SBCs;

2. In the case of a contract for general construction, the qualified HUBZone SBC spends at least 15 percent of the cost of contract performance incurred for personnel on the concern’s employees or the employees of other qualified HUBZone SBCs;

3. In the case of a contract for construction by special trade contractors, the qualified HUBZone SBC spends at least 25 percent of the cost of contract performance incurred for personnel on the concerns’ employees or the employees of other qualified HUBZone SBCs; and

4. In the case of a contract for procurement of supplies (other than a procurement from a regular dealer in such supplies) the qualified HUBZone SBC spends at least 50 percent of the manufacturing cost (excluding the cost of materials) on performing the contract in a HUBZone. One or more qualified HUBZone SBCs may combine to meet this subcontracting percentage requirement.

(b) Definitions. Many definitions applicable to this section can be found in §125.6 of this title.

§126.702 How can the subcontracting percentage requirements be changed?

Representatives of a national trade or industry group (as defined by two-digit Major Group industry codes) may request a change in subcontracting percentage requirements for that industry. Changes in subcontracting percentage requirements may be requested only for categories defined by two-digit Major Group industry codes in the Standard Industry Classification (SIC) Code system. SBA will not consider requests from anyone other than a representative of a national trade or industry group or requests for changes for four-digit SIC Code categories.

§126.703 What are the procedures for requesting changes in subcontracting percentages?

(a) Format of request. There is no prescribed format, but the requester should try to demonstrate to the Administrator that a change in percentage is necessary to reflect conventional industry practices, and should support its request with information including, but not limited to:

1. Information relative to the economic conditions and structure of the entire national industry;

2. Market data, technical changes in the industry and industry trends;

3. Specific reasons and justifications for the change in the subcontracting percentage;

4. The effect such a change would have on the federal procurement process; and

5. Information demonstrating how the proposed change would promote the purposes of the HUBZone Program.

(b) Notice to public. Upon an adequate preliminary showing to SBA, SBA will publish in the Federal Register a notice of its receipt of a request that it consider a change in the subcontracting percentage requirements for a particular industry for HUBZone contracts. The notice will identify the group making the request, and give the public an opportunity to submit to the Administrator information and arguments in both support and opposition.
Small Business Administration

§ 126.803

(c) Comments. Once SBA has published a notice in the Federal Register, it will afford a period of not less than 60 days for public comment.

(d) Decision. SBA will render its decision after the close of the comment period. If it decides against a change, it will publish notice of its decision in the Federal Register. Concurrent with the notice, SBA will advise the requester of its decision in writing. If it decides in favor of a change, SBA will propose an appropriate change to this part in accordance with proper rule-making procedures.

Subpart H—Protests

§ 126.800 Who may protest the status of a qualified HUBZone SBC?

(a) For sole source procurements. SBA or the contracting officer may protest the proposed awardee’s qualified HUBZone SBC status.

(b) For all other procurements. Any interested party may protest the apparent successful offeror’s qualified HUBZone SBC status.

§ 126.801 How does one file a HUBZone status protest?

(a) General. The protest procedures described in this part are separate from those governing size protests and appeals. All protests relating to whether a qualified HUBZone SBC is a “small” business for purposes of any Federal program are subject to part 121 of this title and must be filed in accordance with that part. If a protester protests both the size of the HUBZone SBC and whether the concern meets the HUBZone qualifying requirements set forth in §126.200, SBA will process each protest concurrently, under the procedures set forth in part 121 of this title and this part.

(b) Format. Protests must be in writing and state all specific grounds for the protest. A protest merely asserting that the protested concern is not a qualified HUBZone SBC, without setting forth specific facts or allegations, is insufficient.

(c) Filing. (1) An interested party other than a contracting officer or SBA must submit its written protest to the contracting officer.

(2) A contracting officer and SBA must submit their protest to the AA/HUB.

(3) Protests may deliver their protests in person, by facsimile, by express delivery service, or by U.S. mail (postmarked within the applicable time period).

(d) Timeliness. (1) An interested party must submit its protest by close of business on the fifth business day after bid opening (in sealed bid acquisitions) or by close of business on the fifth business day after notification by the contracting officer of the apparent successful offeror (in negotiated acquisitions).

(2) Any protest received after the time limits is untimely.

(3) Any protest received prior to bid opening or notification of intended award, whichever applies, is premature.

(e) Referral to SBA. The contracting officer must forward to SBA any non-premature protest received, notwithstanding whether he or she believes it is sufficiently specific or timely. The contracting officer must send protests to AA/HUB, U.S. Small Business Administration, 409 3rd Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416.

§ 126.802 Who decides a HUBZone status protest?

The AA/HUB or designee will determine whether the concern has qualified HUBZone status.

§ 126.803 How will SBA process a HUBZone status protest?

(a) Notice of receipt of protest. (1) SBA immediately will notify the contracting officer and the protestor of the date SBA receives a protest and whether SBA will process the protest or dismiss it in accordance with §126.804.

(2) If SBA determines the protest is timely and sufficiently specific, SBA will notify the protested HUBZone SBC of the protest and the identity of the protestor. The protested HUBZone SBC may submit information responsive to the protest within 5 business days.

(b) Time period for determination. (1) SBA will determine the HUBZone status of the protested HUBZone SBC within 15 business days after receipt of a protest.
§ 126.804 Will SBA decide all HUBZone status protests?

SBA will decide all protests not dismissed as premature, untimely or nonspecific.

§ 126.805 What are the procedures for appeals of HUBZone status determinations?

(a) Who may appeal. The protested HUBZone SBC, the protestor, or the contracting officer may file appeals of protest determinations with SBA's ADA/GC&8(a)BD.

(b) Timeliness of appeal. SBA's ADA/GC&8(a)BD must receive the appeal no later than 5 business days after the date of receipt of the protest determination. SBA will dismiss any appeal received after the five-day period.

(c) Method of Submission. The party appealing the decision may deliver its appeal in person, by facsimile, by express delivery service, or by U.S. mail (postmarked within the applicable time period).

(d) Notice of appeal. The party bringing an appeal must provide notice of the appeal to the contracting activity contracting officer and either the protested HUBZone SBC or original protestor, as appropriate.

(e) Grounds for appeal. (1) SBA will re-examine a protest determination only if there was a clear and significant error in the processing of the protest or if the AA/HUB failed completely to consider a significant fact contained within the information supplied by the protestor or the protested HUBZone SBC.

(2) SBA will not consider additional information or changed circumstances that were not disclosed at the time of the AA/HUB's decision or that are based on disagreement with the findings and conclusions contained in the determination.

(f) Contents of appeal. The appeal must be in writing. The appeal must identify the protest determination being appealed and set forth a full and specific statement as to why the decision is erroneous or what significant fact the AA/HUB failed to consider.

(g) Completion of appeal after award. An appeal may proceed to completion even after award of the contract that prompted the protest, if so desired by the protested HUBZone SBC, or where SBA determines that a decision on appeal is meaningful.

(h) Decision. The ADA/GC&8(a)BD will make its decision within 5 business days of its receipt, if practicable, and will base its decision only on the information and documentation in the protest record as supplemented by the appeal. SBA will provide a copy of the decision to the contracting officer, the protestor, and the protested HUBZone SBC, consistent with law. The ADA/GC&8(a)BD's decision is the final agency decision.

Subpart I—Penalties

§ 126.900 What penalties may be imposed under this part?

(a) Suspension or debarment. The Agency debarring official may suspend or debar a person or concern pursuant to the procedures set forth in part 145 of this title. The contracting agency debarring official may debar or suspend a person or concern under the Federal Acquisition Regulation, 48 CFR Part 9, subpart 9.4.

(b) Civil penalties. Persons or concerns are subject to civil remedies under the False Claims Act, 31 U.S.C. 3729–3733,
and under the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act, 31 U.S.C. 3801–3812, and any other applicable laws.

(c) Criminal penalties. Persons or concerns are subject to severe criminal penalties for knowingly misrepresenting the HUBZone status of a small business concern in connection with procurement programs pursuant to section 16(d) of the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 645(d), as amended; 18 U.S.C. 1001; and 31 U.S.C. 3729–3733. Persons or concerns also are subject to criminal penalties for knowingly making false statements or misrepresentations to SBA for the purpose of influencing any actions of SBA pursuant to section 16(a) of the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 645(a), as amended, including failure to correct “continuing representations” that are no longer true.

PART 130—SMALL BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT CENTERS

§ 130.100 Introduction.

(a) Objective. The SBDC Program creates a broad-based system of assistance for the small business community by linking the resources of Federal, State and local governments with the resources of the educational community and the private sector. Although SBA is responsible for the general management and oversight of the SBDC Program, a partnership exists between SBA and the recipient organization for the delivery of assistance to the small business community.

(b) Incorporation of amended references. All references in these regulations to OMB Circulars, other SBA regulations, Standard Operating Procedures, and other sources of SBA policy guidance incorporate all ensuing changes or amendments to such sources.

§ 130.110 Definitions.

Applicant organization. An entity, described in §130.200(a), which applies to establish and operate an SBDC network.

Application. The written submission by a new applicant organization or an existing recipient organization explaining its projected SBDC activities for the upcoming budget period and requesting SBA funding for use in its operations.

Area of Service. The State or territory, or portion of a State or territory (when there is more than one SBDC in a State or territory), or the District of Columbia, in which an applicant organization proposes to provide services or in which a recipient organization provides services.

Budget period. The 12-month period in which expenditure obligations are incurred by an SBDC network, coinciding with either the calendar year or the Federal fiscal year.

Cash Match. Non-Federal funds allocated specifically to the operation of the SBDC network equalling no less than fifty percent of the Federal funds.

Cash Match includes direct costs committed by the applicant or recipient organization and sponsoring SBDC organizations, to the extent that such costs are committed as part of the verified, specific, line item direct costs prior to funding. Cash Match does not include indirect costs, overhead costs or in-kind contributions.

Cognizant Agency. The Federal agency, other than SBA, from which a recipient organization or sponsoring SBDC organization receives its largest grant or greatest amount of Federal funding, and from which it obtains an indirect cost rate for budgetary and funding purposes, applicable throughout the Federal government.

Cooperative Agreement. The written contract between SBA and a recipient organization, describing the conditions under which SBA awards Federal funds and recipient organizations provide services to the small business community.

Cosponsorship. A “Cosponsorship” as defined in and governed by §8(b)(1)(A) of the Act and SBA’s Standard Operating Procedures.

Counseling. Individual advice, guidance or instruction given to a small business person or entity.

Direct costs. “Direct costs” as defined in Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circulars A–21, A–87 and A–122. Recipient organizations must allocate at least 80 percent of the Federal funds provided through the Cooperative Agreement to the direct costs of program delivery.

Dispute. Dispute means a program or financial disagreement which the recipient organization requests be handled with SBA in a formal manner.

Grants Management Specialist. An SBA employee designated by the AA/SBDCs who is responsible for the financial review, award, and administration of one or more SBDC Cooperative Agreements.

Indirect costs. “Indirect costs” as defined in Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A–21, A–87 or A–122.

Lead Center. The entity which administers and operates the SBDC network.


Overmatched Amount. Non-Federal Contributions to SBDC project costs, including cash, in-kind contributions and indirect costs, in excess of the statutorily required amount.

Program Announcement. SBA’s annual publication of requirements which an applicant or recipient organization must address in its initial or renewal application.

Program income. Income earned or received by the SBDC network from any SBDC supported activity as defined in Attachment D of OMB Circular A–110 and Attachment E of OMB Circular A–102.

Program manager. An SBA employee responsible for overseeing the operations of one or more SBDCs.

Project officer. An SBA employee who negotiates the annual Cooperative Agreement and monitors the ongoing operations of an SBDC.

Project period. The period of time, usually in twelve (12) month increments, during which the SBDC network operates, beginning on the day of award and continuing over a number of budget periods.

Recipient organization. The name given to an applicant organization after funding is approved and the applicant organization enters into a Cooperative Agreement. The recipient organization receives the Federal funds and is responsible for establishing the Lead Center.

Recognized Organization. The organization whose members include a majority of SBDCs and which is recognized as an SBDC representative by SBA in accordance with §21(a)(3)(A) of the Small Business Act, 15 U.S.C. 648(a)(3)(A).

SBDC Director. The full-time senior manager designated by each recipient organization and approved by SBA.
SBDC network. The Lead Center and SBDC service providers.

SBDC service providers. SBDC network participants, including the Lead Center, subcenters (at times referred to as regional centers), satellite locations, and any other entity authorized by the recipient organization to perform SBDC services.

Specialized Services. SBDC services other than Counseling and Training.

Sponsoring SBDC organizations. Organizations or entities which establish one or more SBDC service providers as part of the SBDC network under a contract or agreement with the recipient organization.

Training. The provision of advice, guidance and instruction to groups of prospective and existing small business persons and entities, whether by in-person group sessions or by such communication modes as teleconferences, videos, publications and electronic media.

§ 130.200 Eligible entities.

(a) Recipient Organization. The following entities are eligible to operate an SBDC network:

(1) A public or private institution of higher education;
(2) A land-grant college or university;
(3) A college or school of business, engineering, commerce or agriculture;
(4) A community or junior college;
(5) An entity formed by two or more of the above entities; or
(6) Any entity which was operating as a recipient organization as of December 31, 1990.

(b) SBDC Service Providers. SBDC service providers are not required to meet the eligibility requirements of a recipient organization.

§ 130.300 Small Business Development Centers (SBDCs). [Reserved]

§ 130.310 Area of service.

The AA/SBDC shall designate in writing the Area of Service of each recipient organization, consistent with the State plan. More than one recipient organization may be located in a State or Territory if the AA/SBDC determines it is necessary or beneficial to implement the Program effectively and to provide services to all interested small businesses.

§ 130.320 Location of lead centers and SBDC service providers.

(a) The recipient organization must locate its Lead Center and SBDC service providers so that services are readily accessible to small businesses in the Area of Service.

(b) The locations of the Lead Center and the SBDC service providers will be reviewed by SBA as part of the application renewal process for each budget period.

§ 130.330 Operating requirements.

(a) The Lead Center must be an independent entity within the recipient organization, having its own staff, including a full-time SBDC Director.

(b) A Lead Center must provide administrative services and coordination for the SBDC network, including program development, program management, financial management, reports management, promotion and public relations, program assessment and evaluation, and internal quality control.

(c) The Lead Center shall be open to the public throughout the year during the normal business hours of the recipient organization. Anticipated closures shall be included in the annual renewal application. Emergency closures shall be reported to the SBA Project Officer as soon as is feasible. Other SBDC service providers shall be open during the normal business hours of their sponsoring SBDC organizations.

(d) The Lead Center and other SBDC service providers must have a conflict of interest policy applicable to their SBDC consultants, employees, instructors and volunteers.

(e) The SBDC network shall comply with 13 CFR parts 112, 113 and 117, which require that no person shall be excluded on the grounds of age, color, handicap, marital status, national origin, race, religion or sex from participation in, be denied that benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under, any program or activity for which the recipient organization received Federal financial assistance from SBA.
§ 130.340 SBDC services and restrictions on service.

(a) Services. The SBDC network must provide prospective and existing small business persons and entities with Counseling, Training and Specialized Services, concerning the formation, financing, management and operation of small business enterprises, reflecting local needs. The recipient organization shall primarily utilize institutions of higher education to provide services to the small business community. To the extent possible, SBDCs shall use other Federal, State and local government programs that assist small business. Services periodically should be assessed and improved to keep pace with changing small business needs.

(b) Access to Capital. (1) SBDCs are encouraged to provide counseling services that increase a small business concern’s access to capital, such as business plan development, financial statement preparation and analysis, and cash flow preparation and analysis.

(2) SBDCs should help prepare their clients to represent themselves to lending institutions. While SBDCs may attend meetings with lenders to assist clients in preparing financial packages, the SBDCs may not take a direct role in representing clients in loan negotiations.

(3) SBDCs should inform their clients that financial packaging assistance does not guarantee receipt of a loan.

(4) SBDCs may not make loans, service loans or make credit decisions regarding the award of loans.

(5) With respect to SBA guaranty programs, SBDCs may assist clients to formulate a business plan, prepare financial statements, complete forms which are part of a loan application, and accompany an applicant appearing before SBA. Unless authorized by the SBA Administrator with respect to a specific program, an SBDC may not advocate, recommend approval or otherwise attempt in any manner to influence SBA to provide financial assistance to any of its clients. An SBDC cannot collect fees for helping a client to prepare an application for SBA financial assistance.

(c) Special emphasis initiatives. From time to time, SBA may identify portions of the general population to be targeted for assistance by SBDCs. Support of SBA special emphasis initiatives will be negotiated each year as part of the application process and included in the Cooperative Agreement when appropriate.

§ 130.350 Specific program responsibilities.

(a) Policy development. SBA will establish Program policies and procedures to improve the delivery of services by SBDCs to the small business community, and to enhance compliance with applicable laws, regulations, OMB Circulars and Executive Orders. In doing so, SBA should consult, to the extent practicable, with the Recognized Organization.

(b) Responsibilities of SBDC Directors. The SBDC Director shall direct and monitor program activities and financial affairs of the SBDC network to deliver effective services to the small business community, comply with applicable laws, regulations, OMB Circulars and Executive Orders, and implement the Cooperative Agreement. The SBDC Director has authority to control expenditures under the Lead Center’s budget. SBDC Directors may manage other programs in addition to the SBDC Program if the programs serve small businesses and do not duplicate the services provided by the SBDC network. However, SBDC Directors may not receive additional compensation for managing these programs. The SBDC Director shall serve as the principal contact point for all matters involving the SBDC network.

§ 130.360 SBDC advisory boards.

(a) State/Regional Advisory Boards. (1) The Lead Center must establish an advisory board to advise, counsel, and confer with the SBDC Director on matters pertaining to the operation of the SBDC network.

(2) The advisory board shall be referred to as a State SBDC Advisory Board in an Area of Service having only one recipient organization, and a Regional SBDC Advisory Board in an Area of Service having more than one recipient organization.

(3) These advisory boards must include small business owners and other
representatives from the entire Area of Service.

(4) New Lead Centers must establish a State or Regional SBDC Advisory Board no later than the second budget period.

(5) A State or Regional SBDC Advisory Board member may also be a member of the National SBDC Advisory Board.

(6) The reasonable cost of travel of any Board member for official Board activities may be paid out of the SBDC’s budgeted funds.

(b) National SBDC Advisory Board. (1) SBA shall establish a National SBDC Advisory Board consisting of nine members who are not Federal employees, appointed by the SBA Administrator. The Board shall elect a Chair. Three members of the Board shall be from universities or their affiliates and six shall be from small businesses or associations representing small businesses. Board members shall serve staggered three year terms, with three Board members appointed each year. The SBA Administrator may appoint successors to fill unexpired terms.

(2) The National SBDC Advisory Board shall advise and confer with SBA’s AA/SBDCs on policy matters pertaining to the operation of the SBDC program. The Board shall meet with the AA/SBDCs at least semiannually.

§ 130.400 Application procedure. [Reserved]

§ 130.410 New applications.

(a) If SBA declines to renew an existing recipient organization or the recipient organization declines to reapply, SBA may accept applications from other organizations interested in becoming a recipient organization. An eligible entity may apply by submitting an application to the SBA District Office in the Area of Service in which the applicant proposes to provide services.

(b) An application for initial funding of a new SBDC network must include a letter by the Governor, or his or her designee, of the Area of Service in which the SBDC will operate, or other evidence, confirming that the applicant’s designation as an SBDC would be consistent with the plan adopted by the State government and approved by SBA. No such requirement is imposed on subsequent applications from existing recipient organizations.

(c) The application must set forth the eligible entity or entities proposing to operate the SBDC network; a list of the Lead Center and other SBDC service providers by name, address and telephone number; the geographic areas to be serviced; the resources to be used; the services that will be provided; the method for delivering the services, including a description of how and to what extent academic, private and public resources will be used; a budget; a listing of the proposed members of the State or Regional Advisory Board and other relevant information set forth in the Program Announcement.

(d) SBA officials may request supplemental information or documentation to revise or complete an application.

(e) Upon written recommendation for approval by the SBA District Director, the proposal shall be submitted to the AA/SBDCs for review.

§ 130.420 Renewal applications.

(a) SBDCs shall comply with the requirements in the annual Program Announcement, including format and due dates, to receive consideration of their renewal applications. The SBA Project Officer, with the concurrence of the Program Manager, may grant an extension. The recipient organization shall submit the renewal application to the SBA office in the District in which the recipient organization is located. The annual Program Announcement will include a timetable for SBA review.

(b) After review by the SBA Project Officer and written recommendation for approval by the District Director, the Program Manager and Grants Management Specialist shall review the renewal application for conformity with the Program Announcement, OMB Circulars and all other statutory, financial and regulatory requirements. SBA officials may request supplemental information and documentation prior to issuing the Cooperative Agreement.
§ 130.430 Application decisions.

(a) The AA/SBDCs may approve, conditionally approve, or reject any application. In the event of a rejection, the AA/SBDCs shall communicate the reasons for rejection to the applicant and the appropriate SBA field office. If the approval is conditional, the conditions and applicable remedies shall be specified as special terms and conditions in the Cooperative Agreement. Upon approval or conditional approval, the Grants Management specialist may issue a Cooperative Agreement.

(b) In considering the application, significant factors shall include:

(1) The applicant’s ability to contribute Matching Funds;
(2) For renewal Proposals, the quality of prior performance;
(3) The results of any examination conducted pursuant to §130.810(b) of these regulations; and
(4) Any certification resulting from any certification program developed by the Recognized Organization.

(c) In the event of a conditional approval, SBA may conditionally fund a recipient organization for one or more specified periods of time up to a maximum of one budget period. If the recipient organization fails to resolve the specified matters to the AA/SBDCs’ satisfaction within the allotted time period, SBA has the right to discontinue funding the SBDC, subject to the provisions of §130.700.

§ 130.440 Maximum grant.

No recipient shall receive an SBDC grant exceeding the greater of the minimum statutory amount, or its pro rata share of all SBDC grants as determined by the statutory formula set forth in section 21(a)(4) of the Act.

§ 130.450 Matching funds.

(a) The recipient organization must provide total Matching Funds equal to the total amount of SBA funding. At least 50% of the Matching Funds must be Cash Match. The remaining 50% may be provided through any allowable combination of additional cash, in-kind contributions, or indirect costs.

(b) All sources of Matching Funds must be identified as specifically as possible in the budget proposal. Cash sources shall be identified by name and account. All applicants must submit a Certification of Cash Match and Program Income executed by an authorized official of the recipient organization or any sponsoring SBDC organization providing Cash Match through a subcontract agreement. The account containing such cash must be under the direct management of the SBDC Director, or, if provided by a sponsoring SBDC organization, its subcenter Director. If a political entity is providing such cash and the funds have not been appropriated prior to issuance of the Cooperative Agreement, the recipient organization must certify that sufficient funds will be available from the political entity prior to the use of Federal dollars.

(c) The Grants Management Specialist is responsible for determining whether Matching Funds or Cash Match meet the requirements of the Act and appropriate OMB circulars.

(d) Overmatched Amounts. (1) SBDCs are encouraged to furnish Overmatched Amounts.

(2) An Overmatched Amount can be applied to additional Matching Funds requirements necessitated by any supplemental funding increase received by the SBDC during the budget period, as long as the total Cash Match provided by the SBDC is 50% or more of the total SBA funds provided during the budget period.

(3) If used in the manner described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, such Overmatched Amount is reclassified as committed Matching Funds.

(4) Allowable Overmatched Amounts which have not been used in the manner described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section may, with the approval of the AA/SBDCs, be used as a credit to offset any confirmed audit disallowances applicable only to the budget period in which the Overmatched Amount exists and the two previous budget periods. Such offsetting funds shall be considered Matching Funds.

(e) Impermissible sources of Matching Funds. Under no circumstances may the following be used as sources of the Matching Funds of the recipient organization:

(1) Uncompensated student labor;
(2) SCORE, ACE, or SBI volunteers;
§ 130.460 Program income or fees collected from small businesses receiving assistance;

§ 130.460 Budget justification.

The SBDC Director, as a part of the renewal application, or the applicant organization’s authorized representative in the case of a new SBDC application, shall prepare and submit to the SBA Project Officer the budget justification for the upcoming budget period. The budget shall be reviewed annually upon submission of a renewal application.

(a) Direct costs. Unless otherwise provided in applicable OMB circulars, at least eighty percent (80%) of SBA funding must be allocated to direct costs of Program delivery.

(b) Indirect costs. If the applicant organization waives all indirect costs to meet the Matching Funds requirement, one hundred percent (100%) of SBA funding must be allocated to program delivery. If some, but not all, indirect costs are waived to meet the Matching Funds requirement, the lesser of the following may be allocated as indirect costs of the Program and charged against the Federal contribution:

(1) Twenty percent (20%) of Federal contribution, or

(2) The amount remaining after the waived portion of indirect costs is subtracted from the total indirect costs.

(c) Separate SBDC service provider budgets. (1) The applicant organization shall include separate budgets for all subcontracted SBDC service providers in conformity with OMB requirements. Applicable direct cost categories and indirect cost base/rate agreements shall be included for the Lead Center and all SBDC service providers, using a rate equal to or less than the negotiated predetermined rate. If no such rate exists, the sponsoring SBDC organization or SBDC service provider shall negotiate a rate with its Cognizant Agency. In the event the sponsoring SBDC organization or SBDC service provider does not have a Cognizant Agency, the rate shall be negotiated with the SBA Project Officer in accordance with OMB guidelines (see OMB Circular A–21).

(2) The amount of cash, in-kind contributions and indirect costs for the Lead Center and all sub-contracted SBDC service providers shall be indicated in accordance with OMB requirements.

(d) Cost principles. Principles for determining allowable costs are contained in OMB Circulars A–21 (cost principles for grants, contracts, and other agreements with educational institutions), A–87 (cost principles for programs administered by State and local governments), and A–122 (cost principles for nonprofit organizations).

(e) Costs associated with lobbying. No portion of the Federal contribution received by an SBDC may be used for lobbying activities, either directly by the SBDC or indirectly through outside organizations, except those activities permitted by OMB. Restrictions on and reports of lobbying activities by the SBDC shall be in accordance with OMB requirements, Section 319 of Public Law No. 101–121, and the annual Program Announcement.

(f) Salaries. (1) If a recipient organization is an educational institution, the salaries of the SBDC Director and the subcenter Directors must approximate the average annualized salary of a full professor and an assistant professor, respectively, in the school or department in which the SBDC is located. If a recipient organization is not an educational institution, the salaries of the SBDC Director and the subcenter Directors must approximate the average salaries of parallel positions within the recipient organization. In both cases, the recipient organization should consider the Director’s longevity in the Program, the number of subcenters and the individual’s experience and background.

(2) Salaries for all other positions within the SBDC should be based upon level of responsibility, and be comparable to salaries for similar positions in the area served by the SBDC.

(3) Recruitment and salary increases for SBDC Directors, subcenter Directors and staff members should conform to the administrative policy of the recipient organization.
§ 130.470 Travel. All travel must be separately identified in the proposed budget as planned in-State, planned out-of-State, unplanned in-State or unplanned out-of-State. All proposed travel must use coach class, apply directly to specific work of the SBDC or be incurred in the normal course of Program administration, and conform to the written travel policies of the recipient organization or the sponsoring SBDC organization. (Per diem rates, including lodging, shall not exceed those authorized by the recipient organization.) Transportation costs must be justified in writing, including the estimated cost, number of persons traveling, and the benefit to be derived by the small business community from the proposed travel. A more detailed justification must be given for unplanned out-of-State travel. Any proposed unplanned out-of-State travel exceeding the approved budgeted amount for travel must be submitted to the Project Officer for approval on a case-by-case basis. Travel outside the United States must have prior approval by the AA/SBDCs on a case-by-case basis.

(h) Dues. Costs of memberships in business, technical, and professional organizations shall be allowable expenses. The use of Federal funds to pay dues for business, technical and professional organizations shall be permitted, provided that the payments are included in the budget proposal, are approved by the SBA and comply with §130.460(e).

§ 130.470 Fees. An SBDC may charge clients a reasonable fee to cover the costs of Training sponsored or cosponsored by the SBDC, costs of services provided by or obtained from third parties, or the costs of providing Specialized Services. Fees may not be imposed for Counseling.

§ 130.480 Program income.

(a) Program income for recipient organizations or SBDC service providers based in universities or nonprofit organizations shall be subject to OMB requirements (see OMB Circular A–110). Program income for recipient organizations or SBDC service providers based in State or local governments shall be subject to OMB requirements (see the provisions of §7.6 and Attachment E of OMB Circular A–102) and 13 CFR 143.25.

(b) Program income, including any interest earned on Program income, must be used to expand the quantity or quality of services, resources or outreach provided by the SBDC network. It cannot be used to satisfy the requirements for Matching Funds. The Project Officer shall monitor the use of Program income. Any unused Program income will be carried over to a subsequent budget period.

(c) SBDCs must report in detail on standard SBA forms receipts and expenditures of program income, including any income received through cosponsored activities. A narrative description of how Program income was used to accomplish Program objectives shall be included.

§ 130.500 Funding.

The SBA funds Cooperative Agreements through its internal Letter of Credit Replacement System (LORS), using SBA standard forms to establish and modify letters of credit. SBDCs must use SBA standard forms to draw down funds required to meet their estimated or actual expenses and to submit quarterly cash transactions reports used by SBA to monitor the frequency of drawdowns and the cash-on-hand balance. Repeated drawdowns in excess of immediate cash needs may result in the cancellation of the letter of credit. If interest results from the deposit of any drawdowns in an interest-bearing account, SBDCs, other than State government sponsored SBDCs, must report and return such interest annually to SBA.

§ 130.600 Cooperative agreement. [Reserved]

§ 130.610 General terms.

Upon approval of the initial or renewal application, SBA will enter into a Cooperative Agreement with the recipient organization, setting forth the programmatic and fiscal responsibilities of the recipient organization and
§ 130.620 Revisions and amendments to cooperative agreement.

(a) Requests for revisions. The recipient organization may request at any time one or more revisions to the Cooperative Agreement on an appropriate SBA form signed by the recipient organization’s authorized representative (including a revised budget and budget narrative, if applicable). Revisions will normally relate to changes in scope, work or funding during the specified budget year.

(b) Revisions which require amendment to Cooperative Agreement. The Cooperative Agreement shall list the revisions which require Project Officer concurrence, review by the Program Manager and the Grants Management Specialist, approval of the AA/SBDCs and amendment of the Cooperative Agreement. No application for an amendment shall be effective until it is approved and incorporated into the Cooperative Agreement. Revisions which require amendments shall include:

(1) Any change in project scope or objectives;

(2) The addition or deletion of any subgrants or contracts;

(3) The addition of any new budget line items;

(4) Budget revisions and fund reallocations exceeding the limit established by applicable administrative regulations or OMB Circulars, either individually or in the aggregate (see paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section);

(5) Any proposed sole-source or one-bid contracts exceeding the limits established by applicable regulations or OMB Circulars; and

(6) The carryover from one budget period to the next budget period of unobligated, unexpended SBA funds allocable under the Cooperative Agreement to nonrecurring, nonseverable bona fide needs of the SBDC network as provided in applicable OMB Circulars and the annual Program Announcement.

(c) Revisions which do not require amendments to the Cooperative Agreement. (1) Budget revisions. Any budget revision, except those which are covered by paragraph (b)(4) of this section. Budget revisions require approval of the SBA Project Officer and the AA/SBDCs as prescribed by applicable OMB Circulars or 13 CFR 143.30.

(2) Reallocation of funds. Reallocation of funds must be conducted in accordance with applicable OMB Circulars or 13 CFR 143.30. Additional guidance on this matter may be included in the annual Program Announcement.

§ 130.630 Dispute resolution procedures.

(a) Financial Disputes. (1) A recipient organization wishing to resolve a financial Dispute formally must submit a written statement describing the subject of the Dispute, together with any relevant documents or other evidence bearing on the Dispute, to the Grants Management Specialist, with copies to the Project Officer. The Grants Management Specialist shall respond in writing to the recipient organization within 30 calendar days of receipt of the descriptive statement.

(2) If the recipient organization receives an unfavorable decision from the Grants Management Specialist, it may file an appeal with the AA/SBDCs within 30 calendar days of issuance of the unfavorable decision. The AA/SBDCs shall respond in writing to the recipient organization within 15 calendar days of receipt of the appeal.

(3) If the recipient organization receives an unfavorable decision from the AA/SBDCs, it may make a final appeal to the SBA Grants and Cooperative Agreements Appeals Committee (the “Committee”) within 30 calendar days of the date of issuance of the AA/SBDCs’ written decision. Copies of the appeal shall also be sent to the Grants Management Specialist and the Project Officer.

(4) Appeals must be in writing. Formal briefs and other technical forms of pleading are not required. Requests for a hearing will not be granted unless there are material facts substantially in dispute. Appeals must contain at least the following:
§ 130.700  Suspension, termination and non-renewal.

(a) General. After SBA has entered into a Cooperative Agreement with a recipient organization, it shall not suspend, terminate or fail to renew the agreement unless SBA gives the recipient organization written notice setting forth the reasons and affording the recipient organization an opportunity for a hearing. Subject to this requirement and the provisions of §130.700(c) regarding non-renewal procedures for non-performance, the applicable general procedures for suspension and termination are contained in 13 CFR 143.43 and 143.44, and in OMB Circular A-110, Attachment L.

(b) Causes. Causes which may lead to suspension, termination, or failure to renew include non-performance, poor performance, unwillingness to implement changes to improve performance, or any of the following reasons:
   (1) Disregard or material violation of these regulations;
   (2) A willful or material failure to perform under the Cooperative Agreement or under these regulations;
   (3) Conduct reflecting a lack of business integrity or honesty;
   (4) A conflict of interest causing real or perceived detriment to a small business concern, a contractor, the SBDC or SBA;
   (5) Improper use of Federal funds;

   (1) Name and address of the recipient organization;
   (ii) The SBA field office;
   (iii) The Cooperative Agreement;
   (iv) A statement of the grounds for appeal, with reasons why the appeal should be sustained;
   (v) The specific relief desired on appeal; and
   (vi) If a hearing is requested, a statement of the material facts which are substantially in dispute.

(5) The AA/SBDCs or the Committee may request from the SBDC or the District Office additional information or documentation at any stage in the proceedings.

(6) If a request for a hearing is granted, the Committee will provide the recipient organization with written instructions, and will afford the parties an opportunity to present their positions to the Committee.

(7) The Committee will reach a decision on the merits of the appeal within 30 days of the hearing date.

(8) The Chairperson, with advice from the Office of General Counsel, shall prepare and transmit a written final decision to the recipient organization with copies to the Grants Management Specialist and the Project Officer.

(9) Expedited Dispute appeal process. By an affirmative vote constituting a majority of its total membership, the Committee may shorten response times to attain final resolution of a Dispute before the issuance date of a new Cooperative Agreement. At any time within 120 days of the end of the budget period, the recipient organization may submit a written request to use an expedited process. If a Dispute affects re-funding, the Committee must meet to consider the matter prior to the end of the budget period, provided that the recipient organization has supplied the Committee with all requested documentation.

(b) Programmatic (non-financial) Disputes. (1) If a programmatic Dispute is not resolved at the SBA District Office level, the recipient organization may request its submission to the next SBA administrative level having authority to review such matter. The Project Officer shall refer the Dispute in writing, including comments of the SBDC Director, within 15 calendar days of receipt of the request.

(2) If the programmatic Dispute is not resolved at an intermediate SBA administrative level within 15 calendar days of receipt thereof, it shall be forwarded, in writing, to the AA/SBDCs for final resolution. All comments of the SBDC Director must be included in any package forwarded to the AA/SBDCs.

(3) The AA/SBDCs shall transmit a final, written decision to the recipient organization, the SBDC Director, the SBA Project Officer and other appropriate SBA field office personnel within 30 calendar days of receipt of such documentation, unless an extension of time is mutually agreed upon by the recipient organization and the AA/SBDCs.
§ 130.700

(6) Failure of a Lead Center or its subcenters to consent to audits or examination or to maintain required documents or records;

(7) Failure of the SBDC Director to work at the SBDC Lead Center on a full-time basis;

(8) Failure promptly to suspend or terminate the employment of an SBDC Director, subcenter Director or other key employee upon receipt of knowledge by the recipient organization and/or SBA that such individual is engaging in or has engaged in conduct resulting in a criminal conviction or civil judgment which would cause the public to question the SBDC’s business integrity, taking into consideration such factors as the magnitude, repetitiveness, harm caused and remoteness in time of the activity or activities underlying the conviction or judgment.

(9) Violation of the SBDC’s standards of conduct as specified in these rules and as established by the SBDC pursuant to these rules;

(10) Any other cause not otherwise specified which materially and adversely affects the operation or integrity of an SBDC or the SBDC program.

(c) Non-Renewal Procedure.

(1) Subject to §130.700(a), when an SBA District Director believes there is sufficient evidence of SBDC nonperformance, poor performance or unwillingness to implement changes to improve performance, under the terms of the Cooperative Agreement or these regulations, the District Director shall notify the SBDC Director and any other appropriate official of the recipient organization of an intention not to approve its renewal application.

(2) Notice can be submitted at any time during the budget period, but normally should be sent no later than 3 months prior to the due date for renewal applications at the District Office.

(3) The notice shall specifically cite the reason for the intention not to renew. It must allow the recipient organization 60 days within which to change its operations to correct the problems cited in the notice, and to report to the Project Officer, in writing, regarding the results of such changes.

(4) If the recipient organization is unwilling or unable to address the specific problem areas to the satisfaction of the SBA District Office within the 60-day period, the SBA Project Officer shall have ten (10) calendar days after expiration of the 60 days to submit to the AA/SBDCs a written description of the unresolved issues, a summary of the positions of the District Office on the issues, and any supportive documentation.

(5) The AA/SBDCs shall transmit a written, final decision to the recipient organization, the SBDC Director, the SBA Project Officer and other appropriate SBA field office personnel within 30 calendar days of receipt of such documentation, unless an extension of time is mutually agreed upon by the recipient organization and the AA/SBDCs.

(6) The AA/SBDCs shall consider written documentation of the issues to be resolved, including all relevant correspondence between the Project Officer, District Director and any other SBA personnel and the affected recipient organization. At a minimum, such documentation shall commence with the first written notice of issues invoking the non-renewal procedure. In addition, the AA/SBDCs also may communicate with the recipient organization and appropriate SBA personnel.

(7) If the AA/SBDCs determines that the evidence submitted establishes nonperformance, ineffective performance or an unwillingness to implement suggested changes to improve performance, the AA/SBDCs shall have full discretion to order non-renewal of the SBDC. The SBA District Office shall then pursue proposals from other organizations interested in applying for SBDC designation. The incumbent SBDC shall have until the end of the budget period or 120 days, whichever is longer, to conclude operations and to submit close-out documents to the SBA District Office. Close-out procedures shall conform with applicable OMB Circulars.

(d) Effect of action on subcenter. If competing applications are being accepted, a subcenter of the previously funded recipient organization may apply for designation as the recipient organization, so long as the subcenter
§ 130.800 Oversight of the SBDC program.

SBA shall monitor and oversee the Cooperative Agreement and ongoing operations of the SBDC network to ensure the effective and efficient use of Federal funds for the benefit of the small business community.

§ 130.810 SBA review authority.

(a) Site visits. The AA/SBDCs, or a representative, on notice to the SBDC Director, is authorized to make programmatic and financial review visits to SBDC service providers to inspect records and client files, and to analyze and assess SBDC activities.

(b) SBA examinations. SBA examiners shall perform a biannual programmatic and financial examination of each SBDC.

(c) Certification program. SBA may provide financial support to the Recognized Organization to develop and implement an SBDC certification program.

(d) Audits. The examinations by SBA examiners shall not substitute for audits required of Federal grantees under the Single Audit Act of 1984 or applicable OMB guidelines (see Circulars A–110, A–128, and A–133), nor shall such internal review substitute for audits to be conducted by the SBA Office of Inspector General under authority of the Inspector General Act of 1978, as amended (see §130.830(b)).

§ 130.820 Reports and recordkeeping.

(a) Records. The recipient organization shall maintain the records required for a Lead Center audit and SBA reports. Lead Centers and other SBDC service providers shall maintain detailed, complete and accurate client activity files, specifying counseling, training and other assistance provided.

(b) Reports. The recipient organization shall submit client service evaluation and performance and financial reports for SBA review to determine the quality of services provided by the SBDC, the completeness and accuracy of SBDC records, and actual SBDC network accomplishments compared to performance objectives.

(c) Performance reports. For recipient organizations in the Program for more than three years, interim reports shall be due 30 days after completion of six months of operation each year; for those recipient organizations in the Program three years or less, reports shall be due 30 days after completion of each of the first three quarters. The annual report shall include the second semiannual or the fourth quarter report and shall be due December 30 for fiscal year and March 30 for calendar year SBDCs. These reports shall reflect accurately the activities, accomplishments and deficiencies of the SBDC network.

(d) Financial reports. The recipient organization shall provide three quarterly and one annual financial report to the SBA Project Officer as set forth in the Program Announcement and the Cooperative Agreement, in compliance with OMB Circulars.

(e) Availability of records. As required by OMB (see Circular A–133), all SBDC service provider records shall be made available to SBA for review upon request.

§ 130.830 Audits and investigations.

(a) Access to records. Applicable OMB Circulars set forth the requirements concerning record access and retention.

(b) Audits. (1) Pre-award audit. Applicants organizations that propose to enter the Program for the first time may be subject to a pre-award audit conducted by or coordinated with the SBA Office of Inspector General. The purpose of a pre-award audit is to verify the adequacy of the accounting system, the suitability of posed costs and the nature and source of proposed Matching Funds.

(2) Interim or final audits. The recipient organization or SBA may conduct SBDC network audits. All audits will be conducted according to Government Auditing Standards, promulgated by the Comptroller General of the United States.

(i) The recipient organization will conduct its audits as a single audit of a recipient organization pursuant to OMB Circulars A–102, A–110, A–128, and A–133, as applicable.
(i) The SBA Office of Inspector General or its agents will conduct, supervise, or coordinate SBA’s audits, which may, at SBA’s discretion, be audits of the SBDC network, even though single audits may have been performed. In such instances, SBA will conduct such audits in compliance with Government Auditing Standards and all applicable OMB Circulars.

(c) Investigations. SBA may conduct investigations as it deems necessary to determine whether any person or entity has engaged in acts or practices constituting a violation of the Act, any rule, regulation or order issued under that Act, or any other applicable Federal law.

PART 134—RULES OF PROCEDURE GOVERNING CASES BEFORE THE OFFICE OF HEARINGS AND APPEALS

Subpart A—General Rules

Sec. 134.101 Definitions.
134.102 Jurisdiction of OHA.
134.103 Rules applicable to time periods provided in this part.

Subpart B—Rules of Practice for Most Cases

134.201 Scope of the rules in this subpart B.
134.202 Commencement of cases.
134.203 The petition.
134.204 Service and filing requirements.
134.205 Motion for a more definite statement.
134.206 The answer.
134.207 Amendments and supplemental pleadings.
134.208 Representation in cases before OHA.
134.209 Requirement of signature.
134.210 Intervention.
134.211 Motions.
134.212 Summary decision.
134.213 Discovery.
134.214 Subpoenas.
134.215 Interlocutory appeals.
134.216 Alternative dispute resolution procedures.
134.217 Settlement.
134.218 Judges.
134.219 Sanctions.
134.220 Prohibition against ex parte communications.
134.221 Prehearing conferences.
134.222 Oral hearing.
134.223 Evidence.
134.224 Standards for decision.

134.225 The record.
134.226 The decision.
134.227 Finality of decisions.
134.228 Review of initial decisions.
134.229 Termination of jurisdiction.

Subpart C—Rules of Practice for Appeals From Size Determinations and SIC Code Designations

134.301 Scope of the rules in this subpart C.
134.302 Who may appeal.
134.303 No absolute right to an appeal from a size determination.
134.304 Commencement of appeals from size determinations and SIC code designations.
134.305 The appeal petition.
134.307 Service and filing requirements.
134.308 Limitation on new evidence and adverse inference from non-submission in appeals from size determinations.
134.309 Response to an appeal petition.
134.310 Discovery.
134.311 Oral hearings.
134.312 Evidence.
134.313 Applicability of subpart B provisions.
134.314 Standard of review.
134.315 The record.
134.316 The decision.
134.317 Termination of jurisdiction.
134.318 Return of the case file.

Subpart D—Rules of Practice for Appeals Under the 8(a) Program

134.401 Scope of the rules in this subpart D.
134.402 Appeal petition.
134.403 Service of appeal petition.
134.404 Decision by Administrative Law Judge.
134.405 Jurisdiction.
134.406 Review of administrative record.
134.407 Evidence beyond the record and discovery.
134.408 Decision on appeal.

Subpart E—Implementation of the Equal Access to Justice Act

134.501 What is the purpose of this subpart?
134.502 Under what circumstances may I apply for reimbursement?
134.503 What is an adversary adjudication?
134.504 What benefits may I claim?
134.505 Under what circumstances are fees and expenses reimbursable?
134.506 Who is eligible for possible reimbursement?
134.507 How do I know which eligibility requirement applies to me?
134.508 What are the special rules for calculating net worth and number of employees?
§ 134.101 Definitions.

As used in this part:

AA/OHA means the Assistant Administrator for OHA.


Address means the primary home or business address of a person or entity, including the street location or postal box number, city or town, state, and postal zip code.

Area Office means a Government Contracting Area Office or a Disaster Area Office of the Small Business Administration.

Day means a calendar day, unless a Judge specifies otherwise.

Hearing means the presentation and consideration of argument and evidence. A hearing need not include live testimony or argument.


Judge means an Administrative Law Judge or an Administrative Judge of OHA, or the AA/OHA when he or she acts as an Administrative Judge.

OHA means the Office of Hearings and Appeals.

Party means the petitioner, respondent, or intervenor.

Person means an individual or any form of business entity.

Petition means a written complaint, a written appeal from an SBA determination, or a written request for the initiation of proceedings before OHA.

Pleading means a petition, an order to show cause commencing a case, an appeal petition, an answer, or any amendment or supplement to those documents.

Respondent means any person or governmental agency against which a case has been brought before OHA.

SBA means the Small Business Administration.

SIC code means Standard Industrial Classification code.

Size determination means a formal size determination made by an Area Office.

§ 134.102 Jurisdiction of OHA.

OHA has authority to conduct proceedings in the following cases:

(a) The revocation or suspension of Small Business Investment Company licenses, cease and desist orders, and the removal or suspension of directors and officers of licensees, under the Investment Act and part 107 of this chapter;

(b) Alleged violations of those civil rights laws which are effectuated by parts 112, 113, 117, and 136 of this chapter;

(c) The revocation of the privilege of a person to conduct business with SBA under the Act and part 103 of this chapter;

(d) The eligibility of, or preferred or certified status of, any bank or nonbank lender to continue to participate in SBA loan programs under the Act and part 120 of this chapter;

(e) The suspension or termination of surety bond program participants under 15 U.S.C. 694a et seq. and part 115 of this chapter;

(f) The rights, privileges, or obligations of development companies under section 504 of the Investment Act and part 120, subpart H, of this chapter;

(g) Allowance of fees and expenses under the Equal Access to Justice Act, 5 U.S.C. 504;

(h) Debarment from appearance before the SBA because of post-employment restrictions under 18 U.S.C. 207 and part 103 of this chapter:

(i) Collection of debts owed to SBA and the United States under the Debt
§ 134.203 The petition.

(a) A petition must contain the following:
(1) The basis of OHA’s jurisdiction;
(2) The SBA determination being appealed.
(3) A clear and concise statement of the factual basis of the case;
(4) The relief being sought; and
(5) The name, address, telephone number, and signature of the petitioner or its attorney.

(b) A petition which does not contain all of the information required by paragraph (a) of this section may be dismissed, with or without prejudice, at
§ 134.204 Service and filing requirements.

(a) Service. Each party is responsible for the service of its pleadings and other submissions upon all other parties or their attorneys. Unless otherwise ordered by the Judge, service is made by providing each party, or its attorney, with a copy of the pleading or submission by personal delivery, first-class mail, express mail, facsimile transmission, or commercial delivery service. Service by mail must be directed as follows:

1. To a party’s last-known residence or business address if it has not yet appeared in the case, or to the address of a party which has appeared as shown in its submission;
2. If a party has appeared in the case through an attorney, to the address of the attorney shown in the party’s submission or in a notice of appearance;
3. If SBA is the party, unless an attorney has been specified in SBA’s submissions to OHA, by mailing to: Office of General Counsel, Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

(b) Filing. All pleadings and other submissions must be filed with OHA by personal delivery, first-class mail, express mail, facsimile transmission, or commercial delivery service. Filing may only be accomplished at the following address: Office of Hearings and Appeals, Small Business Administration, 409 Third Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

(c) Copies. Only the original of a pleading or other submission must be filed with OHA. In the case of a document offered as evidence, an authenticated copy may be filed instead of the original.
(d) Certificate of service. A signed certificate stating how and when service was made on all parties must be attached to each pleading or other submission filed with OHA.
(e) Date. Unless otherwise specified by the Judge, the date of service or filing is as follows:

1. If by facsimile transmission, the date of transmission.
2. If by first-class mail, the date of postmark. Where the postmark is illegible or incomplete, there is a rebuttable presumption that the postmark was dated five days prior to the date of receipt.
3. If by personal delivery, express mail, or commercial delivery service, the date of receipt.

(f) Confidential information. Any information in pleadings or other submissions that is believed by the submitting party to constitute proprietary or confidential information need not be served upon parties so long as the deletions are clearly identified and generally described in the documents which are served. Upon motion, the Judge may direct that the withheld information be provided to other parties, subject to any appropriate protective order.

§ 134.205 Motion for a more definite statement.

(a) Procedure. No later than 20 days after service of the petition or order to show cause, the respondent may serve and file a motion requesting a more definite statement of particular allegations in the petition.

(b) Stay. The serving and filing of a motion for a more definite statement stays the time for serving and filing an answer. The Judge will establish the time for serving and filing an answer.

§ 134.206 The answer.

(a) A respondent must serve and file an answer within 45 days after the service of a petition or order to show cause, except that debt collection proceeding answers are due within 30 days.

(b) The answer must contain the following:

1. An admission or denial of each of the factual allegations contained in the petition or order to show cause, or a statement that the respondent denies knowledge or information sufficient to
determine the truth of a particular allegation;
(2) Any affirmative defenses; and
(3) The name, address, telephone number, and signature of the respondent or its attorney.

(c) Allegations in the petition or order to show cause which are not answered in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section will be deemed admitted unless injustice would occur.

(d) Upon an appeal from an SBA determination concerning the 8(a) program, SBA must serve and file the administrative record pertaining to that determination within the same time period applicable to the service and filing of its answer. If SBA fails to do so, the Judge will issue an order directing SBA to serve and file the administrative record by a specified date.

(e) If the respondent fails to serve and file an answer within the time period set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, or within any extended time period granted by the Judge, that failure will constitute a default. Following such a default, the respondent may be prohibited from participating further in the case, except to serve and file the administrative record in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

§ 134.207 Amendments and supplemental pleadings.

(a) Amendments. Upon motion, and under terms needed to avoid prejudice to any non-moving party, the Judge may permit the service and filing of amendments to pleadings. However, an amendment will not be permitted if it would cause unreasonable delay in the determination of the matter.

(b) Supplements. Upon motion, and under terms needed to avoid prejudice to any non-moving party, the Judge may permit the service and filing of a supplemental pleading setting forth relevant transactions or occurrences that have taken place since the filing of the original pleading.

(c) 8(a) appeals. In 8(a) program appeals, amendments to pleadings and supplemental pleadings will be permitted by the Judge only upon a showing of good cause.

(d) Answer. In an order permitting the serving and filing of an amended or supplemented petition or order to show cause, the Judge will establish the time for serving and filing an answer.

§ 134.208 Representation in cases before OHA.

(a) A party may represent itself, or be represented by a duly licensed attorney. A member of a partnership may represent the partnership, and an officer may represent a corporation, trust, or association.

(b) An attorney for a party who did not appear on behalf of that party in the party’s first filing with OHA must serve and file a written notice of appearance.

(c) An attorney seeking to withdraw from a case must serve and file a motion for the withdrawal of his or her appearance.

§ 134.209 Requirement of signature.

Every written submission to OHA, other than evidence, must be signed by the party filing that submission, or by the party’s attorney. By signing the submission, a party or its attorney attests that the statements and allegations in that submission are true to the best of its knowledge, and that the submission is not being filed for the purpose of delay or harassment.

§ 134.210 Intervention.

(a) By SBA. SBA may intervene as of right at any time in any case until final decision.

(b) By interested persons. Any individual, partnership, association, corporation, trust, or governmental agency may move to intervene at any time until final decision by serving and filing a motion to intervene containing a statement of the movant’s interest in the case and the necessity for intervention to protect such interest. The Judge may grant leave to intervene upon such terms as he or she deems appropriate.

§ 134.211 Motions.

(a) Contents. All motions must state the relief being requested, as well as the grounds and any authority for that relief.

(b) Response. No later than 20 days after the service of a motion, all non-moving parties must serve and file a
§ 134.212 Summary decision.

(a) Grounds. A party may move for summary decision at any time as to all or any portion of the case, on the grounds that there is no genuine issue as to any material fact, and that the moving party is entitled to a decision in its favor as a matter of law.

(b) Contents of motion. The motion must include a statement of the material facts believed not to be disputed, and relevant law. Supporting affidavits may also be included.

(c) Cross-motions. In its response to a motion for summary decision, a party may cross-move for summary decision. The initial moving party may serve and file a response to any cross-motion for summary decision within 20 days after the service of that cross-motion.

(d) Stay. A motion for summary decision stays the time to answer. The Judge will establish the time for serving and filing an answer in the order determining the motion to dismiss.

[61 FR 2683, Jan. 29, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 35766, June 30, 1998]

§ 134.213 Discovery.

(a) Motion. A party may obtain discovery only upon motion, and for good cause shown.

(b) Forms. The forms of discovery which a Judge can order under paragraph (a) of this section include requests for admissions, requests for production of documents, interrogatories, and depositions.

(c) Limitations. Discovery may be limited in accordance with the terms of a protective order. Further, privileged information and of theant issues or facts will not be subject to discovery.

(d) Disputes. If a dispute should arise between the parties over a particular discovery request, the party seeking discovery may serve and file a motion to compel discovery. Discovery may be opposed on the grounds of harassment, needless embarrassment, irrelevance, undue burden or expense, privilege, or confidentiality.

[61 FR 2683, Jan. 29, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 35766, June 30, 1998]

§ 134.214 Subpoenas.

(a) Availability. At the request of a party, or upon his or her own initiative, a Judge may issue a subpoena requiring a witness to appear and testify, or to produce particular documents, at a specified time and place.

(b) Requests. A request for the issuance of a subpoena must be written, served upon all parties, and filed. The request must clearly identify the witness and any documents to be subpoenaed, and must set forth the relevance of the testimony or documents sought.

(c) Service. A subpoena may only be served by personal delivery. The individual making service shall prepare an affidavit stating the date, time, and place of the service. The party which obtained the subpoena must serve upon all other parties, and file with OHA, a copy of the subpoena and affidavit of service within 2 days after service is made.

(d) Motion to quash. A motion to limit or quash a subpoena must be served and filed within 10 days after service of the subpoena, or by the return date of the subpoena, whichever date comes first. Any response to the motion must be served and filed within 10 days after service of the motion, unless a shorter time is specified by the Judge. No oral argument will be heard on the motion unless the Judge directs otherwise.

§ 134.215 Interlocutory appeals.

(a) General. A motion for leave to take an interlocutory appeal from a Judge’s ruling will not be entertained in those proceedings in which OHA issues final decisions. In all other cases, an interlocutory appeal will be permitted only if, upon motion by a party, or upon the Judge’s own initiative, the Judge certifies that his or her
ruling raises a question which is immediately appealable. Interlocutory appeals will be decided by the AA/OHA or a designee.

(b) Motion for certification. A party must serve and file a motion for certification no later than 20 days after issuance of the ruling to which the motion applies. A denial of the motion does not preclude objections to the ruling in any subsequent request for review of an initial decision.

(c) Basis for certification. The Judge will certify a ruling for interlocutory appeal only if he or she determines that:

(1) The ruling involves an important question of law or policy about which there is substantial ground for a difference of opinion; and

(2) An interlocutory appeal will materially expedite resolution of the case, or denial of an interlocutory appeal would cause undue hardship to a party.

(d) Stay of proceedings. A stay while an interlocutory appeal is pending will be at the discretion of the Judge.

§ 134.216 Alternative dispute resolution procedures.

At any time during the pendency of a case, the parties may submit a joint motion requesting that the Judge permit the use of alternative dispute resolution procedures to assist in resolving the matter. If the motion is granted, the Judge will also stay the proceedings before OHA, in whole or in part, as he or she deems appropriate, pending the outcome of the alternative dispute resolution procedures.

§ 134.217 Settlement.

At any time during the pendency of a case, the parties may submit a settlement agreement, signed by all settling parties, to the Judge. Settlement negotiations, and rejected settlement agreements, are not admissible into evidence.

§ 134.218 Judges.

(a) Assignment. The AA/OHA will assign all cases subject to the Administrative Procedure Act, 5 U.S.C. 551 et seq., to an Administrative Law Judge. The AA/OHA will assign all other cases before OHA to either an Administrative Law Judge or an Administrative Judge, or, if the AA/OHA is a duly licensed attorney, to himself or herself.

(b) Authority. Except as otherwise limited by this part, or by statute or other regulation, a Judge has the authority to take all appropriate action to ensure the efficient, prompt, and fair determination of a case, including, but not limited to, the authority to administer oaths and affirmations and to subpoena and examine witnesses.

(c) Recusal. Upon the motion of a party, or upon the Judge’s own initiative, a Judge will promptly recuse himself or herself from further participation in a case whenever disqualification is appropriate due to conflict of interest, bias, or some other significant reason. A denial of a motion for recusal may be immediately appealed to the AA/OHA, or to the Administrative Law Judge if the AA/OHA is the Judge, but that appeal will not stay proceedings in the case.

§ 134.219 Sanctions.

A Judge may impose appropriate sanctions, except for fees, costs, or monetary penalties, which he or she deems necessary to serve the ends of justice, if a party or its attorney:

(a) Fails to comply with an order of the Judge;

(b) Fails to comply with the rules set forth in this part;

(c) Acts in bad faith or for purposes of delay or harassment;

(d) Submits false statements knowingly, recklessly, or with deliberate disregard for the truth; or

(e) Otherwise acts in an unethical or disruptive manner.

§ 134.220 Prohibition against ex parte communications.

No person shall consult or communicate with a Judge concerning any fact, question of law, or SBA policy relevant to the merits of a case before that Judge except on prior notice to all parties, and with the opportunity for all parties to participate. In the event of such prohibited consultation or communication, the Judge will disclose the occurrence in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 557(d)(1), and may impose such sanctions as he or she deems appropriate.
§ 134.221 Prehearing conferences.

Prior to a hearing, the Judge, at his or her own initiative, or upon the motion of any party, may direct the parties or their attorneys to appear, by telephone or in person, in order to consider any matter which may assist in the efficient, prompt, and fair determination of the case. The conference may be recorded verbatim at the discretion of the Judge, and, if so, a party may purchase a transcript, at its own expense, from the recording service.

§ 134.222 Oral hearing.

(a) Availability. A party may obtain an oral hearing only if:
(1) It is required by regulation; or
(2) Following the motion of a party, or at his or her own initiative, the Judge orders an oral hearing upon concluding that there is a genuine dispute as to a material fact that cannot be resolved except by the taking of testimony and the confrontation of witnesses.

(b) Place and time. The place and time of oral hearings is within the discretion of the Judge, who shall give due regard to the necessity and convenience of the parties, their attorneys, and witnesses. The Judge may direct that an oral hearing be conducted by telephone.

(c) Public access. Unless otherwise ordered by the Judge, all oral hearings are public.

(d) Payment of subpoenaed witnesses. A party which obtains a witness’ presence at an oral hearing by subpoena, must pay to that witness the fees and mileage costs to which the witness would be entitled in Federal Court.

(e) Recording. Oral hearings will be recorded verbatim. A transcript of a recording may be purchased by a party, at its own expense, from the recording service.

[61 FR 2683, Jan. 29, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 35766, June 30, 1998]

§ 134.223 Evidence.

(a) Federal Rules of Evidence. Unless contrary to a particular rule in this part, or an order of the Judge, the Federal Rules of Evidence will be used as a general guide in all cases before OHA.

(b) Hearsay. Hearsay evidence is admissible if it is deemed by the Judge to be relevant and reliable.

§ 134.224 Standards for decision.

The decision of a Judge will be based upon a preponderance of the evidence.

§ 134.225 The record.

(a) Contents. The record of a case before OHA will consist of all pleadings, motions, and other non-evidentiary submissions, all admitted evidence, all orders and decisions, and any transcripts of proceedings in the case.

(b) Public access. Except for information subject to a protective order, proprietary or confidential information withheld in accordance with this part, or any other information which is excluded from disclosure by law or regulation, the record will be available at OHA for public inspection during normal business hours. Copies of the documents available for public inspection may be obtained by the public upon payment of any duplication charges.

(c) Closure. The Judge will set the date upon which the pre-decisional record of the case will be closed, and after which no additional evidence or argument will be accepted.

§ 134.226 The decision.

(a) Contents. Following closure of the record, the Judge will issue a decision containing findings of fact and conclusions of relevant law, reasons for such findings and conclusions, and any relief ordered. The contents of the record will constitute the exclusive basis for a decision.

(b) Time limits. Decisions pertaining to the collection of debts owed to SBA and the United States under the Debt Collection Act of 1982 and part 140 of this chapter must be rendered within 60 days after a petition is filed.

(c) Service. OHA will serve a copy of all written decisions on:
(1) Each party, or, if represented by counsel, on its counsel; and
(2) SBA’s General Counsel, or his or her designee, if SBA is not a party.

§ 134.227 Finality of decisions.

(a) Final decisions. A decision on the merits shall be a final decision, upon issuance, in proceedings concerning the
§ 134.303 No absolute right to an appeal from a size determination.

It is within the discretion of the Judge whether to accept an appeal from a size determination. If the Judge decides not to consider such an appeal, he or she will issue an order denying review, and specifying the reasons for the decision.
§ 134.304 Commencement of appeals from size determinations and SIC code designations.

(a) Appeals from size determinations and SIC code designations must be commenced by serving and filing an appeal petition as follows:

(1) If appeal is from a size determination in a pending procurement or pending Government property sale, then the appeal petition must be served and filed within 15 days after service of the size determination;

(2) If appeal is from a size determination other than one in a pending procurement or pending Government property sale, then the appeal petition must be served and filed within 30 days after service of the size determination;

(3) If appeal is from a SIC code designation, then the appeal petition must be served and filed within 10 days after the issuance of the initial invitation for bids or initial request for proposals or quotations.

(b) An untimely appeal will be dismissed. However, an appeal which is untimely under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, with respect to a pending procurement or sale, may, if timely under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, proceed with respect to future procurements or sales.

§ 134.305 The appeal petition.

(a) Form. There is no required format for an appeal petition. However, it must include the following information:

(1) The Area Office which issued the size determination, or the contracting office which designated the SIC code;

(2) The solicitation or contract number, and the name, address, and telephone number of the contracting officer;

(3) A full and specific statement as to why the size determination or SIC code designation is alleged to be in error, together with argument supporting such allegations; and

(4) The name, address, telephone number, and signature of the appellant or its attorney.

(b) Service of size determination appeals. The appellant must serve the appeal petition upon each of the following:

(1) The SBA official who issued the size determination;

(2) The contracting officer responsible for the procurement affected by a size determination;

(3) The business concern whose size status is at issue;

(4) All persons who filed protests; and

(5) SBA’s Office of Procurement Law.

(c) Service of SIC appeals. The appellant must serve the contracting officer who made the SIC code designation.

(d) Certificate of service. The appellant must attach to the appeal petition a signed certificate identifying each person or governmental agency which was served with the notice of appeal, and how and when each of those persons or governmental agencies was served.

(e) Dismissal. An appeal petition which does not contain all of the information required in paragraph (a) of this section may be dismissed, with or without prejudice, by the Judge at his or her own initiative, or upon motion of a respondent.


Upon receipt of an appeal petition pertaining to a size determination, the Area Office which issued the size determination must immediately send to OHA the entire case file relating to that determination. Upon receipt of an appeal petition pertaining to a SIC code designation, the contracting officer who designated the SIC code must immediately send to OHA the solicitation relating to that designation.

§ 134.307 Service and filing requirements.

The provisions of §134.204 apply to the service and filing of all pleadings and other submissions permitted under this subpart.

§ 134.308 Limitation on new evidence and adverse inference from non-submission in appeals from size determinations.

(a) Evidence not previously presented to the Area Office which issued the size determination being appealed will not be considered by a Judge unless:
§ 134.309 Response to an appeal petition.

(a) Who may respond. Any person served with an appeal petition, or any other interested person, may serve and file a response supporting or opposing the appeal. The response should present argument.

(b) Time limits. Unless otherwise specified by the Judge, a respondent must serve and file a response within 10 days after service of the appeal petition upon it.

(c) Service. The respondent must serve its response upon the appellant and upon each of the persons identified in the certificate of service attached to the appeal petition pursuant to § 134.305.

(d) Reply to a response. No reply to a response will be permitted unless the Judge directs otherwise.

§ 134.310 Discovery.

Discovery will not be permitted in appeals from size determinations or SIC code designations.

§ 134.311 Oral hearings.

Oral hearings will not be held in appeals from SIC code designations, and will be held in appeals from size determinations only upon a finding by the Judge of extraordinary circumstances. If such an oral hearing is ordered, the proceeding shall be conducted in accordance with those rules of subpart B of this part as the Judge deems appropriate.

§ 134.312 Evidence.

To the extent the rules in this subpart permit the submission of evidence, the provisions of §134.223 (a) and (b) apply.

§ 134.313 Applicability of subpart B provisions.

The following sections from subpart B of this part apply to an appeal under this subpart C: §134.207(a) (pertaining to amendments to pleadings); §134.208 (Representation in cases before OHA); §134.209 (Requirement of signature); §134.210 (Intervention); §134.211 (Motions); §134.214 (Subpoenas); §134.218 (Judges); §134.219 (Sanctions); and §134.220 (Prohibition against ex parte communications).

§ 134.314 Standard of review.

The standard of review is whether the size determination or SIC code designation was based on clear error of fact or law.

§ 134.315 The record.

Where relevant, the provisions of §134.225 (a), (b), and (c) apply. In an appeal under this subpart, the contents of the record also include the case file or solicitation submitted to OHA in accordance with §134.306.

§ 134.316 The decision.

(a) Contents. Following closure of the record, the Judge will issue a decision containing findings of fact and conclusions of law, reasons for such findings and conclusions, and any relief ordered.

(b) Finality. The decision is the final decision of the SBA and becomes effective upon issuance.

(c) Service. OHA will serve a copy of all written decisions on:

(1) Each party, or, if represented by counsel, on its counsel; and

(2) SBA’s General Counsel, or his or her designee, if SBA is not a party.

§ 134.317 Termination of jurisdiction.

The jurisdiction of OHA will terminate upon the issuance of a decision.

§ 134.318 Return of the case file.

Upon termination of jurisdiction, OHA will return the case file to the transmitting Area Office. The remainder of the record will be retained by OHA.
§ 134.401 Scope of the rules in this subpart D.

The rules of practice in this subpart D apply to all appeals to OHA from:

(a) Denials of 8(a) BD program admission based solely on a negative finding(s) of social disadvantage, economic disadvantage, ownership or control pursuant to §124.206 of this title;
(b) Early graduation pursuant to §§124.302 and 124.304;
(c) Termination pursuant to §§124.303 and 124.304;
(d) Denials of requests to issue a waiver pursuant to §124.515; and
(e) Suspensions pursuant to §124.305(a).

§ 134.402 Appeal petition.

In addition to the requirements of §134.203, an appeal petition must state, with specific reference to the determination and the record supporting such determination, the reasons why the determination is alleged to be arbitrary, capricious or contrary to law.

§ 134.403 Service of appeal petition.

(a) Concurrent with its filing with OHA, a concern must also serve SBA’s AA/8(a)BD and the appropriate Associate General Counsel in SBA’s Office of General Counsel with a copy of the petition, including attachments.
(1) For appeals relating to denials of program admission pursuant to §124.206 of this title, suspensions of program assistance pursuant to §124.305, or denials of requests for waivers pursuant to §124.515, a petitioner must serve the SBA’s Associate General Counsel for Procurement Law.
(2) For appeals relating to early graduation pursuant to §§124.302 and 124.304 or termination pursuant to §§124.303 and 124.304, a petitioner must serve the SBA’s Associate General Counsel for Litigation.
(3) Service on SBA’s Office of General Counsel generally or the SBA General Counsel do not meet the service requirements of this section.

(b) Service should be addressed to the AA/8(a)BD and the applicable Associate General Counsel at the Small Business Administration, 409 3rd Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416.

§ 134.404 Decision by Administrative Law Judge.

Appeal proceedings brought under this subpart will be conducted by an Administrative Law Judge.

§ 134.405 Jurisdiction.

(a) The Administrative Law Judge selected to preside over an appeal shall decline to accept jurisdiction over any matter if:
(1) The appeal does not, on its face, allege facts that, if proven to be true, would warrant reversal or modification of the determination, including appeals of denials of 8(a) BD program admission based in whole or in part on grounds other than a negative finding of social disadvantage, economic disadvantage, ownership or control;
(2) The appeal is untimely filed under §134.202 or is not otherwise filed in accordance with the requirements of this subpart or the requirements in subparts A and B of this part; or
(3) The matter has been decided or is the subject of an adjudication before a court of competent jurisdiction over such matters.

(b) Once the Administrative Law Judge accepts jurisdiction over an appeal, subsequent initiation of an adjudication of the matter by a court of competent jurisdiction will not preclude the Administrative Law Judge from rendering a final decision on the matter.

(c) Jurisdiction of the Administrative Law Judge in a suspension case is limited to the issue of whether the protection of the Government’s interest requires suspension pending resolution of the termination action, unless the Administrative Law Judge has consolidated the suspension appeal with the corresponding termination appeal.
§ 134.406 Review of the administrative record.

(a) Except as provided in §134.407, any proceeding conducted under this subpart shall be decided solely on a review of the written administrative record.

(b) The Administrative Law Judge’s review is limited to determining whether the Agency’s determination is arbitrary, capricious, or contrary to law. As long as the Agency’s determination is reasonable, the Administrative Law Judge must uphold it on appeal.

(c) The administrative record must contain all documents that are relevant to the determination on appeal before the Administrative Law Judge and upon which the SBA decision-maker relied. The administrative record, however, need not contain all documents pertaining to the petitioner. For example, the administrative record in a termination proceeding need not include the Participant’s entire business plan file, documents pertaining to specific 8(a) contracts, or the firm’s application for participation in the 8(a) BD program if they are unrelated to the termination action. The petitioner may object to the absence of a document, previously submitted to or sent by SBA, which the petitioner believes was erroneously omitted from the administrative record.

(d) Where the Agency files its answer to the appeal petition after the date specified in §134.206, the Administrative Law Judge may decline to consider the answer and base his or her decision solely on a review of the administrative record.

(e) The Administrative Law Judge may remand a case to the AA/8(a)BD (or, in the case of a denial of a request for waiver under §124.515 of this title, to the Administrator) for further consideration if he or she determines that, due to the absence in the written administrative record of the reasons upon which the determination was based, the administrative record is insufficiently complete to decide whether the determination is arbitrary, capricious or contrary to law, or where it is clearly apparent from the record that SBA made an erroneous factual finding (e.g., SBA double counted an asset of an individual claiming disadvantaged status) or a mistake of law (e.g., SBA applied the wrong regulatory provision in evaluating the case). Such a remand will be for a period of 10 working days.

§ 134.407 Evidence beyond the record and discovery.

(a) The Administrative Law Judge may not admit evidence beyond the written administrative record nor permit any form of discovery unless he or she first determines that the petitioner, upon written submission, has made a substantial showing, based on credible evidence and not mere allegation, that the Agency determination in question may have resulted from bad faith or improper behavior.

(1) Prior to any such determination, the Administrative Law Judge must permit SBA to respond in writing to any allegations of bad faith or improper behavior.

(2) Upon a determination by the Administrative Law Judge that the petitioner has made such a substantial showing, the Administrative Law Judge may permit appropriate discovery, and accept relevant evidence beyond the written administrative record, which is specifically limited to the alleged bad faith or improper behavior.

(b) A determination by the Administrative Law Judge that the required showing set forth in paragraph (a) of this section has been made does not shift the burden of proof, which continues to rest with the petitioner.

§ 134.408 Decision on appeal.

(a) A decision of the Administrative Law Judge under this subpart is the final agency decision, and is binding on the parties.

(b) The Administrative Law Judge shall issue a decision, insofar as practicable, within 90 days after an appeal petition is filed. If the Administrative Law Judge does not issue a decision within 90 days after an appeal petition is filed, he or she must indicate the reason that the 90-day time limit has not been met in the decision, when issued.

(c) The Administrative Law Judge may reconsider an appeal decision within 20 days of the decision if there
§ 134.501 What is the purpose of this subpart?

The Equal Access to Justice Act, 5 U.S.C. 504, establishes procedures by which prevailing parties in certain administrative proceedings may apply for reimbursement of fees and other expenses. Eligible parties may receive awards when they prevail over SBA, unless SBA’s position in the proceeding was “substantially justified” or, as provided in §134.405(b), special circumstances make an award unjust. The rules of this subpart explain which OHA proceedings are covered, who may be eligible for an award of fees and expenses, and how to apply for such an award.

§ 134.502 Under what circumstances may I apply for reimbursement?

You may apply for reimbursement under this subpart if you meet the eligibility requirements in §134.406 and you prevail over SBA in a final decision in:

(a) The type of administrative proceeding which qualifies as an “adversary adjudication” under §134.403; or

(b) An ancillary or subsidiary issue in that administrative proceeding that is sufficiently significant and discrete to merit treatment as a separate unit; or

(c) A matter which the agency orders to be determined as an “adversary adjudication” under 5 U.S.C. 554.

§ 134.503 What is an adversary adjudication?

For purposes of this subpart, adversary adjudications are administrative proceedings before OHA which involve SBA as a party and which are required to be conducted by an Administrative Law Judge (“ALJ”). These adjudications (“administrative proceedings”) include those proceedings listed in §134.102(a), (i), and (j)(1), but do not include other OHA proceedings such as those listed in §134.102(k). In order for an administrative proceeding to qualify, SBA must have been represented by counsel or by another representative who enters an appearance and participates in the proceeding.

§ 134.504 What benefits may I claim?

You may seek reimbursement for certain reasonable fees and expenses incurred in prosecuting or defending a claim in an administrative proceeding.

§ 134.505 Under what circumstances are fees and expenses reimbursable?

(a) If you are a prevailing eligible party, you may receive an award for reasonable fees and expenses unless the position of the agency in the proceeding is found by the ALJ to be “substantially justified”, or special circumstances exist which make an award unjust. The “position of the agency” includes not only the position taken by SBA in the administrative proceeding, but also the position which it took in the action which led to the administrative proceeding. No presumption arises that SBA’s position was not substantially justified simply because it did not prevail in a proceeding. However, upon your assertion that the position of SBA was not substantially justified, SBA will be required to establish that its position was reasonable in fact and law.

(b) The ALJ may reduce or deny an award for reimbursement if you have unreasonably protracted the administrative proceeding or if other special circumstances would make the award unjust.

(c) Awards for fees and expenses incurred before the date on which an administrative proceeding was initiated are allowable only if you can demonstrate that they were reasonably incurred in preparation for the proceeding.

§ 134.506 Who is eligible for possible reimbursement?

(a) You are eligible for possible reimbursement if:

(1) You are an individual, owner of an unincorporated business, partnership, corporation, association, organization, or unit of local government; and
(2) You are a party, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 551(3); and
(3) You are the prevailing party; and
(4) You meet certain net worth and employee eligibility requirements set forth in §134.407.

(b) You are not eligible for possible reimbursement if you participated in the administrative proceeding only on behalf of persons or entities that are ineligible.

§ 134.507 How do I know which eligibility requirement applies to me?

Follow this chart to determine your eligibility. You should calculate your net worth and the number of your employees as of the date the administrative proceeding was initiated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eligibility requirements:</th>
<th>If your participation in the proceeding was:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Personal net worth may not exceed 2 million dollars.</td>
<td>(1) As an individual rather than a business owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Personal net worth may not exceed 7 million dollars, and No more than 500 employees.</td>
<td>(2) As owner of an unincorporated business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Business net worth may not exceed 7 million dollars, and No more than 500 employees.</td>
<td>(3) As a partnership, corporation, association, organization, or unit of local government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) No net worth limitations, and No more than 500 employees.</td>
<td>(4) As a charitable or other tax-exempt organization described in 26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3) or a cooperative association as defined in 12 U.S.C. 1141j(a).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 134.508 What are the special rules for calculating net worth and number of employees?

(a) Your net worth must include the value of any assets disposed of for the purpose of meeting an eligibility standard, and must exclude any obligation incurred for that purpose. Transfers of assets, or obligations incurred, for less than reasonably equivalent value will be presumed to have been made for the purpose of meeting an eligibility standard.

(b) If you are an owner of an unincorporated business, or a partnership, corporation, association, organization, or unit of local government, your net worth must include the net worth of all of your affiliates. “Affiliates” are:

(1) Corporations or other business entities which directly or indirectly own or control a majority of the voting shares or other ownership interests in the applicant concern; and

(2) Corporations or other business entities in which the applicant concern directly or indirectly owns or controls a majority of the voting shares or other ownership interests.

(c) Your employees include all those persons regularly working for you at the time the administrative proceeding was initiated, whether or not they were at work on that date. Part-time employees must be included on a proportional basis. You must include the employees of all your affiliates in your total number of employees.

§ 134.509 What is the difference between a fee and an expense?

A fee is a charge to you for the professional services of attorneys, agents, or expert witnesses rendered in connection with your case. An expense is the cost to you of any study, analysis, engineering report, test, project, or similar matter prepared in connection with your case.

§ 134.510 Are there limitations on reimbursement for fees and expenses?

(a) Awards will be calculated on the basis of fees and expenses actually incurred. If services were provided by one or more of your employees, or were made available to you free, you may not seek an award for those services. If services were provided at a reduced rate, fees and expenses will be calculated at that reduced rate.

(b) In determining the reasonableness of the fees for attorneys, agents or expert witnesses, the ALJ will consider at least the following:

(1) That provider’s customary fee for like services;

(2) The prevailing rate for similar services in the community in which that provider ordinarily performs services;

(3) The time actually spent in representing you; and

(4) The time reasonably spent in light of the difficulty and complexity of the issues.
§ 134.511 What should I include in my application for an award?

(a) Your application must be in the form of a written petition which is served and filed in accordance with §134.204. It must contain the following information:
(1) A statement that OHA has jurisdiction over the case pursuant to §134.102(g);
(2) Identification of the administrative proceeding for which you are seeking an award;
(3) A statement that you have prevailed, and a list of each issue in which you claim the position of SBA was not substantially justified;
(4) Your status as an individual, owner of an unincorporated business, partnership, corporation, association, organization, or unit of local government;
(5) Your net worth and number of employees as of the date the administrative proceeding was initiated, or a statement that one or both of these eligibility requirements do not apply to you;
(6) The amount of fees and expenses you are seeking, along with the invoice or billing statement from each service provider;
(7) A description of any affiliates (as that term is defined in §134.408), or a statement that no affiliates exist;
(8) A statement that the application and any attached statements and exhibits are true and complete to the best of your knowledge and that you understand a false statement on these documents is a felony punishable by fine and imprisonment under 18 U.S.C. 1001; and
(9) (i) Your name and address;
(ii) Your signature, or the signature of either a responsible official or your attorney; and
(iii) The address and telephone number of the person who signs the application.

(b) You should follow this chart to determine which further documents must be included with your application:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Party</th>
<th>Required documents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Individual, owner of unincorporated business, partnership, corporation, association, organization, or unit of local government.</td>
<td>(1) Net worth exhibit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Organization qualified as tax-exempt under 26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3).</td>
<td>(2) Copy of a ruling by the Internal Revenue Service that you qualify as a 501(c)(3) organization or Statement that you were listed in the current edition of IRS Bulletin 78 as of the date the administrative proceeding was initiated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Tax-exempt religious organization not required to obtain a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service on its exempt status.</td>
<td>(3) Description of your organization and the basis for your belief you are exempt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Cooperative association as defined in 12 U.S.C. 1141(j)(a) ...</td>
<td>(4) Copy of your charter or articles of incorporation, and Copy of your bylaws.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 134.512 What must a net worth exhibit contain?

(a) A net worth exhibit may be in any format, but it must contain:
(1) List of all assets and liabilities for you and each affiliate in detail sufficient to show your eligibility;
(2) Aggregate net worth for you and all affiliates; and
(3) Description of any transfers of assets from, or obligations incurred by, you or your affiliates within one year prior to the initiation of the administrative proceeding which reduced your net worth below the eligibility ceiling, or a statement that no such transfers occurred.
§ 134.513 What documentation do I need for fees and expenses?

You must submit a separate itemized statement or invoice for the services of each provider for which you seek reimbursement. Each separate statement or invoice must contain:

(a) The hours worked in connection with the proceeding by each provider supplying a billable service;
(b) A description of the specific services performed by each provider;
(c) The rate at which fees were computed for each provider;
(d) The total charged by the provider on that statement or invoice; and
(e) The provider’s verification that the statement or invoice is true to the best of his or her knowledge and that he or she understands that a false statement is punishable by fine and imprisonment under 18 U.S.C. 1001.

§ 134.514 What deadlines apply to my application for fees and expenses?

After you have prevailed in an administrative proceeding or in a discrete issue therein, you must serve, and file with OHA, your written application for an award, and its attachments, no later than 30 days after the decision in the administrative proceeding becomes final under §134.227. The deadline for filing an application for an award may not be extended. If SBA or another party requests review of the decision in the underlying administrative proceeding, your request for an award for fees and expenses may still be filed, but it will not be considered by the ALJ until a final decision is rendered.

§ 134.515 How will proceedings relating to my application for fees and expenses be conducted?

Proceedings will be conducted in accordance with the provisions in subpart B of this part.

§ 134.516 How will I know if I receive an award?

The ALJ will issue an initial decision on the merits of your request for an award which will become final in 30 days unless a request for review is filed under §134.228. The decision will include findings on your eligibility, on whether SBA’s position was substantially justified, and on the reasonableness of the amount you requested. Where applicable, there will also be findings on whether you have unduly protracted the proceedings or whether other circumstances make an award unjust, and an explanation of the reason for the difference, if any, between the amount requested and the amount awarded. If you have sought an award against more than one federal agency, the decision will allocate responsibility for payment among the agencies with appropriate explanation.

§ 134.517 May I seek review of the ALJ’s decision on my award?

You may request review of the ALJ’s decision on your award by filing a request for review in accordance with §134.228. You may seek judicial review of a final decision as provided in 5 U.S.C. 504(c)(2).

§ 134.518 How are awards paid?

If you are seeking payment of an award, you must submit a copy of the final decision, along with your certification that you are not seeking judicial review of either the decision in the adversary adjudication, or of the award, to the following address: Chief Financial Officer, Office of Financial Operations, SBA, P.O. Box 205, Denver, CO 80201–0205. SBA will pay you the
amount awarded within 60 days of receipt of your request unless it is notified that you or another party has sought judicial review of the underlying decision or the award.

**PART 136—ENFORCEMENT OF NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF HANDICAP IN PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES CONDUCTED BY THE SMALL BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION**

Sec.
136.101 Purpose.
136.102 Application.
136.103 Definitions.
136.104–136.109 [Reserved]
136.110 Self-evaluation.
136.111 Notice.
136.112–136.129 [Reserved]
136.130 General prohibition against discrimination.
136.131–136.139 [Reserved]
136.140 Employment.
136.141–136.148 [Reserved]
136.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.
136.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.
136.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.
136.152–136.159 [Reserved]
136.160 Communications.
136.161–136.169 [Reserved]
136.170 Compliance procedures.

**AUTHORITY:** 29 U.S.C. 794.

**SOURCE:** 53 FR 19760, May 31, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

§ 136.101 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to effectuate section 119 of the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978, which amended section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 to prohibit discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies or the United States Postal Service.

§ 136.102 Application.

This part applies to all programs or activities conducted by the Small Business Administration except for programs or activities conducted outside the United States that do not involve individuals with handicaps in the United States.

§ 136.103 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the term—

*Agency* means the Small Business Administration.

*Assistant Attorney General. Assistant Attorney General* means the Assistant Attorney General, Civil Rights Division, United States Department of Justice.

*Auxiliary aids* means services or devices that enable persons with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills to have an equal opportunity to participate in, and enjoy the benefits of, programs or activities conducted by the Agency. For example, auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired vision include readers, Brailled materials, audio recordings, and other similar services and devices. Auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired hearing include telephone handset amplifiers, telephones compatible with hearing aids, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (TDD’s), interpreters, notetakers, written materials, and other similar services and devices.

*Complete complaint* means a written statement that contains the complainant’s name and address and describes the Agency’s alleged discriminatory actions in sufficient detail to inform the Agency of the nature and date of the alleged violation of section 504. It shall be signed by the complainant or by someone authorized to do so on his or her behalf. Complaints filed on behalf of classes or third parties shall describe or identify (by name, if possible) the alleged victims of discrimination.

*Facility* means all or any portion of buildings, structures, equipment, roads, walks, parking lots, rolling stock or other conveyances, or other real or personal property.

*Individual with handicaps* means any person who has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities, has a record of such an impairment, or is regarded as having such an impairment. As used in this definition, the phrase—

(1) *Physical or mental impairment* includes—

(i) Any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: Neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense
(ii) Any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities. The term physical or mental impairment includes, but is not limited to, such diseases and conditions as orthopedic, visual, speech, and hearing impairments, cerebral palsy, epilepsy, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, cancer, heart disease, diabetes, mental retardation, emotional illness, and drug addiction and alcoholism.

(2) Major life activities includes functions such as caring for one’s self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking, breathing, learning, and working.

(3) Has a record of such an impairment means has a history of, or has been misclassified as having, a mental or physical impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities.

(4) Is regarded as having an impairment means—

(i) Has a physical or mental impairment that does not substantially limit major life activities but is treated by the Agency as constituting such a limitation;

(ii) Has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits major life activities only as a result of the attitudes of others toward such impairment;

(iii) Has none of the impairments defined in paragraph (1) of this definition but is treated by the Agency as having such an impairment.

Qualified individual with handicaps means—

(1) With respect to any Agency program or activity under which a person is required to perform services or to achieve a level of accomplishment, an individual with handicaps who meets the essential eligibility requirements and who can achieve the purpose of the program or activity without modifications in the program or activity that the Agency can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in its nature;

(2) With respect to any other program or activity, an individual with handicaps who meets the essential eligibility requirements for participation in, or receipt of benefits from, that program or activity; and

(3) For purposes of employment, a person who qualifies under the definition contained at 29 CFR 1613.702(f), which is made applicable to this part by §136.140.

Respondent means the organizational unit in which a complainant alleges that discrimination occurred.


§§136.104–136.109 [Reserved]

§136.110 Self-evaluation.

(a) The Agency shall, by July 17, 1989, evaluate its current policies and practices, and the effects thereof, that do not or may not meet the requirements of this part, and, to the extent modification of any such policies and practices is required, the Agency shall proceed to make the necessary modifications.

(b) The Agency shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including individuals with handicaps or organizations representing individuals with handicaps, to participate in the self-evaluation process by submitting comments (both oral and written).

(c) The Agency shall, for at least three years following the self-evaluation, maintain on file and make available for public inspection:

(1) A description of areas examined and any problems identified; and

(2) A description of any modifications made.
§ 136.111 Notice.

The Agency shall make available to employees, applicants, participants, beneficiaries, and other interested persons such information regarding the provisions of this part and its applicability to the programs or activities conducted by the Agency, and make such information available to them in such manner as the Administrator finds necessary to apprise such persons of the protections against discrimination assured them by section 504 and this part.

§§ 136.112–136.129 [Reserved]

§ 136.130 General prohibition against discrimination.

(a) No qualified individual with handicaps shall, on the basis of handicap, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Agency.

(b) The Agency, in providing any aid, benefit, or service, may not, directly or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements, on the basis of handicap:

1. Deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service;
2. Afford a qualified individual with handicaps an opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service that is not equal to that afforded others;
3. Provide a qualified individual with handicaps with an aid, benefit, or service that is not as effective in affording equal opportunity to obtain the same result, to gain the same benefit, or to reach the same level of achievement as that provided to others;
4. Provide different or separate aid, benefits, or services to individuals with handicaps or to any class of individuals with handicaps than is provided to others unless such action is necessary to provide qualified individuals with handicaps with aid, benefits, or services that are as effective as those provided to others;
5. Deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate as a member of planning, vol-

untary (such as SCORE or Ace) or advisory boards; or
6. Otherwise limit a qualified individual with handicaps in the enjoyment of any right, privilege, advantage, or opportunity enjoyed by others receiving the aid, benefit, or service.

(c) The Agency shall permit a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate in any of the Agency’s programs or activities, despite the existence of permissibly separate or different programs or activities especially designed to accommodate qualified individuals with handicaps.

(d) The Agency may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize criteria or methods of administration the purpose of effect of which would—

1. Subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap; or
2. Defeat or substantially impair accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to individuals with handicaps.

(e) The Agency may not, in determining the site or location of a facility, make selections the purpose or effect of which would:

1. Exclude individuals with handicaps from, deny them the benefits of, or otherwise subject them to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Agency; or
2. Defeat or substantially impair the accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to individuals with handicaps.

(f) The Agency, in the selection of procurement contractors, may not use criteria that subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap.

(g) The Agency may not administer a licensing or certification program in a manner that subjects qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap, nor may the Agency establish requirements for the programs or activities of licensees or certified entities that subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap. However, the programs or activities of entities that are licensed or certified by the Agency are not, themselves, covered by this part.
§ 136.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.

(a) General. The Agency shall operate each program or activity so that the program or activity, when viewed in its entirety, is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. This paragraph does not—

1. Necessarily require the Agency to make each of its existing facilities accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps; or

2. Require the Agency to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where Agency personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the Agency has the burden of proving that compliance with §136.150(a) would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the Administrator after considering all Agency resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. The Administrator shall notify the EEOC in writing within 30 days of the initial decision by Agency personnel that an action would result in such an alteration or burdens. If an action would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the Agency shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or such burdens but would, nevertheless, ensure that individuals with handicaps receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

(b) Methods. The Agency may comply with the requirements of this section through such means as redesign of equipment, reassignment of services to accessible buildings, assignment of aids to beneficiaries, home visits, delivery of services at alternate accessible sites, alteration of existing facilities and construction of new facilities, use of accessible rolling stock, or any other methods that result in making its programs or activities readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. The Agency is not required to make structural changes in existing facilities where other methods are effective in achieving compliance with this section. The Agency, in making alterations to existing buildings, shall meet accessibility requirements to the extent compelled by the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157), and any regulations implementing it.
§ 136.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.

Each building or part of a building that is constructed or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of the Agency shall be designed, constructed, or altered so as to be readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. The definitions, requirements, and standards of the Architectural Barriers Act (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157), as established in 41 CFR 101–19.600—101–19.607, apply to buildings covered by this section.

§§ 136.152–136.159 [Reserved]

§ 136.160 Communications.

(a) The Agency shall take appropriate steps to ensure effective communication with applicants, participants, personnel of other Federal entities, and members of the public.

(1) The Agency shall furnish appropriate auxiliary aids where necessary to afford an individual with handicaps an equal opportunity to participate in, and enjoy the benefits of, a program or activity conducted by the Agency. 

(i) In determining what type of auxiliary aid is necessary, the Agency shall give primary consideration to the requests of the individual with handicaps.

(ii) The Agency need not provide individually prescribed devices, readers for personal use or study, or other devices of a personal nature.

(2) Where the Agency communicates with applicants and beneficiaries by telephone, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (‘TDD’s) or equally effective telecommunication systems shall be used.

(b) The Agency shall ensure that interested persons, including persons with impaired vision or hearing, can obtain information as to the existence and location of accessible services, activities, and facilities.

(c) The Agency shall provide a sign at each primary entrance to each of its inaccessible facilities, directing users to a location at which they can obtain information about accessible facilities. The international symbol for accessibility shall be used at each primary entrance of an accessible facility.

(d) This section does not require the Agency to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where Agency personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens,
§ 136.170 Compliance procedures.

(a) Applicability. Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, this section applies to all allegations of discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by the Agency.

(b) Employment complaints. The Agency shall process complaints alleging violations of section 504 with respect to employment according to the procedures established by EEOC in 29 CFR part 1613 pursuant to section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791).

(c) Filing a complaint—(1) Who may file. Any person who believes that he or she has been subjected to discrimination prohibited by this part may file a complaint. An authorized representative of such person may file a complaint on his or her behalf. Any person who believes that any specific class of persons has been subjected to discrimination prohibited by this part and who is a member of that class, or the authorized representative of a member of that class, may file a complaint.

(2) Confidentiality. The Chief, Office of Civil Rights Compliance (OCRC), shall hold in confidence the identity of any person submitting a complaint, unless the person submits written authorization otherwise, except to the extent necessary to carry out the purposes of this part, including the conduct of any investigation, hearing, or proceeding under this part, or to cooperate with the Office of Inspector General in the performance of its responsibilities under the Inspector General Act of 1978, as amended.

(3) When to file. Complaints shall be filed within 180 days of the alleged act of discrimination, except when this deadline is extended by the Chief, OCRC, for good cause shown. For purposes of determining when a complaint is timely filed under this paragraph, a complaint mailed to the Agency shall be deemed filed on the date it is postmarked. Any other complaint shall be deemed filed on the date it is received by the Agency.

(4) How to file. Complaints may be delivered or mailed to the Chief, OCRC, Small Business Administration, 1441 L Street NW.—Room 501, Washington, DC 20416. Any other SBA official receiving a complaint under this part shall forward such complaint immediately to the Chief, OCRC.

(d) Notification to the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board. The agency shall promptly send to the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board a copy of any complaint alleging that a building or facility that is subject to the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4151-4157 is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps.

(e) Acceptance of complaint. (1) The Chief, OCRC, shall accept a complete complaint that is filed in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and over which the Agency has jurisdiction. The Chief, OCRC, shall notify the complainant and the respondent of receipt and acceptance of the complaint.

(2) If the Chief, OCRC, receives a complaint that is not complete, he or she shall notify the complainant, within 30 days of receipt of the incomplete complaint, that additional information is needed. If the complainant fails to
§ 136.170

furnish the necessary information within 30 days of receipt of this notice, the Chief, OCRC, shall dismiss the complaint without prejudice.

(3) If the Chief, OCRC, receives a complaint over which the Agency does not have jurisdiction, he or she shall promptly notify the complainant and shall make reasonable efforts to refer the complaint to the appropriate Government entity.

(f) Investigation/Conciliation. (1) Within 180 days of the receipt of a complete complaint the Chief, OCRC, shall complete the investigation of the complaint and attempt informal resolution. If no informal resolution is achieved, the Chief, OCRC, shall issue a letter of findings.

(2) The Chief, OCRC, may require Agency employees to cooperate in the investigation and attempted resolution of complaints. Employees who are required to participate in any investigation under this section shall do so as part of their official duties and during regular duty hours.

(3) The Chief, OCRC, shall furnish the complainant and the respondent with a copy of the investigative report and provide the complainant and respondent with an opportunity for informal resolution of the complaint.

(4) If a complaint is resolved informally, the terms of the agreement shall be reduced to writing and made part of the complaint file, with a copy of the agreement provided to the complainant and respondent. The written agreement may include a finding on the issue of discrimination and shall describe any corrective action to which the complainant and respondent have agreed.

(g) Letter of findings. If an informal resolution of the complaint is not reached, the Chief, OCRC, shall, within 180 days of receipt of the complete complaint, notify the complainant, the respondent and the Director, Office of Equal Employment Opportunity and Compliance (OEOC), of the results of the investigation in a letter sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, and containing—

(1) Findings of fact and conclusions of law;

(2) A description of a remedy for each violation found;

(3) A notice of the right of the complainant and respondent to appeal to the Director, OEOC; and

(4) A notice of the right of the complainant and respondent to request a hearing.

The letter of findings becomes the final Agency decision if neither party files an appeal within the time prescribed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section. The Chief, OCRC, shall certify that the letter of findings is the final Agency decision on the complaint at the expiration of that time.

(h) Filing an appeal. (1) Any notice of appeal to the Director, OEOC, with or without a request for hearing, shall be filed by the complainant or the respondent in writing with the Chief, OCRC, within 30 days of receipt of the Chief's letter of findings.

(2) If a timely notice of appeal without a request for hearing is filed, any other party may file a written request for hearing within the time limit specified in paragraph (h)(1) of this section or within 10 days of his or her receipt of such notice of appeal, whichever is later.

(3) A party may appeal to the Director, OEOC, from a decision of the Chief, OCRC, that an appeal is untimely. This appeal shall be filed with the Director, OEOC, within 15 days of receipt of the decision from the Chief, OCRC.

(4) Any request for hearing will be construed as a request for an oral hearing. The complainant's failure to file a timely request for a hearing in accordance with this part shall constitute waiver of the right to a hearing, but shall not preclude his or her submitting written information and argument to the Director, OEOC, in connection with his or her notice of appeal.

(i) Acceptance of appeal. The Chief, OCRC, shall accept and process any timely filed appeal.
§ 136.170

(1) If a notice of appeal is filed but no party requests a hearing, the Chief, OCRC, shall promptly transmit the complaint file, the letter of findings and the notice of appeal to the Director, OEEOC.

(2) If a notice of appeal is filed and a party makes a timely request for a hearing, the Chief, OCRC, will transmit the notice of appeal, the request for hearing and the investigative file to the Office of Hearings and Appeals which office will assign the case to an administrative judge who will conduct a hearing in accordance with the procedures contained in 13 CFR part 134.

(j) Decision. (1) Where no request for a hearing is made, the Director, OEEOC, shall make the final Agency decision based on the contents of the complaint file, the letter of findings, the notice of appeal, and any responses to the notice of appeal filed by other parties. The decision shall be made within 60 days of receipt of the appeal or any response to the notice of appeal, whichever is applicable. If the Director, OEEOC, determines that he or she needs additional information from any party, he or she shall request the information and provide the other party or parties an opportunity to respond to that information. The Director, OEEOC, shall have 60 days from receipt of the additional information or responses to such additional information, whichever is later, to make the decision. The Director, OEEOC, shall transmit his or her decision by letter to the parties. The decision shall set forth the findings, remedial actions, and reasons for the decision.

(2) Where a request for a hearing has been made, the administrative judge shall issue an initial decision, in writing, based on the hearing record, composed of the proposed findings of fact, conclusions of law, and remedies, to the parties and to the Director, OEEOC, within 60 days after receipt of the hearing transcripts, or within 30 days after the conclusion of the hearing if no transcript is made. This time limit may be extended with the permission of the Director, OEEOC. The decision of the administrative judge shall be deemed to be the final decision of the Agency after 30 days, unless a party files a petition for review with the Director, OEEOC, pursuant to 13 CFR 134.228(a) or the Director, OEEOC, issues an order stating his or her decision to review the initial decision, pursuant to 13 CFR 134.228(a). See 13 CFR 134.227(b).

(3) Where a petition for review is filed or a review is ordered by the Director, OEEOC, the Director, OEEOC, shall make the final decision of the Agency based on information in the complaint file, the letter of findings, the hearing record, the initial decision, the petition for review, and any responses to the petition or order. The decision shall be made within 60 days of receipt of the petition for review, the order, or any responses to such petition or order, whichever is later. If the Director, OEEOC, determines that he or she needs additional information from any party, he or she shall request the information and provide the other party or parties an opportunity to respond to that information. The Director, OEEOC, shall have 60 days from receipt of the additional information or responses to such additional information, whichever is later, to make the decision. The Director, OEEOC, shall transmit his or her decision by letter to the parties. The decision shall set forth the findings, recommended remedial actions, and reasons for the decision. The decision shall adopt, reject, or modify the initial decision of the administrative judge. If the decision is to reject or modify the initial decision, the decision letter shall set forth in detail the specific reasons for the rejection or modification.

(4) Any respondent required to take action under the terms of the decision of the Agency shall do so promptly. The Chief, OCRC, may require periodic compliance reports specifying:

(i) The manner in which compliance with the provisions of the decision has been achieved;

(ii) The reasons any action required by the final decision has not been taken; and

(iii) The steps being taken to ensure full compliance.

(k) The time limit cited in paragraph (f) of this section may be extended with the permission of the Assistant Attorney General.
(l) The Agency may delegate its authority for conducting complaint investigations to other Federal agencies, except that the authority for making the final determination may not be delegated to another agency.

[51 FR 19760, May 31, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 62191, Dec. 5, 1995]

PART 140—DEBT COLLECTION THROUGH OFFSET

§ 140.1 What does this part cover?

This part establishes procedures which SBA may use in the collection, through offset, of past-due debts owed to the Government. SBA’s failure to comply with any provision of the regulations in this part is not available to any debtor as a defense against collection of the debt through judicial process.

§ 140.2 What is a debt and how can the SBA collect it through offset?

(a) A debt means an amount owed to the United States from loans made or guaranteed by the United States, and from fees, leases, rents, royalties, services, sales of real or personal property, overpayments, fines, penalties, damages, interest, forfeitures, or any other source. You are a debtor if you owe an amount to the United States from any of these sources.

(b) SBA may collect past-due debts through offset by using any of three procedures: administrative offset, salary offset, or IRS tax refund offset. A past-due debt is one which has been reduced to judgment, has been accelerated, or has been due for at least 90 days.

(1) Administrative offset. SBA may withhold money it owes to the debtor in order to satisfy the debt. This procedure is an “administrative offset” and is authorized by 31 U.S.C. 3716.

(2) Salary offset. If the debtor is a federal employee (a civilian employee as defined by 5 U.S.C. 2105, an employee of the U.S. Postal Service or Postal Rate Commission, or a member of the Uniformed Services or Reserve of the Uniformed Services), SBA may deduct payments owed to SBA or another federal agency from the debtor’s paycheck. This procedure is a “salary offset” and is authorized by 5 U.S.C. 5514.

(i) Any amount deducted from salary in any one pay period will not exceed 15 percent of a debtor’s disposable pay, unless the debtor agrees in writing to a greater percentage.

(ii) SBA also may collect against travel advances, training expenses, disallowed payments, retirement benefits, or any other amount due the employee, including lump-sum payments.

(iii) If an employee has terminated employment after salary offset has been initiated, there are no limitations on the amount that can be withheld or offset.

(3) IRS tax refund offset. SBA may request that IRS reduce a debtor’s tax refund by the amount of the debt, as authorized by 31 U.S.C. 3720A. Where available, administrative and salary offsets must be used before collection is attempted through income tax offset. SBA may refer a debt to the IRS for a tax refund offset and take additional action against the debtor to collect the debt at the same time or in sequence. When SBA makes simultaneous or sequential referrals (within six months of the initial notice), only one review pursuant to the rules in this part and the statutes authorizing them is required.

§ 140.3 What rights do you have when SBA tries to collect a debt from you through offset?

(a) SBA must write to you and tell you that it proposes to collect the debt by reducing your federal paycheck, withholding money the Government...
owe(s) you, and/or reducing your tax refund.

(b) In its written notice to you, SBA must tell you the nature and amount of the debt; that SBA will begin procedures to collect the debt through reduction of your federal paycheck, administrative offset, or reduction of your tax refund; that you have an opportunity to inspect and copy Government records relating to the debt at your expense; and that, before collection begins, you have an opportunity to agree with SBA on a schedule for repayment of your debt.

(c) SBA also must tell you that unless you respond within 60 days from the date of the notice, it will disclose to consumer reporting agencies (also known as credit bureaus or credit agencies) that you are responsible for the debt and the specific information it intends to disclose in order to establish your identity. The amount, status, history of the debt, and agency program under which it arose also will be disclosed.

(d) If you respond to SBA within 60 days from the date of the notice, SBA will not disclose the information to consumer reporting agencies until it considers your response and determines that you owe a past-due, legally enforceable debt.

(e) Within 60 days of the notice you may present evidence that all or part of the debt is not past due or not legally enforceable.

(1) Where a salary offset or administrative offset is proposed, you will have the opportunity to present your evidence to SBA’s Office of Hearings and Appeals (“OHA”). The rules in part 134 of this title govern the procedural rights to which you are entitled. In order to have a hearing before OHA, you must request a hearing within 15 days of receipt of the written notice described in this section. An OHA judge will issue a decision within 60 days of the date you filed your petition/request for a review or hearing with OHA, unless you were granted additional time within which to file your request for review.

(2) Where an income tax refund offset is proposed, you will have the opportunity to request a review and present your evidence to the appropriate SBA Commercial Loan Servicing Center at the address provided in the notice.

(f) SBA must consider any evidence you present and must first decide that a debt is past due and legally enforceable. A debt is legally enforceable if there is any forum, including a State or Federal Court or administrative agency, in which SBA’s claim would not be barred on the date of offset. Non-judgment debts are enforceable for ten years; judgment debts are enforceable beyond ten years. You will be notified of SBA’s decision at least 30 days before any offset deduction is made. You also will be notified of the amount, frequency, proposed beginning date, and duration of the deductions, as well as any obligation to pay interest, penalties, and administrative costs.

(g) If there is any substantial change in the status or amount of your debt, SBA will promptly report that change to each consumer reporting agency it originally contacted.

(h) SBA will obtain satisfactory assurances from each consumer reporting agency that the consumer reporting agency has complied with all federal laws relating to provision of consumer credit information.

(i) If your debt is being repaid by reduction of your income tax refund and you make any additional payments to SBA, SBA will notify the IRS of these payments and your new balance within 10 business days of receiving your payment.

(j) When the debt of a federal employee is reduced to court judgment, the employee is not entitled to further review by SBA, but is only entitled to notice of a proposed salary offset resulting from the judgment. The amount deducted may not exceed 15% of disposable pay, except when the deduction of a greater amount is necessary to completely collect the debt within the employee’s remaining period of employment.

(k) When another federal agency asks SBA to offset a debt for it, SBA will not initiate the requested offset until it has received from the creditor agency a written certification that the debtor owes a debt, its amount, and that the provisions of all applicable statutes and regulations have been complied with fully.
(l) SBA may make an offset prior to completion of the procedures described in this part, if:
(1) Failure to make an offset would substantially prejudice the government’s ability to collect the debt; and
(2) The time before the payment would otherwise be made to you does not reasonably permit the completion of the procedures.
(3) Such prior offset then must be followed by the completion of the procedures described in this part.

(m) Where an IRS tax refund offset is sought, SBA must follow the Department of the Treasury’s regulations governing offset of a past-due, legally enforceable debt against tax overpayment.

PART 142—PROGRAM FRAUD CIVIL REMEDIES ACT REGULATIONS

OVERVIEW AND DEFINITIONS

142.1 Overview of regulations.
(a) Statutory basis. This part implements the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1986, 31 U.S.C. 3801–3812 (“the Act”). The Act provides SBA and other federal agencies with an administrative remedy to impose civil penalties and assessments against persons making false claims and statements. The Act also provides due process protections to all persons who are subject to administrative proceedings under this part.

142.2 Possible remedies for program fraud. In addition to any other penalty which may be prescribed by law, a person who submits, or causes to be submitted, a false claim or a false statement to SBA

142.21 How will the hearing be conducted and who has the burden of proof?
142.22 How is evidence presented at the hearing?
142.23 Are there limits on disclosure of documents or discovery?
142.24 Can witnesses be subpoenaed?
142.25 Can a party or witness object to discovery?
142.26 Can a party informally discuss the case with the ALJ?
142.27 Are there sanctions for misconduct?
142.28 Where is the hearing held?
142.29 Are witness lists exchanged before the hearing?

DECISIONS AND APPEALS

142.30 How is the case decided?
142.31 Can a party request reconsideration of the initial decision?
142.32 When does the initial decision of the ALJ become final?
142.33 What are the procedures for appealing the ALJ decision?
142.34 Are there any limitations on the right to appeal to the Administrator?
142.35 How does the Administrator dispose of an appeal?
142.36 Can I obtain judicial review?
142.37 What judicial review is available?
142.38 Can the administrative complaint be settled voluntarily?
142.39 How are civil penalties and assessments collected?
142.40 What if the investigation indicates criminal misconduct?
142.41 How does SBA protect the rights of defendants?
is subject to a civil penalty of not more than $5,000 for each statement or claim, regardless of whether property, services, or money is actually delivered or paid by SBA. If SBA has made any payment, transferred property, or provided services in reliance on a false claim, the person submitting it is also subject to an assessment of not more than twice the amount of the false claim. This assessment is in lieu of damages sustained by SBA because of the false claim.

§ 142.2 What kind of conduct will result in program fraud enforcement?
(a) Any person who makes, or causes to be made, a false, fictitious, or fraudulent claim or written statement to SBA is subject to program fraud enforcement. A "person" means any individual, partnership, corporation, association, or other legal entity.
(b) If more than one person makes a false claim or statement, each person is liable for a civil penalty. If more than one person makes a false claim which has induced SBA to make payment, an assessment is imposed against each person. The liability of each such person to pay the assessment is joint and several, that is, each is responsible for the entire amount.
(c) No proof of specific intent to defraud is required to establish liability under this part.

§ 142.3 What is a claim?
(a) Claim means any request, demand, or submission:
(1) Made to SBA for property, services, or money;
(2) Made to a recipient of property, services, or money from SBA or to a party to a contract with SBA for property or services, or for the payment of money. This provision applies only when the claim is related to the property, services or money from SBA or to the contract with SBA; or
(3) Made to SBA which decreases an obligation to pay or account for property, services, or money.
(b) A claim can relate to grants, loans, insurance, or other benefits, and includes SBA guaranteed loans made by participating lenders. A claim is made when it is received by SBA, an agent, fiscal intermediary, or other entity acting for SBA, or when it is received by the recipient of property, services, or money, or the party to the contract.
(c) Each voucher, invoice, claim form, or individual request or demand for property, services, or money constitutes a separate claim.

§ 142.4 What is a statement?
A "statement" means any written representation, certification, affirmation, document, record, or accounting or bookkeeping entry made with respect to a claim or with respect to a contract, bid or proposal for a contract, grant, loan or other benefit from SBA. "From SBA" means that SBA provides some portion of the money or property in connection with the contract, bid, grant, loan, or benefit, or is potentially liable to another party for some portion of the money or property under such contract, bid, grant, loan, or benefit. A statement is made, presented, or submitted to SBA when it is received by SBA or an agent, fiscal intermediary, or other entity acting for SBA.

§ 142.5 What is a false claim or statement?
(a) A claim submitted to SBA is a "false" claim if the person making the claim, or causing the claim to be made, knows or has reason to know that the claim:
(1) Is false, fictitious or fraudulent;
(2) Includes or is supported by a written statement which asserts or contains a material fact which is false, fictitious, or fraudulent;
(3) Includes or is supported by a written statement which is false, fictitious or fraudulent because it omits a material fact that the person making the statement has a duty to include in the statement; or
(4) Is for payment for the provision of property or services which the person has not provided as claimed.
(b) A statement submitted to SBA is a false statement if the person making the statement, or causing the statement to be made, knows or has reason to know that the statement:
(1) Asserts a material fact which is false, fictitious, or fraudulent; or
§ 142.6 What does the phrase “know or have reason to know” mean?

A person knows or has reason to know (that a claim or statement is false) if the person:
(a) Has actual knowledge that the claim or statement is false, fictitious, or fraudulent; or
(b) Acts in deliberate ignorance of the truth or falsity of the claim or statement; or
(c) Acts in reckless disregard of the truth or falsity of the claim or statement.

PROCEDURES LEADING TO ISSUANCE OF A COMPLAINT

§ 142.7 Who investigates program fraud?

The Inspector General, or his designee, is responsible for investigating allegations that a false claim or statement has been made. In this regard, the Inspector General has authority under the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act and the Inspector General Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App. 3), as amended, to issue administrative subpoenas for the production of records and documents. The methods for serving a subpoena are set forth in part 101 of this chapter.

§ 142.8 What happens if program fraud is suspected?

(a) If the investigating official concludes that an action under this part is warranted, the investigating official submits a report containing the findings and conclusions of the investigation to a reviewing official. The reviewing official is the General Counsel or his designee. If the reviewing official determines that the report provides adequate evidence that a person submitted a false claim or statement, the reviewing official transmits to the Attorney General written notice of an intention to refer the matter for adjudication, with a request for approval of such referral. This notice will include the reviewing official’s statements concerning:
(1) The reasons for the referral;
(2) The claims or statements upon which liability would be based;
(3) The evidence that supports liability;
(4) An estimate of the amount of money or the value of property, services, or other benefits requested or demanded in the false claim or statement;
(5) Any exculpatory or mitigating circumstances that may relate to the claims or statements known by the reviewing official or the investigating official; and
(6) The likelihood of collecting the proposed penalties and assessments.
(b) If at any time, the Attorney General or designee requests in writing that this administrative process be stayed, the Administrator must stay the process immediately. The Administrator may order the process resumed only upon receipt of the written authorization of the Attorney General.

§ 142.9 When will SBA issue a complaint?

SBA will issue a complaint:
(a) If the Attorney General (or designee) approves the referral of the allegations for adjudication; and
(b) In a case of submission of false claims, if the amount of money or the value of property or services demanded or requested in a false claim, or a group of related claims submitted at the same time, does not exceed $150,000. A group of related claims submitted at the same time includes only those claims arising from the same transaction (such as a grant, loan, application, or contract) which are submitted together as part of a single request, demand, or submission.

§ 142.10 What is contained in a complaint?

(a) A complaint is a written statement giving notice to the person alleged to be liable under 31 U.S.C. 3802 of the specific allegations being referred for adjudication and of the person’s right to request a hearing with respect
Small Business Administration

§ 142.12 How does a defendant respond to the complaint?

(a) A defendant may file an answer with the reviewing official and the Office of Hearings and Appeals within 30 days of service of the complaint. An answer will be considered a request for an oral hearing.

(b) In the answer, a defendant—

(1) Must admit or deny each of the allegations of liability contained in the complaint (a failure to deny an allegation is considered an admission);

(2) Must state any defense on which the defendant intends to rely;

(3) May state any reasons why he or she believes the penalties, assessments, or both should be less than the statutory maximum; and

(4) Must state the name, address, and telephone number of the person authorized by the defendant to act as defendant's representative, if any.

(c) If the defendant is unable to file an answer which meets the requirements set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, the defendant may file with the reviewing official a general answer denying liability, requesting a hearing, and requesting an extension of time in the defendant at his or her residence, usual dwelling place, principal office or place of business; or by

(2) Personal delivery by anyone 18 years of age or older.

(c) The date of service is the date of personal delivery or, in the case of service by registered or certified mail, the date of postmark.

(d) Proof of service—

(1) When service is made by registered or certified mail, the return postal receipt will serve as proof of service.

(2) When service is made by personal delivery, an affidavit of the individual serving the complaint, or written acknowledgment of receipt by the defendant or a representative, will serve as proof of service.

(e) When served with the complaint, the defendant also should be served with a copy of this part 142 and 31 U.S.C. 3801–3812.

PROCEDURES FOLLOWING SERVICE OF A COMPLAINT

§ 142.11 How will the complaint be served?

(a) The complaint must be served on individual defendants directly, a partnership through a general partner, and on corporations or on unincorporated associations through an executive officer or a director, except that service also may be made on any person authorized by appointment or by law to receive process for the defendant.

(b) The complaint may be served either by:

(1) Registered or certified mail (return receipt requested) addressed to
§ 142.13 What happens if a defendant fails to file an answer?

(a) If a defendant does not file any answer within 30 days after service of the complaint, the reviewing official will refer the complaint to the ALJ.

(b) Once the complaint is referred, the ALJ will promptly serve on the defendant a notice that an initial decision will be issued.

(c) The ALJ will assume the facts alleged in the complaint to be true and, if such facts establish liability under the statute, the ALJ will issue an initial decision imposing the maximum amount of penalties and assessments allowed under the statute.

(d) Except as otherwise provided in this section, when a defendant fails to file a timely answer, the defendant waives any right to further review of the penalties and assessments imposed in the initial decision.

(e) The initial decision becomes final 30 days after it is issued.

(f) If, at any time before an initial decision becomes final, a defendant files a motion with the ALJ asking that the case be reopened and describing the extraordinary circumstances that prevented the defendant from filing an answer, the initial decision will be stayed until the ALJ makes a decision on the motion. The reviewing official may respond to the motion.

(g) If, in his motion to reopen, a defendant demonstrates extraordinary circumstances excusing his failure to file a timely answer, the ALJ will withdraw the initial decision, and grant the defendant an opportunity to answer the complaint.

(h) A decision by the ALJ to deny a defendant’s motion to reopen a case is not subject to review or reconsideration.

§ 142.14 What happens once an answer is filed?

(a) When the reviewing official receives an answer, he must file concurrently, the complaint and the answer with the ALJ, along with a designation of an SBA representative.

(b) When the ALJ receives the complaint and the answer, the ALJ will promptly serve a notice of oral hearing upon the defendant and the representative for SBA, in the same manner as the complaint, service of which is described in §142.11. The notice of oral hearing must be served within six years of the date on which the claim or statement is made.

(c) The notice must include:
   (1) The tentative time, place and nature of the hearing;
   (2) The legal authority and jurisdiction under which the hearing is to be held;
   (3) The matters of fact and law to be asserted;
   (4) A description of the procedures for the conduct of the hearing;
   (5) The name, address, and telephone number of the defendant’s representative and the representative for SBA; and
   (6) Such other matters as the ALJ deems appropriate.

HEARING PROVISIONS

§ 142.15 What kind of hearing is contemplated?

The hearing is a formal proceeding conducted by the ALJ during which a defendant will have the opportunity to cross-examine witnesses, present testimony, and dispute liability.

§ 142.16 At the hearing, what rights do the parties have?

(a) The parties to the hearing shall be the defendant and SBA. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 3730(c)(5), a private plaintiff in an action under the False Claims Act may participate in the hearing to the extent authorized by the provisions of that Act.
§ 142.22 How is evidence presented at the hearing?

(a) Witnesses at the hearing must testify orally under oath or affirmation unless otherwise ordered by the ALJ. At the discretion of the ALJ, testimony may be admitted in the form of a written statement or deposition, a copy of which must be provided to all other parties, along with the last known address of the witness, in a manner which allows sufficient time for other parties to subpoena the witness for cross-examination at the hearing.

(b) Each party has the right to:

(1) Be represented by a representative;
(2) Request a pre-hearing conference and participate in any conference held by the ALJ;
(3) Conduct discovery;
(4) Agree to stipulations of fact or law which will be made a part of the record;
(5) Present evidence relevant to the issues at the hearing;
(6) Present and cross-examine witnesses;
(7) Present arguments at the hearing as permitted by the ALJ; and
(8) Submit written briefs and proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law after the hearing, as permitted by the ALJ.

§ 142.19 How are issues brought to the attention of the ALJ?

All applications to the ALJ for an order or ruling are made by motion, stating the relief sought, the authority relied upon, and the facts alleged. Procedures for filing motions under this section are governed by §134.211 of this chapter.

§ 142.20 How are papers served?

Except for service of a complaint or a notice of hearing under §§142.11 and 142.14(b) respectively, service of papers must be made as prescribed by §134.204 of this chapter.

§ 142.21 How will the hearing be conducted and who has the burden of proof?

(a) The ALJ conducts a hearing in order to determine whether a defendant is liable for a civil penalty, assessment, or both, and, if so, the appropriate amount of the civil penalty and/or assessment. The hearing will be recorded and transcribed, and the transcript of testimony, exhibits admitted at the hearing, and all papers and requests filed in the proceeding constitute the record for a decision by the ALJ.

(b) SBA must prove a defendant’s liability and any aggravating factors by a preponderance of the evidence.

(c) A defendant must prove any affirmative defenses and any mitigating factors by a preponderance of the evidence.

(d) The hearing will be open to the public unless otherwise ordered by the ALJ for good cause shown.

§ 142.22 How is evidence presented at the hearing?

(a) Witnesses at the hearing must testify orally under oath or affirmation unless otherwise ordered by the ALJ. At the discretion of the ALJ, testimony may be admitted in the form of a written statement or deposition, a copy of which must be provided to all other parties, along with the last known address of the witness, in a manner which allows sufficient time for other parties to subpoena the witness for cross-examination at the hearing.
§ 142.23 Are there limits on disclosure of documents or discovery?

(a) Upon written request to the reviewing official, the defendant may review all non-privileged, relevant and material documents, records and other material related to the allegations contained in the complaint. After paying SBA a reasonable fee for duplication, the defendant may obtain a copy of the records described.

(b) Upon written request to the reviewing official, the defendant may obtain a copy of all exculpatory information in the possession of the reviewing official or investigating official relating to the allegations in the complaint. If the document would otherwise be privileged, only the portion of the document containing exculpatory information must be disclosed. As used in this section, the term “information” does not include legal materials such as statutes or case law obtained through legal research.

(c) The notice sent to the Attorney General from the reviewing official is not discoverable under any circumstances.

(d) Other discovery is available only as ordered by the ALJ and includes only those methods of discovery allowed by §134.213 of this chapter.

§ 142.24 Can witnesses be subpoenaed?

A party seeking the appearance and testimony of any individual or the production of documents or records at a hearing may request in writing that the ALJ issue a subpoena. Any such request must be filed with the ALJ not less than 15 days before the scheduled hearing date unless otherwise allowed by the ALJ for good cause. A subpoena shall be issued by the ALJ in the manner specified by §134.214 of this chapter.

§ 142.25 Can a party or witness object to discovery?

Any party or prospective witness may file a motion to quash a subpoena or to limit discovery or the disclosure of evidence. Motions to limit discovery or to object to the disclosure of evidence are governed by §134.213 of this chapter. Motions to limit or quash subpoenas are governed by §134.214(d) of this chapter.

§ 142.26 Can a party informally discuss the case with the ALJ?

No. Such discussions are forbidden as ex parte communications with the ALJ as set forth in §134.220 of this chapter. This does not prohibit a party from communicating with other employees of OHA to inquire about the status of a case or to ask routine questions concerning administrative functions and procedures.

§ 142.27 Are there sanctions for misconduct?

The ALJ may sanction a party or representative, as set forth in §134.219 of this chapter.

§ 142.28 Where is the hearing held?

The ALJ will hold the hearing in any judicial district of the United States:

(a) In which the defendant resides or transacts business; or
(b) In which the claim or statement on which liability is based was made, presented or submitted to SBA; or
(c) As agreed upon by the defendant and the ALJ.

§ 142.29 Are witness lists exchanged before the hearing?

(a) At least 15 days before the hearing or at such other time as ordered by the ALJ, the parties must exchange witness lists and copies of proposed hearing exhibits, including copies of any written statements or transcripts of deposition testimony that the party intends to offer in lieu of live testimony.

(b) If a party objects, the ALJ will not admit into evidence the testimony of any witness whose name does not appear on the witness list or any exhibit not provided to an opposing party unless the ALJ finds good cause for the omission or concludes that there is no prejudice to the objecting party.

(c) Unless a party objects within the time set by the ALJ, documents exchanged in accordance with this section are deemed to be authentic for the purpose of admissibility at the hearing.
DECISIONS AND APPEALS

§ 142.30 How is the case decided?

(a) The ALJ will issue an initial decision based only on the record. It will contain findings of fact, conclusions of law, and the amount of any penalties and assessments imposed.

(b) The ALJ will serve the initial decision on all parties within 90 days after close of the hearing or expiration of any allowed time for submission of post-hearing briefs. If the ALJ fails to meet this deadline, he or she shall promptly notify the parties of the reason for the delay and set a new deadline.

(c) The findings of fact must include a finding on each of the following issues:

(1) Whether any one or more of the claims or statements identified in the complaint violate this part; and

(2) If the defendant is liable for penalties or assessments, the appropriate amount of any such penalties or assessments, considering any mitigating or aggravating factors.

(d) The initial decision will include a description of the right of a defendant found liable for a civil penalty or assessment to file a motion for reconsideration with the ALJ or a notice of appeal with the Administrator.

§ 142.31 Can a party request reconsideration of the initial decision?

(a) Any party may file a motion for reconsideration of the initial decision with the ALJ within 20 days of receipt of the initial decision. If the initial decision was served by mail, there is a rebuttable presumption that the initial decision was received by the party 5 days from the date of mailing.

(b) A motion for reconsideration must be accompanied by a supporting brief and must describe specifically each allegedly erroneous decision.

(c) Any response to a motion for reconsideration must be filed within 20 days of receipt of such motion.

(d) The ALJ will dispose of a motion for reconsideration by denying it or by issuing a revised initial decision.

(e) If the ALJ issues a revised initial decision upon motion of a party, that party may not file another motion for reconsideration.

§ 142.32 When does the initial decision of the ALJ become final?

(a) The initial decision of the ALJ becomes the final decision of SBA, and shall be binding on all parties 30 days after it is issued, unless any party timely files a motion for reconsideration or any defendant adjudged to have submitted a false claim or statement timely appeals to the SBA Administrator, as set forth in §142.33.

(b) If the ALJ disposes of a motion for reconsideration by denying it or by issuing a revised initial decision, the ALJ’s order on the motion for reconsideration becomes the final decision of SBA 30 days after the order is issued, unless a defendant adjudged to have submitted a false claim or statement timely appeals to the Administrator, within 30 days of the ALJ’s order, as set forth in §142.33.

§ 142.33 What are the procedures for appealing the ALJ decision?

(a) Any defendant who submits a timely answer and is found liable for a civil penalty or assessment in an initial decision may appeal the decision.

(b) The defendant may file a notice of appeal with the Administrator within 30 days following issuance of the initial decision, serving a copy of the notice of appeal on all parties and the ALJ. The Administrator may extend this deadline for up to thirty additional days if an extension request is filed within the initial 30 day period and shows good cause.

(c) The defendant’s appeal will not be considered until all timely motions for reconsideration have been resolved.

(d) If a timely motion for reconsideration is denied, a notice of appeal may be filed within 30 days following such denial or issuance of a revised initial decision, whichever applies.

(e) A notice of appeal must be supported by a written brief specifying why the initial decision should be reversed or modified.

(f) SBA’s representative may file a brief in opposition to the notice of appeal within 30 days of receiving the defendant’s notice of appeal and supporting brief.

(g) If a defendant timely files a notice of appeal, and the time for filing
§ 142.34 Are there any limitations on the right to appeal to the Administrator?

(a) A defendant has no right to appear personally, or through a representative, before the Administrator.

(b) There is no right to appeal any interlocutory ruling.

(c) The Administrator will not consider any objection or evidence that was not raised before the ALJ unless the defendant demonstrates that the failure to object was caused by extraordinary circumstances. If the appealing defendant demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Administrator that extraordinary circumstances prevented the presentation of evidence at the hearing, and that the additional evidence is material, the Administrator may remand the matter to the ALJ for consideration of the additional evidence.

§ 142.35 How does the Administrator dispose of an appeal?

(a) The Administrator may affirm, reduce, reverse, compromise, remand, or settle any penalty or assessment imposed by the ALJ in the initial decision or reconsideration decision.

(b) The Administrator will promptly serve each party to the appeal and the ALJ with a copy of his or her decision. This decision must contain a statement describing the right of any person, against whom a penalty or assessment has been made, to seek judicial review.

§ 142.36 Can I obtain judicial review?

If the initial decision is appealed, the decision of the Administrator is the final decision of SBA and is not subject to judicial review unless the defendant files a petition for judicial review within 60 days after the Administrator serves the defendant with a copy of the final decision.

§ 142.37 What judicial review is available?

31 U.S.C. 3805 authorizes judicial review by the appropriate United States District Court of any final SBA decision imposing penalties or assessments, and specifies the procedures for such review. To obtain judicial review, a defendant must file a petition in a timely fashion.

§ 142.38 Can the administrative complaint be settled voluntarily?

(a) Parties may make offers of compromise or settlement at any time. Any compromise or settlement must be in writing.

(b) The reviewing official has the exclusive authority to compromise or settle the case from the date on which the reviewing official is permitted to issue a complaint until the ALJ issues an initial decision.

(c) The Administrator has exclusive authority to compromise or settle the case from the date of the ALJ’s initial decision until initiation of any judicial review or any action to collect the penalties and assessments.

(d) The Attorney General has exclusive authority to compromise or settle the case while any judicial review or any action to recover penalties and assessments is pending.

(e) The investigating official may recommend settlement terms to the reviewing official, the Administrator, or the Attorney General, as appropriate. The reviewing official may recommend settlement terms to the Administrator or the Attorney General, as appropriate.

§ 142.39 How are civil penalties and assessments collected?

31 U.S.C. 3806 and 3808(b) authorize the Attorney General to bring specific actions for collection of such civil penalties and assessments including administrative offset under 31 U.S.C. 3716. The penalties and assessments may not, however, be administratively offset against an overpayment of federal taxes (then or later owed) to the defendant by the United States.

§ 142.40 What if the investigation indicates criminal misconduct?

(a) Any investigating official may:

(1) Refer allegations of criminal misconduct directly to the Department of Justice for prosecution or for suit under the False Claims Act or other civil proceeding.
Small Business Administration

(2) Defer or postpone a report or referral to the reviewing official to avoid interference with a criminal investigation or prosecution; or
(3) Issue subpoenas under other statutory authority.

(b) Nothing in this part limits the requirement that SBA employees report suspected violations of criminal law to the SBA Office of Inspector General or to the Attorney General.

§ 143.2 How does SBA protect the rights of defendants?

These procedures separate the functions of the investigating official, reviewing official, and the ALJ, each of whom report to a separate organizational authority in accordance with 31 U.S.C. 5801. Except for purposes of settlement, or as a witness or a representative in public proceedings, no investigating official, reviewing official, or SBA employee or agent who helps investigate, prepare, or present a case may (in such case, or a factually related case) participate in the initial decision or the review of the initial decision by the Administrator. This separation of functions and organization is designed to assure the independence and impartiality of each government official during every stage of the proceeding. The representative for SBA may be employed in the offices of either the investigating official or the reviewing official.

PART 143—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS TO STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS

Subpart A—General

Sec.
143.1 Purpose and scope of this part.
143.2 Scope of subpart.
143.3 Definitions.
143.4 Applicability.
143.5 Effect on other issuances.
143.6 Additions and exceptions.

Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

143.10 Forms for applying for grants.
143.11 State plans.
143.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for “high-risk” grantees.

Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

§ 143.20 Standards for financial management systems.
§ 143.21 Payment.
§ 143.22 Allowable costs.
§ 143.23 Period of availability of funds.
§ 143.24 Matching or cost sharing.
§ 143.25 Program income.
§ 143.26 Non-Federal audit.

CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS

§ 143.30 Changes.
§ 143.31 Real property.
§ 143.32 Equipment.
§ 143.33 Supplies.
§ 143.34 Copyrights.
§ 143.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
§ 143.36 Procurement.
§ 143.37 Subgrants.

REPORTS, RECORDS, RETENTION, AND ENFORCEMENT

§ 143.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
§ 143.41 Financial reporting.
§ 143.42 Retention and access requirements for records.
§ 143.43 Enforcement.
§ 143.44 Termination for convenience.

Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements

§ 143.50 Closeout.
§ 143.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.
§ 143.52 Collection of amounts due.

Subpart E—Entitlements [Reserved]

Source: 53 FR 8048, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.
§ 143.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Accrued expenditures mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for: (1) Goods and other tangible property received; (2) services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and (3) other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

Accrued income means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.

Acquisition cost of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee’s regular accounting practices.

Administrative requirements mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from programmatic requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

Awarding agency means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

Cash contributions means the grantee’s cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

Contract means (except as used in the definitions for grant and subgrant in this section and except where qualified by Federal) a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

Cost sharing or matching means the value of the third party in-kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

Cost-type contract means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

Equipment means tangible, non-expendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

Expenditure report means: (1) For nonconstruction grants, the SF–269 “Financial Status Report” (or other equivalent report); (2) for construction grants, the SF–271 “Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement” (or other equivalent report).

Federally recognized Indian tribal government means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

Government means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

Grant means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form
of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

Grantee means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

Local government means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937), school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

Obligations means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

OMB means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

Outlays (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

Percentage of completion method refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee’s cost incurred.

Prior approval means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost.

Real property means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

Share, when referring to the awarding agency’s portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency’s portion of the acquiring party’s total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted—not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

State means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

Subgrant means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of grant in this part.

Subgrantee means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

Supplies means all tangible personal property other than equipment as defined in this part.

Suspension means depending on the context, either (1) temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action
by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or (2) an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with agency regulations implementing E.O. 12549 to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

Termination means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previously-awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. Termination does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee’s underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) Withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) Refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

Terms of a grant or subgrant mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

Third party in-kind contributions mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

Unliquidated obligations for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

Unobligated balance means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

§ 143.4 Applicability.

(a) General. Subparts A through D of this part apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of §143.6, or:

(1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States’ Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under Title V, Subtitle D, Chapter 2, Section 583—the Secretary’s discretionary grant program) and Titles I–III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (Section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and Part C of Title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(1) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (Title IV–A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)(19)(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this part);

(2) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (Title IV–D of the Act);

(3) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (Title IV–E of the Act);

(4) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (Titles I, X, XIV, and XVI–AABD of the Act); and

(5) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (Title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).

(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:
§ 143.10 Forms for applying for grants.

(a) Scope. (1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(b) Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations. (1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the

§ 143.5 Effect on other issuances.

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this part are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in §143.6.

§ 143.6 Additions and exceptions.

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this part, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the Federal Register.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.

(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements
§ 143.11 State plans.

(a) Scope. The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, “Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs,” States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive order.

(b) Requirements. A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) Assurances. In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:

(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions;

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) Amendments. A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect: (1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or (2) a material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

§ 143.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for “high-risk” grantees.

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered high risk if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this part, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grantor or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;

(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.
Small Business Administration

Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION

§ 143.20 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) A State must expand and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to—

(1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and

(2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) Financial reporting. Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) Accounting records. Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financially-assisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) Internal control. Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) Budget control. Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the development of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) Allowable cost. Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) Source documentation. Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.

(7) Cash management. Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees’ cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

§ 143.21 Payment.

(a) Scope. This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) Basic standard. Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance
§ 143.21 with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR part 205.

(c) Advances. Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) Reimbursement. Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency’s payments to the grantee or subgrantee will be based on the grantee’s or subgrantee’s actual rate of disbursement.

(e) Working capital advances. If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee’s disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee’s actual cash disbursements.

(f) Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment. (1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) Withholding payments. (1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless—

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or

(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with §143.43(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) Cash depositories. (1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) Interest earned on advances. Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 et seq.) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees are required to maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) Interest earned on advances. Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 et seq.) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit interest earned on advances to the Federal agency. The
§ 143.22 Allowable costs.

(a) Limitation on use of funds. Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantee, subgrantee and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) Applicable cost principles. For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For the costs of a—</th>
<th>Use the principles in—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>State, local or Indian tribal government.</td>
<td>OMB Circular A–87.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A–122 as not subject to that circular. Educational institutions.</td>
<td>OMB Circular A–122.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OMB Circular A–122 as not subject to that circular.</td>
<td>OMB Circular A–21. 48 CFR part 31: Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 143.23 Period of availability of funds.

(a) General. Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) Liquidation of obligations. A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the annual Financial Status Report (SF–269). The Federal agency may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

§ 143.24 Matching or cost sharing.

(a) Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable. With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party in-kind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) Qualifications and exceptions—(1) Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements. Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) General revenue sharing. For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements. Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) Costs financed by program income. Costs financed by program income, as defined in §143.25, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(5) Costs financed by program income is described in §143.25(g).
§ 143.24

(5) Services or property financed by income earned by contractors. Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) Records. Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) Special standards for third party in-kind contributions. (i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Costs sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party in-kind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this part. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(c) Valuation of donated services—(1) Volunteer services. Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee’s or subgrantee’s organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) Employees of other organizations. When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee’s normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee’s regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee’s fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(d) Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space. (1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land. If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) Awards for capital expenditures. If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of
§ 143.25 Program income.

(a) General. Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) Definition of program income. Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. During the grant period is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) Cost of generating program income. If authorized by Federal regulations or the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) Governmental revenues. Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.

(e) Royalties. Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement.
§ 143.26 Non-Federal audit.

(a) Basic Rule. Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7507) and revised OMB Circular A-133, “Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.” The audit shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial audits.

(b) Subgrantees. State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, that provide Federal awards to a subgrantee, which expends $300,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards to a subgrantee, which expends $300,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards in a fiscal year shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A-110, “Uniform Administrative Requirements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations,” have met the audit requirements of the Act. Commercial contractors (private for-profit and private and governmental organizations) providing goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractors has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in accordance with the Act, Circular A-110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee’s own records; and
(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) Auditor selection. In arranging for audit services, §143.36 shall be followed.


CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS

§ 143.30 Changes.

(a) General. Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.

(b) Relation to cost principles. The applicable cost principles (see §143.22) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) Budget changes—(1) Nonconstruction projects. Except as stated in other regulations or an award document, grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a nonconstruction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency’s share exceeds $100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) Construction projects. Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) Combined construction and nonconstruction projects. When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from nonconstruction to construction or vice versa.

(d) Programmatic changes. Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval requirement is in addition to the approval requirements of §143.36 but does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(e) Additional prior approval requirements. The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) Requesting prior approval. (1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget formal the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see §143.22) may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and
§ 143.31 Real property.

(a) Title. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) Use. Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) Disposition. When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

1. Retention of title. Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

2. Sale of property. Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency’s percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

3. Transfer of title. Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 143.32 Equipment.

(a) Title. Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) Use. A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) Use. (1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in §143.25(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant
§ 143.33 Supplies.

(a) Title. Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest,
§ 143.34 Copyrights.
The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:
(a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and
(b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

§ 143.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, "Debarment and Suspension."

§ 143.36 Procurement.
(a) States. When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.
(b) Procurement standards. (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.
(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.
(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:
   (i) The employee, officer or agent,
   (ii) Any member of his immediate family,
   (iii) His or her partner, or
   (iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee’s or subgrantee’s officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee’s and subgrantee’s officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.
(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical
purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following; rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and
(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and
(ii) Violations of the grantee’s or subgrantee’s protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) Competition. (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of §143.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,
(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,
(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,
(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,
(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,
(vi) Specifying only a brand name product instead of allowing an equal product to be offered and describing
§ 143.36 13 CFR Ch. I (1–1–02 Edition)

the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed In-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a brand name or equal description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors must be made known.

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) Methods of procurement to be followed. (1) Procurement by small purchase procedures. Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at $100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by sealed bids (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in §143.36(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;
(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by competitive proposals. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors’ qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) Contracting with small and minority firms, women’s business enterprises and labor surplus area firms. (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women’s business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women’s business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women’s business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women’s business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women’s business enterprises;
§ 143.36 Contract cost and price

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2)(i) through (v) of this section.

(f) Contract cost and price.

(1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price reasonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see §143.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) Awarding agency review.

(1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in
paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency’s right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) Bonding requirements. For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency’s interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price. The “bid guarantee” shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A “performance bond” is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor’s obligations under such contract.

(3) A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price. A “payment bond” is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) Contract provisions. A grantee’s and subgrantee’s contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of $10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled “Equal Employment Opportunity,” as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of $10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland “Anti-Kickback” Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a-7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of $2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

§ 143.37  (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of $2,000, and in excess of $2,500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 506 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of $100,000)

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94–163, 89 Stat. 871).

§ 143.37 Subgrants.

(a) States. States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with §143.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) All other grantees. All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) Exceptions. By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 143.10;

(2) Section 143.11;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR part 205, cited in §143.21; and

(4) Section 143.50.

§ 143.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) Monitoring by grantees. Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being
achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) Nonconstruction performance reports. The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) Construction performance reports. For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(d) Significant developments. Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) Waivers, extensions. (1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

§ 143.41 Financial reporting.

(a) General. (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing
§ 143.41 with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this part.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expedite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) Financial Status Report—(1) Form. Grantees will use Standard Form 269 or 269A, Financial Status Report, to report the status of funds for all non-construction grants and for construction grants when required in accordance with §143.41(e)(2)(iii) of this section.

(2) Accounting basis. Each grantee will report program outlays and program income on a cash or accrual basis as prescribed by the awarding agency. If the Federal agency requires accrual information and the grantee’s accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through and analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) Frequency. The Federal agency may prescribe the frequency of the report for each project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly. If the Federal agency does not specify the frequency of the report, it will be submitted annually. A final report will be required upon expiration or termination of grant support.

(4) Due date. When reports are required on a quarterly or semiannual basis, they will be due 30 days after the reporting period. When required on an annual basis, they will be due 90 days after the grant year. Final reports will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) Federal Cash Transactions Report—(1) Form. (i) For grants paid by letter of credit, Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the Standard Form 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report, and when necessary, its continuation sheet, Standard Form 272a, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement.

(ii) These reports will be used by the Federal agency to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or outlay information for each grant from grantees. The format of the report may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance.

(2) Forecasts of Federal cash requirements. Forecasts of Federal cash requirements may be required in the Remarks section of the report.

(3) Cash in hands of subgrantees. When considered necessary and feasible by the Federal agency, grantees may be required to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days’ needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

(4) Frequency and due date. Grantees must submit the report no later than 15 working days following the end of each quarter. However, where an advance either by letter of credit or electronic transfer of funds is authorized at an annualized rate of one million dollars or more, the Federal agency may require the report to be submitted within
15 working days following the end of each month.

(d) Request for advance or reimbursement—(1) Advance payments. Requests for Treasury check advance payments will be submitted on Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. (This form will not be used for drawdowns under a letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or when Treasury check advance payments are made to the grantee automatically on a predetermined basis.)

(2) Reimbursements. Requests for reimbursement under nonconstruction grants will also be submitted on Standard Form 270. (For reimbursement requests under construction grants, see paragraph (e)(1) of this section.)

(3) The frequency for submitting payment requests is treated in §143.41(b)(3).

(e) Outlay report and request for reimbursement for construction programs. (1) Grants that support construction activities paid by reimbursement method.

(i) Requests for reimbursement under construction grants will be submitted on Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Federal agencies may, however, prescribe the Request for Advance or Reimbursement form, specified in §143.41(d), instead of this form.

(ii) The frequency for submitting reimbursement requests is treated in §143.41(b)(3).

(2) Grants that support construction activities paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advance.

(i) When a construction grant is paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advances, the grantee will report its outlays to the Federal agency using Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. The Federal agency will provide any necessary special instruction. However, frequency and due date shall be governed by §143.41(b) (3) and (4).

(ii) When a construction grant is paid by Treasury check advances based on periodic requests from the grantee, the advances will be requested on the form specified in §143.41(d).

(iii) The Federal agency may substitute the Financial Status Report specified in §143.41(b) for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.

(3) Accounting basis. The accounting basis for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs shall be governed by §143.41(b)(2).

§143.42 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) Applicability. (1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

(i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this part, program regulations or the grant agreement, or

(ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see §143.36(i)(10).

(b) Length of retention period. (1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.
§ 143.43 Enforcement.

(a) Remedies for noncompliance. If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency,

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance,

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee’s or subgrantee’s program,

(4) Withhold further awards for the program,
(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) Hearings, appeals. In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) Effects of suspension and termination. Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) Relationship to debarment and suspension. The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude grantee or subgrantee from being subject to “Debarment and Suspension” under E.O. 12549 (see §143.35).

§ 143.44 Termination for convenience.

Except as provided in §143.43 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either §143.43 or paragraph (a) of this section.

Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements

§ 143.50 Closeout.

(a) General. The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) Reports. Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) Final performance or progress report.

(2) Financial Status Report (SF 269) or Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs (SF–271) (as applicable).

(3) Final request for payment (SF–270) (if applicable).

(4) Invention disclosure (if applicable).

(5) Federally-owned property report: In accordance with §143.32(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal agency of property no longer needed.

(c) Cost adjustment. The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) Cash adjustments. (1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash
§ 143.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.

The closeout of a grant does not affect:
(a) The Federal agency’s right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;
(b) The grantee’s obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;
(c) Records retention as required in § 143.42;
(d) Property management requirements in §§ 143.31 and 143.32; and
(e) Audit requirements in § 143.26.

§ 143.52 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:
(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements.
(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or
(3) Other action permitted by law.
(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Ch. II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

Subpart E—Entitlements

[Reserved]

PART 145—GOVERNMENTWIDE DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION (NONPROCUREMENT) AND GOVERNMENTWIDE REQUIREMENTS FOR DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE (GRANTS)

Subpart A—General

Sec.
145.100 Purpose.
§ 145.100 Purpose.

(a) Executive Order (E.O.) 12549 provides that, to the extent permitted by law, Executive departments and agencies shall participate in a government-wide system for nonprocurement debarment and suspension. A person who is debarred or suspended shall be excluded from Federal financial and non-financial assistance and benefits under Federal programs and activities. Debarment or suspension of a participant in a program by one agency shall have governmentwide effect.

(b) These regulations implement section 3 of E.O. 12549 and the guidelines promulgated by the Office of Management and Budget under section 6 of the E.O. by:

(1) Prescribing the programs and activities that are covered by the governmentwide system;

(2) Prescribing the governmentwide criteria and governmentwide minimum due process procedures that each agency shall use;

(3) Providing for the listing of debarred and suspended participants, participants declared ineligible (see definition of “ineligible” in §145.105), and participants who have voluntarily excluded themselves from participation in covered transactions;

(4) Setting forth the consequences of a debarment, suspension, determination of ineligibility, or voluntary exclusion; and

(5) Offering such other guidance as necessary for the effective implementation and administration of the governmentwide system.

(c) These regulations also implement Executive Order 12689 (3 CFR, 1989 Comp., p. 235) and 31 U.S.C. 6101 note (Public Law 103–355, sec. 2455, 108 Stat. 3327) by—

(1) Providing for the inclusion in the List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs all persons proposed for debarment, debarred or suspended under the Federal Acquisition Regulation, 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4; persons against which governmentwide exclusions have been entered under this part; and persons determined to be ineligible; and

(2) Setting forth the consequences of a debarment, suspension, determination of ineligibility, or voluntary exclusion.

(d) Although these regulations cover the listing of ineligible participants and the effect of such listing, they do not prescribe policies and procedures governing declarations of ineligibility.

[60 FR 33040, 33044, June 26, 1995]

§ 145.105 Definitions.

The following definitions apply to this part:

Adequate evidence. Information sufficient to support the reasonable belief that a particular act or omission has occurred.

Affiliate. Persons are affiliates of each other if, directly or indirectly, either one controls or has the power to control the other, or, a third person controls or has the power to control both. Indicia of control include, but are not limited to: interlocking management or ownership, identity of interests among family members, shared facilities and equipment, common use of employees, or a business entity organized following the suspension or debarment of a person which has the same or similar management, ownership, or principal employees as the suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded person.

Agency. Any executive department, military department or defense agency or other agency of the executive
§ 145.105  Branch, excluding the independent regulatory agencies.

Civil judgment. The disposition of a civil action by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered by verdict, decision, settlement, stipulation, or otherwise creating a civil liability for the wrongful acts complained of; or a final determination of liability under the Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act of 1988 (31 U.S.C. 3801–12).

Conviction. A judgment or conviction of a criminal offense by any court of competent jurisdiction, whether entered upon a verdict or plea, including a plea of nolo contendere.

Debarment. An action taken by a debarring official in accordance with these regulations to exclude a person from participating in covered transactions. A person so excluded is debarred.

Debarring official. An official authorized to impose debarment. The debarring official is either:

1. The agency head, or
2. An official designated by the agency head.

Indictment. Indictment for a criminal offense. An information or other filing by competent authority charging a criminal offense shall be given the same effect as an indictment.

Ineligible. Excluded from participation in Federal nonprocurement programs pursuant to a determination of ineligibility under statutory, executive order, or regulatory authority, other than Executive Order 12549 and its agency implementing regulations; for example, excluded pursuant to the Davis-Bacon Act and its implementing regulations, the equal employment opportunity acts and executive orders, or the environmental protection acts and executive orders. A person is ineligible where the determination of ineligibility affects such person's eligibility to participate in more than one covered transaction.

Legal proceedings. Any criminal proceeding or any civil judicial proceeding to which the Federal Government or a State or local government or quasi-governmental authority is a party. The term includes appeals from such proceedings.

List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs. A list compiled, maintained and distributed by the General Services Administration (GSA) containing the names and other information about persons who have been debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded under Executive Orders 12549 and 12689 and these regulations or 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, persons who have been proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, and those persons who have been determined to be ineligible.

Notice. A written communication served in person or sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, or its equivalent, to the last known address of a party, its identified counsel, its agent for service of process, or any partner, officer, director, owner, or joint venturer of the party. Notice, if undeliverable, shall be considered to have been received by the addressee five days after being properly sent to the last address known by the agency.

Participant. Any person who submits a proposal for, enters into, or reasonably may be expected to enter into a covered transaction. This term also includes any person who acts on behalf of or is authorized to commit a participant in a covered transaction as an agent or representative of another participant.

Person. Any individual, corporation, partnership, association, unit of government or legal entity, however organized, except: foreign governments or foreign governmental entities, public international organizations, foreign government owned (in whole or in part) or controlled entities, and entities consisting wholly or partially of foreign governments or foreign governmental entities.

Preponderance of the evidence. Proof by information that, compared with that opposing it, leads to the conclusion that the fact at issue is more probably true than not.

Principal. Officer, director, owner, partner, key employee, or other person within a participant with primary management or supervisory responsibilities; or a person who has a critical influence on or substantive control over a covered transaction, whether or not employed by the participant. Persons who have a critical influence on or
substantive control over a covered transaction are:

(1) Principal investigators.

(2) Securities brokers and dealers under the section 7(a) Loan, Certified Development Company (CDC) and Small Business Investment Company (SBIC) Programs.

Proposal. A solicited or unsolicited bid, application, request, invitation to consider or similar communication by or on behalf of a person seeking to participate or to receive a benefit, directly or indirectly, in or under a covered transaction.

Respondent. A person against whom a debarment or suspension action has been initiated.

State. Any of the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency of a State, exclusive of institutions of higher education, hospitals, and units of local government. A State instrumentality will be considered part of the State government if it has a written determination from a State government that such State considers that instrumentality to be an agency of the State government.

Suspending official. An official authorized to impose suspension. The suspending official is either:

(1) The agency head, or

(2) An official designated by the agency head.

Suspension. An action taken by a suspending official in accordance with these regulations that immediately excludes a person from participating in covered transactions for a temporary period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal, debarment, or Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act proceedings as may ensue. A person so excluded is suspended.

Voluntary exclusion or voluntarily excluded. A status of nonparticipation or limited participation in covered transactions assumed by a person pursuant to the terms of a settlement.

SBA. The Small Business Administration.

§ 145.110 Coverage.

(a) These regulations apply to all persons who have participated, are currently participating or may reasonably be expected to participate in transactions under Federal nonprocurement programs. For purposes of these regulations such transactions will be referred to as covered transactions.

(1) Covered transaction. For purposes of these regulations, a covered transaction is a primary covered transaction or a lower tier covered transaction. Covered transactions at any tier need not involve the transfer of Federal funds.

(i) Primary covered transaction. Except as noted in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, a primary covered transaction is any nonprocurement transaction between an agency and a person, regardless of type, including: grants, cooperative agreements, scholarships, fellowships, contracts of assistance, loans, loan guarantees, subsidies, insurance, payments for specified use, donation agreements and any other nonprocurement transactions between a Federal agency and a person. Primary covered transactions also include those transactions specially designated by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development in such agency’s regulations governing debarment and suspension.

(ii) Lower tier covered transaction. A lower tier covered transaction is:

(A) Any transaction between a participant and a person other than a procurement contract for goods or services, regardless of type, under a primary covered transaction.

(B) Any procurement contract for goods or services between a participant and a person other than a procurement contract for goods or services, regardless of type, expected to equal or exceed the Federal procurement small purchase threshold fixed at 10 U.S.C. 2304(g) and 41 U.S.C. 253(g) (currently $25,000) under a primary covered transaction.

(C) Any procurement contract for goods or services between a participant and a person under a covered transaction, regardless of amount, under which that person will have a critical influence on or substantive control over that covered transaction. Such persons are:

(J) Principal investigators.
§ 145.115 Providers of federally-required audit services.

(3) Securities brokers and dealers under the section 7(a) Loan, Certified Development Company (CDC), and Small Business Investment Company (SBIC) Programs.

(4) Applicant representatives under the section 7(a) Loan, Certified Development Company (CDC), Small Business Investment Company (SBIC), Small Business Development Center (SBDC) and section 7(j) Programs.

(2) Exceptions. The following transactions are not covered:

(i) Statutory entitlements or mandatory awards (but not subtier awards thereunder which are not themselves mandatory), including deposited funds insured by the Federal Government;

(ii) Direct awards to foreign governments or public international organizations, or transactions with foreign governments or foreign governmental entities, public international organizations, foreign government owned (in whole or in part) or controlled entities, entities consisting wholly or partially of foreign governments or foreign governmental entities;

(iii) Benefits to an individual as a personal entitlement without regard to the individual’s present responsibility (but benefits received in an individual’s business capacity are not excepted);

(iv) Federal employment;

(v) Transactions pursuant to national or agency-recognized emergencies or disasters;

(vi) Incidental benefits derived from ordinary governmental operations; and

(vii) Other transactions where the application of these regulations would be prohibited by law.

(b) Relationship to other sections. This section describes the types of transactions to which a debarment or suspension under the regulations will apply. Subpart B, “Effect of Action,” §145.200, “Debarment or suspension,” sets forth the consequences of a debarment or suspension. Those consequences would obtain only with respect to participants and principals in the covered transactions and activities described in §145.110(a). Sections 145.325, “Scope of debarment,” and 145.420, “Scope of suspension,” govern the extent to which a specific participant or organizational elements of a participant would be automatically included within a debarment or suspension action, and the conditions under which affiliates or persons associated with a participant may also be brought within the scope of the action.

(c) Relationship to Federal procurement activities. In accordance with E.O. 12689 and section 2455 of Public Law 103–355, any debarment, suspension, proposed debarment or other governmentwide exclusion initiated under the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) on or after August 25, 1995 shall be recognized by and effective for Executive Branch agencies and participants as an exclusion under this regulation. Similarly, any debarment, suspension or other governmentwide exclusion initiated under this regulation on or after August 25, 1995 shall be recognized by and effective for those agencies as a debarment or suspension under the FAR.

[53 FR 19176, 19204, May 26, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 19176, May 26, 1988; 60 FR 33041, 33044, June 26, 1995]
Small Business Administration

§ 145.220 Continuation of covered transactions.

(a) Notwithstanding the debarment, suspension, proposed debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, determination of ineligibility, or voluntary exclusion of any person by an agency, agencies and participants may continue covered transactions in existence at the time the person was debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded. A decision as to the type of termination action, if any, to be taken

(6) Incidental benefits derived from ordinary governmental operations; and

(7) Other transactions where the application of these regulations would be prohibited by law.

[60 FR 33041, 33044, June 26, 1995]
§ 145.225 Failure to adhere to restrictions.

(a) Except as permitted under § 145.215 or § 145.220, a participant shall not knowingly do business under a covered transaction with a person who is—

(1) Debarred or suspended;

(2) Proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4; or

(3) Ineligible for or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction.

(b) Violation of the restriction under paragraph (a) of this section may result in disallowance of costs, annulment or termination of award, issuance of a stop work order, debarment or suspension, or other remedies as appropriate.

(c) A participant may rely upon the certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that it and its principals are not debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction. The existence of a cause for debarment, however, does not necessarily require that the person be debarred; the seriousness of the person's acts or omissions and any mitigating factors shall be considered in making any debarment decision.

§ 145.305 Causes for debarment.

Debarment may be imposed in accordance with the provisions of §§ 145.300 through 145.314 for:

(a) Conviction of or civil judgment for:

(1) Commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public or private agreement or transaction;

(2) Violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes, including those prescribing price fixing between competitors, allocation of customers between competitors, and bid rigging;

(3) Commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, receiving stolen property, making false claims, or obstruction of justice; or

(4) Commission of any other offense indicating a lack of business integrity or business honesty that seriously and directly affects the present responsibility of a person.

(b) Violation of the terms of a public agreement or transaction so serious as to affect the integrity of an agency program, such as:

(1) A willful failure to perform in accordance with the terms of one or more public agreements or transactions;

(2) A history of failure to perform or of unsatisfactory performance of one or more public agreements or transactions; or

(3) A willful violation of a statutory or regulatory provision or requirement applicable to a public agreement or transaction.

(c) Any of the following causes:

(1) A nonprocurement debarment by any Federal agency taken before October 1, 1988, the effective date of these regulations, or a procurement debarment by any Federal agency taken pursuant to 48 CFR subpart 9.4;

(2) Knowingly doing business with a debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded person, in connection with a covered transaction, except as permitted in § 145.215 or § 145.220;

(3) Failure to pay a single substantial debt, or a number of outstanding debts
(including disallowed costs and overpayments, but not including sums owed the Federal Government under the Internal Revenue Code) owed to any Federal agency or instrumentality, provided the debt is uncontested by the debtor or, if contested, provided that the debtor’s legal and administrative remedies have been exhausted;

(4) Violation of a material provision of a voluntary exclusion agreement entered into under §145.315 or of any settlement of a debarment or suspension action; or

(5) Violation of any requirement of subpart F of this part, relating to providing a drug-free workplace, as set forth in §145.615 of this part.

(d) Any other cause of so serious or compelling a nature that it affects the present responsibility of a person.


§ 145.310 Procedures.

SBA shall process debarment actions as informally as practicable, consistent with the principles of fundamental fairness, using the procedures in §§145.311 through 145.314.

§ 145.311 Investigation and referral.

Information concerning the existence of a cause for debarment from any source shall be promptly reported, investigated, and referred, when appropriate, to the debarring official for consideration. After consideration, the debarring official may issue a notice of proposed debarment.

§ 145.312 Notice of proposed debarment.

A debarment proceeding shall be initiated by notice to the respondent advising:

(a) That debarment is being considered;

(b) Of the reasons for the proposed debarment in terms sufficient to put the respondent on notice of the conduct or transaction(s) upon which it is based;

(c) Of the cause(s) relied upon under §145.305 for proposing debarment;

(d) Of the provisions of §§145.311 through 145.314, and any other SBA procedures, if applicable, governing debarment decisionmaking; and

(e) Of the potential effect of a debarment.

§ 145.313 Opportunity to contest proposed debarment.

(a) Submission in opposition. Within 30 days after receipt of the notice of proposed debarment, the respondent may submit, in person, in writing, or through a representative, information and argument in opposition to the proposed debarment.

(b) Additional proceedings as to disputed material facts. (1) In actions not based upon a conviction or civil judgment, if the debarring official finds that the respondent’s submission in opposition raises a genuine dispute over facts material to the proposed debarment, respondent(s) shall be afforded an opportunity to appear with a representative, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses, and confront any witness the agency presents.

(2) A transcribed record of any additional proceedings shall be made available at cost to the respondent, upon request, unless the respondent and the agency, by mutual agreement, waive the requirement for a transcript.

(3) In accordance with §145.314(b)(2), the debarring official may refer cases involving disputed material facts to the Office of Hearings and Appeals, which shall conduct any additional proceedings necessary in accordance with the procedures contained in part 134 of this title. Upon conclusion of such proceedings, the Office of Hearings and Appeals shall issue a recommended decision to the debarring official including proposed findings of facts and conclusions of law.


§ 145.314 Debarring official’s decision.

(a) No additional proceedings necessary. In actions based upon a conviction or civil judgment, or in which there is no genuine dispute over material facts, the debarring official shall make a decision on the basis of all the information in the administrative record, including any submission made by the respondent. The decision shall be made within 45 days after receipt of any information and argument submitted by the respondent, unless the debarring
§ 145.315 Settlement and voluntary exclusion.

(a) When in the best interest of the Government, SBA may, at any time, settle a debarment or suspension action.

(b) If a participant and the agency agree to a voluntary exclusion of the participant, such voluntary exclusion shall be entered on the Nonprocurement List (see subpart E).

§ 145.320 Period of debarment.

(a) Debarment shall be for a period commensurate with the seriousness of the cause(s). If a suspension precedes a debarment, the suspension period shall be considered in determining the debarment period.

(1) Debarment for causes other than those related to a violation of the requirements of subpart F of this part generally should not exceed three years. Where circumstances warrant, a longer period of debarment may be imposed.

(2) In the case of a debarment for a violation of the requirements of subpart F of this part (see §145.305(c)(5)), the period of debarment shall not exceed five years.

(b) The debarring official may extend an existing debarment for an additional period, if that official determines that an extension is necessary to protect the public interest. However, a debarment may not be extended solely on the basis of the facts and circumstances upon which the initial debarment action was based. If debarment for an additional period is determined to be necessary, the procedures of §§145.311 through 145.314 shall be followed to extend the debarment.

(c) The respondent may request the debarring official to reverse the debarment decision or to reduce the period the determination referred to in §145.215.

(2) If the debarring official decides not to impose debarment, the respondent shall be given prompt notice of that decision. A decision not to impose debarment shall be without prejudice to a subsequent imposition of debarment by any other agency.

or scope of debarment. Such a request shall be in writing and supported by documentation. The debarring official may grant such a request for reasons including, but not limited to:

1. Newly discovered material evidence;
2. Reversal of the conviction or civil judgment upon which the debarment was based;
3. Bona fide change in ownership or management;
4. Elimination of other causes for which the debarment was imposed; or
5. Other reasons the debarring official deems appropriate.

§ 145.325 Scope of debarment.

(a) Scope in general. (1) Debarment of a person under these regulations constitutes debarment of all its divisions and other organizational elements from all covered transactions, unless the debarment decision is limited by its terms to one or more specifically identified individuals, divisions or other organizational elements or to specific types of transactions.

(2) The debarment action may include any affiliate of the participant that is specifically named and given notice of the proposed debarment and an opportunity to respond (see §§ 145.311 through 145.314).

(b) Imputing conduct. For purposes of determining the scope of debarment, conduct may be imputed as follows:

1. Conduct imputed to participant. The fraudulent, criminal or other seriously improper conduct of any officer, director, shareholder, partner, employee, or other individual associated with the participant who participated in, knew of, or had reason to know of the participant’s conduct.

2. Conduct imputed to individuals associated with participant. The fraudulent, criminal, or other seriously improper conduct of a participant may be imputed to any officer, director, shareholder, partner, employee, or other individual associated with the participant who participated in, knew of, or had reason to know of the participant’s conduct.

3. Conduct of one participant imputed to other participants in a joint venture. The fraudulent, criminal, or other seriously improper conduct of one participant in a joint venture, grant pursuant to a joint application, or similar arrangement may be imputed to other participants if the conduct occurred for or on behalf of the joint venture, grant pursuant to a joint application, or similar arrangement or with the knowledge, approval, or acquiescence of these participants. Acceptance of the benefits derived from the conduct shall be evidence of such knowledge, approval, or acquiescence.

§ 145.405 General.

(a) The suspending official may suspend a person for any of the causes in § 145.405 using procedures established in §§ 145.410 through 145.413.

(b) Suspension is a serious action to be imposed only when:

1. There exists adequate evidence of one or more of the causes set out in § 145.405, and
2. Immediate action is necessary to protect the public interest.

(c) In assessing the adequacy of the evidence, the agency should consider how much information is available, how credible it is given the circumstances, whether or not important allegations are corroborated, and what inferences can reasonably be drawn as a result. This assessment should include an examination of basic documents such as grants, cooperative agreements, loan authorizations, and contracts.

§ 145.405 Causes for suspension.

(a) Suspension may be imposed in accordance with the provisions of §§ 145.400 through 145.413 upon adequate evidence:
§ 145.410 Procedures.

(a) Investigation and referral. Information concerning the existence of a cause for suspension from any source shall be promptly reported, investigated, and referred, when appropriate, to the suspending official for consideration. After consideration, the suspending official may issue a notice of suspension.

(b) Decisionmaking process. SBA shall process suspension actions as informally as practicable, consistent with principles of fundamental fairness, using the procedures in §§ 145.411 through 145.413.

§ 145.411 Notice of suspension.

When a respondent is suspended, notice shall immediately be given:

(a) That suspension has been imposed;

(b) That the suspension is based on an indictment, conviction, or other adequate evidence that the respondent has committed irregularities seriously reflecting on the propriety of further Federal Government dealings with the respondent;

(c) Describing any such irregularities in terms sufficient to put the respondent on notice without disclosing the Federal Government’s evidence;

(d) Of the cause(s) relied upon under § 145.405 for imposing suspension;

(e) That the suspension is for a temporary period pending the completion of an investigation or ensuing legal, debarment, or Program Fraud Civil Remedies Act proceedings;

(f) Of the provisions of §§ 145.411 through 145.413 and any other SBA procedures, if applicable, governing suspension decisionmaking; and

(g) Of the effect of the suspension.

§ 145.412 Opportunity to contest suspension.

(a) Submission in opposition. Within 30 days after receipt of the notice of suspension, the respondent may submit, in person, in writing, or through a representative, information and argument in opposition to the suspension.

(b) Additional proceedings as to disputed material facts. (1) If the suspending official finds that the respondent’s submission in opposition raises a genuine dispute over facts material to the suspension, respondent(s) shall be afforded an opportunity to appear with a representative, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses, and confront any witness the agency presents, unless:

(i) The action is based on an indictment, conviction or civil judgment, or

(ii) A determination is made, on the basis of Department of Justice advice, that the substantial interests of the Federal Government in pending or contemplated legal proceedings based on the same facts as the suspension would be prejudiced.

(2) A transcribed record of any additional proceedings shall be prepared and made available at cost to the respondent, upon request, unless the respondent and the agency, by mutual agreement, waive the requirement for a transcript.

(3) In accordance with § 145.413(b)(2), the suspending official may refer cases involving disputed material facts to the Office of Hearings and Appeals, which shall conduct any additional proceedings necessary in accordance with the procedures contained in part 134 of this title. Upon conclusion of such proceedings, the Office of Hearings and Appeals shall issue a recommended decision to the suspending official including proposed findings of facts and conclusions of law.

§ 145.413 Suspending official’s decision.

The suspending official may modify or terminate the suspension (for example, see § 145.320(c) for reasons for reducing the period or scope of debarment) or may leave it in force. However, a decision to modify or terminate the suspension shall be without prejudice to the subsequent imposition of suspension by any other agency or debarment by any agency. The decision
shall be rendered in accordance with the following provisions:

(a) No additional proceedings necessary. In actions: based on an indictment, conviction, or civil judgment; in which there is no genuine dispute over material facts; or in which additional proceedings to determine disputed material facts have been denied on the basis of Department of Justice advice, the suspending official shall make a decision on the basis of all the information in the administrative record, including any submission made by the respondent. The decision shall be made within 45 days after receipt of any information and argument submitted by the respondent, unless the suspending official extends this period for good cause.

(b) Additional proceedings necessary. (1) In actions in which additional proceedings are necessary to determine disputed material facts, written findings of fact shall be prepared. The suspending official shall base the decision on the facts as found, together with any information and argument submitted by the respondent and any other information in the administrative record.

(2) The suspending official may refer matters involving disputed material facts to another official for findings of fact. The suspending official may reject any such findings, in whole or in part, only after specifically determining them to be arbitrary or capricious or clearly erroneous.

(i) The Office of Hearings and Appeals shall conduct any proceedings regarding disputed material facts necessary under this section.

(ii) Any party to the suspension proceeding may file exceptions to the recommended decision with the suspending official in accordance with 13 CFR 134.35.

(c) Notice of suspending official’s decision. Prompt written notice of the suspending official’s decision shall be sent to the respondent.

(53 FR 19176, 19204, May 26, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 19176, May 26, 1988)

§ 145.415 Period of suspension.

(a) Suspension shall be for a temporary period pending the completion of an investigation or ensuing legal, debarment, or Program Fraud Civil Remissions Act proceedings, unless terminated sooner by the suspending official or as provided in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If legal or administrative proceedings are not initiated within 12 months after the date of the suspension notice, the suspension shall be terminated unless an Assistant Attorney General or United States Attorney requests its extension in writing, in which case it may be extended for an additional six months. In no event may a suspension extend beyond 18 months, unless such proceedings have been initiated within that period.

(c) The suspending official shall notify the Department of Justice of an impending termination of a suspension, at least 30 days before the 12-month period expires, to give that Department an opportunity to request an extension.

§ 145.420 Scope of suspension.

The scope of a suspension is the same as the scope of a debarment (see §145.325), except that the procedures of §§145.410 through 145.413 shall be used in imposing a suspension.

Subpart E—Responsibilities of GSA, Agency and Participants

§ 145.500 GSA responsibilities.

(a) In accordance with the OMB guidelines, GSA shall compile, maintain, and distribute a list of all persons who have been debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded by agencies under Executive Order 12549 and these regulations, and those who have been determined to be ineligible.

(b) At a minimum, this list shall indicate:

(1) The names and addresses of all debarred, suspended, ineligible, and voluntarily excluded persons, in alphabetical order, with cross-references when more than one name is involved in a single action;

(2) The type of action;

(3) The cause for the action;

(4) The scope of the action;

(5) Any termination date for each listing; and

(6) The agency and name and telephone number of the agency point of contact for the action.
§ 145.505 SBA responsibilities.

(a) The agency shall provide GSA with current information concerning debarments, suspension, determinations of ineligibility, and voluntary exclusions it has taken. Until February 18, 1989, the agency shall also provide GSA and OMB with information concerning all transactions in which SBA has granted exceptions under §145.215 permitting participation by debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded persons.

(b) Unless an alternative schedule is agreed to by GSA, the agency shall advise GSA of the information set forth in §145.500(b) and of the exceptions granted under §145.215 within five working days after taking such actions.

(c) The agency shall direct inquiries concerning listed persons to the agency that took the action.

(d) Agency officials shall check the Nonprocurement List before entering covered transactions to determine whether a participant in a primary transaction is debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded (Tel. #).

(e) Agency officials shall check the Nonprocurement List before approving principals or lower tier participants where agency approval of the principal or lower tier participant is required under the terms of the transaction, to determine whether such principals or participants are debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded.

§ 145.510 Participants' responsibilities.

(a) Certification by participants in primary covered transactions. Each participant shall submit the certification in appendix A to this part for it and its principals at the time the participant submits its proposal in connection with a primary covered transaction, except that States need only complete such certification as to their principals. Participants may decide the method and frequency by which they determine the eligibility of their principals. In addition, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Nonprocurement List for its principals (Tel. #).

(b) Certification by participants in lower tier covered transactions. (1) Each participant shall require participants in lower tier covered transactions to include the certification in appendix B to this part for it and its principals in any proposal submitted in connection with such lower tier covered transactions.

(2) A participant may rely upon the certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that it and its principals are not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction by any Federal agency, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. Participants may decide the method and frequency by which they determine the eligibility of their principals. In addition, a participant may, but is not required to, check the Nonprocurement List for its principals and for participants (Tel. ).

(c) Changed circumstances regarding certification. A participant shall provide immediate written notice to SBA if at any time the participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances. Participants in lower tier covered transactions shall provide the same updated notice to the participant to which it submitted its proposals.

Subpart F—Drug-Free Workplace Requirements (Grants)

§ 145.600 Purpose.

(a) The purpose of this subpart is to carry out the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 by requiring that—

(1) A grantee, other than an individual, shall certify to the agency that it will provide a drug-free workplace;

(2) A grantee who is an individual shall certify to the agency that, as a condition of the grant, he or she will
not engage in the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession or use of a controlled substance in conducting any activity with the grant.

(b) Requirements implementing the Drug-Free Workplace Act of 1988 for contractors with the agency are found at 48 CFR subparts 9.4, 23.5, and 52.2.

§ 145.605 Definitions.

(a) Except as amended in this section, the definitions of §145.105 apply to this subpart.

(b) For purposes of this subpart—

(1) Controlled substance means a controlled substance in schedules I through V of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 812), and as further defined by regulation at 21 CFR 1308.11 through 1308.15;

(2) Conviction means a finding of guilt (including a plea of nolo contendere) or imposition of sentence, or both, by any judicial body charged with the responsibility to determine violations of the Federal or State criminal drug statutes;

(3) Criminal drug statute means a Federal or non-Federal criminal statute involving the manufacture, distribution, dispensing, use, or possession of any controlled substance;

(4) Drug-free workplace means a site for the performance of work done in connection with a specific grant at which employees of the grantee are prohibited from engaging in the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of a controlled substance;

(5) Employee means the employee of a grantee directly engaged in the performance of work under the grant, including:

(i) All direct charge employees;

(ii) All indirect charge employees, unless their impact or involvement is insignificant to the performance of the grant; and

(iii) Temporary personnel and consultants who are directly engaged in the performance of work under the grant and who are on the grantee’s payroll.

This definition does not include workers not on the payroll of the grantee (e.g., volunteers, even if used to meet a matching requirement; consultants or independent contractors not on the payroll; or employees of subrecipients or subcontractors in covered workplaces);

(6) Federal agency or agency means any United States executive department, military department, government corporation, government controlled corporation, any other establishment in the executive branch (including the Executive Office of the President), or any independent regulatory agency;

(7) Grant means an award of financial assistance, including a cooperative agreement, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by a Federal agency directly to a grantee. The term grant includes block grant and entitlement grant programs, whether or not exempted from coverage under the grants management government-wide common rule on uniform administrative requirements for grants and cooperative agreements. The term does not include technical assistance that provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations; or any veterans’ benefits to individuals, i.e., any benefit to veterans, their families, or survivors by virtue of the service of a veteran in the Armed Forces of the United States;

(8) Grantee means a person who applies for or receives a grant directly from a Federal agency (except another Federal agency);

(9) Individual means a natural person;

(10) State means any of the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency of a State, exclusive of institutions of higher education, hospitals, and units of local government. A State instrumentality will be considered part of the State government if it has a written determination from a State government that such State considers the instrumentality to be an agency of the State government.

§ 145.610 Coverage.

(a) This subpart applies to any grantee of the agency.
§ 145.615 Grounds for suspension of payments, suspension or termination of grants, or suspension or debarment.

A grantee shall be deemed in violation of the requirements of this subpart if the agency head or his or her official designee determines, in writing, that—

(a) The grantee has made a false certification under §145.630;

(b) With respect to a grantee other than an individual—

(1) The grantee has violated the certification by failing to carry out the requirements of paragraphs (A)(a)–(g) and/or (B) of the certification (Alternate I to Appendix C) or

(2) Such a number of employees of the grantee have been convicted of violations of criminal drug statutes for violations occurring in the workplace as to indicate that the grantee has failed to make a good faith effort to provide a drug-free workplace.

(c) With respect to a grantee who is an individual—

(1) The grantee has violated the certification by failing to carry out its requirements (Alternate II to Appendix C); or

(2) The grantee is convicted of a criminal drug offense resulting from a violation occurring during the conduct of any grant activity.

§ 145.620 Effect of violation.

(a) In the event of a violation of this subpart as provided in §145.615, and in accordance with applicable law, the grantee shall be subject to one or more of the following actions:

(1) Suspension of payments under the grant;

(2) Suspension or termination of the grant; and

(3) Suspension or debarment of the grantee under the provisions of this part.

(b) Upon issuance of any final decision under this part requiring debarment of a grantee, the debarred grantee shall be ineligible for award of any grant from any Federal agency for a period specified in the decision, not to exceed five years (see §145.320(a)(2) of this part).

§ 145.625 Exception provision.

The agency head may waive with respect to a particular grant, in writing, a suspension of payments under a grant, suspension or termination of a grant, or suspension or debarment of a grantee if the agency head determines that such a waiver would be in the public interest. This exception authority cannot be delegated to any other official.

§ 145.630 Certification requirements and procedures.

(a)(1) As a prior condition of being awarded a grant, each grantee shall make the appropriate certification to the Federal agency providing the grant, as provided in appendix C to this part.

(2) Grantees are not required to make a certification in order to continue receiving funds under a grant awarded before March 18, 1989, or under a no-cost time extension of such a grant made on or after March 18, 1989.

(b) Except as provided in this section, all grantees shall make the required certification for each grant. For mandatory formula grants and entitlements that have no application process, grantees shall submit a one-time
certification in order to continue receiving awards.

§ 145.635 Reporting of and employee sanctions for convictions of criminal drug offenses.

(a) When a grantee other than an individual is notified that an employee has been convicted for a violation of a criminal drug statute occurring in the workplace, it shall take the following actions:

(1) Within 10 calendar days of receiving notice of the conviction, the grantee shall provide written notice, including the convicted employee’s position title, to every grant officer, or other designee on whose grant activity the convicted employee was working, unless a Federal agency has designated a central location for notification. Notification shall include the identification number(s) for each of the Federal agency’s affected grants.

(2) Within 30 calendar days of receiving notice of the conviction, the grantee shall do the following with respect to the employee who was convicted:

(i) Take appropriate personnel action against the employee, up to and including termination, consistent with requirements of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended; or

(ii) Require the employee to participate satisfactorily in a drug abuse assistance or rehabilitation program approved for such purposes by a Federal, State, or local health, law enforcement, or other appropriate agency.

(b) A grantee who is an individual who is convicted for a violation of a criminal drug statute occurring during the conduct of any grant activity shall report the conviction, in writing, within 10 calendar days, to his or her Federal agency grant officer, or other designee, unless the Federal agency has designated a central point for the receipt of such notices. Notification shall include the identification number(s)
APPENDIX A TO PART 145—CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION—PRIMARY COVERED TRANSACTIONS

Instructions for Certification

1. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective primary participant is providing the certification set out below.

2. The inability of a person to provide the certification required below will not necessarily result in denial of participation in this covered transaction. The prospective participant shall submit an explanation of why it cannot provide the certification set out below. The certification or explanation will be considered in connection with the department or agency's determination whether to enter into this transaction. However, failure of the prospective primary participant to furnish a certification or an explanation shall disqualify such person from participation in this transaction.

3. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when the department or agency determined to enter into this transaction. If it is later determined that the prospective primary participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default.

4. The prospective primary participant shall provide immediate written notice to the department or agency to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the prospective primary participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.

5. The terms covered transaction, debarred, suspended, ineligible, lower tier covered transaction, participant, primary covered transaction, principal, proposal, and voluntarily excluded, as used in this clause, have the meanings set out in the Definitions and Coverage sections of the rules implementing Executive Order 12549. You may contact the department or agency to which this proposal is being submitted for assistance in obtaining a copy of these regulations.

6. The prospective primary participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency entering into this transaction.

7. The prospective primary participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include the clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion—Lower Tier Covered Transaction," provided by the department or agency entering into this covered transaction, without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions.

8. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that it is not proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant may decide the method and frequency by which it determines the eligibility of its principals. Each participant may, but is not required to, check the List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs.

9. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of a participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

10. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph 6 of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default.

Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, and Other Responsibility Matters—Primary Covered Transactions

1. The prospective primary participant certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief, that it and its principals:

   a. Are not presently debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded by any Federal department or agency;

   b. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them
for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;

(c) Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (1)(b) of this certification; and

(d) Have not within a three-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.

(2) Where the prospective primary participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to the certification.

(3) The prospective lower tier participant may rely upon a certification of a prospective primary participant in a lower tier covered transaction that it is not proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated.

(4) The prospective lower tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated.

(5) The prospective lower tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include this clause titled “Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion—Lower Tier Covered Transaction,” without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions.

(6) A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective primary participant in a lower tier covered transaction that it is not proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from covered transactions, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant may decide the method and frequency by which it determines the eligibility of its principals. Each participant may, but is not required to, check the List of Parties Excluded from Federal Procurement and Nonprocurement Programs.

(7) A participant in a covered transaction may be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of a participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

(8) Except for transactions authorized under paragraph 5 of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion—Lower Tier Covered Transactions

(1) The prospective lower tier participant certifies, by submission of this proposal, that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment,
 declaration is called, in particular, to the following apply to this certification. Grantees rule and Drug-Free Workplace common rule ment Suspension and Debarment common rule workplaces in question (see paragraph five). the grantee shall inform the agency of the changes during the performance of the grant, (in concert halls or radio studios). each local unemployment office, performers ment while in operation, State employees in transit authority or State highway depart- tions may be used (e.g., all vehicles of a mass buildings) or other sites where work under the actual address of buildings (or parts of requirements.

2. The certification set out below is a ma- terial representation of fact upon which reli- ance is placed when the agency awards the grant. If it is later determined that the grantee knowingly rendered a false certifi- cation, or otherwise violates the require- ments of the Drug-Free Workplace Act, the agency, in addition to any other remedies available to the Federal Government, may take action authorized under the Drug-Free Workplace Act.

3. For grantees other than individuals, Al- ternate I applies.

4. For grantees who are individuals, Alternate II applies.

5. Workplaces under grants, for grantees other than individuals, need not be identified on the certification. If known, they may be identified in the grant application. If the grantee does not identify the workplaces at the time of application, or upon award, if there is no application, the grantee must keep the identity of the workplace(s) on file in its office and make the information available for Federal inspection. Failure to iden- tify all known workplaces constitutes a viol- ation of the grantee’s drug-free workplace requirements.

6. Workplace identifications must include the actual address of buildings (or parts of buildings) or other sites where work under the grant takes place. Categorical descrip- tions may be used (e.g., all vehicles of a mass transit authority or State highway department, performers in concert halls or radio studios).

7. If the workplace identified to the agency changes during the performance of the grant, the grantee shall inform the agency of the change(s), if it previously identified the workplaces in question (see paragraph five).

8. Definitions of terms in the Nonprocure- ment Suspension and Debarment common rule and Drug-Free Workplace common rule apply to this certification. Grantees’ attention is called, in particular, to the following definitions from these rules:

Controlled substance means a controlled substance in Schedules I through V of the Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 812) and as further defined by regulation (21 CFR 1308.11 through 1308.15);

(2) Where the prospective lower tier partic- ipant is unable to certify to any of the state- ments in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

(60 FR 33042, 33044, June 26, 1995)

APPENDIX C TO PART 145—CERTIFI- CATION REGARDING DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE REQUIREMENTS

Instructions for Certification

1. By signing and/or submitting this appli- cation or grant agreement, the grantee is providing the certification set out below.

2. The certification set out below is a ma- terial representation of fact upon which reli- ance is placed when the agency awards the grant. If it is later determined that the grantee knowingly rendered a false certifi- cation, or otherwise violates the require- ments of the Drug-Free Workplace Act, the agency, in addition to any other remedies available to the Federal Government, may take action authorized under the Drug-Free Workplace Act.

3. For grantees other than individuals, Al- ternate I applies.

4. For grantees who are individuals, Alternate II applies.

5. Workplaces under grants, for grantees other than individuals, need not be identified on the certification. If known, they may be identified in the grant application. If the grantee does not identify the workplaces at the time of application, or upon award, if there is no application, the grantee must keep the identity of the workplace(s) on file in its office and make the information available for Federal inspection. Failure to iden- tify all known workplaces constitutes a viol- ation of the grantee’s drug-free workplace requirements.

6. Workplace identifications must include the actual address of buildings (or parts of buildings) or other sites where work under the grant takes place. Categorical descrip- tions may be used (e.g., all vehicles of a mass transit authority or State highway department, performers in concert halls or radio studios).

7. If the workplace identified to the agency changes during the performance of the grant, the grantee shall inform the agency of the change(s), if it previously identified the workplaces in question (see paragraph five).

8. Definitions of terms in the Nonprocure- ment Suspension and Debarment common rule and Drug-Free Workplace common rule apply to this certification. Grantees’ attention is called, in particular, to the following definitions from these rules:
§ 146.100 Conditions on use of funds.

(a) No appropriated funds may be expended by the recipient of a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement to pay any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a grant officer or other designee, unless the Federal agency designates a central point for the receipt of such notices. When notice is made to such a central point, it shall include the identification number(s) of each affected grant.

[55 FR 21690, 21692, May 25, 1990]
§ 146.105 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) Agency, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552(f), includes Federal executive departments and agencies as well as independent regulatory commissions and Government corporations, as defined in 31 U.S.C. 9101(1).

(b) Covered Federal action means any of the following Federal actions:

1. The awarding of any Federal contract;
2. The making of any Federal grant;
3. The making of any Federal loan;
4. The entering into of any cooperative agreement; and
5. The extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

Covered Federal action does not include receiving from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan. Loan guarantees and loan insurance are addressed independently within this part.

(c) Federal contract means an acquisition contract awarded by an agency, including those subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR), and any other acquisition contract for real or personal property or services not subject to the FAR.

(d) Federal cooperative agreement means a cooperative agreement entered into by an agency.

(e) Federal grant means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government or a direct appropriation made by law to any person. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, loan insurance, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct United States cash assistance to an individual.

(f) Federal loan means a loan made by an agency. The term does not include loan guarantee or loan insurance.

(g) Indian tribe and tribal organization have the meaning provided in section 4 of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450B). Alaskan Natives are included.
under the definitions of Indian tribes in that Act.

(h) Influencing or attempting to influence means making, with the intent to influence, any communication to or appearance before an officer or employee or any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any covered Federal action.

(i) Loan guarantee and loan insurance means an agency’s guarantee or insurance of a loan made by a person.

(j) Local government means a unit of government in a State and, if chartered, established, or otherwise recognized by a State for the performance of a governmental duty, including a local public authority, a special district, an intrastate district, a council of governments, a sponsor group representative organization, and any other instrumentality of a local government.

(k) Officer or employee of an agency includes the following individuals who are employed by an agency:

(1) An individual who is appointed to a position in the Government under title 5, U.S. Code, including a position under a temporary appointment;

(2) A member of the uniformed services as defined in section 101(3), title 37, U.S. Code;

(3) A special Government employee as defined in section 202, title 18, U.S. Code; and,

(4) An individual who is a member of a Federal advisory committee, as defined by the Federal Advisory Committee Act, title 5, U.S. Code appendix 2.

(l) Person means an individual, corporation, company, association, authority, firm, partnership, society, State, and local government, regardless of whether such entity is operated for profit or not for profit. This term excludes an Indian tribe, tribal organization, or any other Indian organization with respect to expenditures specifically permitted by other Federal law.

(m) Reasonable compensation means, with respect to a regularly employed officer or employee of any person, compensation that is consistent with the normal compensation for such officer or employee for work that is not furnished to, not funded by, or not furnished in cooperation with the Federal Government.

(n) Reasonable payment means, with respect to professional and other technical services, a payment in an amount that is consistent with the amount normally paid for such services in the private sector.

(o) Recipient includes all contractors, subcontractors at any tier, and subgrantees at any tier of the recipient of funds received in connection with a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement. The term excludes an Indian tribe, tribal organization, or any other Indian organization with respect to expenditures specifically permitted by other Federal law.

(p) Regularly employed means, with respect to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan, an officer or employee who is employed by such person for at least 130 working days within one year immediately preceding the date of the submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for receipt of such contract, grant, loan, cooperative agreement, loan insurance commitment, or loan guarantee commitment. An officer or employee who is employed by such person for less than 130 working days within one year immediately preceding the date of the submission that initiates agency consideration of such person shall be considered to be regularly employed as soon as he or she is employed by such person for 130 working days.

(q) State means a State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, a territory or possession of the United States, an agency or instrumentality of a State, and a multi-State, regional, or interstate entity having governmental duties and powers.

§ 146.110 Certification and disclosure.

(a) Each person shall file a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, with each submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for:
§ 146.200 Agency and legislative liaison.

(a) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in §146.100 (a), does not apply in the case of a payment of reasonable compensation made to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
Small Business Administration

§ 146.205 Professional and technical services.

(a) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in §146.100 (a), does not apply in the case of a payment of reasonable compensation made to an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement if payment is for professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or for meeting requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(b) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, professional and technical services shall be limited to advice and analysis directly applying any professional or technical discipline. For example, drafting of a legal document accompanying a bid or proposal by a lawyer is allowable. Similarly, technical advice provided by an engineer on the performance or operational capability of a piece of equipment rendered directly in the negotiation of a contract is allowable. However, communications with the intent to influence made by a professional (such as a licensed lawyer) or a technical person (such as a licensed accountant) are not allowable under this section unless they provide advice and analysis directly applying their professional or technical expertise and unless the advice or analysis is rendered directly and solely in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action. Thus, for example, communications with the intent to influence made by a lawyer that do not provide legal advice or analysis directly and solely related to the legal aspects of his or her client’s proposal, but generally advocate one proposal over another are not allowable under this section because the lawyer is not providing professional legal services. Similarly, communications with the intent to influence made by an engineer providing an engineering analysis prior to the preparation or submission of a bid or proposal are not allowable under this section since the engineer is providing technical services but not directly in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action.

(c) Requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving a covered Federal award include those required by law or regulation, or
§ 146.210 Reporting.

No reporting is required with respect to payments of reasonable compensation made to regularly employed officers or employees of a person.

Subpart C—Activities by Other Than Own Employees

§ 146.300 Professional and technical services.

(a) The prohibition on the use of appropriated funds, in §146.100 (a), does not apply in the case of any reasonable payment to a person, other than an officer or employee of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action, if the payment is for professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement or for meeting requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving that Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(b) The reporting requirements in §146.110 (a) and (b) regarding filing a disclosure form by each person, if required, shall not apply with respect to professional or technical services rendered directly in the preparation, submission, or negotiation of any bid, proposal, or application for a covered Federal action.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, professional and technical services shall be limited to advice and analysis directly applying any professional or technical discipline. For example, drafting or a legal document accompanying a bid or proposal by a lawyer is allowable. Similarly, technical advice provided by an engineer on the performance or operational capability of a piece of equipment rendered directly in the negotiation of a contract is allowable. However, communications with the intent to influence made by a professional (such as a licensed lawyer) or a technical person (such as a licensed accountant) are not allowable under this section unless they provide advice and analysis directly applying their professional or technical expertise and unless the advice or analysis is rendered directly and solely in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action. Thus, for example, communications with the intent to influence made by a lawyer that do not provide legal advice or analysis directly and solely related to the legal aspects of his or her client’s proposal, but generally advocate one proposal over another are not allowable under this section because the lawyer is not providing professional legal services. Similarly, communications with the intent to influence made by an engineer providing an engineering analysis prior to the preparation or submission of a bid or proposal are not allowable under this section since the engineer is providing technical services but not directly in the preparation, submission or negotiation of a covered Federal action.

(d) Requirements imposed by or pursuant to law as a condition for receiving a covered Federal award include those required by law or regulation, or reasonably expected to be required by law or regulation, and any other requirements in the actual award documents.

(e) Persons other than officers or employees of a person requesting or receiving a covered Federal action include consultants and trade associations.

(f) Only those services expressly authorized by this section are allowable under this section.

Subpart D—Penalties and Enforcement

§ 146.400 Penalties.

(a) Any person who makes an expenditure prohibited herein shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such expenditure.

(b) Any person who fails to file or amend the disclosure form (see appendix B) to be filed or amended if required herein, shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not
more than $100,000 for each such failure.

(c) A filing or amended filing on or after the date on which an administrative action for the imposition of a civil penalty is commenced does not prevent the imposition of such civil penalty for a failure occurring before that date. An administrative action is commenced with respect to a failure when an investigating official determines in writing to commence an investigation of an allegation of such failure.

(d) In determining whether to impose a civil penalty, and the amount of any such penalty, by reason of a violation by any person, the agency shall consider the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the violation, the effect on the ability of such person to continue in business, any prior violations by such person, the degree of culpability of such person, the ability of the person to pay the penalty, and such other matters as may be appropriate.

(e) First offenders under paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of $10,000, absent aggravating circumstances. Second and subsequent offenses by persons shall be subject to an appropriate civil penalty between $10,000 and $100,000, as determined by the agency head or his or her designee.

(f) An imposition of a civil penalty under this section does not prevent the United States from seeking any other remedy that may apply to the same conduct that is the basis for the imposition of such civil penalty.

§ 146.405 Penalty procedures.

Agencies shall impose and collect civil penalties pursuant to the provisions of the Program Fraud and Civil Remedies Act, 31 U.S.C. sections 3803 (except subsection (c)), 3804, 3805, 3806, 3807, 3808, and 3812, insofar as these provisions are not inconsistent with the requirements herein.

§ 146.410 Enforcement.

The head of each agency shall take such actions as are necessary to ensure that the provisions herein are vigorously implemented and enforced in that agency.

§ 146.500 Secretary of Defense.

(a) The Secretary of Defense may exempt, on a case-by-case basis, a covered Federal action from the prohibition whenever the Secretary determines, in writing, that such an exemption is in the national interest. The Secretary shall transmit a copy of each such written exemption to Congress immediately after making such a determination.

(b) The Department of Defense may issue supplemental regulations to implement paragraph (a) of this section.

Subpart F—Agency Reports

§ 146.600 Semi-annual compilation.

(a) The head of each agency shall collect and compile the disclosure reports (see appendix B) and, on May 31 and November 30 of each year, submit to the Secretary of the Senate and the Clerk of the House of Representatives a report containing a compilation of the information contained in the disclosure reports received during the six-month period ending on March 31 or September 30, respectively, of that year.

(b) The report, including the compilation, shall be available for public inspection 30 days after receipt of the report by the Secretary and the Clerk.

(c) Information that involves intelligence matters shall be reported only to the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate, the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives, and the Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives in accordance with procedures agreed to by such committees. Such information shall not be available for public inspection.

(d) Information that is classified under Executive Order 12356 or any successor order shall be reported only to the Committee on Foreign Relations of the Senate and the Committee on Foreign Affairs of the House of Representatives or the Committees on Armed Services of the Senate and the House of Representatives (whichever such committees have jurisdiction of matters involving such information) and to the
Committees on Appropriations of the Senate and the House of Representatives in accordance with procedures agreed to by such committees. Such information shall not be available for public inspection.

(e) The first semi-annual compilation shall be submitted on May 31, 1990, and shall contain a compilation of the disclosure reports received from December 23, 1989 to March 31, 1990.

(f) Major agencies, designated by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), are required to provide machine-readable compilations to the Secretary of the Senate and the Clerk of the House of Representatives no later than with the compilations due on May 31, 1991. OMB shall provide detailed specifications in a memorandum to these agencies.

(g) Non-major agencies are requested to provide machine-readable compilations to the Secretary of the Senate and the Clerk of the House of Representatives.

(h) Agencies shall keep the original of all disclosure reports in the official files of the agency.

§ 146.605 Inspector General report.

(a) The Inspector General, or other official as specified in paragraph (b) of this section, of each agency shall prepare and submit to Congress each year, commencing with submission of the President’s Budget in 1991, an evaluation of the compliance of that agency with, and the effectiveness of, the requirements herein. The evaluation may include any recommended changes that may be necessary to strengthen or improve the requirements.

(b) In the case of an agency that does not have an Inspector General, the agency official comparable to an Inspector General shall prepare and submit the annual report, or, if there is no such comparable official, the head of the agency shall prepare and submit the annual report.

(c) The annual report shall be submitted at the same time the agency submits its annual budget justifications to Congress.

(d) The annual report shall include the following: All alleged violations relating to the agency’s covered Federal actions during the year covered by the report, the actions taken by the head of the agency in the year covered by the report with respect to those alleged violations and alleged violations in previous years, and the amounts of civil penalties imposed by the agency in the year covered by the report.

APPENDIX A TO PART 146—CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

Certification for Contracts, Grants, Loans, and Cooperative Agreements

The undersigned certifies, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form LLL, “Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying,” in accordance with its instructions.

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all subawards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by section 1352, title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

Statement for Loan Guarantees and Loan Insurance

The undersigned states, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

If any funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting.
Small Business Administration

Pt. 146, App. B

to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, “Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying,” in accordance with its instructions.

Submission of this statement is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by section 1352, title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required statement shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.
APPENDIX B TO PART 146—DISCLOSURE FORM TO REPORT LOBBYING

DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

Complete this form to disclose lobbying activities pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352

(See reverse for public burden disclosure.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Type of Federal Action:</th>
<th>2. Status of Federal Action:</th>
<th>3. Report Type:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. contract</td>
<td>a. bid/offer application</td>
<td>a. initial filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. grant</td>
<td>b. initial award</td>
<td>b. material change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. cooperative agreement</td>
<td>c. post-award</td>
<td>For Material Change Only:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. loan</td>
<td></td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. loan guarantee</td>
<td></td>
<td>date of last report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. loan insurance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4. Name and Address of Reporting Entity:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ Prime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tier ____, if known:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Congressional District, if known: ____________

4. Name and Address of Reporting Entity: ____________

5. If Reporting Entity in No. 4 is Subawardee. Enter Name and Address of Prime:

Congressional District, if known: ____________

6. Federal Department/Agency: ______________________

7. Federal Program Name/Description: ______________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8. Federal Action Number, if known:</th>
<th>9. Award Amount, if known:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. a. Name and Address of Lobbying Entity of individual, last name, first name, MIl:

b. Individuals Performing Services (including address if different from No. 10a)

(last name, first name, MIl):

11. Amount of Payment (check all that apply):

$ ____________ □ actual □ planned

12. Form of Payment (check all that apply):

□ a. cash □ b. in-kind; specify: nature ____________ value ____________

13. Type of Payment (check all that apply):

□ a. retainer □ b. one-time fee □ c. commission □ d. contingent fee

□ e. deferred □ f. other; specify: ______________________

14. Brief Description of Services Performed or to be Performed and Date(s) of Service, including officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) contacted, for Payment Indicated in Item 11:

15. Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A attached: □ Yes □ No

16. Information required through this form is authorized by title 31 U.S.C. section 1352. This disclosure of lobbying activities is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed by the party above when this transaction was made or entered into. This disclosure is required pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352. This information will be reported to the Congress semi-annually and will be available for public inspection. Any person who fails to file the required disclosure shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $50,000 for each such failure.

Signature: ______________________

Print Name: ______________________

Title: ______________________

Telephone No.: ____________ Date: ____________

Federal Use Only: ______________________

Authorized for Local Reproduction

Standard Form - LLL

528
INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETION OF SF-LLL, DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

This disclosure form shall be completed by the reporting entity, whether subcontractor or prime Federal recipient, at the initiation or receipt of a covered Federal action, or a material change to a previous filing, pursuant to title 31 U.S.C. section 1352. The filing of a form is required for each payment or agreement to make payment to any lobbying entity for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with a covered Federal action. Use the SF-LLL-A Continuation Sheet for additional information if the space on the form is inadequate. Complete all items that apply for both the initial filing and material change report. Refer to the implementing guidance published by the Office of Management and Budget for additional information.

1. Identify the type of covered Federal action for which lobbying activity is and/or has been secured to influence the outcome of a covered Federal action.

2. Identify the status of the covered Federal action.

3. Identify the appropriate classification of this report. If this is a followup report caused by a material change to the information previously reported, enter the year and quarter in which the change occurred. Enter the date of the last previously submitted report by this reporting entity for this covered Federal action.

4. Enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the reporting entity. Include Congressional District, if known. Check the appropriate classification of the reporting entity that designates if it is, or expects to be, a prime or subcontractor recipient. Identify the tier of the subcontractor, e.g., the first subcontractor of the prime is the 1st tier. Subawards include but are not limited to subcontracts, subgrants and contract awards under grants.

5. If the organization filing the report in item 4 checks "Subawardee", then enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the prime Federal recipient. Include Congressional District, if known.

6. Enter the name of the Federal agency making the award or loan commitment. Include at least one organizational level below agency name, if known. For example, Department of Transportation, United States Coast Guard.

7. Enter the Federal program name or description for the covered Federal action (item 1). If known, enter the full Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number for grants, cooperative agreements, loans, and loan commitments.

8. Enter the most appropriate Federal identifying number available for the Federal action identified in item 1 (e.g., Request for Proposal (RFP) number; Invitation for Bid (IFB) number; grant announcement number; the contract, grant, or loan award number; the application/proposal control number assigned by the Federal agency). Include prefixes, e.g., "RFP-DE-90-001."

9. For a covered Federal action where there has been an award or loan commitment by the Federal agency, enter the Federal amount of the award/loan commitment for the prime entity identified in item 4 or 5.

10. (a) Enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the lobbying entity engaged by the reporting entity identified in item 4 to influence the covered Federal action.

(b) Enter the full names of the individual(s) performing services, and include full address if different from (a).

Enter Last Name, First Name, and Middle Initial (MI).

11. Enter the amount of compensation paid or reasonably expected to be paid by the reporting entity (item 4) to the lobbying entity (item 10). Indicate whether the payment has been made (actual) or will be made (planned). Check all boxes that apply. If this is a material change report, enter the cumulative amount of payment made or planned to be made.

12. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If payment is made through an in-kind contribution, specify the nature and value of the in-kind payment.

13. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If other, specify nature.

14. Provide a specific and detailed description of the services that the lobbyist has performed, or will be expected to perform, and the date(s) of any services rendered. Include all preparatory and related activity, not just time spent in actual contact with Federal officials. Identify the Federal official(s) or employee(s) contacted or the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) of Congress that were contacted.

15. Check whether or not a SF-LLL-A Continuation Sheet(s) is attached.

16. The certifying official shall sign and date the form, print his/her name, title, and telephone number.

Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 30 minutes per response, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding the burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to the Office of Management and Budget, Paperwork Reduction Project (0346-0046), Washington, D.C. 20503.
## CHAPTER III—ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>General information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>General eligibility and grant rate requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Economic Development Districts; standards for designation, modification and termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Planning process and strategies for district and other planning organizations supported by EDA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>General selection process and evaluation criteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>Grants for Public Works and Development Facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>Planning assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>Local Technical Assistance, University Center Technical Assistance, National Technical Assistance, Training, Research, and Evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>Requirements for Economic Adjustment grants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309–313</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314</td>
<td>Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>Certification and adjustment assistance for firms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td>General requirements for financial assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317</td>
<td>Civil rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318</td>
<td>Evaluations of University Centers and Economic Development Districts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART 300—GENERAL INFORMATION

Sec. 300.1 Introduction and purpose.
300.2 Definitions.
300.3 OMB control numbers.
300.4 Economic Development Administration—Washington, DC, Regional and Economic Development Representatives.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 3211; Department of Commerce Organization Order 10-4.

SOURCE: 64 FR 5352, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 300.1 Introduction and purpose.

(a) Introduction. Is your community suffering from severe economic distress (e.g., high unemployment, low income, sudden economic changes, etc.)? Are you a representative of a State or local unit of government, Indian tribe, public or private nonprofit organization, educational institution, or community development corporation looking for grant assistance to enhance your opportunities for economic development? If so, these regulations of the Economic Development Administration (EDA) of the U.S. Department of Commerce may be of help. These regulations tell you the purpose of EDA and outline the program requirements, project selection process, project evaluation criteria, and other relevant matters. The information in these regulations covers grant programs of EDA that provide financial awards for the following:

- Public Works and Development Facilities;
- Planning;
- Research, Evaluation, Training and Technical Assistance;
- Trade Adjustment Assistance; and
- Economic Adjustment Assistance.

(b) What is the Purpose of the Economic Development Administration?

(1) Many communities lag behind and suffer economic distress in one form or another, such as:

- High unemployment;
- Low income;
- Underemployment;
- Outmigration;
- Sudden economic changes due to the restructuring or relocation of industrial firms;
- Closing or realignment of defense bases or cutbacks in defense procurement;
- Economic impact of natural disasters or other emergencies;
- Actions of the Federal government (such as environmental requirements) that curtail or remove economic activities; and
- Impacts of foreign trade.

(2) The purpose of the Economic Development Administration is to address economic problems affecting economically distressed rural and urban communities; by helping them:

(i) Develop and strengthen their economic development planning and institutional capacity to design and implement business outreach and development programs; and

(ii) Develop or expand public works and other facilities, financing tools, and resources that will create new job opportunities, save existing jobs, retain existing businesses, and support the development of new businesses.

(3) To promote a strong and growing economy throughout the United States, EDA works in partnership with State and local governments, Indian tribes and local, regional, and State public and private nonprofit organizations. With them EDA develops and carries out comprehensive economic development strategies that address the economic problems of distressed communities. EDA helps such communities increase their economic development capacities so that they can take advantage of existing resources and development opportunities.

§ 300.2 Definitions.

Unless otherwise defined in other parts or sections of this Chapter, the terms listed are defined as follows:

Comprehensive Economic Development Strategy, CEDS, or strategy means a strategy approved by EDA under §301.3 of this chapter.

Department means the Department of Commerce.

Economic Development District or district:

(1) Means any area in the United States that has been designated by EDA as an Economic Development District under §302.1 of these regulations; and

(2) Includes any Economic Development District designated by EDA under sec. 403 of the Public Works and Economic Development Act of 1965, as
§ 300.2 amended, as in effect on the day before the effective date of Public Law 105–393.

EDA means the Economic Development Administration in the U.S. Department of Commerce when a place or agency is intended, and refers to the headquarters office in Washington, D.C., or a regional office, as appropriate; or it means the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Economic Development or his/her designee when a person is intended. The locations of EDA’s offices are listed each year in a Notice of Funding Availability (NOFA). The general information telephone number for EDA is (202) 482–2309.

Eligible applicant means:
(1) In general,—
(i) An entity qualified to be an eligible recipient, or
(ii) Its authorized representative.
(2) Except in the case of Research, Evaluation, Training, or Technical Assistance grants under part 307, a private individual or for-profit organization cannot be an eligible applicant.

Eligible recipient means
(1) In general,—
(i) An area described in § 301.2 of these regulations;
(ii) An Economic Development District;
(iii) An Indian tribe or a consortium of Indian tribes;
(iv) A State;
(v) A city or other political subdivision of a State or a consortium of political subdivisions;
(vi) An institution of higher education or a consortium of institutions of higher education; or
(vii) A public or private nonprofit organization or association acting in cooperation with officials of a political subdivision of a State.
(2) In the case of Research, Evaluation, Training, and Technical Assistance grants under part 307, eligible recipient also includes private individuals and for-profit organizations.

Federal agency means a department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States.

Federally-declared disaster means a Presidentially-declared disaster or a Federally-declared disaster pursuant to the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (Public Law 94–265) as amended by the Sustainable Fisheries Act (Public Law 104–297), or a Federal declaration pursuant to the Consolidated Farm and Rural Development Act, as amended (Public Laws 92–419, 96–438, 97–35, 98–258, 99–198, 100–232, 100–387, and 101–624), or a Federally-declared disaster pursuant to the Small Business Act, as amended (Public Law 85–536).

Financial assistance means grant.

Grant means the non-procurement award of EDA funds to an eligible recipient under PWEDA or the Trade Act, as applicable. The term includes a cooperative agreement, within the meaning of chapter 63 of title 31, United States Code.

Indian tribe means any Indian tribe, band, nation, pueblo, or other organized group or community, including any Alaska Native Village or Regional Corporation (as defined in or established under the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.)), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians. The term includes: The governing body of a tribe, nonprofit Indian corporation (restricted to Indians), Indian authority, or other nonprofit tribal organization or entity, provided that the tribal organization or entity is wholly owned by, and established for the benefit of, the tribe or Alaska Native Village.

Local share, matching share or local share match are used interchangeably to mean non-Federal funds or goods and services provided by recipients or third parties that are required as a condition of a grant, and includes funds from other Federal agencies only if there is statutory authority allowing such use.

Notice of Funding Availability or NOFA, refers to the notice or notices EDA publishes each year in the Federal Register and on EDA’s internet web site, http://www.doc.gov/eda, describing the available amounts, particular procedures, priorities, and special circumstances for the EDA grant programs for that year.

amendments by the Economic Development Administration Reform Act of 1998 (Pub. L. 105–393). (The term “PWEDA” was used to refer to EDA’s authorizing legislation as it was in effect before the effective date of Public Law 105–393, signed into law on November 13, 1998. In these regulations, the term “PWEDA” refers to the legislation as currently amended by the 1998 law.)

Presidentially-declared disaster means a major disaster or emergency declared under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.).

Project means the activity or activities the purpose of which fulfills EDA program requirements and that EDA funds in whole or in part.

Proposed District means a geographic entity composed of one or more eligible areas proposed for designation as an Economic Development District.

Recipient and grantee are used interchangeably to mean an entity receiving funds from EDA under PWEDA or the Trade Act, as applicable, and includes any EDA approved successor to such recipient.

State means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, the Federated States of Micronesia, and the Republic of Palau.

The Trade Act means Title II, Chapters 3 and 5, of the Trade Act of 1974, as amended (19 U.S.C. 2341, et seq.).

United States means all of the States.

§ 300.3 OMB control numbers.

(a) This table displays control numbers assigned to EDA’s information collection requirements by the Office of Management and Budget (“OMB”) pursuant to the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980, Pub. L. 96–611. EDA intends that this table comply with Section 3507(t) of the Paperwork Reduction Act, requiring agencies to display a current control number assigned by the Director of OMB for each agency information collection requirement.

(b) Control number table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13 CFR part or section where identified an described</th>
<th>Current OMB control No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>0610–0093</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>0610–0094 and 0610–0096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>0610–0094 and 0610–0095</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>0610–0091 and 0610–0094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td>0610–0094</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 300.4 Economic Development Administration—Washington, D.C., Regional and Economic Development Representatives.

For addresses and phone numbers of the Economic Development Administration in Washington, D.C., Regional and Field Offices and Economic Development Representatives, refer to EDA’s annual Fiscal Year (FY) Notice of Funding Availability (NOFA).

PART 301—GENERAL ELIGIBILITY AND GRANT RATE REQUIREMENTS

Sec.

301.1 Applicants.

301.2 Area eligibility.

301.3 Strategy required.

301.4 Grant rates.


SOURCE: 64 FR 5353, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 301.1 Applicants.

(a) Eligible applicants are defined in § 300.2 of this chapter.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in parts 307 and 308 of this chapter, a public or private nonprofit organization applicant must include in its application for assistance, a resolution passed by, or a letter signed by, an authorized representative of a general purpose political subdivision of a State or an Indian tribe, acknowledging that the applicant is acting in cooperation with officials of the political subdivision or Indian tribe, as applicable.

§ 301.2 Area eligibility.

(a) EDA awards public works and development facilities grants under part 305 and economic adjustment grants under part 308 for projects to enhance economic development in economically distressed areas.

(b) An area is eligible for a project grant under part 305 or 308 if it has one of the following:

(1) An unemployment rate that is, for the most recent 24-month period for which data are available, at least one percent greater than the national average unemployment rate. For example, if the national average unemployment rate is 6 percent, an area is eligible under this provision if it has an unemployment rate of 7 percent.

(2) Per capita income that is, for the most recent period for which data are available, 80 percent or less of the national average per capita income.

(3) A special need, as determined by EDA, arising from actual or threatened severe unemployment or economic adjustment problems resulting from severe short-term or long-term changes in economic conditions, for example:

(ii) Substantial outmigration or population loss;

(iii) Underemployment, that is, employment of workers at less than full time or at less skilled tasks than their training or abilities permit;

(iv) Military base closures or realignments, defense contractor reductions-in-force, or Department of Energy defense-related funding reductions;

(v) Natural or other major disasters or emergencies;

(vi) Extraordinary depletion of natural resources;

(vii) Closure or restructuring of industrial firms, essential to area economies; or

(viii) Destructive impacts of foreign trade.

(c) A non-distressed area [i.e., an area that does not meet the criteria of paragraph (b) of this section] within an Economic Development District is also eligible, provided the project will be of a substantial direct benefit to an area that meets at least one of the criteria of paragraph (b) of this section. A project provides substantial direct benefit if it provides substantial direct benefit to an area that meets at least one of the criteria of paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) Normally an area is defined by geographical/political boundaries, e.g., city, county, Indian reservation. However, a smaller area (without regard to political boundaries) is also eligible even though it may be part of a larger community that overall is experiencing low distress. When the boundaries of the project area differ from established political boundaries, the project area must be of sufficient size appropriate to the proposed project, and the applicant must justify the proposed boundaries in relation to the project’s benefits to the area.

(e) Eligibility is determined at the time that EDA receives an application and is based on the most recent Federal data available for the area where the project will be located or where the substantial direct benefits will be received. If no Federal data are available to determine eligibility, an applicant must submit to EDA the most recent data available through the government of the State in which the area is located, i.e., conducted by or at the direction of the State government. Other data may be submitted, as appropriate, to substantiate eligibility based on special needs, under paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(f) EDA may reject any documentation of eligibility that it determines is inaccurate.

(g) There is no area eligibility requirement for a project grant under part 306 or 307.

(h) EDA describes special needs criteria under paragraph (b)(3) of this section in a NOFA.


§ 301.3 Strategy required.

(a) To be eligible for a project grant under part 305 or 308 of this chapter, the application for assistance must include a CEDS acceptable to EDA. The applicant may, however, incorporate by reference a current strategy previously approved by EDA, as an alternative to including the strategy in the application. (Exception: A strategy is not required when a funding request is for planning assistance, e.g., a strategy grant, under part 308 of this chapter.)
The strategy must be in conformance with CEDS requirements under § 303.3 of this chapter.

(b) EDA will approve as acceptable a strategy that it determines meets the requirements of § 303.3 of this chapter. The strategy may be one developed:
   (1) With EDA assistance,
   (2) Under another Federally supported program, or
   (3) Through a local, regional, or State process.

(c) In determining acceptability of a strategy, EDA will take into consideration the circumstances of the application, so that for instance a strategy accompanying an application for assistance immediately following a natural disaster will require less depth and detail than would be the case in other circumstances.

(d) To be acceptable, a strategy must be approved, within one year prior to the date of application, by the entity developing the strategy or by the applicant. In the case of a strategy approved by the applicant, approval must be by the applicant’s governing body, or in the case of a State, by the governor or the governor’s designee(s).

(e) Before EDA approves a strategy for an area all or partly within the boundaries of an EDD, the EDD organization must be given a 30-day opportunity to review and comment upon such strategy.

§ 301.4 Grant rates.

(a) Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, the amount of the EDA grant may not exceed 50 percent of the cost of the project. Cash or in-kind contributions, fairly evaluated by EDA, including contributions of space, equipment, and services, may provide the non-Federal share of the project cost. In-kind contributions must be eligible project costs and meet applicable Federal cost principles and uniform administrative requirements.

(b) EDA may supplement the Federal share of a grant project where the applicant is able to demonstrate that the non-Federal share that would otherwise be required cannot be provided because of the overall economic situation. It is not necessary for an applicant to prove that it would be impossible to provide a full 50 percent non-Federal share, but it must show circumstances warranting any reduction. In determining whether to provide a Federal share greater than 50 percent for a project, EDA will give due consideration to the applicant’s economic situation and the relative needs of the area. In the case of Indian tribes, EDA may reduce or waive the non-Federal share, and in other cases EDA may reduce the non-Federal share of the cost of the project below 50 percent, in accordance with the following table, showing the maximum Federal grant rate, including the supplement:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Projects</th>
<th>Maximum grant rates (percentage)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Projects of Indian tribes where EDA has made a determination to waive the non-Federal share of the cost of the project.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Projects under Part 308 located in Presidentially-declared disaster areas for which EDA receives an application for assistance under a supplemental appropriation, within 18 months of the date of declaration, and for which the President established a rate of Federal participation, based on the public assistance grant rate of the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) for the disaster, of greater than 80 percent.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Projects of Indian tribes where EDA has made a determination to reduce the non-Federal share of the cost of the project.</td>
<td>Less than 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Projects of States or political subdivisions of States that have exhausted their effective taxing and/or borrowing capacity, or nonprofit organizations that have exhausted their borrowing capacity.</td>
<td>Less than 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Projects under Part 308 located in Presidentially-declared disaster areas for which EDA receives an application for assistance under a supplemental appropriation, within 18 months of the date of declaration.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Projects located in Federally-declared disaster areas, for which EDA receives an application for assistance within 18 months of the date of declaration, when the Assistant Secretary determines that the applicant cannot provide the required non-Federal share because of the disaster’s impact on the economic situation.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) Projects located in eligible areas where:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) The 24-month unemployment rate is at least 225% of the national average or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) The per capita income (PCI) is not more than 50% of the national average</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) Projects located in eligible areas that are not eligible for a higher rate, where:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(c) The table in paragraph (b) of this section does not apply to projects which support the on-going operations of Economic Development Districts or University Centers. Grant rates for those projects are provided in part 306 and subpart B of part 307, of this chapter, respectively.

(d) Projects located in designated Economic Development Districts are eligible for an amount of additional Federal grant assistance not to exceed 10 percent of the estimated cost of the project, provided

1. The project applicant is actively participating in the economic development activities of the district;
2. The project is consistent with the strategy of the district; and
3. The non-Federal share of the project is not less than 20 percent.

(4) The project is not a University Center project under subpart B of part 307, of this chapter; and

(5) The district organization is not itself the sole project applicant. Projects (other than planning projects under part 306 of this chapter) for which the district organization is an applicant or co-applicant are not eligible for the 10 percent increase in assistance.

(e) EDA may make grants to supplement grants awarded in other Federal grant programs.

(1) Supplemental grants under paragraph (e) of this section are only available for projects:

1. Under Federal grant programs that
   A. Provide assistance in the construction or equipping of public works, public service, or development facilities, and
   B. Are designated by EDA as eligible for supplemental EDA grants, and
   ii. Are consistent with a strategy.

(2) EDA’s funds combined with funds from another Federal grant program may be at the maximum EDA grant rate, as set forth above, even if the other Federal program has a lower grant rate. If the other Federal program has a grant rate higher than the maximum EDA grant rate as set forth above, the combination of funds may exceed the EDA rate provided the EDA share does not exceed the EDA rate.

(f) An applicant is eligible for the highest applicable maximum grant rate, as set forth above, in effect between the time EDA invites the application and the time the project is approved. The Federal share of a project receiving EDA grant assistance may be (and often is) less than the maximum grant rate for which the recipient is eligible.

(g) EDA’s NOFA will provide additional criteria to ensure that the level of economic distress of an area, rather than a preference for a geographic area or a specific type of economic distress, is the primary factor in allocating assistance.


PART 302—ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT DISTRICTS; STANDARDS FOR DESIGNATION, MODIFICATION AND TERMINATION

Sec.
302.1 Designation of Economic Development Districts.
302.2 Designation of nonfunded districts.
302.3 District organizations.
302.4 District organization functions and responsibilities.
302.5 Modification of district boundaries.
§ 302.6 Termination and suspension of district designation.

§ 302.7 Eligibility of non-distressed areas.


Source: 64 FR 5355, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 302.1 Designation of Economic Development Districts.

EDA will designate a proposed district as an Economic Development District with the concurrence of the State or States in which the District will be wholly or partially located, when the proposed district meets the following requirements:

(a) It is of sufficient size or population, and contains sufficient resources, to foster economic development on a scale involving more than a single eligible area;

(b) It has an EDA approved strategy which meets CEDS requirements under § 303.3 of this chapter.

(c) It contains at least one area, eligible for assistance under § 301.2, that has been identified in an approved strategy;

(d) At least a majority of the counties, or other areas as determined by EDA, within the proposed district boundaries have submitted documentation of their commitment to support the economic development activities of the district;

(e) A district organization has been established in the proposed district which meets the requirements of § 302.4; and

(f) The proposed district organization requests such designation.


§ 302.2 Designation of nonfunded districts.

The continuing designation of any Economic Development District is subject to the criteria and organization requirements of this part whether or not the Economic Development District organization receives any EDA financial assistance.

§ 302.3 District organizations.

(a) The district shall be organized in one of the following ways:

(1) As a public organization through an intergovernmental agreement for the joint exercise of local government powers; or

(2) As a public organization established under State enabling legislation for the creation of multi-jurisdictional area wide planning organizations; or

(3) As a non-profit organization incorporated under the laws of the State in which it is located.

(b) Each district organization must meet EDA requirements concerning membership composition [§ 302.3(c)], the maintenance of adequate staff support to perform its economic development functions [§ 302.3(d)], and its authorities and responsibilities for carrying out economic development functions [§ 302.4]. Such requirements must also be met by the board of directors (or other governing body of the organization) as a whole.

(c) The district organization shall demonstrate that its governing body meets all of the following requirements:

(1) It is broadly representative of the principal economic interests of the district area including the interests of its minority and low-income populations;

(2) There is at least a simple majority of its membership who are elected officials and/or employees of a general purpose unit of local government who have been appointed to represent the government; and

(3) At least 20 percent of its membership who are private citizens, i.e., neither elected officials of a general purpose unit of local government nor employees of such a government who have been appointed to represent that government.

(d) The district organization shall be assisted by a professional staff drawn from qualified persons in economic development, planning or related disciplines. EDA may provide planning grants to Economic Development Districts to employ professional staff in accordance with part 306 of this chapter.

(e) The governing bodies of district organizations shall provide access for persons who are not members to make their views known concerning ongoing
and proposed district activities in accordance with the following requirements:

(1) The economic development district organization must hold meetings open to the public at least once a year and shall also publish the date and agenda of the meeting enough in advance to allow the public a reasonable time to prepare to participate effectively.

(2) The district organization shall adopt a system of parliamentary procedures to assure that board members and others have access to and an effective opportunity to participate in the affairs of the district.

(3) Information should be provided sufficiently in advance of public decisions to give the public adequate opportunity to review and react to proposals. District organizations should seek to relate technical data and other material to the public so they may understand the impact of public programs, available options and alternative decisions.

§ 302.4 District organization functions and responsibilities.

(a) All Economic Development District organizations are responsible for seeing that the following are provided on a continuing basis, consistent with the requirements of § 302.3:

(1) Organizational actions, including:
   (i) Arranging the legal form of organization which will be used;
   (ii) Arranging for the membership of the governing body to meet § 302.3 requirements;
   (iii) Recruiting staff to carry out the economic development functions;
   (iv) Establishing a management system;
   (v) The inclusion of private citizens who are not officials of or employees appointed by the officials of a general purpose unit of local government;
   (vi) Contracting for services to carry out district functions;
   (vii) Establishing and directing activities of economic development subcommittees; and
   (viii) Submitting reports as determined by EDA to comply with civil rights requirements under part 317 of this chapter.

(2) Actions to develop and maintain the required district strategy, and any subsequent supplements or revisions, including:
   (i) Preparing the analytic, strategic and implementation components of the strategy;
   (ii) Adopting the strategy by formal action of the Economic Development District governing board;
   (iii) Submitting the strategy, any supplements or revisions and annual reports for reviews by appropriate governmental bodies and interested organized groups, and attaching dissenting opinions and comments received; and
   (iv) Submitting to EDA an approvable strategy.

(b) District organizations receiving EDA financial assistance for the development and implementation of Comprehensive Economic Development Strategies must also:

(1) Coordinate and implement economic development activities in the district, including:
   (i) Assisting other eligible units within the district to apply for grant assistance for economic development purposes;
   (ii) Carrying out economic development related research, planning, implementation and advisory functions as are necessary to the development and implementation of the strategy;
   (iii) Coordinate and implement the strategy with other local, State, Federal and private organizations (including minority organizations);
   (iv) Carry out the annual strategy for implementation; and
   (v) Comply with the requirements of part 303 of this chapter.


§ 302.5 Modification of district boundaries.

EDA, at the request of a district and with concurrence of the State or States affected (unless such concurrence is waived by the Assistant Secretary), may modify the boundaries of a district, if it determines that such modification will contribute to a more effective program for economic development.
§ 302.6 Termination and suspension of district designation.

EDA may, upon 60 days prior written notice to the district organization, member counties or other areas as determined by EDA, and each affected State, terminate the designation status of an Economic Development District:

(a) When the district no longer meets the standards for designation as set forth above;

(b) When a district has not maintained a currently approved strategy in accordance with part 303 of this chapter; or

(c) When a district has requested termination.


§ 302.7 Eligibility of non-distressed areas.

Areas in districts which are not themselves eligible for assistance under parts 305 or 308 may be eligible, as provided in §301.2(c).

PART 303—PLANNING PROCESS AND STRATEGIES FOR DISTRICT AND OTHER PLANNING ORGANIZATIONS SUPPORTED BY EDA

Sec.
303.1 Definitions, purpose and scope.
303.2 Planning process.
303.3 Requirements for a strategy.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 3211; Department of Commerce Organization Order 10-4.

SOURCE: 64 FR 5356, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 303.1 Definitions, purpose and scope.

(a) As used in this part 303. (1) Planning organization means an Economic Development District organization, Indian tribe, or other recipient of an EDA grant under part 306 of this chapter which grant is awarded in whole or in part to develop, update, or replace a CEDS, and

(2) Strategy committee means that committee or other entity identified by the planning organization as responsible for developing, updating, or replacing a strategy.

(b) This part describes the planning process of and requirements for strategies developed and implemented by planning organizations supported by EDA. Though the strategy requirements are the same under all EDA programs which call for a strategy, the planning process and reporting and updating requirements for EDA supported planning organizations are more stringent.


§ 303.2 Planning process.

(a) The strategy committee must be inclusive and representative of the main economic interests of the area covered by the strategy. Such interests include public officials, community leaders, private individuals, business leaders, labor groups, minorities, and others who can contribute to and benefit from improved economic development in the area covered.

(b) The planning organization must support the strategy committee with a staff skilled in economic planning or related fields.

(c) The planning organization must conduct an initial and continuous study and analysis of the opportunities for economic development and of problems contributing to economic and related distress in the area covered, such as, for example, unemployment, underemployment, outmigration, or low per capita income, and possible solutions to such problems.

(d) Planning organizations covered by this part 303 must submit an initial strategy to EDA in compliance with the requirements of §303.3, as determined by EDA. Each year thereafter, the planning organization must submit an annual strategy report, acceptable to EDA.

(e) A new or revised strategy is required at least every five years, or sooner if EDA or the planning organization determines that the strategy is inadequate due to changed circumstances. Each strategy must be available for review and comment by appropriate government bodies and interest groups in the area covered. Strategies submitted by Districts require a 30 day opportunity for review and comment by the Governor or Governors, or designee(s), of the State or
§ 303.3 Requirements for a strategy.

A strategy must be the result of a continuing economic development planning process, developed with broad-based and diverse community participation, and contain the following:

(a) An analysis of economic and community development problems and opportunities including incorporation of any relevant material or suggestions from other government sponsored or supported plans;

(b) Background and history of the economic development situation of the area covered, with a discussion of the economy, including as appropriate, geography, population, labor force, resources, infrastructure, transportation systems, and the environment;

(c) A discussion of community participation in the planning efforts;

(d) A section setting forth goals and objectives for taking advantage of the opportunities of and solving the economic development problems of the area serviced;

(e) A plan of action, including suggested projects to implement objectives and goals set forth in the strategy; and

(f) Performance measures that will be used to evaluate whether and to what extent goals and objectives have been or are being met.

resubmission when the deficiencies are cured; or

(iii) EDA denies the proposal for specifically stated reasons.

(b) National technical assistance, training, research, or evaluation projects. If you are or represent a party eligible to be an applicant, and are interested in a national technical assistance, training, research, or evaluation project under PWEDA, you should make initial contact with EDA in Washington, D.C., at locations identified in the NOFA, for information and assistance concerning proposals and to obtain program information, including a copy of the current NOFA, and OMB approved proposal form. After submission of the proposal to the appropriate EDA Washington, D.C. office, generally, three or more technically knowledgeable EDA officials will review the proposal for relevance and quality.

(1) If EDA determines that the proposal is acceptable under §304.2, program specific sections of this chapter, and the NOFA, if applicable, EDA may by letter invite the submitter to provide an application with a more detailed and comprehensive project narrative.

(2) If EDA determines that the proposal is not acceptable because of specified deficiencies, EDA will so notify the submitter in writing in a timely manner.

(c) Additional criteria, or priority consideration factors for assistance, may be set forth in a NOFA.

(d) EDA expects that applications will generally be submitted within 30 days after receipt of an invitation letter. EDA’s invitation to submit an application does not assure EDA funding.


§304.2 How EDA evaluates proposals and applications for projects funded under PWEDA.

(a) General proposal and application evaluation criteria for projects funded under PWEDA are as follows: EDA will screen all proposals/applications for conformance to statutory and regulatory requirements, the reasonableness of the budget presented, and the following criteria:

(1) The relative severity of the economic problem of the area,
(2) The quality of the scope of work proposed to address the problem,
(3) The merits of the activity(ies) for which funding is requested, and
(4) The ability of the prospective applicant to carry out the proposed activity(ies) successfully.

(b) EDA will also review applications for conformance with any additional program specific evaluation criteria as stated in applicable sections of these rules or the NOFA.

(c) The NOFA may identify special areas of interest or priority consideration for the period of such NOFA.

§ 305.1 Purpose and scope.

The purpose of Public Works and Development Facilities grants is to help the Nation’s distressed communities revitalize and expand their physical and economic infrastructure and thereby provide support for the creation or retention of jobs for area residents by helping eligible recipients with their efforts to promote the economic development of distressed areas. The primary focus is on the creation of new, or the retention of existing, long-term private sector job opportunities in communities experiencing significant economic distress as evidenced by high unemployment, low income, or a special need arising from actual or threatened severe unemployment or severe changes in local economic conditions. These grants are intended to help communities achieve sustainable economic development by developing and expanding new and existing public works and other infrastructure facilities that will help generate long-term jobs and economic growth, improve economic conditions or otherwise enhance and promote the economic recovery of the area.

§ 305.2 Criteria.

(a) A grant may be made under part 305 for the following purposes:

(1) For the acquisition or development of land and improvements for use for a public works, public service or other type of development facility; or

(2) For the acquisition, design and engineering, construction, alteration, expansion, or improvement of such a facility, including related machinery and equipment.

(b) A grant may be made under part 305 only when:

(1) The project for which the grant is applied for will, directly or indirectly—

(i) Improve the opportunities, in the area where the project is or will be located, for the successful establishment or expansion of industrial or commercial plants or facilities;

(ii) Assist in the creation of additional long-term employment opportunities in the area; or

(iii) Primarily benefit the long-term unemployed and members of low-income families;

(2) The project for which the grant is applied for will fulfill a pressing need of the area, or a part of the area, in which the project is or will be located; and

(3) The area for which the project is to be carried out has a strategy and the project is consistent with the strategy.

(c) Maximum assistance for each State. Not more than 15 percent of the annual appropriations available to carry out this part may be expended in any one State.

§ 305.3 Application requirements.

Each application for a grant under part 305 must:

(a) Include evidence of area and applicant eligibility;

(b) Include, or incorporate by reference, a strategy, as provided in §301.3;

(c) Identify the sources of the other funds, both eligible Federal and non-Federal, that will make up the balance of the proposed project’s financing, including any private sources of financing. The application must show that such other funds are committed to the project and will be available as needed. The local share must not be encumbered in any way that would preclude its use consistent with the requirements of the grant; and

(d) Explain how the proposed project meets the criteria of §305.2.

§ 305.4 Selection and evaluation.

(a) Projects will be selected in accordance with the application evaluation criteria set forth in §304.2 of this chapter.

(b) In addition to the evaluation criteria set forth in part 304 of this chapter, project selection and evaluation will be made on the basis of whether, and to what extent, the proposed project will:

(1) Assist in creating new or retaining existing private sector jobs and assist in the creation of additional long-
term employment opportunities rather than merely transferring jobs from one area of the country to another;
(2) Be supported by significant private sector investment;
(3) Leverage or be a catalyst for the effective use of private, local government, State or other Federal funding that is available;
(4) Likely be started and completed in a timely fashion; and
(5) If the project is located in an area with a stable economy and low distress, provide employment opportunities for residents of nearby areas of high distress.

Subpart B—Requirements for Approved Projects

§ 305.5 Pilot program.
(a) EDA’s Regional Offices may, upon approval of the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Program Operations, institute pilot programs for post-approval construction monitoring, thereby continuing EDA’s efforts to streamline and simplify procedures for monitoring approved EDA construction projects. The knowledge and efficiencies gained from the pilot programs will be evaluated and used to improve and revise EDA’s post-approval project management requirements and procedures.
(b) As part of a pilot program, the procedures developed by a Regional Office may vary from those listed in this subpart B. No additional requirements are imposed by pilot program procedures. A Regional Office will provide guidelines, in its version of the “Requirements for Approved Projects,” to all recipients of grants for construction projects monitored by the Office. The recipient may not be required to submit to EDA certain documentation at any set time, but will be required to maintain all documentation supporting any and all certifications submitted to the Regional Office, for the period of time provided in 15 CFR part 14 or 24, as appropriate.

§ 305.6 Project management conference.
After the EDA financial assistance award has been accepted by the recipient, EDA may schedule a planning conference with the recipient’s representatives to explain the post-approval requirements for administration of the EDA assisted project.

[64 FR 69675, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.7 Selection of the Architect/Engineer.
Guidelines for the selection of the Architect/Engineer (A/E), services to be performed by the A/E, contract provisions for those services and eligible fees for the A/E are as follows:
(a) Selection of the A/E may be by sealed bids using formal advertising or by competitive proposal procedures subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.
(b) The A/E agreement shall provide for all services required by the recipient for the engineering feasibility, design and contract administration of the proposed project. Appropriate standards or guides developed by such professional organizations as the American Consulting Engineers Council, American Society of Civil Engineers, National Society of Professional Engineers, and/or the American Institute of Architects may be used where the grantee does not have standard procurement/contract documents.
(c) Exhibit A–1, Checklist for Architect/Engineer Services, in the EDA publication, Requirements for Approved Construction Projects, displayed at EDA’s Web Site, http://www.doc.gov/eda (a copy of this publication is available from EDA and a copy will be furnished to an award recipient with the Offer of Financial Assistance), lists the contract provisions which EDA recommends for the A/E contract. The A/E agreement must be furnished to EDA in order for the allowability of the costs of A/E services to be determined.
(d) Eligible project costs may include, but not be limited to, costs for A/E fees, resident inspection, test borings, and the testing of materials provided under an agreement or contract with the recipient. The A/E fees should
§ 305.8 Project phasing.

The recipient is strongly urged to award all contracts for construction at one time.

(a) Where compelling reasons justify phasing the project, the recipient must secure the approval of EDA for phasing prior to advertising any portion for bid.

(b) The recipient’s request for approval of phasing must include valid reasons justifying the request and a statement from the recipient that it can, and will, fund any overrun that arises in the later phases.

(c) Normally, EDA will not disburse funds until all construction contracts have been awarded, (an exception is the development of an underground source of water when required to determine the availability of an adequate source of water supply in terms of both quality and quantity as described in the grant application).

(d) Disbursement of grant funds by phases must be approved by EDA. Such approvals will be given only if the recipient can demonstrate that a severe hardship will result if such approval is not given and there are compelling reasons why all phases cannot be contracted for at the same time.

(e) The recipient must be capable of paying incurred costs prior to the first disbursement of EDA grant funds.

[64 FR 69875, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.9 Recipient furnished equipment and materials.

The recipient may wish to incorporate into the project equipment and/or materials which it will secure through its own efforts.

(a) It is the responsibility of the recipient to assure that such equipment and/or materials are adequate for the proposed use.

(b) The use of such equipment and materials must be approved by EDA to be eligible for EDA financial participation. The recipient shall be required to submit with its request for approval either a paid invoice or current quotes from not less than three suppliers who normally distribute such equipment and/or materials. EDA may require that major equipment items be subject to a lien in favor of EDA and may also require a statement from the Recipient regarding expected useful life and salvage value.

(c) The recipient must be prepared to show that the cost claimed for such equipment and/or materials is competitive with local market costs.

(d) Acquisitions of recipient furnished equipment and/or materials under this section is subject to the requirements of 15 CFR part 24 or 15 CFR part 14.

[64 FR 69875, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.10 Construction Management services.

Construction Management is defined as the services of a firm with competent and experienced staff to act as the recipient’s agent to perform all or part of project administration. EDA will not normally approve the use of a Construction Management firm for projects costing less than $5 million. EDA will participate in such cost only if EDA approves the contract for such services.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.11 Design/Build method of construction.

EDA discourages the use of the same entity to both design and to build EDA assisted facilities. If the recipient desires to use such a method, its use must be justified and EDA must approve the contract. The procurement of, and the compensation to, the designer/builder will be subject to the same rules as for the procurement of construction services.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.12 Advertising for bids.

In the absence of State or local law to the contrary, the advertisement for bids for construction projects should appear in publications of general circulation a minimum of four times within a 30-day period prior to the opening of bids. Additional circulation of the invitation for bids is encouraged if it is needed to obtain the coverage necessary to secure competitive bids.
Generally, a minimum of 30 days should be allowed for submission of bids.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.13 Bid overrun.

If at the construction contract bid opening the lowest responsive bid less deductive alternates, if any, exceeds the funds available for construction, the recipient may reject all bids or augment the funds available in an amount sufficient to enable the award to be made to the low bidder. If available, the recipient may take deductive alternates in the order given in the Invitation for Bids until at least one of the responsive bids less deductive alternates results in a price within the funds announced as available prior to the bid opening. The award then may be made to that bidder. Additional information on the procedures to be followed is in the EDA publication, Requirements for Approved Construction Projects.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.14 Bid underrun.

If at the construction contract bid opening, the lowest responsive bid is less than the funds available for construction, EDA must be notified immediately to determine whether any unneeded grant funds should be deobligated.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.15 Contract award.

EDA must concur in the award of all necessary contracts for design and construction of the EDA assisted facility in order for the cost to be eligible for EDA reimbursement. Pending EDA approval of the construction contract(s), the recipient may issue the notice to proceed permitting the work to go forward. If the work does go forward prior to EDA approval, the recipient will be proceeding at its own risk pending EDA review and concurrence. The EDA regional office will advise the recipient of the documents that are required to obtain EDA approval.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.16 Construction progress schedule.

If requested by EDA, the recipient will secure from the contractor or A/E and furnish a copy to EDA of the estimated construction progress chart and a schedule of amounts for contract payments. The construction progress chart should be updated monthly by the recipient, the A/E or the contractor, and an up-to-date copy furnished to EDA quarterly throughout the construction of the project.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.17 Project sign.

The recipient shall be responsible for the construction, erection, and maintenance in good condition throughout the construction period, of a sign or signs, (recommended specifications for the sign are included as an exhibit to the EDA publication, Requirements for Approved Construction Projects) at the project site in a conspicuous place indicating that the Federal government is participating in the project. EDA may require more than one sign if the project’s location so warrants. The recipient should confer with the EDA regional office for suggestions on where the sign(s) should be located.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.18 Occupancy prior to completion.

If the project or any part of it is to be occupied or used prior to the project’s acceptance from the contractor, the recipient must notify EDA of the intent to occupy or use the facility and the effective date of the occupancy or use, secure the written consent of the contractor; secure an endorsement from the insurance carrier and consent of the surety company permitting occupancy or use during the period of construction; secure permanent fire and extended coverage insurance and, when required, secure a permit to occupy the facility from the appropriate authority, e.g. the local building inspector.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]
§ 305.19 Contract change orders.

After construction contracts have been executed, it may become necessary to alter them. This requires a formal contract change order, issued by the recipient and accepted by the contractor.

(a) All contract change orders must be concurred in by EDA even if the recipient is to pay for all additional costs resulting from the change or the contract price is to be reduced.

(b) The work on the project may continue pending EDA review and concurrence in the change order but the recipient should be aware that all such work will be at the recipient’s risk as to whether the cost for the work will be an eligible project cost for EDA participation until EDA concurrence is received.

(c) EDA will not approve financial participation in change orders that are solely for the purpose of using excess funds resulting from an underrun of one or more of the items in the approved project budget.

(d) When a change order is for a project funded with one-year funds, EDA approval of such change order must be based on a finding by EDA that the work called for in the change order is within the project scope and is required for satisfactory operation or functioning of the project.


§ 305.20 Project development time schedule.

The recipient is responsible for expeditiously prosecuting the implementation of the project in accordance with the project development time schedule contained in the EDA grant award. As soon as the recipient becomes aware that it will not be possible to meet the time schedule, it must notify the EDA Regional Office.

[64 FR 69876, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.21 Controlling budget.

The tabulation of estimated project costs contained in the EDA grant award is the controlling budget for the project.

(a) Budget line item revisions, including the addition of a new line item, which do not involve a change of scope may be approved by EDA if no new EDA funds are involved; another budget line item (preferably the contingency line item, although this is not mandatory) has funds which can be used without significantly adversely affecting the object of that line item; and unless the line item that is proposed to be supplemented is supplemented, the activity associated with that line item cannot be completed.

(b) The recipient shall notify EDA of any proposed transfer of funds from one budget line item to another. The recipient’s attention is called to the fact that the addition of a new line item to the approved budget may involve an impermissible change of scope and, therefore, may result in such costs being excluded from EDA’s participation. Accordingly, the recipient is advised to discuss the need to add a new line item to the approved budget with EDA regional office staff before any costs are incurred under such new line item.

[64 FR 69877, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.22 Services performed by the recipient’s own forces.

The recipient may wish to have a portion or all of the design, construction, inspection, legal services or other work and/or services in connection with the project performed by personnel who are employed by the recipient either full or part time (in-house). Due to the difficulty in monitoring in-house construction and the limited EDA staff available to perform the monitoring, in-house construction is discouraged.

(a) If EDA approves the use of the recipient’s in-house forces to construct all or part of the EDA assisted project and the in-house forces are to be augmented by personnel hired specifically for the EDA assisted project, the hourly wages to be paid to such personnel shall be the same as the hourly wages paid to full time personnel of the recipient doing the same or similar work.

If the nature of the work is not similar and/or there is not an established wage scale, the prevailing state or county hourly wage for public employees shall be obtained from the appropriate state or county agency and used for the
Economic Development Administration, Commerce  § 305.24

newly established position. However, non-profit recipients must pay all personnel employed for the construction of the EDA assisted project the prevailing hourly wages for the area as established by the U.S. Department of Labor.

(b) The use of in-house forces for construction may be approved by EDA if:

(1) The recipient has a special skill required for the construction of the project, e.g., construction of unique Indian structures, or

(2) The recipient has made all reasonable efforts to obtain a contractor but has failed to do so because of uncontrollable factors such as the remoteness of the project site or an overabundance of construction work in the project area, or

(3) Substantial cost savings can be demonstrated.

[64 FR 69877, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.23 Public Works projects for design and engineering work.

In general, EDA prefers to award a Public Works grant that includes all of the costs required for the successful completion of a project, including the design and engineering work.

(a) When the purpose of the Public Works project is to accomplish only the design and engineering work for a proposed future construction project, EDA may award a grant for the design and engineering work with the understanding that EDA cannot make a commitment against a future fiscal year appropriation to fund the proposed construction project.

(b) The purpose of the EDA assisted project for design and engineering work is to produce all of the documents required for the construction of the proposed future project in a format and in sufficient quantity to permit a construction contract to be advertised and awarded soon after the project’s construction financing has been arranged. The EDA document, Requirements for Approved Construction Projects, should be used to ensure that the proposed construction project meets all applicable Federal requirements.

(c) Design and engineering projects will not generally be considered unless the nature of the proposed project to be considered is complex or environmentally sensitive and EDA makes a determination that it is in the best interest of the Government to award a separate grant for design and engineering.

(d) EDA requires the design/engineering contract to be submitted to and approved by EDA before any EDA grant funds can be disbursed.

[64 FR 69877, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.24 Disbursements of funds for grants.

(a) Disbursements of funds for construction grants are generally made on a reimbursable basis on request of the recipient for reimbursement. Disbursements may be made only:

(1) After execution of all contracts required for the completion of the project. This condition may be waived by EDA if the grantee can demonstrate that enforcement of the condition would place an undue burden on it;

(2) For itemized and certified eligible costs incurred, as substantiated by such documentary evidence as EDA may require;

(3) On the basis of the work accomplished and the percentage of EDA participation, but in no event for more than the total sum stated in the financial assistance award accepted by the grantee;

(4) Upon such evidence as EDA may require that grantee’s proportionate share of funds not yet expended is on deposit;

(5) After a determination by EDA that all applicable terms and conditions of the grant have been met; and

(6) After meeting such other requirements as EDA may establish in accordance with other Federal laws, rules and regulations.

(b) Disbursements are generally made in installments, based upon grantee’s actual rate of disbursement in accordance with the grant rate.

(c) Advances of funds are allowable when disbursement on a reimbursable basis would impose an undue burden, as determined by EDA, upon the recipient.

§ 305.25 Final inspection.

A final inspection will be scheduled by the recipient and appropriate notification given to EDA, when the project has been completed and all deficiencies have been corrected. EDA personnel may attend and participate in the final inspection and, in any event, EDA must be advised of the outcome of such final inspection and the recipient’s acceptance of the work.

[64 FR 69877, Dec. 14, 1999]

§ 305.26 Reports.

Financial and performance reports requirements will be specified in the Special Award Conditions of the grant. Construction progress schedule reports will be required in §305.16.

[64 FR 69877, Dec. 14, 1999]

PART 306—PLANNING ASSISTANCE

Sec.
306.1 Purpose and scope.
306.2 Application evaluation criteria.
306.3 Award requirements.
306.4 Post-approval requirements.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 3211; Department of Commerce Organization Order 10-4.

SOURCE: 64 FR 5427, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

§ 306.1 Purpose and scope.

The primary objective of planning assistance is to provide funding for administrative expenses to support the formulation and implementation of economic development planning programs and for the conduct of planning activities designed to create and retain permanent jobs and increase incomes, particularly for the unemployed and underemployed in the nation’s most economically distressed areas. EDA’s planning assistance is for partnership planning grants with Districts, Indian Tribes and other eligible applicants, as well as for short term grants to eligible grantees. Planning activities supported by these funds must be part of a continuous process involving the active participation of public officials and private citizens, and include the following:

(a) Analyzing local economies;
(b) Defining economic development goals;
(c) Determining project opportunities; and
(d) Formulating and implementing an economic development program that includes systematic efforts to reduce unemployment and increase incomes.


§ 306.2 Application evaluation criteria.

(a) EDA uses the application evaluation criteria set forth in part 304 of this chapter. In addition, EDA evaluates applications on the following:

(1) Quality of the proposed work program;
(2) Management and staff capacity and qualifications of the applicant organization; and
(3) Extent of broad-based representation including for example, involvement of the local civic, business, leadership, labor, minority, and other community interests in the applicant’s economic development activities.

(b) Previously funded grantees, in addition to the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, will also be evaluated on the basis of the quality of their past performance.

§ 306.3 Award requirements.

(a) Planning assistance shall be used in conjunction with any other available Federal planning assistance to ensure adequate and effective planning and economical use of funds.

(b) Grant rate: (1) The maximum Federal grant rate for a project under this part for recipients other than Economic Development Districts is 50 percent, except as supplemented as provided in §301.4(b) of this chapter.

(2) The maximum Federal grant rate for a project under this part for a district is:

(i) 50 percent, or
(ii) 75 percent, if the project meets the criteria of paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(3) A district project is eligible for a supplemental grant increasing the Federal share up to and including 75 percent when the applicant is able to demonstrate that:
(i) The project is intended to address problems arising from actual or threatened high unemployment, low per capita income, or a special need that qualifies an area for eligibility under §301.2(b) of this chapter.

(ii) The project is in significant part devoted to activities addressing the needs of the most economically distressed parts of the total area served by the applicant.

(iii) The applicant is uniquely qualified to address the major causes of actual or threatened economic distress in the area served by the applicant, and

(iv) The applicant cannot provide the non-Federal share otherwise required because in the overall economic situation there is a lack of available non-Federal share due, for instance, to the pressing demand for its use elsewhere.

(4) A project receiving a supplemental grant increasing the Federal share under paragraph (b)(3) of this section is not eligible for additional Federal grant assistance under §301.4(d) of this chapter, i.e., the 10 percent incentive increase for certain projects in districts.

(c) As a condition of the receipt of assistance by a State under this part 306:

(1) The State must have or develop a CEDS;

(2) Any State plan developed with such assistance must be developed cooperatively by the State, political subdivisions of the State, and the economic development districts located wholly or partially within the State;

(3) Any overall State economic development planning assisted under this section shall be a part of a comprehensive planning process that shall consider the provision of public works to:

(i) Promote economic development and opportunity,

(ii) Foster effective transportation access,

(iii) Enhance and protect the environment, and

(iv) Balance resources through the sound management of physical development;

(4) Upon completion of the State plan, the State must:

(i) Certify to EDA that, in the development of the State plan, local and economic development district plans were considered and, to the maximum extent practicable, the State plan is consistent with the local and economic development district plans; and

(ii) Identify any inconsistencies between the State plan and the local and economic development district plans and provide a justification for each inconsistency; and

(5) The State must submit to EDA an annual report on the planning process so assisted.


§ 306.4 Post-approval requirements.

Financial, performance and progress reports, and project products will be as specified in the Special Award Conditions of the grant.

[64 FR 5427, Feb. 3, 1999]

PART 307—LOCAL TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE, UNIVERSITY CENTER TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE, NATIONAL TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE, TRAINING, RESEARCH, AND EVALUATION

Subpart A—Local Technical Assistance

Sec.
307.1 Purpose and scope.
307.2 Application evaluation criteria.
307.3 Award and grant rate requirements.

Subpart B—University Center Program

307.4 Post-approval requirements.
307.5 Purpose and scope.
307.6 Application evaluation criteria.
307.7 Award and grant rate requirements.
307.8 Post-approval requirements.

Subpart C—National Technical Assistance, Training, Research, and Evaluation

307.9 Purpose and scope.
307.10 Application evaluation criteria.
307.11 Award and grant rate requirements.
307.12 Post-approval requirements.


SOURCE: 64 FR 5427, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.
§ 307.1 Purpose and scope.

Local Technical Assistance projects are intended to:

(a) Determine the causes of excessive unemployment, underemployment, low per capita income, or high poverty rates in areas and regions of the Nation;

(b) Assist in formulating and implementing new economic development tools, models, and innovative techniques that will raise employment and income levels; and

(c) Assist distressed communities in formulating and implementing new economic development programs to increase the technology and human capacity of the communities. Local Technical Assistance funds may not be used to start or expand a private business.

§ 307.2 Application evaluation criteria.

EDA selects local technical assistance projects for grant awards according to the general application evaluation criteria set forth in part 304 of this chapter and the extent, as appropriate, the project:

(a) Strengthens the local capacity to undertake and promote effective economic development programs targeted to people and areas of distress;

(b) Benefits distressed areas;

(c) Helps to diversify distressed economies;

(d) Demonstrates innovative approaches to stimulating economic development in distressed areas; and

(e) Is consistent with the CEDS or other strategy accepted by EDA for the area in which the project is located.


§ 307.3 Award and grant rate requirements.

(a) EDA will provide assistance for the period of time required to complete the project scope of work, generally not to exceed twelve months.

(b) If the project is regional in scope, EDA may determine that the requirement that public or private nonprofit organizations must act in cooperation with officials of a political subdivision of a State is satisfied by the nature of the project;

(c) Grant rate:

(1) The maximum Federal grant rate for a project under this subpart is:

(i) 50 percent, except as supplemented as provided in §301.4(b); or

(ii) Up to and including 100 percent, if the project is not feasible without, and merits, a reduction or waiver of the non-Federal share required under the rate provided in §301.4(b).

(2) A project is eligible for a supplemental grant increasing the Federal share up to and including 100 percent when the applicant is able to demonstrate that:

(i) It cannot provide the non-Federal share otherwise required because in the overall economic situation there is a lack of available non-Federal share due, for instance, to the pressing demand for its use elsewhere;

(ii) The project is addressing major causes of distress in the service area and requires the unique characteristics of the applicant, which will not participate in the program if it must provide all or part of a 50 percent non-Federal share; or

(iii) The project is for the benefit of local, State, regional, or national economic development efforts, and will be of no or only incidental benefit to the recipient.

(3) A project receiving a supplemental grant increasing the Federal share under paragraph (c)(2) of this section is not eligible for additional Federal grant assistance under §301.4(d) of this chapter, i.e., the 10 percent incentive increase for certain projects in districts.

(4) A local technical assistance project is eligible for a Federal grant rate of more than 75 percent, up to 100 percent, only if approved by the Assistant Secretary.


Subpart B—University Center Program

§ 307.4 Post-approval requirements.

Financial reports, progress reports, and project products will be specified
§ 307.5 Purpose and scope.

The University Center technical assistance program is designed to help improve the economies of distressed areas. It helps institutions of higher education (or other applicants) use their own and other resources to address the economic development problems and opportunities of areas serviced.

§ 307.6 Application evaluation criteria.

EDA selects University Center projects for grant awards according to the general application evaluation criteria set forth in part 304 of this chapter and the extent, as appropriate, the project:

(a) Has the commitment of the highest management levels of the sponsoring institution;

(b) Provides evidence of adequate non-Federal financial support, either from the sponsoring institution or other sources;

(c) Outlines activities consistent with the expertise of the proposed staff, the academic programs, and other resources available within the sponsoring institution;

(d) Documents past experience of the sponsoring institution in operating technical assistance programs; and

(e) Balances the geographic distribution of University Centers across the country. Only the Assistant Secretary has the authority to approve the selection for grant assistance of a University Center that has not received University Center assistance for the previous year.

§ 307.7 Award and grant rate requirements.

(a) EDA will provide assistance for the period of time required to complete the project scope of work, generally not to exceed twelve months.

(b) If the project is regional in scope, EDA may determine that the requirement that public or private nonprofit organizations must act in cooperation with officials of a political subdivision of a State is satisfied by the nature of the project;

(c) Grant rate:

(i) The maximum Federal grant rate for a project under this subpart is:

(ii) 75 percent, if the project is not feasible without, and merits, a reduction or waiver of the non-Federal share.

(ii) 75 percent, if the project is not feasible without, and merits, a reduction or waiver of the non-Federal share.

(2) A project is eligible for a supplemental grant increasing the Federal share up to and including 75 percent when the applicant is able to demonstrate that:

(i) It cannot provide the non-Federal share otherwise required because in the overall economic situation there is a lack of available non-Federal share due, for instance, to the pressing demand for its use elsewhere;

(ii) The project is addressing major causes of distress in the area serviced and requires the unique characteristics of the applicant, which will not participate in the program if it must provide all or part of a 50 percent non-Federal share; or

(iii) The project is for the benefit of local, State, regional, or national economic development efforts, and will be of no or only incidental benefit to the recipient.

(3) A project awarded under this subpart is not eligible for additional Federal grant assistance under the table in §301.4(b) or the provisions of §301.4(d) of this chapter, i.e., the 10 percent incentive increase for certain projects in districts.

(d) Direct costs: At least 80 percent of EDA funding must be allocated to direct costs of program delivery.

§ 307.8 Post-approval requirements.

Financial reports, progress reports, and project products will be specified in the special award conditions of the grant or cooperative agreement.
Subpart C—National Technical Assistance, Training, Research, and Evaluation

§ 307.9 Purpose and scope.

(a) The purposes of National Technical Assistance, Training, Research, and Evaluation projects are:

1. To determine the causes of excessive unemployment, underemployment, outmigration or other problems indicating economic distress in areas and regions of the Nation;

2. To assist in formulating and implementing new economic development tools and national, State, and local programs that will raise employment and income levels and otherwise produce solutions to problems resulting from the above conditions;

3. To evaluate the effectiveness and economic impact of programs, projects, and techniques used to alleviate economic distress and promote economic development, and

4. To assist in disseminating information about effective programs, projects and techniques that alleviate economic distress and promote economic development.

(b) EDA may during the course of the year, identify specific national technical assistance, training, research or evaluation projects it wishes to have conducted. Ordinarily, EDA specifies these projects in a NOFA, which also provides the appropriate point of contact and address.

(c) National technical assistance, research, training, and evaluation funds may not be used to start or expand a private business.

§ 307.10 Application evaluation criteria.

EDA selects projects for national technical assistance, training, research or evaluation grant awards according to the general application evaluation criteria set forth in part 304 of this chapter and the extent, as appropriate, the project:

(a) Does not depend upon further EDA or other Federal funding assistance to achieve results;

(b) Strengthens the capability of local, State, or national organizations and institutions, including nonprofit economic development groups, to undertake and promote effective economic development programs targeted to people and areas of distress;

(c) Benefits severely distressed areas;

(d) Helps to diversify distressed economies; and

(e) Demonstrates innovative approaches to stimulating economic development in distressed areas.

§ 307.11 Award and grant rate requirements.

(a) EDA will provide assistance for the period of time required to complete the project scope of work. Normally, this does not exceed twelve months.

(b) If the project is regional or national in scope, EDA may determine that the requirement that public or private nonprofit organizations must act in cooperation with officials of a political subdivision of a State is satisfied by the nature of the project.

(c) Grant rate:

1. The maximum Federal grant rate for a project under this subpart is:

(i) 50 percent, except as supplemented as provided in §301.4(b); or

(ii) Up to and including 100 percent, if the project is not feasible without, and merits, a reduction or waiver of the non-Federal share required under the rate provided in §301.4(b) of this chapter.

2. A project is eligible for a supplemental grant increasing the Federal share up to and including 100 percent when the applicant is able to demonstrate that:

(i) The project is addressing major causes of distress in the area serviced and requires the unique characteristics of the applicant, which will not participate in the program if it must provide all or part of a 50 percent non-Federal share; or

(ii) The project is for the benefit of local, State, regional, or national economic development efforts, and will be of no or only incidental benefit to the recipient.
§ 307.12 Post-approval requirements.

Financial reports, progress reports, and project products will be specified in the Special Award Conditions of the grant or cooperative agreement.

[64 FR 69879, Dec. 14, 1999]

PART 308—REQUIREMENTS FOR ECONOMIC ADJUSTMENT GRANTS

§ 308.2 Criteria.

(a) A grant may be made under this part only when the project will help the area to meet a special need arising from actual or threatened severe unemployment or economic adjustment problems resulting from severe changes in economic conditions; and the area for which a project is to be carried out has a strategy and the project is consistent with the strategy, except that

in force, or Department of Energy defense-related funding reductions.

(2) Disasters or emergencies, in areas with respect to which a major disaster or emergency has been declared under the Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 5121 et seq.),

(3) International trade.

(4) Fishery failures, in areas with respect to which a determination that there is a commercial fishery failure has been made under sec. 312(a) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (16 U.S.C. 1861a(a)).

(5) Long-term economic deterioration,

(6) Loss of a major community employer.

(b) Economic Adjustment grants are intended to enhance a distressed community’s ability to compete economically by stimulating private investment in targeted economic sectors through use of tools that:

(1) Help organize and carry out a CEDS;

(2) Expand the capacity of public officials and economic development organizations to work effectively with businesses;

(3) Assist in overcoming major obstacles identified in the strategy;

(4) Enable communities to plan and coordinate: The use of Federal and other resources available to support economic recovery, development of regional economies, or recovery from natural or other disasters; and

(5) Encourage the development of innovative public/private approaches to economic restructuring and revitalization.

§ 308.3 Use of Economic Adjustment grants.

(a) Grants may be used to pay for developing a strategy to alleviate long-term economic deterioration or a sudden and severe economic dislocation, or to pay for a project in implementation of such a strategy.

(b) Strategy grants may support developing, updating, or refining a strategy.

(c) Implementation grants support activities identified in an EDA-approved strategy. Specific activities may be funded as separate grants or as multiple elements of a single grant. Examples of implementation activities include:

(i) Infrastructure improvements, such as site acquisition, site preparation, construction, rehabilitation and/or equipping of facilities;

(ii) Provision of business or infrastructure financing through the funding of locally administered Revolving Loan Funds (RLFs), which may include interest rate buy downs;

(iii) Market or industry research and analysis;

(iv) Technical assistance, including organizational development such as business networking, restructuring or improving the delivery of business services, or feasibility studies;

(v) Public services;

(vi) Training (provided that it does not duplicate Department of Labor, Department of Education or other Federally-supported training programs), and

(vii) Other activities as justified by the strategy which meet statutory and regulatory requirements.

(b) Economic Adjustment grants may be spent directly by the grantee or redistributed to other entities.

(1) Redistribution in the form of grants may only be to eligible recipients of grants under part 308.

(2) Redistribution in the form of loans, loan guarantees, or equivalent assistance may be to public or private entities, including private for-profit entities.


§ 308.4 Selection and evaluation factors.

(a) Projects will be selected in accordance with part 304 of this chapter and the additional criteria as provided in subsections (b) and (c), as applicable.

(b) Strategy grants. EDA will, as appropriate, review strategy grant applications for assurances that the proposed activities will conform to the CEDS requirements in §303.3 of this chapter.

(c) Implementation Grants. (1) EDA will review implementation grant applications for the extent to which,

(i) If appropriate, strategy meets the CEDS requirements in §303.3 of this chapter.

(ii) The proposed project is identified as a necessary element of or consistent with the strategy.

(2) Revolving Loan Fund (RLF) Grants. For applicants asking to capitalize or recapitalize an RLF, EDA will review the application for:

(i) The need for a new or expanded public financing tool to enhance other business assistance programs and services targeting economic sectors and/or locations described in the strategy;

(ii) The types of financing activities anticipated;

(iii) The capacity of the RLF organization to manage lending, create networks between the business community and other financial providers, and contribute to the adjustment strategy; and

(iv) Use of in-kind match. When in-kind match is included in a project, such match will be used for borrower technical assistance or general RLF administrative costs (e.g. the training of new RLF staff).

(d) Additional criteria, or priority consideration factors for assistance, may be set forth in a NOFA.

§ 308.5 Applicant requirements.

Each application for a grant under part 308 must:

(a) Include evidence of area and applicant eligibility (see part 301 of this chapter). For Technical Assistance under the Economic Adjustment program, if the project is regional or national in scope, EDA may determine that the requirement that public or private nonprofit organizations must act in cooperation with officials of a political subdivision of a State is satisfied by the nature of the project;

(b) Include, or incorporate by reference, if so approved by EDA, a strategy, as provided in §301.3 of this chapter (except that a strategy is not required when a funding request is for planning assistance, e.g., a strategy grant);

(c) Identify the sources of the other funds, both eligible Federal and non-Federal, that will make up the balance of the proposed project’s financing, including any private sources of financing. The application must show that such other funds are committed to the project and will be available as needed. The local share must not be encumbered in any way that would preclude its use consistent with the requirements of the grant; and

(d) Explain how the proposed project meets the criteria of §308.2.


§ 308.6 Post-approval requirements.

(a) Financial, performance, and progress reports will be specified in the Special Award Conditions of the grant.

(b) Projects involving construction shall comply with the provisions of subpart B of part 305.

(c) RLF Supplemental Requirements and Guidelines—RLF grants are subject to the requirements set forth in this part and the publications: EDA’s RLF Standard Terms, EDA’s RLF Administrative Manual, and EDA’s RLF Audit Guidelines. Appendixes B–D of this part displayed at EDA’s web site, http://www.doc.gov/eda. A copy of these documents is available from EDA and a copy will be furnished to an award recipient with the Offer of Financial Assistance.

Subpart B—Special Requirements for Revolving Loan Fund Projects and Uses of Grant Funds

SOURCE: 65 FR 2532, Jan. 18, 2000, unless otherwise noted.

§ 308.7 Revolving Loan Funds established for business lending.

EDA grants to capitalize or recapitalize Revolving Loan Funds are most commonly used for business lending, but may also be established for public infrastructure lending or other authorized purposes involving lending. The RLF requirements in this subpart B are applicable to RLFs established for business lending. Appropriate modifications of these requirements will be addressed in special award conditions to accommodate non-business RLF awards.

§ 308.8 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Closed loan means any loan for which all required documentation has been executed, received, and reviewed.

Guaranteed loan means a loan made and serviced by a lending institution under the agreement that a third party (e.g., a governmental agency) will purchase the guaranteed portion if the borrower defaults.

Program income means gross income received by the grant RLF recipient or the sub-recipient directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. Program income includes principal repayments and RLF income.

Prudent lending practices means generally accepted underwriting and lending practices for public loan programs based on sound judgment to protect Federal and lender interests. Such practices cover loan processing, documentation, loan approval, collections, servicing, administrative procedures, collateral protection, and recovery actions. Prudent lending practices include compliance with local laws and filing requirements to perfect and maintain security interests in RLF collateral.
Recapitalization grants are additional grant funds awarded to increase the capital base of an RLF.

RLF capital includes the funds which capitalized the RLF plus such earnings and fees generated by RLF activities as may be added to the RLF capital base to be used for lending. The original sources of capital for EDA RLFs are normally comprised of EDA grant funds and local cash matching share.

RLF income means interest earned on outstanding loan principal, interest earned on accounts holding RLF funds not needed for immediate lending, all loan fees and loan-related charges received from RLF borrowers, and other income generated from RLF operations. The RLF recipient may use RLF income only to capitalize the RLF and/or to cover eligible and reasonable costs necessary to administer the RLF, unless otherwise provided for in the grant agreement or approved in writing by EDA. RLF income excludes principal repayments.

Secondary market includes those entities that purchase an interest in a loan from an original lender.

Securitization refers to the technique of securing an investment of new capital with the stream of income generated by one or more (usually a large group of) existing loans. EDA broadly defines securitization transactions to include techniques such as the sale of loans, pledging the future income stream of a loan, and similar activities, to access investor capital to increase available funds for lending.

§ 308.9 Revolving Loan Fund Plan.

All RLF recipients must manage RLFs in accordance with an RLF Plan (Plan) as described in this part. For all RLF recipients, the Plan must be submitted to and approved by EDA prior to the grant award. For RLF recipients other than states, the RLF Plan must have been approved by resolution of the organizations’ governing board and such resolution must be submitted to EDA along with the Plan prior to the grant award; with EDA’s approval, political subdivisions of states may be exempted from the resolution requirement.

(a) Format and content. (1) The title page of the Plan should show the RLF recipient organization’s name and the date the Plan was adopted.

(2) Part I of the Plan, titled Revolving Loan Fund Strategy, summarizes the area CEDS and business development objectives, and describes the RLF’s financing strategy, policy and portfolio standards. Organization of the material and the level of detail provided in the subsections of Part I may be varied to improve the narrative flow, provided the substantive content is adequately covered.

(3) Part II of the Plan, titled Operational Procedures, serves as the internal operating manual for the RLF.

(b) Evaluation of Plans. EDA will use the following criteria in evaluating Plans:

(1) The Plan must flow from and be consistent with the EDA-approved CEDS for the area.

(2) The Plan must be an internally consistent, coherent statement of the strategic purpose of the particular RLF and the various considerations influencing the selection of its financing strategy, policies, and loan selection criteria encompassing:

(i) A financing strategy that demonstrates a knowledgeable analysis of the local capital market and the financing needs of the targeted businesses; and

(ii) Financing policies and portfolio standards that are consistent with EDA policies and requirements.

(3) The strategic objectives defined must be sufficiently meaningful, though not necessarily quantified, so that progress toward them can be assessed over time.

(4) The administrative procedures for operating the RLF must be consistent with generally accepted prudent lending practices for public lending institutions.

[65 FR 2532, Jan. 18, 2000, as amended at 65 FR 71025, Nov. 28, 2000]

§ 308.10 Pre-loan requirements.

(a) RLF recipients must adopt procedures to review the impacts of prospective loan proposals on the physical environment. The Plan must provide for the disapproval of any loan project that adversely (without mitigation) impacts flood plains, wetlands, significant historic or cultural properties,
drinking water resources, or nonrenewable natural resources. In administering the RLF, the RLF recipient must adopt procedures to comply, and ensure that potential borrowers comply, with applicable laws and regulations including, but not limited to §§316.1, 316.3, 316.7, 316.8, 316.15, and 317 of this chapter.

(b) RLF recipients are responsible for ensuring compliance with the applicable requirements of this chapter prior to providing any loan assistance under the RLF. RLF recipients must develop loan agreements that include applicable Federal requirements to ensure compliance. RLF recipients must adopt procedures to diligently correct instances of non-compliance, including the calling of loans, if necessary. RLF recipient loan documents and procedures must protect and hold the Government harmless from and against all liabilities that the Government may incur as a result of providing an award to assist (directly or indirectly) in site preparation or construction as well as the renovation or repair of any facility or site. This applies to the extent that such liabilities are incurred because of ground water, surface, soil or other conditions caused by operations of the RLF recipient or any of its predecessors on the property.

§ 308.12 Revolving Loan Fund income.

(a) RLF income can be used to pay for eligible and reasonable administrative costs for the project. RLF recipients are expected to add RLF income to the RLF capital base where practicable. To determine the appropriate amount of RLF income to return to the RLF capital base, RLF operators must consider the costs necessary to operate an RLF program, the availability of other monetary resources, the portfolio risk level and projected capital erosions from loan losses and inflation, the community’s (or area’s) commitment to the RLF, and the anticipated demand for RLF loans.

(b) RLF income that is not used for administrative costs during the selected twelve-month reporting period in which it is earned, must be added to the RLF capital base for lending purposes at the end of the twelve-month reporting period. Only RLF income earned during a current period may be used for current administrative expenses. RLF income may not be withdrawn from an RLF in a subsequent period for any uses, other than lending, without the written consent of EDA.

(c) In accounting for RLF income, any net proceeds from the sale, collection, or liquidation of a defaulted loan, up to the amount of the unpaid principal, will be treated as repayments of RLF principal and placed in the RLF
§ 308.13 Records and retention.

(a) Loan files and related documents and records. Loan files and related documents and records must be retained by RLF recipients over the life of the loan and for a three year period from the date of final disposition of the loan. The date of final disposition of the loan is defined as the date of:

(1) Full payment of the principal, interest, fees, penalties, and other costs associated with the loan; or

(2) Final settlement or write-off of any unpaid amounts associated with the loan.

(b) Administrative records. RLF recipients must:

(1) Maintain adequate accounting records and source documentation to substantiate the amount and percent of RLF income expended for eligible RLF administrative costs.

(2) Retain records of administrative costs incurred for activities and equipment relating to the operation of the RLF for three years from the actual submission date of the last semi-annual or annual report which covers the period that such costs were claimed, or for five years from the date the costs were claimed, whichever is less.

(3) Make any retained records, even those retained for longer than the period described, available for inspection. The record retention periods, described in this §308.13, are minimum periods and such prescription is not intended to limit any other record retention requirement of law or agreement. In any event, EDA will not question claimed administrative costs that are more than three years old, unless fraud is an issue.

§ 308.14 Revolving Loan Fund semi-annual and annual reports.

(a) Frequency of reports. All RLF recipients, including existing RLFs that receive recapitalization grants, must submit semi-annual reports until they qualify or requalify for “Annual Report” status. RLF recipients may apply for “Annual Report” status if:

(1) All grant funds have been disbursed for at least one year;

(2) Accurate semi-annual reports have been submitted on-time for the preceding two years;

(3) Required periodic audits have been completed and submitted to EDA for the most recent audit period within the last two years; and

(4) EDA determines that the RLF is in compliance with all applicable RLF requirements.

(b) Report contents. RLF recipients must certify as part of the semi-annual or annual report to EDA that the RLF is being operated in accordance with the Plan referenced in §308.9 of this part. RLF recipients must request EDA approval of modifications to the Plan at any time there is evidence that such modifications are needed to ensure effective use of the RLF as a strategic financing tool.

(c) RLF income statement. (1) RLF recipients using RLF income equivalent to 50 percent or more of at least $100,000 of RLF income for RLF administrative expenses during the selected twelve month period, must submit a completed RLF Income and Expense Statement per §308.12(e) to the appropriate EDA Regional Office within 90...
Economic Development Administration, Commerce § 308.15

days of either September 30 or the RLF recipient’s fiscal year end, whichever period is selected by the RLF recipient. RLF recipients using less than 50 percent and less than $100,000 of RLF income for administrative expenses in the twelve-month period will retain the RLF Income and Expense Statement for three years. RLF recipients are required to make this statement available to EDA personnel upon request.

(2) Performance Measures. RLF recipients will submit to EDA as part of the semi-annual or annual report, the information identified as the Core Performance Measures in the special conditions accompanying the grant award. EDA will advise RLF recipients in writing, within a reasonable time for submission, in the event there are any modifications in the information required to be submitted.

§ 308.15 Prudent management of Revolving Loan Funds.

(a) Accounting principles. (1) RLFs are expected to be operated in accordance with the generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and the provisions outlined in OMB Circular A–133 and Compliance Supplements as applicable.

(2) In accordance with GAAP, a loan loss reserve may be reflected in the financial statements to show the fair value of an RLF’s loan portfolio provided it is non-funded and represents non-cash entries.

(b) Loan and accounting system documents. (1) RLF recipients are required to provide certification by an independent accountant familiar with the RLF recipient’s accounting system that its accounting system is adequate to identify, safeguard, and account for all RLF funds, including RLF income.

(2) RLF recipients are required to certify that standard RLF loan documents necessary for lending are in place and that these documents have been reviewed by its legal counsel for adequacy and compliance with the terms and conditions of the grant and applicable state and local laws. The standard loan documents must include, at a minimum, the following:

(i) Loan application,

(ii) Loan agreement,

(iii) Promissory note,

(iv) Security agreement(s),

(v) Deed of Trust or Mortgage (as applicable),

(vi) Agreement of prior lien holder (as applicable), and

(vii) Personal Guaranty Agreement (for officers or owners of corporate borrowers, as applicable).

(c) Interest rates. A RLF recipient can make loans and loan guarantees to eligible borrowers at interest rates and under conditions determined by the RLF recipient to be most appropriate in achieving the goals of the RLF. However, the minimum interest rate an RLF can charge is four (4) percentage points below the current money center prime rate quoted in the Wall Street Journal or the maximum interest rate allowed under state law, whichever is lower. In no event may the interest rate be less than four (4) percent. However, should the prime interest rate exceed fourteen (14) percent, the minimum RLF interest rate is not required to be raised above ten (10) percent if doing so compromises the ability of the RLF recipient to implement its financing strategy.

(d) Private leveraging. (1) RLF loans must be used to leverage private investment of at least two dollars for every one dollar of RLF investment. This leveraging requirement applies to the portfolio as a whole, rather than to individual loans and is effective for the life of the RLF. Private investment, to be classified as leveraged, must be made concurrently with an RLF loan as part of the same business development project and may include:

(i) Capital invested by the borrower or others,

(ii) Financing from private entities, or

(iii) The unguaranteed portion and 90 percent of the guaranteed portions of SBA 7(a) and SBA 504 debenture loans.

(2) Private investments do not include equity build-up in a borrower’s assets or prior capital investments by a borrower unless the investment is made within nine months of the RLF loan and is recognized by the RLF recipient.

(e) Conflict of interest. (1) No officer, employee, or member of the RLF recipient’s Board of Directors, or other Board (hereinafter referred to as “other board”) that advises, approves,
§ 308.16 Disbursement of funds to Revolving Loan Funds.

(a) Timing of request for disbursement. A RLF recipient must request disbursements from EDA only at the time and in the amount immediately needed to close a loan or disburse funds to a borrower. Grant funds must be requested only for immediate use, i.e., when the intent is to disburse the funds within 14 days of receipt.

(b) Amount of disbursement. As each new loan is made, the grant RLF recipient may request a disbursement of grant funds only for the difference, if any, between the amount of funds available for relending (from repayments of loan principal and RLF income) and the amount of the new loan, unless an amount for local matching funds as may be required to be disbursed concurrent with the grant. However, RLF income received during the grant period may be held to cover eligible administrative expenses and need not be disbursed in order to draw additional grant funds.

(c) Interest-bearing accounts. All RLF grant funds disbursed by EDA to reimburse RLF recipients for loan obligations already incurred must be held in interest bearing accounts by RLF recipients until disbursed to the borrower.

(d) Pre-disbursement requirements. RLF recipients are required to provide:

(1) Evidence to EDA that they have fidelity bond coverage for persons authorized to handle funds under the grant award in an amount sufficient to protect the interests of EDA and the RLF. Note that such insurance coverage must exist at all times during the life of the RLF; and

(2) Certification in accordance with § 308.15(b)(1) of this part.

(e) Delays. (1) If grant funds are requested and the loan disbursement is subsequently delayed, a RLF recipient may hold the funds up to 30 days from the date of receipt. In the event that a loan disbursement is delayed beyond 30 days from the date of receipt of the Federal disbursement, the undispursed funds must be returned to the Government for credit to the RLF recipient’s account. Returned funds will be available to the RLF recipient for future draw down. When returning prematurely drawn funds, checks should identify on their face the name of the grantor agency—"EDA" followed by
the grant award number and the words “Premature Draw.”

(2) The interest earned on prematurely withdrawn funds must be returned to the Government (with the exception of $100 per year which may be retained for administrative expenses by states, local governments and Indian tribes in accordance with 15 CFR Part 24, and $250 for those subject to 15 CFR Part 14 as appropriate) and should be remitted promptly, but no less frequently than quarterly. All checks submitted should state “EDA” on their face and the award number followed by the word “INTEREST” in order to identify the check in question as remittance of interest income.

(f) Local share.

(1) When some portion of the local share of the RLF project is cash, it may only be used for lending. If the RLF project has an all-cash matching share, EDA’s funds will be disbursed as needed for loan closing. The cash matching funds must be used either in proportion to the EDA funds, or at a faster rate than EDA funds.

(2) When an RLF project has a combination of in-kind and cash matching share, the non-federal cash together with the Federal cash constitute the funds available for making loans and will be disbursed proportionately as needed for loan closing, provided that the last 20 percent of the Federal funds may not be disbursed until all local in-kind match has been expended. The full amount of the local cash matching share will be expected to remain for use in the RLF.

(3) Upon repayment, local cash share funds are treated the same as EDA funds. Repayments of principal must be placed in the RLF for relending and interest payments must be used either for relending or eligible RLF administrative costs. The local cash matching share must be available when needed for lending and must be under the control of the RLF recipient for the duration of the RLF for use in accordance with the terms of the grant.

§ 308.17 Effective utilization of Revolving Loan Funds.

(a) Loan closing and disbursement schedule. (1) RLF loan activity must be sufficient to draw down grant funds in accordance with the time schedule for loan closings and disbursements to eligible RLF borrowers as prescribed in the award conditions. The time schedule requires that the initial round of lending (i.e., the grant disbursement phase) be completed within three years of the grant award.

(2) If a RLF recipient substantially fails to meet the prescribed time schedules for loan closings and disbursements, EDA may terminate the undisbursed balance of the award. Exceptions may be granted where:

(i) Funds are needed to close and disburse funds on loans approved prior to the deadline and will be disbursed within 45 days of the deadline,

(ii) Funds are needed to meet continuing disbursement obligations on loans closed prior to the deadline, or

(iii) EDA has approved a time schedule extension.

(b) Time schedule extension. (1) RLF recipients are responsible for contacting EDA as soon as conditions become known that may materially affect their ability to meet the approved time schedules. RLF recipients must submit a written request to EDA for continued use of grant funds beyond a missed deadline. Extension requests must provide good reason for the delay and demonstrate that:

(i) The delay was unforeseen or generally beyond the control of the RLF recipient;

(ii) The need for the RLF still exists;

(iii) The current and planned use and the anticipated benefits of the RLF will remain consistent with the current CEDS and the RLF Plan;

(iv) The achievement of a new proposed time schedule is reasonable; and

(v) An explanation why no further delays are foreseen.

(2) EDA is under no obligation to grant a time extension, and in the event an extension is denied, EDA may deobligate (terminate) all or part of the unused portion of the grant.

(c) Capital Utilization Standard. (1) During the revolving phase, RLF recipients must manage their repayment and lending schedules such that at least 75 percent of the RLF’s capital is loaned out or committed at all times. RLF income earned during a current reporting period is not included as RLF income.
capital when calculating the capital utilization percentage. Exception:

(i) RLF recipients that anticipate making large loans relative to the size of the capital base, may propose RLF Plans that call for holding more than 25 percent.

(ii) EDA may require an RLF with a capital base in excess of $4 million to adopt a Plan that maintains a proportionately higher percentage of their funds loaned out.

(2) When the percentage of loaned out capital falls below the applicable standard, the dollar amount of the funds equivalent to the difference between the actual percentage of capital loaned out and the standard is referred to as “excess funds.”

(i) Sequestration of excess funds. If the capital utilization standard is not met for two consecutive reporting intervals, EDA may require the RLF recipient to deposit “excess funds” in an interest bearing account; the portion of the interest earned on that account, attributable to the EDA grant, will be remitted to the U.S. Treasury. EDA approval is required to withdraw sequestered funds.

(ii) Persistent noncompliance. A RLF recipient will normally be provided a reasonable period of time to lend “excess funds” and achieve the standard. However, if a RLF recipient fails to achieve the standard after a reasonable period of time as determined by EDA, the grant may be subject to sanctions for suspension and/or termination.

§ 308.18 Uses of capital.

Generally, eligible loans to borrowers include loans for fixed assets, the acquisition of equipment, working capital, or other authorized uses. The EDA grant and the local cash matching funds will be used only for the purpose of making loans under an RLF. To preclude borrowers from using RLF funds inappropriately, the purpose of each RLF loan should be clearly stated in the loan agreement. RLFs established for business lending must conform to the following:

(a) Loan guarantees. Prior to full disbursement of grant funds, the RLF recipient may not use the RLF to guarantee loans made by other lenders. In the revolving phase, after the full disbursement of grant funds, the RLF may be used to guarantee loans of private lenders provided the RLF recipient has obtained EDA’s prior written approval of its proposed loan guarantee activities. The Plan for any loan guarantee activities should include the following information:

(1) The maximum guarantee percentage that will be offered;

(2) A certification from the RLF attorney that the guarantee agreement is valid under state law. At a minimum, the guarantee agreement must address the following:

(i) The maximum reserve requirement;

(ii) The rights and duties of each party in regard to loan collections, servicing, delinquencies and defaults;

(iii) Foreclosures;

(iv) Bankruptcies;

(v) Collateral disposition and the call provisions of the guarantee; and

(vi) Interest income and loan fees, if any, which will accrue to the RLF;

(b) Restrictions on RLF capital. RLF capital may not be used to:

(1) Acquire an equity position in a private business;

(2) Subsidize interest payments on an existing loan;

(3) Provide the equity contribution required of borrowers under other Federal loan programs;

(4) Enable an RLF borrower to acquire an interest in a business, either through the purchase of stock or through the acquisition of assets, unless the need for RLF financing is sufficiently justified and documented in the loan write-up. Acceptable justification could include acquiring a business to substantially save it from imminent foreclosure, or acquiring it to facilitate a significant expansion or increased investment. In any case, the resulting economic benefits should be clearly consistent with the strategic objectives of the RLF;

(5) Provide loans to a borrower for the purpose of investing in interest bearing accounts, certificates of deposit, or other investments not related to the objectives of the RLF;

(6) Refinance existing debt unless:

(i) There is sound economic justification and the RLF recipient sufficiently documents in the loan write-up that
§ 314.1 **Federal interest, applicability.**

(a) Property that is acquired or improved with EDA grant assistance shall be held in trust by the recipient for the benefit of the purposes of the project under which the property was acquired or improved. Limited exceptions to this requirement are listed in §314.7(c).

(b) During the estimated useful life of the project, EDA retains an undivided equitable reversionary interest in property acquired or improved with EDA grant assistance, except for the exceptions listed in §314.7(c).

(c) EDA may approve the substitution of an eligible entity for a recipient. The original recipient remains responsible for the period it was the recipient, and the successor recipient.
§ 314.2 Definitions.

As used in this part 314 of this chapter:

Dispose includes sell, lease, abandon, or use for a purpose or purposes not authorized under the grant award or this part.

Estimated useful life means that period of years, determined by EDA as the expected lifespan of the project.

Owner includes fee owner, transferee, lessee, or optionee of real property upon which project facilities or improvements are or will be located, or real property improved under a project which has as its purpose that the property be sold or leased.

Personal Property means all property other than real property.

Project means the activity and property acquired or improved for which a grant is awarded. When property is used in other programs as provided in § 314.3(b), “project” includes such programs.

Property includes all forms of property, real, personal (tangible and intangible), and mixed.

Real property means any land, improved land, structures, appurtenances thereto, or other improvements, excluding movable machinery and equipment. Improved land also includes land which is improved by the construction of such project facilities as roads, sewers, and water lines which are not situated directly on the land but which contribute to the value of such land as a specific part of the project purpose.

Recipient includes any recipient of grant assistance under the Public Works and Economic Development Act of 1965, as amended, prior to or as amended by Public Law 105–393, or under Title II, Chapters 3 and 5 of the Trade Act of 1974, Title I of the Public Works Employment Act of 1976, the Public Works Employment Act of 1977, or the Community Emergency Drought Relief Act of 1977, and any EDA-approved successor to such recipient.

§ 314.3 Use of property.

(a) The recipient or owner must use any property acquired or improved in whole or in part with grant assistance only for the authorized purpose of the project and such property must not be leased, sold, disposed of or encumbered without the written authorization of EDA.

(b) However, in the event that EDA and the recipient determine that property acquired or improved in whole or in part with grant assistance is no longer needed for the original grant purpose, it may be used in other Federal grant programs, or programs that have purposes consistent with those authorized for support by EDA, but only if EDA approves such use.

(c) When the authorized purpose of the EDA grant is to develop real property to be leased or sold, as determined by EDA, such sale or lease is permitted provided it is for adequate consideration and the sale is consistent with the authorized purpose of the grant and with applicable EDA requirements concerning, but not limited to, non-discrimination and environmental compliance. The term “adequate consideration” means consideration that is fair and reasonable under the circumstances of the sale or lease, and may include money, services, property exchanges, contractual commitments, or acts of forbearance.

(d) When acquiring replacement personal property of equal or greater value, the recipient may, with EDA’s approval, trade-in the property originally acquired or sell the original property and use the proceeds in the acquisition of the replacement property, provided that the replacement property shall be used for the project and be subject to the same requirements as the original property. In extraordinary and compelling circumstances, EDA may allow replacement of real property, with the approval of the Assistant Secretary.

§ 314.4 Unauthorized use.

(a) Except as provided in §§ 314.3(b), (c) or (d), whenever, during the expected useful life of the project, any property acquired or improved in whole or in part with grant assistance is disposed of, or no longer used for the authorized purpose of the project, the
Federal Government must be compensated by the recipient for the Federal share of the value of the property; provided that for equipment and supplies, the standards of the Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants at 15 CFR parts 14 and 24 or any supplements or successors thereto, as applicable, shall apply.

(b) If property is disposed of or encumbered without EDA approval, EDA may assert its interest in the property to recover the Federal share of the value of the property for the Federal Government. To that end, EDA may take such actions as are provided in connection with loans and loan guarantees, in §316.5(c) of this chapter. EDA may pursue its rights under both paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section to recover the Federal share, plus costs and interest.

(c) RLF grant projects. (1) EDA may suspend or terminate any RLF grant for cause based on, but not limited to:

(i) Failure to make loans in accordance with the RLF Plan, including the time-schedule for loan closings;

(ii) Failure to obtain prior EDA approval for such changes to the RLF Plan, including provisions for administering the RLF;

(iii) Failure to submit progress, financial or audit reports as required by the terms and conditions of the grant agreement;

(iv) Failure to comply with prohibitions against conflict-of-interest for any transactions involving the use of RLF funds; or

(v) Failure to operate the RLF in accordance with the RLF Plan and the terms and conditions of the grant agreement.

(2) Whenever an RLF recipient fails in its fiduciary responsibilities or is unable or unwilling to perform as trustee of the grant, EDA may suspend, terminate or transfer the grant to an eligible successor with jurisdiction over the project area, to administer it as such trustee (replacement grantee).

(3) Whenever EDA terminates any RLF grant for cause, in whole or in part, it has the right to recover residual funds and assets of the RLF grant in accordance with the legal rights of the parties.

(4) If there is a partial termination of an RLF grant, the full amount of the original non-federal matching share is expected to be retained in the RLF for lending purposes unless otherwise provided for in the grant agreement or agreed to in writing by EDA.

§314.5 Federal share.

(a) For purposes of this part, the Federal share of the value of property is that percentage of the current fair market value of the property attributable to the EDA participation in the project (after deducting actual and reasonable selling and fix-up expenses, if any, incurred to put the property into condition for sale). The Federal share excludes that value of the property attributable to acquisition or improvements before or after EDA’s participation in the project and not included in project costs.

(b) Where the recipient’s interest in property is a leasehold for a term of years less than the depreciable remaining life of the property, that factor will be considered in determining the percentage of the Federal share.

(c) If property is transferred from the recipient to another eligible entity, as provided in §314.1(c), the Federal Government must be compensated the Federal share of any money or money equivalent paid by or on behalf of the successor recipient to or for the benefit of the original recipient, provided that EDA may first permit the recovery by the original recipient of an amount not exceeding its investment in the project nor exceeding that percentage of the value of the property that is not attributable to the EDA participation in the project.

(d) When the Federal Government is fully compensated for the Federal share of the value of property acquired or improved in whole or in part with grant assistance, EDA has no further interest in the ownership, use, or disposition of the property.

§314.6 Encumbrances.

(a) Except as provided in §314.6(c), recipient-owned property acquired or improved in whole or in part with grant assistance may not be used to secure a
§ 314.7 Title.

(a) The recipient must hold title to the real property required for a project, except in limited cases as provided in paragraph 314.7(c) of this section. Except in those limited cases, the recipient must furnish evidence, satisfactory in form and substance to EDA, that title to real property required for a project (other than property of the United States) is vested in the recipient, and that such easements, rights-of-way, State permits, or long-term leases as are required for the project have been or will be obtained by the recipient within an acceptable time as determined by EDA.

(b)(1) The recipient must disclose to EDA all:
(i) Liens,
(ii) Mortgages,
(iii) Other encumbrances,
(iv) Reservations,
(v) Reversionary interests, or
(vi) Other restrictions on title or the recipient's interest in the property.

(2) No such encumbrance or restriction will be acceptable if, as determined by EDA, the encumbrance or restriction will interfere with the construction, use, operation or maintenance of the project during its estimated useful life.

(c) EDA may determine that a long-term leasehold interest for a period not less than the estimated useful life of the project, or an agreement for the recipient to purchase the property, will be acceptable, but only if fee title is not obtainable and the lease or purchase agreement provisions adequately safeguard the Federal Government’s interest in the project. Also, EDA may permit the following exceptions to the requirement that the recipient hold title to the real property required for a project.

(1) When a project includes construction within a railroad’s right-of-way or over a railroad crossing, it may be acceptable for the work to be completed by the railroad and for the railroad to continue to own, operate and maintain that portion of the project, if required by the railroad, and provided that this is a minor but essential component of the project.

(2) When a project includes construction on a State-owned or local government-owned highway, it may be acceptable for the State or local government to own, operate and maintain that portion of the project, if required by the State or local government, provided that this is a minor but essential component of the project, the construction is completed in accordance with EDA requirements, and the State or local government provides assurances to EDA.
Economic Development Administration, Commerce

§ 314.10

(i) That the State or local government will operate and maintain the improvements for the useful life of the project as determined by EDA;
(ii) That the State or local government will not sell the improvements for the useful life of the project, as determined by EDA; and
(iii) That the use of the property will be consistent with the authorized purpose of the project.

(3) When the authorized purpose of the project is to construct facilities to serve industrial or commercial parks or sites owned by the recipient for sale or lease to private parties, such sale or lease is permitted so long as EDA requirements continue to be met. EDA may require evidence that the recipient has title to the park or site prior to such sale or lease.

(4) When the authorized purpose of the project is to construct facilities to serve privately owned industrial or commercial parks or sites for sale or lease, such ownership, sale or lease is permitted so long as EDA requirements continue to be met. EDA may require evidence that the private party has title to the park or site prior to such sale or lease.

§ 314.8 Recorded statement.

(a) For all projects involving the acquisition, construction or improvement of a building, as determined by EDA, the recipient shall execute a lien, covenant or other statement of EDA’s interest in the property acquired or improved in whole or in part with the funds made available under the award. The statement shall specify in years the estimated useful life of the project and shall include, but not be limited to disposition, encumbrance, and compensation of Federal share requirements of this part 314. The statement shall be satisfactory in form and substance to EDA.

(b) The statement of EDA’s interest must be perfected and placed of record in the real property records of the jurisdiction in which the property is located, all in accordance with local law.

(c) Facilities in which the EDA investment is only a small part of a large project, as determined by EDA, may be exempted from the requirements of this section.

Subpart C—Personal Property

§ 314.9 Recorded statement—Title.

For all projects which EDA determines involve the acquisition or improvement of significant items of tangible personal property, including but not limited to ships, machinery, equipment, removable fixtures or structural components of buildings, the recipient shall execute a security interest or other statement of EDA’s interest in the property, acceptable in form and substance to EDA, which statement must be perfected and placed of record in accordance with local law, with continuances refiled as appropriate. Whether or not a statement is required by EDA to be recorded, the recipient must hold title to the personal property acquired or improved as part of the project, except as otherwise provided in this part.

§ 314.10 Revolving loan funds.

(a) With EDA’s consent, recipients holding revolving loan fund (RLF) property (including but not limited to money, notes, and security interests) may sell such property or encumber such property as part of a securitization of the RLF portfolio. The net transaction proceeds must be used for additional loans as part of the RLF project;

(b) When a recipient determines that it is no longer necessary or desirable to operate an RLF, the RLF may be terminated; provided that, unless otherwise stated in the award, the recipient must compensate the Federal Government for the Federal share of the value of the RLF property. The Federal share is that percentage of the capitalized RLF contributed by EDA applied to all RLF property, including the present value of all outstanding loans. However, with EDA’s prior approval, upon termination the recipient may use for other economic development purposes that portion of such RLF property that EDA determines is attributable to the payment of interest.
§ 314.11

(c) In the event of the sale, collection, or liquidation of RLF loans, any proceeds, net of repaid principal and reasonable administrative costs incurred, up to the amount of the outstanding loan principal, must be returned to the RLF for relending. Any net proceeds from loan sales above the outstanding loan principal is considered RLF income and must either be added to the RLF capital base for lending or used to cover eligible costs for administering the RLF in accordance with the rules for use of RLF income. The net transaction proceeds must be used for additional loans as part of the RLF project.

Subpart D—Release of EDA’s Property Interest

§ 314.11 Procedures for release of EDA’s property interest.

(a) Before the expiration of the estimated useful life of the grant project, EDA may release, in whole or in part, any real property interest, or tangible personal property interest, in connection with a grant after the date that is 20 years after the date on which the grant was awarded. (The term “tangible personal property” excludes debt instruments, currency, and accounts in financial institutions.) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, such release is not automatic; it requires EDA’s approval, which will not be withheld except for good cause. The release may be unconditional, or may be conditioned upon some activity of the recipient intended to be pursued as a consequence of the release.


(c)(1) Notwithstanding §§314.11(a) and (b), in no event, before or after the release of EDA’s interest, may project property be used:

(i) In violation of the nondiscrimination requirements of the project award, or

(ii) For religious purposes prohibited by the holding of the U.S. Supreme Court in Tilton v. Richardson, 403 U.S. 672 (1971).

(2) Such use voids the release, and is an unauthorized use of the property, as provided in §314.4.

PART 315—CERTIFICATION AND ADJUSTMENT ASSISTANCE FOR FIRMS

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 315.1 Purpose and scope.

Subpart B—Trade Adjustment Assistance Centers

§ 315.8 Purpose and scope.

Subpart C—Certification of Firms

§ 315.9 Certification requirements.

§ 315.10 Processing petitions for certification.

§ 315.11 Hearings, appeals and final determinations.

§ 315.12 Termination of certification and procedure.

§ 315.13 Loss of certification benefits.

Subpart D—Assistance to Industries

§ 315.14 Assistance to firms in import-impacted industries.


Source: 64 FR 5478, Feb. 3, 1999, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 315.1 Purpose and scope.

The regulations in this part implement certain changes to responsibilities of the Secretary of Commerce under Chapter 3 of Title II of the Trade Act of 1974, as amended (19 U.S.C. 2341 et seq.) (Trade Act), concerning adjustment assistance for firms. The statutory authority and responsibilities of the Secretary of Commerce relating to adjustment assistance are delegated to EDA. EDA has the duties of certifying
§ 315.2 Definitions.

As used in this part 315 of this chapter:

Adjustment assistance is technical assistance provided to firms or industries under Chapter 3 of Title II of the Trade Act.

Adjustment proposal means a certified firm’s plan for improving its economic situation.

Certified firm means a firm which has been determined by EDA to be eligible to apply for adjustment assistance.

Confidential business information means information submitted to EDA or TAACs by firms that concerns or relates to trade secrets for commercial or financial purposes which is exempt from public disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4), 5 U.S.C. 552b(c)(4) and 15 CFR part 4.

Decreased absolutely means a firm’s sales or production has declined:

(1) Irrespective of industry or market fluctuations; and

(2) Relative only to the previous performance of the firm.

Directly competitive means:

(1) Articles which are substantially equivalent for commercial purposes, i.e., are adapted to the same function or use and are essentially interchangeable; and

(2) Oil or natural gas (exploration, drilling or otherwise produced).

Firm means an individual proprietorship, partnership, joint venture, association, corporation (including a development corporation), business trust, cooperative, trustee in bankruptcy or receiver under court decree and including fishing, agricultural entities and those which explore, drill or otherwise produce oil or natural gas. When a firm owns or controls other firms as described below, for purposes of receiving benefits under this part, the firm and such other firms may be considered a single firm when they produce like or directly competitive articles or are exerting essential economic control over one or more production facilities. Such other firms include:

(1) Predecessor;

(2) Successor;

(3) Affiliate; or

(4) Subsidiary.

A group of workers threatened with total or partial separation means there is reasonable evidence that such total or partial separation is imminent.

Like articles means articles which are substantially identical in their intrinsic characteristics.

Partial separation means either:

(1) A reduction in an employee’s work hours to 80 percent or less of the employee’s average weekly hours during the year of such reductions as compared to the preceding year; or

(2) A reduction in the employee’s weekly wage to 80 percent or less of his/her average weekly wage during the year of such reduction as compared to the preceding year.

Person means individual, organization or group.

The record means:

(1) A petition for certification of eligibility to qualify for adjustment assistance;

(2) Any supporting information submitted by the petitioner;

(3) Report of the EDA investigation in regard to the petition; and

(4) Any information developed during the investigation or in connection with any public hearing held on the petition.

Recipient means a firm, Trade Adjustment Assistance Center or other party receiving adjustment assistance or through which adjustment assistance is provided under the Trade Act.

A significant number or proportion of workers means 5 percent of the firm’s work force or 50 workers, whichever is less. An individual farmer is considered a significant number or proportion of workers.

Substantial interest means a direct, material, economic interest in the certification or noncertification of the petitioner.

Technical Assistance means assistance provided to firms or industries under Chapter 3 of Title II of the Trade Act.

A totally separated worker means an employee who has been laid off or
whose employment has been terminated by his/her employer for lack of work.

§ 315.3 Confidential business information.

EDA will follow the procedures set forth in 15 CFR §4.7, and submitters should so designate any information they believe confidential.

§ 315.4 Eligible applicants.

(a) Trade Adjustment Assistance Centers (TAACs) are eligible applicants. A TAAC can be:

(1) A university affiliate;
(2) State or local government affiliate;
(3) Non-profit organization.

(b) Firms;
(c) Organizations assisting or representing industries in which a substantial number of firms or workers have been certified as eligible to apply for adjustment assistance under sections 223 or 251 of the Trade Act including the following:

(1) Existing agencies;
(2) Private individuals;
(3) Firms;
(4) Universities;
(5) Institutions;
(6) Associations;
(7) Unions; or
(8) Other non-profit industry organizations.

§ 315.5 Selection process.

(a) TAACs are selected in accordance with the following:

(1) Currently funded TAACs are invited by EDA to submit either new or amended applications, provided they have performed in a satisfactory manner and complied with previous and/or current conditions in their cooperative agreements with EDA and contingent upon availability of funds. Such TAACs shall submit an application on a form approved by OMB, as well as a proposed budget, narrative scope of work, and such other information as requested by EDA. Acceptance of an application or amended application for a cooperative agreement does not assure funding by EDA; and
(2) New TAACs will be invited to submit proposals, and if they are acceptable, EDA will invite an application on a form approved by OMB. An application will be accompanied by a narrative scope of work, proposed budget and such other information as requested by EDA. Acceptance of an application does not assure funding by EDA.

(b) Firms are selected in accordance with the following:

(1) Firms may apply for certification generally through a TAAC by filling out a petition for certification. The TAAC will provide technical assistance to firms wishing to fill out such petitions;
(2) Once firms are certified in accordance with the procedures described in §§315.9 and 315.10, an adjustment proposal is usually prepared with technical assistance from a party independent of the firm, usually the TAAC, and submitted to EDA;
(3) Certified firms which have submitted acceptable adjustment proposals within the time limits described in §315.13 below, may begin implementation of such proposal, generally through the TAAC and often with Technical Assistance from the TAAC, by submitting a request to the TAAC to provide assistance in implementing an accepted adjustment proposal; and
(4) EDA determines whether or not to provide assistance for adjustment proposals based upon §315.6(c)(2).

(c) Organizations representing trade injured industries must meet with an EDA representative to discuss the industry problems, opportunities and assistance needs, and if invited by EDA may then submit an application as approved by OMB, as well as a scope of work and proposed budget.

§ 315.6 Evaluation criteria.

(a) Currently funded TAACs are generally evaluated based on the following:

(1) How well they have performed under cooperative agreements with EDA and if they are in compliance with the terms and conditions of such cooperative agreements;
(2) Proposed scope of work, budget and application or amended application; and
(3) The availability of funds.

(b) New TAACs are generally evaluated on the following:
§ 315.8 Purpose and scope.

(a) Trade Adjustment Assistance Centers (TAACs) are available to assist firms in all fifty states, the District of Columbia and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico in obtaining adjustment assistance. TAACs provide technical assistance in accordance with this subpart either through their own staffs or major stockholders will also be considered.

(d) Organizations representing trade injured industries must demonstrate that the industry is injured by increased imports and that the activities to be funded will yield some short-term actions that the industry itself (and individual firms) can and will take toward the restoration of the industry’s international competitiveness.

(1) The emphasis is on practical results that can be implemented in the near term, and long-term research and development activities are given low priority.

(2) It is also expected that the industry will continue activities on its own without the need for continued Federal assistance.

§ 315.7 Award requirements.

(a) Award periods are as follows:

(1) TAACs are generally funded for 12 months;

(2) Firms are generally provided assistance over a 2-year period; and

(3) Organizations representing trade injured industries are generally funded for 12 months.

(b) Matching requirements are as follows:

(1) There are no matching requirements for certification assistance provided by the TAACs to firms or for administrative expenses for the TAACs;

(2) All adjustment proposals and implementation assistance must include not less than 25% nonfederal match, provided to the extent practicable, by firms being assisted; and

(3) Contributions of at least 50% of the total project cash cost, in addition to appropriate in kind contributions, are expected from organizations representing trade injured industries.
by arrangements with outside consultants. Information concerning TAACs serving particular areas can be obtained from EDA. See the annual FY NOFA for the appropriate point of contact and address.

(b) Prior to submitting a request for technical assistance to EDA, a firm should determine the extent to which the required technical assistance can be provided through a TAAC. EDA will provide technical assistance through TAACs whenever EDA determines that such assistance can be provided most effectively in this manner. Requests for technical assistance will normally be made through TAACs.

(c) TAACs generally provide technical assistance to a firm by providing the following:

(1) Assistance to a firm in preparing its petition for certification;

(2) Assistance to a certified firm in diagnosing its strengths and weaknesses and developing an adjustment proposal for the firm; and

(3) Assistance to a certified firm in the implementation of the adjustment proposal for the firm.

Subpart C—Certification of Firms

§ 315.9 Certification requirements.

A firm will be certified eligible to apply for adjustment assistance based upon the petition for certification if EDA determines, under section 251(c) of the Trade Act, that:

(a) Based upon a comparison of the most recent 12 month period for which data are available and the immediately preceding 12 month period, the following conditions have been met:

(1) A significant number or proportion of workers in such firm have become totally or partially separated, or are threatened to become totally or partially separated;

(2) Either sales or production, or both of the firm have decreased absolutely; or sales or production, or both of any article that accounted for not less than 25 percent of the total production or sales of the firm during the 12-month period preceding the most recent 12-month period for which data are available have decreased absolutely; and

(3) Increases of imports (absolute or relative to domestic production) of articles like or directly competitive with articles produced by such firm contributed importantly to such total or partial separation or threat thereof, and to such decline in sales or production; provided that imports will not be considered to have contributed importantly if other factors were so dominant, acting singly or in combination, that the worker separation or threat thereof, or decline in sales or production would have been essentially the same irrespective of the influence of imports; or

(b) Based upon an interim sales or production decline, the following conditions have been met:

(1) There has been an absolute decrease in sales or production for, at minimum, a three month period during the most recent 12 month period for which data are available as compared to the same period of time during the immediately preceding 12 month period;

(2) During the same base and comparative period of time as the period of absolute decrease in sales or production, a significant number or proportion of workers in such firm have become totally or partially separated; and

(3) During the same base and comparative period of time as the period of absolute decrease in sales or production, there has been an increase of imports (absolute or relative to domestic production) of articles like or directly competitive with articles produced by such firm which contributed importantly to such total or partial separation, and to such decline in sales or production; provided that imports will not be considered to have contributed importantly if other factors were so dominant, acting singly or in combination, that the worker separation, or decline in sales or production would have been essentially the same irrespective of the influence of imports; or

(c) Based upon an interim employment decline, the following conditions have been met:

(1) A significant number or proportion of workers in such firm have become totally or partially separated, or are threatened to become totally or partially separated during, at a minimum, the most recent month during
§ 315.10 Processing petitions for certification.

(a) Firms are encouraged to consult with a TAAC or EDA for guidance and assistance in the preparation of their petitions for certification.

(b) A firm seeking certification shall complete a petition (OMB Control Number 0610–0091) in the form prescribed by EDA with the following information about such firm:

(1) Identification and description of the firm, including legal form of organization, economic history, major ownership interests, officers, directors, management, parent company, subsidiaries or affiliates, and production and sales facilities;

(2) Description of goods and services produced and sold;

(3) Description of imported articles like or directly competitive with those produced;

(4) Data on its sales, production and employment for the two most recent years;

(5) Copies of its audited financial statements, or if not available, unaudited financial statements and Federal income tax returns for the two most recent years;

(6) Copies of unemployment insurance reports for the two most recent years;

(7) Information concerning its major customers and their purchases; and

(8) Such other information as EDA may consider material.

(c) EDA shall determine whether the petition has been properly prepared and can be accepted. Immediately thereafter, EDA shall notify the petitioner that the petition has been accepted or advise the petitioner that the petition has not been accepted, but may be resubmitted at any time without prejudice when the specified deficiencies have been corrected and the resubmission will be treated as a new petition.

(d) A notice of acceptance of a petition shall be published in the Federal Register.

(e) An investigation shall be initiated by EDA to determine whether the petitioner meets requirements set forth in section 251(c) of the Trade Act and § 315.9 above. The investigation can be terminated at any time for failure to meet such requirements. A report of this investigation shall become part of the record upon which a determination of the petitioner's eligibility to apply for adjustment assistance shall be made.

(f) A petitioner may withdraw a petition for certification if a request for withdrawal is received by EDA before a certification determination or denial is made. Such firm may submit a new petition at any time thereafter in accordance with the requirements of this section and § 315.9.

(g) Following acceptance, EDA shall decide what action to take on petitions for certification as follows:

(1) Make a determination based on the record as soon as possible after all material has been submitted. In no event may the period exceed 60 days from the date on which the petition was accepted; and

(2) Either certify the petitioner eligible to apply for adjustment assistance or deny the petition, and in either event EDA shall promptly give notice of the action in writing to the petitioner. A notice to the petitioner or
any parties requesting notice as specified in §315.10(d) of a denial of a petition shall specify the reasons upon which the denial is based. If a petition is denied, the petitioner shall not be entitled to resubmit its petition within one year from the date of the denial. At the time of the denial of a petition EDA may waive the 1-year limitation for good cause.

§ 315.11 Hearings, appeals and final determinations.

(a) Any petitioner may appeal to EDA from a denial of certification provided that the appeal is received by EDA in writing by personal delivery or by registered mail within 60 days from the date of notice of denial under §315.10(g). The appeal shall state the grounds on which the appeal is based, including a concise statement of the supporting facts and law. The decision of EDA on the appeal shall be the final determination within the Department of Commerce. In the absence of an appeal by the petitioner under this paragraph, such final determination shall be made under §315.10(g).

(b) A firm, its representative or any other interested domestic party aggrieved by a final determination under paragraph (a) of this section may, within 60 days after notice of such determination, begin a civil action in the United States Court of International Trade for review of such determination in accordance with section 284 of the Trade Act (19 U.S.C. 2395).

(c) EDA will hold a public hearing on an accepted petition not later than 10 days after the date of publication of the Notice of Acceptance in the Federal Register if requested by either the petitioner or any other person found by EDA to have a substantial interest in the proceedings, under procedures, as follows:

(1) The petitioner and other interested persons shall have an opportunity to be present, to produce evidence, and to be heard;

(2) A request for public hearing must be delivered by hand or by registered mail to EDA. A request by a person other than the petitioner shall contain:

(i) The name, address, and telephone number of the person requesting the hearing; and

(ii) A complete statement of the relationship of the person requesting the hearing to the petitioner and the subject matter of the petition, and a statement of the nature of its interest in the proceedings.

(3) If EDA determines that the requesting party does not have a substantial interest in the proceedings, a written notice of denial shall be sent to the requesting party. The notice shall specify the reasons for the denial;

(4) EDA shall publish a notice of a public hearing in the Federal Register, containing the subject matter, name of petitioner, and date, time and place of hearing;

(5) EDA shall appoint the presiding officer of the hearing who shall determine all procedural questions;

(6) Procedures for requests to appear are as follows:

(i) Within 5 days after publication of the Notice of Public Hearing in the Federal Register, each party wishing to be heard must file a request to appear with EDA. Such request may be filed by:

(A) The party requesting such hearing;

(B) Any other party with substantial interest; or

(C) Any other party demonstrating to the satisfaction of the presiding officer that it should be allowed to be heard.

(ii) The party filing the request shall submit the names of the witnesses and a summary of the evidence it wishes to present; and

(iii) Such requests to appear may be approved as deemed appropriate by the presiding officer.

(7) Witnesses will testify in the order and for the time designated by the presiding officer, except that the petitioner shall have the opportunity to make its presentation first. After testifying, a witness may be questioned by the presiding officer or his/her designee. The presiding officer may allow any person who has been granted permission to appear to question the witnesses for the purpose of assisting him/her in obtaining relevant and material facts on the subject matter of the hearing;

(8) The presiding officer may exclude evidence which s/he deems improper or irrelevant. Formal rules of evidence
shall not be applicable. Documentary material must be of a size consistent with ease of handling, transportation, and filing. Large exhibits may be used during the hearing, but copies of such exhibits must be provided in reduced size for submission as evidence. Two copies of all documentary evidence must be furnished to the presiding officer during the hearing;

(9) Briefs may be presented to the presiding officer by parties who have entered an appearance. Three copies of such briefs shall be filed with the presiding officer within 10 days of the completion of the hearing; and

(10) Procedures for transcripts are as follows:

(i) All hearings will be transcribed. Persons interested in transcripts of the hearings may inspect them at the U.S. Department of Commerce in Washington, D.C., or purchase copies as provided in 15 CFR part 4, Public Information; and

(ii) Confidential business information as determined by EDA shall not be a part of the transcripts. Any confidential business information may be submitted directly to the presiding officer prior to the hearing. Such information shall be labeled Confidential Business Information. For the purpose of the public record, a brief description of the nature of the information shall be submitted to the presiding officer during the hearing.

§ 315.12 Termination of certification and procedure.

(a) Whenever EDA determines that a certified firm no longer requires adjustment assistance or for other good cause, EDA will terminate the certification and promptly publish notice of such termination in the Federal Register. The termination will take effect on the date specified in the Notice.

(b) EDA shall immediately notify the petitioner and shall state the reasons for such termination.

§ 315.13 Loss of certification benefits.

A firm may fail to obtain benefits of certification, regardless of whether its certification is terminated for any of the following reasons:

(a) Failure to submit an acceptable adjustment proposal within 2 years after date of certification. While approval of an adjustment proposal may occur after the expiration of such 2-year period, an acceptable adjustment proposal must be submitted before such expiration;

(b) Failure to submit documentation necessary to start implementation or modify its request for adjustment assistance consistent with its adjustment proposal within 6 months after approval of the adjustment proposal and 2 years have elapsed since the date of certification. If the firm anticipates that a longer period will be required to submit documentation, such longer period should be indicated in its adjustment proposal. If the firm becomes unable to submit its documentation within the allowed time, it should notify EDA in writing of the reasons for the delay and submit a new schedule. EDA has the discretion to accept or refuse a new schedule;

(c) If the firm’s request for adjustment assistance has been denied, the time period allowed for the submission of any documentation in support of such request has expired, and 2 years have elapsed since the date of certification; or

(d) Failure to diligently pursue an approved adjustment proposal, and 2 years have elapsed since the date of certification.

Subpart D—Assistance to Industries

§ 315.14 Assistance to firms in import-impacted industries.

(a) Whenever the International Trade Commission makes an affirmative finding under section 202(B) of the Trade Act that increased imports are a substantial cause of serious injury or threat thereof with respect to an industry, EDA shall provide to the firms in such industry, assistance in the preparation and processing of petitions and applications for benefits under programs which may facilitate the orderly adjustment to import competition of such firms.

(b) EDA may provide technical assistance, on such terms and conditions as EDA deems appropriate for the establishment of industry wide programs for new product development, new
process development, export development or other uses consistent with the purposes of this part.

(c) Expenditures for technical assistance under this section may be up to $10,000,000 annually per industry and shall be made under such terms and conditions as EDA deems appropriate.

PART 316—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE

§ 316.1 Environment.

(a) The purpose of this section is to ensure proper environmental review of EDA’s actions under PWEDA and the Trade Act and to comply with the Federal environmental statutes and regulations in making a determination that balances economic development and environmental enhancement and mitigates adverse environmental impacts to the extent possible.

(b) Environmental assessments of EDA actions will be conducted in accordance with the statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders listed below. This list will be supplemented and modified, as applicable, in EDA’s annual FY NOFA.

(1) Requirements under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA), Pub. L. 91–190, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq. as implemented under 40 CFR parts 1500 et seq. including the following:

(i) The implementing regulations of NEPA require EDA to provide public notice of the availability of project specific environmental documents such as environmental impact statements, environmental assessments, findings of no significant impact, records of decision etc., to the affected public as specified in 40 CFR 1506.6(b); and

(ii) Depending on the project location, environmental information concerning specific projects can be obtained from the Environmental Officer in the appropriate Washington, D.C. or regional office listed in the NOFA;

(2) Clean Air Act, Pub. L. 88–206 as amended, 42 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.;

(3) Clean Water Act (Federal Water Pollution Control Act), c. 758, 62 Stat. 1152 as amended, 33 U.S.C. 1251 et. seq.;


(5) Floodplain Management Executive Order 11988 (May 24, 1977);

(6) Protection of Wetlands Executive Order 11990 (May 24, 1977);


(15) Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations Executive Order 12898 (February 11, 1994);
(17) Other Federal Environmental Statutes and Executive Orders as applicable.

§ 316.2 Excess capacity.

(a) Definitions. For purposes of this section only the following definitions apply:

Beneficiary means a firm or group of firms, a public or private enterprise or organization that provides a commercial product or service and that directly benefits from an EDA-assisted project.

Capacity means the maximum amount of a product or service that can be supplied to the market area over a sustained period by existing enterprises through the use of present facilities and customary work schedules for the industry.

Commercial product or service means a product or service sold on the open market in competition with another provider’s product or service of the same kind.

Demand means the actual quantity of a commercial product or service that users are willing to purchase in the market area served by the intended beneficiary of the EDA assisted project.

Efficient capacity means that part of capacity derived from the use of contemporary structures, machinery and equipment, designs, and technologies.

Existing competitive enterprise means an established operation which either produces or delivers the same kind of commercial product or service to all or a substantial part of the market area served by the intended beneficiary of the EDA assisted project.

Firm means any enterprise which produces or sells a commercial product or service.

Market Area means the geographic area within which commercial products or services compete for purchase by customers.

Product or service means a good, material, or commodity, or the availability of a service or facility.

Section 208 means section 208 of PWEDA.

(1) A section 208 study is a detailed economic analysis/evaluation of competitive impact.

(2) A section 208 report is a summary of supply/demand factors.

(3) A section 208 exemption may apply to a project having one or more of the characteristics listed in paragraph (e) of this section.

(b) Under section 208:

(1) No financial assistance under PWEDA shall be extended to any project when the result would be to increase the production of products or services when there is not sufficient demand for such products or services, to employ the efficient capacity of existing competitive commercial or industrial enterprises; and

(2) When EDA considers extending assistance for a project that benefits a firm or industry that provides a commercial product or service, the beneficiary is subject to a 208 report, study, or exemption, resulting in a finding that the project will or will not violate section 208. A section 208 study or report is required, except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section.

(c) The following procedures shall be followed to the extent necessary to provide EDA with sufficient information to prepare a 208 study or report:

(1) The beneficiary shall submit, as early as possible, the following information with regard to each commercial product or service affected by the project:

(i) A detailed description of the commercial product or service;

(ii) Current and projected amount and value of annual sales or receipts;

(iii) Market area; and

(iv) Name of other suppliers and amount of commercial product or service presently available in the market area.

(2) If the beneficiary has conducted or commissioned a relevant market study, it shall be made available to
§ 316.3  
EDA as early as possible, for possible use by EDA in the 208 study or report.  
(d) A section 208 report will form an acceptable basis on which to make a section 208 compliance finding when the beneficiary’s projected new or additional annual output is less than one percent of the last recorded annual output in the market area, or when it is otherwise apparent that a 208 study is not required to determine that the project will not violate section 208.  
(e) Unless EDA determines that circumstances require a section 208 study or report, EDA will make a finding of compliance with section 208 without doing a section 208 report or study for those projects with known beneficiaries, and which have one or more of the following characteristics:  
(1) The project is primarily for the use and benefit of the community as a whole without significantly expanding the output of commercial products or services;  
(2) The project is primarily to be used for non-production or non-distribution purposes;  
(3) The project will replace or restore capacity recently destroyed by flood, fire, wind, or other natural disaster, without contributing to significant expansion of the previously existing supply of the same kinds of commercial products or services;  
(4) The project will assure the retention of physical capacity and/or employment without significantly expanding the existing supply of the same kinds of commercial products or services;  
(5) The project will assure the reopening of facilities closed within two years of the date of reopening, if the facility will provide the same kinds of products or services as previously provided, without a significant increase in output;  
(6) The project will replace, rebuild or modernize, within the same commuting area, facilities which within the previous two years have been, or are to be, displaced by official governmental action, without a change in the kind or significant increase in output of the commercial product or service previously provided;  
(7) The project assures completion of a project previously assisted by EDA, where further funding is required because of revised project cost estimates, rather than for additional productive capacity;  
(8) The project is wholly or primarily for planning, technical assistance, research, evaluation, other studies, or for the training of workers, and not for the direct benefit of a firm or an industry that produces a commercial product or service; or  
(9) No firm benefitted by the project will use 50 percent or more of any EDA-financed service or facility.  
§ 316.3 Nonrelocation.  
(a) General requirements for nonrelocation for funding under PWEDA are as follows:  
(1) EDA financial assistance will not be used to assist employers who transfer jobs from one commuting area to another. A commuting area (“area”) is that area defined by the distance people travel to work in the locality of the project receiving EDA financial assistance;  
(2) Every applicant for EDA financial assistance has an affirmative duty to inform EDA of any employer who will benefit from such assistance who will transfer jobs (not persons) in connection with the EDA grant;  
(3) EDA will determine compliance with this requirement prior to grant award based upon information provided by the applicant during the project selection process; and  
(4) Each applicant and identified primary beneficiary of EDA assistance, which for purposes of this section means an entity providing economic justification for the project, must submit its certification of compliance with this section, and other applicable information as determined by EDA.  
(b) The nonrelocation requirements stated in paragraph (a) of this section shall not apply to businesses which:  
(1) Relocated to the area prior to the date of the applicant’s request for EDA assistance;  
(2) Have moved or will move into the area primarily for reasons which have no connection to the EDA assistance;  
(3) Will expand employment in the area where the project is to be located.
substantially beyond employment in the area in which the business had originally been located;
(4) Are relocating from technologically obsolete facilities to be competitive;
(5) Are expanding into the new area by adding a branch, affiliate, or subsidiary while maintaining employment levels in the old area or areas; or
(6) Are determined by EDA to be exempt.

§ 316.4 Procedures in disaster areas.
When non-statutory EDA administrative or procedural conditions for financial assistance awards cannot be met by applicants under PWEDA as the result of a disaster, EDA may waive such conditions.

§ 316.5 Project servicing for loans and loan guarantees.
EDA will provide project servicing to borrowers and lenders who received EDA loans and/or guaranteed loans under any programs administered by EDA. This includes but is not limited to loans under PWEDA prior to the effective date of Public Law 105–393, the Trade Act and the Community Emergency Drought Relief Act of 1977.
(a) EDA will continue to monitor such loans and guarantees in accordance with the loan or guarantee program.
(b) Borrowers/lenders shall submit to EDA any requests for modifications of their agreements with EDA. EDA shall, in accordance with applicable laws and policies, including the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990 (2 U.S.C. 661c(e)), consider and respond to such modification requests.
(c) In the event that EDA determines it necessary or desirable to take actions to protect or further the interests of EDA in connection with loans or guarantees made or evidences of indebtedness purchased, EDA may:
(1) Assign or sell at public or private sale, or otherwise dispose of for cash or credit, in its discretion and upon such terms and conditions as it shall determine to be reasonable, any evidence of debt, contract, claim, personal or real property, or security assigned to or held by it in connection with financial assistance extended;
(2) Collect or compromise all obligations assigned to or held by it in connection with EDA financial assistance projects until such time as such obligations may be referred to the Attorney General for suit or collection; and
(3) Take any and all other actions determined by it to be necessary or desirable in purchasing, servicing, compromising, modifying, liquidating, or otherwise administratively dealing with or realizing on loans or guaranties made or evidences of indebtedness purchased.

§ 316.6 Public information.
The rules and procedures regarding public access to the records of the Economic Development Administration are found at 15 CFR part 4.

§ 316.7 Relocation assistance and land acquisition policies.
Recipients of EDA financial assistance under PWEDA and the Trade Act (States and political subdivisions of States and non-profits as applicable) are subject to requirements set forth at 15 CFR part 11.

§ 316.8 Additional requirements; Federal policies and procedures.
Recipients, as defined under § 314.2 of this chapter, are subject to all Federal laws and to Federal, Department of Commerce, and EDA policies, regulations, and procedures applicable to Federal financial assistance awards, including 15 CFR part 24, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments, or 15 CFR part 14, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements With Institutions of Higher Education, Other Non-Profit and Commercial Organizations, whichever is applicable.

§ 316.9 Amendments and changes.
(a) Requests by recipients for amendments to a grant shall be submitted in writing to EDA for approval, and shall contain such information and documentation necessary to justify the request.
(b) Any changes made without approval by EDA are made at grantee’s own risk of suspension or termination of the project.
§ 316.10 Changes of project scope after the time the project grant funds could be obligated will not be approved by EDA. Projects funded with no year funds are not subject to the change of scope rule.


§ 316.10 Preapproval award costs.

Project activities carried out before approval of an application by EDA are carried out at the sole risk of the applicant. Such activity could result in rejection of such project application, the disallowance of costs, or other adverse consequences as a result of non-compliance with Federal requirements, including, but not limited to, civil rights requirements, Federal labor standards, or Federal environmental, historic preservation or related requirements.

§ 316.11 Intergovernmental review of projects.

(a) When the applicant is not a State, Indian tribe or other general-purpose governmental authority, the applicant must afford the appropriate general purpose local governmental authority of the area a minimum of 15 days in which to review and comment on a proposed project under EDA’s public works and economic adjustment programs. Under these programs, applicants shall furnish the following with their application: if no comments were received, a statement of the efforts made to obtain such comments; or, if comments were received, a copy of the comments and a statement of any actions taken to address such comments.

(b) Applicants as appropriate, must also give State and local governments a reasonable opportunity to review and comment on the proposed project if the State has a Single Point of Contact review process, including comments from areawide planning organizations in metropolitan areas as provided for in 15 CFR part 13.


§ 316.12 Fees for paying attorneys and consultants.

Grant funds must not be used directly or indirectly to pay for attorney’s or consultant’s fees in connection with obtaining grants and contracts for projects funded under PWEDA.

§ 316.13 Economic development information clearinghouse.

EDA will provide assistance and information as follows:

(a) Maintain a central information clearinghouse on matters relating to economic development, economic adjustment, disaster recovery, defense conversion, and trade adjustment programs and activities of the Federal and State governments, including political subdivisions of States;

(b) Assist potential and actual applicants for economic development, economic adjustment, disaster recovery, defense conversion, and trade adjustment assistance under Federal, State, and local laws in locating and applying for the assistance; and

(c) Assist areas described in §301.2(b) and other areas by providing to interested persons, communities, industries, and businesses in the areas any technical information, market research, or other forms of assistance, information, or advice that would be useful in alleviating or preventing conditions of excessive unemployment or underemployment in the areas.

§ 316.14 Project administration, operation, and maintenance.

EDA shall approve Federal assistance under PWEDA only if satisfied that the project for which Federal assistance is granted will be properly and efficiently administered, operated, and maintained.

§ 316.15 Maintenance of standards.

In accordance with sec. 602 of PWEDA all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors on public projects assisted by EDA under PWEDA shall be paid in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, as amended (40 U.S.C. 276a–276a–5).

§ 316.16 Records and audits.

(a) Each recipient of Federal assistance under PWEDA shall keep such records as the Secretary shall require, including records that fully disclose—

(1) The amount and the disposition by the recipient of the proceeds of the assistance;
(2) The total cost of the project in connection with which the assistance is given or used;
(3) The amount and nature of the portion of the cost of the project provided by other sources; and
(4) Such other records as will facilitate an effective audit.

(b) Access to books for examination and audit—The Secretary, the Inspector General of the Department, and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any duly authorized representative, shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipient that relate to assistance received under PWEDA.

§ 316.17 Acceptance of certifications by applicants.

EDA will accept an applicant's certifications, accompanied by evidence satisfactory to EDA, that the applicant meets the requirements of PWEDA. Each applicant must include in such evidence satisfactory information that any non-Federal funds (or eligible Federal funds) required to match the EDA share of project costs are committed to the project and will be available as needed.

§ 316.18 Reports by recipients.

(a) In general, each recipient of assistance under PWEDA must submit reports to EDA at such intervals and in such manner as EDA shall require, except that no report shall be required to be submitted more than 10 years after the date of closeout of the assistance award.

(b) Each report must contain an evaluation of the effectiveness of the economic assistance provided in meeting the need that the assistance was designed to address and in meeting the objectives of PWEDA.

§ 316.19 Project administration by District organization.

When an Economic Development District is not a recipient or co-recipient of an award for a project involving construction, the District organization may administer the project for such recipient if the following conditions are met, as determined by EDA:

(a) The recipient has requested (either in the application or by separate written request) that the district organization for the area in which the project is located perform the project administration;

(b) The recipient certifies and EDA finds that:

(1) Administration of the project is beyond the capacity of the recipient's current staff to perform and would require hiring additional staff or contracting for such services;

(2) No local organization/business exists that would be able to administer the project in a more efficient or cost-effective manner than the staff of the district, and

(3) The staff of the district would administer the project themselves, without subcontracting the work out;

(c) EDA approves the request either by approving the application in which the request is made, or by separate specific written approval; and

(d) The allowable costs for the administration of the project by the district organization staff will not exceed the customary and reasonable amount that would be allowable if the district were the recipient.

PART 317—CIVIL RIGHTS

§ 317.1 Civil rights.

(a) Discrimination is prohibited in programs receiving federal financial assistance from EDA in accordance with the following authorities:

(1) Section 601 of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, codified at 42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq. (proscribing discrimination on the basis of race, color, or national origin), and the Department of Commerce’s implementing regulations found at 15 CFR part 8;

(2) 42 U.S.C. 3123 (proscribing discrimination on the basis of sex);

(3) 29 U.S.C. 794, as amended, and the Department of Commerce’s implementing regulations found at 15 CFR.
§ 317.1  13 CFR Ch. III (1–1–02 Edition)

part 8b (proscribing discrimination on the basis of disabilities); (4) 42 U.S.C. 6101, as amended, and the Department of Commerce’s implementing regulations found at 15 CFR part 20; and (5) 42 U.S.C. 6709 (proscribing discrimination on the basis of sex under the Local Public Works Program; and (6) Other Federal statutes, regulations and Executive Orders as applicable.

(b) No recipient or other party shall intimidate, threaten, coerce, or discriminate against, any person for the purpose of interfering with any right or privilege secured by section 601 of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, 42 U.S.C. 3123, 42 U.S.C. 6709, and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, or because the person has made a complaint, testified, assisted, or participated in any manner in an investigation, proceeding, or hearing under this part.

(c) Definitions: (1) Other Parties means, as an elaboration of the definition in 15 CFR part 8, entities which, or which are intended to, create and/or save 15 or more permanent jobs as a result of EDA assistance provided that they are also either specifically named in the application as benefitting from the project, or are or will be located in an EDA building, port, facility, or industrial, commercial or business park prior to EDA’s final disbursement of funds awarded for the project.

(2) Additional definitions are provided in EDA’s Civil Rights Guidelines and 15 CFR part 8.

(d) All recipients of EDA financial assistance under PWEDA and the Trade Act, and Other Parties are required to submit the following to EDA:

(1) Written assurances that they will comply with EDA regulations and other Department of Commerce regulations, and such other requirements as may be applicable, prohibiting discrimination;

(2) Employment data in such form and manner as determined by EDA;

(3) Information on civil rights status and involvement in charges of discrimination in employment or the provision of services during the 2 years previous to the date of submission of such data as follows:

(i) Description of the status of any lawsuits, complaints or the results of compliance reviews; and

(ii) Statement indicating any administrative findings by a Federal or State agency.

(4) Whenever deemed necessary by EDA to determine that applicants and other parties are in compliance with civil rights regulations, such applicants and other parties shall submit additional information in the form and manner requested by EDA; and

(5) In addition to employment record requirements found in 15 CFR 8.7, complete records on all employees and applicants for employment, including information on race, sex, national origin, age, education and job-related criteria must be retained by employers and made accessible to the responsible Department official.

(e) To enable EDA to determine that there is no discrimination in the distribution of benefits in projects which provide service benefits, EDA may require that applicants submit a project service map and information on which to determine that services are provided to all segments of the area being assisted. Applicants may be required to submit any other information EDA may deem necessary for such determination.

(f) EDA assisted planning organizations must meet the following requirements:

(1) For the selection of representatives, EDA expects planning organizations and CEDS committees to take appropriate steps to ensure, where appropriate to the area, that there is adequate representation of minority and low-income populations, women, people with disabilities and Federal and State recognized American Indian tribes and that such representation is accomplished in a nondiscriminatory manner; and

(2) EDA assisted planning organizations and CEDS committees shall take appropriate steps to ensure that no individual will be subject to discrimination in employment because of their race, color, national origin, sex, age or disability.
(3) Prior to approval of EDA initial funding, and for district designations, each district and other planning organizations so supported by EDA is required to report to EDA the membership of its governing bodies, executive committees, and staff. This report shall include the following items:

(i) The total population and minority population of the area served by the organization;

(ii) A list of organizations in the area representing the interests of minorities, women, and people with disabilities;

(iii) A list of the membership of the governing board, executive committee indicating race, sex, national origin, age, and those who self-identify as having disabilities;

(iv) A description of actions taken and methods used in its diversity efforts to promote, as much as possible, the participation of all segments of the areas served;

(v) Information regarding how they notified and provided organizations, including neighborhood associations representing the interests of minorities, women, and people with disabilities, the opportunity to select members and their own representatives;

(vi) A list of employees on the staff of the organization by name, position, title, salary, funding source, and hiring date, indicating race, sex, national origin, and age; and

(vii) A brief summary of any economic development activities undertaken during the previous 12 months that may have impacted the covered persons in the area. This information is required with the initial application and annually thereafter for continuation planning funding.

(4) Prior to approval of continuation funding for a planning grant each district and other planning organization so supported by EDA is required to submit a report which includes the items outlined in paragraph (f)(3) of this section except items in paragraphs (f)(3)(ii) and (v), (although paragraph (f)(3)(v) may be required when changes to the boards and committees affecting minorities, women, people with disabilities have occurred), and a summary indicating the annual progress made in the diversity efforts including a list by name, race, national origin, sex, and age of all hires, promotions, terminations, and composition of applicant pools since the last reporting period and steps taken to ensure non-discrimination and to provide equal employment opportunity.

(5) In order to determine whether districts and other planning organizations supported by EDA are complying with the requirements in paragraph (f)(4) of this section, EDA shall conduct annual compliance reviews of these organizations through either an in-depth desk audit or onsite review.

(g) Applicants for Revolving Loan Funds will provide information describing the make-up of the existing or proposed RLF Loan Board members by race, national origin, gender, age, and those who voluntarily self-identify as having disabilities. The reports submitted to EDA by RLF grantees will be used to monitor civil rights compliance. Additional information may be requested as needed to determine compliance. Compliance issues which will be reviewed and monitored include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) The representation of minorities, women, and those who voluntarily self-identify as having disabilities, as well as the age of members on the RLF Loan Board;

(2) Recipient’s plans to openly market the RLF to prospective minority, disabled, and women business borrowers; and

(3) Recipient’s monitoring plans for borrowers’ compliance with civil rights requirements concerning employees or applicants for employment, and/or providers of goods and services.

(h) Reporting and other procedural matters are set forth in 15 CFR parts 8, 8b, 8c, and 20 and the Civil Rights Guidelines which are available from EDA’s Regional Offices. See part 300 of this chapter.


PART 318—EVALUATIONS OF UNIVERSITY CENTERS AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT DISTRICTS

Sec. 318.1 University Center performance evaluations

585
§ 318.1 University Center performance evaluations.

(a) EDA will evaluate the performance of each University Center. EDA will:
   (1) Evaluate each University Center at least once every three years;
   (2) Assess the University Center’s contribution to providing technical assistance, conducting applied research, and disseminating project results, in accordance with the scope(s) of work funded during the evaluation period; and
   (3) For peer review, ensure the participation of at least one other University Center, as appropriate, in the evaluation on a cost-reimbursement basis.

(b) A purpose of the evaluation is to determine if the University Center should continue to receive funding under the program.


§ 318.2 Economic Development District performance evaluations.

EDA will evaluate the performance of each Economic Development District. EDA will:
   (a) Evaluate each Economic Development District at least once every three years;
   (b) Assess the Economic Development District’s management standards, financial accountability, and program performance; and
   (c) For peer review, ensure the participation of at least one other Economic Development District organization, as appropriate, in the evaluation on a cost-reimbursement basis.

CHAPTER IV—EMERGENCY STEEL GUARANTEE
LOAN BOARD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Program
PART 400—EMERGENCY STEEL GUARANTEE LOAN PROGRAM

Subpart A—General

§ 400.1 Purpose.

§ 400.2 Definitions.
(b) Administer, administering and administration, mean the Lender’s actions in making, disbursing, servicing (including, but not limited to care, preservation and maintenance of collateral), collecting and liquidating a loan and security.
(c) Agent means that Lender authorized to take such actions, exercise such powers, and perform such duties on behalf and in representation of all Lenders party to a Guarantee of a single loan, as is required by, or necessarily incidental to, the terms and conditions of the Guarantee.
(d) Applicant means the private banking or investment institution applying for a loan guarantee under this part.
(e) Board means the Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board.
(f) Borrower means a Qualified Steel Company which could receive a loan guaranteed by the Board under this Program.
(g) Guarantee means the written agreement between the Board and one or more Lenders, and approved by the Borrower, pursuant to which the Board guarantees repayment of a specified percentage of the principal of the loan, including the Special Terms and Conditions, the General Terms and Conditions, and all exhibits thereto.
(h) Guaranteed Portion means the portion of the principal of a loan that is subject to the Guarantee.
(i) Lender means a private banking or investment institution, eligible under § 400.201, that is a party to a Guarantee issued by the Board. With respect to a Guarantee of a single loan to which more than one Lender is a party, the term Lender means Agent.
(j) Loan Documents mean the loan agreement and all other instruments, and all documentation between the Lender and the Borrower evidencing the making, disbursing, securing, collecting, or otherwise administering of the loan. It includes any agreement and other documents relating to a Supplemental Guarantee. Loan Documents may not be modified without the prior written approval of the Board.
§ 400.100  Purpose and scope.
This subpart describes the Board’s authorities and organizational structure, the means and rules by which the Board takes actions, and procedures for public access to Board records.

§ 400.101  Composition of the Board.
The Board consists of the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, who acts as Chairman of the Board, the Chairman of the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Secretary of Commerce.

§ 400.102  Authority of the Board.
Pursuant to the provisions of the Act, the Board is authorized to guarantee loans provided to Qualified Steel Companies by private banking and investment institutions in accordance with the procedures, rules, and regulations established by the Board, to make the determinations authorized by the Act, and to take such other actions as necessary to carry out its functions in accordance with the Act.

§ 400.103  Offices.
The principal offices of the Board are located at 1099—14th Street, NW, Suite 2600 East, Washington, DC 20005.

§ 400.104  Meetings and actions of the Board.
(a) Place and frequency. The Board meets, on the call of the Chairman, in order to consider matters requiring action by the Board. Time and place for any such meeting shall be determined by the members of the Board.
(b) Quorum and voting. Two voting members of the Board constitute a quorum for the transaction of business. All decisions and determinations of the Board shall be made by a majority vote of the voting members. All votes on determinations of the Board required by the Act shall be recorded in the minutes. A Board member may request that any vote be recorded according to individual Board members.
(c) Agenda of meetings. To the extent practicable, an agenda for each meeting shall be distributed to members of the Board at least two days in advance of the date of the meeting, together with copies of materials relevant to the agenda items.
(d) Minutes. The Secretary of the Board shall keep minutes of each Board meeting and of action taken without a meeting, a draft of which is to be distributed to each member of the Board as soon as practicable after each meeting or action. To the extent practicable, the minutes of a Board meeting shall be corrected and approved at the next meeting of the Board.
(e) Use of conference call communications equipment. Any member may participate in a meeting of the Board
through the use of conference call, telephone or similar communications equipment, by means of which all persons participating in the meeting can simultaneously speak to and hear each other. Any member so participating in a meeting shall be deemed present for all purposes. Actions taken by the Board at meetings conducted through the use of such equipment, including the votes of each member, shall be recorded in the usual manner in the minutes of the meetings of the Board.

(f) Actions between meetings. When, in the judgment of the Chairman, circumstances occur making it desirable for the Board to consider action when it is not feasible to call a meeting, the relevant information and recommendations for action may be transmitted to the members by the Secretary of the Board and the voting members may communicate their votes to the Chairman in writing (including an action signed in counterpart by each Board member), electronically, or orally (including telephone communication). Any action taken under this paragraph has the same effect as an action taken at a meeting. Any such action shall be recorded in the minutes.

(g) Delegations of authority. The Board may delegate authority, subject to such terms and conditions as the Board deems appropriate, to the Executive Director, the General Counsel, or the Secretary of the Board, to take certain actions not required by the Act to be taken by the Board. All delegations shall be made pursuant to resolutions of the Board and recorded in writing, whether in the minutes of a meeting or otherwise. Any action taken pursuant to delegated authority has the effect of an action taken by the Board.

§ 400.105 Staff.

(a) Executive Director. The Executive Director of the Board advises and assists the Board in carrying out its responsibilities under the Act, provides general direction with respect to the administration of the Board’s actions, directs the activities of the staff, and performs such other duties as the Board may require.

(b) General Counsel. The General Counsel of the Board provides legal advice relating to the responsibilities of the Board and performs such other duties as the Board may require.

(c) Secretary of the Board. The Secretary of the Board sends notice of all meetings, prepares minutes of all meetings, maintains a complete record of all votes and actions taken by the Board, has custody of all records of the Board and performs such other duties as the Board may require.

(d) An individual may hold more than one staff position.


§ 400.106 Ex parte communications.

Oral or written communication, not on the public record, between any member of the Board and any party or parties interested in any matter pending before the Board concerning the substance of that matter is prohibited.

[66 FR 53079, Oct. 19, 2001]

§ 400.107 Freedom of Information Act.

(a) Definitions. All terms used in this section which are defined in 5 U.S.C. 551 or 5 U.S.C. 552 shall have the same meaning in this section. In addition the following definitions apply to this section:

(1) FOIA, as used in this section, means the “Freedom of Information Act,” as amended, 5 U.S.C. 552.

(2) Commercial use request means a request from or on behalf of one who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers the commercial, trade, or profit interests of the requester or the person on whose behalf the request is made.

(3) Direct costs mean those expenditures that the Board actually incurs in searching for, reviewing, and duplicating documents in response to a request made under paragraph (c) of this section. Direct costs include, for example, the labor costs of the employee performing the work (the basic rate of pay for the employee, plus 16 percent of that rate to cover benefits). Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as the costs of space and heating or lighting of the facility in which the records are kept.

(4) Duplication means the process of making a copy of a document in response to a request for disclosure of
records or for inspection of original records that contain exempt material or that otherwise cannot be inspected directly. Among others, such copies may take the form of paper, microfilm, audiovisual materials, or machine-readable documentation (e.g., magnetic tape or disk).

(5) Educational institution means a preschool, a public or private elementary or secondary school, or an institution of undergraduate higher education, graduate higher education, professional education, or an institution of vocational education that operates a program of scholarly research.

(6) Noncommercial scientific institution refers to an institution that is not operated on a “commercial” basis (as that term is used in this section) and which is operated solely for the purpose of conducting scientific research, the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry.

(7) News means information about current events or that would be of current interest to the public. Examples of news media entities include, but are not limited to, television or radio stations broadcasting to the public at large, and publishers of newspapers and other periodicals (but only in those instances when they can qualify as disseminators of “news”) who make their products available for purchase or subscription by the general public. “Freelance” journalists may be regarded as working for a news organization if they can demonstrate a solid basis for expecting publication through that organization, even though not actually employed by it.

(8) Representative of the news media means any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the general public.

(9) Review means the process of examining documents, located in response to a request for access, to determine whether any portion of a document is exempt information. It includes doing all that is necessary to excise the documents and otherwise to prepare them for release. Review does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the application of exemptions.

(10) Search means the process of looking for material that is responsive to a request, including page-by-page or line-by-line identification within documents. Searches may be done manually or by computer.

(b) Records available for public inspection and copying—(1) Types of records made available. The information in this section is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of the Freedom of Information FOIA, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552)(FOIA). This section sets forth the procedures the Board follows to make publicly available the materials specified in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). These materials shall be made available for inspection and copying at the Board’s Freedom of Information Office pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). Information routinely provided to the public as part of a regular Board activity (for example, press releases) may be provided to the public without following this section.

(2) Reading room procedures. Information available under this section is available for inspection and copying, from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. weekdays, at the Freedom of Information Office of the Board, Steel Guarantee Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(3) Electronic records. Information available under this section that was created on or after November 1, 1996, shall also be available on the Board’s website found at http://elb.osec.doc.gov and at http://elb.commerce.gov.

(c) Records available to the public on request—(1) Types of records made available. All records of the Board that are not available under paragraph (b) of this section shall be made available upon request, pursuant to the procedures in this section and the exceptions set forth in the FOIA. The Board’s policy is to make discretionary disclosures of records or information exempt from disclosure under the FOIA whenever disclosure would not foreseeably harm an interest protected by a FOIA exemption, but this policy does not create any right enforceable in court.

(2) Procedures for requesting records. A request for records shall reasonably describe the records in a way that enables the Board’s staff to identify and
produce the records with reasonable effort and without unduly burdening or significantly interfering with any of the Board’s operations. The request shall be submitted in writing to the Secretary of the Board, Steel Guarantee Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230; or sent by facsimile to the Secretary of the Board. The request shall be clearly marked FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT REQUEST.

(3) Contents of request. The request shall contain the following information:

(i) The name and address of the requester, and the telephone number at which the requester can be reached during normal business hours;

(ii) Whether the requested information is intended for commercial use, or whether the requester represents an educational or noncommercial scientific institution, or news media;

(iii) A statement agreeing to pay the applicable fees, or a statement identifying any fee limitation desired, or a request for a waiver or reduction of fees that satisfies paragraph (f) of this section.

(d) Processing requests—(1) Priority of responses. The date of receipt for any request, including one that is addressed incorrectly or that is referred to the Board by another agency, is the date the Secretary of the Board actually receives the request. The Secretary of the Board shall normally process requests in the order they are received. However, in the Secretary of the Board’s discretion, the Board may use two or more processing tracks by distinguishing between simple and more complex requests based on the number of pages involved, or some other measure of the amount of work and/or time needed to process the request, and whether the request qualifies for expedited processing as described in paragraph (d)(2), of this section. When using multitrack processing, the Secretary of the Board may provide requesters in the slower track(s) with an opportunity to limit the scope of their requests in order to qualify for faster processing. The Secretary of the Board shall contact the requester by telephone or by letter, whichever is most efficient in each case.

(2) Expedited processing. (i) A person may request expedited access to records by submitting a statement, certified to be true and correct to the best of that person’s knowledge and belief, that demonstrates a compelling need for the records, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(E)(v).

(ii) The Secretary of the Board shall notify a requester of the determination whether to grant or deny a request for expedited processing within ten working days of receipt of the request. If the Secretary of the Board grants the request for expedited processing, the Board shall process the request for access to information as soon as practicable. If the Secretary of the Board denies a request for expedited processing, the requester may file an appeal pursuant to the procedures set forth in paragraph (e) of this section, and the Board shall respond to the appeal within twenty days after the appeal was received by the Board.

(3) Time limits. The time for response to requests shall be 20 working days, except:

(i) In the case of expedited treatment under paragraph (d)(2) of this section;

(ii) Where the running of such time is suspended for payment of fees pursuant to paragraph (f)(2)(ii) of this section;

(iii) Where the estimated charge is less than $250, and the requester does not guarantee payment pursuant to paragraph (f)(2)(i) of this section; or

(iv) In unusual circumstances, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(B)(iii), the time limit may be extended for a period of time not to exceed 10 working days as provided by written notice to the requester, setting forth the reasons for the extension and the date on which a determination is expected to be dispatched; or such alternative time period as mutually agreed to by the Secretary of the Board and the requester when the Secretary of the Board notifies the requester that the request cannot be processed in the specified time limit.

(4) Response to request. In response to a request that satisfies paragraph (c) of this section, an appropriate search shall be conducted of records in the custody and control of the Board on the date of receipt of the request, and
§ 400.107

a review made of any responsive information located. The Secretary of the Board shall notify the requester of:

(i) The Secretary of the Board’s determination of the request and the reasons therefor;

(ii) The information withheld, and the basis for withholding; and

(iii) The right to appeal any denial or partial denial, pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(5) Referral to another agency. To the extent a request covers documents that were created by, obtained from, classified by, or is in the primary interest of another agency, the Secretary of the Board may refer the request to that agency for a direct response by that agency and inform the requester promptly of the referral. The Secretary of the Board shall consult with another Federal agency before responding to a requester if the Board receives a request for a record in which:

(i) Another Federal agency subject to the FOIA has a significant interest, but not the primary interest; or

(ii) Another Federal agency not subject to the FOIA has the primary interest or a significant interest. Ordinarily, the agency that originated a record will be presumed to have the primary interest in it.

(6) Providing responsive records. (i) A copy of records or portions of records responsive to the request shall be sent to the requester by regular U.S. mail to the address indicated in the request, unless the requester elects to take delivery of the documents at the Board’s Freedom of Information Office or makes other acceptable arrangements, or the Secretary of the Board deems it appropriate to send the documents by another means. The Secretary of the Board shall provide a copy of the record in any form or format requested if the record is readily reproducible in that form or format, but the Secretary of the Board need not provide more than one copy of any record to a requester.

(ii) The Secretary of the Board shall provide any reasonably segregable portion of a record that is responsive to the request after deleting those portions that are exempt under the FOIA or this section.

(iii) Except where disclosure is expressly prohibited by statute, regulation, or order, the Secretary of the Board may authorize the release of records that are exempt from mandatory disclosure whenever the Board or designated Board members determine that there would be no foreseeable harm in such disclosure.

(iv) The Board is not required in response to the request to create records or otherwise to prepare new records.

(7) Prohibition against disclosure. Except as provided in this part, no officer, employee, or agent of the Board shall disclose or permit the disclosure of any unpublished information of the Board to any person (other than Board officers, employees, or agents properly entitled to such information for the performance of official duties), unless required by law.

(e) Appeals. (1) Any person denied access to Board records requested under paragraph (c) of this section, denied expedited processing under paragraph (d) of this section, or denied a waiver of fees under paragraph (f) of this section may file a written appeal within 30 calendar days after the date of such denial with the Board. The written appeal shall prominently display the phrase FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT APPEAL on the first page, and shall be addressed to the General Counsel of the Board, Steel Guarantee Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230; or sent by facsimile to the General Counsel of the Board. The appeal shall include a copy of the original request, the initial denial, if any, and a statement of the reasons why the requested records should be made available and why the initial denial was in error.

(2) The General Counsel of the Board shall make a determination regarding any appeal within 20 working days of actual receipt of the appeal, and the determination letter shall notify the appealing party of the right to seek judicial review in event of denial.

(f) Fee schedules; waiver of fees—

(1) Fee schedule. The fees applicable to a request for records pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section are set forth in the uniform fee schedule at the end of this paragraph (f).
Search. (A) Search fees shall be charged for all requests—other than requests made by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media—subject to the limitations of paragraph (f)(1)(iv) of this section. The Secretary of the Board shall charge for time spent searching even if no responsive record is located or if the Secretary of the Board withholds the record(s) located as entirely exempt from disclosure.

Search fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the search by the involved employees.

(B) For computer searches of records, requesters will be charged the direct costs of conducting the search, although certain requesters (as provided in paragraph (f)(3) of this section will be charged no search fee and certain other requesters (as provided in paragraph (f)(3)) are entitled to the cost equivalent of two hours of manual search time without charge. These direct costs include the costs, attributable to the search, of operating a central processing unit and operator/programmer salary.

(ii) Duplication. Duplication fees will be charged to all requesters, subject to the limitations of paragraph (f)(1)(iv) of this section. For a paper photocopy of a record (no more than one copy of which need be supplied), the fee shall be 15 cents per page. For copies produced by computer, such as tapes or printouts, the Secretary of the Board shall charge the direct costs, including operator time, of producing the copy. For other forms of duplication, the Secretary of the Board will charge the direct costs of that duplication.

(iii) Review. Review fees shall be charged to requesters who make a commercial use request. Review fees shall be charged only for the initial record review—the review done when the Secretary of the Board determines whether an exemption applies to a particular record at the initial request level. No charge will be made for review at the administrative appeal level for an exemption already applied. However, records withheld under an exemption that is subsequently determined not to apply may be reviewed again to determine whether any other exemption not previously considered applies, and the costs of that review are chargeable. Review fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the review by the involved employees.

(iv) Limitations on charging fees. (A) No search fee will be charged for requests by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media.

(B) No search fee or review fee will be charged for a quarter-hour period unless more than half of that period is required for search or review.

(C) Whenever a total fee calculated under this paragraph is $25 or less for any request, no fee will be charged.

(D) For requesters other than those seeking records for a commercial use, no fee will be charged unless the cost of search in excess of two hours plus the cost of duplication in excess of 100 pages totals more than $25.

(2) Payment procedures. All persons requesting records pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section shall pay the applicable fees before the Secretary of the Board sends copies of the requested records, unless a fee waiver has been granted pursuant to paragraph (f)(6) of this section. Requesters must pay fees by check or money order made payable to the Treasury of the United States.

(i) Advance notification of fees. If the estimated charges are likely to exceed $25, the Secretary of the Board shall notify the requester of the estimated amount, unless the requester has indicated a willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. Upon receipt of such notice, the requester may confer with the Secretary of the Board to reformulate the request to lower the costs. The processing of the request shall be suspended until the requester provides the Secretary of the Board with a written guarantee that payment will be made upon completion of the processing.

(ii) Advance payment. The Secretary of the Board shall require advance payment of any fee estimated to exceed $250. The Secretary of the Board shall also require full payment in advance where a requester has previously failed to pay a fee in a timely fashion. If an advance payment of an estimated fee exceeds the actual total fee by $1 or more, the difference shall be refunded.
to the requester. The time period for responding to requests under paragraph (d)(4) of this section, and the processing of the request shall be suspended until the Secretary of the Board receives the required payment.

(iii) *Late charges.* The Secretary of the Board may assess interest charges when fee payment is not made within 30 days of the date on which the billing was sent. Assessment of such interest will commence on the 31st day following the day on which the billing was sent. Interest is at the rate prescribed in 31 U.S.C. 3717.

(3) *Categories of uses.* The fees assessed depend upon the fee category. In determining which category is appropriate, the Secretary of the Board shall look to the identity of the requester and the intended use set forth in the request for records. Where a requester’s description of the use is insufficient to make a determination, the Secretary of the Board may seek additional clarification before categorizing the request.

(i) **Commercial use requester.** The fees for search, duplication, and review apply when records are requested for commercial use.

(ii) **Educational, non-commercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media requesters.** The fees for duplication apply when records are not sought for commercial use, and the requester is a representative of the news media or an educational or non-commercial scientific institution, whose purpose is scholarly or scientific research. The first 100 pages of duplication, however, will be provided free.

(iii) **All other requesters.** For all other requests, the fees for search and duplication apply. The first two hours of search time and the first 100 pages of duplication, however, will be provided free.

(4) **Nonproductive search.** Fees for search may be charged even if no responsive documents are found. Fees for search and review may be charged even if the request is denied.

(5) **Aggregated requests.** A requester may not file multiple requests at the same time, solely in order to avoid payment of fees. If the Secretary of the Board reasonably believes that a requester is separating a request into a series of requests for the purpose of evading the assessment of fees or that several requesters appear to be acting together to submit multiple requests solely in order to avoid payment of fees, the Secretary of the Board may aggregate such requests and charge accordingly. It is considered reasonable for the Secretary of the Board to presume that multiple requests by one requester on the same topic made within a 30-day period have been made to avoid fees.

(6) **Waiver or reduction of fees.** A request for a waiver or reduction of the fees, and the justification for the waiver, shall be included with the request for records to which it pertains. If a waiver is requested and the requester has not indicated in writing an agreement to pay the applicable fees if the waiver request is denied, the time for response to the request for documents, as set forth in under paragraph (d)(4) of this section, shall not begin until a determination has been made on the request for a waiver or reduction of fees.

(i) **Standards for determining waiver or reduction.** The Secretary of the Board may grant a waiver or reduction of fees where it is determined both that disclosure of the information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operation or activities of the government, and that the disclosure of information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. In making this determination, the following factors shall be considered:

(A) Whether the subject of the records concerns the operations or activities of the government;

(B) Whether disclosure of the information is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of government operations or activities;

(C) Whether the requester has the intention and ability to disseminate the information to the public;

(D) Whether the information is already in the public domain;

(E) Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the disclosure; and, if so,

(F) Whether the magnitude of the identified commercial interest of the
Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board, Commerce

§ 400.107

requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is primarily in the commercial interest of the requester.

(ii) Contents of request for waiver. A request for a waiver or reduction of fees shall include a clear statement of how the request satisfies the criteria set forth in paragraph (f)(6)(i) of this section.

(iii) Burden of proof. The burden shall be on the requester to present evidence or information in support of a request for a waiver or reduction of fees.

(iv) Determination by Secretary of the Board. The Secretary of the Board shall make a determination on the request for a waiver or reduction of fees and shall notify the requester accordingly. A denial may be appealed to the Board in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(7) Uniform fee schedule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) Manual search</td>
<td>Actual salary rate of employee involved, plus 16 percent of salary rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Computerized search</td>
<td>Actual direct cost, including operator time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Duplication of records: (A) Paper copy reproduction</td>
<td>$0.15 per page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) Other reproduction (e.g., computer disk or printout, microfilm, microfiche, or microform)</td>
<td>Actual direct cost, including operator time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) Review of records (includes preparation for release, i.e., excising)</td>
<td>Actual salary rate of employee conducting review, plus 16 percent of salary rate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(g) Request for confidential treatment of business information.—(1) Submission of request. Any submitter of information to the Board who desires confidential treatment of business information pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) shall file a request for confidential treatment with the Board at the time the information is submitted or a reasonable time after submission.

(2) Form of request. Each request for confidential treatment of business information shall state in reasonable detail the facts supporting the commercial or financial nature of the business information and the legal justification under which the business information should be protected. Conclusory statements that release of the information would cause competitive harm generally will not be considered sufficient to justify confidential treatment.

(3) Designation and separation of confidential material. All information considered confidential by a submitter shall be clearly designated “PROPRIETARY” or “BUSINESS CONFIDENTIAL” in the submission and separated from information for which confidential treatment is not requested. Failure to segregate confidential commercial or financial information from other material may result in release of the nonsegregated material to the public without notice to the submitter.

(h) Request for access to confidential commercial or financial information.—(1) Request for confidential commercial or financial information. A request by a submitter for confidential treatment of any business information shall be considered in connection with a request for access to that information.

(2) Notice to the submitter. (i) The Secretary of the Board shall notify a submitter who requested confidential treatment of information pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4), of the request for access.

(ii) Absent a request for confidential treatment, the Secretary of the Board may notify a submitter of a request for access to submitter’s business information if the Secretary of the Board reasonably believes that disclosure of the information may cause substantial competitive harm to the submitter.

(iii) The notice given to the submitter by mail, return receipt requested, shall be given as soon as practicable after receipt of the request for access, and shall describe the request and provide the submitter seven working days from the date of notice, to submit written objections to disclosure of the information. Such statement shall specify all grounds for withholding any of the information and shall demonstrate why the information which is considered to be commercial or financial information, and that the information is a trade secret, is privileged or confidential, or that its disclosure is likely to cause substantial competitive harm to the submitter. If the submitter fails to respond to the notice within the time specified, the submitter will be considered to have no
§ 400.108 Restrictions on lobbying.

(a) No funds received through a loan guaranteed under this Program may be expended by the recipient of a Federal contract, grant, loan, loan Guarantee, or cooperative agreement to pay any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any of the following covered Federal actions: the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal loan or loan Guarantee, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, loan Guarantee, or cooperative agreement.

(b) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan shall file with that agency a statement, set forth in the application form, whether that person has made or has agreed to make any payment to influence or attempt to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with that loan insurance or Guarantee.

(c) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan shall file with that agency a Standard Form—LLL if that person has made or has agreed to make any payment to influence or attempt to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with that loan insurance or Guarantee.

(d) Each person shall file a certification, contained in the application,...
form, and a disclosure form (Standard Form–LLL), if required, with each submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for:

(1) Award of a Federal contract, grant, or cooperative agreement exceeding $100,000; or

(2) An award of a Federal loan or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan exceeding $150,000.

(e) Each person shall file a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, upon receipt by such person of:

(1) A Federal contract, grant, or cooperative agreement exceeding $100,000; or

(2) A Federal loan or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan exceeding $150,000, unless such person previously filed a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, under paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) Each person shall file a disclosure form at the end of each calendar quarter in which there occurs any event that requires disclosure or that materially affects the accuracy of the information contained in any disclosure form previously filed by such person under paragraphs (d) or (e) of this section.

§ 400.109 Government-wide debarment and suspension (nonprocurement).

(a) Executive Order (E.O.) 12549 provides that, to the extent permitted by law, Executive departments and agencies shall participate in a government-wide system for nonprocurement debarment and suspension. A person who is debarred or suspended shall be excluded from Federal programs and activities. Debarment or suspension of a participant in a program by one agency shall have governmentwide effect. The Board shall review the List of Debarred entities prior to making final loan Guarantee decisions. Suspension or debarment may be a basis for denying a loan Guarantee.

(b) This section applies to all persons who have participated, are currently participating or may reasonably be expected to participate in transactions under Federal nonprocurement programs. For purposes of this section such transactions will be referred to as “covered transactions”.

(i) Covered transaction. For purposes of this section, a covered transaction is any nonprocurement transaction between an agency and a person, regardless of type, including: grants, cooperative agreements, scholarships, fellowships, contracts of assistance, loans, loan Guarantees, subsidies, insurance, payments for specified use, donation agreements and any other nonprocurement transactions between a Federal agency and a person.

(ii) Lower tier covered transaction. A lower tier covered transaction is:

(A) Any transaction between a participant and a person other than a procurement contract for goods or services, regardless of type, under a primary covered transaction;

(B) Any procurement contract for goods or services between a participant and a person, regardless of type, expected to equal or exceed the Federal procurement small purchase threshold fixed at 10 U.S.C. 2304(g) and 41 U.S.C. 253(g) (currently $100,000) under a primary covered transaction;

(C) Any procurement contract for goods or services between a participant and a person under a covered transaction, regardless of amount, under which that person will have a critical influence on or substantive control over that covered transaction. Such persons may include loan officers or
§ 400.109 13 CFR Ch. IV (1–1–02 Edition)

chief executive officers acting as principal investigators and providers of federally-required audit services.

(2) Exceptions. The following transactions are not covered:

(i) Statutory entitlements or mandatory awards (but not sub-tier awards thereunder which are not themselves mandatory), including deposited funds insured by the Federal Government;

(ii) Direct awards to foreign governments or public international organizations, or transactions with foreign governments or foreign governmental entities, public international organizations, foreign government owned (in whole or in part) or controlled entities, entities consisting wholly or partially of foreign governments or foreign governmental entities;

(iii) Benefits to an individual as a personal entitlement without regard to the individual's present responsibility (but benefits received in an individual's business capacity are not excepted);

(iv) Federal employment;

(v) Transactions pursuant to national or agency-recognized emergencies or disasters;

(vi) Incidental benefits derived from ordinary governmental operations; and

(vii) Other transactions where the application of this section would be prohibited by law.

(3) Board covered transactions. This section applies to the Board's loan Guarantees, subcontracts and transactions at any tier that are charges as direct or indirect costs, regardless of type.

(c) Primary covered transactions. Except to the extent prohibited by law, persons who are debarred or suspended shall be excluded from primary covered transactions as either participants or principals throughout the Executive Branch of the Federal Government for the period of their debarment, suspension, or the period they are proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4. Accordingly, no agency shall enter into primary covered transactions with such excluded persons during such period, except as permitted pursuant to paragraph (l) of this section.

(d) Lower tier covered transactions. Except to the extent prohibited by law, persons who have been proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred or suspended shall be excluded from participating as either participants or principals in all lower tier covered transactions (see paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section for the period of their exclusion.

(e) Exceptions. Debarment or suspension does not affect a person's eligibility for—

(1) Statutory entitlements or mandatory awards (but not sub-tier awards thereunder which are not themselves mandatory), including deposited funds insured by the Federal Government;

(2) Direct awards to foreign governments or public international organizations, or transactions with foreign governments or foreign governmental entities, public international organizations, foreign government owned (in whole or in part) or controlled entities, and entities consisting wholly or partially of foreign governments or foreign governmental entities;

(3) Benefits to an individual as a personal entitlement without regard to the individual's present responsibility (but benefits received in an individual's business capacity are not excepted);

(4) Federal employment;

(5) Transactions pursuant to national or agency-recognized emergencies or disasters;

(6) Incidental benefits derived from ordinary governmental operations; and

(7) Other transactions where the application of this section would be prohibited by law.

(f) Persons who are ineligible are excluded in accordance with the applicable statutory, executive order, or regulatory authority.

(g) Persons who accept voluntary exclusions are excluded in accordance with the terms of their settlements. The Board shall, and participants may, contact the original action agency to ascertain the extent of the exclusion.

(h) The Board may grant an exception permitting a debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded person, or a person proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, to participate in a particular covered transaction upon a written determination by the agency head or an authorized designee stating the reason(s) for deviating from the Presidential policy established by
Executive Order 12549. However, in accordance with the President's stated intention in the Executive Order, exceptions shall be granted only infrequently. Exceptions shall be reported in accordance with the Executive Order.

(i) Notwithstanding the debarment, suspension, proposed debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, determination of ineligibility, or voluntary exclusion of any person by an agency, agencies and participants may continue covered transactions in existence at the time the person was debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded. A decision as to the type of termination action, if any, to be taken should be made only after thorough review to ensure the propriety of the proposed action.

(j) Agencies and participants shall not renew or extend covered transactions (other than no-cost time extensions) with any person who is debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded, except as provided in paragraph (h) of this section.

(k) Except as permitted under paragraphs (h) or (i) of this section, a participant shall not knowingly do business under a covered transaction with a person who is—

(1) Debarred or suspended;
(2) Proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4; or
(3) Ineligible for or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction.

(l) Violation of the restriction under paragraph (k) of this section may result in disallowance of costs, annulment or termination of award, issuance of a stop work order, debarment or suspension, or other remedies as appropriate.

(m) A participant may rely upon the certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that it and its principals are not debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. An agency has the burden of proof that a participant did knowingly do business with a person that filed an erroneous certification.

§ 400.110 Amendments.

The Board's rules in this chapter may be adopted or amended, or new rules may be adopted, only by majority vote of the Board.

[65 FR 70293, Nov. 22, 2000]

Subpart C—Steel Guarantee Loans

§ 400.200 Eligible Borrower.

(a) An eligible Borrower must be a Qualified Steel Company that can demonstrate:

(1) Credit is not otherwise available to it under reasonable terms or conditions sufficient to meet its financing needs, as reflected in the financial and business plans of the company;
(2) The prospective earning power of that company, together with the character and value of the security pledged, furnish reasonable assurance of repayment of the loan to be guaranteed in accordance with its terms;
(3) The company has agreed to permit audits by the General Accounting Office and an independent auditor acceptable to the Board prior to the issuance of the guarantee and while any such guaranteed loan is outstanding;
(4) It has experienced layoffs, production losses, or financial losses between January 1, 1998, and the date of application for the Guarantee, demonstrated as a comparison between employment, production, or net income existing on January 1, 1998 and on the date of application; and
(5) In the case of a purchaser of substantial assets of a Qualified Steel Company; the Qualified Steel Company is unable to re-organize itself.

(b) For purposes of this section, a company will be considered a purchaser of substantial assets of a Qualified Steel Company if the company's identifiable assets purchased from a Qualified Steel Company are 50 percent or more of the consolidated assets of that Qualified Steel Company and its subsidiaries.

(c) The Lender must provide with its application a letter from at least one...
§ 400.201 Eligible Lender.

(a) A lender eligible to apply to the Board for a Guarantee of a loan must be:

(1) A banking institution, such as a commercial bank or trust company, subject to regulation by the Federal banking agencies enumerated in 12 U.S.C. 1813; or

(2) An investment institution, such as an investment bank, commercial finance company, or insurance company, that is currently engaged in commercial lending in the normal course of its business.

(b)(1) If more than one banking or investment institution is applying to the Board for a Guarantee of a single loan, each one of the banking or investment institutions on the application must meet the requirements to be an eligible lender set forth in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) An application for a Guarantee of a single loan submitted by a group of banking or investment institutions, as described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, must identify one of the banking or investment institutions applying for such loan to act as agent for all. This agent is responsible for administering the loan and shall have those duties and responsibilities required of an agent, as set forth in the Guarantee.

(3) Each Lender, irrespective of any indemnities or other agreements between the Lenders and the Agent, shall be bound by all actions, and/or failures to act, of the Agent. The Board shall be entitled to rely upon such actions and/or failures to act of the Agent as binding the Lenders.

(4) The Board may not make the loan without the Board’s guarantee.

(c) Status as a Lender under paragraph (a) of this section does not assure that the Board will issue the Guarantee sought, or otherwise preclude the Board from declining to issue a Guarantee. In addition to evaluating an application pursuant to § 400.207, in making a determination to issue a Guarantee to a Lender, the Board will assess:

(1) The Agent Lender’s level of regulatory capital, in the case of banking institutions, or net worth, in the case of investment institutions;

(2) Whether the Agent Lender possesses the ability to administer the loan, as required by § 400.211(b), including its experience with loans to steel companies;

(3) The scope, volume and duration of the Agent Lender’s activity in administering loans;

(4) The performance of the Agent Lender’s loan portfolio, including its current delinquency rate;

(5) The Agent Lender’s loss rate as a percentage of loan amounts for its current fiscal year; and

(6) Any other matter the Board deems material to its assessment of the Agent Lender.

§ 400.202 Loan amount.

(a) The aggregate amount of loan principal guaranteed under this Program to a single Qualified Steel Company may not exceed $250 million.

(b) Of the aggregate amount of loans authorized to be guaranteed and outstanding at any one time, not more than $30 million shall be loans to iron ore companies.

§ 400.203 Guarantee percentage.

A guarantee issued by the Board may not exceed 85 percent of the amount of the principal of a loan to a Qualified Steel Company. Subject to the provisions of this part, one or more third
Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board, Commerce § 400.205

§ 400.204 Loan terms.

(a) All loans guaranteed under the Program shall be due and payable in full no later than December 31, 2005.

(b) Loans guaranteed under the Program must bear a rate of interest determined by the Board to be reasonable. The reasonableness of an interest rate will be determined with respect to current average yields on outstanding obligations of the United States with remaining periods of maturity comparable to the term of the loan sought to be guaranteed. The Board may reject an application to guarantee a loan if it determines the interest rate of such loan to be unreasonable.

(c)(1) The performance of all of the Borrower’s obligations under the Loan Documents shall be secured by, and shall have the priority in, such Security as provided for within the terms and conditions of the Guarantee.

(2) Without limiting the Lender’s or Borrower’s obligations under paragraph (c) of this section, at a minimum, the loan shall be secured by:

(i) A fully perfected and enforceable security interest and/or lien, with first priority over conflicting security interests or other liens in all property acquired, improved or derived from the loan funds;

(ii) A fully perfected and enforceable security interest and/or lien in any other property of the Borrower’s pledged to secure the loan, including acquisitions, replacements, proceeds, or property given by a third party as Security for the loan.

(3) The entire loan will be secured by the same Security with equal lien priority for the Guaranteed Portion and the Unguaranteed Portion of the loan. The Unguaranteed Portion of the loan will neither be paid first nor given any preference over the Guaranteed Portion. A Supplemental Guarantor shall not have a security interest, direct or indirect, in any asset of the Borrower or any affiliate thereof other than the Security.

(d) An eligible Lender may assess and collect from the Borrower such other fees and costs associated with the application and origination of the loan as are reasonable and customary, taking into consideration the amount and complexity of the credit. The Board may take such other fees and costs into consideration when determining whether to offer a Guarantee to the Lender.

§ 400.205 Application process.

(a) Application process. An original application and three copies must be received by the Board no later than 5 p.m. EST, August 31, 2001 in the Board’s offices at 1099—14th Street, NW, Suite 2600 East, Washington, DC 20005. Applications which have been provided to a delivery service with “delivery guaranteed” before 5 p.m. on August 31, 2001 will be accepted for review if the Applicant can document that the application was provided to the delivery service with delivery to the address listed in this section guaranteed prior to the closing date and time. A postmark is not sufficient to meet this deadline as the application must be received by the required date and time. Applications will not be accepted via facsimile machine transmission or electronic mail.

(b) Applications shall contain the following:

(1) A completed Form “Application for Steel Guarantee Loan”;

(2) The information required for the completion of Form “Environmental Assessment and Compliance Findings for Related Environmental Laws” and attachments, as required by § 400.206(a)(2)(D);

(3) All Loan Documents that will be signed by the Lender and the Borrower, if the application is approved, including all terms and conditions of, and Security or additional Security to assure the Borrower’s performance under, the loan;
§ 400.206 Environmental requirements.

(a)(1) In general. Environmental assessments of the Board’s actions will be conducted in accordance with applicable statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders. Therefore, each application for a Guarantee under the Program must be accompanied by information necessary for the Board to meet the requirements of applicable law.

(2) Actions requiring compliance with NEPA. (i) The types of actions classified as “major Federal actions” subject to NEPA procedures are discussed generally in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508.

(ii) With respect to this Program, these actions typically include:

(A) Any project, permanent or temporary, that will involve construction and/or installations;

(B) Any project, permanent or temporary, that will involve ground disturbing activities; and

(C) Any project supporting renovation, other than interior remodeling.
(3) Environmental information required from the Lender. (i) Environmental data or documentation concerning the use of the proceeds of any loan guaranteed under this Program must be provided by the Lender to the Board to assist the Board in meeting its legal responsibilities. The Lender may obtain this information from the Borrower. (ii) Such information includes:

(A) Documentation for an environmental threshold review from qualified data sources, such as a Federal, State or local agency with expertise and experience in environmental protection, or other sources, qualified to provide reliable environmental information;
(B) Any previously prepared environmental reports or data relevant to the loan at issue;
(C) Any environmental review prepared by Federal, State, or local agencies relevant to the loan at issue;
(D) The information required for the completion of Form XYZ, "Environmental Assessment and Compliance Findings for Related Environmental Laws;" and
(E) Any other information that can be used by the Board to ensure compliance with environmental laws.

(ii) All information supplied by the Lender is subject to verification by the Board.

(b) The regulations of the Council on Environmental Quality implementing NEPA require the Board to provide public notice of the availability of project specific environmental documents such as environmental impact statements, environmental assessments, findings of no significant impact, records of decision etc., to the affected public. See 40 CFR 1506.6(b). Environmental information concerning specific projects can be obtained from the Board by contacting: Executive Director, Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(c) National Environmental Policy Act. (1) Purpose. The purpose of this paragraph (c) is to adopt procedures for compliance with the National Environmental Policy Act, 42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq., by the Board. This paragraph supplements regulations at 40 CFR Chapter V.

(2) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply: Categorical exclusion means a category of actions which do not individually or cumulatively have a significant effect on the human environment and for which neither an environmental assessment nor an environmental impact statement is required.

Environmental assessment means a document that briefly discusses the environmental consequences of a proposed action and alternatives prepared for the purposes set forth in 40 CFR 1508.9.

EIS means an environmental impact statement prepared pursuant to section 102(2)(C) of NEPA.

FONSI means a finding of no significant impact on the quality of the human environment after the completion of an environmental assessment.

NEPA means the National Environmental Policy Act, 42 U.S.C. 4321, et seq.

Working capital loan means money used by an ongoing business concern to fund its existing operations.

(3) Delegations to Executive Director. (i) All incoming correspondence from Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) and other agencies concerning matters related to NEPA, including draft and final EISs, shall be brought to the attention of the Executive Director. The Executive Director will prepare or, at his or her discretion, coordinate replies to such correspondence.

(ii) With respect to actions of the Board, the Executive Director will:

(A) Ensure preparation of all necessary environmental assessments and EISs;
(B) Maintain a list of actions for which environmental assessments are being prepared;
(C) Revise this list at regular intervals, and send the revisions to the Environmental Protection Agency;
(D) Make the list available for public inspection;
(E) Maintain a list of EISs; and
(F) Maintain a file of draft and final EISs.

(4) Categorical exclusions. (1) This paragraph describes various classes of Board actions that normally do not have a significant impact on the
human environment and are categorically excluded. The word “normally” is stressed; there may be individual cases in which specific factors require contrary action.

(ii) Subject to the limitations in paragraph (c)(4)(iii) of this section, the actions described in this paragraph have been determined not to have a significant impact on the quality of the human environment. They are categorically excluded from the need to prepare an environmental assessment or an EIS under NEPA.

(A) Guarantees of working capital loans; and

(B) Guarantees of loans for the refinancing of outstanding indebtedness of the Borrower, regardless of the purpose for which the original indebtedness was incurred.

(iii) Actions listed in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) of this section that otherwise are categorically excluded from NEPA review are not necessarily excluded from review if they would be located within, or in other cases, potentially affect:

(A) A floodplain;

(B) A wetland;

(C) Important farmlands, or prime forestlands or rangelands;

(D) A listed species or critical habitat for an endangered species;

(E) A property that is listed on or may be eligible for listing on the National Register of Historic Places;

(F) An area within an approved State Coastal Zone Management Program;

(G) A coastal barrier or a portion of a barrier within the Coastal Barrier Resources System;

(H) A river or portion of a river included in, or designated for, potential addition to the Wild and Scenic Rivers System;

(I) A sole source aquifer recharge area;

(J) A State water quality standard (including designated and/or existing beneficial uses and anti-degradation requirements); or

(K) The release or disposal of regulated substances above the levels set forth in a permit or license issued by an appropriate regulatory authority.

(5) Responsibilities and procedures for preparation of an environmental assessment. (i) The Executive Director will request that the Lender and Borrower provide information concerning all potentially significant environmental impacts of the Borrower’s proposed project pursuant to 13 CFR 400.206. The Executive Director, consulting at his discretion with CEQ, will review the information provided by the Lender and Borrower. Though no specific format for an environmental assessment is prescribed, it shall be a separate document, suitable for public review and should include the following in conformance with 40 CFR 1508.9:

(A) Description of the environment. The existing environmental conditions relevant to the Board’s analysis determining the environmental impacts of the proposed project, should be described. The no action alternative also should be discussed:

(B) Documentation. Citations to information used to describe the existing environment and to assess environmental impacts should be clearly referenced and documented. These sources should include, as appropriate, but not be limited to, local, tribal, regional, State, and Federal agencies, as well as, public and private organizations and institutions;

(C) Evaluating environmental consequences of proposed actions. A brief discussion should be included of the need for the proposal, of alternatives as required by 42 U.S.C. 4332(2)(E) and their environmental impacts. The discussion of the environmental impacts should include measures to mitigate adverse impacts and any irreversible or irretrievable commitments of resources to the proposed project.

(ii) The Executive Director, in preparing an environmental assessment, may:

(A) Tier upon the information contained in a previous EIS, as described in 40 CFR 1502.20;

(B) Incorporate by reference reasonably available material, as described in 40 CFR 1502.21; and/or

(C) Adopt a previously completed EIS reasonably related to the project for which the proceeds of the loan sought to be guaranteed under the Program will be used, as described in 40 CFR 1506.3.

(iii) Because of the statute’s admonition to the Board to make its decisions
as soon as possible after receiving applications, the Board will not:

(A) Publish notice of intent to prepare an environmental assessment, as describe in 40 CFR 1501.7;

(B) Conduct scoping, as described in 40 CFR 1501.7; and

(C) Seek comments on the environmental assessment, as described in 40 CFR 1503.1.

(iv) If, on the basis of an environmental assessment, it is determined that an EIS is not required, a FONSI, as described in 40 CFR 1508.13 will be prepared. The FONSI will include the environmental assessment or a summary of it and be available to the public from the Board. The Executive Director shall maintain a record of these decisions, making them available to interested parties upon request. Requests should be directed to the Executive Director, Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Program, 1099—14th Street, NW, Suite 2600 East, Washington, DC 20005. Prior to a final loan guarantee decision, a copy of the NEPA documentation shall be sent to the Board for consideration.

(6) Responsibilities and procedures for preparation of an environmental impact statement. (i) If after an environmental assessment has been completed, it is determined that an EIS is necessary, it and other related documentation will be prepared by the Executive Director in accordance with section 102(2)(c) of NEPA, this section, and 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508. The Executive Director may seek additional information from the applicant in preparing the EIS. Once the document is prepared, it shall be submitted to the Board. If the Board considers a document unsatisfactory, it shall be returned to the Executive Director for revision or supplementation prior to a loan guarantee decision; otherwise the Board will transmit the document to the Environmental Protection Agency.

(ii)(A) The following procedures, as discussed in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508, will be followed in preparing an EIS:

(1) The format and contents of the draft and final EIS shall be as discussed in 40 CFR 1502.

(2) The requirements of 40 CFR 1506.9 for filing of documents with the Environmental Protection Agency shall be followed.

(3) The Executive Director, consulting at his discretion with CEQ, shall examine carefully the basis on which supportive studies have been conducted to assure that such studies are objective and comprehensive in scope and in depth.

(4) NEPA requires that the decision making “utilize a systematic, interdisciplinary approach that will ensure the integrated use of the natural and social sciences and the environmental design arts.” 42 U.S.C. 4332(A). If such disciplines are not present on the Board staff, appropriate use should be made of personnel of Federal, State, and local agencies, universities, nonprofit organizations, or private industry.

(B) Until the Board issues a record of decision as provided in 40 CFR 1502.2 no action concerning the proposal shall be taken which would:

(7) Have an adverse environmental impact; or

(2) Limit the choice of reasonable alternatives.

(3) 40 CFR 1506.10 places certain limitations on the timing of Board decisions on taking “major Federal actions.” A loan guarantee shall not be made before the times set forth in 40 CFR 1506.10.

(iii) A public record of decision stating what the decision was; identifying alternatives that were considered, including the environmentally preferable one(s); discussing any national considerations that entered into the decision; and summarizing a monitoring and enforcement program if applicable for mitigating the environmental effects of a proposal; will be prepared. This record of decision will be prepared at the time the decision is made.


§ 400.207 Application evaluation.

(a) Eligibility screening. Applications will be reviewed to determine whether the Lender and Borrower are eligible, the information required under §409.205(b) is complete, and the proposed loan complies with applicable statutes and regulations. The Board
§ 400.208

can at any time reject an application that does not meet these requirements.

(b) Evaluation criteria. Applications that are determined to be eligible pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section shall be subject to a substantive review by the Board based upon the following evaluation factors, in order of importance:

(1) The ability of the Borrower to repay the loan by the date specified in the Loan Document, which shall be no later than December 31, 2005. Evaluation of this factor will consider the prospective earning power of the Borrower. An essential and necessary element of the Board’s evaluation of whether this criterion is satisfied is whether the applicant has committed to undertake significant efforts to eliminate or reduce economically unviable capacity;

(2) The adequacy of the proposed provisions to protect the Government, including sufficiency of Security, the priority of the lien position in the Security, and the percentage of Guarantee requested; and

(3) Adequacy of the underwriting analysis performed by the Lender in preparing the application and the ability of the Lender to administer the loan in full compliance with the requisite standard of care set forth in § 400.211(b).

(c) Decisions by the Board. Upon completion of the evaluation of an application and as soon as possible after its receipt, the Board will approve or deny an eligible application that is timely received under this Program. The Board shall notify the Applicants and the Borrower in writing of the approval or denial of an application as soon as possible. Approvals for loan Guarantees shall be conditioned upon compliance with § 400.208.

§ 400.209 Funding for the Program.

The Act provides funding for the costs incurred by the Government as a result of granting Guarantees under the Program. While pursuing the goals of the Act, it is the intent of the Board to minimize the cost of the Program to the Government. The Board will estimate the risk posed by the guaranteed loans to the funds appropriated for the costs of the Guarantees under the Program and operate the Program accordingly.

§ 400.210 Assignment or transfer of loans.

(a) Neither the Loan Documents nor the Guarantee of the Board may be modified, in whole or in part, without
Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board, Commerce

§ 400.215

the prior written approval of the Board.

(b) Upon notice to the Board and a certification by the assignor that the assignee is an Eligible Lender, and subject to the provisions of paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section and other provisions of this part, a Lender may assign or transfer its interest in the loan including the Loan documents and the Guarantee to a party that qualifies as an Eligible Lender pursuant to § 400.201. Any other assignment or transfer will require the prior written approval of the Board.

(c) The provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall not apply to transfers which occur by operation of law.

(d) The Agent must hold and may not assign or transfer an interest in a loan guaranteed under the Program equal to at least the lesser of $25 million or fifteen percent of the aggregate amount of the loan. In addition, the Agent must hold and may not assign or transfer an interest the Unguaranteed Portion of the loan equal to at least the minimum amount of the loan required to be held by the Agent under the preceding sentence multiplied by the percentage of the loan represented by the Unguaranteed Portion. A non-Agent Lender must hold and may not assign or transfer an interest in the Unguaranteed Portion of the loan after payment of the Guaranteed Portion has been made under the Guarantee.

[66 FR 53080, Oct. 19, 2001]

§ 400.211 Lender responsibilities.

The Lender shall have such obligations and duties to the Board as are set forth in the Guarantee.

[65 FR 70294, Nov. 22, 2000]

§ 400.212 Guarantee.

The Board shall adopt a form of Guarantee to be used by the Board under the Program, and shall publish the Guarantee on its website. Modifications to the provisions of the form of Guarantee must be approved and adopted by the Board.

[65 FR 70294, Nov. 22, 2000]

§ 400.213 Termination of obligations.

The Board shall have such rights to terminate the Guarantee as are set forth in the Guarantee.

[65 FR 70294, Nov. 22, 2000]

§ 400.214 Participations in guaranteed loans.

(a) Subject to paragraphs (b), (c) and (d) of this section, a Lender may distribute the risk of a portion of a loan guaranteed under the Program by sale of participations therein if:

(1) Neither the loan note nor the Guarantee is assigned, conveyed, sold, or transferred in whole or in part;

(2) The Lender remains solely responsible for the administration of the loan; and

(3) The Board’s ability to assert any and all defenses available to it under the Guarantee and the law is not adversely affected.

(b) The following categories of entities may purchase participations in loans guaranteed under the Program:

(1) Eligible Lenders;

(2) Private investment funds and insurance companies that do not usually invest in commercial loans;

(3) Steel company suppliers or customers, who are interested in participating as a means of commencing or solidifying the supplier or customer relationship with the borrower; or

(4) Any other entity approved by the Board on a case-by-case basis.

(c) The Agent may not grant participations in that portion of its interest in a loan that may not be assigned or transferred under § 400.210(d). A Lender, other than the Agent, may not grant participations in that portion of its interest in a loan that may not be assigned or transferred under § 400.210(d).

(d) At least 5 percent of any participation interest in a loan must be unguaranteed.

[65 FR 70294, Nov. 22, 2000]

§ 400.215 Supplemental Guarantees.

The Board will allow the structure of a guaranteed loan to include one or more Supplemental Guarantees that
§ 400.215

cover the Unguaranteed Portion of the loan; provided that:
(a) There shall be no Supplemental Guarantee with respect to the Unguaranteed Portion required to be held by the Agent pursuant to §400.210(c);
(b) The Loan Documents relating to any Supplemental Guarantee shall be acceptable in form and substance to the Board; and
(c) In approving the issuance of a Guarantee, the Board may impose any conditions with respect to Supplemental Guarantee(s) relating to the loan that it considers appropriate.

[66 FR 53080, Oct. 19, 2001]
CHAPTER V—EMERGENCY OIL AND GAS GUARANTEED LOAN BOARD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Program
Subpart A—General

§ 500.1 Purpose.

This part is issued by the Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board pursuant to section 552 of title 5 of the United States Code and the Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Act, Chapter 2 of Public Law 106-51. This part contains rules for making and servicing loans to qualified oil and gas guaranteed by the Board.

§ 500.2 Definitions.

(a) Act means the Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Program Act, Chapter 2 of Public Law 106-51.

(b) Administer, administering and administration, mean the Lender’s actions in making, disbursing, servicing (including, but not limited to care, preservation and maintenance of collateral), collecting and liquidating a loan and security.

(c) Agent means that Lender authorized to take such actions, exercise such powers, and perform such duties on behalf and in representation of all Lenders party to a Guarantee of a single loan, as is required by, or necessarily incidental to, the terms and conditions of the Guarantee.

(d) Applicant means the private banking or investment institution applying for a loan guarantee under this Part.

(e) Board means the Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board.

(f) Borrower means a Qualified Oil and Gas Company which could receive a loan guaranteed by the Board under this Program.

(g) Guarantee means the written agreement between the Board and one or more Lenders, and approved by the Borrower, pursuant to which the Board guarantees repayment of a specified percentage of the principal of the loan, including the Special Terms and Conditions, the General Terms and Conditions, and all exhibits thereto.

(h) Lender means a private banking or investment institution, eligible under §500.201, that is a party to a Guarantee issued by the Board. With respect to a Guarantee of a single loan to which more than one Lender is a party, the term Lender means Agent.

(i) Loan Documents mean the loan agreement and all other instruments, and all documentation between the Lender and the Borrower evidencing the making, disbursing, securing, collecting, or otherwise administering of the loan.

(j) Program means the Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Program established by the Act.

(k) Security means all property, real or personal, required by the provisions of the Act.
§ 500.100 Purpose and scope.

This subpart describes the Board's authorities and organizational structure, the means and rules by which the Board takes actions, and procedures for public access to Board records.

§ 500.101 Composition of the Board.

The Board consists of the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, who acts as Chairman of the Board, the Chairman of the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Secretary of Commerce.

§ 500.102 Authority of the Board.

Pursuant to the provisions of the Act, the Board is authorized to guarantee loans provided to Qualified Oil and Gas companies by private banking and investment institutions in accordance with the procedures, rules, and regulations established by the Board, to make the determinations authorized by the Act, and to take such other actions as necessary to carry out its functions in accordance with the Act.

§ 500.103 Offices.

The principal offices of the Board are in the U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20230.

§ 500.104 Meetings and actions of the Board.

(a) Place and frequency. The Board meets, on the call of the Chairman, in order to consider matters requiring action by the Board. Time and place for any such meeting shall be determined by the members of the Board.

(b) Quorum and voting. Two voting members of the Board constitute a quorum for the transaction of business. All decisions and determinations of the Board shall be made by a majority vote of the voting members. All votes on determinations of the Board required by the Act shall be recorded in the minutes. A Board member may request that any vote be recorded according to individual Board members.

(c) Agenda of meetings. To the extent practicable, an agenda for each meeting shall be distributed to members of the Board at least two days in advance of the date of the meeting, together with copies of materials relevant to the agenda items.

(d) Minutes. The Secretary of the Board shall keep minutes of each Board meeting and of action taken without a meeting, a draft of which is to be distributed to each member of the Board as soon as practicable after each meeting or action. To the extent practicable, the minutes of a Board meeting shall be corrected and approved at the next meeting of the Board.

(e) Use of conference call communications equipment. Any member may participate in a meeting of the Board through the use of conference call, telephone or similar communications equipment, by means of which all persons participating in the meeting can simultaneous speak to and hear each other. Any member so participating in a meeting shall be deemed present for all purposes. Actions taken by the Board at meetings conducted through the use of such equipment, including...
§ 500.107 Freedom of Information Act.

(a) Definitions. All terms used in this section which are defined in 5 U.S.C. 551 or 5 U.S.C. 552 shall have the same meaning in this section. In addition the following definitions apply to this section:

(1) FOIA, as used in this section, means the “Freedom of Information Act,” as amended, 5 U.S.C. 552.

(2) Commercial use request means a request from or on behalf of one who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers the commercial, trade, or profit interests of the requester or the person on whose behalf the request is made.

(3) Direct costs mean those expenditures that the Board actually incurs in searching for, reviewing, and duplicating documents in response to a request made under paragraph (c) of this section. Direct costs include, for example, the labor costs of the employee performing the work (the basic rate of pay for the employee, plus 16 percent of that rate to cover benefits). Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as the costs of space and heating or lighting of the facility in which the records are kept.

(4) Duplication means the process of making a copy of a document in response to a request for disclosure of records or for inspection of original records that contain exempt material or that otherwise cannot be inspected directly. Among others, such copies may take the form of paper, microfilm, audiovisual materials, or machine-readable documentation (e.g., magnetic tape or disk).
§ 500.107 13 CFR Ch. V (1–1–02 Edition)

(5) Educational institution means a preschool, a public or private elementary or secondary school, or an institution of undergraduate higher education, graduate higher education, professional education, or an institution of vocational education that operates a program of scholarly research.

(6) Noncommercial scientific institution refers to an institution that is not operated on a “commercial” basis (as that term is used in this section) and which is operated solely for the purpose of conducting scientific research, the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry.

(7) News means information about current events or that would be of current interest to the public. Examples of media entities include, but are not limited to, television or radio stations broadcasting to the public at large, and publishers of newspapers and other periodicals (but only in those instances when they can qualify as disseminators of “news”) who make their products available for purchase or subscription by the general public. “Freelance” journalists may be regarded as working for a news organization if they can demonstrate a solid basis for expecting publication through that organization, even though not actually employed by it.

(8) Representative of the news media means any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the general public.

(9) Review means the process of examining documents, located in response to a request for access, to determine whether any portion of a document is exempt information. It includes doing all that is necessary to excise the documents and otherwise to prepare them for release. Review does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the application of exemptions.

(10) Search means the process of looking for material that is responsive to a request, including page-by-page or line-by-line identification within documents. Searches may be done manually or by computer.

(b) Records available for public inspection and copying—(1) Types of records made available. The information in this section is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of the Freedom of Information Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552) (FOIA). This section sets forth the procedures the Board follows to make publicly available the materials specified in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). These materials shall be made available for inspection and copying at the Board’s Freedom of Information Office pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). Information routinely provided to the public as part of a regular Board activity (for example, press releases) may be provided to the public without following this section.

(2) Reading room procedures. Information available under this section is available for inspection and copying, from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. weekdays, at the Freedom of Information Office of the Board, Oil and Gas Guarantee Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20230.

(3) Electronic records. Information available under this section that was created on or after November 1, 1996, shall also be available on the Board’s website, found at www.doc.gov.

(c) Records available to the public on request—(1) Types of records made available. All records of the Board that are not available under paragraph (b) of this section shall be made available upon request, pursuant to the procedures in this section and the exceptions set forth in the FOIA. The Board’s policy is to make discretionary disclosures of records or information exempt from disclosure under the FOIA whenever disclosure would not foreseeably harm an interest protected by a FOIA exemption, but this policy does not create any right enforceable in court.

(2) Procedures for requesting records. A request for records shall reasonably describe the records in a way that enables the Board’s staff to identify and produce the records with reasonable effort and without unduly burdening or significantly interfering with any of the Board’s operations. The request shall be submitted in writing to the Secretary of the Board, Oil and Gas Guarantee Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20230; or sent by facsimile to the Secretary of the Board. The request shall
Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, Commerce § 500.107

be clearly marked FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT REQUEST.

(3) Contents of request. The request shall contain the following information:

(i) The name and address of the requester, and the telephone number at which the requester can be reached during normal business hours;

(ii) Whether the requested information is intended for commercial use, or whether the requester represents an educational or noncommercial scientific institution, or news media;

(iii) A statement agreeing to pay the applicable fees, or a statement identifying any fee limitation desired, or a request for a waiver or reduction of fees that satisfies paragraph (f) of this section.

(d) Processing requests—(1) Priority of responses. The date of receipt for any request, including one that is addressed incorrectly or that is referred to the Board by another agency, is the date the Secretary of the Board actually receives the request. The Secretary of the Board shall normally process requests in the order they are received. However, in the Secretary of the Board’s discretion, the Board may use two or more processing tracks by distinguishing between simple and more complex requests based on the number of pages involved, or some other measure of the amount of work and/or time needed to process the request, and whether the request qualifies for expedited processing as described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section. When using multitrack processing, the Secretary of the Board may provide requesters in the slower track(s) with an opportunity to limit the scope of their request in order to qualify for faster processing. The Secretary of the Board shall contact the requester by telephone or by letter, whichever is most efficient in each case.

(2) Expedited processing. (i) A person may request expedited access to records by submitting a statement, certified to be true and correct to the best of that person’s knowledge and belief, that demonstrates a compelling need for the records, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(E)(v).

(ii) The Secretary of the Board shall notify a requester of the determination whether to grant or deny a request for expedited processing within ten working days of receipt of the request. If the Secretary of the Board grants the request for expedited processing, the Board shall process the request for access to information as soon as practicable. If the Secretary of the Board denies a request for expedited processing, the requester may file an appeal pursuant to the procedures set forth in paragraph (e) of this section, and the Board shall respond to the appeal within twenty days after the appeal was received by the Board.

(3) Time limits. The time for response to requests shall be 20 working days, except:

(i) In the case of expedited treatment under paragraph (d)(2) of this section;

(ii) Where the running of such time is suspended for payment of fees pursuant to paragraph (f)(2)(ii) of this section;

(iii) Where the estimated charge is less than $250, and the requester does not guarantee payment pursuant to paragraph (f)(2)(i) of this section; or

(iv) In unusual circumstances, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(B)(iii), the time limit may be extended for a period of time not to exceed 10 working days as provided by written notice to the requester, setting forth the reasons for the extension and the date on which a determination is expected to be dispatched; or such alternative time period as mutually agreed to by the Secretary of the Board and the requester when the Secretary of the Board notifies the requester that the request cannot be processed in the specified time limit.

(4) Response to request. In response to a request that satisfies paragraph (c) of this paragraph, an appropriate search shall be conducted of records in the custody and control of the Board on the date of receipt of the request, and a review made of any responsive information located. The Secretary of the Board shall notify the requester of:

(i) The Secretary of the Board’s determination of the request and the reasons therefor;

(ii) The information withheld, and the basis for withholding; and

(iii) The right to appeal any denial or partial denial, pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.
§ 500.107  13 CFR Ch. V (1–1–02 Edition)

(5) Referral to another agency. To the extent a request covers documents that were created by, obtained from, classified by, or is in the primary interest of another agency, the Secretary of the Board may refer the request to that agency for a direct response by that agency and inform the requester promptly of the referral. The Secretary of the Board shall consult with another Federal agency before responding to a requester if the Board receives a request for a record in which:

(i) Another Federal agency subject to the FOIA has a significant interest, but not the primary interest; or

(ii) Another Federal agency not subject to the FOIA has the primary interest or a significant interest. Ordinarily, the agency that originated a record will be presumed to have the primary interest in it.

(6) Providing responsive records. (i) A copy of records or portions of records responsive to the request shall be sent to the requester by regular U.S. mail to the address indicated in the request, unless the requester elects to take delivery of the documents at the Board’s Freedom of Information Office or makes other acceptable arrangements, or the Secretary of the Board deems it appropriate to send the documents by another means. The Secretary of the Board shall provide a copy of the record in any form or format requested if the record is readily reproducible in that form or format, but the Secretary of the Board need not provide more than one copy of any record to a requester.

(ii) The Secretary of the Board shall provide any reasonably segregable portion of a record that is responsive to the request after deleting those portions that are exempt under the FOIA or this section.

(iii) Except where disclosure is expressly prohibited by statute, regulation, or order, the Secretary of the Board may authorize the release of records that are exempt from mandatory disclosure whenever the Board or designated Board members determine that there would be no foreseeable harm in such disclosure.

(iv) The Board is not required in response to the request to create records or otherwise to prepare new records.

(7) Prohibition against disclosure. Except as provided in this part, no officer, employee, or agent of the Board shall disclose or permit the disclosure of any unpublished information of the Board to any person (other than Board officers, employees, or agents properly entitled to such information for the performance of official duties), unless required by law.

(e) Appeals. (1) Any person denied access to Board records requested under paragraph (c) of this section, denied expedited processing under paragraph (d) of this section, or denied a waiver of fees under paragraph (f) of this section may file a written appeal within 30 calendar days after the date of such denial with the Board. The written appeal shall prominently display the phrase FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT APPEAL on the first page, and shall be addressed to the General Counsel of the Board, Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20230; or sent by facsimile to the General Counsel of the Board. The appeal shall include a copy of the original request, the initial denial, if any, and a statement of the reasons why the requested records should be made available and why the initial denial was in error.

(2) The General Counsel of the Board shall make a determination regarding any appeal within 20 working days of actual receipt of the appeal, and the determination letter shall notify the appealing party of the right to seek judicial review in event of denial.

(f) Fee schedules; waiver of fees—(1) Fee schedule. The fees applicable to a request for records pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section are set forth in the uniform fee schedule at the end of this paragraph (b).

(i) Search. (A) Search fees shall be charged for all requests—other than requests made by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media—subject to the limitations of paragraph (f)(1)(iv) of this section. The Secretary of the Board shall charge for time spent searching even if no responsive record is located or if the Secretary of the Board withholds the record(s) located as entirely exempt from disclosure. Search fees shall be
the direct costs of conducting the search by the involved employees.

(B) For computer searches of records, requesters will be charged the direct costs of conducting the search, although certain requesters (as provided in paragraph (f)(3) of this section) will be charged no search fee and certain other requesters (as provided in paragraph (f)(3)) are entitled to the cost equivalent of two hours of manual search time without charge. These direct costs include the costs, attributable to the search, of operating a central processing unit and operator/programmer salary.

(ii) Duplication. Duplication fees will be charged to all requesters, subject to the limitations of paragraph (f)(1)(iv) of this section. For a paper photocopy of a record (no more than one copy of which need be supplied), the fee shall be 15 cents per page. For copies produced by computer, such as tapes or printouts, the Secretary of the Board shall charge the direct costs, including operator time, of producing the copy. For other forms of duplication, the Secretary of the Board will charge the direct costs of that duplication.

(iii) Review. Review fees shall be charged to requesters who make a commercial use request. Review fees shall be charged only for the initial record review—the review done when the Secretary of the Board determines whether an exemption applies to a particular record at the initial request level. No charge will be made for review at the administrative appeal level for an exemption already applied. However, records withheld under an exemption that is subsequently determined not to apply may be reviewed again to determine whether any other exemption not previously considered applies, and the costs of that review are chargeable. Review fees shall be the direct costs of conducting the review by the involved employees.

(iv) Limitations on charging fees. (A) No search fee will be charged for requests by educational institutions, noncommercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media.

(B) No search fee or review fee will be charged for a quarter-hour period unless more than half of that period is required for search or review.

(C) Whenever a total fee calculated under this paragraph is $25 or less for any request, no fee will be charged.

(D) For requesters other than those seeking records for a commercial use, no fee will be charged unless the cost of search in excess of two hours plus the cost of duplication in excess of 100 pages totals more than $25.

(2) Payment procedures. All persons requesting records pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section shall pay the applicable fees before the Secretary of the Board sends copies of the requested records, unless a fee waiver has been granted pursuant to paragraph (f)(6) of this section. Requesters must pay fees by check or money order made payable to the Treasury of the United States.

(i) Advance notification of fees. If the estimated charges are likely to exceed $25, the Secretary of the Board shall notify the requester of the estimated amount, unless the requester has indicated a willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. Upon receipt of such notice, the requester may confer with the Secretary of the Board to re-formulate the request to lower the costs. The processing of the request shall be suspended until the requester provides the Secretary of the Board with a written guarantee that payment will be made upon completion of the processing.

(ii) Advance payment. The Secretary of the Board shall require advance payment of any fee estimated to exceed $250. The Secretary of the Board shall also require full payment in advance where a requester has previously failed to pay a fee in a timely fashion. If an advance payment of an estimated fee exceeds the actual total fee by $1 or more, the difference shall be refunded to the requester. The time period for responding to requests under paragraph (d)(4) of this section, and the processing of the request shall be suspended until the Secretary of the Board receives the required payment.

(iii) Late charges. The Secretary of the Board may assess interest charges when fee payment is not made within 30 days of the date on which the billing was sent. Assessment of such interest will commence on the 31st day following the day on which the billing
§ 500.107

was sent. Interest is at the rate prescribed in 31 U.S.C. 3717.

(3) Categories of uses. The fees assessed depend upon the fee category. In determining which category is appropriate, the Secretary of the Board shall look to the identity of the requester and the intended use set forth in the request for records. Where a requester’s description of the use is insufficient to make a determination, the Secretary of the Board may seek additional clarification before categorizing the request.

(i) Commercial use requester. The fees for search, duplication, and review apply when records are requested for commercial use.

(ii) Educational, non-commercial scientific institutions, or representatives of the news media requesters. The fees for duplication apply when records are not sought for commercial use, and the requester is a representative of the news media or an educational or non-commercial scientific institution, whose purpose is scholarly or scientific research. The first 100 pages of duplication, however, will be provided free.

(iii) All other requesters. For all other requests, the fees for search and duplication apply. The first two hours of search time and the first 100 pages of duplication, however, will be provided free.

(4) Nonproductive search. Fees for search may be charged even if no responsive documents are found. Fees for search and review may be charged even if the request is denied.

(5) Aggregated requests. A requester may not file multiple requests at the same time, solely in order to avoid payment of fees. If the Secretary of the Board reasonably believes that a requester is separating a request into a series of requests for the purpose of evading the assessment of fees or that several requesters appear to be acting together to submit multiple requests solely in order to avoid payment of fees, the Secretary of the Board may aggregate such requests and charge accordingly. It is considered reasonable for the Secretary of the Board to presume that multiple requests by one requester on the same topic made within a 30-day period have been made to avoid fees.

(6) Waiver or reduction of fees. A request for a waiver or reduction of the fees, and the justification for the waiver, shall be included with the request for records to which it pertains. If a waiver is requested and the requester has not indicated in writing an agreement to pay the applicable fees if the waiver request is denied, the time for response to the request for documents, as set forth in paragraph (4)(d) of this section, shall not begin until a determination has been made on the request for a waiver or reduction of fees.

(i) Standards for determining waiver or reduction. The Secretary of the Board may grant a waiver or reduction of fees where it is determined both that disclosure of the information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operation or activities of the government, and that the disclosure of information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. In making this determination, the following factors shall be considered:

(A) Whether the subject of the records concerns the operations or activities of the government;

(B) Whether disclosure of the information is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of government operations or activities;

(C) Whether the requester has the intention and ability to disseminate the information to the public;

(D) Whether the information is already in the public domain;

(E) Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the disclosure; and, if so,

(F) Whether the magnitude of the identified commercial interest of the requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is primarily in the commercial interest of the requester.

(ii) Contents of request for waiver. A request for a waiver or reduction of fees shall include a clear statement of how the request satisfies the criteria set forth in paragraph (f)(6)(i) of this section.

(iii) Burden of proof. The burden shall be on the requester to present evidence
Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, Commerce § 500.107

or information in support of a request for a waiver or reduction of fees.

(iv) Determination by Secretary of the Board. The Secretary of the Board shall make a determination on the request for a waiver or reduction of fees and shall notify the requester accordingly. A denial may be appealed to the Board in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(7) Uniform fee schedule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) Manual search</td>
<td>Actual salary rate of employee involved, plus 16 percent of salary rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Computerized search</td>
<td>Actual direct cost, including operator time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Duplication of records:</td>
<td>$1.15 per page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) Paper copy reproduction</td>
<td>Actual direct cost, including operator time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) Other reproduction (e.g., computer disk or printout, microfilm, microfiche, or microform).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) Review of records (includes preparation for release, i.e. excising).</td>
<td>Actual salary rate of employee conducting review, plus 16 percent of salary rate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(g) Request for confidential treatment of business information.—(1) Submission of request. Any submitter of information to the Board who desires confidential treatment of business information pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4) shall file a request for confidential treatment with the Board at the time the information is submitted or a reasonable time after submission.

(2) Form of request. Each request for confidential treatment of business information shall state in reasonable detail the facts supporting the commercial or financial nature of the business information and the legal justification under which the business information should be protected. Conclusionary statements that release of the information would cause competitive harm generally will not be considered sufficient to justify confidential treatment.

(3) Designation and separation of confidential material. All information considered confidential by a submitter shall be clearly designated "PROPRIETARY" or "BUSINESS CONFIDENTIAL" in the submission and separated from information for which confidential treatment is not requested. Failure to segregate confidential commercial or financial information from other material may result in release of the nonsegregated material to the public without notice to the submitter.

(h) Request for access to confidential commercial or financial information.—(1) Request for confidential commercial or financial information. A request by a submitter for confidential treatment of any business information shall be considered in connection with a request for access to that information.

(2) Notice to the submitter. (i) The Secretary of the Board shall notify a submitter who requested confidential treatment of information pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(4), of the request for access.

(ii) Absent a request for confidential treatment, the Secretary of the Board may notify a submitter of a request for access to submitter’s business information if the Secretary of the Board reasonably believes that disclosure of the information may cause substantial competitive harm to the submitter.

(iii) The notice given to the submitter by mail, return receipt requested, shall be given as soon as practicable after receipt of the request for access, and shall describe the request and provide the submitter seven working days from the date of notice, to submit written objections to disclosure of the information. Such statement shall specify all grounds for withholding any of the information and shall demonstrate why the information which is considered to be commercial or financial information, and that the information is a trade secret, is privileged or confidential, or that its disclosure is likely to cause substantial competitive harm to the submitter. If the submitter fails to respond to the notice within the time specified, the submitter will be considered to have no objection to the release of the information. Information a submitter provides under this paragraph may itself be subject to disclosure under the FOIA.

(3) Exceptions to notice to submitter. Notice to the submitter need not be given if:

(i) The Secretary of the Board determines that the request for access should be denied;

(ii) The requested information lawfully has been made available to the public;
§ 500.108 Restrictions on lobbying.

(a) No funds received through a loan guaranteed under this Program may be expended by the recipient of a Federal contract, grant, loan, loan Guarantee, or cooperative agreement to pay any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with any of the following covered Federal actions: the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan or loan Guarantee, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, loan Guarantee, or cooperative agreement.

(b) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan shall file with that agency a statement, set forth in the application form, whether that person has made or has agreed to make any payment to influence or attempt to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with that loan insurance or Guarantee.

(c) Each person who requests or receives from an agency a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan shall file with that agency a Standard Form-LLL if that person has made or has agreed to make any payment to influence or attempt to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with that loan insurance or Guarantee.

(d) Each person shall file a certification, contained in the application form, and a disclosure form (Standard Form-LLL), if required, with each submission that initiates agency consideration of such person for:

(1) Award of a Federal contract, grant, or cooperative agreement exceeding $100,000; or

(2) An award of a Federal loan or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or guarantee a loan exceeding $150,000.

(e) Each person shall file a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, upon receipt by such person of:
Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, Commerce § 500.109

(1) A Federal contract, grant, or cooperative agreement exceeding $100,000; or

(2) A Federal loan or a commitment providing for the United States to insure or Guarantee a loan exceeding $150,000, unless such person previously filed a certification, and a disclosure form, if required, under paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) Each person shall file a disclosure form at the end of each calendar quarter in which there occurs any event that requires disclosure or that materially affects the accuracy of the information contained in any disclosure form previously filed by such person under paragraphs (d) or (e) of this section. An event that materially affects the accuracy of the information reported includes:

(1) A cumulative increase of $25,000 or more in the amount paid or expected to be paid for influencing or attempting to influence a covered Federal action; or

(2) A change in the person(s) or individual(s) influencing or attempting to influence a covered Federal action; or

(3) A change in the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) contacted to influence or attempt to influence a covered Federal action.

§ 500.109 Government-wide debarment and suspension (nonprocurement).

(a) Executive Order (E.O.) 12549 provides that, to the extent permitted by law, Executive departments and agencies shall participate in a government-wide system for nonprocurement debarment and suspension. A person who is debarred or suspended shall be excluded from Federal financial and non-financial assistance and benefits under Federal programs and activities. Debarment or suspension of a participant in a program by one agency shall have government-wide effect. The Board shall review the List of Debarred entities prior to making final loan Guarantee decisions. Suspension or debarment may be a basis for denying a loan Guarantee.

(b) This section applies to all persons who have participated, are currently participating or may reasonably be expected to participate in transactions under Federal nonprocurement programs. For purposes of this section such transactions will be referred to as “covered transactions”.

(1) Covered transaction. For purposes of this section, a covered transaction is a primary covered transaction or a lower tier covered transaction. Covered transactions at any tier need not involve the transfer of Federal funds.

(i) Primary covered transaction. Except as noted in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, a primary covered transaction is any nonprocurement transaction between an agency and a person, regardless of type, including: grants, cooperative agreements, scholarships, fellowships, contracts of assistance, loans, loan Guarantees, subsidies, insurance, payments for specified use, donation agreements and any other nonprocurement transactions between a Federal agency and a person.

(ii) Lower tier covered transaction. A lower tier covered transaction is:

(A) Any transaction between a participant and a person other than a procurement contract for goods or services, regardless of type, under a primary covered transaction;

(B) Any procurement contract for goods or services between a participant and a person under a covered transaction, regardless of amount, under which that person will have a critical influence on or substantive control over that covered transaction. Such persons may include loan officers or chief executive officers acting as principal investigators and providers of federally-required audit services.

(2) Exceptions. The following transactions are not covered:

(i) Statutory entitlements or mandatory awards (but not subtier awards thereunder which are not themselves mandatory), including deposited funds insured by the Federal Government;
(ii) Direct awards to foreign governments or public international organizations, or transactions with foreign governments or foreign governmental entities, public international organizations, foreign government owned (in whole or in part) or controlled entities, entities consisting wholly or partially of foreign governments or foreign governmental entities;

(iii) Benefits to an individual as a personal entitlement without regard to the individual’s present responsibility (but benefits received in an individual’s business capacity are not excepted);

(iv) Federal employment;

(v) Transactions pursuant to national or agency-recognized emergencies or disasters;

(vi) Incidental benefits derived from ordinary governmental operations; and

(vii) Other transactions where the application of this section would be prohibited by law.

(3) Board covered transactions. This section applies to the Board’s loan Guarantees, subcontracts and transactions at any tier that are charges as direct or indirect costs, regardless of type.

(c) Primary covered transactions. Except to the extent prohibited by law, persons who are debarred or suspended shall be excluded from primary covered transactions as either participants or principals throughout the Executive Branch of the Federal Government for the period of their debarment, suspension, or the period they are proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4. Accordingly, no agency shall enter into primary covered transactions with such excluded persons during such period, except as permitted pursuant to paragraph (i) of this section.

(d) Lower tier covered transactions. Except to the extent prohibited by law, persons who have been proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, debarred or suspended shall be excluded from participating as either participants or principals in all lower tier covered transactions (see paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section) for the period of their exclusion.

(e) Exceptions. Debarment or suspension does not affect a person’s eligibility for—

(1) Statutory entitlements or mandatory awards (but not subtier awards thereunder which are not themselves mandatory), including deposited funds insured by the Federal Government;

(2) Direct awards to foreign governments or public international organizations, or transactions with foreign governments or foreign governmental entities, public international organizations, foreign government owned (in whole or in part) or controlled entities, and entities consisting wholly or partially of foreign governments or foreign governmental entities;

(3) Benefits to an individual as a personal entitlement without regard to the individual’s present responsibility (but benefits received in an individual’s business capacity are not excepted);

(4) Federal employment;

(5) Transactions pursuant to national or agency-recognized emergencies or disasters;

(6) Incidental benefits derived from ordinary governmental operations; and

(7) Other transactions where the application of this section would be prohibited by law.

(f) Persons who are ineligible are excluded in accordance with the applicable statutory, executive order, or regulatory authority.

(g) Persons who accept voluntary exclusions are excluded in accordance with the terms of their settlements. The Board shall, and participants may, contact the original action agency to ascertain the extent of the exclusion.

(h) The Board may grant an exception permitting a debarred, suspended, or voluntarily excluded person, or a person proposed for debarment under 48 CFR part 9, subpart 9.4, to participate in a particular covered transaction upon a written determination by the agency head or an authorized designee stating the reason(s) for deviating from the Presidential policy established by Executive Order 12549. However, in accordance with the President’s stated intention in the Executive Order, exceptions shall be granted only infrequently. Exceptions shall be reported in accordance with the Executive Order.

(i) Notwithstanding the debarment, suspension, proposed debarment under
§ 500.201 Eligible Borrower.

(a) An eligible Borrower must be a Qualified Oil and Gas Company that can demonstrate:

(1) Credit is not otherwise available to it under reasonable terms or conditions sufficient to meet its financing needs, as reflected in the financial and business plans of the company;

(2) The prospective earning power of that company, together with the character and value of the security pledged, furnish reasonable assurance of repayment of the loan to be guaranteed in accordance with its terms;

(3) The company has agreed to permit audits by the General Accounting Office and an independent auditor acceptable to the Board prior to the issuance of the guarantee and while any such guaranteed loan is outstanding; and

(4) It has experienced layoffs, production losses, or financial losses between January 1, 1997, and the date of application, demonstrated as a comparison between employment, production, or net income existing on January 1, 1997 and on the date of application.

(b) The Lender must provide with its application a letter from at least one lending institution other than the Lender to which the Borrower has applied for substantially the same loan they are now applying for, and the reasons the Borrower was unable to obtain the financing for which it applied. In addition, the Lender applying for a guarantee under this Program must certify that it would not make the loan without the Board’s guarantee.

§ 500.201 Eligible Lender.

(a) A lender eligible to apply to the Board for a Guarantee of a loan must be:

(1) A banking institution, such as a commercial bank or trust company, subject to regulation by the Federal...
§ 500.202 Loan amount.  

The aggregate amount of loan principal guaranteed under this Program to a single Qualified Oil and Gas Company may not exceed $10 million.

§ 500.203 Guarantee percentage.  

A guarantee issued by the Board may not exceed 85 percent of the amount of the principal of a loan to a Qualified Oil and Gas Company.

§ 500.204 Loan terms.  

(a) All loans guaranteed under the Program shall be due and payable in full no later than December 31, 2010.

(b) Loans guaranteed under the Program must bear a rate of interest determined by the Board to be reasonable. The reasonableness of an interest rate will be determined with respect to current average yields on outstanding obligations of the United States with remaining periods of maturity comparable to the term of the loan sought to be guaranteed. The Board may reject an application to guarantee a loan if it determines the interest rate of such loan to be unreasonable.

(c)(1) The performance of all of the Borrower’s obligations under the Loan Documents shall be secured by, and shall have the priority in, such Security as provided for within the terms and conditions of the Guarantee.

(2) Without limiting the Lender’s or Borrower’s obligations under paragraph (c) of this section, at a minimum, the loan shall be secured by:

(i) A fully perfected and enforceable security interest and or lien, with first
priority over conflicting security interests or other liens in all property acquired, improved, or derived from the loan funds; and

(ii) A fully perfected and enforceable security interest and/or lien in any other property of the Borrower’s pledged to secure the loan, including accessions, replacements, proceeds, or property given by a third party as Security for the loan, the priority of which shall be, at a minimum, equal in status with the existing highest voluntarily granted or acquired interest or lien;

(3) The entire loan will be secured by the same Security with equal lien priority for the guaranteed and the unguaranteed portions of the loan. The unguaranteed portion of the loan will neither be paid first nor given any preference over the guaranteed portion.

(4) An Applicant’s compliance with paragraph (c)(2) of this section does not assure a finding of reasonable assurance of repayment, or assure the Board’s Guarantee of the loan.

(d) An eligible Lender may assess and collect from the Borrower such other fees and costs associated with the application and origination of the loan as are reasonable and customary, taking into consideration the amount and complexity of the credit. The Board may take such other fees and costs into consideration when determining whether to offer a Guarantee to the Lender.

§ 500.205 Application process.

(a) Application process. An original application and three copies must be received by the Board no later than 5 P.M., EST, February 28, 2000, in the U.S. Department of Commerce, 1401 Constitution Avenue, NW., room H–2500, Washington, DC 20230. Applications which have been provided to a delivery service on or before February 27, 2000, with “delivery guaranteed” before 5 P.M. on February 28, 2000, will be acceptable for review if the Applicant can document that the application was provided to the delivery service with delivery to the address listed in this section guaranteed prior to the closing date and time. A postmark of February 27, 2000, is not sufficient to meet this deadline as the application must be received by the required date and time. Applications will not be accepted via facsimile machine transmission or electronic mail.

(b) Applications shall contain the following:

(1) A completed Form, “Application for Oil and Gas Guarantee Loan”;

(2) The information required for the completion of Form “Environmental Assessment and Compliance Findings for Related Environmental Laws” and attachments, as required by § 500.206(a)(2)(i)(D), unless the project is categorically excluded under § 500.206(b);

(3) All Loan Documents that will be signed by the Lender and the Borrower if the application is approved, including all terms and conditions of, and Security or additional Security to assure the Borrower’s performance under, the loan;

(4) Certification by the chairman of the board and the chief executive officer of the Borrower acknowledging that the Borrower is aware that the Lender is applying to the Board for a Guarantee of a loan under the Program, as described in the Loan Documents, and agreeing to permit audits by the General Accounting Office, its designee, an independent auditor acceptable to the Board prior to the issuance of the Guarantee and annually thereafter while such guarantee is outstanding;

(5) The Lender’s full written underwriting analysis of the loan to be guaranteed by the Board;

(6) A certification that the Lender has followed the same loan underwriting analysis with the loan to be guaranteed as it would follow for a loan not guaranteed by the Government; and a certification by the Lender, that the loan, Lender, and Borrower meet each of the requirements of the Program as set forth in the Act and the Board’s rules in this part;

(7) A description of all Security for the loan, including, as applicable, current appraisal of real and personal property, copies of any appropriate environmental site assessments, and current personal and corporate financial statements of any guarantors for the
same periods as required for the Borrower. Appraisals of real property shall be prepared by State licensed or certified appraisers, and be consistent with the “Uniform Standards of Professional Appraisal Practice,” promulgated by the Appraisal Standards Board of the Appraisal Foundation. Financial statements of guarantors shall be prepared by independent Certified Public Accountants;

(b)(i) An independent oil and gas company, as defined in section 201(c)(3)(A)(i) of the Act, is required to submit:

(A) For loans less than $5 million, three years of financial statements reviewed by a certified public accountant following generally accepted accounting principles, as well as any interim financial statements; or

(B) For loans of $5 million or greater, three years of financial statements must be submitted. The most recent year’s statement must be audited by an independent certified public accountant. Statements from the prior two years must be reviewed by a certified public accountant following generally accepted accounting principles. In addition, any interim financial statements and associated notes must be submitted as well.

(ii) A service company, as defined in section 201(c)(3)(A)(ii) of the Act, is required to submit consolidated financial statements of the Borrower for the previous three years that have been audited by an independent certified public accountant, including any associated notes, as well as any interim financial statements and associated notes.

§ 500.206 Environmental requirements.

(a)(1) In General. Environmental assessments of the Board’s actions will be conducted in accordance with applicable statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders. Therefore, each application for a Guarantee under the Program must be accompanied by information necessary for the Board to meet the requirements of applicable law.

(2) Actions requiring compliance with NEPA. (i) The types of actions classified as “major Federal actions” subject to NEPA procedures are discussed generally in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508.

(ii) With respect to this Program, these actions typically include:

(A) Any project, permanent or temporary, that will involve construction and/or installations;

(B) Any project, permanent or temporary, that will involve ground disturbing activities; and

(C) Any project supporting renovation, other than interior remodeling.

(3) Environmental information required from the Lender. (i) Environmental data or documentation concerning the use of the proceeds of any loan guaranteed
under this Program must be provided by the Lender to the Board to assist the Board in meeting its legal responsibilities. The Lender may obtain this information from the Borrower. Such information includes:

(A) Documentation for an environmental threshold review from qualified data sources, such as a Federal, State or local agency with expertise and experience in environmental protection, or other sources, qualified to provide reliable environmental information;

(B) Any previously prepared environmental reports or data relevant to the loan at issue;

(C) Any environmental review prepared by Federal, State, or local agencies relevant to the loan at issue;

(D) The information required for the completion of Form XYZ, "Environmental Assessment and Compliance Findings for Related Environmental Laws;" and

(E) Any other information that can be used by the Board to ensure compliance with environmental laws.

(ii) All information supplied by the Lender is subject to verification by the Board.

(b) The regulations of the Council on Environmental Quality implementing NEPA require the Board to provide public notice of the availability of project specific environmental documents such as environmental impact statements, environmental assessments, findings of no significant impact, records of decision etc., to the affected public. See 40 CFR 1506.6(b). Environmental information concerning specific projects can be obtained from the Board by contacting: Executive Director, Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(c) National Environmental Policy Act.

(1) Purpose. The purpose of this paragraph (c) is to adopt procedures for compliance with the National Environmental Policy Act, 42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq., by the Board. This paragraph supplements regulations at 40 CFR Chapter V.

(2) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

Categorical exclusion means a category of actions which do not individually or cumulatively have a significant effect on the human environment and for which neither an environmental assessment nor an environmental impact statement is required.

Environmental assessment means a document that briefly discusses the environmental consequences of a proposed action and alternatives prepared for the purposes set forth in 40 CFR 1508.9.

EIS means an environmental impact statement prepared pursuant to section 102(2)(C) of NEPA.

FONSI means a finding of no significant impact on the quality of the human environment after the completion of an environmental assessment.

NEPA means the National Environmental Policy Act, 42 U.S.C. 4321, et seq.

Working Capital Loan means money used by an ongoing business concern to fund its existing operations.

(3) Delegations to Executive Director. (i) All incoming correspondence from Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) and other agencies concerning matters related to NEPA, including draft and final EIS, shall be brought to the attention of the Executive Director. The Executive Director will prepare or, at his or her discretion, coordinate replies to such correspondence.

(ii) With respect to actions of the Board, the Executive Director will:

(A) Ensure preparation of all necessary environmental assessments and EISs;

(B) Maintain a list of actions for which environmental assessments are being prepared;

(C) Revise this list at regular intervals, and send the revisions to the Environmental Protection Agency;

(D) Make the list available for public inspection;

(E) Maintain a list of EISs; and

(F) Maintain a file of draft and final EISs.

(4) Categorical exclusions. (i) This paragraph describes various classes of Board actions that normally do not have a significant impact on the human environment and are categorically excluded. The word "normally" is stressed; there may be individual cases in which specific factors require contrary action.
(ii) Subject to the limitations in paragraph (c)(4)(iii) of this section, the actions described in this paragraph have been determined not to have a significant impact on the quality of the human environment. They are categorically excluded from the need to prepare an environmental assessment or an EIS under NEPA.

(A) Guarantees of working capital loans; and
(B) Guarantees of loans for the refinancing of outstanding indebtedness of the Borrower, regardless of the purpose for which the original indebtedness was incurred.

(iii) Actions listed in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) of this section that otherwise are categorically excluded from NEPA review are not necessarily excluded from review if they would be located within, or in other cases, potentially affect:
(A) A floodplain;
(B) A wetland;
(C) Important farmlands, or prime forestlands or rangelands;
(D) A listed species or critical habitat for an endangered species;
(E) A property that is listed on or may be eligible for listing on the National Register of Historic Places;
(F) An area within an approved State Coastal Zone Management Program;
(G) A coastal barrier or a portion of a barrier within the Coastal Barrier Resources System;
(H) A river or portion of a river included in, or designated for, potential addition to the Wild and Scenic Rivers System;
(I) A sole source aquifer recharge area;
(J) A State water quality standard (including designated and/or existing beneficial uses and anti-degradation requirements); or
(K) The release or disposal of regulated substances above the levels set forth in a permit or license issued by an appropriate regulatory authority.

(5) Responsibilities and procedures for preparation of an environmental assessment. (i) The Executive Director will request that the Lender and Borrower provide information concerning all potentially significant environmental impacts of the Borrower’s proposed project pursuant to 13 CFR 500.206. The Executive Director, consulting at his discretion with CEQ, will review the information provided by the Lender and Borrower. Though no specific format for an environmental assessment is prescribed, it shall be a separate document and should include the following in conformance with 40 CFR 1508.9:

(A) Description of the environment. The existing environmental conditions relevant to the Board’s analysis determining the environmental impacts of the proposed project, should be described. The no action alternative also should be discussed;
(B) Documentation. Citations to information used to describe the existing environment and to assess environmental impacts should be clearly referenced and documented. Such references should include, as appropriate, but not be limited to, local, tribal, regional, State, and Federal agencies, as well as, public and private organizations and institutions;
(C) Evaluating environmental consequences of proposed actions. A brief discussion should be included of the need for the proposal, of alternatives as required by 42 U.S.C. 4332(2)(E) and their environmental impacts. The discussion of the environmental impacts should include measures to mitigate adverse impacts and any irreversible or irretrievable commitments of resources to the proposed project.

(ii) The Executive Director, in preparing an environmental assessment, may:
(A) Tier upon the information contained in a previous EIS, as described in 40 CFR 1502.20;
(B) Incorporate by reference reasonably available material, as described in 40 CFR 1502.21; and/or
(C) Adopt a previously completed EIS reasonably related to the project for which the proceeds of the loan sought to be guaranteed under the Program will be used, as described in 40 CFR 1506.3.

(iii) Because of the statute’s admonition to the Board to make its decisions as soon as possible after receiving applications, the Board will not:
(A) Publish notice of intent to prepare an environmental assessment, as described in 40 CFR 1501.7;
(B) Conduct scoping, as described in 40 CFR 1501.7; and
(C) Seek comments on the environmental assessment, as described in 40 CFR 1503.1.

(iv) If, on the basis of an environmental assessment, it is determined that an EIS is not required, a FONSI, as described in 40 CFR 1508.13 will be prepared. The FONSI will include the environmental assessment or a summary of it and be available to the public from the Board. The Executive Director shall maintain a record of these decisions, making them available to interested parties upon request. Requests should be directed to the Executive Director Emergency Oil and Gas Guarantee Loan Program, 14th Street and Constitution Avenue, NW., Washington DC 20230. Prior to a final loan guarantee decision, a copy of the NEPA documentation shall be sent to their Board for consideration.

(6) Responsibilities and procedures for preparation of an environmental impact statement. (i) If after an environmental assessment has been completed, it is determined that an EIS is necessary, it and other related documentation will be prepared by the Executive Director in accordance with section 102(2)(c) of NEPA, this section, and 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508. The Executive Director may seek additional information from the applicant in preparing the EIS. Once the document is prepared, it shall be submitted to the Board. If the Board considers a document unsatisfactory, it shall be returned to the Executive Director for revision or supplementation prior to a loan guarantee decision; otherwise the Board will transmit the document to the Environmental Protection Agency.

(ii)(A) The following procedures, as discussed in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508, will be followed in preparing an EIS:
(1) The format and contents of the draft and final EIS shall be as discussed in 40 CFR 1502.
(2) The requirements of 40 CFR 1506.9 for filing of documents with the Environmental Protection Agency shall be followed.
(3) The Executive Director, consulting at his discretion with CEQ, shall examine carefully the basis on which supportive studies have been conducted to assure that such studies are objective and comprehensive in scope and depth.

(4) NEPA requires that the decision making “utilize a systematic, interdisciplin ary approach that will ensure the integrated use of the natural and social sciences and the environmental design arts.” 42 U.S.C. 4332(A). If such disciplines are not present on the Board staff, appropriate use should be made of personnel of Federal, State, and local agencies, universities, non-profit organizations, or private industry.

(B) Until the Board issues a record of decision as provided in 40 CFR 1502.2 no action concerning the proposal shall be taken which would:
(1) Have an adverse environmental impact; or
(2) Limit the choice of reasonable alternatives.

(3) 40 CFR 1506.10 places certain limitations on the timing of Board decisions on taking “major Federal actions.” A loan guarantee shall not be made before the times set forth in 40 CFR 1506.10.

(iii) A public record of decision stating what the decision was; identifying alternatives that were considered, including the environmentally preferable one(s); discussing any national considerations that entered into the decision; and summarizing a monitoring and enforcement program if applicable for mitigating the environmental effects of a proposal; will be prepared. This record of decision will be prepared at the time the decision is made.


§ 500.207 Application evaluation.

(a) Eligibility screening. Applications will be reviewed to determine whether the Lender and Borrower are eligible, the information required under § 500.205(b) is complete, and the proposed loan complies with applicable statutes and regulations. The Board can at any time reject an application that does not meet these requirements.

(b) Evaluation criteria. Applications that are determined to be eligible pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section
§ 500.208  Issuance of the Guarantee.

(a) The Board’s decisions to approve any application for, and extend an offer of, guarantee under §500.207 is conditioned upon:

(1) The Lender and Borrower obtaining any required regulatory or judicial approvals;

(2) The Lender and Borrower being legally authorized to enter into the loan under the terms and conditions submitted to the Board in the application;

(3) The Board’s receipt of the Loan Documents, Guarantee, and any related instruments, properly executed by the Lender, Borrower, and any other required party other than the Board; and

(4) No material adverse change in the Borrower’s ability to repay the loan between the date of the Board’s approval and the date the Guarantee is to be issued.

(b) The Board may withdraw its approval of an application and rescind its offer of Guarantee if the Board determines that the Lender or the Borrower cannot, or is unwilling to, provide adequate documentation and proof of compliance with paragraph (a) of this section within the time provided for in the offer.

(c) Only after receipt of all the documentation, required by this section, will the Board sign and deliver the Guarantee.

(d) A Borrower receiving a loan guaranteed by the Board under this Program shall pay a one-time guarantee fee of 0.5 percent of the amount of the principal of the loan. This fee must be paid no later than one year from the issuance of the Guarantee.

§ 500.209  Funding for the Program.

The Act provides funding for the costs incurred by the Government as a result of granting Guarantees under the Program. While pursuing the goals of the Act, it is the intent of the Board to minimize the cost of the Program to the Government. The Board will estimate the risk posed by the guaranteed loans to the funds appropriated for the costs of the Guarantees under the Program and operate the Program accordingly.

§ 500.210  Assignment or transfer of loans.

(a) Neither the Loan Documents nor the Guarantee of the Board, or any interest therein, may be modified, assigned, conveyed, sold or otherwise transferred by the Lender, in whole or in part, without the prior written approval of the Board.

(b) Under no circumstances will the Board permit an assignment or transfer of less than 100 percent of a Lender’s interest in the Loan Documents and Guarantee, nor will it permit an assignment or transfer to be made to a party which the Board determines not to be an Eligible Lender pursuant to §500.201.

(c) The proscription under paragraph (a) of this section shall not apply to:

(1) Transfers which occur by operation of law, unless a primary purpose of the transaction leading to such a transfer was to assign, convey or sell the loan note or Guarantee without the
Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board, Commerce § 500.211

necessity of securing the Board’s prior written approval; or
(2) An action or agreement by the Lender which has the effect of distributing the risks of the credit among other Lenders if:
   (i) Neither the loan note nor the Guarantee is assigned, conveyed, sold, or transferred in whole or in part;
   (ii) Both the unguaranteed and guaranteed portions of the loan are treated in the same manner;
   (iii) The Lender remains solely responsible for the administration of the loan; and
   (iv) The Board’s ability to assert any and all defenses available to it under the Guarantee and the law is not adversely affected; or
(3) Transfer by a non-Agent Lender of the non-guaranteed portion of the loan after payment under the Guarantee has been made.

§ 500.211 Lender responsibilities.

(a) General. Lender shall comply with all provisions of the Guarantee.

(b) Standard of care. The Lender shall exercise due care and diligence in administering the loan as would be exercised by a reasonable and prudent banking institution when administering a secured loan of such banking institution’s own funds without a Federal guaranty. Such standard shall also apply to any and all approvals, determinations, permissions, acceptances, requirements, or opinion made, given, imposed or reached by Lender.

(c) Representation to the Board. In addition to any other representations required by the Guarantee, the Applicant shall represent to the Board that it has the ability to, and will, administer the loan, as well as to exercise the Applicant’s rights and pursue its remedies, including conducting any liquidation of the Security or additional Security in full compliance with the standard of care, without the need for any advice, opinion, determination, recommendation, approval, disapproval, assistance (financial or other) or participation by the Board, except where the Board’s consent is expressly required by the Guarantee, or where the Board, in its sole discretion and pursuant to the Guarantee, elects to provide same.

(d) Covenants. With respect to any loan guaranteed by the Board pursuant to the Act and this part, the Lender shall require the Loan Documents to contain such affirmative and negative covenants by the Borrower as are required by the terms and conditions of the Guarantee, such as the prohibition on the payment of dividends.

(e) Monitoring. In accordance with the Guarantee the Lender shall monitor Borrower’s performance under the Loan Documents to detect any non-compliance by the Borrower with any provision thereof.

(f) Reporting. With respect to any loan guaranteed by the Board pursuant to the Act and this part the Lender shall provide the Board with the following information, in accordance with the Guarantee:

   (1) Financial statements for the borrower, as provided in the Guarantee;
   (2) Projected balance sheet, income statement, and cash flows for the Borrower for each year remaining on the term of the loan; and
   (3) A completed signed copy of Form "Quarterly Compliance Statement" that includes information on the recent performance of the loan, within 15 days of the end of each calendar quarter.

(g) Notices. All written notices, requests, or demands made to the Board shall be mailed to the Board at the U.S. Department of Commerce, H2500, Washington, DC 20230, except as otherwise specified by the Guarantee or as directed by the Board. Lender shall notify the Board in writing without delay of:

   (1) Deterioration in the internal risk rating of a loan guaranteed under this Program within 5 business days of such action by the Lender;
   (2) The occurrence of each event of default under the Loan Documents or Guarantee promptly, but not later than 5 business days, of the Lender’s learning of such occurrence; and
   (3) Any other notification requirements as provided by law, or by the
§ 500.212 Liquidation.

(a) The Board may take, or direct to be taken, any action in liquidating the Security which the Board determines to be necessary or proper, consistent with Federal law and regulations.

(b) Pursuant to the Guarantee, upon written demand by the Lender and whether or not the Board has made any payment under the Guarantee, the Board, at the Board’s sole option shall have the right to require that the Lender, solely or jointly with the Board, conduct to completion the liquidation of any or all of the Security. The Board may choose to conduct the liquidation itself.

§ 500.213 Termination of obligations.

(a) The Board, in its discretion, shall be entitled to terminate all, or a portion, of the Board’s obligations under the Guarantee, without further cause, in the event that:

(1) The Guarantee fee required by § 500.208(d) shall not have been paid;

(2) A Lender shall have released or covenanted not to sue the Borrower or any other guarantor, or agreed to the modification of any obligation of any party to any agreement related to the loan, without the prior written consent of the Board;

(3) A Lender has released the Board from its liability and obligations under the Guarantee;

(4) A Lender shall have made any incorrect or incomplete representation to the Board in any material respect in connection with the Application, the Guarantee or the Loan Documents;

(5) A Lender fails to make a demand for payment within 30 days of payment default; or

(6) A Lender fails to comply with any material provision of the Loan Documents or the Guarantee.

(b) Upon receipt of a written demand for payment made pursuant to the Guarantee, the Board shall be entitled to seek such certifications from the Lender, undertake such audits or investigations, or take such other action as is provided for by law or the Guarantee so as to determine whether the Lender has complied with all of the Lender’s obligations under the Guarantee.

§ 500.214 OMB control number. [Reserved]
FINDING AIDS

A list of CFR titles, subtitles, chapters, subchapters and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are included in the CFR Index and Finding Aids volume to the Code of Federal Regulations which is published separately and revised annually.

Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference
Table of CFR Titles and Chapters
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
List of CFR Sections Affected
Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference

(Revised as of January 1, 2002)

The Director of the Federal Register has approved under 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR Part 51 the incorporation by reference of the following publications. This list contains only those incorporations by reference effective as of the revision date of this volume. Incorporations by reference found within a regulation are effective upon the effective date of that regulation. For more information on incorporation by reference, see the preliminary pages of this volume.

13 CFR (PARTS 1–199)
SMALL BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, Fourth floor, New York, NY 10036 Telephone: (212) 642–4900

13 CFR 113.3–3(c)
Table of CFR Titles and Chapters  
(Revised as of January 1, 2002)

**Title 1—General Provisions**

I  Administrative Committee of the Federal Register (Parts 1—49)
II  Office of the Federal Register (Parts 50—299)
IV  Miscellaneous Agencies (Parts 400—500)

**Title 2—[Reserved]**

**Title 3—The President**

I  Executive Office of the President (Parts 100—199)

**Title 4—Accounts**

I  General Accounting Office (Parts 1—99)

**Title 5—Administrative Personnel**

I  Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1—1199)
II  Merit Systems Protection Board (Parts 1200—1299)
III  Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)
V  The International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board (Parts 1500—1599)
VI  Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Parts 1600—1699)
VII  Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations (Parts 1700—1799)
VIII  Office of Special Counsel (Parts 1800—1899)
IX  Appalachian Regional Commission (Parts 1900—1999)
XI  Armed Forces Retirement Home (Part 2100)
XIV  Federal Labor Relations Authority, General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority and Federal Service Impasses Panel (Parts 2400—2499)
XV  Office of Administration, Executive Office of the President (Parts 2500—2599)
XVI  Office of Government Ethics (Parts 2600—2699)
XXI  Department of the Treasury (Parts 3100—3199)
XXII  Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Part 3201)
Title 5—Administrative Personnel—Continued

XXIII Department of Energy (Part 3301)  
XXIV Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Part 3401)  
XXV Department of the Interior (Part 3501)  
XXVI Department of Defense (Part 3601)  
XXVII Office of Personnel Management (Part 3801)  
XXIX Federal Communications Commission (Parts 3900—3999)  
XXX Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 4000—4099)  
XXXI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 4100—4199)  
XXXIII Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Part 4301)  
XXXV Office of Personnel Management (Part 4501)  
XL Interstate Commerce Commission (Part 5001)  
XLI Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Part 5101)  
XLII Department of Labor (Part 5201)  
XLIII National Science Foundation (Part 5301)  
XLV Department of Health and Human Services (Part 5501)  
XLVI Postal Rate Commission (Part 5601)  
XLVII Federal Trade Commission (Part 5701)  
XLVIII Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Part 5801)  
L Department of Transportation (Part 6001)  
LI Export-Import Bank of the United States (Part 6201)  
LIII Department of Education (Parts 6300—6399)  
LV Environmental Protection Agency (Part 6401)  
LVI General Services Administration (Part 6701)  
LVIII Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (Part 6801)  
LIX National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Part 6901)  
LX United States Postal Service (Part 7001)  
LXI National Labor Relations Board (Part 7101)  
LXII Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Part 7201)  
LXIII Inter-American Foundation (Part 7301)  
LXV Department of Housing and Urban Development (Part 7501)  
LXVI National Archives and Records Administration (Part 7601)  
LXIX Tennessee Valley Authority (Part 7901)  
LXX Consumer Product Safety Commission (Part 8101)  
LXXIII Department of Agriculture (Part 8301)  
LXXIV Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Part 8401)  
LXXVI Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Part 8601)  
LXXVII Office of Management and Budget (Part 8701)

Title 6—[Reserved]
Title 7—Agriculture

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Agriculture (Parts 0—26)

Subtitle B—Regulations of the Department of Agriculture

I Agricultural Marketing Service (Standards, Inspections, Marketing Practices), Department of Agriculture (Parts 27—209)

II Food and Nutrition Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 210—299)

III Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—399)

IV Federal Crop Insurance Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)

V Agricultural Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 500—599)

VI Natural Resources Conservation Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 600—699)

VII Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 700—799)

VIII Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Federal Grain Inspection Service), Department of Agriculture (Parts 800—899)

IX Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Fruits, Vegetables, Nuts), Department of Agriculture (Parts 900—999)

X Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Milk), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1000—1199)

XI Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Miscellaneous Commodities), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1200—1299)

XII Northeast Dairy Compact Commission (Parts 1300—1399)

XIV Commodity Credit Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1400—1499)

XV Foreign Agricultural Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1500—1599)

XVI Rural Telephone Bank, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1600—1699)

XVII Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1700—1799)

XVIII Rural Housing Service, Rural Business-Cooperative Service, Rural Utilities Service, and Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1800—2099)

XXVI Office of Inspector General, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2600—2699)

XXVII Office of Information Resources Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2700—2799)

XXVIII Office of Operations, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2800—2899)

XXIX Office of Energy, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2900—2999)

XXX Office of the Chief Financial Officer, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3000—3099)
Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

XXXI Office of Environmental Quality, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3100—3199)
XXXII Office of Procurement and Property Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3200—3299)
XXXIII Office of Transportation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3300—3399)
XXXIV Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3400—3499)
XXXV Rural Housing Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3500—3599)
XXXVI National Agricultural Statistics Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3600—3699)
XXXVII Economic Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3700—3799)
XXXVIII World Agricultural Outlook Board, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3800—3899)
XL [Reserved]
XLII Rural Business-Cooperative Service and Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 4200—4299)

Title 8—Aliens and Nationality

I Immigration and Naturalization Service, Department of Justice (Parts 1—599)

Title 9—Animals and Animal Products

I Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1—199)
II Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Packers and Stockyards Programs), Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)
III Food Safety and Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—599)

Title 10—Energy

I Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 0—199)
II Department of Energy (Parts 200—699)
III Department of Energy (Parts 700—999)
X Department of Energy (General Provisions) (Parts 1000—1099)
XVII Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Northeast Interstate Low-Level Radioactive Waste Commission (Part 1800)

Title 11—Federal Elections

I Federal Election Commission (Parts 1—9099)
Title 12—Banks and Banking

I Comptroller of the Currency, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
II Federal Reserve System (Parts 200—299)
III Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Parts 300—399)
IV Export-Import Bank of the United States (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Thrift Supervision, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)
VI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 600—699)
VII National Credit Union Administration (Parts 700—799)
VIII Federal Financing Bank (Parts 800—899)
IX Federal Housing Finance Board (Parts 900—999)
XI Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (Parts 1100—1199)
XIV Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 1400—1499)
XV Department of the Treasury (Parts 1500—1599)
XVII Office of Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Community Development Financial Institutions Fund, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1800—1899)

Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance

I Small Business Administration (Parts 1—199)
III Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
IV Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board (Parts 400—499)
V Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board (Parts 500—599)

Title 14—Aeronautics and Space

I Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Office of the Secretary, Department of Transportation (Aviation Proceedings) (Parts 200—399)
III Commercial Space Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
V National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1200—1299)
VI Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY OF COMMERCE (PARTS 0—29)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO COMMERCE AND FOREIGN TRADE
I Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce (Parts 30—199)
Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade—Continued

II National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)
III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
IV Foreign-Trade Zones Board, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)
VII Bureau of Export Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 700—799)
VIII Bureau of Economic Analysis, Department of Commerce (Parts 800—899)
IX National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 900—999)
XI Technology Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 1100—1199)
XIII East-West Foreign Trade Board (Parts 1300—1399)
XIV Minority Business Development Agency (Parts 1400—1499)

Subtitle C—Regulations Relating to Foreign Trade Agreements

XX Office of the United States Trade Representative (Parts 2000—2099)

Subtitle D—Regulations Relating to Telecommunications and Information

XXIII National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 2300—2399)

Title 16—Commercial Practices

I Federal Trade Commission (Parts 0—999)
II Consumer Product Safety Commission (Parts 1000—1799)

Title 17—Commodity and Securities Exchanges

I Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Parts 1—199)
II Securities and Exchange Commission (Parts 200—399)
IV Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)

Title 18—Conservation of Power and Water Resources

I Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Department of Energy (Parts 1—399)
III Delaware River Basin Commission (Parts 400—499)
VI Water Resources Council (Parts 700—799)
VIII Susquehanna River Basin Commission (Parts 800—899)
XIII Tennessee Valley Authority (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 19—Customs Duties

I United States Customs Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
Title 19—Customs Duties—Continued

II United States International Trade Commission (Parts 200—299)

III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 20—Employees' Benefits

I Office of Workers' Compensation Programs, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)

II Railroad Retirement Board (Parts 200—399)

III Social Security Administration (Parts 400—499)

IV Employees' Compensation Appeals Board, Department of Labor (Parts 500—599)

V Employment and Training Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 600—699)

VI Employment Standards Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 700—799)

VII Benefits Review Board, Department of Labor (Parts 800—899)

VIII Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries (Parts 900—999)

IX Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans' Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 1000—1099)

Title 21—Food and Drugs

I Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—1299)

II Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice (Parts 1300—1399)

III Office of National Drug Control Policy (Parts 1400—1499)

Title 22—Foreign Relations

I Department of State (Parts 1—199)

II Agency for International Development (Parts 200—299)

III Peace Corps (Parts 300—399)

IV International Joint Commission, United States and Canada (Parts 400—499)

V Broadcasting Board of Governors (Parts 500—599)

VI Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Parts 700—799)

IX Foreign Service Grievance Board Regulations (Parts 900—999)

X Inter-American Foundation (Parts 1000—1099)

XI International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section (Parts 1100—1199)

XII United States International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 1200—1299)

XIV Foreign Service Labor Relations Board; Federal Labor Relations Authority; General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority; and the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel (Parts 1400—1499)
Title 22—Foreign Relations—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XV</td>
<td>African Development Foundation (Parts 1500—1599)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>Japan-United States Friendship Commission (Parts 1600—1699)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>United States Institute of Peace (Parts 1700—1799)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Title 23—Highways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1300—1399)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Title 24—Housing and Urban Development

| Subtitle A | Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 0—99) |
| Subtitle B | Regulations Relating to Housing and Urban Development |
| I         | Office of Assistant Secretary for Equal Opportunity, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 100—199) |
| II        | Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing-Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 200—299) |
| III       | Government National Mortgage Association, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 300—399) |
| IV        | Office of Housing and Office of Multifamily Housing Assistance Restructuring, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 400—499) |
| V         | Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 500—599) |
| VI        | Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 600—699) [Reserved] |
| VII       | Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Housing Assistance Programs and Public and Indian Housing Programs) (Parts 700—799) |
| VIII      | Office of the Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Section 8 Housing Assistance Programs, Section 202 Direct Loan Program, Section 202 Supportive Housing for the Elderly Program and Section 811 Supportive Housing for Persons With Disabilities Program) (Parts 800—899) |
| IX        | Office of Assistant Secretary for Public and Indian Housing, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 900—999) |
| X         | Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Interstate Land Sales Registration Program) (Parts 1700—1799) |
Title 24—Housing and Urban Development—Continued

XII Office of Inspector General, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2000—2099)
XX Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 3200—3899)
XXV Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation (Parts 4100—4199)

Title 25—Indians

I Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—299)
II Indian Arts and Crafts Board, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
III National Indian Gaming Commission, Department of the Interior (Parts 500—599)
IV Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation (Parts 700—799)
V Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior, and Indian Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Part 900)
VI Office of the Assistant Secretary-Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000—1199)
VII Office of the Special Trustee for American Indians, Department of the Interior (Part 1200)

Title 26—Internal Revenue

I Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—899)

Title 27—Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms

I Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—299)

Title 28—Judicial Administration

I Department of Justice (Parts 0—199)
III Federal Prison Industries, Inc., Department of Justice (Parts 300—399)
V Bureau of Prisons, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI Offices of Independent Counsel, Department of Justice (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Independent Counsel (Parts 700—799)
VIII Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the District of Columbia (Parts 800—899)
IX National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact Council (Parts 900—999)
XI Department of Justice and Department of State (Parts 1100—1199)
# Title 29—Labor

**SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Labor (Parts 0—99)**

**I National Labor Relations Board (Parts 100—199)**

**II Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 200—299)**

**III National Railroad Adjustment Board (Parts 300—399)**

**IV Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 400—499)**

**V Wage and Hour Division, Department of Labor (Parts 500—899)**

**IX Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission (Parts 900—999)**

**X National Mediation Board (Parts 1200—1299)**

**XII Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service (Parts 1400—1499)**

**XIV Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Parts 1600—1699)**

**XVII Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1900—1999)**

**XX Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2200—2499)**

**XXV Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 2500—2599)**

**XXVII Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2700—2799)**

**XL Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (Parts 4000—4999)**

# Title 30—Mineral Resources

**I Mine Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)**

**II Minerals Management Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—299)**

**III Board of Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)**

**IV Geological Survey, Department of the Interior (Parts 400—499)**

**VI Bureau of Mines, Department of the Interior (Parts 600—699)**

**VII Office of Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Department of the Interior (Parts 700—999)**

# Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury

**SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of the Treasury (Parts 0—50)**

**SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Money and Finance**

**I Monetary Offices, Department of the Treasury (Parts 51—199)**

**II Fiscal Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 200—399)**

**IV Secret Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)**

**V Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)**

648
Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury—Continued

VI Bureau of Engraving and Printing, Department of the Treasury (Parts 600—699)

VII Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, Department of the Treasury (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of International Investment, Department of the Treasury (Parts 800—899)

IX Federal Claims Collection Standards (Department of the Treasury—Department of Justice) (Parts 900—999)

Title 32—National Defense

SUBTITLE A—DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

I Office of the Secretary of Defense (Parts 1—399)

V Department of the Army (Parts 400—699)

VI Department of the Navy (Parts 700—799)

VII Department of the Air Force (Parts 800—1099)

SUBTITLE B—OTHER REGULATIONS RELATING TO NATIONAL DEFENSE

XII Defense Logistics Agency (Parts 1200—1299)

XVI Selective Service System (Parts 1600—1699)

XVIII National Counterintelligence Center (Parts 1800—1899)

XIX Central Intelligence Agency (Parts 1900—1999)

XX Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 2000—2099)

XXI National Security Council (Parts 2100—2199)

XXIV Office of Science and Technology Policy (Parts 2400—2499)

XXVII Office for Micronesian Status Negotiations (Parts 2700—2799)

XXVIII Office of the Vice President of the United States (Parts 2800—2899)

Title 33—Navigation and Navigable Waters

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)

II Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 200—399)

IV Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 34—Education

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY, DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION (PARTS 1—99)

SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS OF THE OFFICES OF THE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

I Office for Civil Rights, Department of Education (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Elementary and Secondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 200—299)

III Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Department of Education (Parts 300—399)
Title 34—Education—Continued

IV Office of Vocational and Adult Education, Department of Education (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Department of Education (Parts 500—599)
VI Office of Postsecondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 600—699)
VII Office of Educational Research and Improvement, Department of Education (Parts 700—799)
XI National Institute for Literacy (Parts 1100—1199)
SUBTITLE C REGULATIONS RELATING TO EDUCATION
XII National Council on Disability (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 35—Panama Canal

I Panama Canal Regulations (Parts 1—299)

Title 36—Parks, Forests, and Public Property

I National Park Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
II Forest Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)
III Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 300—399)
IV American Battle Monuments Commission (Parts 400—499)
V Smithsonian Institution (Parts 500—599)
VII Library of Congress (Parts 700—799)
VIII Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (Parts 800—899)
IX Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation (Parts 900—999)
X Presidio Trust (Parts 1000—1099)
XI Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Parts 1100—1199)
XII National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 1200—1299)
XV Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust (Part 1501)
XVI Morris K. Udall Scholarship and Excellence in National Environmental Policy Foundation (Parts 1600—1699)

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

I United States Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce (Parts 1—199)
II Copyright Office, Library of Congress (Parts 200—299)
IV Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)
V Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 500—599)

Title 38—Pensions, Bonuses, and Veterans’ Relief

I Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 0—99)
Title 39—Postal Service

I United States Postal Service (Parts 1—999)
III Postal Rate Commission (Parts 3000—3099)

Title 40—Protection of Environment

I Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1—799)
IV Environmental Protection Agency and Department of Justice (Parts 1400—1499)
V Council on Environmental Quality (Parts 1500—1599)
VI Chemical Safety and Hazard Investigation Board (Parts 1600—1699)
VII Environmental Protection Agency and Department of Defense; Uniform National Discharge Standards for Vessels of the Armed Forces (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management

SUBTITLE B—OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC CONTRACTS
50 Public Contracts, Department of Labor (Parts 50–1—50–999)
51 Committee for Purchase From People Who Are Blind or Severely Disabled (Parts 51–1—51–99)
60 Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor (Parts 60–1—60–999)
61 Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans' Employment and Training Service, Department of Labor (Parts 61–1—61–999)

SUBTITLE C—FEDERAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT REGULATIONS SYSTEM
101 Federal Property Management Regulations (Parts 101–1—101–99)
102 Federal Management Regulation (Parts 102–1—102–299)
105 General Services Administration (Parts 105–1—105–999)
109 Department of Energy Property Management Regulations (Parts 109–1—109–99)
114 Department of the Interior (Parts 114–1—114–99)
115 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 115–1—115–99)
128 Department of Justice (Parts 128–1—128–99)

SUBTITLE D—OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO PROPERTY MANAGEMENT [RESERVED]

SUBTITLE E—FEDERAL INFORMATION RESOURCES MANAGEMENT REGULATIONS SYSTEM
201 Federal Information Resources Management Regulation (Parts 201–1—201–99) [Reserved]

SUBTITLE F—FEDERAL TRAVEL REGULATION SYSTEM
300 General (Parts 300–1—300–99)
301 Temporary Duty (TDY) Travel Allowances (Parts 301–1—301–99)
302 Relocation Allowances (Parts 302–1—302–99)
303 Payment of Expenses Connected with the Death of Certain Employees (Part 303–70)

651
Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management—Continued

304 Payment from a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses (Parts 304–1—304–99)

Title 42—Public Health

I Public Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—199)
IV Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V Office of Inspector General-Health Care, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1999)

Title 43—Public Lands: Interior

SUBTITLE A—OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR (PARTS 1—199)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC LANDS
I Bureau of Reclamation, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—499)
II Bureau of Land Management, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000–9999)
III Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission (Parts 10000–10005)

Title 44—Emergency Management and Assistance

I Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 0—399)
IV Department of Commerce and Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 45—Public Welfare

SUBTITLE A—DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES (PARTS 1—199)
SUBTITLE B—REGULATIONS RELATING TO PUBLIC WELFARE
II Office of Family Assistance (Assistance Programs), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 200—299)
III Office of Child Support Enforcement (Child Support Enforcement Program), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
IV Office of Refugee Resettlement, Administration for Children and Families Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI National Science Foundation (Parts 600—699)
VII Commission on Civil Rights (Parts 700—799)
VIII Office of Personnel Management (Parts 800—899)
Title 45—Public Welfare—Continued

X Office of Community Services, Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1099)
XI National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities (Parts 1100—1199)
XII Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 1200—1299)
XIII Office of Human Development Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1300—1399)
XVI Legal Services Corporation (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII National Commission on Libraries and Information Science (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation (Parts 1800—1899)
XXI Commission on Fine Arts (Parts 2100—2199)
XXIII Arctic Research Commission (Part 2301)
XXIV James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation (Parts 2400—2499)
XXV Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 2500—2599)

Title 46—Shipping

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II Maritime Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—399)
III Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage), Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
IV Federal Maritime Commission (Parts 500—599)

Title 47—Telecommunication

I Federal Communications Commission (Parts 0—199)
II Office of Science and Technology Policy and National Security Council (Parts 200—299)
III National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System

1 Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1—99)
2 Department of Defense (Parts 200—299)
3 Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
4 Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)
5 General Services Administration (Parts 500—599)
6 Department of State (Parts 600—699)
7 United States Agency for International Development (Parts 700—799)
8 Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 800—899)
Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Department of Energy (Parts 900—999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Department of the Treasury (Parts 1000—1099)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Department of Commerce (Parts 1300—1399)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Department of the Interior (Parts 1400—1499)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1500—1599)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Office of Personnel Management Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1600—1699)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1700—1799)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1800—1899)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Broadcasting Board of Governors (Parts 1900—1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 2000—2099)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Office of Personnel Management, Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 2100—2199)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Social Security Administration (Parts 2300—2399)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2400—2499)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>National Science Foundation (Parts 2500—2599)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Department of Justice (Parts 2800—2899)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Department of Labor (Parts 2900—2999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Department of Education Acquisition Regulation (Parts 3400—3499)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Panama Canal Commission (Parts 3500—3599)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 4400—4499)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Department of the Army Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5100—5199)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Department of the Navy Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5200—5299)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Department of the Air Force Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (Parts 5300—5399)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Defense Logistics Agency, Department of Defense (Part 5452)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>African Development Foundation (Parts 5700—5799)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>General Services Administration Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6100—6199)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Department of Transportation Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6300—6399)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Cost Accounting Standards Board, Office of Federal Procurement Policy, Office of Management and Budget (Parts 9900—9999)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Title 49—Transportation

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of Transportation (Parts 1—99)

Subtitle B—Other Regulations Relating to Transportation

1 Research and Special Programs Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 100—199)
Title 49—Transportation—Continued

II Federal Railroad Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—299)
III Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 300—399)
IV Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
V National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 500—599)
VI Federal Transit Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 600—699)
VII National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK) (Parts 700—799)
VIII National Transportation Safety Board (Parts 800—999)
X Surface Transportation Board, Department of Transportation (Parts 1000—1399)
XI Bureau of Transportation Statistics, Department of Transportation (Parts 1400—1499)
XII Transportation Security Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1500—1599)

Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries

I United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
II National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)
III International Fishing and Related Activities (Parts 300—399)
IV Joint Regulations (United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior and National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce); Endangered Species Committee Regulations (Parts 400—499)
V Marine Mammal Commission (Parts 500—599)
VI Fishery Conservation and Management, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 600—699)

CFR Index and Finding Aids

Subject/Agency Index
List of Agency Prepared Indexes
Parallel Tables of Statutory Authorities and Rules
List of CFR Titles, Chapters, Subchapters, and Parts
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
(Revised as of January 1, 2002)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administerive Committee of the Federal Register</td>
<td>1, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Research Projects Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations</td>
<td>5, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Council on Historic Preservation</td>
<td>36, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>African Development Foundation</td>
<td>22, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency for International Development, United States</td>
<td>22, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Marketing Service</td>
<td>7, I, IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Research Service</td>
<td>7, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture Department</td>
<td>5, LXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Marketing Service</td>
<td>7, I, IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Research Service</td>
<td>7, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service</td>
<td>7, III, 9, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Credit Corporation</td>
<td>7, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service</td>
<td>7, XXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Research Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Service Agency</td>
<td>7, VII, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Crop Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>7, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Nutrition Service</td>
<td>7, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Safety and Inspection Service</td>
<td>9, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Agricultural Service</td>
<td>7, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Service</td>
<td>36, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration</td>
<td>7, VIII, 9, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Resources Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Library</td>
<td>7, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Statistics Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Resources Conservation Service</td>
<td>7, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurement and Property Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Business-COoperative Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Development Administration</td>
<td>7, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Housing Service</td>
<td>7, XVIII, XXXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Telephone Bank</td>
<td>7, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural Utilities Service</td>
<td>7, XVII, XVIII, XLII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Agriculture, Office of</td>
<td>7, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Agricultural Outlook Board</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Force Department</td>
<td>32, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement</td>
<td>48, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of</td>
<td>27, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMTRAK</td>
<td>49, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Battle Monuments Commission</td>
<td>36, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee</td>
<td>25, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service</td>
<td>7, III, 9, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appalachian Regional Commission</td>
<td>5, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board</td>
<td>36, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arctic Research Commission</td>
<td>45, XXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armed Forces Retirement Home</td>
<td>5, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army Department</td>
<td>32, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits Review Board</td>
<td>20, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of</td>
<td>34, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind or Severely Disabled, Committee for Purchase From</td>
<td>41, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People Who Are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broadcasting Board of Governors</td>
<td>22, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census Bureau</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Support Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>45, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and Families, Administration for</td>
<td>45, II, III, IV, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Commission on</td>
<td>45, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Office for</td>
<td>34, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard</td>
<td>33, I; 46, I; 49, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage)</td>
<td>46, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commerce Department</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Census Bureau</td>
<td>15, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Affairs, Under Secretary</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Analysis, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Development Administration</td>
<td>13, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management and Assistance</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Administration, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishery Conservation and Management</td>
<td>50, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Trade Zones Board</td>
<td>15, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Trade Administration</td>
<td>15, III; 19, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute of Standards and Technology</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
<td>50, II, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
<td>15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Telecommunications and Information</td>
<td>15, XXIII; 47, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Weather Service</td>
<td>15, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent and Trademark Office, United States</td>
<td>37, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Commerce, Office of</td>
<td>15, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology, Under Secretary for</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Administration</td>
<td>15, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>37, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Credit Corporation</td>
<td>7, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commodity Futures Trading Commission</td>
<td>5, XLI; 17, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant</td>
<td>24, V, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controller of the Currency</td>
<td>12, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission</td>
<td>29, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Product Safety Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXI; 16, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension</td>
<td>7, XXXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright Office</td>
<td>37, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporation for National and Community Service</td>
<td>45, XII, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Accounting Standards Board</td>
<td>48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Council on Environmental Quality</td>
<td>40, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the</td>
<td>28, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District of Columbia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs Service, United States</td>
<td>19, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Contract Audit Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Department</td>
<td>5, XXVI; 32, Subtitle A; 40, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Research Projects Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Force Department</td>
<td>32, VII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

658
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Army Department</td>
<td>32, V; 33, II; 36, III, 48, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Logistics Agency</td>
<td>32, I, XII; 48, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Imagery and Mapping Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Department</td>
<td>32, VI; 48, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Defense, Office of</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Contract Audit Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Intelligence Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Logistics Agency</td>
<td>32, XII; 48, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board</td>
<td>10, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware River Basin Commission</td>
<td>18, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District of Columbia, Court Services and Offender Supervision</td>
<td>28, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Enforcement Administration</td>
<td>21, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East-West Foreign Trade Board</td>
<td>15, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Affairs, Under Secretary</td>
<td>37, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Analysis, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Development Administration</td>
<td>13, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Economic Research Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education, Department of</td>
<td>5, LIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of</td>
<td>34, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civil Rights, Office for</td>
<td>34, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational Research and Improvement, Office of</td>
<td>34, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postsecondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of</td>
<td>34, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocational and Adult Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational Research and Improvement, Office of</td>
<td>34, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Oil and Gas Guaranteed Loan Board</td>
<td>13, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Steel Guarantee Loan Board</td>
<td>13, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees’ Compensation Appeals Board</td>
<td>20, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees Loyalty Board</td>
<td>5, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment and Training Administration</td>
<td>20, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment Standards Administration</td>
<td>20, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endangered Species Committee</td>
<td>50, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Department of</td>
<td>5, XXIII; 10, II, III, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Energy Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XXIV; 18, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy, Office of Engineers, Corps of</td>
<td>7, XXXIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engraving and Printing, Bureau of</td>
<td>33, II; 36, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Protection Agency</td>
<td>31, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>5, LIV; 40, I, IV, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Employment Opportunity Commission</td>
<td>5, LXII; 29, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Office of the President</td>
<td>3, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration, Office of</td>
<td>5, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Quality, Council on</td>
<td>40, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management and Budget, Office of</td>
<td>5, III, LXXXVII; 14, VI; 48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Drug Control Policy, Office of</td>
<td>21, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Security Council</td>
<td>32, XXI; 47, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presidential Documents</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science and Technology Policy, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXIV; 47, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade Representative, Office of the United States</td>
<td>15, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Administration, Bureau of</td>
<td>15, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export-Import Bank of the United States</td>
<td>5, LIII; 12, IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

659
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Family Assistance, Office of</td>
<td>45, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Credit Administration</td>
<td>5, XXXI; 12, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXX; 12, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm Service Agency</td>
<td>7, VII, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
<td>14, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial Space Transportation</td>
<td>14, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Communications Commission</td>
<td>31, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of</td>
<td>5, XXXIX; 47, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Crop Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>7, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXXII; 12, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Election Commission</td>
<td>11, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Emergency Management Agency</td>
<td>44, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Group Life Insurance</td>
<td>48, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Energy Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XXXIV; 18, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council</td>
<td>12, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Financing Bank</td>
<td>12, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
<td>23, I, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight Office</td>
<td>12, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Finance Board</td>
<td>12, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Labor Relations Authority, and General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority</td>
<td>5, XIV; 22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Law Enforcement Training Center</td>
<td>31, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Maritime Commission</td>
<td>46, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service</td>
<td>29, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission</td>
<td>5, LXXIV; 29, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
<td>49, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Prison Industries, Inc.</td>
<td>28, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Procurement Policy Office</td>
<td>48, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulations</td>
<td>41, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Railroad Administration</td>
<td>49, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Register, Administrative Committee of</td>
<td>1, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Register, Office of</td>
<td>1, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Reserve System</td>
<td>12, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board of Governors</td>
<td>5, LVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board</td>
<td>5, VI, LXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Service Impasses Panel</td>
<td>5, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Trade Commission</td>
<td>5, XLVII; 16, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
<td>49, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Travel Regulation System</td>
<td>41, Subtitle F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Arts, Commission on</td>
<td>45, XXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiscal Service</td>
<td>31, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Service, United States</td>
<td>50, I, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishery Conservation and Management</td>
<td>50, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
<td>21, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Nutrition Service</td>
<td>7, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Safety and Inspection Service</td>
<td>9, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Agricultural Service</td>
<td>7, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Assets Control, Office of</td>
<td>31, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States</td>
<td>45, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Grievance Board</td>
<td>22, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Impasses Disputes Panel</td>
<td>22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Service Labor Relations Board</td>
<td>22, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Trade Zones Board</td>
<td>15, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Service</td>
<td>36, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Accounting Office</td>
<td>4, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Services Administration</td>
<td>5, LVII; 41, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>48, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulation</td>
<td>41, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Travel Regulation System</td>
<td>41,Subtitle F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>41, 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses</td>
<td>41, 304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain Employees</td>
<td>41, 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relocation Allowances</td>
<td>41, 302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary Duty (TDY) Travel Allowances</td>
<td>41, 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geological Survey</td>
<td>30, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government Ethics, Office of</td>
<td>5, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government National Mortgage Association</td>
<td>24, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration</td>
<td>7, VIII; 9, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation</td>
<td>45, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and Human Services, Department of</td>
<td>5, XLV; 45, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Support Enforcement, Office of</td>
<td>45, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children and Families, Administration for</td>
<td>45, II, III, IV, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family Assistance, Office of</td>
<td>45, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
<td>21, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centers for Medicare &amp; Medicaid Services</td>
<td>42, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Development Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Health Service</td>
<td>25, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General (Health Care), Office of</td>
<td>42, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Health Service</td>
<td>42, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refugee Resettlement, Office of</td>
<td>45, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centers for Medicare &amp; Medicaid Services</td>
<td>42, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing and Urban Development, Department of</td>
<td>5, LXV; 24, Subtitle B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, V, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Office of</td>
<td>12, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government National Mortgage Association</td>
<td>24, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, II, VIII, X, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing, Office of, and Multifamily Housing Assistance</td>
<td>24, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restructuring, Office of</td>
<td>24, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General, Office of</td>
<td>24, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for Secretary, Office of</td>
<td>24, Subtitle A, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>24, II, VIII, X, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing, Office of, and Multifamily Housing Assistance</td>
<td>24, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restructuring, Office of</td>
<td>24, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Development Services, Office of</td>
<td>45, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immigration and Naturalization Service</td>
<td>8, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent Counsel, Office of</td>
<td>28, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Bureau of</td>
<td>25, I, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary</td>
<td>25, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Arts and Crafts Board</td>
<td>25, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indian Health Service</td>
<td>25, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Resources Management, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and Records Administration</td>
<td>32, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General</td>
<td>7, XXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture Department</td>
<td>22, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and Human Services Department</td>
<td>42, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing and Urban Development Department</td>
<td>24, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institute of Peace, United States</td>
<td>22, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-American Foundation</td>
<td>5, LXXIII; 22, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intergovernmental Relations, Advisory Commission on</td>
<td>5, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior Department</td>
<td>5, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee</td>
<td>25, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endangered Species Committee</td>
<td>50, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Property Management Regulations System</td>
<td>41, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Service, United States</td>
<td>50, I, IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Agency                  | CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
-------------------------|---------------------------------
Geological Survey        | 30, IV                         
Indian Affairs, Bureau of | 25, I, V                       
Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary | 25, VI                   
Indian Arts and Crafts Board | 25, II                        
Land Management, Bureau of | 43, II                         
Minerals Management Service | 30, II                      
Mines, Bureau of        | 30, VI                         
National Indian Gaming Commission | 25, III                     
National Park Service   | 36, I                          
Reclamation, Bureau of  | 43, I                          
Secretary of the Interior, Office of | 43, Subtitle A   
Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of | 30, III                     
Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of | 30, VII                    
Internal Revenue Service   | 26, I                          
International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section | 22, XI                    
International Development, United States Agency for | 22, II                      
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 7                       
International Development Cooperation Agency, United States | 22, XII                   
International Fishing and Related Activities | 50, III                     
International Investment, Office of United States and Canada | 31, VIII                  
International Joint Commission, United States and Canada | 22, IV                     
International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board | 5, V                       
International Trade Administration | 15, III; 19, III      
International Trade Commission, United States | 19, II                      
Interstate Commerce Commission | 5, XL                        
James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation | 45, XXIV                 
Japan–United States Friendship Commission | 22, XVI                  
Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries | 20, VIII                   
Justice Department       | 5, XXVIII; 28, I, XI; 40, IV   
Drug Enforcement Administration | 21, II                  
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 28                     
Federal Claims Collection Standards | 31, IX                    
Federal Prison Industries, Inc. | 28, III               
Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States | 45, V                      
Immigration and Naturalization Service | 8, I                       
Offices of Independent Counsel | 28, VI                   
Prisons, Bureau of       | 28, V                          
Property Management Regulations | 41, 128                
Labor Department         | 5, XLII                        
Benefits Review Board    | 20, VII                        
Employees’ Compensation Appeals Board | 20, IV                    
Employment and Training Administration | 20, V                      
Employment Standards Administration | 20, VI                  
Federal Acquisition Regulation | 48, 29                   
Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of | 41, 60                   
Federal Procurement Regulations System | 41, 60              
Labor-Management Standards, Office of | 29, II, IV        
Mine Safety and Health Administration | 30, I                     
Occupational Safety and Health Administration | 29, XVII                 
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration | 29, XXV                  
Public Contracts         | 41, 50                         
Secretary of Labor, Office of | 29, Subtitle A           
Veterans’ Employment and Training Service, Office of the Assistant Secretary for | 41, 61; 20, IX 
Wage and Hour Division  | 29, V                          
Workers’ Compensation Programs, Office of | 20, I                      
Labor-Management Standards, Office of | 29, II, IV          
Land Management, Bureau of | 43, II                      
Legal Services Corporation | 45, XVI                    
Library of Congress      | 36, VII                        
Copyright Office         | 37, II                         
Management and Budget, Office of | 5, III; LXXVII; 14, VI; 48, 99
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marine Mammal Commission</td>
<td>50, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime Administration</td>
<td>46, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit Systems Protection Board</td>
<td>5, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micronesian Status Negotiations, Office for</td>
<td>32, XXVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mine Safety and Health Administration</td>
<td>30, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals Management Service</td>
<td>30, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mines, Bureau of</td>
<td>30, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minority Business Development Agency</td>
<td>15, XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Agencies</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Offices</td>
<td>31, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morris K. Udall Scholarship and Excellence in National</td>
<td>36, XVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Policy Foundation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Aeronautics and Space Administration</td>
<td>5, LIX; 14, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Library</td>
<td>7, XLI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Agricultural Statistics Service</td>
<td>7, XXXVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National and Community Service, Corporation for</td>
<td>45, XII, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Archives and Records Administration</td>
<td>5, LXVI; 36, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Security Oversight Office</td>
<td>32, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Bureau of Standards</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Capital Planning Commission</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Commission for Employment Policy</td>
<td>1, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Commission on Libraries and Information Science</td>
<td>45, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Council on Disability</td>
<td>34, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Counterintelligence Center</td>
<td>32, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Credit Union Administration</td>
<td>12, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Crime Prevention and Privacy Compact Council</td>
<td>29, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Drug Control Policy, Office of</td>
<td>21, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities</td>
<td>45, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration</td>
<td>23, II, III; 49, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Imagery and Mapping Agency</td>
<td>32, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Indian Gaming Commission</td>
<td>25, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute for Literacy</td>
<td>34, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institute of Standards and Technology</td>
<td>15, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Labor Relations Board</td>
<td>5, LIX; 29, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Marine Fisheries Service</td>
<td>50, II, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Mediation Board</td>
<td>29, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration</td>
<td>15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Park Service</td>
<td>36, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Railroad Adjustment Board</td>
<td>29, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK)</td>
<td>49, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Science Foundation</td>
<td>5, XLIII; 45, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Security Council</td>
<td>32, XXI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Security Council and Office of Science and Technology Policy</td>
<td>47, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Telecommunications and Information Administration</td>
<td>15, XXIII; 47, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Transportation Safety Board</td>
<td>49, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Weather Service</td>
<td>15, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Resources Conservation Service</td>
<td>7, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation, Office of</td>
<td>25, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navy Department</td>
<td>32, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation</td>
<td>24, XXV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northeast Dairy Compact Commission</td>
<td>7, XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northeast Interstate Low-Level Radioactive Waste</td>
<td>10, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear Regulatory Commission</td>
<td>5, XLVIII; 10, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational Safety and Health Administration</td>
<td>29, XVII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission</td>
<td>29, XX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offices of Independent Counsel</td>
<td>29, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust</td>
<td>36, XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations Office</td>
<td>7, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overseas Private Investment Corporation</td>
<td>5, XXXIII; 22, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama Canal Commission</td>
<td>48, 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Panama Canal Regulations 35, I
Patent and Trademark Office, United States 37, I
Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses 41, 304
Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain Employees 41, 303
Peace Corps 22, III
Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation 36, IX
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration 29, XXV
Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation 29, XL
Personnel Management, Office of 5, I, XXXV; 45, VIII
Federal Acquisition Regulation 48, 17
Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation 48, 21
Postal Rate Commission 5, XLVI; 39, III
Postal Service, United States 5, LX; 39, I
Postsecondary Education, Office of 34, VI
Presidential Documents 3
Presidio Trust 36, X
Procurement and Property Management, Office of 7, XXXII
Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant Secretary 37, IV
Public Contracts, Department of Labor 41, 50
Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for 24, IX
Public Health Service 42, I
Railroad Retirement Board 20, II
Reclamation, Bureau of 43, I
Refugee Resettlement, Office of 45, IV
Relocation Allowances 41, 302
Research and Special Programs Administration 49, I
Rural Business-Cooperative Service 7, XVIII, XLII
Rural Development Administration 7, XLII
Rural Housing Service 7, XVIII, XXXV
Rural Telephone Bank 7, XVI
Rural Utilities Service 7, XVIII, XLII
Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation 33, IV
Science and Technology Policy, Office of 32, XXIV
Science and Technology Policy, Office of, and National Security Council 47, II
Securities and Exchange Commission 17, II
Selective Service System 32, XVI
Small Business Administration 13, I
Smithsonian Institution 36, V
Social Security Administration 20, III; 48, 23
Soldiers’ and Airmen’s Home, United States 5, XI
Special Counsel, Office of 5, VII
Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of 34, III
State Department 22, I; 28, XI
Federal Acquisition Regulation 48, 6
Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of 39, VII
Surface Transport Board 49, X
Susquehanna River Basin Commission 18, VIII
Technology Administration 15, XI
Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for 37, IV
Technology, Under Secretary for 37, V
Tennessee Valley Authority 5, I, LXXIX; 18, XIII
Thrift Supervision Office, Department of the Treasury 12, V
Trade Representative, United States, Office of 15, XX
Transportation, Department of 5, L
Coast Guard 33, I; 46, I; 49, IV
Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage) 46, III
Commercial Space Transportation 14, III
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contract Appeals, Board of</td>
<td>48, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management and Assistance</td>
<td>44, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Aviation Administration</td>
<td>14, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Highway Administration</td>
<td>23, I, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration</td>
<td>49, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Railroad Administration</td>
<td>49, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Transit Administration</td>
<td>49, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime Administration</td>
<td>46, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Highway Traffic Safety Administration</td>
<td>23, II, III; 49, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research and Special Programs Administration</td>
<td>49, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation</td>
<td>33, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>14, II; 49, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Transportation Board</td>
<td>49, X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Security Administration</td>
<td>49, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Statistics Bureau</td>
<td>49, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation, Office of</td>
<td>7, XXXIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Security Administration</td>
<td>49, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation Statistics Bureau</td>
<td>49, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel Allowances, Temporary Duty (TDY)</td>
<td>41, 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treasury Department</td>
<td>5, XXXI; 12, XV; 17, IV; 31, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of</td>
<td>27, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Development Financial Institutions Fund</td>
<td>12, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comptroller of the Currency</td>
<td>12, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs Service, United States</td>
<td>19, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engraving and Printing, Bureau of</td>
<td>31, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Law Enforcement Training Center</td>
<td>31, VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiscal Service</td>
<td>31, II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Assets Control, Office of</td>
<td>31, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Revenue Service</td>
<td>26, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Investment, Office of</td>
<td>31, VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetary Offices</td>
<td>31, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Service</td>
<td>31, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secretary of the Treasury, Office of</td>
<td>31, Subtitle A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrift Supervision, Office of</td>
<td>12, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truman, Harry S. Scholarship Foundation</td>
<td>45, XVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States and Canada, International Joint Commission</td>
<td>22, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States and Mexico, International Boundary and Water Commission</td>
<td>22, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission</td>
<td>43, III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans Affairs Department</td>
<td>38, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Federal Acquisition Regulation</td>
<td>48, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veterans’ Employment and Training Service, Office of the Assistant Secretary for</td>
<td>41, 61; 20, IX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vice President of the United States, Office of</td>
<td>32, XXVIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocational and Adult Education, Office of</td>
<td>34, IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wage and Hour Division</td>
<td>29, V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Resources Council</td>
<td>18, VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workers’ Compensation Programs, Office of</td>
<td>20, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Agricultural Outlook Board</td>
<td>7, XXXVIII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of CFR Sections Affected

All changes in this volume of the Code of Federal Regulations which were made by documents published in the Federal Register since January 1, 1986, are enumerated in the following list. Entries indicate the nature of the changes effected. Page numbers refer to Federal Register pages. The user should consult the entries for chapters and parts as well as sections for revisions.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13 CFR</th>
<th>1986</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I — Continued</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.3–2 Amended .................. 4703, 4704, 35501</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amendment confirmed .................. 44036</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.5 Revised .......................... 14979</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.802 (a) revised .................. 7551</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.803 (a) revised .................. 7551</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.3 Amended .......................... 40001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.201 (b)(2) amended; (c) redesignated as (d); new (c) added; interim .................. 21485</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.302 Introductory text published; (a) through (c) revised .......................... 40001</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107 Appendixes A, B, and C removed; Appendixes I and II added .......................... 20751</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108 Authority citation revised .......................... 20770</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.1 (b) redesignated as (c); new (b) added .......................... 20770</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.2 (c) revised; (g) and (h) redesignated as (j) and (l); new (j) revised; (d)(3), new (g), (h), (i), (k), and (m) added .......................... 20770</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) through (v) added; interim .......................... 20782</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.4 Added .......................... 20770</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.5 Added .......................... 20771</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.7—108.10 Added .......................... 20772</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503—108.503–15 Undesignated center heading added .......................... 20773</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503 Revised .......................... 20773</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–1 Revised .......................... 20773</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–2 Revised .......................... 20775</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–3 Revised .......................... 20775</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–4 Revised .......................... 20776</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–5 Revised .......................... 20777</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–6 Revised .......................... 20777</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1986</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–7 Revised .......................... 20777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–8 Revised .......................... 20778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–9 Revised .......................... 20778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–10 Revised .......................... 20779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–11 Revised .......................... 20779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–12—108.503–15 Added .......................... 20780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.504—108.505 Undesignated center heading added; interim .................. 20782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.504 Added; interim .......................... 20782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.505 Added; interim .......................... 20782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111 Authority citation revised .......................... 20248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.2 Revised .......................... 20248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.2 (b) revised; emergency .......................... 20923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) amended .......................... 2166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) correctly revised .......................... 2167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.6 Policy statement .......................... 4297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective date deferred .......................... 10936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.8 (a)(3) amended .......................... 2166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.9 (a) and (c)(2) amended; emergency .......................... 20923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.10 (d)(1) revised .......................... 2167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.11 (a)(1) revised .......................... 2167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 Authority citation revised .......................... 17003, 18436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.101–2 (b)(2)(v) removed .......................... 10363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.104–1 (a) revised .......................... 2167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.204–2 (b), (c), and (d) redesignated as (c), (d) and (e); new (b) added; interim .......................... 17003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) amended; interim .......................... 17004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.403–1 Revised .......................... 18437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121 Policy statement .......................... 6099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.2 (c)(2) table amended .......................... 20797, 25191, 32198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(2) amended; interim .......................... 44037</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 13 CFR—Continued

### Chapter I—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Amendment/Revision Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>121.4</td>
<td>(d) revised; (g)(2)(i) and (ii) added; interim eff. to 10–6–86..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) revised; (g)(2)(i) and (ii) added; final..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.7–3</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised.........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.8–4</td>
<td>(a) revised....................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Authority citation amended.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) amended.....................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.13</td>
<td>(a) amended; interim...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) introductory text, (1)(i) and (ii), and (2) revised; interim......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.17</td>
<td>Revised..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.25</td>
<td>(c) revised.....................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.26</td>
<td>(b) revised.....................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.40</td>
<td>Revised..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.41</td>
<td>(b)(4) removed; (b)(5) redesignated as (b)(4); (d)(1) revised........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appendix A text amended.........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.50–123.53</td>
<td>(Subpart D) Removed.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.60–123.63</td>
<td>(Subpart E) Removed.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Revisited........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.7</td>
<td>(f) revision confirmed ..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.5</td>
<td>(f) revision confirmed ..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140.6</td>
<td>Added; eff. to 12–31–87.........</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter III—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Amendment/Revision Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Authority citation revised....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.1</td>
<td>Introductory text revised; interim..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.3</td>
<td>(b) revised; interim...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.5</td>
<td>(b)(2) and (3)(i) revised; interim...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.7</td>
<td>(a)(4) revised; interim........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) introductory text, (1)(i) and (ii), and (2) revised; interim......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.8</td>
<td>Introductory text republished; (a) revised; interim........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.10–102.14</td>
<td>Redesignated as ..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.10</td>
<td>Revised; interim...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.11</td>
<td>Revised; interim...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.41</td>
<td>(b)(2) and (d)(3) revised; interim...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.50</td>
<td>(c) and (d) revision confirmed.........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.4</td>
<td>(a) revised; interim...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.6</td>
<td>(a) and (d) revised; interim..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.8</td>
<td>(a), (b), (e), (f) introductory text and (3) revised; interim........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.9</td>
<td>(e) revised; interim...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.5</td>
<td>(b)(3) table amended; interim...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.41</td>
<td>Revision confirmed.............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.44</td>
<td>(b) introductory text revision confirmed......................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.59</td>
<td>(a) revision confirmed..........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306.12</td>
<td>(g)(4) and (j) revisions confirmed..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306.20</td>
<td>Revision confirmed...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>Authority citation revised......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.22</td>
<td>(b) revision confirmed...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.28</td>
<td>(c)(6) revision confirmed.........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.55</td>
<td>(a)(5) and (c)(5) revisions confirmed........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.56</td>
<td>(h) revision confirmed...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.57</td>
<td>(a)(6) revision confirmed........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.3</td>
<td>Authority citation revised......</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.2</td>
<td>(a), (d), (e)(1), and (2)(ii) revised; (e) introductory text republished; (e)(2)(v) removed; (e)(3) added; interim........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.3</td>
<td>Introductory text, (a) through (e), (g), and (h) revised; (f) and (j) through (m) added..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.7</td>
<td>(c) introductory text revised; interim..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.15</td>
<td>(a) through (c) revised; interim...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.18</td>
<td>(b) revised; interim...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.26</td>
<td>(a)(1) introductory text and (3), and (b)(1) introductory text and (3) revised..................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Removed..........................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part correctly added...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.5</td>
<td>(c) addition confirmed...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part correctly added...........</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Authority citation revised.....</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

668
### List of CFR Sections Affected

**13 CFR**

**1987**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101.3-2</td>
<td>Page 52 FR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.1—102.7 (Subpart A)</td>
<td>47699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.6</td>
<td>47699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.511 (g)</td>
<td>34896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.1 (b)(3)</td>
<td>27675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.504</td>
<td>10243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.505 (f)(2)(iv)</td>
<td>27539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-3</td>
<td>27677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-4</td>
<td>27677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-6</td>
<td>27677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-7</td>
<td>27677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-8</td>
<td>27677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-9</td>
<td>27678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-10</td>
<td>27678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-12</td>
<td>27678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-13</td>
<td>27678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.504</td>
<td>27678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.505</td>
<td>27678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>32534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.100—114.111 (Subpart A)</td>
<td>32534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>32534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>32534</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**13 CFR—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I—Continued</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>125.10</td>
<td>48392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.11</td>
<td>43829</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133.1 (c)</td>
<td>27088</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>31527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311</td>
<td>11627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11627</td>
<td>11627</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**13 CFR**

**1988**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101.3-2</td>
<td>Page 53 FR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.503 (a)(1) and (b)(2)</td>
<td>38941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108 Regulations at 51 FR 20770—20782 and 52 FR 27675—27679 confirmed; authority citation revised</td>
<td>10243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.5 (d) amended</td>
<td>10243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.8 (d)(3) amended; (d)(7) revised</td>
<td>10244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.502-1</td>
<td>35458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-3</td>
<td>35458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-5</td>
<td>10243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-9</td>
<td>10243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-10</td>
<td>1468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503-15</td>
<td>10243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.505 (f)(2)(iv) correctly revised</td>
<td>1468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>32202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>41149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>34872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.403-1</td>
<td>35459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.605-1</td>
<td>7345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.605-2</td>
<td>7345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.605-3</td>
<td>7345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.605-4</td>
<td>7345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.605-5</td>
<td>7345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.605-6</td>
<td>7345</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

669
13 CFR—Continued

Chapter I—Continued

120.706 Redesignated as 120.707; new 120.706 redesignated from 120.705 .........................7345

120.707 Redesignated as 120.708; new 120.706 redesignated from 120.706 .........................7345

120.708 Redesignated as 120.709; new 120.708 redesignated from 120.707 .........................7345

120.709 Redesignated as 120.710; new 120.709 redesignated from 120.708 .........................7345

120.710 Redesignated as 120.711; new 120.710 redesignated from 120.709 .........................7345

120.711 Redesignated as 120.712; new 120.711 redesignated from 120.710 .........................7345

120.712 Redesignated as 120.713 and revised; new 120.712 redesignated from 120.711 ........7345

120.713 Redesignated from 120.712 and revised ...............................................................7345

120.809 Revised ..................................................7345

120.810 Added ..................................................7345

121 Authority citation revised 30670, 32373

121.1 (d)(2) Table 2 amended..................32373

121.2 Footnote 19 revised .......................10245

121.2 (d)(2) Table 2 revised ...................18823

121.2 (d)(2) Table 2 amended .................18821, 36070, 43425

121.2 (d)(2) Table 2 corrected ................21547

121.2 (d)(2) Table 2 text and revision eff. date corrected ..................26426

121.2 (d)(2) Table 2 amended; interim ..................29877, 47664

122.7–3 Amended ..................35459

122.7–3 Amended ..................35459

123 Authority citation revised ................52113

123.3 Amended ..................52114

125 Authority citation revised ................4009

125.10 (b) amended ..........................4009

133.1 (c) table revised (OMB numbers) ..................9612

136 Added ..................19760

140 Authority citation revised ................4113

140.2 (c) introductory text amended: (a)(1) and (2) removed; (g) and (h) redesignated as (h) and (1); new (g) and (j) added ..................1607

13 CFR—Continued

Chapter I—Continued

140.4 (a)(4)(i) removed; (a) introductory text and (4)(ii), (b)(1) introductory text, (i), and (iii), (2) introductory text, (ii), and (iii), (3), (4)(vi) and (5) revised; (a)(4) redesignated as new (a)(4)(i) and revised; (a)(4) heading added ..................1607

(c) redesignated as (e); new (c), (d), (f), and (g) added ..................1608

140.6 Added ...........................................4113

143 Added ...........................................8048, 8087

145 Added; nomenclature change ..................19176, 19204

145.105 (p)(2) and (w) added ..................19176

145.110 (a)(1)(ii)(C)(3), (4) and (5) added ..................................19176

145.313 (b)(3) added ..........................19176

145.314 (b)(2)(i) and (ii) added ..................19176

145.412 (b)(3) added ..........................19176

145.413 (b)(2)(i) and (ii) added ..................19176

Chapter III

302.7 Regulation at 51 FR 24303 confirmed ..................50206

308 Authority citation revised ................34745

308.5 (c)(2) revised; interim ..................12511

309.2 Regulation at 52 FR 16293 confirmed ..................50206

309.15 (a) through (c) revision at 51 FR 22043 confirmed ..................13252

309.18 (b) revision at 51 FR 23043 confirmed ..................13252

309.26 Regulation at 51 FR 37176 confirmed ..................51237

314.5 Regulation at 49 FR 22464 confirmed ..................51237

1989

13 CFR

Chapter I

101.3–2 Amended ..................6512, 47075, 50614

105 Authority citation revised ................34745

105.521 Added ..................34745

105.522 Added ..................34745

108 Authority citation revised ................6266, 15920

108.1 (b) and (c) redesignated as (c) and (d); new (b) added ..................6266

108.1 (d)(4) revised ..................6266

Regulation at 53 FR 10244 confirmed ..................24701

108.503–1 (b)(2) amended ..................24701
## List of CFR Sections Affected

### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>122.54</td>
<td>6266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.58</td>
<td>39519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.59</td>
<td>39520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.60</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61</td>
<td>36762</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>122.59</td>
<td>39985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.60</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61</td>
<td>36762</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.62</td>
<td>36766</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 108 FR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>108.502</td>
<td>6267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503</td>
<td>15920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.504</td>
<td>36762</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.505</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.506</td>
<td>36762</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 115 FR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>115.11</td>
<td>21526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.6</td>
<td>21526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.7</td>
<td>21526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.8</td>
<td>21526</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 124 FR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>124.1</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.2</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.3</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.4</td>
<td>36761</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 129 FR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>129.1</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.2</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.3</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.4</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.5</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.6</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.7</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.8</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.9</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.10</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.11</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.12</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.13</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.14</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.15</td>
<td>9426</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 133 FR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>133.1</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.1</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.2</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.3</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.4</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.5</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.6</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.7</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.8</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.9</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.10</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.11</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.12</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.13</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.14</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.15</td>
<td>34747</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## End of Document
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 13 CFR—Continued

**Chapter I—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>121.1106 (c) redesignated as (c)(1); (c)(2) added</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(2) corrected</td>
<td>30796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1202 (a) regulation at 54 FR</td>
<td>38664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) regulation at 54 FR</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1601 (a)(5) and (b)(2)(i)(B) and (i)(A) amended</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1602 (c) amended</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1604 (c) amended</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1605 (a) amended</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1703 (b) amended</td>
<td>27200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.2001—121.2005 (Subpart B)</td>
<td>3203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>3203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.6—1 (b) revised</td>
<td>38664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.7—1 Amended</td>
<td>41996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.7—3 (a) revised</td>
<td>2051</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) amended</td>
<td>17297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.2 Revised</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.3 Amended</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amended; interim</td>
<td>28753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.4 Amended</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.5 Amended</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.11 Amended</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.21 (e) amended</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.23 (c) amended</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.24 (a) and (f) revised; (j) added</td>
<td>23074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.25 (a)(3) amended; (a)(4) and (e) revised; (a)(5) added; (g) removed; (b) redesignated as (g)</td>
<td>23075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.26 (a) amended</td>
<td>23075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.29 Revised</td>
<td>23075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.40 Amended</td>
<td>23075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.41 (b) revised; (e) amended</td>
<td>23075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.1 (a)(2)(i) amended</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.7 (c) removed</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.100 Amended</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.103 (g) and (h) amended</td>
<td>33896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.106 (a)(2)(i)(B) amended</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.107 Introductory text amended</td>
<td>33896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.109 (d) amended</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.110 (c) amended</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.111 (a)(2)(i) and (ii) amended</td>
<td>34902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.112 (c)(4)(i) amended; (c)(6) redesignated as (c)(7); new (c)(7) added; new (c)(7) revised</td>
<td>33896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.209 (a)(21) introductory text and (22) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.301 (a) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.303 (c)(2) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.305 (c)(4), (d) introductory text and (1) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.308 (b)(2) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 13 CFR—Continued

**Chapter I—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>124.309 (d) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.312 (b)(4), (c)(4), and (10)</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.316 (b) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.317 (a) amended; (b)(2) removed; (b)(3) through (5) redesignated as (b)(2) through (4)</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.321 (b)(2) removed; (h)(3) and (4) redesignated as new (h)(2) and (3)</td>
<td>33896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) and (d)(1) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.401 (a)(3) through (6) redesignated as (a)(4) through (7); new (a)(3) added; new (a)(4) and (7), (c)(1), (d) introductory text, (d)(3)(1) and (f)(iii) amended</td>
<td>34903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194.3 (i) revised</td>
<td>4111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.305 Regulation at 54 FR 4950, 4953 confirmed</td>
<td>21692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.320 Regulation at 54 FR 4950, 4953 confirmed</td>
<td>21692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.600—145.635 (Subpart F) Revised</td>
<td>21692, 21692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145 Appendix F Revised</td>
<td>21692, 21692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146 Added; interim</td>
<td>6737, 6747</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter III**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>302.8 Regulation at 53 FR 50207 confirmed</td>
<td>21692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.89 Revised; interim</td>
<td>49252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>3400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4 (a) introductory text, (2)(ii) introductory text; (b) introductory text and (2)(ii) revised</td>
<td>18595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(2)(ii) introductory text correctly designated</td>
<td>38313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.18 (c) added; interim</td>
<td>3400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter V**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500—590 Chapter V Removed</td>
<td>11361</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1991**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101.3—1 (b)(8) and (11) amended</td>
<td>23500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.3—2 Amended</td>
<td>23499, 54779, 59211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>65822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.3 Amended</td>
<td>13583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amended; footnote 4 revised</td>
<td>31777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.4 (b)(2), (3)(ii) and (iii) amended; (b)(3)(iv) removed</td>
<td>13583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.101 (d) revised</td>
<td>37461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.201 (b)(2) and (3) redesignated as (b)(3) and (4); new (b)(2) added</td>
<td>31777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.205 (d)(2) revised</td>
<td>31778</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13 CFR—Continued</th>
<th>56 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.304 Revised</td>
<td>31778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.321 (b) revised</td>
<td>31778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.401 (a) introductory text revised; (a)(7) added</td>
<td>31778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.402 (d) added</td>
<td>31778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.403 (b)(1) revised</td>
<td>31779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.707 Revised</td>
<td>31779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.708 (c)(1) and (2) revised</td>
<td>31779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.901 (c)(2) introductory text revised</td>
<td>31779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.903 (b) introductory text</td>
<td>31779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.1 (b) and (c) revised; (d) redesignated as (e); new (d) added</td>
<td>41056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.3 (a)(1) revised</td>
<td>43868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.4 (d)(3)(i) amended</td>
<td>43868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.8 (e) revised</td>
<td>43868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503 (b) introductory text, (1) and (2) revised</td>
<td>41057</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–4 (c)(2) amended</td>
<td>41057</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–6 (a)(3) revised</td>
<td>43869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–8 (a)(1) and (b)(4) amended; (b)(1) amended; (b)(2) revised</td>
<td>43869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–9 (a)(8)(i) revised; (a)(8)(ii) amended</td>
<td>41057</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.503–13 (g) revised; (h) amended</td>
<td>43869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.504 (e) amended; interim</td>
<td>11354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.10 (e) amended</td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.101–2 (e)(5) revised</td>
<td>55446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical correction</td>
<td>57558, 58610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121 Waiver</td>
<td>10360, 22306, 37648, 41057, 41787, 42524, 49672, 49841, 52463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>37276, 55618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.601 Table amended</td>
<td>55618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.802 (a)(3) revised</td>
<td>5748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.904 (d) added; interim</td>
<td>43870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1013 Added</td>
<td>22992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1103 (d) added; interim</td>
<td>43871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.2001–121.2005 (Subpart B) Revised</td>
<td>37278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122 Technical correction</td>
<td>12304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.8–4 (h) removed; (g) redesignated as (h); new (g) added</td>
<td>11355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.54–1 Revised</td>
<td>10361</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13 CFR—Continued</th>
<th>56 FR Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.54–3 Amended</td>
<td>10361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.57–5 Removed</td>
<td>10361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.60 Added</td>
<td>52188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.60–1 Added</td>
<td>52188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.60–2 Added</td>
<td>52188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.60–3 Added</td>
<td>52188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>65955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.1 (a) amended</td>
<td>65955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) clarification</td>
<td>67159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.60–123.69 (Subpart D) Added</td>
<td>65955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarification</td>
<td>65955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>12651, 22992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.4 (g)(2) amended; (j) added</td>
<td>12651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.6 (a) through (p) redesignated as (a)(1) through (16); new (b) and (c) added; (a) introductory text and (a)(9) amended</td>
<td>12651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.12 Added</td>
<td>22992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter III</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>22110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.1 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.3 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.5 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.7 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.8 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.9 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.10 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revisited; interim</td>
<td>22310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.11 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.12 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.13 Regulation at 51 FR 24514 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.41 Regulation at 51 FR 24515 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.4 Regulation at 51 FR 24515 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.6 Regulation at 51 FR 24515 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.8 Regulation at 51 FR 24515 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.9 Regulation at 51 FR 24515 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.5 Regulation at 51 FR 24515 confirmed</td>
<td>2425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>59 FR Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.211</td>
<td>(d) amended 28780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.12</td>
<td>(a) amended 28780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.14</td>
<td>(a) revised; (b) amended 28780</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter III

301 Authority citation revised 2223
301.50 Revised 2223
301.51—301.60 Removed 2223
305.45 (a), (b), (c)(4) and (8) revised; interim 11674

1993

Chapter I

101.3-2 Amended 2967, 19321, 44437
Regulation at 58 FR 44437 corrected 53120
102.26 (c) revised 14148
102.27 Designated as 102.28; new 102.27 added 14146
102.28 Designated as 102.29; new 102.28 redesignated from 102.27 14146
102.29 Designated as 102.30; new 102.29 redesignated from 102.28 14146
102.30 Designated as 102.31; new 102.30 redesignated from 102.29 14146
(a) revised 14148
102.31 Designated as 102.32; new 102.31 redesignated from 102.30 14146
102.32 Designated as 102.33; new 102.32 redesignated from 102.31 14146
102.33 Designated as 102.34; new 102.33 redesignated from 102.32 14146
(a) amended 14148
102.34 Designated as 102.35; new 102.34 redesignated from 102.33 14146
(c) amended 14148
102.35 Designated as 102.36; new 102.35 redesignated from 102.34 14146
102.36 Designated as 102.37; new 102.36 redesignated from 102.35 14146
(a) revised 14148
102.37 Designated as 102.36 14146
107 Authority citation revised 47032
107.1002 (e) revised 47032

13 CFR—Continued | 59 FR Page |
| 107 appendix I amended 47032, 47033
108.4 (c), (d) and (e) redesignated as (d), (e) and (f); new (c) added 15757
108.503-2 (d) and (e) added 45246
108.503-3 (c) revised 45246
108.503-5 (d)(2) amended 15757
108.507—108.507-5 Undesignated center heading and sections added 45246
120.102 Revised 45248
120.102-12 Added 45248
120.104-2 (b) revised 49423
120.403-2 Revised 49424
120.403-5 Revised 49424
121 Waiver 7479, 9112, 11372, 29346
Authority citation revised 25929
121.303 Revised 65281
121.601 Table amended; Footnote 21 added; interim 4077
Table amended 25929, 52415
121.802 (a)(1) amended; (a)(2) revised 12335
121.810 (a) revised 25929
121.911 (a) revised 47371, 58651
121.2101—121.2106 Undesignated center heading and sections added 48956
122.7-3 (b) and (c) revised 49424
122.8-4 (d) revised 49424
122.61-10 (a) amended; (b) revised 49424
123 Authority citation revised 32055
123.3 Amended 64673
123.9 (c) revised 32055
123.24 Heading revised; (g)(1) and (2) amended 32055
(a) revised 64674
123.28 Revised 64674
123.41 (h) revised 32055
(e) revised 64674

Chapter III

301 Authority citation revised 61804
301.31 (e) revised 61804
301.32 Revised 61804
301.33 Revised 61804
301.35 Revised 61805
301.36 Removed; new 301.36 redesignated from 301.37 61806
301.38 Redesignated as 301.36 61806
301.70 Revised (OMB numbers) 61806
### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>59 FR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>124.112</td>
<td>(a)(3)(i) removed; (a)(3)(ii) and (c)(2)(iii) redesignated as (a)(3)(i) and (c)(2)(iv); (a)(1), (c) introductory text and new (2)(iv) introductory text amended; new (a)(3)(ii) and new (c)(2)(ii) added; (c)(2)(i) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.305</td>
<td>(f) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.307</td>
<td>(e) added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.111</td>
<td>(f)(4) and (5) introductory text revised; (f)(5)(i) and (iv) redesignated as (f)(5)(iv) and (v); new (f)(5)(iii) added; new (f)(5)(v) amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.609</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>59 FR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.2</td>
<td>Revised; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.3</td>
<td>(b) revised; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.7</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.8</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.5</td>
<td>(b)(3) table amended; interim.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1995

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>60 FR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Authority delegation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.3-2</td>
<td>Amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Comment period reopening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Appendix I revised; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.2</td>
<td>Amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.506-1</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.508-2</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>60 FR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>108.508-3</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.508-4</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.508-5</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.509-1</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading added; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.509-2</td>
<td>Added; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.509-3</td>
<td>Added; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.509-4</td>
<td>Added; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.509-5</td>
<td>Added; interim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.42—116.44</td>
<td>(Subpart F) Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.202-5</td>
<td>Introductory text revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Technical correction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.401</td>
<td>(b) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.2001</td>
<td>Revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.2004</td>
<td>(c)(1) and (5) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.2005</td>
<td>(c)(1) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.5-6</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.54-1</td>
<td>Revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.57-3</td>
<td>Revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-1</td>
<td>(a) amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-2</td>
<td>(d)(3) and (4) amended; (d)(5) and (h) added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-3</td>
<td>(a) amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-6</td>
<td>(e) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-9</td>
<td>(a) and (b)(2) amended; (b)(1) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-11</td>
<td>(a) amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.61-13</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.2</td>
<td>Amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Authority citation revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.7</td>
<td>(b)(1) removed; (b)(2) redesignated as (b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.100</td>
<td>Amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.101</td>
<td>(a) and (b) amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.102</td>
<td>(a) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.103</td>
<td>Introductory text revised; (h) amended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.104</td>
<td>Introductory text revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.109</td>
<td>(d) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.111</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.114</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.208</td>
<td>(c)(2) removed; (c)(3), through (6) redesignated as (c)(2) through (5); new (c)(2) amended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of CFR Sections Affected

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter I—Continued</th>
<th>13 CFR</th>
<th>1996</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>124.209</td>
<td>124.209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(2) removed; (b)(3) through (6) redesignated as (b)(2) through (5); (a)(6)(1) and new (b)(3) amended; new (b)(2) revised</td>
<td>12975</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.302</td>
<td>124.302</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(1)(i)(A) and (2) revised</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.303</td>
<td>124.303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(3) and (4) removed; (c)(5), (6) and (7) redesignated as (c)(3), (4) and (5); (d)(1) amended</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.304</td>
<td>124.304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.305</td>
<td>124.305</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.307</td>
<td>124.307</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) and (e) redesignated as (e) and (f); new (d) added</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.308</td>
<td>124.308</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) and (f)(2) revised; (e)(1)(iii) and (f)(1) amended</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.311</td>
<td>124.311</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) removed; (c) through (i) redesignated as (b) through (h); (a)(2), new (g)(3) and new (4) revised; new (d) introductory text amended; new (d)(1) and new (2) removed</td>
<td>12976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.312</td>
<td>124.312</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(4), (5), (6), (c)(2), (3) and (9) removed; (b)(7), (c)(4) through (8), (10), (11) and (12) redesignated as (b)(4) and (c)(2) through (9); new (b)(4), (c)(1), (7), (8) and (9) amended</td>
<td>12977</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.321</td>
<td>124.321</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) added</td>
<td>12977</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.501</td>
<td>124.501</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) redesignated as (d); new (c) added</td>
<td>12977</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126 Removed</td>
<td>54590</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129 Removed</td>
<td>54590</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130 Added</td>
<td>31056</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140 Revised</td>
<td>ef: 1-4-96</td>
<td>62191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143.36</td>
<td>143.36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d), (g), (h) and (i) revised</td>
<td>19639, 19642</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144 Removed</td>
<td>54590</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.100</td>
<td>145.100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>33040, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.105</td>
<td>145.105</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>33041, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.110</td>
<td>145.110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) revised</td>
<td>33041, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.200</td>
<td>145.200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>33041, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.215</td>
<td>145.215</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>33041, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.220</td>
<td>145.220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>33041, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145.225</td>
<td>145.225</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>33041, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145 Appendixes A and B revised</td>
<td>33042, 33044</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter III
Chapter III Revised; interim... 49678
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter III—Continued</td>
<td>13 CFR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.3 (b) revised (OMB numbers)</td>
<td>107 Authority citation revised...48477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.4 Revised</td>
<td>107.50 Amended...11759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.4 (d) revised</td>
<td>107.692 Revised...23338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.6 (a)(4) revised</td>
<td>107.710 Revised...11760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.4 (a) introductory text revised</td>
<td>120.410 (c) and (d) amended; (e) added; interim...302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.13 Introductory text, (a) through (d) and concluding text redesignated as (a) introductory text, (1) through (4) and (b); new (a)(2) revised...7982</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.17 Revised</td>
<td>120.420 Revised; interim...15602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.18 Revised</td>
<td>121 Waiver...3985, 6453, 6454, 24325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.2 (a) revised</td>
<td>Authority citation revised...11318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303.3 (a) introductory text and (1) redesigned as (a)(1) and (2); new (a)(2) revised...7982</td>
<td>121.103 (b)(5) introductory text revised...11318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.1 (a)(1)(i), (2)(ii), (iii) and (b) revised</td>
<td>(b)(5) introductory text correctly revised...26381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.7 (a) revised</td>
<td>123.201 (b) revised; interim...35337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.8 (b) table amended</td>
<td>143.26 (a), (b) introductory text and (1) revised...45939, 45940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.11—305.13 (Subpart C) Heading added</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.13 Redesignated as 316.11; new 305.13 redesignated from 305.14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.14 Redesignated as 305.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.15 Redesignated as 316.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2 (c) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.12 (c) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.13 (b) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.14 (e) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.16 Introductory text revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.18 (b) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.20 (c) revised; (e) removed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.5 (b) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.7 (a) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315 Heading revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.2 Amended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.5 (b)(2) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.8 (a) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.9 (a) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.10 (b)(4), (5) and (6) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.11 (a) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.1 (b)(1) and (7) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.3 (b) revised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.11 Redesignated from 305.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.12 Redesignated from 305.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.13 Added</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317.1 (c)(2) added</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 CFR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107 Authority citation revised...48477</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.50 Amended...11759</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.692 Revised...23338</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.710 Revised...11760</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.410 (c) and (d) amended; (e) added; interim...302</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.420 Revised; interim...15602</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121 Waiver...3985, 6453, 6454, 24325</td>
<td>Authority citation revised...11318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.103 (b)(5) introductory text revised...11318</td>
<td>(b)(5) introductory text correctly revised...26381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.201 (b) revised; interim...35337</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143.26 (a), (b) introductory text and (1) revised...45939, 45940</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 CFR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107 Authority citation revised...5865</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.50 Amended...5865</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.710 Revised...5865</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.720 (b)(2) and (c)(1) introductory text revised; (b)(3) added...5867</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.730 (d)(3)(iv) revised...5867</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.740 (a) revised...5867</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.855 (c)(1), (4)(1) and (d)(4) revised; (g)(1) through (10) redesignated as (g)(2) through (11); new (g)(1) added...5867</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.865 (c)(2) amended; (d)(1) revised...5867</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1100 Revised...5868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1110 Removed...5868</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Page 680
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Regulation</th>
<th>Compliance Date Notice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>107.1120</td>
<td>(c) revised; (d), (e) and (f) revised; (g) new (d) added</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1130</td>
<td>Heading, (a), (b) and (c) revised; (d) added</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1160</td>
<td>Introductory text added</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1200</td>
<td>(c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1210</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1230</td>
<td>(a) and (b) revised</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1240</td>
<td>(a)(1), (b), (c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>5868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1350</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading removed</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1350</td>
<td>Redesignated as</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1400</td>
<td>Heading and introductory text revised</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1420</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1430</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1500</td>
<td>(b)(1), (4) and (f)(2) revised; (e) amended</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1505</td>
<td>(a) introductory text amended: (a)(1), (2) and (3) added; (b) revised</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1510</td>
<td>Introductory text and (d)(1)(ii) revised; (c) amended</td>
<td>5870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1520</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>5870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1530</td>
<td>(c), (e)(2) and (b) revised; (e)(3) and (4) removed</td>
<td>5871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1540</td>
<td>Introductory text amended</td>
<td>5871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1550</td>
<td>Introductory text amended: (a)(1), (b) and (c)(3) revised</td>
<td>5871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1560</td>
<td>Introductory text and (e) table amended: (a)(1), (4) and (b) revised</td>
<td>5872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1570</td>
<td>Introductory text amended: (b)(1) heading, (i) and (ii) revised</td>
<td>5872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1575</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>5872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1580</td>
<td>(a) heading and introductory text revised</td>
<td>5872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1585</td>
<td>Redesignated from 107.1350 and revised</td>
<td>5869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1600</td>
<td>(a) revised; (c) removed; (d) redesignated as (c)</td>
<td>5873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1600</td>
<td>(a) revised; (b) revised</td>
<td>5873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1620</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>5873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1620</td>
<td>(e)(9) revised</td>
<td>5873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1630</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>5873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>12605</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Regulation</th>
<th>Compliance Date Notice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>115.61</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>12605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.845</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>24740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>31907, 46642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1001</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>31907, 46642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1430</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>46642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1001</td>
<td>(a)(5) redesignated as (a)(6); new (a)(5) added</td>
<td>31907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1400</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>31908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1430</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>31908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.201</td>
<td>(d), (e) and (f) added</td>
<td>46644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.18</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>15072</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.19</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>15072</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.20</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>15073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.1901</td>
<td>124.610 (Subpart B) Redesignated as 124.1001—124.1010 (Subpart B)</td>
<td>35739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.1024</td>
<td>(Subpart B) Revised</td>
<td>35739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>31908, 46642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.2</td>
<td>(a)(1) amended</td>
<td>31908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.3</td>
<td>(b) and (c) revised; (d) amended</td>
<td>31908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.7</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>46642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>31908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.201</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>35766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.202</td>
<td>(c) and (d) amended</td>
<td>35766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.203</td>
<td>(a)(2), (3) and (4) redesigned as (a)(3), (4) and (5); new (a)(2) added</td>
<td>35766</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Page**: 681
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13 CFR—Continued</td>
<td>64 FR Page</td>
<td>1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.50</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>52645, 70995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.230</td>
<td>(b)(3) revised</td>
<td>70995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.594</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>70995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.508</td>
<td>Removed</td>
<td>70995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.610</td>
<td>(e) added</td>
<td>52646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.710</td>
<td>(b)(1), (c)(1)(i) and (ii) revised; (d) and (e) redesignated as (e) and (f); new (d) added; new (f) amended</td>
<td>70995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.730</td>
<td>(d)(3)(iv) revised</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.740</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.835</td>
<td>(d) redesignated as (e); new (d) added</td>
<td>52646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.850</td>
<td>(a) introductory text revised</td>
<td>52646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.855</td>
<td>(g)(12) added</td>
<td>52646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.865</td>
<td>(d)(3) and (4) amended; (d)(5) added; (e)(3) revised</td>
<td>52646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1100</td>
<td>Revisor</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1120</td>
<td>(d) through (g) redesignated as (e) through (h); new (d) added</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1150</td>
<td>(a) revised; (b)(1) amended</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1220</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 CFR</td>
<td>107.1230</td>
<td>(d)(1) revised; (d)(2) and (3) redesignated as (d)(3) and (d)(4); new (2) added; new (d)(4) amended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1550</td>
<td>Introductory text amended; (b)(1) and (d) revised; (e) added</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1575</td>
<td>(a)(1) and (b)(2) revised; (a)(4) added</td>
<td>70996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.1580</td>
<td>(a) heading, (1), (4) and (b)(2) revised</td>
<td>70997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.102</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>40283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.105</td>
<td>(b) and (c) revised</td>
<td>40283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.106</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>40283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.108</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>40283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>18324</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.31</td>
<td>(a)(2) revised</td>
<td>18324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.10</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>2117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.111</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>2117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>120.131</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>2117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.414</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading and section redesignated from 120.430; undesignated center heading revised</td>
<td>35766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.415</td>
<td>Redesignated from</td>
<td>6509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.430</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading redesignated as</td>
<td>6509</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13 CFR (1–1–02 Edition)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>48276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.107</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>48276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.400—123.407</td>
<td>Undesignated center heading and sections</td>
<td>53730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>53730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.2</td>
<td>(a) and (b) redesignated as (b) and (c); new (a) and (d) added; new (b) revised; interim</td>
<td>53730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.6</td>
<td>(g) added; interim</td>
<td>53772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter III</td>
<td>Revised; interim</td>
<td>5352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 64 FR 5352 confirmed</td>
<td>69873</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.2</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>69873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.1</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>69873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.2</td>
<td>(e) and (h) revised</td>
<td>69873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.3</td>
<td>(a), (b) and (d) revised; (e) added</td>
<td>69873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.4</td>
<td>(b) revised; interim</td>
<td>32975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) revised; (d)(4) and (5) added</td>
<td>69873</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.4</td>
<td>(a)(1)(v), (vi) and (vii) redesignated as (a)(1)(vi), (vii) and (viii); new (a)(1)(v) added; (b) introductory text revised</td>
<td>69874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.6</td>
<td>Introductory text and (c) revised</td>
<td>69874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303.1</td>
<td>(a)(1) and (b) revised</td>
<td>69874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303.2</td>
<td>(e) revised; (f) added</td>
<td>69874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303.3</td>
<td>Introductory text and (b) revised</td>
<td>69874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.1</td>
<td>(c) redesignated as (d); (a) introductory text, (b) introductory text, (1) and new (d) revised; new (c) added</td>
<td>69874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304.2</td>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.2</td>
<td>(c) removed; (d) redesignated as (c)</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.5</td>
<td>Redesignated as 305.24; new 305.5 added</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.6</td>
<td>Redesignated as 305.25; new 305.6 added</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.7</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.8</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.9</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.10</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.11</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.12</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.13</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.14</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.15</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.16</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.17</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.18</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.19</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.20</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter III—Continued</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.21</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.22</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.23</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.24</td>
<td>Redesignated from 305.5</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)(4) revised</td>
<td>69876</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.25</td>
<td>Redesignated from 305.6</td>
<td>69875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>69877</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.26</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69877</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306.3</td>
<td>(b)(1), (2), new (4) and (c)(1) revised; (b)(3) redesignated as (b)(4); new (b)(3) added</td>
<td>69877</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306.4</td>
<td>Heading revised</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.2</td>
<td>(f) removed; (d) and (e) revised</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.3</td>
<td>(b) removed; (c) and (d) redesignated as (b) and (c); new (c) revised</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.4</td>
<td>Redesignated as 307.5; new 307.4 added</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.5</td>
<td>Redesignated as 307.6; new 307.5 redesignated from 307.4</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.6</td>
<td>Redesignated as 307.7; new 307.6 redesignated from 307.5; (d) removed; (e) and (f) redesignated as (d) and (e)</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.7</td>
<td>Redesignated as 307.9; new 307.7 redesignated from 307.6; (d) revised; (e) added</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.8</td>
<td>Redesignated as 307.10; new 307.8 added</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.9</td>
<td>Redesignated as 307.11; new 307.9 redesignated from 307.7</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.10</td>
<td>Redesignated from 307.8</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.11</td>
<td>Redesignated from 307.9; (c) removed; (d) redesignated as (c); new (c)(1)(i) and (2) introductory text revised</td>
<td>69878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.12</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.1</td>
<td>(b)(1) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.4</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.5</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.3</td>
<td>(d) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.4</td>
<td>(b) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.2</td>
<td>(a) amended; (e) introductory text, (1), (2), (4), (6) and (8) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.11</td>
<td>Heading and (a) revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317</td>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>69879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317.1</td>
<td>(b) through (e) and (f) redesignated as (c) through (f) and (h); (a)(5) and new (c) through (f) and (h) revised; (a)(6), new (b) and (g) added</td>
<td>69880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318.1</td>
<td>(a)(3) and (b) revised</td>
<td>69881</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Revised/Amended Details</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>318.2</td>
<td>(b) and (c)</td>
<td>69881</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.204</td>
<td>(c)(2) (revised); interim</td>
<td>72020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.205</td>
<td>(a) (revised); interim</td>
<td>72021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.206</td>
<td>(a) (revised); (b) and (c) (revised); (d) redesignated as (b); new (c) added; interim</td>
<td>72021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.204</td>
<td>(a) and (b)(8) (revised); interim</td>
<td>72021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.205</td>
<td>(a) (revised); interim</td>
<td>72021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.206</td>
<td>(a) (revised); (b) and (c) (revised); (d) redesignated as (b); new (c) added; interim</td>
<td>72021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.206</td>
<td>(a) (revised); (b) and (c) (revised); (d) redesignated as (b); new (c) added; interim</td>
<td>72021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 FR</td>
<td>Chapter I—Continued</td>
<td>57933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.150</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>71055</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.440</td>
<td>(c) (revised)</td>
<td>71056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.815</td>
<td>(a) (amended)</td>
<td>69432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.815</td>
<td>(g)(12) (revised)</td>
<td>71056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.820</td>
<td>(c) (revised)</td>
<td>71056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.820</td>
<td>(a) (amended)</td>
<td>69432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.100—113.605</td>
<td>(Subpart B) Added</td>
<td>52865, 52875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.105</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>52876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.605</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>52876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.204</td>
<td>Authority citation (revised)</td>
<td>42031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.425</td>
<td>(a) (amended)</td>
<td>49481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.540</td>
<td>Heading (revised); (b)(4) amended</td>
<td>17139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.710</td>
<td>(b) and (c) (revised); (d) and (e) (added)</td>
<td>17439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.802</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.810</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.820</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.822</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.823</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.824</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.825</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.835</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.837</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>42632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.101</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>30840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.103</td>
<td>(f)(3)(i) (introductory text, (B)(f) and (iii) (amended)</td>
<td>30840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1204</td>
<td>(a)(3) and (b)(1)(i) (amended)</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1205</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1206</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1207</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1208</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1209</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1210</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.1211</td>
<td>Amended</td>
<td>30863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.2</td>
<td>Regulation at 64 FR 57370 confirmed</td>
<td>45832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300.3</td>
<td>(b) table (OMB numbers)</td>
<td>71024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301.1</td>
<td>(b) (revised)</td>
<td>71024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.1</td>
<td>(b) (revised)</td>
<td>71024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302.2</td>
<td>(g) (revised)</td>
<td>71024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.5</td>
<td>(Subpart B) Heading</td>
<td>71024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.5</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>71024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305.19</td>
<td>(d) (revised)</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>Appendix A removed</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306.1</td>
<td>Introductory text</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.7</td>
<td>(c) (removed); (d) and (e) redesignated as (c) and (d)</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.1—308.6</td>
<td>(Subpart A) Heading added; interim</td>
<td>2531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.3</td>
<td>(c) (removed)</td>
<td>2532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.4</td>
<td>(c)(2)(ii) and (iii) (revised); (c)(2)(iv) (revised); (b) and (c)(1)(i) (revised)</td>
<td>2532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.5</td>
<td>(a) (revised)</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of CFR Sections Affected

#### 13 CFR—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>308.7—308.19 (Subpart B)</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>2532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.9</td>
<td>Introductory text revised</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.11 (a)</td>
<td>introductory text and (1) revised</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.12 (d)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>71025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308 Appendixes A through D</td>
<td>removed; interim</td>
<td>2532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.7—308.19 (Subpart B)</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>2532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.4 (c)</td>
<td>added; interim</td>
<td>2536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314.10 (c)</td>
<td>added; interim</td>
<td>2536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315 Authority citation</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>71026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.9</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>71026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316 Authority citation</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>71026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316.9 (c)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>71026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317.1 (f)(3)(vi) and (5)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>71026</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Chapter IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400 Authority citation</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.1</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.2 (c) through (k)</td>
<td>redesignated as (d) through (l); new (c) added; new (g) and new (h) revised</td>
<td>24104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.103</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.105 (d)</td>
<td>added</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.107 (b)(3)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.110</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.200 (c)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.201 (a)(2)</td>
<td>revised; (b) and (c) redesignated as (c) and (d); new (b) added</td>
<td>24104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.204 (c)(2)(ii)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.205 (a)</td>
<td>revised; interim</td>
<td>1757</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>6889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(11) revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>24107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.206 (c)(5)(iii)(C) and (iv)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>70293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.207 (b)</td>
<td>introductory text and (c) revised</td>
<td>70294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.208 (a)(3)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>70294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.210 (b)</td>
<td>revised; (c)(2)(iv) amended; (c)(3) added</td>
<td>24104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)(2) removed; (c)(3) redesignated as (c)(2); new (c)(2) revised; (d) added</td>
<td>70294</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.211 (b), (c), (e), (f), (g)(1) and (2)</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>24104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) introductory text amended</td>
<td></td>
<td>24105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>70294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.212</td>
<td>Revised</td>
<td>70294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.213</td>
<td>Heading and (a) revised</td>
<td>24105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.214</td>
<td>Added</td>
<td>51521</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Chapter V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500.2 (c)</td>
<td>though (k) redesignated as (d) through (l); new (c) added; new (g) and new (h) revised</td>
<td>24106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.201 (b) and (c)</td>
<td>redesignated as (c) and (d); new (b) added</td>
<td>24107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.205 (a)</td>
<td>revised; interim</td>
<td>1758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>6889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)(11) revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>24107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.210 (b)</td>
<td>revised; (c)(2)(iv) amended; (c)(3) added</td>
<td>24107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.211 (b), (c), (e), (f), (g)(1) and (2)</td>
<td>revised; (g) introductory text amended</td>
<td>24107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)(1) revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>51522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.213</td>
<td>Heading and (a) revised</td>
<td>24107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2001

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFR Section</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chapter I</td>
<td>107.710 (a)</td>
<td>revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Added; interim</td>
<td>7224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 7224 eff.</td>
<td>date delayed</td>
<td>10811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 7224 eff.</td>
<td>date delayed</td>
<td>20530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 7224 withdrawn</td>
<td></td>
<td>28602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Added</td>
<td></td>
<td>28609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authority citation corrected</td>
<td></td>
<td>32894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.150 (c)</td>
<td>introductory text corrected</td>
<td>32894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.2010 (b)</td>
<td>corrected</td>
<td>32894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115 Authority citation</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.12 (e)(1) and (3)</td>
<td>amended</td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.19 (a)</td>
<td>amended</td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.31 (d)</td>
<td>amended</td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.60 (a)(1)</td>
<td>amended</td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.61 Amended</td>
<td></td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.68 Amended</td>
<td></td>
<td>30804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119 Added</td>
<td></td>
<td>29013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.131 Revised</td>
<td></td>
<td>56987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56987 withdrawn</td>
<td></td>
<td>64739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.151 Amended</td>
<td></td>
<td>56988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td></td>
<td>64739</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

685
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation Number</th>
<th>Affect</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>120.220 (a) revised; (b) and (c) redesignated as (e) and (f); introductory text, new (b), new (c) and (d) added</td>
<td>56988</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.223 Added</td>
<td>56988</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td>64739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.613 (b) revised</td>
<td>56988</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td>64739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.700—120.715 (Subpart G) Heading revised</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.700 Amended</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.701 (h) redesignated as (i); new (h) added</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) and (i) revised</td>
<td>47878</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.702 (a)(1) revised</td>
<td>47878</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.704 (b) revised</td>
<td>47878</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.705 Amended</td>
<td>47878</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.706 (a) amended</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.707 (a) revised</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) amended; (c)(1) and (2) revised</td>
<td>47878</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.712 Heading, (b)(1) and (e) revised</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.714 Heading and (b) revised; introductory text added</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) amended; (b) revised</td>
<td>47878</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.715 (a) revised</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.716 Added</td>
<td>47073</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.845 Introductory text amended; (b) removed</td>
<td>56988</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td>64739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.862 (b)(3) revised</td>
<td>56988</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td>64739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.870 (c) revised</td>
<td>56989</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td>64739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.931 Revised</td>
<td>56989</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulation at 66 FR 56988 withdrawn</td>
<td>64739</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121 Waiver</td>
<td>19381</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.201 Table amended</td>
<td>30647</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table corrected</td>
<td>32416</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.301 (b) and (c) revised</td>
<td>30648</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>38530</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undesignated center headings designated as Subparts A through E</td>
<td>38530</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.500—123.512 (Subpart F) Added</td>
<td>38530</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.600—123.606 (Subpart G) Added; interim</td>
<td>53331</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authority citation revised</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126 Authority citation revised</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.101 (c) added</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.103 Amended</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.204 Revised</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.206 Revised</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.601 (d) revised</td>
<td>4645</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.102 (l) amended; (m) redesignated as (n); new (m) added</td>
<td>47074</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter IV**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulation Number</th>
<th>Affect</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400.2 (h) through (l) redesignated as (i) through (m); (a), new (j) and (l) revised; new (h), (n) and (o) added</td>
<td>53079</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.106 Revised</td>
<td>53079</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.201 (c) and (d) revised</td>
<td>53079</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.203 Revised</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.204 (c)(2)(i) and (3) revised</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.205 (a) revised; (b)(10) and (11) amended; (b)(12) added</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.207 (b)(1) revised</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.208 (a)(3) revised</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.210 Revised</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.215 Added</td>
<td>53080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>